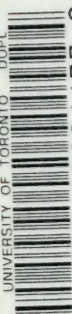


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO DUPL



3 1761 00361177 9

HANDBOUND
AT THE



UNIVERSITY OF
TORONTO PRESS

The Wars of Alexander.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. XLVII.

1886.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

The Wars of Alexander:

AN
ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE

TRANSLATED CHIEFLY FROM THE
HISTORIA ALEXANDRI MAGNI DE PRELIIS.

RE-EDITED FROM MS. ASHMOLE 44, IN THE BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD,
AND MS. D. 4. 12, IN THE LIBRARY OF TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN:

BY THE
REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, LITT.D., LL.D.,
ELRINGTON AND BOSWORTH PROFESSOR OF ANGLO-SAXON,
AND FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

38873
—
20/3/97

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXVI.

PR
1119
E5
no. 47

Extra Series,
XLVII.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

PAGE

§ 1. The three fragments in alliterative verse of the Romance of Alexander.	
§ 2. Fragments A and B belong to the same version : Fragment C is here printed.	
§ 3. Stevenson's edition of MS. Ashmole 44.	
§ 4. A gap in the story in that MS.; supplied from the Dublin MS.	
§ 5. Plan of the present edition.	
§ 6. Numbering of the lines.	
§ 7. Description of MS. Ashmole 44; discussion of the dialect.	
§ 8. Description of the Dublin MS. D. 4. 12; part 1: Piers the Plowman.	
§ 9. Part 2: Alexander, and other contents.	
§ 10. Dialect of the poem further discussed.	
§ 11. Both MSS. printed in full; results of comparing them.	
§ 12. Method adopted by the translator of the Latin text.	
§ 13. Conjectures as to the date and dialect of the present version.	
The Glossarial Index	ix

THE WARS OF ALEXANDER.

PASSUS I. Introduction. Anectanabus, king of Egypt, is master of astronomy and magic. Egypt is invaded by Artaxerxes. By making ships of wax, Anectanabus discovers that his fleet is being defeated. He disguises himself, and flees to Macedonia. The god Serapis prophesies the future defeat of the Persians. The Egyptians raise to Anectanabus an image of black stone	1
PASSUS II. During the absence of Philip, Anectanabus visits queen Olympias, and tells her that the god Ammon will appear to her in a dream. Anectanabus visits Olympias by night in the form of a dragon. He causes Philip to see in a dream his queen embraced by Ammon. A seer tells Philip that the queen's child will conquer the world. He returns to Macedon, where Anectanabus appears in a dragon's form at a feast. Omen of the bird who laid an egg in Philip's lap	7
PASSUS III. Prodigies at the birth of Alexander. His appearance described. His youth, how passed. Anectanabus predicts his own death at the hands of his own son. The prediction is accomplished when Alexander causes his death by drowning. Olympias mourns over the fate of Anectanabus	17
PASSUS IV. A wild carnivorous horse is brought to Philip. Alexander tames him, and sets out on his first expedition against Nicholas, king of Peloponnesus. Nicholas insults Alexander, who slays him, and returns home. Philip takes a second wife, named Cleopatra. Alexander interferes, and Philip is reconciled to Olympias	27
PASSUS V. Darius demands tribute from Philip, which Alexander refuses. Pausanias rebels against Philip, and wounds him mortally. Alexander appears, slays Pausanias, and buries Philip.	

Accession of Alexander, who addresses his army, and chooses old and experienced soldiers to accompany him. He conquers Chalcodon, Italy, and Africa. He shoots a huge hart, and offers sacrifice to Ammon. He sees Serapis in a dream, who prophesies that he will be invincible. He builds Alexandria 42
PASSUS VI. Alexander finds the black image of his father Anectanabus. He attacks Tyre, but meets with a stout resistance. The bishop of Jerusalem refuses him aid. The 'foray of Gaders.' ¹ Deeds of Meleager and Sampson. Balaan of Tyre destroys Alexander's siege-works. Alexander renews them, assaults and takes Tyre, and kills Balaan 58
PASSUS VII. Alexander approaches Jerusalem. Jaudas the bishop, and the inhabitants, receive him with great honour. Alexander kneels to God, and visits Solomon's temple. The prophecy of Daniel. Alexander grants Jaudas a boon. Darius scornfully sends Alexander three playthings 78
PASSUS VIII. Darius sends Alexander an insulting letter. Alexander likens him to a yelping cur that cannot bite, and sends him a defiant letter in return. Darius says Alexander wants a whipping, and again reproves him. The token of the glove full of seeds. Olympias falls ill, and Alexander determines to return to her 96
PASSUS IX. Alexander sends Darius a purse full of pepper. He defeats Amonta in a three-days' battle, who flees to Darius. Alexander goes to Sicily and Phrygia, and praises Homer. Returning to Macedonia, he finds his mother healed. He sets out for Persia, takes Abandra, comes to the Water of Winter, and advances to Thebes, which is taken and burnt. The oracle as to its rebuilding. Clytomachus fulfils it, and rebuilds the city 114
PASSUS X. Alexander sends a summons to Athens. Æschylus counsels the Athenians to resist him, but Demosthenes persuades them to submit. Alexander forgives the Athenians. The Spartans resist him, but in vain. Darius is alarmed. Alexander's parable of the wolf and the sheep. He is healed of a fever by Philip the physician. He crosses the Euphrates, destroying the bridges behind him 132
PASSUS XI. Darius collects an army. Great battle. A Persian wounds Alexander, who pardons him. Darius flees. Alexander seizes Darius' treasure, wife, and children. Darius writes to Alexander, warning him against over-confidence. Alexander replies. Porus is unable to help Darius. Rodogars, mother of Darius, advises him to submit. Lament of Darius 152
PASSUS XII. Alexander goes to Susa, and bids his men cut branches and carry them. Ammon tells Alexander to visit the camp of Darius. He crosses the river Granton alone, visits the hostile camp, and abstracts three gold cups from the tables. Anepo recognises him, and gives the alarm. He seizes a torch, mounts his horse, and flees, crossing the Granton on the ice, and escaping safely 166

¹ 'Gaders,' says M. Paul Meyer, 'is Gaza;' not Kedesh, as conjectured in the note to l. 1193.

- PASSUS XIII. Decisive battle of the Granton (Granicus). Defeat and flight of Darius. He writes to Alexander, who bids him submit. The Greeks find the tomb of Ninus, and free some Persian prisoners. Darius sends to Porus for help. Two knights lay a plot against Darius; they attack him, and he falls ... 178
- PASSUS XIV. Alexander comes to Susa, and finds Darius wounded. He laments over him. Their last conversation. Death of Darius, and accession of Alexander to the throne of Persia. Description of the throne of Darius. Proclamation by Alexander. He beheads the murderers of Darius, and weds Roxana ... 190
- PASSUS XV. Porus defies Alexander, who returns the defiance. Porus assembles a great army, with unicorns, elephants, and scythed chariots. Alexander frightens the elephants by a stratagem. Porus takes to flight ... 206
- PASSUS XVI. Alexander discovers the great wealth of India. Letter to him from the queen of the Amazons, and his reply. He makes a treaty with them ... 212
- PASSUS XVII. Porus raises another army. Want of water. A knight offers water to Alexander, which he pours on the ground. The army comes to a castle in a river. It is assailed by scorpions, snakes, dragons, lions, boars, savages, mice, bats, and red birds. They advance to Bactria, and the country of the Seres. Single combat between Alexander and the gigantic Porus, who is slain ... 216
- PASSUS XVIII. Alexander comes to the isle of Gymnosophists, who ask him for immortality, which he cannot give them. He comes to a dark desert, a hot river, and a dried lake. A monster slain. Elephants, bearded women, amphibious people, and rhinoceroses. Great storm of four winds. A cold valley, with sparks of fire. They arrive at the Ganges. Letter of Alexander to Dindimus the Brahman, with the parable of the lighted torch. Reply of Dindimus ... 223
- PASSUS XIX. Reply of Dindimus continued. Description of the life of the Brahmans. Their moderation, contentment, abstinence, truthfulness, love of peace, life in caves, and dislike of play ... 231
- PASSUS XX. The same continued. Dindimus accuses the Greeks, and condemns the stories concerning the Grecian gods, and their vain worship. The Greeks have as many gods as they have limbs, and each god presides over a limb. Dindimus threatens the Greeks with future torment ... 235
- PASSUS XXI. Alexander reproves Dindimus, and accuses the Brahmans, whom he condemns as miserable and foolish. Dindimus replies, declaring that the Brahmans wisely despise gold and riches. Alexander replies, and calls them wretched prisoners. He rears a pillar of marble, to mark the end of his march ... 241
- PASSUS XXII. Alexander and his host leave the Ganges. They come to a wood full of giants, who are slain by them. An uncouth monster appears, and is caught and burnt. Alexander comes to the trees which wax and wane in a day. He and his host climb a huge mountain, and are attacked by dragons, dromedaries, and snakes. They are nine days in a dark valley. They encounter a basilisk, which Alexander destroys by a

	PAGE
stratagem. Alexander ascends a cliff covered with diamonds, and arrives at the house of the Sun	245
PASSUS XXIII. Alexander finds in the temple a god reclining on a bed, who asks him if he wishes to learn his fate from the trees of the Sun and Moon. He replies in the affirmative, and, with two companions, is guided through a wood to a tree bare of leaves, on which sits a phoenix. The Sun-tree is like gold; the Moon-tree like silver. The Sun-tree prophesies that Alexander will not return home. The Moon-tree tells him he will die in twenty months. He bewails his fate, and returns to his host. He erects two pillars of marble	251
PASSUS XXIV. He comes to the Precious Land, wherein dwells queen Candace, who sends him presents. The wife of her son Candoil is stolen by the king of Becrik. Candoil goes to Alexander for help, and is received by Ptolemy, who has been commanded to personate Alexander, who is himself disguised as Antiochus. The pretended 'Antiochus' rescues Candoil's wife, and goes with Candoil to visit Candace, who receives him with favour	257
PASSUS XXV. Candace calls Alexander by his true name, and tells him he is in the power of a woman. Rage of Alexander, who is pacified by Candace. Caratros, another son of Candace, says he must have Alexander's life. Candoil interferes, and the brothers quarrel. Alexander pacifies them, and all are reconciled. Candace dismisses Alexander. He consults an oracle, and asks Serapis to say by whose hand he will die. Serapis will not tell him. Alexander and his host come to the valley of crowned snakes, who kill some of his men. He mounts Bucephalus, and has a great fight with griffins. The host cross the river of reeds in barges. Account of a strange kind of sirens ...	264
PASSUS XXVI. Alexander encloses twenty-two kings, including Gog and Magog, within a mountain. He comes to the ocean at the end of the world, turns westward, and reaches the Red Sea. He ascends into the air in an iron car raised by four griffins. He descends into the sea in an air-tight glass vessel. The host encounter various strange beasts. Death of Bucephalus, who is buried in a costly tomb. Appearance of strange white birds. Alexander conquers Babylon. He writes home to his mother and Aristotle	270
PASSUS XXVII. Description of the great throne in Babylon, inscribed with the names of all the countries conquered by Alexander. [<i>End of the poem</i>]	275
THE STORY CONTINUED. Epitome of the remainder of the story, taken from the <i>Historia de Preliis</i>	276
THE STORY OF ALEXANDER: A prose fragment from MS. Dublin D. 4. 12	279
NOTES	285
Notes on the "Story of Alexander"	317
Glossarial Index, and Index of Names	319

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. OF the various Middle-English prose and verse translations of the Romance of Alexander the Great, only those which are in alliterative verse will be here discussed. As to these, I have already explained, in my Preface to "Alexander and Dindimus," that there are *three* such poems, all fragmentary, which I denote by the letters A, B, and C. These poems are as follows :

A. A fragment preserved in MS. Greaves 60, in the Bodleian Library, beginning—"Yee þat lengen in londe · Lordes and ooper." This was edited by me for the E. E. T. S. in 1867, being printed in the same volume with William of Palerne, pp. 177—218. It has never been printed elsewhere.

B. A fragment preserved in MS. Bodley 264, beginning—"Whan þis weith at his wil · weduring hadde." This was edited by Mr. Stevenson for the Roxburghe Club in 1849, and re-edited by me, with numerous corrections, &c., for the E. E. T. S. in 1878, with the title "Alexander and Dindimus."

C. A fragment preserved in MS. Ashmole 44, in the Bodleian Library, of which a portion is also found in MS. Dublin D. 4. 12. It begins—"When folk ere festid & fed · fayn wald þai here," and was also printed in 1849 by Mr. Stevenson, and in the same volume as the last, but from the Ashmole MS. only, without any consultation of the Dublin MS. This fragment C is the one which is re-edited in the present volume, and to which, for the sake of distinction, I have given the title of "The Wars of Alexander," because it follows the Latin text entitled "*Historia Alexandri Magni regis Macedonie de preliis*" more closely than either A or B does.

§ 2. With respect to fragments A and B, I must refer the reader to the Preface to "Alexander and Dindimus" for further information. It is sufficient to say here that Dr. Trautmann has shewn, from

internal evidence, that these two fragments are by the same author, and belong to a poem which, when complete, must have been of very great length. Fragment C, here edited, is wholly independent of these, in the sense that it was written by a different translator. Whatever it has in common with them is due to their common source. Accordingly, the remarks below refer to fragment C exclusively.

§ 3. Of the two MSS. containing this fragment C, viz. MSS. Ashmole 44, and Dublin D. 4. 12—which will henceforth be called simply the Ashmole and Dublin MSS.—the former is the more important, partly because it contains a much larger portion of the story, and partly because it is more correctly written. It was printed by Mr. Stevenson in full, and has thus become known, being frequently cited by Dr. Morris and other writers, whilst it has also been made use of by Mätzner and Stratmann in their Middle-English Dictionaries. Mr. Stevenson's text (like that of his edition of fragment B) is by no means free from faults, and was doubtless printed from an imperfect transcript, without due collation of the proof-sheets with the MS. itself.¹ Thus in l. 15, he prints "forwart" for "forwith," and "ettitlis" for "ettillis," though the latter word is rightly given in the Glossary. In l. 16, he has "o3efullest" for "a3efullest," and so on. In some cases the errors are still more serious; as in l. 70, where "it semyd" is turned into "or myd," and in l. 417, where "sweuyn" appears as "sodeyn." Nevertheless, the transcription was, in general, well made, and a little more caution would have given us a faithful text throughout, excepting in such minute particulars as the use of þ for *th*, & for *and*, and the mode of expressing contractions. The chief defects of the edition, after all, are due to the fact that the Dublin MS. was not consulted. Mr. Stevenson does, indeed, mention it, but says that he only knew of it through the kindness of Sir F. Madden, who had made a note that it commenced with l. 678 of the Ashmole text, and ended with l. 3426.²

¹ Such a collation would have detected the omission of two whole lines in the transcript, viz. 4002* and 4733.

² L. 3425 of the present edition. As it is always my endeavour to keep to old numberings of lines, for the sake of reference, I must explain how this

§ 4. It is surprising to find that Mr. Stevenson edited the Ashmole text without ever discovering that there is a great gap in the story. He prints l. 723, which is the first line on leaf 13 of the Ashmole MS. (as now numbered), as if it immediately followed l. 722, which is the last line on the back of fol. 12. Yet l. 722 forms a part of a speech of Anectanabus, and l. 723 a part of a speech of Alexander; and, according to the Ashmole MS., Anectanabus drops out of the romance in the middle of uttering a sentence, and is no more heard of, whilst a king of Peloponnesus, by name Sir Nicholas, jumps into the story without any introduction, and is at once found in the midst of an angry parley with Alexander. A moderate attention to the progress of the story shews us at once, that the Ashmole MS. must, at this point, have lost one or more leaves, and we now know that it has, in fact, lost just *two* leaves, or 122 lines. The discovery of the precise state of the case was made by Mr. Hessels in 1874, after a careful examination of the Dublin MS., and comparison of it with Stevenson's edition. He found that the very passage required to fill up the gap occurs in full in that MS., which, notwithstanding its incompleteness at the beginning and end, supplies this very material contribution to the continuity of the story. Even now, the conclusion of the Romance is wanting, since the Ashmole MS. has lost a few leaves at the end also. After making this discovery, Mr. Hessels made a transcript of the entire MS., and kindly consented to assist me in editing the Romance. Owing to pressure of other work, he resigned to me the preparation of the Notes and Glossary, and expressed the wish that my name alone should appear upon the title-page; but so much of the work was done by us jointly, that it is best to describe more fully the method of editing adopted by us.

§ 5. In the first place, a collation of Stevenson's edition with the Ashmole MS. was made by Mr. George Parker; and, as that edition was printed without any punctuation, the punctuation was

difference arose. It was because it escaped my notice that l. 3028 in Stevenson is immediately followed by l. 3030; so that, after following his numbering for more than 3000 lines, I was thus, to my regret, thrown out. There are other slight differences further on, as explained at p. xiii, but the difference in the numbering never amounts to more than *one* line.

added by myself. Meanwhile, the Dublin MS. was transcribed by Mr. Hessels, and both texts, thus prepared, were sent to press, and printed in full. In general, the Ashmole text occupies the left-hand page, and the Dublin text the right-hand page; but, throughout the first 21 pages and the last 71 pages, the Ashmole text occupies *both* pages, to save space. The word *Ashmole* or *Dublin* is printed at the top of every page, to prevent ambiguity. The gap in the Ashmole MS. is shewn by leaving a part of pp. 24 and 32 blank, as well as an entire blank on pp. 26, 28, and 30; and further on, a gap in the Dublin MS. is similarly shewn by leaving blank a part of pp. 197 and 201, and a blank on p. 199. Considering that the exact reproduction of the MSS. is, after all, the chief duty of editors, Mr. Hessels and myself have paid very close attention to this point. The proof-sheets were carefully compared with *both* MSS. by *both* of us separately, and we venture to think that the texts are faithfully reproduced in the minutest particular. Every tag and curl has been carefully watched, and notice is given in the foot-notes whenever a word is miswritten, or corrected, or supplied in the margin. The head-lines, side-notes, and Notes were prepared by me, and I accept the responsibility for them, but they have had the great advantage of revision by Mr. Hessels. As regards the Glossary, the shape in which it now appears is due to myself; but it was chiefly prepared by Miss Wilkinson, who has kindly assisted me on other occasions (particularly in the glossaries to my selections from Chaucer), and was much augmented by Mr. Hessels, who added to it numerous words and forms, chiefly from the Dublin MS., and also underwent the great labour of verifying all the references, which will, we believe, be found to be correct throughout. The preparation of this Glossarial Index has occupied a long time, and has delayed the appearance of the edition for some years; but, now that Dr. Murray's Dictionary is passing through the press, it seemed highly desirable to make the references as full as possible.¹ We also owe to Mr. Hessels the transcript of the very brief prose "Story of Alexander," which is

¹ Mr. Stevenson's Glossary, consisting of 12 pages, is rather a poor performance, and contains several false forms. Having, for example, printed "forwart" for "forwith" in l. 15, his Glossary has "*Forwart*, to promise."

here printed for the first time, from the Dublin MS., at pp. 279—283.

§ 6. One great defect, in nearly all copies of poems in alliterative metre, is caused by the liability of the scribe to lose his place, and to miss one or more lines here and there. The Ashmole MS. is the more carefully written of the two, but (in addition to the gap contained in the lines numbered 733* to 844*), it misses ten other lines. In order to avoid much deviation from Stevenson's numbering of the lines, these extra lines are here denoted by asterisks, and are called respectively, lines 1633*, 1766*, 1767*, 2168*, 2538*, 2724*, 2842*, 2980*, 3167*, and 3267*. The Dublin MS. (in addition to the gap caused by the loss of leaf 40, ll. 3296—3356) has lost 30 lines, viz. 911, 1227, 1333, 1334, 1745, 1749, 1804, 1822, 1874—7, 2012, 2120—5, 2143, 2317, 2318, 2328, 2373, 2380, 2386, 2440, 2519, 2721, and 2808. Unfortunately, I did not discover, till too late, that Stevenson's printer missed counting a line after l. 3028, so that from that point to l. 4733, the number of each line in this edition is one less than in his. Here Stevenson misses a line which I have supplied,¹ thus bringing the numbering right. Unluckily, his printer again missed counting a line after l. 4933, so that from this point to the end the number of each line in this edition is again one less than in his. My last line (5677) is the one formerly called 5678.² This will not give much trouble to readers who refer to this volume for words mentioned by Mätzner and Stratmann, but it is best to explain how the difference arose. An old numbering, even if faulty, should be adhered to, where possible, for the sake of convenience of reference. I shall describe the MSS. more particularly.

§ 7. Respecting the Ashmole MS. 44, there is not much to be said. Nothing is known of its history previously to its acquisition by Ashmole. Mr. Stevenson dates it, no doubt correctly, at "the middle of the fifteenth century," and says that "it is on paper, written by a hand coarse, rough, and irregular, without any attempt at neatness, and without much regard to accuracy. The errors into which the scribe has fallen seem to indicate, in some instances, that

¹ Stevenson also misses a line after l. 4002, but I have called it l. 4002*.

² See also note 1 on p. 56, explaining why Stevenson's l. 1098 disappears.

he was unable to read correctly the copy which he had before him, while others would appear to shew that he wrote from dictation." I have not observed any passages of the latter kind; and I think that the above description, though fairly indicating the general condition of the MS., errs somewhat on the side of severity. I should say that the scribe aimed at being both neat and regular, though his success in attaining to these is not of the highest order. Still it is a tolerably good MS., and I have seen many that are worse. No doubt it abounds with singular errors, but the number of these has been needlessly augmented in the former edition, as if it were the editor who, in just a few instances, "was unable to read correctly the copy which he had before him;"¹ though the general carefulness and correctness of that edition may be admitted. The MS. contains at present 97 leaves, wholly occupied with the Romance, and is imperfect at the end. Each leaf contains about 60 lines, sometimes more, and sometimes less; and we thus see that two leaves are missing after leaf 12, since the missing portion amounts to 122 lines; but the following leaf is numbered 13, as the gap in the MS. seems never to have been noticed. The MS. gives us no further information of any kind, so that we are entirely thrown back upon internal evidence. We may perhaps date it about 1450, as already suggested, and I think we may also say that it was probably written in the north of England. With reference to this question of locality, Mr. Stevenson ventures to "hazard the conjecture that this romance was written in one of the north-eastern counties of the midland division of England, some district in which the Anglian dialect had originally prevailed, untinctured, however, by those peculiarities of vocabulary and construction which characterize the language of ancient Northumbria." I would venture to say, on the contrary, that the Northumbrian character of the dialect is very strongly marked. If we apply, for instance, such dialectal tests as are given in the Introduction to Morris and Skeat's *Specimens of*

¹ Examples: "forwart" for "forwith," 15; "sodeyn" for "sweyn," 417; "Anec" for "anes," 478; "Anec analey" (*sic*) for "Anecanabus," scribal error for "Anectanabus," 487; "sey hevyn" for "seyn heuyns," 1528; "to within" omitted, 1634; "odde" for "ald," 2176; "twine" for "turne," 2276; "chose" for "tholid," 2329; "herde" for "parde," 2707.

English, Part II., we easily find, in the Ashmole text, all the marks of the Northumbrian dialect. It may suffice to instance the use of the suffix *-is* in the first person singular of the indicative mood, as in *I ettilis* (15); the use of *-id* or *-yd* for all persons of the preterite indicative of weak verbs, as *I neuenyd* (76), *he hauntid* (16), *þai lerid* (36); the frequent¹ loss of *e* in the infinitive mood or the gerund, as in *rehers* (21), *to knaw* (54), *flay* (110); the use of *sall* for *shall* (21), and of *suld* for *sholde* (100); present participles in *-and*, as *feztand* (91), *comand*, *keruand* (63); the omission of *i-* or *y-* as a prefix to past participles, as in *fourmed* (3); the preservation of the final *-en* or *-yn* of past participles of strong verbs, as in *comyn* (85), *coruen* (129); the use of *þir* for *these* (262); the use of *scho* for *she* (267); the use of *thai*, *thair*, and *thaim* (very common); the use of *hethen* for *hence* (see Glossary); *fra* for *from* (139); *at* for *that* (161); &c. But it will be convenient to defer any further discussion of the dialect till after the Dublin MS. has been described.

§ 8. The Dublin MS. D. 4. 12 contains not only a portion of Alexander, but also part of a copy of the A-text of Piers the Plowman, and has already been partially described in a foot-note to my edition of Piers Plowman (E. E. T. S.), part ii. p. vi; and again, in my Notes to P. Plowman, p. 836. But I take the present opportunity of giving a more minute account of it. It is a paper MS., the size of each page being about $8\frac{3}{4}$ inches by $5\frac{3}{4}$, and each page containing about 30 lines or rather more. The first 26 leaves contain an imperfect copy of the A-text of Piers Plowman, the contents of which have been turned by the scribe into a Northumbrian dialect. This copy shews a close connection with the curious copy in the library of University College, Oxford, denoted in my collation of the A-text by the letter U, as the following selected readings from it will shew.

PROLOGUE, l. 1. *whon—sonne*] as I south went. 2. *into*] in. *A—were*] as I a scheepe were. 4. *Wende—wydene*] I went wide. 9. *leonede*] lened me. 14. *imaket*] entyred (*sic*). 32. *hit—to*] it is sene in.

¹ The scribes often write an idle final *e* where it was not meant to be sounded; this is common, for example, in the MSS. of Barbour's Bruce.

After l. 54 of the Prologue it inserts 4 lines, though they do not occur in U. These are :—

Persons with þair *procures* ¹*permutyn* þair *chirches*,¹
 With al þe besynes of þair body þe better to haue.
 Vicars on fele halue fandyn þam to done,
 Lede[r]es þai ben of lovedays & with þe lawe mellyth.

The two last lines occur also in MS. Rawlinson Poet. 137, which contains an A-text of P. Plowman of the same character.

After l. 83 of the Prologue there are two more extra lines, also not found in MS. U. These are :—

þan come *þer* a king knyghtis hym led,
 Conciens & þe king into þe halle went.

The former of these agrees with B. prol. 112.

After l. 95 of the Prologue we find another insertion of 10 lines, also not in MS. U; they resemble B. prol. 92—99, C. i. 90—94, and are as follows :—

Sum *seruis* þe kyng & hys syluer tellis
 Of wardis & of wardmutis of wayues & straves.
 Some sittis as synescallis & seruís other lordez,
 And syttis *þer* apon þair acounte þe pure to distroy,
 And haldis courtis in Cuntree like men of law,
 For to take vntrewly ayains conscience.
 Ye suffre your *parochyng*[s] spyl & paire for cuir,
 Holy kyrke ye distroy & þat is gret rewth.
 3e *serue* god vn-dwelly (*sic*) it is dred at þe last
 Þat crist in hys consistory of 3ow wol curse mony.

Line 100 of the Prologue runs thus :—

Talyours & tynkelers & tollers both,

In Passus I, the following remarkable readings are worthy of notice.

Instead of ll. 39 and 40, we find—

To shend þi sory saule be war with þair wyles.
 For l. 93—And ryde rapely to rensake þe realmes abowte.
 For l. 137—And in plente of pes *preche* þou it ofte.

The difficult word *a-liri* (A. vii. 115) appears as *af-tery*, shewing the nature of the compound. On fol. 6 of the MS. we find that Pass. i. 184 is immediately followed by Pass. vii. 71, thus shewing

¹⁻¹ Not '*preuianses*' and '*cherches*,' as printed in Pref. to Text B, p. vi, note.

a transposition of the subject-matter closely resembling that in MS. U (see Pref. to text A. p. xx). On the back of fol. 8 is another transposition, where A. vii. 216 is immediately followed by A. i. 182 (over again), whence the text is continuous down to A. vii. 45. Thus A. i. 182-4 occurs twice over, and the order of the subject-matter is: A. prol. 1—i. 184; vii. 71—216; i. 182—vii. 45. On fol. 13 occurs the passage printed in the Notes to P. Plowman, p. 836. The text ceases at A. vii. 45, at the bottom of the back of leaf 26, the rest of the poem having been lost before it was bound up with the Alexander Romance, which has lost (probably) eleven leaves¹ at the beginning.

§ 9. With the Alexander Romance, the numbering of the folios recommences. Fol. 1 begins with l. 678 of the poem (see p. 23); and, most fortunately, just 45 lines *before* the gap of two leaves occurs in the other MS. It thus supplies the missing passage in lines 723*—844* (see pp. 25, 27, 29, 31, 33), and goes on without a break to the end of leaf 39 (l. 3295, p. 197). Here leaf 40 is lost, as shown by the blanks on pp. 197, 199, and 201 (lines 3296—3356). Leaf 41 is the last of the poem; at the end of which the poem comes to a sudden stop (l. 3425, p. 205), the rest having been torn away before the MS. was last bound up. It may here be remarked that the scribe is even more careless than the scribe of the Ashmole MS., and repeatedly misses lines, viz. 911, 1227, 1333, 1334, 1745, 1749, 1804, 1822, 1874-7, 2012, 2120-5, 2143, 2317-8, 2328, 2373, 2380, 2386, 2440, 2519, 2721, and 2808. Leaf 42 is bound in upside down, and has some names and numbers written upon it, evidently part of some accounts. Among the names mentioned are:—T. Hagirston, Ric. Hagirston, *Magister* Holborn, Ric. Barow, Joh. Watson de goswyk, *Willelmus sanderson de bukton*, Joh. haß de bolsden, . . de ancroft, . . de morpet. These obviously allude to a cluster of places lying in that northern extremity of the county of Northumberland, which is so oddly considered as forming a part of the county of Durham. In Pigot's County Atlas (1831) I here find *Haggerston*, *Goswick*, *Buckton*, and *Ancroft*, and (within Northum-

¹ The first 11 extant leaves contain 680 lines. The number of lines lost at the beginning is about 677.

berland proper) *Bosedon*, now Bowsden, *Howburn*, and much further south the well-known town of Morpeth. We are thus enabled to connect the MS., beyond any doubt, with the county of Northumberland.

On leaf 43 are various scribbblings, amongst which occurs "Deleatur de libro viuientium," which is quoted from P. Plowman, A. vii. 68, but does not occur in the body of the MS.; also—"Omnibus omnia non mea sompnia dicere possum"—"Explicit liber Amen quod Cuthbertus Emeryson (?)"—and other trivial remarks. On the back of leaf 43 is a tale in Latin, beginning—" [Nar]ratio. Legitur in vita beati remegii quod quidem miles anglicus valde probus & in actibus nimis [MS. nimus] strenu[u]s ad diversa regna vadens propter acta militaria exercenda & in omnibus locis sive ubique locorum se viriliter gerens & victoriam optinens & triumphans demum Tediit laboris & reuersus est vt repatriaret ad propria propter (?) probitatem suam in sua patria enotescendam." And then the story goes on to tell how this invincible English soldier, riding through a forest, lost his way, wandered about for two days, being half famished, and finally met a dwarf a cubit high, who demanded who he was. On describing himself as an invincible but starving English soldier, the dwarf took him to a hall and his horse to a stable, and provided for the wants of both. Before parting, the dwarf addressed him, saying, "As you claim to be invincible, you must now fight me or one still smaller than me;" whereupon the soldier consented to wrestle, and was thrown prostrate on the earth. And so the story ends, being nearly illegible near its conclusion.

Leaf 44 merely contains four words¹ scribbled to try the pen, but in the same hand as that which wrote out the Romance. The back of the leaf is blank.

Leaf 45 is blank on the front, but on the back begins the short prose story printed at pp. 279—283. This occupies the rest of leaf 45, the whole of leaf 46, and the front of leaf 47. On the back of leaf 47 are three lines of music and some scribbling; and here the MS. ends.

¹ They begin with ornamental initials, and are merely long words in alphabetical order, viz. Annunziauerunt. Beneuolencia. Circumdederunt; and an illegible word beginning with D.

On a fly-leaf at the beginning are some accounts scribbled in Latin, which commence thus :—"Ludus specialis tentus apud Petyngton vndesimo die mensis septembris per (?) Magistrum Toma[m] castell priorem, R. Heryngton existente seneschallo anno domini Milesimo quingentesimo tercio," &c. This is interesting as containing an allusion to a play held at "Petyngton," which may be the modern Pittington, at no great distance from Durham, where there is now a railway station; and as giving us the date 1503. This again associates the MS. with the North of England, and leads us to suppose that the main part of the MS. was written, as would also otherwise appear, towards the close of the fifteenth century.

§ 10. The Dublin MS., like the other, shews decided marks of a Northumbrian dialect, as seen in the use of *sall* (688), of the pres. part. in *-and*, as *syl-and* (698), of *-es* in the pres. pl. indic., as *draw-es* (706), of *-yn* in the pp. of strong verbs, as *kna-w-yn* (719); &c. But the remarks prefixed to Dr. Morris's second edition (1869) of the Early English Alliterative Poems warn us how extremely difficult it is to separate the pure Northumbrian dialect from the Midland dialect, where it borders upon the Northumbrian; for the latter is often marked by the use of Northumbrian forms. We have, first of all, to consider which of the MSS. probably gives the dialect more correctly; and here I have very little hesitation in at once preferring the Ashmole MS., which ought certainly to be most considered as being at once the older, more correct, and more consistent MS. of the two. If we compare, e. g., lines 678—722 (pp. 22—25), we find that the Ashmole MS. steadily keeps to the Northumbrian forms where the Dublin MS. varies from them. Examples are:¹ *A. wald*, D. *wold* (690); *A. fra*, D. *from* (694); *A. waytis*, D. *watyn* (700); *A. mon*, D. *must* (707); *A. slike*, D. *suche* (711). And a further collation of parallel passages will amply confirm these results. We even find, though rarely, in MS. A. such a clear mark of the Northumbrian dialect as the use of *at* for *to* to denote the gerund; as in *at grete*, i. e. to weep (872), *at drede*, to dread (4294). It would take a prolonged examination to enable me to speak decisively on

¹ I here (and below) denote the Ashmole MS. by "A.," and the Dublin MS. by "D."

this point; but I am inclined to think that the translation of the Alexander Romance here printed was originally made in a pure Northumbrian dialect, in some county lying between the Humber and the Tweed; and I think it will be found to exhibit this dialect in a purer form than any other unrimed alliterative poem now extant,¹ with the obvious exception of such as are in Lowland Scotch, viz. Dunbar's poem of the Twa Maryit Women and the Wedo, and the Prophecies in MS. Kk. 1. 5 in the University Library, printed in Bernardus de Cura rei familiaris, ed. Lumby, 1870 (E. E. T. S.).

§ 11. The method here adopted, of printing the two MSS. side by side, as far as they go, not only gives fuller information than could be shewn by a mere collation, but dispenses with a great deal of explanation and emendation. It will be found, repeatedly, that one MS. corrects the other; and the reader should compare them for himself. It is sufficient to point out a few obvious instances; there are other instances which require more thought, and some where the right reading is doubtful.

In D. 681, the alliteration fails; the line is corrupt, but is given correctly in A. The contrary takes place in l. 684. In l. 687, A. misses the necessary word *is*, which we have supplied. In A. 689, the spelling *werid* is due to the trilling of the *r*; the word meant is *werd*, i. e. weird, fate. In 692, D. misses *me*, supplied from A.; on the other hand, the reading *gane* in A. is false, as shown by the failure of alliteration; we must read *done*. In D. 710, read *byhynde* for *bylyue*. In 711, the reading *hym* (D.) is better than *he* (A.). The latter half of 714 is right in D., but wrong in A. In A. 717, we may read either *angirly* or *augirly*; but the latter is intended, as shewn by the spelling *argardly* in D., and by comparing all the other passages; see *Augurd*, *Augird*, and *Augirly* in the Glossary. We find, however, *angirly* elsewhere; see *Angrile* in the same. It is needless to multiply instances, as the comparison can so easily be made. It is also worth while to add here, that further help is sometimes to be obtained by consulting the *other* alliterative translations

¹ The Troy-book, as we have it, is West-Midland (pref. p. lv); so are the Alliterative Poems edited by Morris. The Morte Arthure abounds with Midland forms.

of the Romance, viz. fragment A (printed with William of Palerne) and fragment C (printed as Alexander and Dindimus). Of these, the former illustrates ll. 23—803*, and the latter ll. 4019—4714; as noted at p. 285. For further examples of this, see the Notes.

§ 12. We come now to consider how the translator has performed his task. He has given us but little of his own, the chief original passage being the first 22 lines, which are introductory. He has also divided his work into Passus, by way of affording intervals of rest, and sometimes adds a few lines of his own at the beginnings and ends of these, such as ll. 212, 213, 214, 523, 524, &c. At such points, we may particularly observe that he uses such expressions as *þe text me recordis* (214); *as says me the text* (741*, p. 27); *as þe buke sais* (881); *For all þe first [part] is in fittis* (3473). The most explicit passage is the following (ll. 3472-3):—

“*þe lattir ende of his lyfe · me list ȝow to tell̃.
For all̃ þe first is in fittis · & folowand the lettir.*”

Here he expressly tells us that he has already arranged the preceding part of the work in Passus, and that it was “following the letter,” i. e. a more or less literal translation from the “text” which was before him. It does not appear that he has adopted any single text exclusively, but the main part of the narrative follows, with tolerable fidelity, the Latin text known as the “*Historia de Preliis*.” Of this work, I fortunately possess an excellent black-letter copy, printed at Strassburg in 1489,¹ which has been of great help and service in making out the true sense of several passages. In order to shew how the translator has treated his original, I have quoted the whole of the first Chapter of this work in the note to l. 13, on p. 285. It answers precisely to the translator’s *Primus Passus*, ll. 23—211; lines 1—22 and 212, 213 being obviously additions to it. I have also, in the note to l. 722, quoted the whole of the Latin text answering to the two missing leaves in the Ashmole MS. But, in general, each Passus of the English version contains several chapters of the Latin text; thus *Passus Secundus* is equivalent to the second,

¹ In my Notes to Alexander, fragment A (printed with William of Palerne) and fragment B (Alexander and Dindimus), I have quoted a copy in the University Library, printed in 1490.

third, fourth, and fifth chapters of the Latin, and ends at the same point as the fifth chapter, lines 521-4 being additional; see note to l. 214, p. 289. All the more important elucidations of the English version, as obtained by help of the Latin text, are pointed out in the Notes. But it is necessary to add that the "*Historia de Preliis*" was not the sole text which our translator consulted, and it is tolerably clear that another source was the Latin version of the story of Alexander by Julius Valerius, as shewn in the Notes. Some expressions can be explained by help of the Latin text, called *The Letter of Alexander to Aristotle* (*Epistola Alexandri ad Aristotelem*). A copy of this is extant in MS. Cotton, Nero D. 8, fol. 169, and is printed in *Narratiunculæ Anglice Conscriptæ*, ed. Cockayne, 1861, pp. 51—62; see notes to lines 3782, 3926, 3932, 3944. For further information, I must refer the reader to my preface to William of Palerne, &c., pp. xxxiv and xxxvi, and the notes to the same, pp. 236—249; the preface to Alexander and Dindimus, and the notes to the same; and the notes to the present volume. The development of the Story of Alexander is a most difficult problem, and cannot be fully explained without long and patient research. An excellent book on the subject has just appeared, written by M. Paul Meyer, with the title "*Alexandre le Grand dans la Littérature Française du Moyen Âge*," published at Paris in 1886. It is full of new information, drawn from manuscript sources, and is the more important because many of the MSS. are still inedited. I may here mention, for example, that M. Meyer tells us (p. 294) that the English rimed version of King Alysaunder, as printed in vol. i. of Weber's *Metrical Romances*, is chiefly taken from the inedited *Roman de Toute Chevalerie*, by Eustace of Kent.

It is proper to add that there are some words and phrases which point to the occasional use of sources which I have not found; cf. note to l. 5268. Both MSS. are often corrupt, and are merely poor copies of older MSS. The Dublin MS. is, usually, the more careless of the two, but occasionally corrects the other; and the fact that one of the MSS. is often correct where the other is obviously wrong, is not a little curious. As regards proper names, the misspellings are often of the most extraordinary character, and it is useless to guess

at them without at any rate consulting the chief Latin text; and even in that they frequently assume the most singular forms. In the English text, for example, the goddess Ceres becomes a god named *Serenon* (4510), Bacchus appears as *Bary* (4506), Hercules as *Arculious* (4068), and Cyrus as *Cusys* (3219).

§ 13. As to the date and dialect of the original composition, nothing is really known. We can only conjecture that the original was probably written in a pure Northumbrian dialect rather than in West-Midland (but even this may be wrong), and that the version belongs to the former half or to the middle of the fifteenth century. When the barrenness of this period is complained of, as is not unfrequently the case, we ought to remember that, in addition to the poems by known authors, it is probable that such anonymous poems as the *Morte Arthure*, the *Troy-book*, and the two versions¹ of *Alexander* belong to the same period, and compare favourably with the poems by Chaucer's successors. I suspect that the dates usually assigned to other alliterative poems are often too early; and that, for example, the date which I formerly suggested for the other fragments of the *Alexander Romance*, viz. 1340-50, should be placed later. At the same time, this is a point of extreme difficulty, as the MS. copies are all of later date than the period of the original compositions, and there is no available evidence by which we can correctly judge of the intervals to be assigned.

In the Glossarial Index, we have endeavoured to include every form that occurs in both the MSS., as well as to furnish a complete index of all the proper names. The poem seems to me to be of unusual difficulty. Many of the words could only be correctly explained by collating both MSS.; and others only by comparing the original Latin. Several forms are thus ascertained to be corrupt or inaccurate; and, in consequence, in some passages where there is but one MS. and no clearly corresponding passage in the original, it is very difficult to be quite certain that the correct sense has been given. We consequently offer the explanations for what they are worth; though they have cost a great expenditure of time and labour.

¹ The former is that epic of tremendous length, of which fragments A and B are short relics; and the latter is the version here printed.

ERRATA AND CORRIGENDA.

(The more important corrections are marked with an asterisk.)

- P. 9, l. 281. The stop after 'thrid' should be raised, like the rest.
 *P. 15, l. 477. *For the second þe, read na.* See note on p. 290.
 P. 18, l. 554. *Insert a hyphen in Thonere-thrastis.*
 „ l. 562. *The same in bale-fyre.*
 *P. 19, l. 580. *For schoutid read schontid.* See note on p. 290.
 P. 20, l. 606. *Read The tane, to breue [i. e. describe], &c.*
 „ l. 627. *Insert a comma after wele.*
 P. 29, l. 779*. *Alter the slanting stroke to a raised full-stop, as in other lines.*
 P. 32, l. 740. *Insert a comma after he; and transfer the marks of quotation so as to precede hedirward instead of &.*
 P. 37, l. 798. *Read þai [þar] wod.* See note on p. 293.
 *P. 48, l. 988. *Insert a hyphen in at-flee.* See *Atflee* in the Glossary, and in Murray's Dictionary.
 P. 50, ll. 1009, 1110. *Insert hyphens in topp-haris and here-wedis.* See note on p. 294.
 *P. 60, l. 1175. *For wayne read wayue.*
 P. 72, l. 1370. *Insert a comma after nere.*
 P. 91, l. 1650. *Insert a comma after &, and alter the stop after wald to a comma.* See note on p. 298.
 P. 99, l. 1767. *Insert a hyphen in ouer-sheet.* See note, p. 298.
 P. 101, footnotes 1 and 4. *The MS. has a stroke over the final n in eughen, dyden.*
 P. 109, footnote 1. *The MS. has a tag to the final letter of acoount.*
 P. 110, l. 1970. *For wella⁷ read wella⁸.*
 P. 124, footnote 1. *The MS. has a stroke over the final n in layn.*
 P. 132, fourth side-note. *For Alexander read Strasagoras.* See note to l. 2312, p. 302.
 P. 147, l. 2519. There should be a line of dots here, to shew that a line is omitted.
 *P. 164, l. 2811. *Insert [of] before my warke.*
 *P. 176, l. 2995. *Insert [in] after fettild, and add a semi-colon at the end of the line.* See the reading of the Dublin MS.
 P. 180, footnotes 4 and 8. *There is a stroke in the MS. over the n in the words ont and spilken.*
 P. 185, l. 3104. The stop at the end of the line should perhaps be a comma.
 *P. 204, l. 3426. *For wayne read wayue.*
 *P. 234, l. 4337. *For bewenes read beweues.*
 P. 236, l. 4417. *Insert a comma after sottis.* See note on p. 311.
 *P. 241, l. 4590. *Delete the commas after þe and lede.*
 *P. 242, l. 4606. *Delete the comma at the end of the line.*
 „ l. 4620. *Insert a comma at the end of the line.*
 P. 243, l. 4640. *Delete the comma after teches.* (See note, p. 312.)
 „ footnote 1. *The MS. has a stroke over the n in On.*
 P. 244, l. 4658. *Insert [in] after settis.*
 „ l. 4665. *Alter the stop at the end to a comma.*
 P. 247, fourth side-note. *Read—Alexander comes to trees full of fruit. (The trees of the Sun and Moon appear at l. 5003.)*
 P. 268, fifth side-note. *For The snakes read Some beasts.* See note to l. 5433, p. 315.
 „ l. 5428. *For wond read woud.* See *Woud* in the Glossary.
 *P. 329. 'Baisting' means 'abasement,' not 'boasting.' It is put for 'baising' (abasing), by confusion with 'baist' (abased). Cf. l. 466.
 N.B.—A few other suggestions for amending the text will be found in the Notes and Glossarial Index.

[Romance of Alexander the Great.]

[MS. Ashmole 44; fol. 1.]

WHen folk ere festid^l & fed^l · fayn wald^l þai here After meals,
 Sum farand þing^s efter fode · to fayn þare her[t], men like to hear a
 Or þai ware fourmed oñ fold^l · or þaire fadirs of^{er}. story.
 Sum is leue to lythe · þe lesing of Sayntis, 4 Some like to hear
 þat lete þer lifis be lorne · for oure lordis¹ sake; legends of saints,
 And sum has langing^s of lufe · lays to herken, others lays of
 How ledis for þaire lemmans · has langor endure^l. love,
 Sum couettis & has comforth · to carpe & to lestyñ 8
 Of curtaissy of kny³thode · of craftis of armys,
 Of kyngis at has conquirid^l · & ouer-comyñ landis. others stories of
 Sum of wirschip I-wis · slike as þaī wyse lattis, kings and
 And sum of wantoñ werkis · þa þat ere wild-hedit^l; conquerors,
 Bot if þai wald oñ many wyse · a wondire ware it els;
 For as þaire wittis ere with-in · so þer wiH folowis.
 And I forwith 3ow aH · ettillis to schewe I will try and tell
 Of ane Emperoure þe a3efullest · þat euer armys hauntid^l, you about the
 þat was þe athill Alexandire · as þe buke tellis, 17 most renowned
 þat a3te euyn as his awyñ · aH the werd ouire. emperor
 For he recouerd quills he regnyd · þe regions aH clene, Alexander.
 And all rialme & þe riches · in-to þe rede est. 20
 I saH rehers, & 3e wiH, renkis · rekyn 3our tongis,
 A remnant of his rialte · & rist quen vs likis.

¶ Oute in þe erth of Egipt · enhabet vinquile In the land of
 þe wysest wees of the werld · as I in writt fynd^l. 24 Egypt lived the
 For þai þe mesure & þe mett · of aH þe mulde couthe, wisest men.
 þe sise of aH þe grete see · & of þe gryñ wawys;

¹ MS. lord = lordis *perhaps*.

They knew the
courses of the
stars,

Of þe ordere of þat odde home · þat ouer þe aire hingis
Knew þe kynd, & þe curses · of þe clere sternys, 28
Of Articus the aghif · tre¹ airis & opire

[Fol. 1 b.]

and the signs.

Of þe fold & of þe firmament · wele þe fete cuthe;
And Antarticus also · þat all² apoñ turnys,
þe pasage of þe planettis · þe poyntis & þe sygnes. 32
þai ware þe kiddest of þat craft · knawyn in þaire tyme,
And þe sotellest vndere son · segis in þaire lyfe.

All men heard of
their lore.

þus ware þai breued for þe best · as þe buke tellis;
All þai lerid of þat³ lare · þat it lere wald. 36
As wide as þe werd was · went worde of þaire teching,
Of sorcery & slike werkis · sleztis enogh.

Their king was
Anectanabus.

And þe kyng of þat contre · was a clerke noble,
þe athelest ane of þe werl · & Anec was hatten. 40
He was wyse enoȝ · wurdis to reken,
When he þe heuyn beheld · of lede[s] opoñ lyfe;

He knew all the
japes of
geometry.

þe iapis of aȝ gemetri · gentilli he couth,
And wele as Aristotill · þe artis aȝ seuyn. 44
þer preued neuer nane his prik · for passing of witt,
Plato nor Piktagaras · ne Prektane him seluen.

As he sat one day
on the dais,
news came that
Artaxerxes, king
of Persia, had
invaded his land.

Emang his duykis on a day · as he oñ dese syttis,
þaȝ was him bodword vnblyth · broȝt to þe sale, 48
þat Artaxenses was armed · with þe men of his rewine,
þe proude king⁴ of Persy · to pase him agayȝ.

He fills a brazen
bowl with water,

þoȝe he þa sawis herd say · ȝit samyd he na princis,
Ne ost ordand he nane · of na kyd knyztis, 52
Bot airis euen furth him ane · & entirs his chambre,
To know by his clergi · þe come of his faa.

and invokes the
spirits.

He takis a Boll of bras · burneschid fuȝ clene,
And fuȝ he fillis it of the flode · at feȝ fra þe heuen.
On hȝt in his a hand⁴ · baldis a wand, 57
And kemely be coniurisons · callis to him spiritis.
In-to þis water as he waitis · was he ware sone

¹ So in MS.; *read* athille · thre. ² MS. *repeats* all.

³ MS. 'þat o,' but o is expuncted.

⁴ MS. hand hand, the latter underlined.

- Of his enmys in þat Element · ane endles nombre ; 60 He sees his
 He saȝe þam in þe hiȝe see · sailand to-gedire, enemies sailing
 Was neuer sene slike a some · vnder þe son bemys. [Fol. 2.]
 Carrygis comand he knew · keruand þe ithis, on the sea.
- Dromonds dryfes ouer þe depe · with dukis & Erles, 64
 Gales & grete schipis · fuȝt of grym wapens, He beholds a
 And fuȝt of breneid bernes · bargis a hundreth, great navy.
- Of slik a naue is noy · to here or to teȝt.
 For all þe largenes of lenth · at he luke myȝt, 68
 Slik was þe multitude of mast · so mekil & so thiȝe, The masts were
 þat aȝ him þoȝt bot he treis · a hare wod it semyd. as thick as trees
 At þe enteris of Egipt · as Anec had beden, in a wood.
- Ware peris of his prouynce · & princes of his cytes, 72
 Was comandid of þaire kyng · to kepe þa landis,
 þat nane aproche it to paire · of Persy ne othire.
 þan was a wardaȝ ware · oute in þe wale stremys
 Of all þe naue & þe note · I neuenyd be-fore ; 76 One of his princes
 Laȝt liȝtly his ledis · & leuys his warde, sees the fleet
 Comes to courte to þe kyng · & oȝ kneys fallis, come,
- Anec bi his awyn name · he onane gretis, and tells
 Sais, “ȝare þe now ȝapely · or ȝild vp þi rewme ; 80 Anectanabus.
- Artaxenses is at hand · & has ane ost reryd,
 And resyn vp with aȝ his rewme · to ride vs agayȝ ;
 For he him-self is oȝ þe se · with sicȝe a somme armed, “ Artaxerxes
 þat any hathill vnder heuen · ware hardy to rekyn. 84 comes with a
 For þer is comyȝ with him knyȝt[es]¹ · of landis dyuerse, great navy ;
- Segis of many syde · oute of sere remys,
 þe perseyns & a pupiȝ · þat parthy² is callid, Persians and
 Men of Mesepotayme · & of Mede bathe, 88 Medes,
- Of Syre & of Sychim · a selle nounbre,
 Of Capidos & Caldec · kene meȝ of armes,
 Feȝt feȝtand folke · þat Faire we caȝ, Cappadocians
 þe Arrabiens & all þa · [of] þat origyne, and Chaldeans,
 Bernys out of Batary · batails arayed, [Fol. 2 b.] 92
- And opire out of þe orient · many od hundrethe.” and others of
 the east.”

¹ MS. knyȝt.² MS. panthy.

- ¶ þen Anecc onane riȝt · efter þire wordis,
The king laughs. A lowde laȝter he loȝe · & to þe lede said, 96
“Haue þou na care,” *quod* þe kyng · “bot kene to þe
marche,
As I have demyȝd þe to do · & dred þou na ferryre;
For soth it is vnsemely¹ · slike sawis of a prynee.
He reproves the prince, and accuses him of cowardice. I kan noȝt knaw at þou carpis · as a knyȝt sulȝ, 100
Bot as a frek at ware ferid · & feynes riȝt now.
Ert þou noȝt hurtles & hale? · lat noȝt þi hert faile.
For vertu vailes noȝt aȝ · if þou auaied worthe, 103
Emang² þe multitude of meȝ · quare mane ere togeder,
Bot þer aboute as þai ere blend · with bignes of wiȝ.
If þai be folke bot a fa · oft tydis þam þe better.
Or elis wate þou noȝt wele · þe witles berne,
How it is comonly carped · in contries a-boute, 108
“Will not a lion þat aneþy leon · þat ouer þe land rynnys,
Wiȝ make to fange to þe fliȝt · & flay many hertis?”
With þat þe seȝge³ all him selfe · silis to his chambre,
And in þe brasen boȝ · fuȝ [of] blak watere 112
He makes little ships of wax,
He shapis him of shire wax · litiȝ schipis many,
And ȝapely ȝurkid in his hand · a ȝerd of a palme.
þen coȝ he chater & enchant · with aȝ his chefe miȝtis,
A-vysid him in þe vesseȝ · & was auaied sone, 116
and sees how the Persians are defeating his own men. How þe powere out of Persy · pellid doune his knyȝtis,
And how his lund sulȝ be lost · withouten lett mare.
[Vol. 3] When he was ware of þis wathe · how it worthe sulȝ,
þan wendis he wiȝtly furth · & his wede changis, 120
Then he disguises himself as a clerk,
Cledde him aȝ as a clerke · & his croune shauys,
And with a bytand blade · he his bered voydis.
þen takis to him tresour · & trusses in baggis,
As many Besandis oȝ his bake · as he bereȝ miȝt, 124
and takes with him all things that he requires. And opir necessari notis · as nedis to his craftis,
To sike salmary dangeȝ · as him self vyses.
He toke *trouimes* him with · to tute in þe sternes,

¹ MS. vnsemely.² MS. multitudo.³ MS. ‘seȝge,’ but the line is marked for correction.

Astralabus¹ algate · as his arte wald, 128
 Quadrentis² coruen aH of quyte · siluyre fuH quaynte,
 Mustours & mekil quat · mare þen a littiH.
 When he was *graped* with his gere · a gladen he waytis,
 And passis furþe at a Posterne · preuayl alane, 132 He slips out at a
postern gate,
 Furþe on his fete withouten fole · he passis his way,
 Vn-wetandly to any wee · þat wont in his wanes.
 þus airis he out of Egipte · & his erde leuys, and leaves Egypt.
 Fled for ferd of his fais · fere fra his kythis, 136
 It was na bote him to bide · ne batiH to zelle ;
 For all his kyngdome he knew · suld be kast vnder.
 Fra þe partis of Persy · he past bot a littiH,
 And euyn so þurze Ethyope · & þar him eft cletis, 140
 aH his liche in lyn clape · for ledis suld trowe He clothes him-
self as a prophet,
 And all þe puple persayue · a prophete³ he were.
 þen metis he furthe to Messadoñ · fuH vñ-mete gatis, and goes to
Macedonia.
 And quen he come to þat kith · as þe chance tellis, 144
 Oft with his instrumentis out · he openly deuynes,
 And noþer hild he it ne hid · bot here qua sa likid.
 Bot þan was methe⁴ for to mele · þurze men of his burz,
 þat he by-hind him at hame · withoute hede leuyd. 148 [Fol. 3 b.]
 Slik care kindils in his curte · quen þai þer kyng myssid, His subjects miss
him, and lament.
 þat it ware tere any tonge · of þar tene to reken ;
 Princes of his palas · preses in-to chambre,
 To laite þar lord at was lost · with latis vn-blythe; 152
 Kairis in-to closettis · knyztis & Erlis, Knights and
earls seek their
king.
 Sekand þar souerayn · with many salt terys ;
 Barons & bachelers · balefully gretis,
 Swiers swemyle · swouned ladys, 156
 And many was þe bald berne · at banned þar quile,
 þat euer he dured þat day · vndede opoñ erthe.
 Bot quen þai wist he was went · & wald nozt be foun, Finding he is
gone,
 Couth þai na bote þam ebland · how best for to wirke,
 Bot silis to ser Sirraphis · at sittis in his trone, 161 they ask counsel

¹ MS. Astralalus.² MS. In adrentes.³ MS. preplete.⁴ or meche.

of Serapis their
god.

þat was þar god alpire-graythist · on þe ground samen.
Him þai supplied & soȝt · & him ensence castis,
Honourd him with offyrings · & elkend him fayre, 164
þat he suld say þam þe sothe · & sorely þam teche
Queder þaire kyng was becomen · at þar care kyndils.

Serapis says,
“Your king is
gone.

þan sayd Syraphis him selfe · he sayd þam þis wordis :
“Anec, ȝour athill kyng · is out of his awyn land, 168

He knew the
Persians would
conquer.

For Artaxenses aȝe · is aȝ him ane foundid,
þe proude kyng of Persee · þat passes vs a-gaynes.
Fuȝ wele he wist, or he went · quat suld worþe efter,
And aȝ þe fourme of þe fare · þat faȝ ȝow be-houys.
For aȝ þe erth of Egipt · fra end vñ-to othire 173
Bees conquirid & ouercomyn · clene alto-gedre.

[Fol. 4.]

Artaxerxes will
come and take the
kingdom.

þe puple out of Perse · is parvaid aȝ samen ;
þe kyng is comand fuȝ kene · with his kene ostis, 176
þat saȝ oure renkis aȝ rayme · & oure rewme bathe,
And we be aȝ at þare wiȝ · þus is windis schapen.
Sen it is sett to be soo · & slipe it ne may,
Ne schewiȝ to be na noȝire schap · ne we to schount
nouthire, 180

But cease from
your sorrow.

Bot geȝe þaim vp þe girdliȝ · vs gaynes noȝt ellis.
Bot seses, *seris*, of ȝour syte · & soruȝes na mare ;
For *certayn*,” quod Syraphis · “my-selfe I it knawe,
ȝour king saȝ in a noȝire kithe · kast out his elde, 184
And come a-gayn eft ȝonge man · ȝit to his rewme.

Your king will
yet avenge you,

þan sall þat victoure ȝow venge · on ȝour vile fais,
And þe province of Persee · purely distruye, 187

and regain the
kingdom.”

And gett agayn his avyn gronde · at he forgais nowe,
And ane of þe oddist Emperours · of þe werde worthe.”
¶ When he þis talis had tald · þen tuke þai be-lyfe,

They raise an
image of black
stone to
Anectanabus.

And efter Anec on-ane · ane ymage gert make ;
þe buke sais, of blake stane · aȝ þe bode ouyr, 192
With corone & with conyschantis · as it a kyng were.
Quen it was perfite & piȝt · a place þai it wayted,
And stallid him in a stoute stede · & stizthid him faire.
Lordis lift him on loft · & lawe to him bowiȝ, 196

In reuerence of þe riche kyngt · at had þer rewme gydið.

Quen he was semely vp set · with septour in hand,

þen ledis at ware lettird · oñ lawe at his feet¹

At the feet of the
image is written
the prophecy of
Serapis.

AH þe sawis of þaire Syre · as Siraphis tald, 200

þare gañ þai graithly þam grane · in golden lettirs,

AH þe wordis at he þaim werpid · of þaire ware kyng.

þare þai wrate þam I-wis · as þe buke tellis,

Supposand þaim in sum tyme · for sothe to be knawen,

And men to make of þam mynd · euer-mare efter. 205

Be þat þaire enmes þar erde · was entird with-in,

The Persians
attack them;

þe powere oute of Persee · with many proude ostes;

Bot of þar batails to brefe · it botis me na ferrire. 208

For aH þai conquirid elene · þis cithe at þaire wiH,

[Fol. 4 b.]
and conquer.

And Anec² is aH his ane · ferre of his awyn landis,

With-in þe merris of Messedoyñ · þar na mañ him knewe.

Bot will 3e herken hende · now saH 3e here 212

I will tell you
more about
Anectanabus.

How he kide him in þe courete · & quayntid him with

ladis.

¶ Secundus passus Alexandri.

Syre, it be-tid oñ a tyme · þe text me recordis,
þat þe mode kyng of Messedone · with mekiH
nounbre,

þat was sire Philip þe fers · farne out of toune, 216

King Philip
leaves Macedon
to fight his foes.

For to fezt with his fais · out of fere landis.

Quen he was boune oute of burze · & his bake turned,

As tite as Anec him amed · out of his awyn kythe,

He paste vp to þe Palais · & preualy entirs, 220

þat he mizt lend þare on loft · & luke on þe qwene.

Sone as him selfe was in þe sale · & saze hire with eze,

Anectanabus
arrives, and
salutes queen
Olympias.

He beheld Olympadas · þat honourable lady;

Hire bewte bitis in his brest · & his bodi thrillis, 224

And drifes thurze his depe hert · as he ware dart-
wondid.

¹ MS. fortes; cf. 'at his feete' in Alex. A. 570. ² MS. Anes.

- þe lele lawid in hire lofe · as leme dose of gledis,
Put vp his hand to his hare · & heldid it bot littiH.
- “Hail, queen!” he said. “Haile, modi qwene of Messidoyne” · he maister-like
said; 228
- He did not call her madam. þare deyned him na daynte · ‘madame’ hire to caH,
Be-cause he knew him a kyng · he carpid on þis wyse.
For if he come as A clerke · with a croune schauyn,
And dize as a Doctour · in drabland wedis, 232
3it aH þe erth of Egipt · had he bene aire ouire.
- The queen replies, “Hail, master!” þan ansvars him þe qwene · with fuH myld speche,
“Haile, maister,” quat þat myld · & made him to sytt
On a sege hire be-syde · of silkyn clathis, 236
And þar hire spakid with his speche · & spird of him
wordis.
- She asks if he is of Egypt. Quen he was sete in his sete · þat semely qwene
Ai of Egipt erd · enquirid if he werz,
þo3t him like of þat lede · be langage & othire; 240
- [Fol. 5.] For-þi scho wetis if he wald · wete hire to say.
“A! athel qwene,” quat Anee · “ai be þou ioyed!
If þou a wirschipfuH worde · has werpid & spoken,
A riath roune þou me redis¹ · a resoñ of blis, 244
Quen þou mynnys of þat marche · & with þi mouth tellis.
- There dwell the wisest men of the earth. For þare enhabetis in þat erd · þat þou are sayð.
þe wisest wees in þis werld · þe welken vndire.
For þu can swyth of a sweuyñ · all þe swepe teH, 248
Wheþire it be sele or soroze · in a sete quile,
- They can read the stars, and understand the song of birds. And þai can certifi & se · by sygnes of þe heuyñ,
Quat sall be-fall a-pon fold · with-inen a fewe 3erys.
Sum vndirstandis in a stounde · þe steuen of þe briddis,
To say þe by þar sapience · quat þar sange menys; 253
Sum can þi consaile declare · þose þou it carpid neuire,
þe poyntis of all þi preuates · pertly can schewe.
Sum can þe brefe be-life · þe birth of þine childire, 256
Be it hee, be [it] scho · haly þare werdes.
- I myself have some skill. And if I say it my-selfe · slik sotellte I haue,

¹ MS. redis a redis; the two latter words underlined.

Sa clere a witt & sa clene · my creatoure I lofe,
þat all þe notis at I neuyn · nobly I cañ, 260

As any prophet a-perte · to proue þow þe sothe."

Quen he þire sawis had sayd · he in his sege lened,
In stody stiġ as a stane · & starid in hire face,
Beheld haterly þat hend · þat had his hert percid, 264
With depe desire of delite · ay on þat dere waytis.

He stares on
the queen's
face.

Sone as hire selfe it sawe · at he hire sa behaldis,
þen scho talkis him to · & titely him fraynes :

When she notices
this, she asks
him of what he is
thinking.

"Quare-on muse ȝe sa mekiġ, maister?" scho sayd; 268

"ȝe behald me sa hogely · quare-on is our mynd?"

"My frely fode," quod þe freke · "noȝt bot þe werdes
Of my gracious goddis · þe grettest on erde. 271

"I am thinking
of what my gods
have foretold."

þai haue talġ me be-for þis tyme · þat now I trew fynd,
How I suld¹ lenge in a land · & loke on a qwene."

þan out of his bosoñ he brayd · a blesand table

[Fol. 5 b.]
He takes out a
table,

Of Enour & of othire þingis · odly fourmed,

Of bras & of brynt gold · & o[f] briȝt siluer, 276

þat thre serclis sere · in it selfe had.

marked with
three circles.
In the first stood
the twelve 'under-
standings';
in the second, the
twelve signs;
in the third, the
sun and moon.

In þe first compas I ken · as me þe claus tellis,

Stude þe xij vnderstandings · stoutly engrauen.

In þis opir draȝt ware deuysid · a dusan of bestis, 280

And semely sett was in þe thrid · þe soñ & þe mone.

Sethen he clekis out of a cas · vij clere sternes

To tell him takens of þe tymes · & talis of our werdis;

And vij stele-graun stanys · & stoute opire tway, 284

þat wald for hurte or for harme · any hathill kepe.

þus as he take furth his toylis · & his trammys² schewis,

As he shews his
implements,
the queen asks
him to tell her
when Philip was
born.

"If I saġ lefe on þi lare" · quod þe leue qwene,

"Say me þe day & þe same ȝere · & þe selfe tyme 288

Of þe birth of þe bald kyng · þat I best lufe."

þan answare Anec onane · sayd, "is þar oȝt ellis

At ȝe wald, hend, of me here · or at ȝoure hert willis?

He says he can
tell her anything.

For any cas þat is to com³ · to know if þe likis, 292

¹ MS. I suld I suld; *the two latter words underlined.*

² MS. trammys.

³ MS. con.

- I saH as namely ȝow neuyn · as it ware nowe done.”
- “Then tell me what shall happen to me and Philip.” “þan will I,” *quod* þe wale qwene · “ȝe wete me to say, Quat me & Philip · sall faH vs be-twene.
For, how he fra þe bataiH · bernys me tell, 296
þen wiH he wed anopire wife · & wayfe me for ever.”
- “He will not long have another queen, but will return to you.” “Nay, noȝt for ay,” *quod* þe freke · “þar haue þai fals spoken ;
Neuer þe latter, or oȝt lange · saH lym̄ as þou sayd.¹
Bot ȝit I fynd, for all his fare · fleme he saH þe toȝire,
And wild ȝour self to wiH · nyH he so wiH he.” 301
þan was a-wondird of his wordis · þe worthe lady,
[Fol. 6.] Be soȝt sekirly þis sire · if he safe vouchiH,
þat scho myȝt weterly wete · þe wiH of all þingis,
He continues, Quatkyn poynt or plyte · predestend hire were. 305
“One of our greatest gods will descend to you.” “AthiH qwene,” *quod* Anec · “as I am enfourmek,
Ane of þe grettist of oure godis · of grace & of miȝt.
I fynd, or it be fere · to² fleschely þe know, 308
And efter in all aduersites · is amed þe to help.”
þan sayd Olympadas · “now, honourable maister,
“In what form will he come?” I be-seke þe, my sire · if þou me say walH,
Quatkyn fyȝour on fold · or fourme at he beris, 312
þat demyd is or destaned · þis dede for to worche.”
“þat wiH I wele,” *quod* þe wee · “& noȝt a word leȝe.
“He is of middle age.” þis myȝty god at I me[ne] · is of a mediH age,
Noȝt of ȝouth nor of eld · nor ȝerris to many, 316
Bot euyn so be-twene twa · & to [mekyll] of nouthire.
He has two horns on his head, How he is merkid & made · is meruaile to neuyn,
With—tachid in his for-toȝ— · twa tufe³ hornes ;
A herH as a beson · with thyn bred haris, 320
and a mouth like a mastif. A mouthe as a mastif⁴ hunde · vn-metely to shaw.
Bot, dame, if he be þus diȝt · drede þe neuer þe more,
Bot ȝe be buxsom & bayne · & boune to his wiH.
Be nyȝter-tale he saH þe neȝe · þis note to begyn, 324

¹ Line 300 precedes l. 299 in the MS., but they are marked for transposition.

² MS. to þe ; *with* þe underlined.

³ haris inserted here, but struck out.

⁴ MS. mastis.

- And 3e be merryd neuer þe mare · bot mete him in sweynn." Be not afraid."
- "Now certayn, sire," sayd þe qwene · "selly me thinke. "If this turn out true,
Bot may I se þis be sothe · at 3e me say here,
- Noȝt as a prophet ne a prest · I prays saH þi selfe, 328 I will honour thee as a god."
- Bot rehers þe as hieȝe gode · & hie þe for euire." Anectanabus takes his leave.
- With þat rysis vp þe renke · & his rowme lefys,
Lazt leue at þe qwene · for a litiH quile,
- Gase him deune be þe grecis · a-gayn fra þe sale, 332
- Furthe to make his maistryse · & mose in his arte.
- ¶ þus passis he fra þe place · to proue his sleȝtis, [Fol. 6 b.]
Silis furth all him selfe · þe cyte with-outen,
- Drafe in-to a depe dissert · & drewe vp herbis, 336 He goes into a desert, and picks herbs.
- þe chosest for enchantement · at he chese couthe.
- Quen he had gedird his grese · & grune þaim esundire,
For Iapis of his gemetry · þe ious out he wrengis,
- Erne tiH exorȝise · & ethis euer elike, 340
- þat it suld worthe as he wald · & oñ na way faile.
- He clatird oñ coniurisons · & calid to him deuyls, He begins to conjure,
And aH þe inchesoñ of his charme · with þat þe chese that the queen
qwene
- þe same nyȝt in hire slep · suld se with hire eȝen 344 may see Ammon in her sleep.
- Amoñ hire awyn god · in hire armes ligge,
And drewe at he didd hire swa · & quen he done hadd,
- þan suld he say to hire-selfe · sadly þire wordis, 347
- "Now has þou, woman, I-wys · with-in þi twa sydis
Consayued him at in aH þi care · þi cors saH defend."
- þis ilk euyn ouer-ȝede · & arly oñ þe morne, Next morning the queen tells her dream.
- As arly as þe riche qwene · was resyn fra sleȝe,
- þan efter Anec¹ oñ-ane · scho al aboute sendis, 352
- Takis him betwene þam twa · tald him hire sweuyn.
- "3a," quod he, "comly qwene · I couthe, & þou wald He asks to be allowed to have a room in the palace.
Preualy in þi palais · lat me a place haue,
- Make þe to se þe same gode · & þi-selfe wakanȝ, 356
- Face to face aH his fourme · & his effecte clene.

¹ MS. Anes.

þis grete god fuH of grace · saH glide to þi chambre,
 In a drefuH deuys · a dragons fourme,
 And þan þe figour of a freke · he saH take eftire, 360
 And preuaily in þat part · a-pere 3owe be-forne."

The queen
 grants it.

þan answare him þe swete quene · & sone him it
grantis,

[Fol. 7.]

"Sire, chese þe a chambre · quare þe chefe þinkis,
 Nowþire myne awen ne na nothire · god lat þe noȝt spare,
 Or any place at 3ow plece · my palas with-in. 365

"If it turn out
 true, I will
 cherish thee as if
 thou wert my
 child."

For may þou hald me þis hest · as þou here tellis,
 And profe þus in my presens · as a propire sothe,
 þen saH I cherische þe with chere · as þou my child were,
 Loute þe louely & loue · aH my lyfe days." 369

He chooses a
 place for himself.

"Graunt mercy," *quod* þe grete clerke · to þe gude lady,
 Thankis¹ hire fuH thraly · & þen forth wendis
 To loke & layte him a loge · *quare* he lenge myȝte,² 372
 And buske him a bedsted · *quare* him best likid.
 Qwen it was metyn to þe merke · þat men ware to ryst,
 And folke was on þaire firste slepe · & it was furth
euyus,

Next night he
 enchants himself
 into the form of
 a dragon,

þan Anec oñ ane · his artis he fandis, 376
 And changid by enchantmentis · his chere aH to-gedire.
 þer worthid he by his wiche-craft · in-to a wild dragon,
 And to the ladi lere · he lendid in haste,

and flies to the
 queen.

Flizand in his fethire-hames · & ferly fast sletis, 380
 And in a braide, or he blan · he þe bed entris.

He then becomes
 a man again.

Quen he was³ laide be-lyfe · his liknes he changis,
 Worthis agayn to a wee · fra a worme turnys.
 þen kisses he kenely þe quene · & clappis in armes,
 Langis sare to þe layke · & on-loft worthis. 385
 Quen he had wroȝt aH his wiH · hire wame þen he
 touches,

He prophesies
 that her son will
 conquer all the
 world.

And with a renyst reryd · þis reson he said, 387
 "þis concepcion with kyngis · sal be callid here-after

¹ MS. Thangis, altered to Thankis.

² MS. myȝtes. ³ MS. he was he was, but corrected.

A verra victor a-vansid^t · *with* aH þe vayne werde.”

þus be-gylid he this gude wyfe · & makⁱs hire to wene

It ware na gett of na gome · bot of god ane.

Qwen þe day-raw rase · he rysis be-lyfe, 392 At daybreak he leaves her.

Lendis a-lande fra þe loft · & left hire *with* child^l.

Sone as hire bele gun bolne · aH hire blee changis,¹

So was scho ferd^t & a-friz^t · a ferly ware ellis. 395 [Fol. 7 b.]

To be bonden *with* barne · mekill bale to hire nezehis,

For it & Philip hire fere · o-ferrom was sybb.

þan Anec hire awyn clerke · scho on-ane callis, The queen laments, and asks for advice.
“Lo, maister, slike a myschefe!” · & maynly hire pleynes.

“I dred þat I nere dee · bot 3e me deme sone 400

Quat me is beste of þis case · if euer þe kyng turne.”

“Be nozt a-bayste,” quod þe berne · “ne a-bleyd “No harm shall come to you ;
nothire,

þare saH na chance þe chefe · þe charge of a pese.

For Amoñ oure athiH gode · saH aH-way þe helpe, 404 Ammon will aid you.”

And kepe þe fuH careles · if any cas fallis.”

¶ Quat dose now þis diuinour · bot to desert wendis, The enchanter again goes to the desert, and picks herbs.
Airis on aH hiH ane · out of þe cite,

3ede him furthe eftirsons · herbis to seche, 408

Reft þam² vp be þe rotis · & radly þam stampis.

þe Iuse for his gemetry³ · þat Iogloure takis,

A[nd] sythen⁴ a brid of þe see · him seluyn him fangⁱs, He anoints a sea-bird with their juice.
Clatirs to hyre coynte þingis · kenely enchantis, 412

And [with] þe wose of þe wede · hire wengis anoyntis ;

And all þis demerlayke he did^t · bot be þe deuyllis craftis,

How he myzt compas & kast · þe kynge to begyle. Hear how he beguiled Philip.
He wrozt a wondirfuH wile · & wiH 3e now here 416

How he be-glouird^t þis gome · & gilid him iH sweuyn ?

þis ilk Philip þe fyrs · þat in þe fyt lenges, Philip dreams

þe same nyzt in his slepe · he sa3e, as him tho3t, that he sees the

¹ MS. g changis (*sic*). ² MS. him, *copied from line above*.

³ MS. gemetry.

⁴ MS. cythen.

queen in
Ammon's arms; Amon his awen god · in armes *with* his qwene, 420
And make *with* hire market · as [he] a man were.
And quen he wrozt had his wiht · þen witrely him metis,
þat he bowes to hire belechiste · & bigly it sewys,
and that Ammon
seals her with a
ring, And sethen asselis it him selfe · semely & faire 424
With a rede golde ryng · on þis aray *grayun* ;
A lyons heuyd was on-loft · louely coruyn ;
[Fol. 8.] þe bounde of a brizt son · & a brande kene.
telling her she
has conceived her
defender. And þen he went furth his way · sayd, “woman, þou
 haus 428
þi fuht defendoure on fold · now frely consa[u]yd.”
Als radly as þe riche kyng · rase on þe morne,
Philip calls a
seer, Riht in þe dawying of day · a diuinour he callis, 431
And as him dremyd ilke a dele · þat doctour he tellis,
And fraynes him fast on þis fare · how it be-faht sulð.
who tells him
the queen is with
child, “Phylip,” quod þe phyllysofyre · “þi fere is *with* childe,
And *with* no gett of na gome · bot of god selfe.
And, gudman, [on] þe goldt ryng · þe thre grauen
 thyngis,¹ 436
þai ere þus mekiht to mene · as me my myndt tellis.
who will be
like a lion, To þe lyon hede,” quod þe lede · “þen licken I, on first,
þe birth þat scho bere saht · als best it be-semys, 439
þat chefe saht to a chiftan · & slike a chefe maister,
As to be halden heuydman² · of aht þe hale werde.
Now saht I clerily declare · þe course on þe sonne ;
þat sygnifys þe³ same mañ · þat sett is, be wirot,
and will pass
over all the world
to the far east ; So many prouynce to pas · þunze prowis of armys, 444
þat he saht hit *with* his hede · in-to þe heghe est.
Now⁴ of þis bytand brand · berne, wiht 3e here ;
And aht is bot þis hathiht mañ · as I are sayd, 447
þat saht sa fele men afray · *with* fauchoñ in hande,
And out of noubre to neuyn · of nacions wynñ.”
with sword in
hand he will
conquer all. þan foundis Philip to þe fyzt · & þe fild entres,

¹ MS. y thynges (*sic*).² MS. heuydman.³ ma inserted, but struck out.⁴ MS. W Now ; with W expuncted.

And sone in deling^{is} of dynt^{is} · a dragon aperis,
 þat streȝt be-for him in þe stoure · strik^{is} doune his
 faas, 452

A dragon appears,
 and strikes down
 Philip's foes.

And aȝ his enmys in þat erd · he endid in a stounde.
 When Phylyp^{with} his faire folke · had þe filȝt won,
 þaȝ metis he him to Messadone · þar metis him þe
 qwene, Philip returns to
 Macedon, and
 greets the queen.

Kyssid comly hire kyng¹ · & of his come ioys, 456
 And how he fore scho him fraynes · ferly ȝerne.

“Wele, graunt mercy,” quod þe kyng¹ · “my god, I him
 loue; [Fol. 8 b.]

Bot how þat ȝe ga sa¹ grete · gud dame?” he sayȝ.
 þou has ragid,” quod þe reuge · “with vnryd gestis; He enquires how
 she does,
 Now hafe I, lede, aȝ to lange · lengid fra hame.” 461

þus to bre hire o bourde · he breuys þire wordis;
 “To quam has þou þe tane tiȝt · teȝt m[e] þe sothe?
 Outhire mete has mendid þe fuȝt mekiȝt · as may I noȝt
 trowe, and of her
 condition. 464

Or ane has stollen in my stede · sen I was stad þare.”
 þus bayst he þe briȝt qwene · þat aȝ hire ble changidȝ,
 To skyre skarlet hewe · skyft^{is} hire face,
 Hire chere at was chalke-quyte · as any chaffe² worthis;
 So was scho schamed of þe schont · þat hire þe schalk
 made, 469

The queer
 is ashamed.

“Nay, quod þe comly kyng · “cache vp þine hert,
 þofe þou haue forfet, na force · so has fele othire.
 þou has gildid, bot noȝt gretly · it greuys me þe les; 472

Philip comforts
 her,

For god has geten þe þis gett · a-gaynes þi wiȝt;
 All þat was done þe bedene · was me be dreme schewyȝt,
 I saȝe it surely as my-selfe · slepe in my tent^{is},
 And oure god aȝ-to-gedire · is ground of þe cause; 476
 Of me worthis þe þe³ wite · ne of na wee ellis.”

telling her he has
 seen all in a
 dream.

¶ þen tyd it anes oȝ a tym · a lytiȝt terme efter,
 þis dere kyng oȝ a day · oȝ his dese sytt^{is}, 479
 Had parreld him a proude feste · of princes & dukis,

One day, at a
 feast,

¹ MS. *repeats* ga sa. ² Or *chasse*. ³ Read *na*.

With maisterlingis of Messadone · & many opire
noble[s].

he sits beside the
queen.

þus as he sat in his sete · softly by his qwene,
In schene schemerand schroude · aH of schire stanes,
He kest vp his contenance · & knyȝtly he lokes, 484
And gladis gudly his gestis · as his degre wald.

Anectanabus
appears in a
[Fol. 9.]
dragon's form,

þaṅ Anec[t]anabus on-ane · in alpire-mast ioy
Did on him his dragoṅ-hame · & drafe thurȝe þe sale,
With slike a rowste & rerid · þe romance it wittnes,
þat nere had bernis for þat bere · bene broȝt out of
witt. 489

He was sa hatter & sa hoge · quen he þe haH entird,
Lete sa lathely a late · & sa loude cried,
þat aH þe fest was a-ferd · & opire folke bathe. 492

goes to the queen,
and salutes her.

To þe chefe chaiare of þe qwene · he chese him be-lyue,
And laide as hendly as a huude · his hede in hire arme,
Sepin kyssis he hire clene mouthe · enelynes hire lawe,
And braydis furth with a bym bere · out at þe brade
ȝat's. 496

Philip recognises
the dragon.

þen sayd Philip to his fere · & aH his fre gestis,
“Ȝone selfe dragoṅ forsothe · I saȝe with myne eȝeṅ ;
Quen I was stad in þe stoure · he strenthid aH myne
oste, 499

And þar þe floure in þe filde · I fangid þurȝe him selfe.”

Soon after befell
another prodigy.

Anopire ferly þar feH · within fewe days,
þe king was sett in his sale · with septer in hand ;

A bird comes,

þen come þar-in a litiH bric · in-to his arme floȝe,
And þar hurkils & hydis · as scho were hand-tame ; 504
Fast scho flekirs about his fete · & fleȝtirs aboute,
And þar it nestild in a noke · as it a nest were,

who lays an egg
in Philip's lap.

QwiH scho had layd in his laȝe · a litiH tynce egg,
And þan scho fangis hire flȝt · & floȝe away swyth.

The egg falls,
and breaks ; a
serpent comes
out, and soon
dies.

þis egg, or þe kyng wyst · to þe erth fallis, 509
Brak, & so it wele burde · & brast aH e-soundir ;
þan wendis þar-out a litiH worm · & wald it eft enter,
And or scho hit in hire hede · a hard deth suffirs. 512

þaṅ was *ser* Philip of þat fare · ferly mekiḥ sturbiḥ,
 Callis to him a kid clerke · declaris to him þis wonder,
 Besoȝt him quat it sygnified · to teḥ him þe treuthe. [Fol. 9 b.]

“þat graunt I gudly,” *quod* þe gome · & þus-gate he A seer says,
 spekis : 516

“Sire, þere saḥ borne be a barne · of þi blithe lady,
 þat driȝtyn efter þi day · has destaned to regne,
 þe quilke sall walke aḥ þe werḥ · & wyṅ it him selfe,
 And hent saḥ a fuḥ hetire deth¹ · or he may hame
 couer.” 520

“Your queen’s
 son shall conquer
 all the earth, and
 then die before
 returning home.”

þus he vndid him ilka dele² · & him þe dome reched,
 Said it was sett to be so · he saȝe by his artis.
 And if ȝow likis of þis lare · to lesten any forthire,
 Sone saḥ I teḥ ȝow a text · how it be-tiḥ efter. 524

¶ Tercius passus Alexandri.

N^{ow} it teȝt þe tyme · at trauaḥt þat qwene, The queen’s time
 Quen scho suld bryng furth · hire birth to þe werḥ. nigh.

Scho bidis many hard brayde · baret enduris,
 What of wandreth & wa · as wemen dose aḥ. 528

Thik schouris hire thrat · tholid mekiḥ sorȝe, She suffers much,

Many peralus pull · grete payne suffris,

Sa sare werkis hire þe wame · & sliḥ vñ-wyn dreis,

þat all scho dredis hire dede · & doute for þe werst. and expects death

þan efter Anectanabus · scho on-ane clepis, 533

And he was boune at hire bode · & bowes to hire
 chambre,

Gais him vp at þe grece · & gretis him faire,

Fand hire sett in a seȝe · & sorȝe ay elike. 536

Anectanabus
 comes and
 greets her.

“A ! Anec !” *quod* þe qwene · “me arȝes of my-selfe ; The queen
 I am aḥ in aunter · sa akis me þe wame, laments.

Of werke weḥ ne I wede · & slike wa tholis, 539

þat me ware dere to be dede · &³ dure þus on lyfe.”

[Fol. 10.]

“Ȝa, wynnes ȝow vp,” *quod* þe we · “& walkis a littiḥ, “The moment
 he says.

¹ MS. derth ; see l. 512.

² MS. ilka adele ; *wrongly*.

³ Read than.

For þe aire nowe & þe elementis · ere evyn in þis tyme
 So trauailid out of temperoure · & troubild of þat sone,
 þat makis þi grippis and þi gridis · a grete dele þe
 kenere.” 544

She walks about. þan faris scho vp & farkis furth · a fute or tway,
 And sone sesis aH hire syte · in a sete quyle.

At last she rests,
 and Alexander
 is born. “Now bow þe doune,” quod þe berne · & scho his bone
 fillis,

And syttand so in¹ hire sege · was softly delyuerd. 548

Bot now is meruaiH · to me² of þis wondire,

The earth
 quakes.

Quen þis man fra his modire wambe · on þe mold feH;

For all þe erd euyn ouer · sa egirly schakis,

þat teldis, templis, & touris · tomble on hepis. 552

There is lightning
 and thunder.

þe lizt lemand late · laschis fra þe heuyn,

Thonere thrastris ware thra · thristid þe welkyn,

Cloudis clenely to-clefe · clatird vn-faire,

All blakenid a-boute · & boris þe soñ. 556

The wind arises.

Wild wedirs vp werpe · & þe wynd ryse,

And aH³ flames þe flode · as it fire were,

Nowe briȝt, nowe blaa · nowe oñ blase efter,

And þan ouer-qwelmys in a qwirre · & qwatir euer
 e-like. 560

There is great
 darkness.

þan slike a derknes⁴ þar drafe · & demyd þe skewys,

As blesenand as bale fyre · & blake as þe heH,

þat it was neuer bot as nyȝt · fra þe none tyme

Till it to mydday was meten · oñ þe morne efter. 564

Gife þis ware mervale to myn · ȝet emangi othire

Stones fall from
 the sky.

þen rekils it vnruydly · & raynes doune stansys,

FeH fra þe fyrmament · as a hand lyftyng,

[Fol. 10 b.]

And some as hoge as þi hede · fra þe heuyn fallis. 568

Sa ferd was Philip of þat fare · þat his flesche
 trymblid,

For sere sygnes at he saȝe · as selly ware ellis.

All the world
 is warned.

As wyde as aH þe werd was þurȝe · warnyng þai hadd,

¹ Added in the margin. ² MS. to me to me; but corrected.

³ a in text; but alle in margin.

⁴ MS. dreknes.

þat¹ houre þat Olympadas · was of hire soñ lister. 572

Than lendis him vþ þe leue kyng · his lady to vysite,

Quod þe man to his make · “I am in many thoȝtis,

Philip comforts
Olympias.

þat þis frute saH haue na fostring · ne be fedd nouþire ;

I ges it be noȝt of my gett · bot of god fourmed ; 576

Be many cause at I keñ · I kan noȝt supose

It be consayued of my kynde · ne come of my-selfe.

I saȝe so, in þe same tyme · he seuyrd fra þi wambe,

þe erl & aH þe elementis · so egirly schoutid.² 580

And queper ȝit, for any quat · a quyle latt him kepe,

Philip advises
that her son
should be
nourished as
his own.

And norisch him as namely · as he myne awyn warre,

ȝit wiH þare make of him mynde · & myn it here-estire

Hathils, swilke a haly soñ · I hade in my tyme. 584

Anoþer barne,” quod þe berne · “I of my blode haue,

Ane of my sede, I supose · & sibpire of þe twa,

þat I wan on myne opire wyfe · þat I wedd first. 587

Lat him as ayre, quen I am erþed · enherit my landis,

“Let my first
son be my heir,

And staH we him in stede of þis · to stiȝtiH my rewme,

For he is borne of my blode · & a-bore nerre,

And fedewe þisothire, þat³ folke · quen weere fay worthiH,

and let this
other be well
taken care of.”

May sitt & carpe, slike a knaue · þaire last kyng hade.”

þai did all as he demed · & his domes plesed, 593

Cherest þai þis ȝonge child · & chosely him kepid ;

þai ware as besy him a-boute · birdis & ladis,

The ladies
cherish the
infant.

As he had bene þar hiȝe goH · for sa þai hopid aH, 596

þis barne, quen he borne was · as me þe boke tellis,

Miȝt wele a-prefe⁴ for his a-port · to any prince oute.

Bot of þe lyfe þat he liȝt off · he like was to name,

Nouþer of fetour ne of face · to fadire ne to modyre ;

[Fol. 11.]

þe fax on his faire hede · was ferly to schawe, 601

His hair was
like lion's locks,

Large lyons lockis · þat lange ere & scharpe ;

With grete glesenand eȝen · grymly he lokis,

þat ware as blyckenand briȝt · as blesand sternes, 604

his eyes were
bright as stars.

¹ MS. þat o ; but o is expuncted.

² MS. schoutis ; altered to schoutid. ³ Added in the margin.

⁴ MS. a pere, altered to a prefe.

- 3it ware þai sett vn-sameñ · of seregypty hewys ;
 þe tane to brene at a bliscñ · as blak as a cole,
 As any 3are 3eten gold · 3alow was þe tothire.
 He was wall-eyed. And he wald-eyed was · as þe writt schewys, 608
 3it it tellis me þis tale · þe tethe in his hede
 Was as bitand breme · as any bare tuskis.
 His voice was as a lion. His steuyn stiffe was [&] steryn · þat stonayd many,
 And as a lyon he lete · quen he loude romys. 612
 His feH fygoure & his fourme · fully be-takend
 þe prowis & þe grete pryse · þat he a-preuyd eftire,
 His hardynes, his hyndelaike · & his hetter my3tis,
 þe wirschip þat he wañ · quen he wex eldire. 616
 þañ sembled his syb meñ · be sent of þañ aH,
 To consaile of þis kyng soñ · how þai him caH suld,
 He is called Alexander. And so him neuyned was þe name · of his next frendis
 Alexsandire þe athiH · be allirs a-corde. 620
 He goes to school. þan was he lede furthe be-lyfe · to lere at þe scole,
 As sone as to þat sapient · him-self was of elde,
 Aristotle is his master. On-ane vn-to ArystotiH · þat was his awen maister,
 And one of þe coronest clerkis · þat euer knew letter.
 þan was he bro3t to a benke · a boke in his hand, 625
 And faste by his enfourme · was fettild his place ;
 For it come no3t a kyng soñ · 3e know wele to sytt
 Doune in margoñ & molle · emange othire schrewis.
 He is clever and wise. Sone wex he witter & wyse · & wonder wele leres, 629
 Sped him in a schort space · to speH & to rede,
 And seþen to gramere he gase · as þe gyse wald,
 [Fol. 11 b.] And þat has he aH hale · in a hand-quyle. 632
 He learns more in five years than others in seventy. In foure or in fyfe 3ere · he ferre was in lare
 þan othire at had bene þare · seuynte wynter ;
 þat he suld passe him in þat plite · vnpossibile semed,
 Bot at god wiH at gaa furth · qua may agayn stande ?
 If Aristotle was away. In absens of ArystotiH · if any of his feris 637
 Raged with him vnriddly · or refe him with harme,
 he would knock his masters on the crown. Him wald he kenely on þe crowne · knock with his
 tablis,

þat al to-brest wald þe bordis · & þe blode folowe. 640

If any scolere in þe scole · his skorne at him makis,

He skapis him fuþ skathely · bot if he skyþ better.

þus *with* his feris he fast · as I fynd wreten,

He fights with
his fellows.

As wele in letter & in lare · as any laiike ellis. 644

þus skilfuþ lange he scolaid · & þe scole vset,

Tille he was eun of eld · elleuyn wynter.

He had na pere in na place · þat proued so his tyme,

He has no peer.

For þe principalte of all þe pake · he of a-prefe wynnys.

And qwen it tēst to þe tyme · of ten ȝere of age, 649

þen was him kend of þe kynde · & craft of bataile,

Wele & wigtly in were · to welden a spere,

He learns to
wield a spear.

A[nd] preke oñ a proude stede · proudly enarmed. 652

þat lare was him lefe to · & lerid in a qwile

Was þar na lede to him like · *with-in* a fewe ȝeris.

So cheualus a chiftaī · he cheuys in a stonde,

He surpasses all
in arms.

þat in anters of armes · aþ men he passes. 656

Quen Philip see him sa fers · in his first elde,

His hert & his hardynes · hizely he lofed,

Philip commends
him.

Comendid mekiþ his knyȝt-hede · & him callid oñ a day

Be-twene þam selfe oñ a tyme · & talkis þire wordis :

“Alexander,” *quod* þe kyng · “I augirly prayse 661

þi wirschip, þi worthines · þi wit & þi strenth.

Es nane so teche of þi tyme · to tryi now o lyfe.

[Fol. 12.]

How suld I, lede, for þi lofe · bot lufe þe in hert ? 664

Bot I am sary for sothe · my soñ, at þi fourme

“I am sorry,
my son,
that you are so
unlike me.”

Is lickenand oñ na lym · ne like to my selfe ;

Oft storbis me þi statour · & stingis me ȝerne,

þat þi personale proporcioñ · sa party is to myne.” 668

þis herd hire þe hend quene · & heterly scho dredis,

The queen
consults
Anectanabus.

Sent efter Anec · & askis him be-lyue,

Be-knew him clene aþ þe case · how þe kyng sayd,

And frayns him fast *quat* þe freke · of hire fare thingis.

þen con he calke & a-conte · & kest on his fyngirs,

Lokis him vp to þe lifte · & þe lady swares : 674

“Be noȝt a-friȝt,” *quod* þe freke · “ne a-frayd nouþir,

He comforts her,

and observes the
stars.

Alexander asks
him what he
sees in the stars.

Anectanabus
says he will
tell him at
night.

"I shall be slain
by my own son."

[Fol. 12 b.]

Alexander
follows his
father

to the edge
of a dyke.

Anectanabus
says that his
own doom
appears to

It saH þe nøy noȝt a neg¹ · nane of his thoȝtis." 676
 With þat he heuys vp [his] hede · & to þe heuyn lokis,
 Hedis heterly on hiȝe · behelde oñ a sterne,
 Of þe quilke he hopid in his hert · sumquat to knawe,
 Quat euire he wald wete · of¹ his wiH aH-to-gedire.
 Quod Alexander to þis athiH · as he his arte fandis,
 "Quat is þe planet or þe poynt · ȝe purpose to seme ?
 Quat sterne is it at ȝe stody oñ · quare stekis it in
 heuyn ? 683
 May ȝe oȝt me in any maner · to þat sterne schewe ?"
 "þat can I wele," quod þe clerke² · "ellis couthe I
 littiH ;
 Noȝt bot sewe me, soñ · quen þe soñ is to reste,
 Quen it [is] dreuyn to þe derke · & þe day fynyst,
 And þou saH sothely se · þe same with þine ezen." 688
 "Is oȝt þi werid to þe wissid ?" · quod þe wee þan ;
 "For þat I couet to ken · if þou me kythe wald."
 "Sire, sothely of myne awen soñ² · slayne moñ I worth,
 So was me destaned to dye · gane many winter." 692
 As tyte as Anec[tanabus] · þis aunter had talde,
 þen [he] treyned doune fra þe toure · to tute in þe sternes.
 þañ airis ser Alexander · eftire his fadire, 695
 þat euer he kyndild of his kynde · kend he bot litiH.
 þus led he furthe his leue child · late oñ ane euen,
 Sylis softly him selfe · þe cite with-outen,
 Boȝes him vp to a brenke · as þe buke tellis,
 To þe hiȝt of þe depe dike · & to þe heuyn waytis. 700
 "Alexander, athil soñ" · quod Anec his syre,
 "Loo ! ȝonder behalde ouer þi hede · & se my hatter
 werdis ;
 þe euyH sterne of Ereules · how egirly it soroȝes, 703
 And how þe mode Marcure · makis sa mekiH ioȝ ;
 Loo ! ȝonder þe gentiH Iubiter · how Iolye he schynes,
 þe domes of my destany · drawis to me swythe.

¹ MS. of w his ; but w is expuncted.

² Added in the margin.

Hedes heterly on heght · beheld on a sterne, 678 [Fol. 1.]

Of þe whilke he hopyd in hys hert^t · somqwatt to knaw,
 What euer he wilnet for to wete · hys wille aH to-geder.
 þen sayd alexander to þis atheH · as he by hym stonndes,
 “What is þe planett or þe poynt · yhe purposse¹ to se?
 Or what sterne at ye stody oñ · where stekys it in
 heuen?

May 3e oght in any maner me · to þat merke shewe?” 684
 “þat can I wele,” quod þis clerke · “ellys couth I bott
 lytyH;

Noght bott shew² me now, sone · qwen þe soñ is at rist,
 When it is dryven to þe dirk · & þe day fynyshyt,
 And þu saH sorely þe same · see with þi egheñ.” 688

“Is oght þi werd to þe wist?” · quod þe wy þañ;

“For þat I Couett to keñ · if þu me kyth wold.”

“Syr, sothly of myne aweñ son · slayn moñ I worth,
 So was [me] destinate to dy · done mony wynter.” 692

Als tyte as anectanabus · þees aunders had tald,
 Than turned he douñ from þe toure · to tote on þe sternes.
 þan ayres sir alexander · affir hys fader,
 þat euer he come of hys kynde · knew [he] fuH lityH. 696

þus lede he forth is leue sonñ · late on añ eueñ,
 Syland softly þaim selfe · þe cyte with-owte,
 Bownes þaim vp to a brenke · as þe buke tellys,
 To þe hight of þe hye dyke · & to þe heuen watyñ. 700

“Alexander, atheH sonñ” · quod anec hys fader,
 “Beyond be-hald ouer my hed · & see my hote werdez;

þe ilke sterne of ereules · howe egerly it sorowez,
 And how þe mode of mercury · makys so mekyH Ioy; 704
 Lo! how gentyH Iubiter · how ioyfully he shynes,
 þe Domes of my destany · drawes vnto [me] swyth.

¹ MS. proposse.

² sic; read sew.

þik & þrathly am I thret · & thole moñ I sone
 þe slaughter of myne awen soñ · as me was sett euer." 708
 Vnethis werped he þat worde · þe writt me recordis,

Alexander pushes
 him into the
 dyke,

þat ne Alexander as sone · was at him be-hind,
 And oñ þe bake with slike a birē · he bare with his
 handis,

saying, "thou
 art false in thy
 predictions."

þat doune he drafte to þe depest · of þe dike bothom, 712
 Sayd, "lo ! vnhappyeste vndire heuyn · þat þus oñ hand
 takis

Anectanabus
 cries out,

As be þe welken to wete · quat suld come efter !
 þou has feyned þe for wyse · & fals aH-to-gedire,
 Wele semys slike a saccheH · to syeþe þus of lyfe !" 716

"I knew it
 would be so.

þan Anec, as him aȝt · wele augirly granys,
 Dryues vp a dede voyce · & dymly he spekis,
 "Wele was þis eas to me knawen · & kyd many wynter,
 þat I suld dee slike a dethe · be dome of my werdis. 720

Did I not say so ?

Sayd I þe noȝt so · my selfe here be-fore,
 I suld be slayñ of my son · as now sothe worthis !" 722

Thik & thraly am I thrett · & thole must I sone
 þe slaughtur of my awne sonñ · als me was sett euer." 708
 Vnneth warpyd he þis word · þe writt me recorder,
 þat alexander als belyfe · was at hym bylyue,¹
 And on þe bak with suche a bir · hym bare with hys
 handez,

þat Douñ he drafte into þe dyppest² · of þe dyke bothum; 712 [Fol. 1 b.]
 Sayd: "lo! vnhappyest vndir heuen · þat þus on hand
 takes

Als be welkyn to wete · what worth saH her-aftir!
 Hase fenyd þe for wyse · & fals aH to-geder,
 Wele semys suche a sacheH · to sepe þus of lyfe!" 716
 þan Anec, als hym awght · wele awgardly granes,
 Dryvez vþ a dede voyce · & dymly he spekes:
 "Wele was þis to me knawyn · & kyd mony wynter,
 That I suld dey such a dede² · by² dome of my werdis. 720
 Sayd I þe noght so · my self here beforne

I suld be slayn of my sonñ · als now is soth wortheñ?" 722
 "What, and am I," quod alexander · "ane of þi You are my
 childer?" 723* son."

"þha, sonñ! als glad I my god · I gat þe my selueñ." 724*

Fro he had hym þis worde sayd³ · he wakens no more, Hic moritur
 Bot gaue a gremly grane · & þe gast þheldez. anectanabus

That oper wy for hys werkez · wepys euerylyke, Alexander
 So hard & so hertly · þat ne3 hys hert brestes. 728* laments,

þus plenys þis prouud knyght · þe pyte of hys fader,
 Cares hym downe into þe cafe · þar as þe cors ligges, and carries
 Belife lyftes he on-lofte · euen on hys shulders, 731* home the
 body.

And heres hym forth vppon hys bake · at þe brade 3ates.
 Sone sayd þe whene, when sho hym see · with syland teres;
 "What haue 3e done, my dere sonñ?" · & drowpys douñ
 in swone.

"Dame, now is þar none other to do · bot deme it þi selueñ, Alexander
 For as þi foly was before · so foloweth aftir." 736* reproves the
 queen.

¹ read byhynde.

² written above the line in MS.

³ written above the line in MS.

Than makes þis mañ & hys moder · menskfully & faire
 Titely hys enterment · as þai þat tyme vsed.
 þus shamesly of hys awne childe · hym chevyd such end.
 And her fynes a fytt · & fayr when vs likez.

So perished
 Anectanabus.

740*

Quartus passus.

The same & þe selue tyme · as says me þe text,
 Fro þe cuntre of capadose · come a kyd prince
 To kyng philip̃ þe fers · & hym a fole bryngez ;
 A grett horse & a hoge · a hegh & a wilde,
 A store & a styf stede · stalwortly bondyñ ;
 His choH chaltird & chaulez · in chynez of yreñ ;
 In rapes fast · for ryfing of bernes ;
 For other mete þan manysflesche · mouthed he neuer.
 Busifolen to þis blonk · was breued þe name.
 He hed so ferdfulh a face · as ony fyre lokez ;
 Bere als a boles¹ heued · a bryn on hys shulderr,
 And toton owte of hys toþ · als tyndis of hornes.
 The fayrnes of þis ilke fole · when philip̃ avysed,
 þan says he to hys seruand · to see to þis capyH,
 And stighillys hym in soñ stede · a stable by hym one,
 With lang lates of yreñ · þat he might lig in.
 And aH at wer dampned to þe deth · & demyd at þe lawe,
 þai saH be broȝt fra þe bare · þis blonk into stable,
 To wery at hys awne wille · & weyle² of þe fattest.
 3it philip̃ of hys faire goddes · hym fanges such a sware,
 Yff ony berne wer so bald · baron or other,
 Or wy þat myght þis wilde best · worth for to ryde,
 Was dewly aftir hys day · destinate to regne.
 When alexander was of elde · awght ȝeres & foure,
 þan was he worthy & wight · & wisely hed leryd
 At arestoteH aH ouer · þe artez aH seuen,
 And castor, ane oper clerke þar · at wer hys kyd maisteres.
 So carez he in þe casteH-ȝarde & commes on a day
 By a wyndow als þis wild horse · [was] warloked in bandez ;

A prince
 brings to
 Philip a wild
 horse,

744*

[Fol. 2.]

748*

who fed upon
 human flesh
 only.

752*

Philip puts
 him in a
 stable.

756*

He is fed upon
 criminals.

759*

The gods say
 that whoever
 tames the
 horse will
 succeed
 Philip.

764*

Alexander is
 now 12 years
 old.

768*

¹ Altered to boyles in later hand.

² MS. wele, corr. to weyle.

Lokes in at a lat · sagh ly hym byforne
 So mony menbres of men · wer mervayle to tell.
 þar liggez lymmes of laddes · leggez & harmes, 772*
 Tharmes thrist owt of thees · banes & shuldres.
 Som hanchyd of þe heued · som þe handez etyñ,
 Soñ þar riggez owt rytte · & som þar ribbez rent.
 Of þis wonder he hed · & so he wele burd. 776*
 And hardly hys awne hand · in at a hole puttes,
 He¹ layd owt a lang neke · & hys hand likkys;
 Faire faldes hys fete / & falles² hym³ to þe erth,
 Hendly haldes vp hys heued · byheld in hys face, 780*
 On Alexander ay-whare · euer elike wates. [Fol. 2 b.]
 þen wist þe wy wele enogh · hys wyH aH-to-geder;
 Brades vppe þe brade ȝate · & þe barre entres,
 On þe rige with hys right hande · hym rodely strakez, 784*
 And he fuH frely & faire · hym faunys & loutez.
 Was neuer barslett in band · more buxum to hys lord.
 þen was þis blonke to þis bern · for aH his breme teches.
 þus lowtes þis lede on low · & lowsys hys chynez, 788*
 Blyssis blythly hym abouute · & a bridyH fyndez;
 Grathez on þis gay gere · & þen a gilt sadyH;
 Ledes hym forth of þat loge · & þen of-lofte lepys.
 Than strenys he hys steropes · & streȝt vp sittes; 792*
 Lad hym by þe lorañ · & hym þe lede wissez.
 And he als rekyndly ran · rolland hym vnder,
 As he þe sadyH hed sewyd · seuenten wynter.
 Sone as philip þe ferse · hym on þis fole metes, 796*
 “Soñ,” he sayd, “now er þe sawes · into þi seluen fyneshit,
 Right as my graceux gode · hase galet me before.
 For þou must rewle aH my realm · qwen I am raght hyne.”
 Quod alexander als beliuē · “my awne atheH fader, 800*
 I beseke þe my soueren · þat þou my sete dresse
 In a chosyn chariott · as a chefe maister,
 With folawand me a fair flete · of fele men of armes.”

He sees the horse surrounded by men's legs and arms.

The horse licks his hand.

He goes to the horse, and strokes him.

He gets a bridle and saddle, and mounts him.

Philip sees Alexander, and predicts that he will be king after himself.

¹ MS. And, *corr. to He.*

² MS. faldis, *corrected.*

³ MS. hys fete, *repeated, but struck out.*

- "þat graunt I gladly," *quod* þe gome · with a gode wille,
 "Frist of my faire foles · fang þe a hundreth ; 805* Philip gives
 And syne sixty thowsand, my soñ · þou¹ þi seluen wale Alexander
 Of shillynges & of shire gold · to shote in þi Cofyre ; men and
 Syne of my chefe chiftanes · chese þe þe² best, money.
 þe most proved of my princez · in poyntez of were ; 808*
 Wyse ne no wale wede · want shaH þe noþer,
 And held on *with* a hale here · þar hersound þou worth."³
 Thys barne hym buskes as he bede · & bade he no langre,
 Bot grathes hym to þe gate · *with* a gyñ noble. 812*
 Forth *with* eufestys he ferd · a freke þat he loued,
 þat was a fyne Philo[so]f[c]r · a frend of hys awne. Alexander
 3itte takez he hym *with*-owte þe towñ · twelf tried childer, takes with
 þat he hed Cosyn hym for chefe · hys chevalry to lede ; [Fol. 3.]
 And fair enformed þam of fight · & fetez of armez 817* him Eufes-
 For 3apest in hys awne yoke · 3arly to drawe ; tius and 12
 Fers felons *with* hym fangez · & florens enowe, others.
 Full *precious*e appairement · hys person to cleth, 820*
 Comand kenely hys knyghtez · to kepe to hys blonkez,
 þat no⁴ vnchaunce þaim achefe · þat in þe chare 3odez.
 He prekys forth on hys play · bot *with* a preuay menze, With a small
 Chaterand *with* hys chiftanes · in hys child gere. 824* force he
 To poliponenses hase he passed · a prouince vnk[n]awyn, invades the
 And so was strykyn or he styntyd · in-to þe strange realm. Pelopon-
 The kyng of þatt cuntree · þat þe kyth weldyd, nesus.
 Which was callyd nicholas · & hym naytly metes, 828* The king's
 Had rasyd vp a rode hoste · & heldyd hym ayayneze name was
 With bald baratours on bent · hym bateH to 3elde. Nicholas.
 He flonge ow[t] on a fers fole · far from hys hoste,
 Ayres to *sir alexander* · & angrely franes : 832* Nicholas
 "What is þi name, notesmañ · neuen me þe sothe ; interrogates
 And whyne ert þou & who · & what makys þou here ?" Alexander.
 þe knyght, as he wele couth · hym curtasly answers :
 "Sir, kyng philip þe ferse · my fader was hateñ, 836*

¹ MS. þat, *corr.* to þou.² MS. the, *corr.* to þe.³ MS. wroth.⁴ *written above the line in MS.*

[Fol. 13.]

Many things
that are aloft
go to the
bottom."

"Take care lest
your predictions
come true of
yourself."

Sir Nicholas
is as wrath as a
wasp.

þof I þis wirschiþ þe wayfe · as wald þine astate,
Lat þou þi hert neuer þe hizere · hale in-to pride. 724
For it was wont," *quod* þe wee · "as wyse men tellis,
Futþ hiȝe þingis ouer-heldis · to held oþer-quile.
Slike as ere now broȝt a-bofe · nowe þe bothum askis,
And slike at left¹ ere on lawe · ere lift to þe sternes."
"Sa ma aydeus," *quod* þat oþire man · "þou tellis me
treuthe, 729
Soñ þis ensample of þi-selfe · þou sais me, I trowe.
Vn-behalde þe wele oñ ilk halfe · & haue a gud eȝe,
Les on þine ane here-efterward · þine ossyngis lizt." 732
þan Alexander aȝ in ire · angrile spekis:
"Hy þe hethen-ward, þou hathiȝ · & houe þou na
langire.
For na-þing as a-nente me · þou has noȝt to meȝ,
Ne *with* þi domes me to dele · dole vndire sonne." 736
Now² is *ser* Nicollas anoyed · & nettild *with* ire,
As wrath as [a] waspe · & wode of his mynde,
Reviles he þis oþire renke · *with* vnrid speche: 739
"Behald," *quod* he hedirward · " & herken how I say;
Now be þe hert & þe hele · of my hathiȝ fadire,
And b · þe god," *quod* þe gome · "þat gafe me þe saule,
A[ls] sprent [of] my spitting · a specke oñ þi chere,
þou saȝ he diȝt to þe deth · & drepid of my handis." 744

¹ *Indistinct*: see l. 814.

² MS. *Nowith*; *by confusion with line above*.

And aH þe marche of massydoñ · he manours clene ;
 And I hys heyre alexander · als elders me callen."
 þat oþer renishit r[e]nke · hym rightes in þe sadyH,
 Stranes owt hys sterops · & sternly lokez ; 840*

Alexander
 declares his
 name.

With a sembland as a hye sir · settis owt þe brest,
 Sayd : " who am I þat am here · as þou supposez ? "

" Who am
 I ; " asks

" Sir, þou art a kyng of þis kyth · I ken wele my-seluen,
 Bott neuer þe latter in þis lede · if þou be lord here, 844*

Nicholas.
 " You are a
 king ; yet
 take heed."

þof¹ I² þis worship þe³ wafe · as wald þine astate, 723

Lett þou þi hert neuer þe hyer · hale to þe pride. 724

For it is wont," quod þe wy · " as wise meñ tellys,

The hyest thyng rapest⁴ · heldes oþer while.

Suche as now is broght a-bowue · now þe bothom asken,

And sich als laft⁵ now on loft⁶ · er lyft to þe sternes."

[Fol. 3 b.]

" So madeus,"⁷ quod þis oþer mañ · " þou mellys me þe
 sothe, 729

For þis ensampyH of þi-selfe · þou says me, I trowe.

Vmhede þe wele on ilke halfe · & haue a god Egeñ,

Lest on þi-seluen ane oþer tyme · þine asking list." 732

þan alexander aH in ire · angirly spekes :

" Hy þe hyneward, þou atheH · & hofe here no langer.

For nop[i]ng als anense me · þou hase lityH to melle,

Xe with me noght hase to do · ne dele vnder þe sonn." 736

Now [is] sir Nicholas noyet⁸ · & netlett with ire,

Als wrath as a waspe · & wode owt of mynde,

Revylez he þis other renke · with vnrode speche :

" Byhald," he sayd, " hyderward · & here qwat I say ; 740

Now by þe hert & þe heale · of my old fadir,

And be god," quod þe gome · " at gaue me þe saule,

Als sprent of þi⁸ spyttyng⁹ · a speke of my⁹ face, 743

þou saH be dist to the deth · and drepyd of my handes."

¹ MS. Of.

² þe follows after I in MS.

³ þe written above the line in MS.

⁴ MS. rapest.

⁵ or last.

⁶ so in MS. ; read laft er on lawe.

⁷ MS. madeus, altered to madyng, in later ink.

⁸ so in MS. ; read of my.

⁹ read on þi.

He spits in
Alexander's face.

Quen he had spokin so, for spyte · he spittis in his face,
Dispises him despetously · dispersons him foule.

Alexander con-
trols his anger.

"Hent þe þare," *quod* þe hatiH¹ · "as þe to haue² semes,
Cure, for þi kene carþe · chache nowe a schame!" 748

[Fol. 13 b.]

þan went him furthe *Alexander* · & his ande takis,
Lete a-swage or he sware · þe swelme of his angirs,
Be-sezis him how he say wold · or he his saze ȝeld, 751
And turnes him þen to þe tulke · & talkis þire wordis:
"For þou has noȝtid me now · Nicollas," he sayd,
I swere þe, be my syre saule · & by his selfe pite,
And be þe worthe wombe · of my wale modre
þat I was geten in of gode · & graithely consayued, 756
þou seis me, lede, or oȝt lange · in þi lande armed,
And opire recouyre me þi rewme · or reche vþ þe
girdiH."

They appoint
a day for
fighting.

þan set þai þam slike a day · to semble & to fȝt, 759
And þar-to take vp þaire trouthis · & twyned esondre.³
þen ȝode him furthe þi[s] ȝong mañ · ȝapeli & swythe
In-to þe marche of Messedone · & manly a-semblis
Of sandiours & sekir men · a soume out of nounbre,
þat was þe baldest & þe best · breueyd in armes. 764

Alexander
gathers a host.

He parraills him a proude ost · of princes & opire,
Farkis to *ser Philip* · & fangis his leue,
And þañ Bocifilas his blonke · he bremely ascendis,
And bounes oñ *with* his bataiH · out at þe brade ȝatis.
þe same day at was sett⁴ · þe sembling of bathe, 769
Aithire *with* a firs flote · in þe fild metis.

Both armies are
very numerous.

þe nounbre of *ser Nicollas* · it noyes me to reken,
And *Alexander* was ane oste · of augird many. 772
With þat þai take vp þaire trompes · a-poñ þe twa
sidis,

The clarens
resound.

Braidis banars a-brade · buskis to mete.
So kinlid þe clarens · þat aH þe cliffe rynges,

¹ So in MS.

² MS. haume, with first stroke of m subpuncted.

³ MS. to semble & to fȝt, struck through, with & twyned esondre above.

⁴ Added in the margin.

When he had spokyn so, in spite · he spittes at hys face,
Dispysys hym dyspytussly · revylez hym foule.

“Hent þe þar-to,” quod þe atheH · “þat þe to haue semes,
Cure, for þi kene carpyng · cache now a shame!” 748

þan ayres hym forth alexander · & hys aynde takes,
To let swage or he sware · þe swelme of hys angre,
Wysez hym how he say wald · or he aunswer ȝheldes,
And turnyd hym þen to þis tulke · & talkez þir wordez:
“For þou hase noȝtyd me now · nicholas,” he sayd, 753
“I swere by my syre saule · & by hys selueñ pyte,
And be þat worthi wombe · of my wale moder
þat I was gettyn in of god · & grathly consaued, 756
Thu sees me, lede, in þi land · or oght lang enarmed,
And oper recouer me þi realm · or reche me vppe [þe]
girdyH.”

þan sett þai þaim on suche a day · to semble & to fight,
And þar-to takez vpp þar trewthez · & twynnoñ in-sonder.
þan ȝode hym furth þis yong mañ · ȝapely & swithe 761
Into þe marche of masydon · & manly assembles
Of sowiours & of syker meñ · a some owt of nowmbre,
þat wer þe baldest & þe best · breuet in armez. 764

He Apperels hym a pround oste · of princez & oper, [Fol. 4.]
Ferkys to sire philip · & fonges hys leue,
And þañ bucifolon hys blonk · he bre mely assendes,
And bownez on with hys bateH · in at þe brade ȝatez. 768
þe same day þat was set · þe semblyng of bath,
Ather with a fers flete · in þe felde metyn.

þe nowmbre of sir nicholas · it neyt¹ me to rekyñ,
And alexander was ane ost · of awgerly mony. 772
With þat þai tukkyñ vþ þair trompez · vpon þe two
sydez,

Bradez baners on brade · buskes to mete.
So knellyd þe clarions · þat aft þe clyff rongeñ,

¹ So in MS.

- þe heoltis & þe haire heere¹ · & þe hillis scheuyn. 776
 Ilk a hathiH to hors · hizis him be-lyue,
 Stridis into stele-bowe · stertis apon loft,
 Has a helme on his hede · & honge on his swyre
 A schene schondirhand schild · & a schaft hentis. 780
 Steels stamp,
 and dust rises.
 AH dymed þe dale · & þe dust ryses.
 With slik a bront & a brusche · þe bataiH a-sembild,
 As þe erth & aH þe el[e]mentis · at anes had wrestild.
 Now aithire stoure on þar stedis · strikis to-gedire, 785
 Spurnes out spakly · with speris in hand,
 Shields are
 broken.
 Brekis in-to blasons · bordren² shildis,
 Beis in-to brizt stele · bitand lances, 788
 Lances are
 splintered.
 Some in scheuerand schidis · schaftis ere brosten,
 Al to-spryngis in sprotis³ · speris of syris,
 Dryfuis doune duchepers · & doykis of þar horses,
 Fellis fay to þe fold · many fresch knyztis. 792
 Nicholas attacks
 Alexander.
 Quat dose now þis Nichollas · bot nymes him a spere,
 Kest him on þis 3ong knyzt · to couire him a name ;
 And Alexander with anothire · airis him agayne,
 Girdis grymly to-gedire · greuosly metis. 796
 Sa sare was þe semble · þire seggis be-twene,
 þat al to-wraiste þai þar wode · & werpis in-sondire,
 Their spears
 break.
 Al to-elutirs in-to canels · elene to þaire handis, 799
 þar left nonþire in þar hand · þe lengthe of an ellyn.
 Their fight with
 swords.
 þen littid þai na langer · bot laschid out swerdis,
 Aithire a blesynand brand⁴ · bruit out of schethe,
 Hewis on hattirly · had thurgh mailes,
 Many starand stanes · strikis of þaire helmes. 804
 þen Alexander in ane ire · his arme vp-liftis,
 Swythe swyngis out his swerde · & his swayfe feches.
 Alexander
 slayes
 Nicholas' best.
 þe nell of Nichollas þe kyng · he fra þe nebb partis,
 þat doug he fell fra his fole · & fynyst for cur. 808
 þut was him dastand þat day · as drizten had shapid,

¹ read haire wode.² read broden.³ MS. *reposts* in *sprotis*.⁴ Added in the margin.

That þe holtez of þe heer wode · & þe hillez sheueñ. 776
 Ilke atheH to hys hors · hys hym belyue,
 Striden to stele-bowe · startyn vpon lofte,
 Had helmes vpon hedes ful hey · & hyngel vnby þar shwyre
 A shemerand sheld · & þair shaftez hynteñ. 780
 What of stampyng of stedes · & strippying of baners,
 AH demmyd þe dale · & þe duste risez.
 With suche a bront & a broush · þe bateH assembled,
 As þe erth & aH þe elementes · at anez had wrystlyld. 784
 Now ather stoure on þar stedes · striken to-gedir,
 Sprenten owt spakly · with speres in hand,
 Brochen both basynettes · & brouden sheldez,
 Beres in-to bright stele · bitand lancez, 788
 Sone in-to sheuerand shidez · shaftez to-bristeñ,
 AH to-sprongen into sprotes · sperez of cipriss,
 Dryvez downe docesperes · and dukez of blonkez,
 Felles fey to þe fold · many fers knyghtes. 792
 What doys me now þis nicholas · bott nymmez hym a sper,
 Kest hym on þis yong knyght · to gett hym a name;
 And alexander with an oþer · ayers hym ayayus,
 Ridyn grymly to-geder · & grysly metyñ. 796
 So [sar] was þe semble · [þir] Seges by-twene,
 þat aH to-wrasted þai wod · & warpyd in-sonder,
 AH claters in clyftez · clene to þair fistez,
 þai lefte noþer in þaire [hand] · þe lenth of ¹ ane Elne. 800 [Fol. 46.]
 þan let þai no langer · bot laughtyn owt swerdes,
 Apir a brade blysmand brand · brade forth of shethez,
 Hewen on heterly · hadoñ þorow malys,
 Fele starand stanes · striken of þair helmes. 804
 Than alexander in ire · hys arme vpp lyftes,
 Swith swynnges vp hys swerd · & hys swalle faches.
 The nole of nicholas þe kyng · he fra [þe] nek partes,
 That douñ he fel from hys fole · fynyshit for euer. 808
 þus was hym destinate þat day · as driȝten hym shapyd,

¹ written above the line in MS.

[Fol. 14 b.]
All submit to
Alexander.

Returning,
he finds Philip
has wedded
another wife.

Alexander
refuses to submit
to Philip any
longer.

One Lesias,
a knight,

threatens
Alexander,

but loses his
life by

To hent him þe hizere hande · of his athiſh fais.
þare slike wirschip he wañ · ware wonder to teH;
Had of þat hiȝe kyng¹ · þe hede fra þe shuldurs. 812
þen was him geuyn vp þe ȝerde · & ȝolden þe rewme,
And aH at left was¹ o lyfe · lordis & ethire,
Come to þat conquerour · & oñ knese² fallis,
And in his mercy & meth · mekely þaim put. 816
þis renke & his rounsy · þai reche vp a crowne,
As gome at has þe gadland · & aH þe gre wonn.
þus with þe floure in þe fild · he fangid his enmy,
And haldis oñ with hale here · hame to his fadire. 820
þañ fyndis he *Philip* oñ his flett · with a fest huge
Had wed him anoper wyfe · & wayfid his quene;
Ane Cleopatras caled³ · a grete kyngis doȝter,
And [last] had Olympadas · & openly for-sakeñ. 824
“ Fadire,” quod þis seH knyȝt · quen he þis fest entirs,
“ þe palme here of my first price · I pray þe resayfe,
Forthe to þe weding or I winde · of my wale modire,
And kaire me to a noȝire kyng⁴ · to couple hire to wyfe.
For þe to felsen ne to foleȝe · fallis me na mare, 829
Ne here to dweH with þi douce · deynes me na langer,
Now þou mas þe slike a mangery · & macchis changis,
And I to⁴ consaile vn-callid · I cañ noȝt þar-on.” 832
With þat þar carpis⁵ to þe kyng · a knyȝt at þe table,
Ane lesias, a lede · & oñ loude speches:
“ Cleopatras a knafe child · coñsayue saH & bere,
þat demed is eſtir þi deſth · duly to regne.” 836
þan Alexander at þis knyȝt · angirs vnfaire,
Wynnes him vp a wardrere · he walt in his handis,
So hard him hittis oñ þe hede · his hernes out weltid.
And sa he lost has þe lyfe · for his leȝer wordis. 840
þan was þe wale kyng wrath · as wonder ware ellis,
Braydis him vp fra þe borde · & a brand clekis,

¹ MS. *repeats* was. ² MS. *ken knese*, with *ken struck out*.

³ MS. *he caled*; but *he is not wanted*.

⁴ *Added in the margin.*

⁵ MS. *crapis*.

To hynt hym þe ouerhand · of hys athell foes.
 þar suche a worship he wan · war wonder to telle; 811
 þan hed he of þe hye kyng · þe heued from þe shuldres.
 Than þai gave hym vp þe ȝerd · & yolden þe realme,
 And aH þat left wer [o] liue · lordes & other,
 Comes to þe¹ conquerour · & on knes fallen,
 And on hys mercy & his might · mekely þaim puttes. 816
 þen þus reuerently · þai rechen hym a crowne,
 Als gome þat hase þe garland · & aH þe gree womne.
 þus with þe floure in þe feld · fongez he is enemy,
 And heldes on with a hynde heyre · home to his fader. 820
 Then fyndes he philip with his flete · at a feste hoge
 Had weddit hym ane oþer wife · & waueschyd hys moder;
 Ane cleopatras was callyd · a grett kynges doghter,
 And laft [had] olympades · & opynly forsaken. 824
 “Fadre,” quod þis fele child · when he þe fest entred,
 “The palme here of my first pride · I pray þe resauē,
 Forth to þe weddyng wiH I wende · of my wale modre,
 And caire me to ane oþer kyng · to cowpyH hir to wyfe.
 For þe to filson ne to folow · falles me no more, 829
 Ne here to dwelle at þi deuyse · deynes me no langer,
 Thou makes suche a mangery · & þi mache changes,
 And I to counseH vncallyd · I can noght heron.” 832
 With þat þar carpes to þe kyng · A knyght at þe table,
 Ane lesyas, a lede · & on lowde spekes:
 “Cleopatras a knaffe child · consaue sall & bere,
 That destinate is aftir þi day · dewly to regne.” 836
 þen Alexander at þis athell · angers vnfaire,
 Wynnes hym vp a wardrerd · he weld in hys hande,
 So hard hym hitte on þe hede · his hernes owte weltyñ,
 And so he lost hase hys lyfe · for his lether wordes. 840
 Than [was] þe wale kyng wrath · als wonder wer elles,
 Brades vp fro þe burde · & a brande clekez,

*Nota pri-
mam victo-
riam alex-
andri.*

[Fol. 5.]

¹ written above the line in MS.

Philip attacks
Alexander,
[Fol. 15.]

but stagers and
stumbles.

Alexander
reproaches him.

He drags the
bride out of
the hall by her
hair.

Alexander calls
Philip his
friendship,

and asks him
to forego his
anger.

The king begins
to weep.

Airid toward *Alexander* · & ames him to strike.

Bot þan him failis þe feete¹ · or he first wenys, 844

He stakirs, he stumbils · & stande he ne miȝt,

Bot ay fundirs & fallis · as he ferde ware.

þe faster forward him² he faris · þe faster he snapirs ;

Quat was þe cause of þe case · þat knawis oure lorde.

“Quat now,” *quod* athiȝt *Alexander* · “quat³ ailis þe
to faȝt ? 849

Has þou na force in þi fete · ne fele of þi-selle ?

For a freke to be ferd · or a-fraid outhire,

And þou þe gouernere of grece · þat ware grete
wondire !” 852

þen tittis he doune in þat tene · þe tablis ilkane,

Out of þe haȝt be [þe] hare · halis he þe bride,

And so þe wee in his wreth · wrekis his modire,

And *Philip* falne [was] sare seke · & aȝ þe fest strubled.

As sone as *Alexander* · of angire he slakis,⁴ 857

He lendis o-loft to þe lede · a litiȝt days eftir,

Cairis vp *with* comfurth · þe kyng for to vysite,

He comes to þe curten · & carpis þis wordis : 860

“Philip,” *quod* þis ilke freke · & forwith him standis,

“þof it vn-semely me sytt · þe so for to caȝt,

Noȝt as þi suȝet & þi son · my sawe I þe ȝelȝt,

Bot as a felaw or a frynde · fallis to a-nothire. 864

Sire, latt þi wreth a-wai wende · & *with* þi wyfe ȝaȝtiȝt,

And þe los of Lesias · litiȝt þou charge.

I did bot my deuire · to drepe him, me² thinke ; 867

For it awe him noȝt sa openly · slike ossing to make.

And *ser*, vnworthely þou wroȝt · & þat þou wele knawis,

Quen þou was boune *with* a brand · my bodi to
schende.”

þen rewis þe riche kyng · of vnride werkis,

Blischis vp to þe berne · & braste out at grete. 872

þen airis him oȝ *Alexander* · to his awen modire ;

¹ MS. fete, altered to secte. ² Added in the margin.

³ quod.

⁴ Read aslakes.

Ayres toward *alexander* · & aymes¹ hym to smyte.
 Bot he fayled þe fote · or he first wenēs, 844
 He stakez, he stombles · þat stand he ne might,
 Bott ay he fonders & falles · as he ferd wer.
 The ferer forthward [he fares] · þe faster [he] snappers;
 What was þe cause of þis case · þat knawys our Lord. 848
 “What now,” quod *alexander* · “qwatt ayles þe to
 fale?

Hase þou no forse ne no fete · ne fele to þi selueñ?
 For oñ freke to be so ferd · or afrayd oþer,
 And þou þe gubernare of greece · þat is a grete wondre!” 852

Then tittis he douñ in þat tene · þe tables ilkoñ,
 Owt of þe halle by þe hare · hales he þe birde,
 And so þe wye in his wrath · wrekes hys modre,
 And philip fallyñ was seke · & aH þe fest stroblet. 856
 So als byline als *alexander* · on angre aslakes,
 He lendes on-lofte to þe lord · a lityH dayes aftir,
 Cares hym with comforth · þe kyng for to visitt,
 Comes hym to þe cortyns · & carpez þees wordez: 860
 “Philip,” quod þis fele freke · & for-with hym standez,
 “þof² it vnsemely me sitt · þe so for to calle,
 Noght als a sogett¹ ne þi sonne · my saw I þe yeld,
 Bot als a felow or a frend · falles to an-other. 864
 Sir, lat þi wrethes aH wende · & with þi wyfe saghtyH,
 And þe losse of sir lysyas · lityH þou charge.
 I dyd bot my deuē · to drepe hym, me thynke, 867
 For it awght hym nozt so opynly · sike ossynges to make.
 And vnworthly þou wroght · & þat þou wele knawys,
 When þou was bowne with a brande · my body to shende.”

Then rewys hym þe riche kyng · of hys vnrode werkez,
 Blisshes vpp to þe berne · & bristes owt to wepe. 872
 Than ayres hym on *sir alexander* · to hys awne modre;

¹ MS. aynes.² MS. Of.

"Bees not a-gloped, madame · ne greued at my fadire ;
If aH 3e synned him be-syde · as 3our selfe knawis,
par-of na we may þe wite · it was godis wiH." 876

[Fol. 15 b.]

Philip and
Olympias are
reconciled.

With þat he fanges hire furthe · to *Philip* hire ledis,
And he comly hire kist · & cordis with hire faire,
Anes with *Olympadas* · & þe tothire woydis,
And lofes hire lely · to his lyfes ende. 880

¶ Quintus passus Alexandri.

Sone eftir in a seson · as þe buke sais,
Come driuand fra *Darius* · þe deyne *Empereure*,
Heraudis on heze hors · hendly a-rayed,
To ser *Philip* þe fers · to feche þar trouage. 884

Heralds come
from *Darius* to
Philip.

LitiH kyngis þar come · as þe clause tellis,
Lizt doune at þe loge · & þar blonkis leues,
Caires in-to þe curte · to craue him þar dettis,
Touchis titly þar tale · & tribute him askis. 888
"3a, caires hame," quod *Alexander* · "a-gayn to 3our
kithes,

They demand
tribute.
Alexander
refuses it,

And sais 3our maister, he make · na ma sandis ;
For sen *Philip* had a fresche soñ · þat fast now
encressis, 891

saying that the
old hen is now
barren.

þat bees nozt suffird, I supose · nane slike him to 3elk.
For sais 3our lord, þe lefe heñ · þat laide hir first egg,¹
Hire bodi nowe with barante · is barely consumed,
And is *Darius* so of his dett · duly depryued ;
And be þis titill, him tellis · na tribute him fallis." 896
þen merualik þam þe messangirs · mekiH of his speche,
His witt & his wisdom · wonderly praysed.

The messengers
take their leave.

Faire at ser Ph[ilip] þe fers · fangi þai þar leue, 899
And syne elene of aH þe curte · & cairis to þar landis.
To þe palais of þe proude kyng · to persie þai went,
Dose þam in to *Darius* · þar he oñ dese syttis,
And telles him how his trouage · is tynt al-to-gedire,

[Fol. 16.]

¹ MS. "egg", corrected to egg.

“Beys noght aglopned, gude Dame · ne greued to my fadre,
 Ak if þou haue synned hym bysyde · als þou þi-seluen says, [Fol 5 b.]
 þ orfore no gome may þe gylt · for it is goddes wille.” 876
 With þat fongez hir þis freke · & to philip ledes,
 And he opynly hir kyssitt · & cordes with hir faire,
 þus [he anes] with olimphades · & þis other woydez,
 And leues louely with hir · aH hys lyue days. 880

Quintus [Passus].

Sone aftir in a seson · als says me þe writtes,
 Come dryvand from *sir* darius · þe digne Emperour,
 Harraldes on hye horsez · hendly arayede,
 To *sir* philopp þe fers · to fett þair truage. 884
 Kengez þar come · als þe clause tellez,
 Lightyd douñ at þe loge · laftyn þar blonkes,
 Cairen fourth in-to þe courte · to crauen þair dett,
 Tochett titely þare tale · & tribute hym asked. 888
 “3a, ayres hame,” quod alexander · “agayn to your
 kythez,

And says your maister, to me · he make no moo sondez;
 For seth philop had a fressh souñ · þat fast now en-
 cresse[s],¹ 891

That beys not sufferd, I suppose · no suche to hym zeld.
 And says your lord, þe leyue henne · þat lade hir frist Egge,
 Hir body now with baraynte · is barely consumed,
 And so is darius of hys dette · dewly deprived;
 And be þis tale, hym telle · no tribute hym falles.” 896

Than merualett þes messyngers · mykyH of hys speche,
 Hys witt & hys wisdom · þai wonderly praseñ.
 Faire at philip þe fers · þair leue þai fangeñ,
 And syne elene from þe courte · caires to þair landez. 900
 To þe palass of þe proude [king] · to perse þai wenden,
 And dyd þaim to *sir* darius · þare he on dese syttes,
 And tald hym howe is truage · is tyntt aH-togedre,

¹ The lines 890 and 891 are written after line 892 in MS.

- As *Alexander* awyñ mouth · had þaṁ aH enfourmed. 904
 ¶ þen messangirs to Messedoyne · come in þe mene
 Messengers come to tell Philip that the men of Armenia have revolted.
 qwile
 To Ph[ilip] þe feH kyng · & freschly him talð,
 þat aH þe erthe of Ermony · Erles & princes,
 þat suld be suget to him-selfe · wald seke him with
 armes. 908
- And *Alexander* belyfe · as athil mañ sulð,
 Vndirfangid to fezt · for Ph[ilip] to wende,
 Philip invades Armenia.
 Gedirs him a grete ost · graithes him in plates,
 And aires toward Ermony · þat erd to distroy. 912
 þan was a man in Messadone · in þe marche duellid,
 A proued prince & a proude · Pausanna was hattenñ,
 A big berne & a bald · in brenys to ryde,
 þe soñ of ane Cerastis · as þe buke witnes. 916
- rebels against Philip.
 þis freke aH his franche · of Ph[ilip] he haldis,
 And was a suget to him-selfe · & serues him aȝt;
 He had long loved the queen.
 Bot þaṁ he depely many day · disired to haue þe quene,
 And lyes vmlapped with hire lufe · many lange wynter.
 And by¹ þat cause to þe kyng · he kest slik a hate, 921
 þat he desiris his deth · & diȝt^{is} [him] þare-fore.
 AH þe folke of his affinite · he freschly a-semblis, 923
 And sekis furth with a hoge some · a-saile² him to ȝeld.
- Philip goes out against him.
 Queñ Ph[ilip] heris of þat fare · gret ferly hiṁ thinke[s],
 Ferkis furth with a fewe folk · him in þe fild met^{is},
 Seis þe multitude sa mekiH · of men at he brings,
- Philip flees.
 Braidis oñ his blonke toward þe burȝe · & þaim þe bak
 shewis. 928
 þen schrikis schilli aH þe schalkis · & schout^{is} him at
 anes,
- Pausanias pursues.
 And Pausanna þe prince · a-pon a proude stede
 Sprengis out with a spere · & spedis him eftir,
 And þurch þe bæc in-to þe brest · him beris to þe crak; 932

¹ Inserted in the margin.² h inserted before a-saile, but subpuncted.

Als alex[ander] awne mouth · þaim aH had enformed. 904
 þan messyngers to masydoñ · come in þe meyne qwyle,

To philopp þe feH kyng · & felly hym toldyñ,
 þat aH þe erth of ermony · Erelez¹ & princez,
 At suld be sogett to hym-seluen · wald seke hym with
 armez. 908

And alexander als belue · als athett man suld,
 Vnderfonged þar þe fecht · for philip his fader,

And ayers toward ermony · þat erth to distroy. 912

Then was a man in massidon · þat in þe marche dwellyd, [Fol. 6.]

A proved prince & a proude · pausana he heght,
 A Bigg¹ berne & a bald · in brenes to ryde,
 þe sonne of one sorastes · als says me þe text. 916

This freke of all þe fraunches · of kyng philop haldes,
 And was sogett to hym-seluen · & seruage hym awght.
 Bot 3ett depely mony day · desirred he þe whene,
 And leued vnlappyd with hir loue · mony lang wynter. 920

And be þat cause to þe kyng · he kest suche a hate,
 þat he desired hys deyde · & dight hym þarfore.
 AH þe folke of hys affinite · he fresly assemblez, 923

And sekez owt with a hoge some · a-sawte hym to yelde.
 When philip herd of þis fare · grett ferly he thynkez,
 Ferkez forth with a few folke · & hym in feld metes,
 Seys þe multitude so much · of men þat he brynges, 927
 Brades toward þe burgh on hys blonk · & hys bak
 shewys.

þan srikes shilly all þe shalkys² · & shotes at onys,

And pausana þe prince · vpoñ a prounde stede
 Sprynges forth with a spere · & spedes hym after,
 And þorow þe bake in-to þe brest · hym berez to þe erth. 932

¹ The MS. has & baron after Erelez, but crossed through and expuncted.

² all þe is repeated here, but expuncted in MS.

- [Fol. 16 b.] AH warē he wondirly wondid · he wendis noȝt be-lyfe.
His men & aH þe Messadones · fuH mavnly ware
stourbeck,
- Quat of doloure & dyn · quen þai him dede hopid.
- Pausannia þan for þe prowis · slike a pride hentis, 936
Vnethes wist he for welth · winke quat he miȝt.
He prekis in-to þe palais · to puH out þe quene,
Wenys to wild hire æt wiH · & away lede. 939
- Alexander
returns with
an army.
þan comes *Alexander* in þæt eas · þe cronacelis tellis,
With a riall ost · of many able princes,
Airand out¹ of Ermony · & had aH þæt erth woñ;
Sees slike a rottillyng in þe rewme · & ridis al þe faster.
- The queen sees
Alexander
coming.
þaH past vp þe proud quene · in-to *preue* chambre, 944
Wayues out at wyndou · & waytis a-boute,
Saze be þe sygnes & be sike · as with hire soñ comys,
And be þe alyens armes · at he was aH maister.
With þæt scho hablis out hire hede · & heze to him
callis, 948
- “Quare is þi werdes, my wale soñ · þou wañ of þi godis,
þou sukt be victour & venge · & veneust² neuire?
If þou haue³ any hert here · help now þi modire.”
- Sone as pausanna þe prince · with-in þe palais heris 952
þe conyng⁴ of þe kene knyzt · he caires him agaynes,
Presis out of þe palais · with a⁴ pake armed,
And metes him in þe myd-fild · with a mekill nounbre.
And *Alexander* be-lyue · quen he on him waites, 956
He swyngis out with a swerd · & swappis him to dethe;
And þe renkis, aH the route · reches vp þaire wapen
Vn-to þis kid conquirour · & eried eftir soeure.
- who kills him.
þaH was þar ane in þe ost · oñ *Alexander* callis, 960
Sayd, “Ph[ilip] þi fadire · is in þe fild drepid.”
And he halis furth on hede · & halfe-dede him fyn lis,
Brusches doune by þe berne · & bitterly wepis.
- Alexander is
told that his
father is mortally
wounded.

¹ *Inserted in the margin.*² MS. *veneustis*.³ MS. *haue* *hate*, altered to *haue*.⁴ *Above the line.*

He heldes douñ in þe hey way · & halfe deyde liggez, 933*
 And was so wonderly woundit · he wenyd noght to leve. 933
 Hys men & aH þe masidons · fuH fowly wer stourblett,

What for doloure & dyne · when þai hym dede hopeñ.
 Pausana for þees prowes · slike a pride hentes, 936
 That vneth he¹ wist for welth · what he wirke might.
 He prekes into þe palace · to puH owt þe whene,
 Wenes to wilde hir at wiH · & away lede.

þan comes eueñ onon · þe cronacles telles, 940

Alexander with ane oste · of mony able princez,

Ayrand owt of Ermony · hed aH þe erth wonne;

2^a victoria
alexandri

Herd suche a rastelyng in þe realm · & rydez þe faster.

Than passyd forth þe proude whene · into a preuay chamber,

Wayfez vp a wyndow · & waytes þar-owt, 945

Sees wele by signes · at hir sonne come,

And by þe alyens armes · þat he was aH mayster.

With þat she haldez forth hir heued · & hegh to hym
 calles : 948

[Fol. 6 b.]

“Whare er þi werdes, my wale sonñ · þou wan of þi goddez,

Thu suld be victour to venge · & venkest neuer?

Yf þou haue ony hert her · help now þi moder.”

Sone as pausana in þe place · þis tale herys, 952

And þe commyng of þis kene knyght · he earys hym ayayns,

Preses owt of þe palasse · with a pake enarmed,

And metes hym in þe myd-feld · with a much nowmbre.

Bot alexander als belyfe · as he on hym wates, 956

He swyngez owt a sharpe swerde · & hym to deth swappys;

And þen hys renkez aH in rowte · rechen vp þar waypynnez

Vnto þis kyd conquerour · & cryeñ aftir socour. 959

þen sayd þar an with-in þe ost · & oñ alexander calles,

Sayd: “philip þi fader · is in þe feld drepyd.”

And he hyes þen fast forth · & halfe-deyde hym fyndez,

Brushys down by þe berne · & bitterly wepys.

¹ MS. hy, corrected to he.

- [Fol. 17.] “A! *Alexander!*” *quod* þe kyng · “now am I at¹ ane ende;” 964
 A litiH liftis vp his liddis · & lokis in his face;
 “Bot ȝit it gladis me,” *quod* þe gome · “to ȝa þus to deth,
 To se my slaare in my sizt be sa sone ȝolden, 967
 A! wele be þe, my wale soñ” · & waged *with* his hede;
 “þou has baldly oñ my bane · & bremely me vengid.”
 With þot he bloȝirs in þe brest · & þe breth stoppis,
 and dies. And in a spediuH space · so þe sprete ȝeldis.
 And *Alexander* ay oñ-ane · augirly he wepis, 972
 And gretis for him as greuously · as he him geten hade.
 With barons & bachelers · him broȝt to þe cite,
 Alexander And erdis him in his awen erd · as Emperour fallis.
 buries him. The day efter his deth · drecerly him wendis 976
Alexander his aire · & syttis in his trone,
 He assumes A clene croune oñ his hede · elustird *with* *gemmes*,
 the crown, To se how him seme wald · þe sete of his fadire.
 He seis downe in þe sete · *with* *septer* in hande, 980
 and summons all his knights. Makis a crie þot aH þe curte · kniȝtis & erles
 Suld put þaim in-to *presens* · his precep to here.
 And aH comyn at a kaH · & oñ kneis heldis; 983
 He addresses them. þan blisches he to his baronage · & breues þiȝ wordis:
 “Lo! maistirs of Messedone · sa mizty meñ & noble,
 ȝe Traces & of Tessaloyne · & ȝe þe trewe Grekis,
 How likis ȝow nowe ȝour lege lord? · lokis oñ my
 fourme, 987
 “Dismiss all fear. And letis aH ferdschip at flee · & fange vp ȝour hertis,
 And aires for mane alyens · quils *Alexander* lastis.
 For *with* þe graunt of my god · I gesse, or I dye,
 þot aH the Barbare blode · saH bowe to my-selfe.
 þare is na region ne rewme · ne renke vnder heuen, 992
 Ne nouthir quare na naciõ · bot it saH my name loute.
 For we of grece saH haue þe gree · *with* *grace* ay to wilþ,
 And anely be ouer þe werd · honored & prayse.

[Fol. 17 b.]

¹ Inserted at the end of the line.

"Aa! alexander, sonñ!" quod þis atheH · "[now] am I
att on ende." 964

A lityH lyftes hys lendes · & lukes in hys face;

"Bot 3ett me gladdes," quod þis gome · "to hyde þus on
lyve,

To see my slaer in my sight · be so sone 3holden. 967

A! wele be þou, wale son" · & wagged with hys heued;

"For þou hase baldly on my bane · & bremely me venged."

With þat he blothers in þe brest · & hys breth stoppys,

And in a spedfuH space · þe spirit he 3eldez.

Bott alexander euerlike · awgerdly pleynez, 972

And grettes for hym als grefully · as he hym gettyn hed. Nota mortem
philippi, &c.

With barons & with bachelers · he bare hym to þe cyte,

And erdes hym in hys awne erth · as emperour falles.

The day after hys deth · þen durely he¹ wendes 976

Alexander hys ayre · vppe in hys awne trone,

A clere croune on hys heued · clustird with gemmys,

To se how he¹ seme wald · þe sete of hys fader.

He sittes down in þat sete · with septour in hand, 980

Makes a cry þat aH þe courte · knyghtez & Erelez

Suld come & be present · hys precept to here.

And aH þai come at hys calle · & on kneys heldit,

þan blysssez he vnto hys bernes · & breues þes wordez: 984

"Lo! maisterlynges of massydoñ · so myghty & so noble, [Fol. 7.]

Ye tracez of thessaloñ · & ye trew grekez,

How likez now you your leege lord? · loke on my forme,

And lettes aH ferdshipys² flee · & fongez vpp your hertes,

And arghes for no aliens · whilse alexander lefys. 989

For with þe graunt of my god · I gesse, or I dye,

þat aH þe barberon blode · saH bow to my seluen.

Thare is no region ne realm · so riche vnder heuen, 992

Ne noþer-whare no nacion · bot saH my name lowte.

For we of grece sal haue þe gre · with grace ay to weld,

And only ouer aH þe world · be honourd & prassed.

¹ read him.

² MS. frendshipys.

Whoever wants
arms, let him
take them."

And quilk of aH myne athiH meñ · þat any armes
wantis, 996

All the old
knights reply,
saying,

Lat pas in-to my palais · & plates him delyuire,
And he¹ at of his awen has · harnas him swythe,
And make him boune ilka berne · to bataiH to ride."
þan answard him *with* [a] voice · aH his prouð princes,
And Erles in his Empire · þat ware in eld striken, 1001
Hathils of hiȝe age · Auncient kniȝtis,
Barons & bachelers · & bryssid ware in Armes :

" Our strength
fails us.

" Sire, we hafe farne to þe fiȝt · & bene in fild preued
With ser Ph[ilip] ȝour fadire · mony fele wynter, 1005
And now vs failis aH oure force · & oure flesch waykis ;
For be þe flour neuer sa fresche · it fadis at þe last.

Our heads cannot
bear the helmet.

Sire, aH þe ȝeris of oure ȝouthe · es ȝare syne passid,
And we for-trauailid & terid · þat now oure topp haris,
Al to heuy to be hildid · in any here wedis, 1010
Or any angwische of armes · any mare suffire.

We beseech you
to let us go.

For-þi, lord, *with* ȝoure leue · we lawe ȝow be-sechis
We may noȝt stand now in stede · oure strenth is [to]
febiH.

Choose younger
men."

Wale ȝow oper werriouris · þat wiȝt ere & ȝonger,
Slike as ere stife in a stoure · strakis to thole."

" Nay,"
says the king,
" I want old men,

" Nay, be my croune," *quod* þe king · " my couatyng is
elder 1016

who are wary."

All praise his
choice.

þe sadnes of slike meñ · þan swyftnes of childir ;
For barnes in þar bignes · it baldis þam mekiH,
Oft *with* vnprouednes in presse · to pas out of lyfe ;
For-thi ouer-siȝt of alde men · I anely me chese ; 1020
Be comynge & be consaile · þai kyth ai þar werkis."
þe sleȝt of hys² sapience · þai seleuthely prayse,
And clene a-cordis to his carpe · kniȝtis & othire.
¶ þen dose him furthe þis dere kyng · a litiH dais eftir,
Alexander with ane ost · of many athiH dukis, 1025

[Ed. 1s.]

¹ *Inserted at the end of the line.*

² *þar, altered to hys.*

And whilk of aH my atheH men · any armour wantes, 996

Bot passe into my palasse · & plates hym delyver,
And he þat of hys awne hase · harnes hym swith,
And make hym bowne euerylke berne · to bateH to wend."

þen answerd hym with a voyce · aH hys proude princez
And Ereles of hys Empire · þat wer in elde stryken, 1001

Hatels¹ of hegh age · & auancet knyghtez,

Barons & bachelers · þat bresyd wer in armys :

"Sir, we haue faren in-to feld² · & ben in feld² preuett

With sir philip your fader · many fele wyntre, 1005

And now vs falez aH our force · & owr fleche wakens ;

For be þe floure neuer so freshe · it fades at þe last.

Sir, aH þe ȝeres of owr youth · bene ȝare syne passyd, 1008

And we for-traveld & for-tyred · þat now owr topp horez,

AH to hevy to be hold · with ony here wedes,

Or ony awnterez of armes · to any more suffre.

For-þi, lorde, with your leve · we loughly besekes, 1012

We may noght stande you in stede · our strenthez er to
feble.

Lat wale you other weriowrs · þat wight er & yonge,

Sike as styffe er in stowre · strakez to dele."

"Nay, by my Corone," quod þe kyng · "my covetyng is
helder . . . 1016

The sadnesse of suche men · þen swyftnes of childer ;

For barnez in þair bignes · þat beldez þaim to mekyH,

Oft with vnpro[ued]nes³ in prese⁴ · passen owt of liue ;

For-þi ouersight of ald men⁵ · I anely me chese ; 1020

By Connyng¹ & conseH · þai kythen ay þar Werkez."

[Fol. 7 b.]

So þe sleght of hys sapience · þai selcouthly praseñ,

And clene acordes to hys carpyng¹ · knyghtez & othre.⁶

Than dose hym furth þe derfe kyng¹ · a lityH days aftir,

Alexander with ane ost · of mony atheH dukez, 1025

¹ So in MS.

² MS. repeats feld.

³ MS. vnprones.

⁴ MS. prorse, corrected to prese.

⁵ MS. almen.

⁶ MS. othree.

- Samed a vnsene somme · to saile he begynnes
 He goes towards Italy. Ouer in-to ytaile · þa yles to distruye.
 In-to þe coste of Calodone · he comes him ouer first,
 He assaults Chalcedon. And þar a cite he asailes · &¹ in sege lengis. 1029
 Bot wees wigtly with-in · þe wallis ascendid,
 Freschly fendid of · & fersly with-stude.
 He calls on its warriors to fight to the death, "3e Calodoyns," quod þe kyng · he callis fra with-
 oute, 1032
 "Outhire macches 3ow maynly þerto · or namely dies,
 And fytis fast with 3our fais · to 3e fey worthe,
 Or 3efes 3arely vp þe 3erde · & 3eld me þe cite."
 or to yield at once. So chaunes it þis chiitan · or he a-cheued þine, 1036
 þat fele he brenes of þa bernes · & þe burȝe wynnes,
 And caires so out of Calodone · quen he it couerid had,
 He enters Italy. Ouer þe ythes in-to Italee · & þat Ile entirs. 1039
 þeñ ware þai² [relles of] rede · aH redd of his come,
 The Romans give him 60,000 besants. Þreȝ him aH of þe pees · & presandis him faire,
 Sexti thousand þai him send · of sekire besandis,
 Of clere gold of þaire kist · & coruns a hundrethe.
 þare tuke he tribute þat tyme · þe titiH recordis, 1044
 Out eyn in-to þe occident · of aH at þare duellid,
 He lays Europe under tribute, and goes to Africa. Of qwilke þe erde & þe erthe · Europe was callid,
 And ames þañ to Affrike · & aH at esse leues.
 þan razt he fra þa regions · & remowed his ost, 1048
 Cachis in-to anopire kythe · & crossis ouer þe stremes,
 Aires in-to Affrike · with many athiH prince[s],
 He wins Africa. Anopir wing of þe werd · & wynnes it be-lyfe,
 þat syde sodanly & some · þat ser he a-cheues. 1052
 For þar he fande bot fewe · þat felly withstude,
 Na ridars in þa³ regions · ne rebell bot littiH;
 He laches it þe liztlyere · as was þe les wonder.
 Fol. 13 b.] þan kaires he fra þo contres · & kerue[s] ouer þe
 stremes, 1056
 Furthe to Frantites he ferl · slike a ferre Ile,

¹ Above the line.² MS. þe.³ MS. na, corrected to þa.

Sampnez ane vnsene some · to sayle he begynnez

Oure in-to Itale · þe yleze to distroy.

In-to þe cost of calydoñ · he commez on first, 1028

And þar a cyte assalez · and in a sege lenges.

Bot wies wightly *with-in* · þe wallez ascendyñ,

Freshly defendyng^t of · & fersly *with-standyñ*.

"Yhe calodons," quod þe kyng · and [calles] from *with-*
owte, 1032

"Owther mache yow manly¹ þarto · or maynly dyez,

And feght fast *with* þouere faes · to yhe faye worthen,

Or yevez zarelly vp þe zerd · and gefes me vp þe cite."

So chauncez it þat cheftan · or he achevet þine, 1036

That fele he britens of þa bernez · & þe burgh wynnez.

þen carez owt of calidoñ · when he it coueryd hadde,

Owre þe yleze of ytale · & þa yleze entrees.

And þai wer redles of-ragthe² · of þis kengez commyng,

Prayed hym all for þe pease · & present hym faire, 1041

Sexty thousand hym sendes · of sekyr besandez,

Of clere gold of þair kystez · and corownez a hundreth.

Thare tuke he tribute þat tyme · as þe text recorder, 1044

Owt onon into þe occident^t · of aH þat þar dwellyd,

Of þe whilke þe erth · of Ermony is callyd,

And amez hym toward aufrike · & aH at ease leues.

Than raught he from þe regions · & rowmyd hys oste, 1048

Cachez into an-other kyth · & crosez ouer þe stremez,

Ayrez hym into aufrik · *with* mony athell princez,

An-other wyng of þe werld · wynnes it belyue,

þat syde sodanly & sone · þat sire hym achevys. 1052

For þar he fand bott few · to fersly hym *with-stande*,

Ne ryders in þat regions · ne rebellez bot lityH;

And he þaim laught all þe lighter · as was les wondre.

þen cairez he fro þoes cuntrees · & kerues ouer þe
stremes, 1056

Forth to francides he fared · suche a ferme yle,

[Fol. 8.]

¹ MS. *maly*, corrected by later hand to *manly*.

² So in MS.; both MSS. corrupt.

Seches þar to a synagoge · him-selfe & his princes,
 He goes to the temple of Ammon. Amon þar awen god · at þai honoure myȝt. 1059
 And so to þe temple as he tiȝt · with his¹ tid̃ Erles,
 On the way he sees a huge hart. þaȝ metis him myddis þe way · was meruale to sene,
 A hert with a huge hede · þe hareest oȝ erthe,
 Was to be-hald as a harow · for-helid ouer þe tyndis ;
 And þaȝ comande him þe kyng · kenely to schote, 1064
 Bot þar was na maȝ so nemyȝ · þat him hit couthe.
 He draws a bow, and shoots it ; “ A ! hilla, haile,” quod Alexander · & him a narawe
 hent,
 Droȝe, & at þe first draȝte · him dreped for euire.
 Fra þethen to þis ilk day · þan is þat ilke place, 1068
 þe stede þar þis stith maȝ · strik̃is þis hert,
 the place is still called Sagittarius. Sagittarius forsoth · meȝ gafe it to name,
 And wiȝ do for þat ilke werk · ay qwen þe werd turnes.
 Alexander offers to Ammon. þen aires him oȝ ser Alexander · tiȝ Amoȝ temple,
 Offirs to his awen gode · & honours him faire, 1073
 Geuys him garsons of gold · & of gud stanes,
 And hald hestes him to hete · him hettirly besekis.
 He comes to a place with 15 towns, þan passes he þethen with his princes · to siȝ a place
 wend̃is, 1076
 Capho Resey we rede · þe romaunce it callis ;
 And þar-in fyndis him þe freke · fyftene Burghes,
 and 12 rivers. And glidand to þe grete see · xij gryȝ waters.
 Of ilka bilȝ, sais þe buke · barred was þe ȝatis, 1080
 Stoken stifly with-out · with staplis & cheynes.
 He halts there. þare lengis him lefe þe¹ kyng · & logis aȝ a neuen,
 And sacrifyce þar efsones² · to many sere godis.
 He sees Serapis in a dream, [Fol. 19.] þe same niȝt in his slepe · Seraphis aperis, 1084
 Anothire of his grete godis · in a gryȝ fourme,
 Cled in a comly clathe · of castans hewes,
 And silis euyȝ to him-selfe · & said him þir wordis :
 “ Alexander, athiȝ kyng ” · & asperly spekis, 1088
 Toward a miȝti montayne · him mynt̃is with his
 fynger,

¹ At the end of the line.² Read eftsones.

Sekes þar to a synagoge · hym-selfe & hys princez,
 Amone þar awne god · þat þai adour mighten,
 And so to hys tempyH to-teght^t · aH with hys tried Ereles.
 Than met þaim in myd way · was meruale to see, 1061
 Ane hert with a hoge heued · þe aughfulest on erth,
 Was to behald as a harrow · foreheld ouer with tyndez;
 And þan Comandez þaim þe kyng · kenely to shote, 1064
 Bot þar was no man so nemyH · þat hym hit couth.
 “A! eueH hale!” quod alexander · & an arow hyntes,

Drogh, and at þe frist draught · hym dreyd for euer.
 Fro þine þan vnto þis day · þan is þat ilke place, 1068
 The stede þar þis styffe man · strikez þis hert,
 Sagittarius for soth · men seggeñ it to name,
 And wiH do for þat ilke deyd · ay to þe world lastes.
 Than ayrez hym on *sir alexander* · to þe amonez temple,
 Offers to hys awne god · & honours hym faire, 1073
 Gyffez hym garsons¹ of gold · and other gude stanez,
 And held hestez hym to hete · heterly besekez.
 Than passid he þine with hys princez · to sicke a place
 wendes, 1076

Chaipho rosey we rede · þe romanys it telles;
 And þarin fyndez þe freke · fyftene burges,
 And glydand to þe grett see · twelfe gret waters.
 Off ilke belde, says þe buke · barred was þe zates, 1080
 Stoken styfly withowte · with barrez of yren.
 Thare lengez þe leue kyng · & loges aH an eueñ,
 And sacrificed þar eft-sones · to mony sere goddez.
 The same nyght in hys slepe · serapys appered, 1084
 An-other of hys grett goddez · & in a grymme forme,
 Clede in a clath · of castanez colour,
 And syles euen to hym-selfe · & sayd hym þees wordez:
 “A! alexander, ateh² kyng” · and asperly spekys,
 And toward a myghty mountane · hym myntyd with hys
 fynger, 1089

¹ MS. garfons.² So in MS.

"May þou ȝt, lede, þe ȝonder lawe · lyft oñ þi schulder,
And stire it oute of þe stede · & stable in a-nothire?"

He answers,
"Nay."

"Nay, qua miȝt þat," *quod* þe mañ · "for mede vndire
heuen?" 1092

Serapis pro-
phesies that
Alexander's name
shall endure as
long as the
mountain.
Alexander asks
when his death
will come.

"Sire, as ȝone ȝondire hiȝe hiȝ · saȝ ay hald his place,
So sall þi name fra now furth · be mynned in mynde,
And ay to þe day of dome · þi dedis be remenbrid."

þan *Alexander* belyue · him askis a demaunde, 1096

"I be-seche þe now, Syraphas · if þou me say wald¹
þe prophecy, or þou pas · of aȝ my playñ werdis, 1099
How me is destayned to dye · & quen my day fallis?"

Serapis says it is
better for him not
to know;

"Sire, certayne," *quod* Seraphis · "as to my-selfe
thinkis, 1101

For any hathiȝ vnder heuen · I hald for þe better,
Withoute wa² noȝt at wete · þe wathe of his ende
þeñ know³ þe cas or it come · & ay in care lenge. 1104

but he will be
poisoned while
still yȝung.

Bot neuer-þe-des I saȝ þe neuē · señ þou me now prays,
þou sall⁴ be drechid of a drinke · a draȝte of vnsele,

And aȝ þi ȝeris ere ȝeten ȝare · & þi ȝouthe fenyst, 1107
Lange or þou haue meten þe merke · of þi mydill aȝe.

Bot quen ne in quat time · sal qwaite þe þis aunter,
Enquire me noȝt þat question · for I queth þe it neuer.

Another oracle
will tell him
more.

For outhire out of þe orient · saȝ openly here-ester
Vndo þe drest of þi days · & þi ded teȝ. 1112

þaȝ waynest him þis vayne god · & voidis fra þe
chambre.

þe modi kyng on þe morne · aȝ monand he ryses;

[Fol. 19 b.]

þe mast parti of his princes · & of his proud ost
Hastis þaȝ in-to Ascoiloym · & þar þai him bydis. 1116

He calls his
carpenters,

þan callis he to hiȝ carpentaris · & comandis þaim
swyþe

¹ After l. 1097 the MS. has a half-line, viz. 'For any hathiȝ vndire heuen.' This is really the former half of l. 1102 below, and is marked for omission in the MS. This accounts for the omission of l. 1098 in the numbering, which is made to agree with Stevenson's edition.

² MS. to noȝt at wete; but either to, or at, must be omitted.

³ The w above the line.

⁴ MS. sall sal.

"May þou oght, lede, yond[e]r low · lift on þi shulder,
And stere it owt of one stede · & stablet in ane other?"

"Nay, wha myȝt þat," quod þe mañ, · "for mede vnder
heuen?" 1092

"Sir, as yonder hye hille · saH hald ay hys place,
So saH þi name owt of nowmbre · be nomyn in-to mynde, [Fol. 8 b.]
And vnto þe day of dome · þi dedes be remenbryd."

Than alexander als belyue · hym askys a demande, 1096

"I beseke þe, sir serapys · yf þou me say wald¹
þe prophecy or þou passe · of aH my playne werdes, 1099
How me is destanet to dye · & when my day fallez?"

"Sir, certainly," quod seraphys · "als to my-seluen
thynkez, 1101

To ony atheH vnder heuen · I hald it for þe better,
With-owtyn wa noȝt to witte · þe wothe of hys ende
Ne know þe cause or it come · & ay in care lenge. 1104

Bot neuer-þe-lesse I saH þe neven · sen þou me prayes,
Thu saH be drenchett with a drinke · a draught of vnclene,
And aH þe yherez þar · in þi youth fynyshytt,

Lange or þou metyn haue þe merke · of þi medyH age.
Bott when ne in what age or tyme · saH falle þis awentur,
Inquire me noght þis question · I queth it þe neuer. 1110

For other owt of þe orient · saH openly hereafter
Vnto² þe droȝt of þi days · & þi deth to³ telle." 1112

þan vanyshit þis wayn god · & woydez from þe
chawmbre.

The mody kyng on þe morne · aH murnand he risez,
þe moste party of hys princez · & of hys proude otez
Bound to ascolon · and þar hym abydez. 1116

Than callyd he to hys carpenters · comand þaim
swythe

¹ Line 1098 is omitted in the numbering; see note on p. 56.

² So; for Vndo.

³ Better omitted.

and builds
Alexandria.

In mynde & in memory of him · to make a cite,
And neuens it his awen name · þat neuer syne changid,
Bot Alexsander ay furth · efter him-seluen.¹ 1120

¶ Sextus passus Alexandri.

He goes to
Egypt.

Now airis he furthe with his ost · to Egist he
thinke; ;

There he finds a
black image.

And clene aH þe contre · quen þai his come herd,
As he had bene a hiȝe gode · þai ȝode him a-gayn,
Resaued him with reuerence · & to þar rewme lede. 1124
þere entirs him þat Emperoure · & in þat erd findis
Of Anec his awen sire · ane ymage of sable,
A berne was of blake stane · aH þe body hewen
With conyschance of a kynge · with² corōn & septe.

He inquires who
it is.

þan askis of þam Alexander · as he þar-on lokis, 1129
Quat maner of mañ apōn mōk^l · it was made efter?

He is told it is
Anectanabus.

“Sire, Anectabus” · quod aH with a steuen,
“þat aH þe erth of Egipte · enerid ymquile.” 1132

He weeps,
saying, “It is my
own father.”

With þat þe flammand flode · feH in his eȝen,
“þat Anec,” quod þis athil kyng · “was myne awen
fadire.”

He goes to Syria.

þan fallis he flat oñ þe fold · & þe fete kyssis;
Oñ þe stane quare it stode · stilly he mournes. 1136

Then to
Damascus.
[Fol. 20.]

Syne in-to Sirie with his seggis · he soȝt at þe gaynest,
And þai² as baratours bald · him bigly with-standis,
Set oñ him sadly · & sloȝe of his kniȝtis;
Bot ȝet ȝarely are he ȝode · þai ȝald him þe regne. 1140

He besieges
Tyre.

þan drafte he sa to Damac · with dukis & princes,
And sone he sesyd aH þat syde · & Sydoyne he takis,
And þen trussis him to Tyre · & þare his tentis settis
Be-syde þe cite with a soñe · & in a seȝe lengys. 1144
þare he lies with his ledis · lang or he foundes,
Before þe burȝe with his bernes · & mekiH bale suffirs.

¹ callid added in a later hand, at the end of the line.

² Inserted at the end of the line.

In mynde & memory of hym · to make þar a cite,
 And after his ¹ awne name · þat neuer syne chaungett,²
 Alexander ay forth · after hym-selueñ. 1120

Sextus Passus.

Now ayers he forth with hys Ereles, · to egiþ he
 wendes ;

And elene aH þe cuntree · when þai hys comyng harde,
 Als he hed ben a hegh god · þai halden hym agayns,
 Resaved hym with reuerence · & to þair realm ledyn.
 Thare entrez hym þe Emperour · and in þat erth fyndez
 Of anec hys awne syre · ane ymage of sabyH,
 A berne was of blak stane · aH þe body eueñ 1127

With conyshaunce of kynges · corōñ and septur in hand.
 Than askys he þaim alexander · als he þar-on wates,
 What maner of man vpon mold · þat was merkyd after ?
 “Sir, anec,” quod aH men · with a sterne steven,
 “That þe erth of egipt¹ · enhered some tyme.” 1132

With þat þe femand flode · flashed in hys eghen, [Fol. 3.]
 “That anec,” quod þis atheH kyng · “my awne fadre
 was.”

þan falez he flatt on þe fold · & þe fote kyssez
 Of þat stane þat stode · & styilly murnez. 1136

Syne into surry with hys seggez · he soght þe ganest,
 And þai as baratours bald · hym bigly withstandyn,
 Set vppon hym sadly · & slew of hys knyghtez ;
 Bot 3arle or he 3ode · þai 3olde hym vp þe realm. 1140
 Than draue he so to Damask · with dokez & princez,
 And sone he sesys aH þat syde · and sy[do]ne he takez,
 And þen he trussys hym to tyre · & þar hys tentes settes
 Besyde þe site with a somme · & in a sege lengez. 1144
 þair he lay with hys ledes · lange or he fondytt,
 Before þe burgh with hys bernes · & muche bale suffred.

¹ MS. myne ; *wrongly*.

² MS. chaauungett.

His men grow
weary, and
complain.

Quat of ane, quat of ¹ opire · oft his oste pleynes,
For wele wist þai þam nane · to wyñ to þe cite, 1148
It was sa stiffe & sa strang^r · & stalworthly wallid,
And² so hedously hiȝe · it was a huge wondire,
Tildid fuł of turestis · & toures of defence,

The strong forts
of Tyre.

Batailid & bretagid · a-boute as a casteł. 1152
þe wawis of þe wild see · apoñ þe wallis betis,
þe pure populande hurle³ · passis it vmby,
It was enforced with sa fele · fludis & othire, 1155
It semed neuer sege vnder soñ · be saute it to wyñ.

He builds a vast
tower.

þan etils him sir Alexander · & belyue makis
Be-side þe cite in þe See · to sett vp a loge,
A hiȝe tilde as a toure · teldid oñ schippis,
þat miȝt na Naue for þat note · neȝe to þe cite. 1160
Quen he þis baisteł had bild · vþ to þe burȝe wallis,
And tiȝt him as tyme was · þe toune to assaił,

His men are
famished,

Slik mischife in þe mene quile · emang^r his men fallis,
For megire & for meteles · ware mervaille to here. 1164
þar was Princes in poynt · to perisch for euire,
Alle in doute to be dede · dukis & erlis,

and nearly die of
hunger.

In fere to be famyschist · many fers kniȝtis,
For þar is na wa in þe werd · to þe wode hunger. 1168
þan pleynis him þe prouł kyng · þe pete of his meñ,

He sends to
Jerusalem.

And sendis out his sandis-meñ · with selid lettirs,
To ierusalem to laudis · at þe iewes teches, 1171

[Fol. 20 b.]

þat was þe bischoþ in þat burȝe · breuyd in þa dais ;

He demands help
and more men.

Him moneste as a maister · him¹ mayñly to send^t
Fresch folke for þe fiȝt · & fode for his oste,
And ał þe trouage þare to him · tittly to wayne,
þat he to Darius of dewe · was dangirł to paye. 1176
And ȝit comand^t he þis clerke · þe kyng^r in his writtes,
For any richas him redis · rather^e to thole

He tells them it is
better to serve
Greeks

þe mayntenance of þe Messedoyns · & of þe meri
Grekis,

¹ Inserted at the end of the line.

² MS. And þai ; but þai is better omitted. ³ read perle.

What of o þing, whatt of oþir · ofte hys oste plenys,
 For wele trowde þai þan · none to wynne to þe cite, 1148
 It was so stilfe & so strang · & so stalworthly wroght,
 And so hydusly hye · þat was A grett wondre,
 Tyldet fuH of torrettes · & towrez of defencez,
 Bateld & britagett · abowt as a casteH. 1152

The wawes of þe wilde see · vpon þe walle betyn,
 The pure populand perle · passyd it vmbē,
 It was enforسد so wele · with flodez & other, 1155
 þar semed neuer sege vnder þe soñ · by sawte it to wynne.
 Than etellez hym *sir alexander* · & als belyue makes

Besyde þe cite in þe see · to sett vp a loge,
 A hye tylde as a towre · tyldet of shippes,
 þat might no navy for þat note · negh to þe haven. 1160
 When he þis basteff had byggyd · nere þe burgh walles,
 And tight hym as tyme was · þe burgh to assaylle,
 Such mischefe in þe meynne tyme · vppon þe men fallez,
 For meger & for metelesse · wer mervell to telle. 1164

Thare wer princez in plite · to perische for euer,
 Añ in dowte to [be] dede · dukez & Ereles,
 In fere to be famyshyd · mony ferce knyghtez,
 For þar is [na] wa in werld · to þe wod hunger. 1168

Than rewys hym þe proude kyng · þe pyte of hys meñ,
 And sendys forth sendesmen · with selett *lettres*,

[Fol. 9 b.]

To Ierusalem to Iawdez · þat þe Iewes teches,
 þat of þat burgh was byshoþ · brevyd in þo dayes; 1172
 He monyshytt hym as a minister · hym manly to sende
 Fresh folk for þe fight · & fode for þe folke,

Epistola.

And añ þair truage · tyte to hym wayfe,
 That he to Darius of dew · was dangert to pay. 1176
 And 3it command he þis clerke · þe kyng in hys writtez,
 For any richez he redes · rather to chese
 The mayntenaunce of massidons · & of þe mony grekez,

than Persians.

þaū þaim¹ of Persy to pay · or to plesse authere. 1180

þaū takis þe bischop þe breue · & buzes to a chambre,
Resayued it *with reuerence* · & redis it² ouire,
Gase him down be degrece · a-gayne to þe sale,
Swiftly to þe swiars · & þaū his sware zeldis : 1184

The bishop of
Jerusalem says
he will never go
against Darius.

“Sirs, airis a gayn to Alexander · & aH þus³ him tellis,
þat me was done many day · depely to swere,
Neuer Persy to paire · to pas *with myne armes*
In damaging of Darius · durand his lyfe.” 1188

Alexander is
wrath, and vows
to teach them
better.

Sone as þe wale kyng wist · he writhis him vnfaire,
“Now be þat god,” quod þe gome · “þat gatt me on
erthe,

I saH anes on þe iewis · enioyne or I die, 1191
SaH keñ þaū quas comandment · to kepe at þam
faH.”

He sends men
out on the
‘foray of Gadirs.’

3it for na torfar him tid · Tyre wald he nozt leue,
Bot chese him out a chiftane · & charge[s] him belyue,
A mody man, *ser Meliager* · a maister of his⁴ oste,
To fande him furth *with a flote* · of fyue hundreth
kniztis ; 1196

Meliager and
Sampson enter
[Fol. 21.]
the valley,

A[nd] loynes him to Iosaphat · his iourney to⁵ take,
And aH þe pastours & þe playnes · prestly to driue,
And bring in aH þe bestaH · barayn & othire,
þat he miȝt se oñ any syde · þe cite of Gadirs. 1200
þaū mouys he on, *ser Meliager* · þis miȝtifull prince
With a soume of sekir men · & Sampson þaū ledis,
A renke at in þa regions · had redyn oft sythis,
And knew þe costis & þe kitthis · elene aH-to-gedire.
þus zede þai furthe egirly · & entirs þe vaile, 1205
And slike a prai þaū apreuek · as pyne were to rekeñ,
Bryngis furthe, sayd þe boke · bestis out of nounbre,⁶
And trottes oñ toward Tyre · *with taite* at paire hertis.
Bot or þai meten ware a myle · þe meris *with-oute*n,

and take a great
number of cattle.

¹ MS. þaim. ² *Inserted at the end of the line.* ³ MS. þus.

⁴ MS. his. ⁵ MS. to to ; *with former* to struck out.

⁶ MS. mounbre.

þen þaim of *perse* to pay · or to please owder. 1180
 Than takez þe Bishop þe breue · & to chawmbre bownes,
 Ressaves it *with reuerence* · & redos it ouer,
 Gase hym downe be degrece · ayayn to þe sale,
 Swythly to þe swyers · & þaim þe sware zeldez : 1184
 "Sirres, ayres agayn to *alexander* · & all þus hym tellys, *Epistola.*
 That me was done mony day · deply to swere,
 Neuer *perse* to pare · ne *passe with none armez*
 In damagyng of *darius* · endurand hys lyue." 1188
 When þe wale kyng wist · he wex wode wroth,
 "Now by god," *quod* þe grome · "þat gatt me on
 erth,
 I saH seche Iewres on þe Iewes · enys¹ or I dye,
 SaH kenne whoys commaundement · þat þaim to kepe
 fallez. 1192
 3it for no torfer þat he tyde · tyre wald he noght leue,
 Bot chesez hym owt a chiftane · & chargez hym belyue,
 A mody man, *sir meliager*, · a maister of hys oste,
 To founde forth *with a flete* · of fyfe hundreth knyghtez ;

 And iniones hym to Iosaphatt · hys Iornay to make, 1197
 And aH þe pastours & þe playnes · prestly to² dryve,
 Bot bring in all þes bestes · bareñ & other,
 þat he might see in ony syde · þe cite of Gadars. 1200
 Than mefes on *sire Meliager* · þis mightfuH prince
 Wyth a soume of syker meñ · & sampson þaim ledes,
 A renke þat in þa regions · had rydyn oft sythez,
 And knew þe costez & þe kythez · clene aH-to-geder. 1204
 þus hyed þai forth egerly · & entird þe wale,
 And suche a pray þaim preved · als pyne wer to rekeñ,
 Bringez forth, als says þe buk · bestes owt of nowmbre, [Fol. 10.]
 And trottes on toward tyre · *with ioy* at þair hertes. 1208
 Bot or þai metyn hed a myle · þe mers with-out,³

¹ read enioine.² MS. de.³ MS. were out.

- þar metis þam with a mekill flote · þe maister of þe
playnes,
He þat was duke of þe¹ droues · & of þe derfe hillis,
One Theosellus withstands Alexander's men. Ane Theosellus, a tulke · þat tened þam vnfaire. 1212
He girdis in with¹ a ging¹ · armed in plates,
Alto-brantes oure bernis · & brathly woundid,
Fellis fele at a fruschi · fey to þe gronde,
And many renke at he roue · rase neuer efter. 1216
Sir Meleager fights manfully. þan was ser Meliager moued · & maynly debat^{is},
Fling^{is} out on a fole · with a feß spere,
Gers many grete syre grane · & girdis þurze maillis,
And many bernis at a braide · in his brath endis. 1220
So do Sampson And Sampson on anothire side · setis out belyue,
Bruschis furth on a blonk · brymly he smyt^{is},
Betis on with a brande · broken was his lance,
Hewis down of þa hirdis · hurt^{is} þam vn-faire. 1224
and Aristes. Arystes, ane athill man · ai elike fyt^{is},
Spirris out with a spere · & spedis his myt^{is},
And noyed of þare note-men · at þe nete kepik^l,
And many bald, or he blaⁿ · brozt out o-lyue. 1228
Caulus also distinguishes himself. Caulus, anothire knyt · on a kene stede,
On Theosellus in twa · his tymbre he brekis ;
And þan he dryfes to þe duke · as demys þe text^{is},
And with a swyng of a swerd · swappis of hes hede. 1232
[Fol. 21 b.] When he was drepik^l & dede · at þe droues zemyd^l,
þe prekaris of þe pastors · & of þe proude landis,
Ah þe folke of his affinite · at fresch ware vn-wondik^l,
þat outhire fote hack or fole · to þe flizt foundid. 1236
Meleager retreats in triumph, with all the cattle. þus Meliager with his meⁿ · þe menske has a-chevyd^l,
For þe fairere of þar faes · & þe fild^l wonⁿ ;
Raschis with rethere · & rydis bot a quyle,
But his troubles are not over. þat ne negis þam a-nothire note · as new as þe first. 1240
þare was a maister of þe marches · myt^{ist} of othire
Beritinus attacks him. Ane Beritinus, a berne · as þe buke tellis,
Come girdand out of Gadirs · out of þe grete cite,

¹ Inserted at the end of the line.

þar metes þaime a miche folke · *þe* maister of *þe*
playnes,

The duke of *þe* drafes · & of *þe* derfe fellys,

One teosellus a tulke · *þat* tenyd þaim vnfaire. 1212

He girdes in *with* a gyn · grathed in playthes,

AH to-brountes þes bernes · & wykydly þaim woundes,

Felles mony fey at a frush · fast to *þe* grunde,

And mony renke *þat* he ouer-rade · rase neuer aftir. 1216

Than was *sir* meliager amoved · & manly debates,

Flyngez forth on a fole · *with* a fele spere,

And beres mony grett syre · þorow thike males, 1219

AH feH bernes at [a] brayde · whilse his breth lastez.

And sampson on ane other syde · settez on belyue,

Brushes forth on a blonke · brathly he smytez,

Betes on *with* a brande · for brokyn was hys launce,

Hewes douñ on *þe* herdez · & hurtez þaim vnfaire. 1224

Then arestes, an atheH man · &¹ ay elike feghtez,

Sparres forth *with* a spere · & spedes hys mightez,

.
Mony bald or he blan · broght owt of lyfe. 1228

Than Caulus, an other knyght · oñ a ked stede,

On thoosellus in twa · hys tembre he brekys ;

And þen he dryffes to *þe* duke · als tellys me *þe* texte,

Bot *with* a swyng of a swerde · swappez of hys heued.

When he was drepyd þus & dede · & *þe* drawes ʒemyd,

þe prekers of *þe* pasturs · & of *þe* prouud Landez,

AH *þe* folk of hys affinite · *þat* frehsse² wer vnwoundet,

þat other fote hed or fole · to *þe* flyʒt foundez. 1236

Thus meliager *with* hys meñ · *þe* menske *þar* acheuett,

Fellyd *þe* feirare³ of *þar* foes · and *þe* feld wonnez⁴ ;

And rachen *with* þair route · & ryden bott a while,

Bot *þar* neghyd þaim ane oþer note · als new as before ;

þar was a maister of *þe* marche · *þe* myghtiest of other.

One beritinus, a berne · als *þe* buke telles, 1242

Come girdand furth of gaders · owt of *þe* grete cyte,

¹ *Better omitted.* ² *Sic.* ³ MS. feirhare. ⁴ *Read wonn.*

30,000 foes attack
the Greeks.

With þe seleuthest soume · þat semblid was euire. 1244
Slik a mynd vñ-to¹ me · ware meruailh to reken,
Thretti thousand in thede · of thra men of armes,
Slike as was buskest on blonkes · in brenys & plat's,
And othire folawand oñ fote · fele with-outen nounbre.
þe multitude was sa mekih · as mynes vs þe writtis,
Of wees & of wild horsis · & wapened prenys,
Sa stithe a steuyn in þe stoure · of stedis & ellis,
As it was semand to sȳt · as aH þe soyle trymblið. 1252

The Macedonians
are dismayed.

þau ware þe Messedones amayd · quen þa see² sa many;
Sire Meliager [was] in gret mynd · a man out to sende
To ser Alexander belyue · þaire allire maister, 1255
To come & help with his here · or þai to hande ȳode.

None like to go on
a message to
Alexander.

þare was nane þat was glad · þat message to gange,
Bot ilka lathire & othire · to leue þaire frynde,
Fest þar forward in-fere · þat fewe at þai ware,
To do as drizten wald deme · & dyi aH to-gedire; 1260
To telle þaire tofere entyre · it taryed me swythe.

[Fol. 22.]

Sir Meleager kills
Beritinus,

Bot so þe mode Meliager · & his men feztis,
þat ser Beritinus þe bak · þai bretned to dethe,
And Sampson oñ þis side · was slay þar-agaynys. 1264

but Sampson is
slain.

þeñ mournes aH þe Messedones · & maynten him ȳerne,
Makis þar mane for þat man · & many othire noble,
For maistris & mynistris · menere & grettir, 1267
þat was in morsels magged · & martrid a hundreth.

Many Greeks are
killed.

And þat left ware oñ lyfe · bot a litiH meȳne,
Ware als malstrid³ & mased · & matid of þaire strenthes,
Sa waike & so wyndles · & wery for-fȳteñ, 1271
þat þai were wiH in þis werl · qwat þai worthe sulð.

Sir Meliager is
sore wounded.

Sire Meliager & othire maa · mayned were sare,
aH be-bled & to-brissid · þat neȳe þar breth failes,
þai were sa feble & sa faynt · & fuH of þaim-selfe,
þat all in fere was in fourme · þe fild for to ȳeld. 1276

Arestes goes to
to Alexander.

þau aires him forth Arestes · was augrily wondid,
To Alexander onone · þas auntirs him tellis,

¹ to added in margin.

² see added in margin.

³ Sic.

With þe selecountest soume · þat semblyd was euer, 1244
 With a mynd to me · wer *merveH* to rekyñ, [Fol. 10 b.]
 A threti thouusand in thede · of thro men of armes,
 Suche as wer on blonnkes · in brenys & platez,
 And other folowand on fote · fele owt of nowmbre. 1248
 The multitude was so much · as menys vs þe writtez,
 Of wyes & of wild horse · & of wapenned bernes,
 So styf a steuen in þe stoure · of stedes & enmys,
 As it was semand [to sizt] · as þe soñ tremblyd. 1252
 Þen wer þe masydons ameved · when þai so mony seen;
 Sir *meliager* was in grete mynd · a mañ owt to send
 To *alexander* als belyue · þaire aller maister, 1255
 To Come to help *with* hys heir · or þai to hand rydyñ.
 Bot þar was nane þat was made · þe message to fannge,
 Bot ilke lede elike loth · to leven þair frendes,
 And festned þair forwardez in-fere · þe few þat þar wer,
 To do as drighten wald deme · & dye aH to-geder; 1260
 To tel þair torfer in tere · it wald tary me to langt.
 Bot so þe mody *meliager* · & hys men foghten,
 þat Sir bertinus þe bald · þai brityned to dede,
 And sampson was of hys syde · slayn þar-agayns. 1264
 Þen *murned* aH þe masydons · & meynyd hym swyth,
 Made grett mone for þis mañ · & mony oþer noble,
 For maisters & ministers · meyner & gretter, 1267
 þat wer in morsellys made · & martyred by hundrethis.
 And þat left wer on-lyue · bot a lyteH meynhe,
 Wer also maistrett & masyd · & mated of þair strennthes,
 So wake & so wyndles · & wery for-foughten,
 þat þai wer wille in þe werld · qwat þai worth suld. 1272
 Sir *meliager* & oþer mo · mayned wer sare,
 AH to-bled & to-brysed · þat nere þair breth fayled,
 Thai wer so feble and so faynte · and fuH of þaim-schueñ,
 þat aH in fere & in forme · þe feld for to 3eld. 1276
 Than ayres hym forth aristes · was augerdly woundett,
 To *alexander* anone · þees aunters hym tles,

Alexander rallies
some men round
him, and leaves
Tyre.

He laments the
loss of Sampson.

[Fol. 22 b.]

Sir Balaan of
Tyre assails
Alexander's siege-
works,

and breaks them
down.

He destroys
Alexander's
towers, and
throws them into
the sea.

þe morth of aH þe Messedone[s] · & of þe many grekis,
 Rekens him þar resons · þat reuthe was to here. 1280
 With þat þe semely kyng · chacches his bernys,
 Semblis him a huge soume · & fra þe sege wendis,
 þe toure of Tire & þe toune · titly he leues,
 And Ioynes him to Iosaphat · fuH ioyles he rydes. 1284
 Ay he gretis as he gase · for grefe of his knyghtis,
 Ay he pleynys as he passes · þe pite of his erlis,
 Ay he wepis as he wendis · for his wale princes,
 And soueraynly for Sampson · he sorowis ay elike. 1288
 When he was tane fraward¹ Tyre · toward þe vaile,
 þe werke at he wrozt had · þat water whyt-in,
 þat he had sett in þe see · þe cite with-out,
 þar-in he lefte had a lede · þe loge for to kepe. 1292
 Bot þan ser Balaan, a berne · at in þe burze lengis,
 Ane of þe terands of Tyre · atyres him² belyue,
 Buskes him in breneis · with big men of armes, 1295
 With traumes & with tribochetis · þe tild to asaile.
 He bekirs out at þe bild · within þe burze-wallis,
 And þai without in þe werke · wigtly defendis,
 Schot sharply betwene · schomes³ of dartis;
 Weris wondirly wele⁴ · werpis out stanes. 1300
 Bot Balaan[n] in þe barmeken · sa bitterly figtis,
 aH to-combirs þam clene · with cast of engynes.
 Sone þe top of þe toure · he tiltis in-to þe watir,
 And aH þe tulkis in þe tild · he termens o lyue; 1304
 And þan in batis & in bargis · he bownes him swyth,
 To þe bothum of þe baisteH · he buskis him with-out,
 Bretens down aH þe bild · & þe bernys quellis, 1307
 Drenches hire in þe hiȝe see · & drawis hire oñ hepis.
 Quen it was smeten in smah · with þe smert wazes,
 Ilka gobet his gate · glidis fra othire.
 þus⁵ þe strenth ilk stike⁶ · was in a stounde wasted,

¹ MS. toward altered to fraward.

² MS. here inserts h, but it is struck out. ³ Read schoures.

⁴ Added in the margin.

⁵ MS. þus was.

⁶ MS. stilk stike; but stilk is struck out.

The morte of aH þe masydons · & of þe mony grekez,
 Rekens hym þe resons · þat reuth was to here. 1280

With þat þe comle kyng · chakez hys bernes,

Semblett Hym A Hoge soume · & fro þe seige wendys, [Fol. 11.]

The toure of tyre & þe towne · titely he levys,
 And ioynes hym to Iosaphatt · full ioyles to ryde. 1284

Ay he gretes as he goys · þe grefe of hys knyghtez,

Ay he plenys as he passez · þe pite of hys Ereles,

Ay he wepys as he wendes · for hys wale princes,

And souerandly for sampson · he sorows euerilyke. 1288

When he was turnyd froward tyre · toward þe wale,

The werk at he wroght had · þe water within,

þat he hed sett in þe see · þe cite withowte,

Thare-in he left hed a lityH¹ · [þe] loge for to kepe. 1292

Bott þen sir balaan, a berne · þat in þe burgh lenged,

One of þe tiraundez of tire · atired hym belyue,

Buskes hym in brenes · with big men of armes,

With trawynns & trebgetes² · þe towre to assaylle. 1296

He bekens owt at þe beld · ouer þe brade walle,

And þai within³ þe werk · wightly defenden,

Shoton sharply bytwene · swappyn owt dartz;

Weres wondrely wele · warpyn owt stanes. 1300

Bot balaan in þe britage · so bitterly feghtez,

All to-combers þaim elene · with cast of engynes.

Sone þe toppe of þe toure · he typys in þe water,

And aH þe tulkez in þe teld · he termys þe lyve; 1304

Than in bargez & in botez · he bownes hym swyth,

To þe bothom of þe basteH · he buskez hym withowte,

Bretens downe aH þe belde · & þe bernes whelles,

Drenches hir in þe depe · & drawes hir on hepyss. 1308

When it was smytyn so in smaH · within þe smert wawes,

Ilke gobett fro oper · glydes⁴ fast þair way.

Thus þis strenth ilke steke · in a stound wastyd,

¹ *Read lede.*

² MS. *trebgetes.*

³ MS. *withowt within.*

⁴ MS. *gydes, corr. to glydes.*

And Balaa[n] bowis in-to þe burȝe · & barris to þe ȝatis.
 Be þis oure kyng with his kniȝt[is] · is comen in-to þe
 vaile, 1313

Alexander
 arrives at the
 valley,

Alexander with ane ost · his kniȝt[is] to help,
 Fyndis a fewe of his folke · feȝtand ȝerne,
 And ay a segge be him-selfe · sett aȝ a hundreth. 1316

spurs Bucefalus,

With þat Bucefalon his blonke · he brased¹ in þe side,
 Springis out with a spere · spillis at þe gaynest,
 Ridis euen þurȝe þe route · þar rankest þai were,

[Fol. 23.]

Be rawe of þar rabet[is] · he ruschid to þe erthe, 1320

and overthrows
 all before him.

He strikis aȝ fra þar stedis · streȝt him be-forne.
 Was nane sa stille in þat stoure · miȝt stand him
 agayn ;

Quare althire-thickest was þe thrange · þurȝe þaim he
 rynnes,

And makis a wai wyde enoȝe · waynes to mete. 1324

He draws his
 sword, and leaves
 no foe unslain
 except the
 captives.

He laschis out a lange swerde · quen his launce failes,
 Threschis down in a² thrawe · many threunȝ dukis,
 Stirs him sa in a stonde · & his stithe erlis
 þat þar was [na] berne on bent · bott bretened or
 ȝolden. 1328

He buries his own
 dead.

þe seggis on his awen side · þat he slayn fyndis,
 He mas to graue sum in grete · & sum in gray marble.
 And þa þat laȝt ware o-lyue · he lokis þar woundis,
 And faire fangis his folke · & fra þe fild wendis. 1332

He leaves Gadirs,

þan bowes he to þe baistaȝ · & brymly it semblis,
 Gedirs of ilk glode · grettir & smallire,

and returns to
 Tyre.

And prekis furth with his pray · & passes fraward
 Gadirs,

He sees his siege-
 works destroyed.

And tiȝt agayne toward Tyre · to termen his seȝe. 1336
 Quen he was dreunȝ ouer þe dales · & drewe to þe cite,
 With þat he blisches to þe burȝe · & sees his bikȝ
 voidiȝk,

Als bare as a bast · his baistaȝ a-way,
 But outhire burle or bate · bot þe brade wattir, 1340

¹ *The a is ill-formed.*

² *Added in the margin.*

And balaan bownes to þe burgh · & barres þe ȝatez. 1312
 Be þat owr kyng with hys knyghtez · was comen to þe
 wale,

Alex[ander] with an hoste · hys atheH to help,
 Fyndes a few of hys folke · feghtyng full ȝarne,
 And a sege by hym-self · sett to a hundreth. 1316

With þat bucefeloñ hys blonke · he brochys in þe sydez,
 Spryngez forth with a spere · spyllez at þe ganest,
 Rides euen þorow þe route · þare rankest þai were, [Fol. 11 b.]
 The rawes of þair arayes · he rushes to þe erth, 1320
 He strikez aH þair stedes · streght downe hym before,
 Was none so styffe in þe stoure · to stand hym ayayns ;

þar aH þe thickest wer of thrange · through þaim he
 rynnnes,

And makez a way wyde enogh · waynez for to mete. 1324
 He lashes owt a lang swerde · when hys launce wantes,
 Thristez downe in a thraw · mony thryme dokes,
 Stirrez hym so in a stound · he and hys styff ereles,
 þat þar ne was bern on þe bent · bot bryttynett or
 ȝolden. 1328

The segges of hys awne syde · aH at he slayn fyndez,
 He makes to grave, some in grete · some in gray marbyH.
 And þo þat left wer on lyue · he leches þair woundez,
 And fair fangez he hys folke · & fro þe feld turnes. 1332

3a victoria
alexandri.

.

Then prekes forth with hys pray · þus before gaders,

And turnes agayn toward tyre · to terme hys seige. 1336
 When he was dreven ouer þe dales · & drew to þe cite,
 With þat he blyshys to þe burgh · & seys hys beylde
 woydett,

Also bare as ony baste · hys basteH away,
 Bout ony buske or borde · bot þe brode water. 1340

þan mournes aȝ þe Messadones · & maynly was
sturb[i]t.¹

And *Alexander* also · was augrely greuyt,

*Alexander de-
spairs of taking
Tyre,*

So ware þai troubild out of tone · quen þai þaire tild
miste,

þat of þe taking of Tīre · trest þai na langire. 1344

And so him-selfe in his slepe · þe same niȝt eftir,

*but dreams
that he has a ripe
grape
in his hand,*

Him thoȝt he haȝt in his hand · & held of a vyne

A growen grape of a grype · a grete & a rype, 1347

þe quilke he flange² oȝ þe flore · & with his fete
tredis.

And quen he broken haȝt þe bery · als þe berne semes,

[Fol. 23 b.]
*which yields
much wine.*

þar folowis out of fresche wyne · feetles to mete;

So largely & so delauly · of licoure, him thinkis,

Of ane rasyn to ryȝ · it was a ryfe wondire. 1352

þe kyng³ callis him a clerke · kenely oȝ þe³ morne,

*A clerk tells him
that this predicts
his victory over
Tyre.*

Als radly as he rase · to reche him his sweuyȝ.

“Sire, bees a-dredt neuir a dele” · þe diuinour said,

“I vndire-take on my trouthe · Tīre is þine awēȝ; 1356

For þe bery at ȝe brake sa · is þe burȝe euen.

þai saȝ be sesid þe fuȝ sone · & to þi-selfe ȝoldenȝ,

For þou saȝ eft aȝ oȝ ernest · entire oȝ þe wallis,

And foulire⁴ vndir þi feete · with-in a fewe days. 1360

Now compas kenely þis kyng⁵ · & cast⁵ in his mynd

How he miȝt couir in any cas · to come to þe cite,

Deuynes depely on dais · dropis many wiles,

*Alexander builds
up a larger tower
than before,*

If he cuthe seke any sleȝt · þat him serue waktȝ; 1364

And makis to sett in þe see² · riȝt in þe same place,

þar as þe bildȝ at he bi[l]did · biggid wasse first,

To stable vp a grete strenthe · aȝ on store schipis,

Hugir be þe halfe dele · & hizere þaȝ þe toþire; 1368

And þat he fiches & firmes · sa fast to þe waȝ,

So nere vnethes at ane eld · miȝt narrowly betwene,

*higher than the
walls of the town,*

And band hire, as þe buke sais · bigly to-gedire, 1371

¹ The i is illegible. ² MS. inserts of, but it is struck out.

³ Added in the margin.

⁴ Read foule hire.

Than murnes all þe masidons · & felly wer trublett,

And alexander was also · awgerdly grevyde,
So wer þai trublett of þe towne · qwen þai þar till
myssyd,

That of þe takyng of t're · trusted þai no lenger. 1344

And so hym-selfe in hys slepe · þe same nyght after,

Hym toght¹ he had in hys hand · a held of a wyne,

A growen grope of a gripe · a grett & a rype, 1347

þe whilke he flonge of þe floure · & with hys fete
tredes ;

And when he brokyn hed þe bery · als þe bern semys,

þar flowe owt of fresh wyne · flodez enowe ;

So largely & so delavy · of liquor hym thynkez,

Of ane raysyn to ryn · þat was a gret wondre. 1352

þe kyng callez a clerke · kenely on þe morne,

Als radly as euer he rose · to rachen hym hys swevyñ.

" Sir, beys dred neuer a dele " · þe devinour hym sayde,

" I vndertake it on my trewth · tyre is þi nawne ; 1356

For þe bery þat þou brake · þat is þe burgh eueñ,

That sha't be sesyd þe ful sone · & to þi-seluen 3olden,

[Fol. 12.]

For þou sa't eft in ernest · enter þe walles,

And fe't hir vnder fote · with/in a few days." 1360

Now Compas kenely þe kyng · & castes in hys mynd

How he couth in ony case · come to þe cyte,

Devynez deply on days · dropes mony willes,

If he couht seke ony sleght · þat hym serue wald ; 1364

And makes to sett in þe see · right in þe same place,

þair as þe tild þat he bild · bigget was frist,

To stabill vp a strenth · all of store schippes,

Hoger by þe halfe dele · & hyer þen þat oper ; 1368

And þat he feghys & fermes · so fast to þe wall,

So negh þat vnneth a nedy't · myght narrowly bytwene,

And band hir, as þe boke says · bigly to-geder,

¹ Sic in MS.

- With þat scho flisch noþer fayle¹ · fyue score aunkirs.
 Quen he had tigt vp þis tram · & þis tild rerid,
 Hit had of bradnes abofe · to breue out of mesure ;
- and close against them. And to hede be a huge thing · hizere it semed
 þan was þe wallis, sais þe writt · of þe wale touris. 1376
- He ascends the tower, þan Alexander aH his anc · an-ane he ascendis,
 Closid aH in clere stele · & in clene plates,
- [Fol. 24.] And monestis ilk modire soñ · maynly & swytlī,
 þat all be bowne at a brayd · þe burze to assaile. 1380
- and bids his men be ready. And aH þe ost euyñ ouir · he openly comandis
 To be² radly aH arayd · & redy to fgt ;
- He assaults Tyre ; And quen þai saze þat him-selfe³ · þe cite was entridē,
 Wan vp wigtly on þe wallis · ilk wee him eftir. 1384
 Now tenelis vp taburs · and aH þe touñ rengis,
- drums and trumpets sound. Steryñ steuyn vþ strake · strakid þar trumpis,
 Blewe bemys of bras · bernes assemblis,
 Sezes to oñ ilk syde · & a saute zeldis. 1388
 þare presis to with paues · peple withoutē ;
- Archers approach the walls. Archars with arows · of atter envemonde⁴
 Schotis vp scharly · at shalkis oñ þe wallis,
 Lasch at þam of loft · many lede flozen, 1392
- The besieged defend themselves. And þai zapely a-zayne · & zildis þam swythe,
 Bekire out of þe burze · bald men many,
 Kenely þai kast of · with kastis of stanys,
 Driues dartis at oure dukis · dedly þam woundidē. 1396
- The Greeks ascend the tower. þan passe vp oure princes · prestly⁵ enarmed,
 In-to þe baistēH a-bofe · bremely ascendidē,
 Sum with lances oñ-loft · & with lange swardis,
 With ax & with alblaster · & alkenis wapeñ. 1400
- Alexander performs wonders. Alexander ai elike · augrily feztis,
 Now a schaft, now a schilk · nowe a scheue hentis,
 Now a sparth, now a spere · & sped so his migtis,
 þat it ware tere any tonge · to of his turnes rekyn. 1404

¹ MS. flay fayle ; but flay is struck out.² Added in the margin. ³ selfe added in the margin.⁴ Sic.⁵ MS. inserts er, but it is struck out.

Lest sho flechett or faylett · with fyfe score ankers. 1372
 When he hed tight vp þis frame · & þis teld reryd,
 It hed of bradnes aboue · to breue owt of mesour;
 And to hede by hoge þing · hegher it semyd
 Than was [þe walles], as þe writte says · of þe wale tourez.
 þan alexander aH [his ane] · a-none he ascendeþ, 1377
 Closed aH in clere stele · & in clene platez,
 And monyshit iche modersoñ · manly & swythe,
 þat aH be bowne at a brade · þe burcht to asayle. 1380
 AH þe hoste¹ euen ouer · opynly he comandes
 3arly aH to be arraed · and redy to fight;
 And when þat þai see þat hym-selfe · þe cite was entird,
 Wynnen vpp vppo² þe walle · ilke wy hym after. 1384
 Now tynkyH vp taburnes · þat aH þe towne ringes,
 Sterne stevyn vpon stroke · straked trompettes,
 Blew bemes of brace · bernes assembled,
 Sought to on ilk syde · & a saute 3eldyn, 1388
 To prese to with paves · a peple withowte;
 Archers with arowes · of atter enuenmonyð³
 Shoton vp sharply · at salkez on þe wallez,
 Lashe at þaim on-lofte · in mony lowd showte, 1392
 And þai 3opely ayayn · 3eldyn þaim swythe,
 Bekeryng forth of þe burgh · bald men many, [Fol. 12 b.]
 Kenely þai kepe · with castyng of stanes,
 Dryves dartz at owr dukez · deþly þaim woundeñ. 1396
 Than passyd vp of princez · pristly enarmed,
 Into þe basteH abowne · bremely ascendeñ,
 Some with launce on-lofte · & some with long swerdeþ,
 With ax & with awblester · & alken wapens. 1400
 And alexander ay elik · awgerdly feghteþ,
 Now a shafte, now a shelde, · now a swerde henteþ,
 Now a sparth, now a spere · & sped so hys mightez,
 þat it wald tere ony tong · hys tournays to rekeñ. 1404

¹ Better oste.² Sic.³ Read enuenomyd.

- And þai *with-in* on þe waſſ · *worthili with-stude*,
 Fersly defend of · & fellid of his knyȝt's,
 Thristis ouir thikefald · many threuyne berne[s], 1407
- [Fol. 24 b.] And doun bakward þam bare · in-to þe brack wattir.
 The Greeks are
 hard pressed. With þat oure wees *without* · writhis þam vnfare,
 Went wode of þaire witt · & wreke þam swyȝh;
 For na wounde ne na wathe · wand þai na langir,
 Bot aȝ wrikis him þe wa · & wreke at he cuthe. 1412
- The Greeks fight
 very fiercely, Sum braidis to þar bowis · bremely þai schut,
 Quethirs out quarels · quikly be-twene;
 Strykis vp of þe stoure · stanes of engynes,
 þat þe bretage a-boue · brast aȝ in soundire, 1416
- and destroy the
 battlements of
 Tyre. Girdis ouir garetis · *with* gomes to þe erthe,
 Tilt torettis doun · toures oȝ hepis,
 Spedely *with* sprygaldis · spilt þaire braynes,
 Many miȝtful man · marris oȝ þe wallis. 1420
- And be þe kinnells ware kast · & kutt doun before,
 Be þat þe baisteȝ & þe burȝe · ware bathe elike hiȝe,
 And all oure werke *without* þe wallis · weterly semeȝ,
 þe sidis of þe cite · to se to o fernes, 1424
- Then Alexander
 enters the breach, þaȝ Alexander belyf¹ · oȝ þam aȝ entris,
 Bruschiȝ in *with* a brand · on bernis a hundreȝh,
 Thraȝg thurȝe a thousand · þare thickest þai were,
 Wynnes worthly ouer þe wallis · *with-in* to þe cite. 1428
- slays Balaan, þe first modire soȝ he mett · oȝ þe maȝ outhire,
 Was Balaan þe bald berne · as þe boke tellis,
 And him he settis oȝ a saute · & sloȝe him belyue, 1431
- and throws
 him over the
 wall. And werpid him out ouir þe waſſ · in-to þe wild streȝe.
 Sone as oure athils be-hind · saȝe þar he entred,
 His men & aȝ þe Messedones · maynly ascendis,
 And þai of Grece gredely · girdis vp eftire,
 Thringis vp oȝ a thraw · thousandis many. 1436
- [Fol. 25.] Sum stepis vp on sties · to þe stane wallis,
 The Greeks climb
 up, On ilka staffe of a staire² · stike wald a clustir;

¹ MS. bely. altered to belyf in later hand.² MS. repeats staire.

And þai *within* on þe waſſ · wightly withſtondyñ,
 Derfley defenden of · & fellez of hys bernēs,
 Thraste ouer thikefald · mony thrifen knyghtez,
 And douñ bakeward þai bare · into þe brade water. 1408
 With þat oure wyēs *withowte* · wrathen þaim vnfaire,
 Went ne wode owt of þar witte · & wrekes þaim swyth;
 For no wa ne no wound · waned þai no langer,
 Bot aſſ wirkyd þaim wa · & wrake at þai couth. 1412
 Som braden to þair bowes · & bremely shotyñ,
 Whirres owt quarels · whikly betwene;
 Strike vp of þe stoure · stanes & ¹ engynes,
 þat þe britage aboſe · braſt aſſ in ſonder, 1416
 Girdes ouer garrates · *with* gomes² to þe erth,
 Typed torrettes doune · towres on hepes,
 Spedely *with* ſpringaltez · ſpilten þair bernēs,
 Many mightyfull man · merred on þe walles. 1420
 And be þe kernels wer keſt³ · & cut³ doun before,
 Be þat þe baſteſſ & þe burgh · was bath elike hyc,
 And aſſ owre þe werke *withowt* · witterly ſemyd,
 The ſydes of þe cite · to ſe to on fernesſe, 1424
 Than alexander als belyue · on þaim aſſ entres,
 Brushes in *with* a brannde · on bernēs an hundreth,
 Thrang þorow a thouſand · þar as þai thikeſt wer,
 Wynnes wightly ouer þe waſſ · *within* to þe cite. 1428
 The friſt moderson þat he mett · or other man other, [Fol. 13.]
 Was balaah þe bald berne · as þe buke tellez,
 And hym he ſettes on a ſawte · & ſlogh hym belyfe,
 And wappyd⁴ hym ouer þe walles · in-to þe wild ſtremes.
 When þair hatels byhynde · ſaw þar heued entre, 1433
 Hys men & aſſ þe maſydons · manly ascendeñ,
 And þai of grece gredely · girdes vp after,
 Thronge vp on a thraw · thouſandez mony. 1436
 Some ſpettyn⁵ vp on ſtyes · to þe ſtane walles,
 On ilke ſtaffe on a ſtare · ſteke wald a cloſtre;

¹ & *written above the line*; read of.³ MS. owt.⁴ Read warpyd.² MS. cunes; *wrongly*.⁵ Read steppyn.

some with
ladders,
and some
without.

And qua sa leddirs had¹ nane · as þe lyne tellis, 1439
Wald gett þam hald with þar hend · & on-loft clyme.
Sa frezt ware þar othire · þat feztis withiñ,
For Balaan þar bald duke · þat brozt was¹ of lyue,
þat aH failis þam þe force · & so ferd worthe,
þat nothire with state ne with stane · withstand þai na
langir. 1441

Sire Alexander with his athils · & his awen sleztis

Thus was Tyre
taken.

þe toune of Tire þus he tuke · & othire twa burges,
In þe quilke þe siriens of þis sire · so many sorozes
had,

As wald bot tary aH oure tale · þaire tourment to reken.
Sone as þis cite was sesid · & slayne vp & zolden, 1449

Alexander takes
Gaza,

þen ridis furth þe riche kyng¹ · & remowed his ost,
Gais him furth to Gasa · a-nothire grete cite,
And þat he settis on a saute · & sesis it be-lyue; 1452

and approaches
Jerusalem.

And quen þis Gasa was geten · he graythis him swythi,
And Ioynes him toward Ierusalem · þe iewis to distroy;
And 3e þat² kepis of þis carþe · to knaw any ferre,
Sone saH I neuen 3ow þe note · þat is next eftir. 1456

Septimus passus Alexandri.

When the bishop
hears of his
approach,

Als hastily as þai herð of · in þe haly cite,
And bodword to þe bischop · brozt of his come,
For Alexander a3e · almast he euen deis, 1459
For he had nite him a nerand¹ · nozt bot o new time.

he is much
troubled.

And now him þinke in his fozt · him thurt nozt haue
carid

In all his mast mystir · nad he þat man faylik,

[Fol. 25, b.]

When he for socure to þe cite · sent him his lettir;
And he soyned him be his sorement · þat saue him for-
thinkis. 1464

¹ Added in the margin.

² MS. inserts kis; but it is struck out.

And who so ledderys couth lache · as þe line wittnes,
 Wald gett þair hald with þair hand · & on-lofte wyne.
 So frizt wer þase other folke · þat foghten within, 1441
 Fro¹ balaan þair bald duke · þat broght was of liue,
 þat aH failez þaim þe force · & so ferd worthen,
 þat nowder with stalle ne with stane · withstode þai no
 langer. 1444

Sir alexander with þoes athellys · & with hys awne
 sleghtez

The toure of tire þus he tuke · and other ij burghez,
 In þe whilke þe sariens of þis syre · so many sorowys
 haddyn;

AH wald bot tary owr tale · þaire turment to rekeñ. 1448

Obsid[et] le
tyre.

Sone als þis cite was sesyd · slayne vp & 3olden,
 þan rides forth þe riche kyng · & removes þe hoste,

Gase forth to gaza · ane othre grete cite,

And he settes on a sawte · and seses it belue; 1452

And when þis gaza was gettyn · he grathes hym swyth,

And ioynes hym toward Ierusalem · þe Iewez to distroy;

And 3e þat kepys of þis carpyng · to here any ferrer,

Sone saH I neuen þou þe note · þat now is next after.

Septimus passus.

Als hastely as þai herd of · in haly cite, 1457

And Bodword to þe bischoþ · was broght of hys come,

For alexander aw · almost he dyes, 1459

And for he hed nekyd hym with nay · in a new tyme.

And now he þenkez in his thought · he turht² noght haue
 cared

In aH hys maste mister · made he hym faylez,³

When he for socour to þe cite · send hym hys lettre;

And he soned hym by þis case · þat nowe hym for-
 thynkez. 1464

¹ Read For. ² Read thurt. ³ Read nad he þe man fayled.

He had rather
have been
forsworn than
have denied
Alexander
anything.

"For me had¹ leuer," quod þe lede · "be lethirely for-
sworn

Oñ as many halidoms · as opens¹ & speris,
þañ anys haue greuyd þat gome · or warned him his
erand ! 1467

þat euer I warned him his wið · wa is me þat stonde !"
þus was laudes of ioy · & iolite depryued ;
And all þe iewis of ierusalem · he Ioyntly a-sembles.

He addresses the
Jews,

He said, "Alexander is at hand · & wið vs aH cumbre,
And we ere dredles vndone · bot driȝten vs help." 1472
þan bedis þe bischoþ aH þe burȝe · barnes & othire,
Athils of aH age · eldire & ȝongire,

and proclaims a
3 days' fast.

Comandis to ilka creatour · to criē þurȝe þe stretis,
To thre dais oñ a thrawe · be threpild to-gedire, 1476

All pray for help,

Ilk a frek & ilka fante · to fast & to pray,
To occupy þar oures & orisons · & offire in þar temple,
And caH vp with a clene voice · to þe kyng¹ of heuyñ,
To kepe þam, at þis conquiroure · encumbrid þaim
neuir. 1480

to be delivered
from Alexander's
vengeance.

Now seȝen þai to þar Sinagogis · aH þe cite ouire,
Ilka bodi þar bedis · þat in þe burȝe lengis,
Putt þam to prayris · & penaunce enduris,
þe vengeance of þis victoure · to voide if þai miȝt. 1484
þe niȝt eftir þe note · as² tellis me þe writtis,
Quen aH þe cite was on-slepe · & sacrificis endid¹,

An angel appears
to the bishop,
and comforts
him.

In ane abite of þe aire · ane Aungell aperis
To Iaudas of ierusalem · & him with ioy gretis : 1488
"I bringe þe bodworl¹ of blis · ser bischoþ," he saik¹,
"With salutis of solas · I am sent fra þe trone,
Fra þe maister of mañ · þe miȝtfuH fadere,
þat bedis þe noȝt be² a-bai-t · he has þi bone herd ; 1492
And I amonest þe to-morne · as I am enloyned¹,
þat þou as radly as þou rise · aray aH þe cite,
þe stretis & in aH stedis · stoutly & faire,

[Fol. 26.]
"Array the city
as if to receive a
victor,

¹ MS. open ; altered to opens in later hand.

² MS. &.

³ Added in the margin.

"For me hed leuer," quod þe lede · "bene letherly [Fol. 13 b.]
forsworne

On aH þe halydoms · as opyn are to nevyñ,
Than onys haue greved þis gome · or groched with hys
erand! 1467

þat euer I warned hym hys wille · wa is me bestound!"
Thus was laudes of ioy · & iolyte deprenett;
And aH þe Iewes of Ierusalem · he iontly assemblez.
And¹, "alexander is at hand · & wille vs aH combred,²
And we er vtterly vndone · bot dryghten vs shelde." 1472
Than biddez þe bischoþ aH þe burgh · bernes & oper,
AtheHes of aH age · bath elder & yonger,
Comand iche creature · & cryed þorow þe stretes,
TiH thre days on a thraw · wer threpelytt to-geder, 1476
And ilke freke & euery faunt · to fast & to pray,
To occupy in þair orisons · & offers³ in þe temple,
And calle vp with kene cry · vnto þe kyng⁴ of heuen,
And kepe þaim with þis conquerour · he comber þaim
neuer. 1480

Thai soght to þair sinagoge · aH þe cite ouer;
Iche body to þair bedes · at in þe burgh lendes
Putten þaim to prayers · & pennance indurett,
þe vengeance of þis victor · to voyde if þai might. 1484
The thred nyght after þis note · as neuen me þe text,
When aH þe cite was slepe · & sacrifese endytt,
In ane habett of þe ayre · an angeH apperes
To laudes of Ierusalem · and hym with ioy gretes: 1488
"I brynge þe bodworde of [blis] · *sir* bischoþ," he sayd,
"With salutez of solace · am send fro þe trone,
Fro þe hye maister of mageste · & þat mightfull fadre,
A byddes þe noght be abaysed · he hase þi bone herd;
And I amonesh þe to-morne · als me was amoved, 1493
þat þou als radly as þou rysses · aray all þi cite,
The stretes & aH stedes · stoutly & faire,

apparicio
angeli
episcopo
Ieromo-
solitano.

¹ Read Said. ² Read combre. ³ Read offer.

þat it be onest aH ouire · & open vp þe ȝatis. 1496
 Lett þaH þe pupiH ilka poll · apareld be clene,
 And al manere of men · in mylk-quyte clathis.
 And pas, þou & þi prelat/s · & prest/s of þe temple,
 Raueste aH oH a raw · as ȝoure rewiH askis. 1500
 And quen þis conquirour comes · caire him agaynes;
 For he moH ride þus & regne · ouire aH þe ronde werde
 Be lordschip in ilka lede · in-to his laste days,
 And þen be¹ diȝt to þe deth · of driȝtins ire." 1504
 ¶ Sone þe derke ouire-drafe · & þe day springis,
 Oure bischop bounes him of beek · & buskis on his wedis,
 And þen iogis aH þe iewis · & generaH callis,
 A-vaies þaim his vision · how þe voice bedis; 1508
 þan consals him þe clergy · clene aH-to-gedire,
 And all þe cite asentis · sarazens & opir,
 To buwne furth wiH aH þe burȝe · & buske þaH
 belyue,
 As him was said in his slepe · þis souerayn to mete. 1512
 þan rynnnes he furth in a rase · & arais aH þe cite,
 Braidis ouire wiH bawdkyns · aH þe brade stretis,
 WiH tars & wiH tafeta · þar he trede sulde, 1515
 For þe erth to slike ane Emperoure · ware ouire feble.
 He pleyes ouire þe pauement · wiH² pallen webis,
 Mas on hiȝt ouire his hede · for hete of þe soHe,
 Sylours of sendale · to sele ouire þe gatis, 1519
 And sammes þaim oH aithire side · wiH silken rapis,
 And þen he caggis vp on cordis · as curteyns it were,
 Euen as þe esyngis ȝede · ouire be þe costes,
 All þe wawis wiH-oute · in webis of ynde,
 Of briȝt blasand blewe · browden wiH sternes. 1524
 þus atired he þe toune · & titely þar-estir
 On ilka way wid open · werped he þe ȝatis;
 And qua so lukis fra wiH-out · & wiH-in haldis,
 It semyd as þe cite to se · ane of þe seuyn³ heuyns. 1528

and go to meet
Alexander,
the great
conqueror of the
world."

All the Jews
agree to receive
Alexander with
honour.

Then he arrays
the city to
receive Alexander.

He puts up
awninges to keep
off the sun's heat.

[Fol. 26 b.]

He opens the
gates.

¹ MS. he.

² Added above the line.

³ MS. seuyns; with final s expuncted.

þat it be honest aH ouer · & opyn vp þe zates. 1496

Lett þen þi peple euerilke polle · aparaeld¹ be elene,

And aH maner of men · in milke-whitte clathez.

Bott passe, þou & þi pristez · & prelatez of þe temple,

Reuest aH on rawe · as your rewle askez. 1500

And when þis conquerour comez · carez hym agayns; [Fol. 14.]

For he must ryde & reyne · ouer aH þe brede of þe werlde,

And be Lord of ilke lede · vnto hys last dayes,

And þen be dight vnto þe deth · of drightenez ayre." 1504

Sone þe dyrke ouer-drafe · & þe day springez,

Oure Bishop bownes hym of bede · & buskes hys wedes,

And þen þat Iew of all Iewes · in generaH he clepys,

Says þain hys vision · & as þe voyce biddes; 1508

Than counceillys hym þe Clerge · elene aH-to-geder,

And all þe cety be assent · sariauntez & other,

To bowne hym forth with aH þe burgh · & buske hym

beline,

As hym was sayd in hys slepe · þis souerand to mete.

Than rynnes forth in a rese · arayes aH þe cyte, 1513

Spredes ouer with bawdkens · aH þe brode stretes,

With riche clothez of taffata · qwer he trede suld,

For þe erth to siche ane emperour · wer aH to feble. 1516

He plyes ouer þe payment · palleñ webbes,

Makez on hight ouer þe heued · for het² of þe soñ,

Silours of sendale · to syle ouer þe gatez, 1519

And sampnez þaime on aþer [side] · with sylkyn rapez,

And þan he cachez vp on cordez · als curtayne it were,

Euen als þe esynges zode · ouer be þe costez,

AH þe wallez withowte · in webbez of Inde,

Of bright blysnand blew · browden with sternes. 1524

Thus attyred he þis toune · & titely þar-after

Of ilke way wide hopyn · warpyd he þe zatez;

Att who so wates fro withowte · & within hedes,

It semyd as to se to · on of þe seuen heuens. 1528

¹ MS. aparaerld; see l. 1552.

² The t is written above the line.

The bishop and
priests are richly
arrayed.

Now passis furth þis prelate · with prestis of þe temple,
Reuneschid him rially · & þat in riche wedis,
With erst &¹ abite vndire aH · as I am in-fourmede,
Fulle of bridis & of bestis · of bise & of purpre ; 1532
And þat was garnest^t full gay · with golden skirtis,
Store starand stanes · strekilland all ouire,

Their garments
are covered with
gems.

Saudid^t fuH of safirs · & opire sere gemmes,
And poundird with perry · was perrou & othire. 1536
And sithen he castis oñ a Cape · of kastand hewes,
With riche rabies of gold^t · railed bi þe² hemmes,
A vestoure to vise oñ · of violet floures,
Wrozt fuH of wodwose · & oþer wild bestis ; 1540

The bishop wears
a golden mitre.

And þan him hiztild^t his hede · & had^t on a Mitre,
Was forgid aH of fyne gold^t · & fret fuH of perils,
Stizt staffuH of stanes · þat strazt out bemes,
As it ware shemerand shaftis · of þe shire soñ. 1544

The rest are
dressed in rich
tunics.

Doctours & diuinours · & othire dere maistris,
Iustis of iewry · & iogis of þe lawe,
Ware tired aH in tonacles · of tarrayn webbis ;
þai were bret-full of bees · aH þe body ouire, 1548
And oþer clientis & clerkis · as to þe kirke fallis,
Ware all samen of a soyte · in surples of raynes,

So rich a sight
was never seen.

þat slike a sikt, I supose · was neuer sene eftire,
So parailed a procession · a person a-gaynes. 1552
Now bowis furth þe bishop · at þe burze ȝatis,

[Fol. 27.]

The citizens
follow in the
bishop's train,

With prestis & with prelatis · a pake out of nombre ;
And aH þe cite in sorte · felowis him eftir,
Quirris furth all in quite · of qualite as aungels ; 1556
Maistirs, marchands, & Maire · mynistris & othire,
Worthi wedous & wenchis · & wyues of þe cite ;
Be ilka barne in þe burgh · as blazt ere þaire wedis

all in robes white
as snow.

As any snyppand^t snawe · þat in þe snape liztis. 1560
þar passis þe procession · a piple be-forne,
Of childire aH in chalk³ quyte · chosen out a hundreth,
With bellis & with baners · & blasand torchis,

¹ Read an. ² Added in the margin. ³ MS. shalk.

Now passes þis prelate · with prestez of þe temple,
 Reuest fully rially · & with ryche wedes,
 First ane habett¹ vnder aH · as I am enformed.
 FuH of birdes & of bestes · of byse & of purpurre ; 1532
 And þat was garneshed full gay · with gold skirtez,
 Store starand stanes · strenklett aH ouer,
 Sawdett with saphirez · and oþer sere gemmys,
 And pouderet vith perre · was purer þar¹ oþer. 1536
 Bot syne he kest on a Cape · of castans hewe,
 With riche rybans of gold · raythely þe hem,
 A vesture of vyce · of vyolet flourez,
 Wroght fuH [of] wodwose · & oþer wyhle bestes ; 1540
 And þen he heghtlet on hys heued · a hoge fair myter,
 Was forgett aH [of] fyne gold · & frett fuH of perlez,
 Stight staffuH of stanes · þat straughten owt bemes,
 Als it wer shemerand shaftez · shott fro þe soñ. 1544
 Doctours & deuynours · & oþer dere maistres,
 Iustes of Iewry · & Iewes of þe lawe,
 Wer tyrett¹ aH in tonacles · of tartareñ webbys ;
 And þai wer brightfuH of bleez · aH þe body ouer, 1548
 And oþer clerkez & colettes · at to þe kirke longen,
 Wer aH sampnen in a sott · with surples of reynes,
 That suche a sight, I suppose · was neuer sene afir,
 So paraeld a procession · ane person agayns. 1552
 Now bownes furth þe bischop · at þe brode zates,
 With pristis & with prelatez · a pake owt of nowmbre ;
 And aH þe cite of sorte · sylez hym after,
 Whirrez forth aH in white · of qualite of angels ; 1556
 Marchaundez, maister mair · mynister and oþer,
 Worthy wedous and wifes · & whences of þe cite ;
 Be ilke a barne in þe burgh · aH blaught is hys wedes
 Als any snappand snaw · þat in þe snape lightes. 1560
 Than passys þe procession · a peple beforene,
 Of childer aH in chalke white · chosyn a hundreth,
 With bellys & with banners² · & blesand torchez,

¹ Read þan.² MS. barners.

Children bear
censers.

Instrumentis & ymagis · with-in of þe Mynstire; 1564
Sum with sensours & so[m] · with silueryn cheynes,
 Quare-of þe reke aromatique · rase to þe welken;
Sum with of þe saynt-ware · many sere thingis,
 With tablis & topoures · & tretice of þe lawe; 1568
Sum bolstirs of burnet · en-brouden with periH,
 Bare before þe bischop · his buke on to lig;

Others bear
candle-sticks and
relics.

Sum candilstickis of clere gold · & of clene siluer,
 With releckis fuH rially · þe richest on þe auutere. 1572
 þus seyis all þe semle · þe cite with-oute,
 Vn-to a stonen stede · strezt on þe temple,
 Scopulus, by *sum* skiH · þe scripture it callis,

They await
Alexander.

And þare þe come of þe kynge · þis couent abidis. 1576
 Sone *Alexander* with ane ost · of¹ many athille dukis,

Alexander arrives,
and finds all
waiting to receive
him.

Come *prekand* toward þe place · with princes & erlis,
 Sees slike a multitude of men · in milke-quite clathis,
 And ilk seg in a soyte · at selly him thinkis. 1580

þan fyndis he in þis opire flote · fanons and stolis,
 Praetisirs & prematis · & prestis of þe lawe,
 Of dialiticus & decre · doctours of aythir, 1583

[Fol 27 b.]

Bathe chambirlayn & chaplayne · in chalk-quite wedis.
 And as he waytis in a wra · þan was he ware sone
 Of þe maister of þat meneyhe · in-myddis þe puple,
 þat was þe bald bischop · a-bofe alle þ[e]² iewis,
 Was *grapid* in a garment · of gold & of pu[r]pree. 1588

He sees the
bishop in his
mitre,

And þan he heues vp his eze · be-haldis on his myter,
 Be-fore he saze of³ fyne gold · forgid a plate,
 þar-in *grauen* þe grettest · of aH gods names,

with the title
Tetragrammaton.

þis title, Tetragramaton · for so þe text tellis. 1592
 With þat comandis þe kyng · his knyztis ouire⁴ ilkane,
 Bathe beron & bachelere · & bald men of armes,
 Na nere þat place to aprouche · a payn of þar lyuys,
 Bot aH to hald þam be-hynd · heraud & othire. 1596

The king advances
alone,

þan airis he furth aH him ane · to þis athiH meneze,

¹ Added in the margin.

² MS. þ.

³ Here forgid is inserted, but is underlined.

⁴ Read eu'ire.

Instrumentes & ymagez · within of þe temple ; 1564
 Som *with* censours & som¹ · *with* syluer chynes,
 Whar-of þe reke of aromatyke · rase to þe welken ;
 And of þe sanctuary · mony sere þingez,
 With tabels & tapers · & tretes of þe law ; 1568
 Som bolsters of burnett · enbrowden *with* perle,
 Borne byfore þe bishōp · hys boke on to lig ;
 Som candelstyke of clene gold · & of good syluer,
 With relikkez fully rially · þe richest of þe werld. 1572
 Thus sezes aH þis semble · þe cite *with*owte,
 Vnto a stonon stede · streȝt on þe temple,
 Scopulus, be some skely · þe scriptur it calles,
 And þar þe come of þe kyng · þis Couent abydez. 1576
 Sone² Alexander *with* an hoste · of many atheH dukez, [Fol. 15.]
 Come prekand to þe palace · *with* princez & Erelez,
 Saugh suche a multitude of men · [in] mylke-white wedes,
 And ilke a sege in a sote · þat selly hym thynkez. 1580
 Than fyndez he in a nother flete · of fanons & stoles,
 Practyf men in prevatez · & prestez of þe lawe,
 Of Dialecticus and decre · doctours of ather,
 Bath chamerlayn³ & chapelayn · in chalke-white wedes.
 And als he wates in a wray · þen was he war sone 1585
 Off þe maister of þat meynze · in-myddes of þe peple,
 That was þe bald bischop · abowne aH þe Iewes,
 Was grathed in a garment · of gold & of siluer. 1588
 Than he heldes vp on hegh · beheld on hys myter,
 Before he se of fyne gold · forgett a playte,
 An þar-on grauen on þe grethest¹ · of aH godez namez,
 This title, tetragramatoñ · for so þe text wittnesse. 1592
 With þat Comand þe kyng · hys knyghtez all,
 Bath barouns & bachelers · bald men of armez,
 No nere þe place [to aproche] · vpon payn of þair lyfez,
 Bot aH to hald þaim byhynde · þe lesse & þe more. 1596
 Than ayres he forth aH hym one · to þis atheH meynze,

¹ MS. so, *alt.* to set ; *but* read sō = som.² MS. Some.³ MS. chamernlayn.

and kneels to the
bishop.

Bowis him down of his blonke · þe bischof be-forne,
And kneland on þe cald erth · he knockis on his brest,
And reuerencez þis haly name · at he seis wreten. 1600
þan þe iewis of ierusalem · Iustis & othire,
Lordis & ladis · & be þe litiH childere,

The lords kneel
to the king.

Euclynes þam to þe conquirour · & him on¹ kneis gretis,
Kest vp a kene crie · & carpis þir wordis. 1604
"Ay mozt he lefe, ay mozt he lefe" · quod ilka man
twyse,

They cry, "Long
live Alexander!"

"Alexander, þe athill aire · vndire þe heuyñ,
Ay mozt he lefe, ay mozt he lefe² · þe lege Emperoure,
þe wildire of aH þe werde · & worthist on erthe, 1608
Ay mozt he lef, ay mozt he¹ leue¹" · quod loude aH
at anys,

Conqueror of all
the earth!"

"Ouircomere clene of ilka coste · & ouircomyn neuir,
þe gretest & þe gloriousest · þat euir god formed,
Erle or Emperoure · & any erdly prince." 1612

All wonder at
this greeting.

þare was comen with him kyngis · as þe clause tellis,
Sencioars out of Sireland³ · was to him-selfe 3olden,
And þai meruaild þam mekiH · as þe buke tellis, 1615

[Fol. 28.]

When þai it herd so be-heryd · & heid it in wondire.

Then Permeon
asks him why he
knelt to the
bishop.

þan Permeon, a proude kniȝt · a prince of his oste,
Aires to sir Alexander · & askis at him swythe,
Syn him adoured aH men · eldire & zongir, 1619
Qui he obeschild so lawe & beude · þe bischof of iewis?

He replies that
he knelt to the
great God,

"Nay," quod þe comly kyng · & þe kniȝt swais,
"Nouthire haylsid I him · ne hildiȝt him nouthire,
Bot it was gode at I grete · þe gouernoure of aH, 1623
Of quam in þe abite & þe arnes · he was aH cletiȝd.
For in þe marche of Messedone · me mynes on a tyme,
þat slike a segg in my slepe · me sodanly aperid,
Euyn in slike a similitude · & þis same wedis,
For aH þe werd as þis wee · wendis now atired. 1628

¹ Inserted in the margin.

Here the MS. wrongly inserts quod.

² land is above the line in MS.

Bowes hym downe of hys blonke · þe bischoff before,
 Kneand on ¹ þe cald erth · & knokez on hys briste,
 And hersouns þat haly name · þat he byheld writteñ.

þan aH þe Iewes of Ierusalem · Iustice & oþer, 1601
 Lordez & lades · be þe lityH sottetz,

Inclines þaim to þis conquerour · & hym on knees gretes,
 Kest vp a kene crye · & carpyd þees wordes: 1604

“Ay mott he leue, ay mot he leue” · quod ilke a lede
 twyse,

“Alexander, þe athelfullest · hayr vnder heven, 1606

Ay mot he leue, ay mott he leue · þis lege Emperour,
 The welder of aH þe world · & worthiest vnder wyld,
 Ay mott he leue,” quod þe Land · [loude all] at anes,

“Ouercommen clene of ilke coste · & ouercommyn neuer,
 The grettest & þe gloriest · þat euer god formeð,

EreH or ony Emperour · or erthlich prince!” 1612

þan Wer þair common whit hym kynges · als þe clause telles, [Fol. 15 b.]

Senyours owt of Surry · wer to hym-selue 3olden,
 And þai amervale þaime mekyH · as menys me þe writtes,
 When þai saw hym so heret · & heldyn it a wondre. 1616

Than Permeon, a proude knyzt · a prince of hys hoste,

Ayres to sir alexander · and askys hym swith,

Sen hym adouret aH meñ · alder & yonger,

Why he obeyd & bowed so · to þe bischop of Iewes?

“Nay,” quod þe comly kyng² · & þe knyzt swerez, 1621

“Noþer haylsed I hym · ne heldit hym noþer,

Bod it was god at I gret · þe gouvernour of aH,

Of whome in þe habett & þe armez · he was aH clethyd.

For in þe marche of masydon · me menys on a tyme,

Suche a segh in my slepe · me sodenly appered, 1626

Euen in suche a sembland · & in þe same wedes,

For aH þis world as þis wy · wendes now attyred. 1628

¹ MS. of.

² MS. knyge.

Processio
versus alex-
andrum apud
Ierusalem.

And þen I mused¹ in my mynde · how at I myȝt wyñ
 Anothire aneH of þe erth² · þat Aysy we caH it,
 And me thret to be thra³ · & for na þing turne,
 Bot tire me titely þarto · & tristly to wende. 1632
 And syne saȝe I na segg⁴ · þat sa was arayt;

And sekirly yone semys · þe same to se⁴ to withiñ,
 þe same gode at I in my slepe · saȝe in my days; 1635
 And now I hope me, þurȝe þe helpe⁵ · of þe haly fadir,
 Of *quam* þe hered haly name · is ȝondire oñ hiȝe wreten,
 To do with Darius or I dyi · how so me dere thinke,
 And þe pride of aH þe Persens · purely distroy.
 And ȝit I sothely supose · quat so my sale hopis, 1640
 þat saH faH apon fold · sliH fyaunce I haue

In þe grace of grete god · at gyes aH þe sternes,
 þat it saH be in my wiH · & oñ na way faile." 1643

Now tas þe bishop þe berne · & to þe burȝe wendis,
 With sange & solempnite · him to þe cite ledis,
 He was resayued, as I rede · with reuerence & loye,
 As he ware duke of ilk douth · & dreyn down fra
 heuen. 1647

þan gas he furth with his gingis · to godis awen temple,
 þat of *sir* Salamon þe sage · sett was & foundid,
 And þare he lythis of þare lare · as þe law wald;
 He offird in þat oratori · & honourd oure lorde.

And Iaudas of ierusalem · & aH þe iewis estir 1652
 Bringis out a brade buke · & to þe berne reches,
 Was plant fuH of prophasys · playnely aH ouir,
 Of þe doctrine of DanieH · & of his dere sawis.

þe lord⁵ lokis on þe lyne · & oñ a lefe fyndis 1656
 How þe gomes out of grece · suld with þaire grete miȝtis

"of whom I once
 dreamt.

Now I hope to
 destroy all the
 Persians."

[Fol. 28 b.]

Alexander is
 royally received,

and goes to
 Solomon's temple.

Jaudas brings out
 a book of Daniel's
 prophecy,

how the Greeks

¹ The d is above the line in MS.

² MS. *werd* erth; *but* *werd* is struck out.

³ MS. *repeats* to be thra; *partly underlined*.

⁴ MS. *þe* in same to to w; *altered to þe same to se*.

⁵ *Inserted in the margin.*

And þan I musyd in my mynde · how þat I might wynne,
 Ane oþer angle of þe erth · þat asy we calle,
 And he me thrett to be tra¹ · & for no thyng turne,
 Bot tyre me titely þarto · & tristly to wend. 1632
 And syne saw I no segh · þat so was atired ; 1633
 And he² hoppyd þe helder þat þis was he · at he² saw
 þeñ, 1633*
 For sekerly he semys so · to se withowte, 1634
 The³ same god þat in my slepe · I sawe in þo days ;
 And now I hope, þorow help · of þe hye fadre, 1636
 On whom þe holy name is ȝond · on hye writteñ,
 To do with Darius, or I dye · how I some dere thynke,
 And þe pride of aH þe persens · purely distroy.
 Bot ȝitte I sothly suppose · qwat so my saule pinkez, 1640
 That sall be-falle vpon falde · slyke fiance I haue
 In þe grace of þe grett god · þat gydez aH sternes,
 That it saH in my will be · & in no ways faille.”
 Now takys þis Bishop þe berne · & to burgh ledes, 1644
 With sange & solempnite · with hym to cite wendes,
 He was resaued, as I rede · with reuerence & Ioy,
 As he wer duke of iche dochre · & drevyn owt of
 heueñ.
 þan gays he forth with hys gyng · to goddes awne temple, [Fol. 16.]
 That of sir salamoñ þe sage · sett was & fondyñ, 1649
 And þar he lightez of þar lare · & als þe lawe wald ;
 He offers in þat oratory · & honours owr Lorde.
 And laudes of Ierasalem · þe Iewes fadir, 1652
 Bringes forth a brade buke · & to þe berne reches,
 Was plantyd full of prophecyes · playnly aH ouer,
 Of þe doctryne of daniel · & of hys dere sawes.
 The lede lokys on a lefe · & in a lyne fyndes 1656 *prophecia*
 How þat þe gomez owt of grece · suld with þair grett mightez

¹ Read *thra*.² Read *I* ; *twice*.³ MS. Thame.

should destroy
Persia.

þe pupiſt out of Persye · purely distroy ;
And þat he hopis sall be he · & hertly he ioyes.
þan partis he to þa prelatiſ · many proude giftis, 1660
Was nane sa pore in þat place · bot he his purse tillis,

Alexander richly
rewards all,

Geues þam garsons of gold · & of gud stanes,
Rife riches enoȝe · robies & perles,
Besands to þe bischoþ · he bed out of nounbre, 1664
Reches him of rede gold · ransons many,
Tas him to his tresory · talent him to shewe,
Bad him wale quat he wald · & wild him þe toþir.

and tells the
bishop to take all
he wants,

Ȝit bedis he him, þe bald kyng · as þe buke tellis : 1668
“Sire, quat þou wiſt in þis werl · to wild & to haue,
Noȝt bot aske it at¹ Alexander · quat þou wiſt apou
resoñ,

And I sall grant, or I ga · with a gud wiſt.”

and to ask a boon.

þan bowis doun þe bischoþ · & him a bone askis, 1672

[Fol. 29.]

“Sire, þis I depely disire · durst I it neuyñ,

The bishop asks
for leave to
abide in his
own religion,

þat it be leuefuſt vs oure lare · & oure law vse,
As oure fadirs has folowid · forwith þis tyme ;
As of ȝoure grete gudnes · at ȝe grant wald 1676
To lat vs sitt be safe · bot for þis seuyn wyntir,
But tribute or trouag · quils þe terme lastis,
þan were we halden all þe hepe · to hiȝe þe for euir.
And ȝit I wiſt, be ȝoure leue · a worde & na mare, 1680

and that the men
of Media and
Babylon should
become Jews.

þat þe men of Medi · man, be ȝoure leue,

Lang aſt in oure lawe · lely to-gedire,

And þai of Babiloñ bathe · & bede I na nothire.”

Alexander grants
this,

Quod Alexander belyue · “all þis I graunt, 1684
And els any othire thing · aske & be serued.”

and offers more.

“Nay, now na mare,” quod þe man · & mekly him
thankid,

“Bot ay þi lordschip & þi loue · quils my lyfe dures.”

Now kastis þis conquirow · to caire fra þe cite, 1688

Alexander leaves
a viceroy behind
him.

And mas to bide in þe burȝe · a berne of his awyn,

A messagere to myn · on quat meñ of him said,

¹ MS. at it.

The peple owt of *perse* · purely distroy ;
 And [þat] he hopys suld be he · & heterly he ioyes.
 Than he *partes* to þe *prelates* · mony proude gyftes, 1660
 Was non so pure in þe place · bot he hys purse fillez,
 Gyfez þaim garisons of gold · & of god stanez,
 Riche giftez enogh · bath rubies & *perelez*,
 Besaundez to þe *bischopp* · he hadde owt of nowmbre,
 Rechez hym of rede gold · raunsons mony, 1665
 Takez hym to hys tresory · *talentes* hym shewys,
 Bade hym wale qwat he walle · & wyld hym þaes *oper*.
 3it biddez hym þe bald kyng · als þe boke tellez : 1668
 “Sir, qwat þou wiȝt in þis werld · to weld or to haue,
 Noȝt bot aske at *alexander* · any thyng of resoñ,

And I saȝ graunte, or I gay · *with* a goode wille.”
 Than bowes downe our *bischoþ* · & hym a bone askez,
 “Sir, þis I depely *desirre* · durst I it neuē, 1673
 þat 3e wald latte vs oure lare · & owre lawez vse,
 Als owr faders hase foloued · forewith þis tyme ;
 And of your grett goodnesse · if 3e þis graunte wald 1676
 To latt vs sitte & be safe · bot for þis seuen wynter,
 Withowte tribute or truage · whils þe terme lastes,
 þen wer we halden aȝ þe hepe · to pray for you for euer.
 And 3itt I wille, be your leue · a worde & no more, 1680
 þat þe men of mede · may, be your leue,
 Lenge aȝ in your¹ lawe · lely to-geder,
 And þai of *babilon* bath · þan bid I none othre.”
 Quod *alexander* als belyue · “aȝ þis I graunt, 1684
 And ellys ony *oper* thyng · aske & be *serued*.”
 “Nay, nowe no more,” quod þis mañ · & mekely hym
 thankez,

[Fol. 16 A.1]

“Bot your lordship and youre lone · whille my lyve lastes.”
 Now kyst hym þis conquerour · to care fro þe cite, 1688
 And made to hyde in þe burgh · a berne of hir awne,
 A messynger to meyn on · qwat men of hym sayd,

¹ Read our.

Ane Ardromacius, a gome · as¹ þe buke tellis.
 þan bowis to þe bischoþ · his benyson to fangt, 1692
 Takis luffly his leue · & lendis oñ forthere.
 To Sere cites þar be-syde · he soȝt with his hostis,
 And þai frendly & faire · frely resayued him.
 þan of þe Siriens summe · in þe same tyme 1696
 Folow fra þe fell kyngt · as fals men suld,
 Did þam to *sir Darius* · & depoly þam playnt,
 Quat erreure of þis Emperoure · & euiH þai suffird. 1699
 And he¹ þam faire vndir-fongt · & fraynes þam ȝerne,
 Askis þam of *sir Alexander* · aH at he cuthe,
 Bathe of his statoure & his strenth · if he² ware store ben,
 His qualite, his quantite · he quiryis aH-to-gedire;
 And þai in parchement him payntid · his person him
 shewid, 1704
 Ane amlaȝe, ane asaleny · ane ape of aH othire,
 A wirling, a wayryngle · a wawil-eȝid shrewe,
 þe cait[if]este creatour · þat cried was euire.
 And þan, as he lenes · & lokis on his fourme, 1708
 His litillaike & his licknes · he laythly dispiced,
 And thre thingis of his thede · he þoȝt him sa feble,
 He dressis to him in dedeyne · & in dispite sendis:
 First a baH, says þe buke · þe barne with to play, 1712
 A herne-pan es of a berne · of brend gold yeuen,
 For hottre & for hethingt · a Hatt made of twyggis;
 Sayd þat was benere him to bere · þan a briȝt helme.
 Slike presandis out of Persy · he to þe prince sendis, 1716
 His brefe with a brade sele · & biddis hum³ ga
 swythe.
 And qua sa wiH has to wete · howe it worthis eftir,
 Now sall I neuen vs here next · þe note of his lettir.

Some of the
Syrians complain
of Alexander to
Darius.

[Fol. 29 b.]
Darius enquires
about Alexander,

and is shewn a
caricature of him.

Darius despises
Alexander,

and in disdain
sends him a ball
to play with,

a golden head-
piece,
and a hat made of
twigs.

¹ *Inserted in the margin.*

² MS. repeats if he.

³ *Read him.*

And¹ andromacius, a mañ · as I am enformed.
 þan bowys he to þe Bishoþ · hys benyson to fange, 1692
 Keeches lufly hys leue · & lendeþ on ferther.
 To setez þar bysyde · he soght *with* hys hostez,
 And þai frendly & faire · & frely resaued hym.
 Bot þen of surriens a soume · in þe same tyme 1696
 Flowen from þis feH kyng · as fals men suldyñ,
 Did þaim to *sir* Darius · & depely þaim plenyd,
 What error of þis emperour · & ille þat þai suffred.
 And he þaim faire vnderfangeþ · & franeþ þaim þarne,
 Askez þaim of *sir alexander* · aH þat he couth, 1701
 Bath of hys stature & hys strenth · if he wer sture-baned,
 Hys qualite, hys quantite · enquireþ aH-to-gedyr;
 And þai in perchemyñ depayntyð · hys person hym
 sweyd,
 Ane amlaugh, ane aslyn · ane ape of aH other, 1705
 A wilyng, a warlow · a waugle-e_hed shrewe,
 The catyfest *creatur* · þat credylytt was euer.
 And þen þe Lord, as he lenytt · & lokett on hys forme,
 Hys litilayke & hys liknes · he loudly dispysez, 1709
 And thro² thynges of hys thede · hym thought so feble,
 He dressyd to hym in dysdene · & dispite sendes:
 Frist to³ þe barne, says þe buke · a balle *with* to play,
 A brayn-pan of a berne · of brent gold þeñ, 1713
 For hocour & for hethyng · a hat made of wiggez⁴;
 Sayd, þat was bener hym to bring · þen a bright helme.
 Suche *presandez* owt of *perse* · he to þe prince wayfez,
 Hys brefe *with* a brade seale · & byddes þaim go
 swithe. 1717
 And who sa wete wald · how it worthed aftir,
 Now saH I neuen vs on next · þe note of hys *lettre*.

¹ Read Ane.² Read thre.³ to above the line in MS.⁴ Read twiggez.

Octauus passus Alexandri.

A letter:
"Darius to
Alexander.

[Fol. 30.]

Thou art too
proud and vain.

Thy men are lads
and thieves.

Thou art too
weak to harm us.

Thou hadst
better submit to
me at once.

The Persians are
a mighty race.

"Sire dere Darius on dese · þe digne Emperoure,
þe kyng¹ without comparriſon · of kyngis aH othire,
Of aH lordis þe lord · þat leues in erthe,
Predicessour of princes · & perece¹ to þe sonū, 1723
þe souerayne sire of my soyle · þat sittis in my trone,
In fang with my faire godis · þat I affie maste,
To *Alexander*, þat of aH · so augrily him letes,
Oure subiet & oure seruand² · þas we oure-selfe write.
For it is wayued vs to wete · þat wickidly þou haues,
þurze enmyte & enuy · elacion of pride, 1729
Be vanyte & vayne glori · þat in þi wayns kindlis,
Puruayd þe pletours · oure partis to ride.
For þou has samek, as men he² sais · a selly nounbre
Of wrichis & wirlingis · out of þe west endis, 1733
Of laddis & of losengers · & of litiH theuys,
Slike sary sorozis as þi-selfe · to seke vs agaynes,
And wenes to wild aH þi wiH · & þat worthis ful late,
þe prouynce & principalte · of *Persye* la graunt. 1737
For þou ert fere al to faynt · oure force to ministere;
þof þou had gedird all þe gomes · þat euire god fourmek,
So, man, riued is oure rewme · þat þou may rez^t lycken
þe store strenthe of oure stoure · to sternes of þe heuen.
And slike a nekard as þi-selfe · a nozt of aH othire,
Is bot a madding to meH · with mare þan him-seluen.
Forthi is bettir vnbynd · & of þe brathe leue, 1744
And feyne aH with fairnes · & fayne at þou may.
For mare menseke³ is a man · to meke him be tyme,
þan eftir made to be meke · malegreue his chekis.
For aH þe gracious godis · & gudnes oñ erthe, 1748
þat sanyſ sete & soile · & sustaynes þe erth,
Prayſes ay þe Persyns · passing aH othire,

¹ Read pere.

² Inserted in the margin; better omitted.

³ So; for menseke.

Octavus passus.

Syr Dere Darius on dese · þe digne Emperour, 1720 *Epistola darij.*
The kyng withowt comparisoñ · of kyngez all oper,
 Of at lordes þe Lord · þat leues in erthe, [Fol. 17.]
 Predecessour of princez · & peir to þe Soñ,
 The souerane syre of my sole · þat sittis in myne trone,
 In fange with my faire god · þat I affye maste, 1725
 To *Alexander*, þat of aH · so augerdly hym letes,
 Oure seget¹ & our siruant¹ · þus our-selfe writtez.
 For it is wayfed vs to wete · þou haues wikedly, 1728
 Thruh enmyte & enuye · Elacion of pride,
 Be vanyte & vaynglory · þat in þi vaynes kyndeles,
 Purvayd þe pletours · oure partez to ryde.
 For þou hase sampned, als men sayn · a sellich nowmbre
 Off wrechez & of wyrlyngez · out of þe west ende, 1733
 Off laddez & of losyngers · & of lityH thefez,
 Siche sary sorowez as þi-self · to seke vs agayns,
 And wenys to weld at þi wille · þat worthez fuH late,
 The prouince & þe principalite · of perse le graunt. 1737
 Bot þou ert fere aH to faynte · oure force to withstonde;
 þof² þou hade gederit³ aH þe gomez · þat euer god formede,
 So, man, ryfe is owr reme · þat þou may wele lekyñ
 þe sture strenth of owr stoure · to þe sternez of heuen;
 And sike a neker als þi selfe · ane noght of aH oper,
 Is bot⁴ a maddyng to meH · with mare þen þi-selue.
 For-þi is better vnbende · & of þi brathe leue, 1744

 For mare menske is a man · to meke hym be tyme,
 Than after made to be meke · mawgre hys chekys.
 For aH þe graciouse goddes · & goddesse on erth, 1748

 Praysez ay þe persens · passyng aH oper, 1750

¹ MS. souerent siruant; the former word expuncted.² MS. Of. ³ it written above the line. ⁴ MS. bod.

And for þe oddliste of ilka ost · honoures our name. 1751

Thou art a dwarf
and a grube.

And slike a dwinyng,¹ a dwaȝe · & a dwerȝe as þi-selfe,
A grub, a grege out of *grace* · ane erl-growyn sorowe,
WiH couet ȝit as a king · *with* caytefes to lyte,
To couir at combrid aH þe kyngis · vndire þe cape of
heuen !

[Fo. 30 b.]

Riȝt as a flaw of feH snawe · ware fallyn of a ryft, 1756

Of a wysti wonn waghe · *with* þe wynd blawen,

So *with* a flote of Fresons · folowand þi helis,

þou sekis fraward Sichim · þi-selfe wrothir-haile,

Thou thinkest to
do as thee list,

And leuys as a loreH · þus oure lande to entire, 1760

And maa þi lepis & þi laikis · & quat þe liste ellis,

like rats or mice
in a room.

As ratons or ruȝe myse · in a rowme chambre,

Aboute in beddis or in bernys · þare baddis ere nane.

Bot I haue wilily waitid · þi wiles & þi castis, 1764

And quen þou hopis aH-þir hiest · to haue aH þar wiH,

But I shall slay
thee.

I sall þe sett on a saute · & sla þe [with] my handis.

For-þi for pompe or for pride · þi purpose a-vise, 1767

Turne þe, trechoure, be-time · þat þou na treson haue,

Return to thy
den.

And drawe a-gayn to þi deH · vndire þi dam wyngis.

Se quat I send to þe,² soH · þi-selfe *with* to laike,

A hatt & a hand-baH · & a herne-panne ; 1771

I send thee some
playthings.

Slike *presandis* to play *with* · as *pertines* to babbis.

For ai a child mot him chese · to childire geris ;

For mestire & miserie · vnneth may þou forthe

þine awen caitefe cors · to clethe & to fede,

And supposis as a sott · to sese oure landis, 1776

And outhire *darius* to drepe · or dryfe fra his kythis !

Bot by þe *grace* & þe gude · þat god gaue my fadire,

Our land is so
rich in gold that
it outshines the
sun.

So riued is þe rede gold · oure regions *with*-in,

þat qua sa had it on a hepe · haly to-gedire, 1780

¹ MS. dwinyng.

² MS. þi, altered to þe.

And for þe oddest of ilke one oste · honours owr name.
 And slyke a dwynying · a drawgh of þi-selueñ, 1752
 A grob, a grig out of grace · ane enth-growen sorow,
 WyH couett zitte as a kyng · with catyllerz licheH,
 To couer & to combre aH þe kynges · vnder þe Cape of
 heuen!

Right as a flaw of fell snaw · fallen wer fro þe drifte, 1756
 Of a wistus wondyn wagh · with þe wynd blayn,
 So with a flote of fresons · folowand thi heles,
 Thu sekys fraward sychim · þi-selue with eueH haille,
 And Leues as a losch · owr land for to entre, 1760 [Col. 17 b.]
 And make þi lepys & þi lakez · & qwat þou list ellys,
 As ratons or ronke myce · in a rowme chaumbre,
 About on beddes or in bernez · þar baddez er nane.
 Bott I haue willyly wayted · þi wilez & þi castez, 1764
 And when þou hepys aH-pir eldest · to haue at þou likez,
 I saH þe sett on a sawte · & slaye þe with my handez, 1766
 And so saH, fole, for þi folez · be fenysht on dawes. 1766*
 For þi pompe & þi pride · þi purpasse ayse,¹ 1767
 For yf þou shote ouer sheet · þou shendes þi flayne. 1767*
 Turne² þe, trechour, be tyme · þat þou no treson hable, 1768
 And [drawe] agayn to þi den · vnder þi dame wengez.
 Se qwat I sende þe, soñ · þi-selfe with to layke,
 A hatt here & a hand-balle · & a herne-panne;³
 Slike presantes⁴ to play with · as pertens þe to haue. 1772
 For ay a childe most hym chose · vnto childer gammez;
 For mister & for michefe · vneth may þou forth
 þine awne catf cors · to cloth & to fede,
 And zit supposes as A sott · to sesyn owr Landez, 1776
 And Darius to drepe · & dryve owt of hys⁵ kythes!
 Bot be þe grace & þe goode · þat god gafe my fader,
 So ryfe is þe rede gold · oure regions within,
 At who so had it on a hepe · holy to gedre,⁶ 1780

¹ MS. to ayse; but to is better omitted. ² MS. To me wrongly.

³ MS. payne, corrected to panne. ⁴ MS. presandez presantes.

⁵ lys, corrected to hys.

⁶ MS. to gredre.

- It wald vs let, as I leue · þe list of þe soñ !
 For-þi bið I þe badriçh · on bathe twa þine ezen,
 And oñ þe pleggi & þe payn · & periH as folowis,
 Añ þi vanye to voide · & þi vayne pride, 1784
- Return to
Macedon,
[Fol. 31.]
or thou shalt be
hung like a thief."
 And mew agayn to Messedone · or any mare faH.
 For be þe saule of my sire · bot if þou sone turne,
 We sall þe send sike a soume · of segis en-armeH,
 Nozt as Philips fant · salle fare with þi-selve, 1788
- Alexander reads
the letter aloud,
 Bot as a prince of proued theues · pyne þe to dede."
 Als sone as his sandismen · to þis sire come,
 þai present him þe playntis · þe pistill him rechis,
 And Alexander belyue · be-fore aH his princes, 1792
- and his men are
afraid.
 To aH his ost euyñ oñ · he openly declaris.
 And quen his kniȝtis of þis clause · þe carpe vndirstode,
 þen ware þai frekly a-frayd · of þe feH saȝes ;
 And as sone¹ as him-selve saȝe · his seggis amouedH, 1796
- He says,
 In bilding¹ of his bachelers · he breuys þire wordis :
 "Quat now ? my worthi werriouris · sa wiȝt & sa noble,
 Mi bernes & my baratours · þe best vndire heuen ;
 Lettis neuire it broȝt be oñ brade · for vpbraide of
 scheme, 1800
- "Be not afraid of
Darius.
 3e doute for þe indityngs · of Darius pistils.
 I sett ȝowe ane ensample · ȝe se it aH daye,
 In thorps & in many thede · þar ȝe þurȝe ride,
 At ilka cote a kene curre · as he þe chache waldH ; 1804
- He is like a yelp-
ing cur, that
cannot bite.
 Bot as bremely as he baies² · he bitis neuir þe fastir.
 Bot in suñ, I suppose wele · þat sothe is þe lettir,
 þare as he tellis quyche a turne · of tresoure he hauys.
 For-þi vs buse to be biggi¹ · & bataill him ȝekH, 1808
- We must get his
gold."
 þe grete garisons of gold · saH gedire vp oure hertis."
 With þat comands þe kyng · his kniȝtis be-lyue,
 þe donesmen þat fra Darius come · with þe derfe lettir,
 þat þai suld titly þam take · & by þe toȝe throtis, 1812
- He gives orders
 And for þaire souerayne sake · þam send to þe galawis.

¹ MS. inserts him s ; but it is struck out.² The e is above the line.

It wald hym lett, as I leue · þe light of þe Soñ!
 For-þi bid I þe badly · vppen payn of þi egheñ,¹
 And on þe plight & payn · & perle þat folows,
 AH þi vanyte to voyde · & þi vayn pryde, 1784
 And mese ayayn to masydon · or ony mare falle.
 For, be þe sawle of my sire · bot yf þou sone turne,
 I saH send þe suche a sume · of segges enarmed, 1787
 þat noght as philip faunt · þou saH fare with þi-selueñ,
 Bot as a prince reproued · sall be pynynd to dede.”
 Als sone as euer hys sondesmeñ · to þis syre commyn,
 Thai present hym playnly · & þat pistiH hym rechys,
 And alexander als byliue · before hys ateh² princez, 1792
 And to þe host euen ouer · it opynly declares. [Fol. 18.]
 And when þe knyghtez · of þis clause vnderstonde,
 Than wer þai felly³ affrayed · of hys feH sawes;
 And als sone as hym-selfe se · hys seges ameyved, 1796
 In beldyng of hys bachelers · he breues þees wordes:
 “What now? my worthy weryours · so wight & so noble,
 My bernis & my barotours · þe best vnder heueñ;
 Lett neuer it be broght on brade · for vmbrayd of
 shame, 1800
 Yhe dout for þe dityng⁴ · of darius pisteh.
 I sett you an ensaumple · ye se it euerilke day,
 In thorpus & in mony thede · þare ye þorow rydeñ,⁴
 1804
 For yf he bre mely bays · he bitez neuer helder.
 Bot in some way, I suppose wele · þat soght is hys lettre,
 þair as he tellez which tunne⁵ · of tresour he hase.
 For-þi vs [bus] to be big · & batele hym zelde, 1808
 þe grete garison of gold · saH geder vp ovr hertes.”
 With þat commandeþ þe kyng · hys knyghtez belyfe,
 þare Domesmen þat from darius come · with þe derfe lettrez,
 þat þai suld titely þaim take · & be toze nekez, 1812
 For þair souerend sake · þaim send to þe galouse.

¹ MS. eugheñ.² So in MS.³ MS. fellyd.⁴ MS. dydeñ.⁵ MS. tyme.

to hang the
messengers.

þan was þa messangers a-maied · as *mervale* ware ellis,
With kene carefuþ erie · þis conquirour þai said: 1815

They beseech him
to be merciful.

“Allas! quat lake lyse in vs lord · if it be ȝoure wiþ,
þus causeles for oure kyng · encumbird to worthe?”

[Fol. 31 b.]

“The saȝes of ȝour souerayn” · said þe kyng þen,

He says it is
because Darius
calls him a thief.

“Nedis me to slike notis · as I had neuer etlid,
þat has ȝow sent to my-selfe · noȝt sa as him aȝe; 1820
Loo ‘litiþ thefe’ in ilka lyne · his lettir me callis.”

They remind him
that it is Darius
who wrote the
letter.

“Ȝa,” quod þai, “comly kyng” · & on knes¹ fallis,
“þase ditis endited to ȝowe · sir Darius him seluyn,
For he knew noȝt of ȝour kniȝthede · ne of ȝour kid
strenth; 1824

He pardons them,
and entertains
them.

Ne wist noȝt of ȝour worthenes · & wrote all þe baldire.
Bot wald ȝe grant vs to ȝaa · & gefe vs ȝour lefe,
þen suld we bre mely ȝour bill · to þe berne shewe.”
þen lete þe lord þan allane · & went till his fest, 1828
Takis þan with him to his tent · & þan at ese makis.
Sone as þai in his sale · were sett at þe table,
“Sire Alexander, athiþ kyng” · quod aþ with a steuyn,
“Comands with vs to caire · kniȝtis a thousand, 1832
And we sall surely oure sire · þe send in þaire handis.”
“Ȝa, make we blis,” quod þe kyng · “blithe mote ȝe
worthe,

He writes to
Darius.

For as for takynge of ȝour lord · saþ na lede wynde.”
To Darius anopir day · enditis he a pistiþ, 1836
A crest clenly inclosid · þat consayned þis wordis.
Alexander, þe aire · & eldest childe bathe
Of kyng Philip þe fers · þe fendere of grece,
And als of Olimpades · þat honourable lady, 1840

“Alexander to
Darius, who calls
himself a con-
queror.

To þe, Darius, on dese · þus dite I my lettir.
þou prince of aþ þe Persyns · þat peres to þe sonne,
þe conquirour of ilka cost · callid of þi-selfe,
With all þi gracious godis · graithid in þi trone, 1844
All þus I send to ȝowe I my² sawe · yndir my sele wreten.
Sire, if we se with a suth · surely me thinke,

¹ MS. *keies*, altered to *knies*. ² written *abere* the line in MS.

þen wer þees messyngers amaced · as merveH wer ellez,
 With carfuH chere · to þe conquerour þai saydyn̄:
 "Alas! what lake lyes in vs · lord, be *your* lefe, 1816
 Thus causes for owr kyng · encombred to worthe?"
 "The sawez of your soueren" · sayd þe kyng þeñ,
 "Nedes me now to seche notes · as I neuer attelytt,
 That he hase sent to my-seluen · noght as he awght; 1820
 Lo! 'lityH thefe' in iche line · hys *lettre* me calles."

· · · · ·
 "þis doyngez *sir* darius · indited you hym-seluen,
 For he knew noght *your* knyghthode · ne *your* kyd
 strenthez; 1824

Ne wist noght of yowr worthiness · & wrote aH þe balder.
 Bot 3e wald graunt vs to go · & gyfe vs owr lyfyz,
 Than suld we bremely your blysse · vnto þe berne shewe."
 þan lete þe Lord þaim aloñ · & lathys þaim to hys feste,
 Takes þaim *with* hym to hys tent · & makez þaim at ease.

Sone as þees sandesmeñ in sale · wer sett at þe table, [Fol. 18 b.]

"Sir alexander, ateh kyng" · *quod* aH *with* a steyvñ,
 "Comand *with* vs to care · knyghtez a thowsand, 1832
 And we saH surely owr syre · you send in þair handez."
 "3a, make 3e blysse," *quod* þe kyng · "blyth mote 3e
 worthe,

For þe lachynge of *your* Lorde · saH noght a lede weynde."
 Bot to Darius on þat oþer day · indited he a pisteH, 1836
 A *lettre* clenly enclosyt · þat consaued þees wordes.

"I, alexander, ayr · & eldeste childe bothe Epistola.

Of kyng philip þe ferse · þe fender of grece,
 And als of olimphades · þat honorable ladye, 1840
 To þe, *sir* Darius, on dese · þus dite I my *lettre*.
 þou prince of aH persens · þat apperys to þe soñ,
 The conquerour of ilke coste · callyd of pi-seluen,
 With aH pi graciouse goddes · grathed in pi trone, 1844
 AH þus I send þow to say · vnder my sealle wrytten.
 Sir, yf we se þe sothe · surely me thynke,

All men's lands
are but their own
for a day.

Oure facultes, oure faire fees · oure fermes & our landis,
We may noȝt chalangi þaiñ ne clayme · ne cañ þaim
oure awen, 1848

[Fol. 32.]

Bot all I deme it as det · & to a day borowid.
For sen we riden on þe rime · & oñ þe ringe seten

Fortune's wheel
turns swiftly.

Of þe qwele of Fortoun, þe quene · þat swiftly changis,
Ofte pas we in pouert · fra plente of gudis, 1852
Fra mirthe in-to mournyng · fra mournyng in-to Ioye.
For now vs wantis in a qwirre · as þe quele turnes ;

When we think to
be highest,
Fortune drowns
us.

Queñ we suppose in oure sele · to sit alþir heist,
þaiñ fondis furth dame Fortoun · to þe flode-ȝatis, 1856
Drazes vp þe damme-borde · & drenchis vs enire.

Let no man
despise his
smaller neigh-
bour.

For-þi a we þat has wit · þose he wele suffir,
So sadly in soueraynete · he set neuire his hope 1859
For pride of na pro[s]perite · ne prise at him folewis,
To olle ay oñ his vndireling · for ouer-laike a quyle.

Ye dishonour
your name in
reviling me.

For any sele vndire son · a sott I him hald,
þat ay has deyne & dispite · at dedis of litiñ,
Sen oft þe hauelest here · is houen to þe sternes, 1864
And he þat graithist is of gudis · gird añ to poundire.

You call yourself
king of all men,
as if you were
immortal.

For-þi a depe dishonoure · ȝe do to ȝoure name,
Ane emperoure þat oñ erth · is euyñ to ȝoure-selfe,
To me sa litiñ & sa lawe · slike lettis to sende, 1868
And presand out of Persy · bot for a pure hethyng.

For þou enherestis añ þis erth · & euens to þe soñ,
And callis þe kyng of ilka kithe · vndir þe cape of heuen,
And þarto sittis, as þou sais · in sege as ane Aungeñ,
To-gedire with þi grete¹ gods · and oñ a gilt trone. 1873
Bot syn gostid goddesses & gods were graythid neuir to dye,
Bot ai sall last furth elike · oñ-lyne ouire² mare,
þai naue no wiñ to my notis · ne wilnyng to haue,
No dole ne no daliance · of dedely bernes. 1877

I know myself to
be mortal, and
attack you.

Bot I know I am corruptible · & caire ȝow agaynes,
Als with a dedly duke · to do my bataiñ ;

¹ MS. repeats with grete.

² Read enire.

Our facultez or faire feys · ovr fermez & owre goldez,
We may noght chalynge þaim ne clame · ne calle þaim our
awne, 1848

Bot aH I deme as dett · vnto a day borrowed.
For yff we ryde on þi reme · & on þi renke settyñ
Off þe whele of forton & þe whene · þat whistely chaungez,
Off[t] passe we in-to pouerte · fro plente of godez, 1852
Fro mirthe into murnyng · fro murnyng into Ioy.

For now vs vantes in a whirre · as þe whele chaungez ;
When we supposye in howre-selfe · to sitte aH þar heldest,
þen fonndez douñ dame fortoñ · to þe flode-zates, 1856
Drawez vp þe dame-borde · & drenchez vs for euer.

For þi a wye þat hase witte · of þe whele sofre,
So¹ sodandly in hys souerente · to sett neron² hys hope
For pride of no prosperite · ne prise at hym folowez, 1860
To olle ay on hys vnderlinges · for ouerlayke a while.

For ony ceyle vnder heven · a sot I hym halde,
þat ay hase dene & dispyte · of dedes of lityH,
Syon oft þe haslokst her · is heuen to þe sternes, 1864
And he þat³ grethest was of goddez · gird aH to-geder.

For þi a depe disHonor · yhe do to your Name, [Fol. 19.]
Ane Emperour þat on þis erth · is euen to your-selueñ,
To me so lityH & so lawe · such lettres to wayfe, 1868
And presentes owt of perse · bot for a pure hethinge.

For þou inheretes aH þis werld · & euens vnto þe suñ,
And calles þe kyng of ilke kyth · vnder þe cape of heueñ,
And þarto sittes as þou says · in sege as an angeH, 1872
To-gedre with þi grett goddez · on a gilt trone.

· · · · ·
· · · · ·
· · · · · 1876
· · · · ·

I knaw I am corruptible · & caire þow agayns,
Als a dedlich duk · to do my bateH ;

¹ MS. So doys he so sodandly ; of which doys he is subpuncted.
² So in MS. ; for neuer ou. ³ MS. þ, with ht above the line.

[Fol. 32 b.]
If I win, great
will be my
honour.

Bot þof¹ þou þe victor a-vaile · na vaunte saß arise,
Ne lose, bot as a litill thefe · 3ow limpid to encumbre.
Bot chance it me, þat am a childe · þe cheuer to worthe,
So þat be geuyn me þe gree · grete glorie is myn awen.
For þan sall spring vp þe speche · & sprede out² of
mynd, 1884

You speak of the
plenty of your
gold.

How I haue conquered a kyng · þe kideest of þe werð.
Bot a tale 3e me tald · I trow be na faile,
Of þe ryfenes of þe rede gold · 3our regioñ with-iñ,
Quilke plente is in Persy · of perett & of ellis, 1888
þe somme of siluer & of siche · & of sere stanes,
þare-with oure wittes has þou wele · & oure wiß sharpid,
And blid with þi besands · þe bataiñ to 3eld, 1891
Made vs corageous & kene · 3oure clere gold to wyñ,
And put a-way oure pouert · 3e plede vs to hald.

This makes us
bold to hope to
win it.

Bot as touchand þe truflis · þat 3e to me sent, 1894
þe herne-pan, þe hand-baß · þe hatt made of twiggis,
þare has þou prophesid apert · & playnely vs schewid,
And faire affirmed vs before · þat saß fall eftir. 1897

I will explain
what the play-
things mean.

The ball is the
world, which
shall be mine.

For by þe baß, sir, I breue · aß þe brode werð,
þe erthe at to myne empire · enterely bees 3olden.
And be þe hat, þat is holewe · be-for þe heued howed,
I constru þat ilka kyng · saß clyne to my-selfe. 1901
þan hope I by þe hernepan · þat þe hede couirs,
Ouir-comers³ to be callid · & ouire-comen neuire.

The hollow hat
shews that all
shall give way to
me.
The headpiece
shews I shall be
head."

Now þou, þe grettest vndir god · graithis me trouage,
With aß þis dignites be-dene · þat I diuined haue."
þis brefe bedis þaim him bere · & besands þam rechis ;
And eftir armes aß his ost · & airis oñ eftir forthire.
Sire Darius for þe ditis · nere died he for angire, 1908
To twa of þe derrest of his dukis · ditis he þis pistill :
"I, þe corounnest kyng · of kyngis aß othire,
To þe, sir primus, a prince · of Persye þe grettest, 1911
And als to ser Antagoyne · myñ awen athiñ dukis,

A letter.

"Darius to Sir
Primus.

[Fol. 33.]

¹ MS. Bot þou þof ; but þou is underlined.
² Inserted in the margin. ³ Read Ouir-comer.

Bot if þou þe victour availe · no vaunt saH þar rise, 1880
 No lose, bot of a lityH thef · enlympyd you to combre.
 Bot chaunce it me, þat I am childe · þe cheuer to worth,
 So þat if be¹ gefyn me þe gre · grete glory is my awne.
 For þan saH springe vp þe speche · & sprede owt of
 mynde, 1884

How at I haue Conquered a king^t · þe kyddest of þe werld.
 Bot one tale 3e me tald · I trowe be no fable,
 Of þe refuse of rede gold · your regions within,
 Which plente is in perse · of perle & of ellys, 1888
 þe some of siluer & of siche · & of sere stones,
 þar-with owr willes er replete · & our wittes sharpened,
 And baldt vs with þi besaundez · þe bateH to byd,
 Made vs coragious & kene · þi clere gold to wynne, 1892
 And put away our pouerte · yhe pledyn vs to hald.

Bot as tochand þe trufels · þat 3e to me send,
 þe herne-payn, þe hand-balle · þe hat made of twygges,
 þair hase þou prophecied apert · & playnly vs schewed,
 And fair enformed vs before · þat falle saH after. 1897

For be þe bale, sir, I breue · aH þe brode werld,
 The erth þat to myne empire · entirely is 3holden. 1899
 And be þe hatte, þat is holys² · & before þe heued³ bozet,
 I Constrew þat iche kyng · saH incline to my-selueñ.

þan hope I, be þe harnepanne · þat þe heued Couers,
 Ouercommer to be callyd · & ouercomyn neuer.
 Now þe grettest vnder god · gyfes me truage, 1904

With aH þar dignitez be-dene · þat deuised I Haue."

THys brefe he biddez þaim Bere · & besaundes þaim reches ; [Fol. 19 b.]
 And aftyr armes hys oste · & ayres on forther.

Sir darius for þis detes · nere dyes for sorow, 1908
 And to two þe derrest of hys dukes · ditez he þis pisteH :

"I, Coroundest^t kyng · of kynges aH oþer, Epistola.

To þe, sir Priamus, a prince · of þe grettest perse,
 And also to þe, sir antigon · myne awne atheH dukes, 1912

¹ be, written above the line.

² Read holow.

³ MS. heuend ; but see l. 1902.

- þe soueraynest of my *seniourie* · my *saroparis*¹ hatten,
 Se here I send ȝow my seele · with *salutis* of ioye.
 Since Alexander invades my lands, Fra Alexander þe kyng · as I am in-fourmedȝ,
 Is entrid with oure enmys · aȝ endles nounbre, 1916
 þe Anglies of Asie · & has þam aȝ stroyedȝ,
 I charge you to attack him. For-þi of life & o lym · my lege men I charge
 To prestli ȝow apparaiȝ · & pas þam agaynes,
 With all þe hathils & þe heris · & þe hiȝe maistris 1920
 þat ȝe may semble in þe sidis · *saudiours* & othire.
 Take this boaster, þen chese ȝow furth my chiftanes · & me þe child take,
 Laches me þis losengere · & ledis me him hedire,
 that I may scourge him and send him to his mother. þat I may him skelp with a skorge · & þen² of³ skire
 porpore 1924
 A side slaunȝ him sewe · & send him to his modire ;
 For now he *proches* for pride · & *propurly* he wedis,
 For-þi him bose to be bett · as a barne fallis.
 For it⁴ aȝe noȝt slik ane Asaldȝ · nane *abletus* to off
 werres, 1928
 He is only fit to play at bowls." Bot at þe bowlis as a brode · or with a baȝ playe."
 þire princes, sone as þe pistill · was put þam in handȝ,
 þan part þai þe proudȝ sele · þe printe þai adhouredȝ,
 Vn-lappis liȝtly þe lefe · & þe line redes, 1932
 A letter. And þus-gate agynwardȝ · þai graithidȝ him anothire.
 "Sir Priamus to Darius. "To þe kiddes kyng to a-count · of kyngis aȝ othire,
 Sire Dari, with þi dere godis · drised oȝ þi trone,
Gouernoure of ilk a gome · & god all þi-selfe, 1936
 þi satrapairs, þi *seniours* · with *seruage* obescheȝ :
 Sire, wetis it wele, ȝoure worthines · & wenys it na
 langire,
 This child, as you call him, þat þis child, with his chiftans · þat ȝe charge vs to take,
 has wasted our lands. Has reden aȝ oure regions · & raymed oure landis, 1940
 [Fol. 33 b.] Departid aȝ oure *prouynce* · & purely it wastidȝ.
 And we þan lift vp a lite · & lent him a-gayne,
 Ferd furth with a flote · & him in þe fyld metis ; 1943

¹ Read *satoparis* ; see l. 1937.² MS. *þen þe* ; but *þe* is struck out.³ Inserted in the margin.⁴ Written above the line in MS.

The soueranest of my senory · my satrapers haldeñ,
Se here I send þou my sealle · with salutes of Ioy.

For alexander the kyng · as I am informed,
Is entred with ovr enmys · ane endles nowmbre, 1916

In þe anglez of asy · & hase þaim aH stroyde,
For-þi on life & on lymez · my legemen I charge
To pristly þou apperale · & passe hym agayns,
With aH þe hatellys & þe herez · & þe hye maisters 1920

þat 3e may assemble on þai sydez · saugeours & oper.
Chesse þou forth chiftanez · & me þis childe takes,
Laches me þis losynger · & ledes me hym heder,
And [I] saH hym skelþ with a scourge · & þen in skyre
purple 1924

A syde slauyn hym in sew · & send hym hys modre ;
For now he prokes for pride · & p[ro]prely wodez,
For-þi he must be bett · as a barne falles.
Bot it aught noght suche brolle · in none armez of
werez, 1928

Bot at þe bulez as a brode · or with a bale to play.”
þire princez, when þis pistell · was putt þaim in hand,
þai departyd þe prowde sealle · þe printe þai honour,
And vnlappyd lightly þe leffe · & þe lines redyñ, 1932
And þus agaynward · þ[a]i grathed hym one oper.

“To þe kyng to acount¹ · of aH kynges on erth, Epistola.
Sir Dary with þi dere goddez · dressyd in trone,
Gouernour² of ilke grome · & god aH þi-selueñ, 1936
þi satrapers, þi senyowrs · with seruyce obidiens :
Sir, wetes it your worthynes · & wenys no langer,

þat þis childe with hys chiftanys · 3e charge vs to take,
He hase rideñ aH your regions · & raymet ovr landez, 1940
Desperset aH our prouince · & purely distroyde.
And we þen liften vp a lite · & rydyn hym ayayns,
Ferd forth with a folke · & hym in þe feld metyñ ; 1943 [Fol. 20.]

¹ MS. acoount.² MS. Geuernour.

We fled before
him.

Bot sone we bed him þe bake · & besely¹ we shapide
Out of þe handis vn-hewyn · of oure hatill² fais.

We beseech your
help."

And now haly aH þe hepe · at 3e³ 3oure help callis,
Vn-to 3oure mekiH maieste · we mekely beseke,
þat vs 3our lege & 3oure lele men · it likid 3ow to
forthire, 1948

Darius hears that
Alexander
approaches.

Or þaH oure wirschip at-wynde · & wastid he þe regne."
As radly as þe riche kyng · had red ouir þis pistiH,
Be þat mevis in A³ Messangere · & maynly him tellis,
þat Alexander was at hand · & had his ost loygid 1952
A-poH þe streme of Struma⁴ · þat strekis þurze his landis.

He is grieved.

Sire Darius for þa ditis · was depely a-greuyd,
Callis him his consail · a clause he him enditis,
Mas a brefe at a braide · & it in brathe sendis, 1956

A letter.

To Alexander as be-lyue · & aH þus him gretes.

"Darius to his
servant Alex-
ander.

¶ "I, sir Dari, þe deyne · & derfe Emperoure,
þe kyng of kyngis I am callid · & conquirour bathe,
Of all lordis þe lord · a-lese⁵ þurze þe werd, 1960
And ane of þe souerayne sires · vndir þe vij sternes,
To þe, my seruand, I send · & suthely þou knawes,
And wete þou wele þurze aH þe werde · is wirschip
oure name.⁶

How couldst thou
be so bold?

For aH þe gracious gods · at þe ground visitis, 1964
AH ere done me to doute · ducesses⁷ & othire.

How couldst thou
be so bold?

How burde þe þan be sa bald · for blod in þi heued,
To moue þus ouir þe mountey[n]s · & ouir þe many
watirs 1967

[Fol. 34.]

Thou hadst
enough to do to
keep Macedonia.

With slike a soume ouir þe see · a saute vs to 3eld,
Or any maistrie to make · my maieste a-gayne?
For wella⁷ wide ware þe wele · wete þou na nothire,
Bathe þi glorie & þi grace · þi gladnes in erthe, 1971
Mizt þou þe marches of Messedoyne · mayntene þi-selfe,
And gouerne bot þine awen gronde · agaynes oure⁸ wiH.

¹ MS. & hi besely.

² Read hathill.

³ Inserted in the margin.

⁴ The u is above the line.

⁵ Read alosed.

⁶ MS. name.

⁷ So (or ducesses) in MS.

⁸ Inserted in the margin.

Bot sone wer bidden þaim þe bake · & besely echapyñ 1944
Owt of handez to þe swerde · mony of owr athelles.

And we now haly aH þe hepe · þat 3e your helpe callyñ,
Vnto your mykle mageste · we mekely besekyñ,
þat vs your lege & your lele meñ · it liked 3ou to
forther, 1948

For owr worship is weynd · & wasted is owr remes.”
And als radely as þe ryche kyng · had red ouer þe pistell,
Be þat mefys in a messynger · & manyly hym tellys,
þat alexander was at hand · & hed an hoste loget 1952
Vppon þe streame of streuma · þat straughtit þorow þe land.
þen sir dary for þoe dedes · was deply agrevyd,
Callys hys counseH · a clause he inditez,
Makez a breue in a brayde · & in a breth sendes, 1956
To alexander als belyue · & aH þus hym gretes.

“**I, Sir Dary þe digne · & derfe Emperour,**
The king of kyngez am called · & conquerour bath,
Of aH Lordes Lord · lowsed þorow þe werld, 1960
And one of þe souerenest syres · vndir þe seuen sternes,
To þe, my siruand, I send · & sothly I know,
And wete þou wele aH þe werld · worshippys my name.

*Epistola
darij.*

For aH þe gracieux goddez · þat þe ground viseteñ, 1964
AH er vndir my obedience · dredles I telle.
How durst þou be so bald · for blode in þi heued,
To mefe þus ouer þees montannez · & þes mony waters

With syke a soume for to seke · a sawt vs to 3elde, 1968
Or ony maistre to make · my mageste ayayns?
For wele wyde wer þi wele · wete þou none other,
Both þi glory & grace · þi gladnesse in erth, 1971
Might þou þe marche of masidoñ · mayntene þi-seluē,
And gouerñ þine aweñ grund · agayns owr wyH.

Return home,

before my hate
kindles upon thy
head.

As a token,
I send thee my
glove, full of
seeds.

If thou canst
count them, then
count my men.

They are number-
less."

The messengers
bring the letter
and the seeds.

[Fol. 34 b.]

Alexander bites
the seeds, and
says,
"They may be
many, but they
are soft."

For-þi ware bett^r vnbynde · or þou bale suffice,
Remowe agayne to þi rewme · & rew of þi werkⁱs.
For certayne, nyf my *seniourie* · ne I my-selfe nouthire,
Aȝ þe werd myȝt a wedowe · wele þaȝ be callid. 1977
For-þi turne þe be-time · or any tene worthe,
Or at þe hate of my hert · a-poȝ þi hede kindiȝ.
Lend agayȝ to þi lande · nowe quen þou leue hauys,
þat I mete þe in my malicoly · my meth be to littiȝ.
For-þi to keȝ þe to-knaw · my kyndnes here-est^r, 1982
Bath my grace & my glori · & my grete strenthe,
Loo here a gloue full⁴ of graynes · I graythe þe to take,
Of þe chesses of a chesboȝ · chosen for þe nanys. 1985
For may þou sowme me þire sedis · surely þou trowe,
þou miȝt a-count aȝ oure kniȝtⁱs · & oure kyd ostⁱs;
And þou truches þaim to telȝ · þen tidis þe na noȝir,
Bot move a-gayȝ to Messedone · & meve¹ þe na forthire.
Fyne, fole, of þi fare · & fange to þi kythis; 1990
For þis sede I þe send · vnsowmyd bees neuire,
So ere we of all folke · folke to be nombrid,
Or any wee to a-counte · vndire þe clere sternys." 1993
Now aires furth his athiȝ meȝ · to Alexander wendiȝ,
Vn-to þe streme of strama · streȝt with þa lett^riȝ,
And he þaȝ rediȝ in a rese · & reches to² þe sedis,
Tastis þaȝ vndire his tuthe · & talkis þir wordis: 1997
"Here I se," quod þis sire · "be þire ilke cornes,
þat þe pupiȝ out of Persy · ere passandly many,³
Bot þaȝ semes to be softe · as þir sedis prouys; 2000
For-þi how fele be aȝ þe flote · it forces bot littiȝ."
Be þis was meȝ of Messedone · fra his modire comen,
And said þat semely was seke · & semed to die;
And he þe waest of þe werd · wald worth hire to visite,
Bot ȝit to Dary, or he went · he⁴ diȝt þus a lett^riȝ. 2005

¹ MS. me, altered to meve. ² Added in margin.

³ MS. meke many; but meke is struck out.

⁴ MS. his, altered to he.

For-þi it wer better vnbinden · or þou bale suffre,
 Remefe agayn to þi realm · or þou sall it rewe.
 For *certain*, yf my senory · & my-selue ne wer, 1976
 Aȝ þe werld might albid¹ · wele þen be called.
 For-þi *turne* þe be-tyme · or ony tene worth,
 Or þe hate of my hert · on þi heued kyndle.
 Lend Agayn to þi Land · Wiȝ I Leue gefe þe, 1980 [Fol. 20 b.]
 Lest þou mete *with* my malicoly · þi might be to lityȝ.
 For-þi to ken þe to knawe · my kyngdome her-after,
 Both my glory & my grace · & my grete strenth,
 Lo, her a glofe full of granes · I grath þe to rekyȝ, 1984
 Off þe chefest of² chessebollez · chosyn for þe nonest.
 For and þou may soume þees sedes · seurlly þou leue,
 Thu may account³ aȝ ovr knyghtez · & ovr kyd ostez;
 And yf þou thynkes þaim to tell · þen tydez þe none oȝer,
 To mefe agayn to masidoȝ · & meȝ þe no forther. 1989
 Fyne, fole, of þi fare · and fange to þi kythes;
 For as þis sede þat I send · vnsoumed is euer,
 So ben we of aȝ⁴ frekes · & folkez vnowmyrd, 1992
 Or ony weght to account · vnder þe clere welkyȝ."
 Now ayres forth þees messyngers · & to alexander wendynȝ,
 Vnto þe streme of struma · streght *with* þis lettres,
 And þaim redes on a rase he · & rechez to þe sedes, 1996
 Castes þaim vnder his tothe · & talkys þees wordes:
 "Here I see," *quod* þis sire · "be þir selue cornes,
 þat þe peple out of perse · er passandly mony,
 Bot þaim semys to be softe · as þees sedis preuez; 2000
 And þen how fele be aȝ þe flote · it forcez bot lityȝ."
 Be þat was men of masidon · fro hys moder comynȝ,
 And þat semely was seke · & semyd to die;
 And he þe woest of þe werld · wald for hir to visytt, 2004
 Bot ȝit to Darius or he diȝt · he ditez suche a pistyȝ.

¹ *Read* a wido. ² MS. oft. ³ MS. *acoount*; see l. 1993.

⁴ *Here follows* ben we of all fo, *crossed through*.

Nonus passus Alexandri.

A letter.
"Alexander to
Darius.

"A lexsaunderē þe athiH · aire oute [of] grece,
þe soñ of Ph[ilip] þe fers · & of his faire lady,
Honoured Olimpadas · þe oddlest vndire heuyn, 2008
To þe, *ser* Dari, oñ þi dese · þis dities I write.

I find I must
go home for the
present.

For I am sent, be þe sure · many sere letters,
And namly now on newe time · fra myne aweñ kith,
Out of þe marche of Messadone · þat mekill me greues,
Añ oþer wais to wirke · & my wiH likis. 2013

It is not for thy
boasts, but my
mother is ill.

Bot I warne þe, or I wynd · & wiH at þou know,
þat for na drede I with-draw · ne doute of þi pride,
For baisting of þi bobance · ne of þi breme wordis, 2016
Bot for to se þat is seke · my semely modire.

I shall soon
return, with fresh
men.

Bot wete þou wele þis, I-wis · with-in a wale time,
Fra þat I fraist haue þat faire · of my fayre lady,
I saH þe seke with a sowme · of seggis enarmed, 2020
Ane ost to noy þus to neuyn · aH of new knyztis.

[Fol. 35.]
I send you a
purse, full of
sharp pepper."

And for þe sake of þi sede · þou sent with þi lettre,
Loo, here a purse full of pepire · my powere to keñ,
To se þi-selle a similitude · how all þi soft grayns 2024
Sall vndire-put be aH þe pake · vn-to þir peper-cornes."
þis pistill to Persyns · he with his pepir takis,

Alexander returns
home.

Partis prestly þam to · many proude giftis, 2027
And þai haue lazt þam þar leue · & þe lettir fangis,
And passis oñ to Persy · þe princes to schewe.

In Arabia he is
attacked by Duke
Amont.

þan Alexander belyue · with his athiH dukis,
Rais him radly to ride · & remowis his ost; 2031
Fra þe streme of struma he streztis · & stiH mournes,
And mevis him toward Messedone · his modir to visit.

He aires þurze Arabie · & armed þar he findis
A duke of Darys þe kyng · þat drafe him agayne,
A pere out of Persy · & prince of his ost, 2036
A maister man in þa marches · Amont was hatten.
He girdis him with a gingi · þe grekis he asailles.

Nonus Passus.

Epistola.

"I, alexander, eldest · ayr out of grece,
 þe son of Philip þe fers · & of hys faire lady,
 Honored olimphades · þe oddest vnder heuen, 2008
 To þe, sir darius, on þi dese · þis ditez I write.
 For I am send, be þe sure · mony sere l^{et}tres,
 And nomely now on new tyme · fro my awne kithes.

· · · · ·
 Aȝ oper-wyse to wirke · þen my wille liked. 2013
 Bot þis I werne, or I wende · & will at þou know,
 þat for no drede I withdraw · þe dow of þi pryde,¹
 For basyng ne for bobas · ne for breme wordes, 2016
 Bot for to Se þat is Seke · my awne Semelych Modre. [Fol. 21.]
 Bot wete þou wele þis, I-wisse · in a wale tyme,
 Fra þat I fraysted haue þe fare · of my faire lady,
 I saȝ þe seche with a soume · of sergez enarmed, 2020
 One oste to ney vs to newyn · & all of new knyghtez.
 And for þe sake of þi sede · þou send with þi writte,
 Lo, here a purse full of piper · my power to ken,
 To se þi-selfe a similitude · how aȝ þees softe granes 2024
 So vnder-put [be] aȝ þe pake · of þis pete cornez."
 Thys pistyȝ to þe persens · he with þis peper takys,
 Partes pristly to þaim · mony proude gyftez,
 And þai haue laughten þair leue · & þe l^{et}trez fangett, 2028
 And passyd vnto perse · þe prince it to shewe.
 Then alexander · with hys ateȝ Dukez,
 Rachez hym radly to ride · & remevez hys ostenz,
 Fro þe streme of struma · he moved & stilly marnetz, 2032
 And mefez on toward masydoȝ · hys moder to viset.
 He ayers toward araby · & armyd þar he fyndeȝ
 A duke of Darius þe kyng · þat drafe hym agayus,
 A Pere owt of perse · & prince of hys hoste, 2036
 A maister man of þe marche · amonta was callyd.
 He girdez in with a gyn · þe grekes assaylez,

¹ MS. *proyde*, or *perye* (like *per* in *piper*, l. 2023) : *read* *pryde*.

They fight all
day.

With *Alexander* all day · asperly feztis,
Marres of þe Messedons · miȝtfuȝ kniȝtis, 2040
Dingis doun of þe dukis · deris þam vn-faire,
Fra morne to þe mirke niȝt · maynly þa cockeñ,
Seȝes doun oñ aythire side · segis out of nounbre. 2043
Begynnys sone in þe gray day · as any gleme springis,
And so to sett of þe soñ · sesid þai neuire.

The battle lasts
for three days.

þus thre dais out a thraw · þai threþ ay elike;
So lange, sais me þe lyne · lastid þe bataiȝ, 2047

Horses wale in
blood up to the
fetlocks.

Sike scoures were of blude · of schondirhedȝ bernes,
þat foles ferd in þe flosches · to þe fetelakis;
Sa store & stithe was þe stoure · þe story me tellis,

[Fol. 35 b.]

þat for soroze of þe siȝt · þe¹ soñ² oñ þe heuen
Kest away his clerete · & his clippis suffirs, 2052

The sun is
eclipsed.
At last the
Greeks prevail,

For bale to blische oñ þe blode · at on þe bent floȝes.
With þat oure gomes out of grece · gedirs vp þar hertis,
Fey fallis in þe filȝ · fele of þire othire,

and the Persians
give way.

þe pouwere of Persy · iñ partis many 2056
Seȝes siddings doun · slayñ of þaire blonkis.

And quen þe duke of *ser* Darys · þa dedis be-haldis,
Amona þe miȝtfuȝ · his men þañ he fangis, 2059
And vneth limpid him þe lee · þe lyne me recordis,
Fra his faes with a fewe · þe filde to de-voide.

Amona flees
to Darius,

And slike a pas, sais þe prose · to Persy he ridis,
þat ȝit þe² selfe sandismen · he in þe sale fyndis, 2063
þat fra þe streme of struma · were apon stedis wysid

and finds
him perusing
Alexander's
last letter.

Fra *Alexander* & his ost · with his athiȝ pistiȝ.
And ȝit *ser* dary oñ his dese · þa dities a-visis,
Held þe lettir in his loue · & at þe ledis fraynes,
Quat he said of þe sedis · þat he² him-selfe sent. 2068
And þai swiftly him sward · & swyȝ þus him tellis :

The messengers
repeat the story
of the seeds.

“ þe kyng him kaȝt,” quod þe kniȝtis “ & on þe cornes
bitis,

And wele he geses be þe graynes · ȝoure gomes ere fele,

¹ MS. of the ; of being added in the margin, but smeared out.

² Added in the margin.

And with alexander aH þe day · asperly feghtez,
 Marres of þe masidons · mightfuH knyghtez, 2040
 Dynges downe of þe dukez · deres þaim vnfaire,
 Fro morne vnto mirke nyght · manly þai feghtyn,
 Slew downe on ather syde · seges owt of nowmbre.

Began in þe gray day · when þe gleme spronge, 2044
 And so to þe sett of þe soñ · sessyd þai neuer.

þus iij dayes in a thraw · þai threpyd euerelike ;
 So lang, says þe line · lastyd þe bateH,
 Slyke showrez of shire blode · of shenderet bernes, 2048

þat folez faired in flosshez · to þe fete-lakez ;
 So sture & styff was þe stoure · þe story me telles,
 þat for sorow of þat fight · þe soñ of heuen
 Lost hase is clarite · & hys clepys sufers, 2052

For bale to Blissh on blod · þat on þe bent flowes. [Fol. 21 b.]

With þat owr gomes owt of greece · gerdyn vp þair hertes,
 And fellyd fele in þe feld · feyle of þis oþer,
 þe power owt of perse · in parteez mony 2056

Sweyd slegtly downe · slayn of þair blonkes.
 And when *sir* Darius duke¹ · þis dedes bihaldyn,
 Amonta þe mightfuH · hys men þen he fannges,
 And vneth limpyd hym þe lyfe · þe line me recordes, 2060
 And fro hys faes with A few folke · þe feld he deuodes.

And suche a passe, þen says þe prose · to perse he rydez,
 þat ȝit þe some sendesman · he in þe sale fyndez,
 At fro þe streme of strema · was on stedes wysett 2064

Fro alexander & hys hoste · with hys atheH pistyH.
 And ȝitt *sir* darius on þe dese · on þis dytes awysez,
 Held þis lettre in hys loue · & at þe ledes franes,
 What he sayd of þaes sedes · þat he þaim send hed. 2068

And þai² swyftly hym sware · & sothly hym tald :
 “The kyng þaim kacht,”³ *quod* þe knyghtes · “& on þe
 kirkels bote,

And wele he gessed be þe granes · your gomes er softe,

¹ MS. *ye duke* ; *but ye is subpuncted*.

² MS. *þai hym*, *but hym is subpuncted*. ³ MS. *kathit*.

Bot a thing, he said, he saze · þat solast him maste, 2072

Darius tastes the
pepper, and finds
it sharp.

þai ware bot soft, he suposed · for so þe sede proued.”
þan pullis him vp þe proude kyng · & oñ þe pepire tastis,
Said, as it tuke him by þe tonge · “his tulkis ere fewe,
Bot, be his kniȝtis as kene · as me þis cornes shewis, 2076
Aȝ þe werd war to waike · his wrothe¹ to wíth-stand.”²
þe mody mañ Amonta · þan melis þir wordis,

[Fol. 36.]

“Ȝis, he ledis bot a lite · lordȝ, wíth ȝoure lefe ; 2079
þare is³ bot fewe at him foloȝes · bot feȝtand bernes,
Bot mare fersere in feldȝ · feȝt neuire of modire.

Amonta says,
“I attended the
Greeks with a
larger army.

For I my-selfe wíth a sowme · set þaim agayns,
Wíth of þe Persyns proude · a pake out of nounbre,
Felire þan his folke · be fuȝ syue thousandȝ, 2084
And ȝit vs feȝt all to ferre · þe fayntir to worthe ;
For þai haue hedid of oure hathils · & a hepe woundid,
Fey falne to þe fold · many fers erlis,

They beat us.

Bet down oure bachelers · my banir to-rased, 2088
And a selly sowme · slayne of my kniȝtis.

For three days
we fought them,

Quethire days³ thre þurȝe-out · thrily we foȝteñ,
Derfe dintis & dreȝe · delt & takenȝ,

and at last we
gave way.

And ȝit þe lawest at þe last · vs limpid to bee, 2092
And vnethis sauyd I my-selfe · vn-slayñ of þar handis.
Bot treuly, *ser*,” quod þe duke · “gret tresore me thinke

As for Alexander,
he was none the
prouder.”

At Alexander þe athiȝ · for of⁴ aȝ ware he maister,
A-vanced wíth þe victore · & vengid oñ his faes, 2096
Was neuire þe heȝare of a hawe · his hert fuȝ of pride.
For mekely ilka modire soñ · his awen meñ & othire,
Als wele þe pure Persens · as þe grete grekis,
Aȝ þe douth at was dede · be-dene he comands 2100
To gedire þam vp ilka gome · & þam in grauys ligg.”

Alexander goes
to Soly.

Now Alexander & his ost · armed oñ ridis,
And sone Cecile he · wíth his seggis entridȝ,

¹ MS. to wrothe, altered to wrothe to in the margin.

² MS. hboth stand.

³ Added in the margin.

⁴ Or added above the line, indistinctly written ; it is hardly wanted.

Bot on¹ thyngē, he sayd,² he sawgh · þat solast hym
mekyȝt, 2072

Thai wer bot softe, he supposyd · for so þe seþe preved.”
 þen pullys hym vp þe proude gome³ · & on þe peper tastez,
 Sayd, als it toke hym be þe tong · “hys tulkes wer feH,
 For, be hys knyghtez als kene · as me þe corne shewys,
 AH þe world is to wake · hys wrothe to wit-stande.” 2077

The worthy man amonta · þan miellys þir wordes,
 Sayd, “he ledes bot a lityH · lord, be *your* lefe ;
 Thai er bot few at hym folows · of feghtand bernes, 2080
 Bot more forcer on a feld · felle neuer of moder.

For I my-selfe *with* a soume · set hym agayns,
With þe persens proude · a pake out of nowmbre,

Mo þen hys awne meynze · be full fyue thousand, 2084 Victoria contra amontam
And 3it vs fell aH be fere · þe faynter to worth ; ducem dari.

For þai he⁴ hedlit of owr athellys · & a [hepe] woundett,

And fey fallyn in þe feld · mony ferce Erelez,

Betyn Done owr Bachelers · my Barons aH distroyd, 2088 [Fol. 22.]

And a selly soume of my knyghte[s] · in þe feld slayne.

Wheper thre⁵ days out-porow · thraly we feyten,

Drafe dyntes derfe · deltyn & token,

And ȝit þe lawest at þe last · vs limpyd to be, 2092

Bot vnneth saued I my-selue · vnslayne of pair handes.

Bot trewly, sir," quod þe duke · "grete tresour me thynke

At alexander þe atheH · for aH was he maister,

Auancyd with wictory · & vengyd on hys enmys, 2096

Was neuer þe holder of a haw · [his] hert full of pride.

For mekely ilke moderson · hys awne men & othre,

Als wele þe pure persens · as þe prouude grekez,

Att þe doghty be-dene · þat was dede he *Commandez* 2100

To geder þaim vp ilke grome · & þaim in graue bring."

Now alexander & hys oste + armyd on he rydez,

And sone into cesyH · he with hys segez enters, 2103

¹ MS. ony, *corrected to on.*

² he sayd *repeated*; but once *expuncted*.

³ Above the line in MS.

⁴ *Read* haue.

⁵ The r is above the line in MS.

- þar sere citis of þa sidis · to him-selfe sweren, 2104
 And saulio^{urs} him to sewe · seuyntene thousand.
 [Fol. 36 b.] þan ȝede he ouire in-to ane Ile · Yssanna was hatten,
 And þat was ȝapely him ȝeun · & ȝolden be-lyue.
 On the top of a cliff he finds Persepolis.
 þan vp he c^lame to a cliffe · þat to þe cloudis seme^l,
 þe Tor¹ of Tare to taken · þe tretis it callis, 2109
 þare fand he tildid oñ þe top · & tild² vp a cite,
 þe proud³ touñ of Persopole · & to þe place he neȝes.
 þare saȝe he seleuthis sere · as þe buke sais, 2112
 þe muses of musike & þe merke · how it was made first.
 þan aires he in-to Asie · & ai as he fonndis,
 Añ þe citis of þa sidis · he sesis þam clene,
 He goes to Phrygia,
 So fares he furth⁴ to Frigie · a-nopire faire Ile, 2116
 And ane þar of his ald gods · he honourd in a temple.
 and sees Scamander.
 þan ferd he furth to a Flum · was fyue cubetis brack,
 Scamandra þe slire⁵ flode · þe scriptour it callis.
 "Happy are all," "Now happy be ȝee," quod þe hathiñ · "añ in hert
 beris 2120
 he says, "who are honoured by that odd clerk, Homer."
 þe honouris of þat odd clerke · Homore þe grete."
 "Mekiñ dere," quod ane Doctoneus · "of ȝow I deme sañ,
 And he of þe takyng of Troi · tald añ his lyue."
 "Nay, I wald more worth," quod þe [wee] · "a wyse
 man dise[i]ple, 2124
 þan þe honour þat Acheles · aȝt añ his time."
 In Macedonia, he finds his mother healed.
 þan moves he him to Messedone · with his mony princes,
 Amendid of hire malidy · his modire he fyndis,
 A litiñ dais with hire lengis · & of hire lyfe ioȝes, 2128
 And graythes him þan with his gere · & a-gayn fondis.
 He passes oñ to-ward Persy · & piȝt down his tentis
 Besyd a burȝe at þe buke · Abandra meñ⁶ callis.
 þai fañ on freschly · þe folke of þe cite, 2132
 And barris bremely at a burȝe · þe foure brack ȝatis.
 [Fol. 37.] þan takis þe kyng his kniȝtis · vmlapis þe wallis,

¹ MS. Top, *altered to* Tor.² MS. do tild; *with do underlined.* ³ MS. perroude.⁴ MS. he furth he; *with second he struck out.**Read slire.*⁶ Added in the margin.

Thare sere citez of þai sydez · to hym-selfe was 3oldyn̄,
 And saugeours hym to sewe · seuentene thousand.
 þan 3ode he ouer into an Ile · Yssanna was hateñ,
 And þat was 3apely hym 3efeñ · & yolden̄ belyfe. 2107
 Than vp he clam to a clyffe · þat to þe clowdez semyd,
 þe towre of taure to token · þe tretes it calles;
 þar fand he tembret on þe toþ · & tyldit vp a cyte,
 The proud towne of persipoH · & to þe place goys.
 þar saw he selcouthez sere · as sayn me þe writtes, 2112
 The musys of musik & þar merke · how it was made frist.
 þan ayrez he into asy · & ay as he fonndez,
 Aȝ þe citez of þo sydez · he sesez þam ilkoñ,
 So fares he forth to frige · an-other fair yle, 2116
 And one of hys olde goddes · honours in a temple.
 þen faryd he forth to a flume · fyue cubettes of brede,
 Scamandra þe skyr flode · þe scripture it neues. 2119

· · · · ·

· · · · ·

· · · · ·

· · · · ·

· · · · ·

· · · · ·

Then mefes home to masidon · with hys mony princez,
 And mendyd of hir maledy · [his] moder he fyndez,
 A lite dayes with hir he lenges · & of hir lyve ioyes, 2128
And grathes hym þan with hys gynges · & agayn fonndez. [Fol. 22 b.]
 He passed on toward perse · & pyth douñ hys tentes
 Besyde a burgh þat þe buke · bandara calles.
 þen fell to þaim freshly · þe folke of þe cite, 2132
 And barred bremely at a brush · þe foure brod 3ates.
 Then caches þe kyng hys knyghtez · vmbelappes þe wallez,

Settis vp-on a saute · oñ sidis eno3e ;

He attacks
Abandra.

Bot, for þe cite was vnsure · þe seggis withiñ 2136

Mizt no3t þe braidis a-bide · of bernis enarmed.

þan cries aH to þe kyng · "ser conquirour," þai said :

The men of it
say they only
shut their gates
for fear of
Darius.

"Ne steke we no3t oure stiff 3atis · 3our strenthe to
defend,

Bot for dred of ser Dary · þe derfe Emperoure, 2140

Lest, had we haldit to 3our heste · he hað vs eft wastid."

"3a, werpis þam vp," quod þe wee · "& wyde open settis,

If at 3e shap 3ow to shount · vnschent of oure handis.

For quen I done haue with Dary · & my dede fenyschid,

þan saH I tell 3ow my tale · how it sall tide eftir."

He frightens
them,
and they give up
the keys.

So baiste þam þe bald kyng · with his breme wordis,

þat þai vn3arked him þe 3atis · & 3ald him þe keys.

þe bur3e þus of¹ abrandra · he with his men takis, 2148

To take & leue quat him list · & lendis oñ forthire.

þen wyndis he to A wath touñ · was Wyothy hatten.

And come so to Caldipol · anoþer kid cite,

He comes to the
Water of Winter.

So to the watir of wintir · as it þe writte callis. 2152

þare nere was fey for defeaute · enfamyschist his ost,

Kniztis kest vp a crie · & kenely þam menes :

His men say,
"our horses are
dying."

"Loo, oure foles ere in fere · fodeles to dye;" 2155

þai pleyne more þe pouirte · & þe pite of þar horsis

þan þe soroge of þam-selfe · by þe seuynt parte.

"Quat ailes 3ow?" quod Alexander · to his athill
dukis,

He reproves
them, saying
they can get
new horses ;

"Mi barons & my baratorus · þe biggest in erth,

þat has þe angwisch of armes · ay to now suffird ; 2160

Quethire euire 3oure hertis, I hope · for horsys abat²is !

May vs no3t limp, if any life · lenge iñ oure² brestis,

[Fol. 37 b.]

To couer be cas at a cleke · courseris a thousand ?

And vs demedþ be þe dome · to die of þe werk, 2164

þan standis in stede no3t of a stra · all þe store stedis.

and bids them
advance.

For-þi I rede," quod þe renke³ · "we ride oñ forthire,

¹ Added in the margin. ² Miswritten oire in MS.

³ MS. kenke.

And settes vp a sawte · to þe towne sydes ;
 But for þe cite was vnsure · þe segez within 2136
 Might nought þe barettes abyde · of seggez enarmed.
 þen callyd þai to þe kyng · “*sir Conquerour*,” & sayd :
 “We steke nought *our* 3ates · your strenth to defende,

Bot for þe drede of *sir* dary · þe derfe Emperour, 2140
 Lest, hed we heldit to your hest · he hed vs eft wastyd.”
 “3a, warpez þaim vp,” quod þe wye¹ · “& wyde opyn settes,

For when I done haue *with* Darius · & my dede fenyshyd,
 Than saH I teH you my tale · how it saH tyde after.” 2145
 So babyst þaim þe bald kyng · *with* hys breme wordez,
 That þai vn3arked hym þe yatez · & yeld hym þe kees.
 Thus þe burcht of bandra · he *with* hys bernes takes, 2148
 To lache & lefe qwat hym lyst · & lendez on forþer.

þan wendes he to a wale towne · was worthyly haldyn,
 And Come so to cadypolez · ane oþer kyd cite,
 So to þe water of wynter · als it þe writte calles. 2152
 Thare negh was fey for defaute · enfamyshyd hys oste,
 Knyghtez kest vp a cry · & kenely þaim meane ;
 Sayd : “lo, oure folez bene in fere · for fodeles to dye ;”
 Plenys more þe perty · & pety of þair blonkez 2156
 þan of þe sorow of þaim selfe · be þe seuent dele.

“What aylez you nowe ?” quod alexander · to hys atheH
 Dukez,

“My barons & my baratours · biggest on erth,
 That hase þe angers of armes · ay to now sofferd ; 2160
 Wheþer euer your hertes · for horse-fleshez abaytez ?
 May we nought lympe, if ony lyfe · leng in our brestes,
 To couer be case at a cleke · *coursours* a thouusand ?
 And yf vs demyd be þe dome · to dye aH at ones, 2164
 þan standes in stede nought of A stra · aH *our* styffe stedes.
 For-þi² I rede,” quod þe renke · “We rydyn on Forþer,

[Fol. 23.]

¹ MS. wyez.² The i above the line in MS.

And pas to sum othire place · þare plente is in,
þat we may fange at þe fuH · þe fude at vs wantis." 2168

þaṅ prekis he furth with his princes · to slike a playn¹
wendis,

They soon find
plenty of forage.

Luctus it hiȝt, þe letterure · & þe line þus it callis;
þare his forrayouris fand · þe fulth of vitaiH,
Bathe to² berne & to blonk · bide queṅ him likið. 2172

At Tergarontes,
he goes to
Apollo's temple.

When he was fuH þare & fedð · he flittis with his ost,
To Tergarontes he teȝe · þare tiȝt was a mynstre;
He piȝt down his paulion · & passis to þe temple,
Sire Appoline to adoure · & othire alð goddis, 2176
To offire iṅ þat oritorie · with honour he wyndis,
And sum of þaṅ² at³ spire · how he spede sulð.

Zacora tells him
to come again
another day.

Bot sone ane zacora him said · a semely summe,
þan was naṅ honour of answaringis · bot on a-noȝere
bide. 2180

The oracle
calls him
"Hercules."
Alexander says
the oracle is
false.

þan dose him furth þe dere king · &, oṅ þe day eftire,
He seȝis to þe Synagogi · & sacrif[is]e makis,
And Appoline als belue · him aykewordly swaris, 2183
'Sire Ercules þe Emperoure' · he euire in ane callis.

þaṅ Alexander aH in ire · angrily spekis:
"Now fynd I wele," quod þe freke · "þat fals ere þi wordis,
Now þou neuyns me a new name · at I neuire hiȝt;
And þou a god," quod þe gome · "þat is grete ioye!"
þaṅ sekis he furth with a somme · & to A cite wyndis,

He next comes to
Thebes.

þe toun Thebea · þe tretis it callis,
And þare he biddis aH þe burȝe · þat foure bald kniȝtis
Suld be lett with him lend · & lenge in his weris. 2192
þen tened þe Thebes folke · & tynd to þe ȝatis,

[Fol. 38.]

The Thebans
oppose him.

And to with-stand his strenthe · steȝid to þe wallis,
Bad him bow oṅ be-lyue · & bide þare na laingire; 2195
For if he dið, withouteṅ dome · þe deth þai him hiȝt.
þan fangis him vp þe fell kyng · a fuyH feyned laȝtir,

¹ MS. ap layn. ² Added in the margin.

³ After at, to is wrongly added above the line.

And passe we to som *oper* place · where plente is in,
 Thare we may fang at þe fuht · þe fode at vs wantes, 2168
 And bath *our* folk & ovr folez · fyH þaire wambes." 2168*
 Then *prekys* he forth *with* hys princez · to suche a place
 wendes,

Luctus it þe *lettre* · & þe line calles ;
 Thare as hys saugeours hase fondyñ · þe fulth of þe *vitale*,
 Bath to bern̄ & to blonke · byde whils he liked. 2172
 When he was fulle þar & fed · he flittes hys ostez,
 To tergarontes he tizt^t · þar telde was a mynster ;
 Pyzt douñ hys pauvilons · & passyd to þe temple,
 Sir appolyn to adoure · & *oper* alde goddez, 2176
 To offre in þat oratory · *with* honour in he wendes,
 And of som sperete to spire · how he spede suld.
 Bott on þacora hym sayd · a semlych Nonn̄,¹ 2179
 þar was none *oper* answer · bot ane *oper* day to abyde.

þan drafe hym for[th] þe dere kyng · & on þe day after,
 He soght into þe sinagoge · & sacrifice makez,
 And appolyne als belyue · hym aukwardly answers,
 ‘ Sir ercules þis emperour ’ · hym euer onon̄ clepys. 2184
 Than alexander aH in ire · angerly spekys :
 “ Now fynde I wele,” *quod* þe freke · “ þat false er þi wordes,
 For þou nevens a new name · þat I neuer hight ;
 And þou a god,” *quod* þe gome · “ þat is grete Ioy ! ” 2188
 Then sekys he forth *with* a soume · & to a cyte wendes,
 þat Ilke towne hight tebea · þe tretez so it calles,
 And þar he biddez aH þe burgh · þat foure bald knyghtez
 Suld be lett *with* hym wende · & in hys werys lenge. 2192
 þen tenyd þe tebe folke · & tit to þe ȝatez,
 And *with*stode his strenth · & strode to þe walles,
 Bad hym buske on belyue · & abyde þar no langer ; 2195
 For if he dyd, *with*owtyn dowte · þe dede þai hight hym.
 þan fangez vp þe fele kyng · a ful fenyd laughter,

¹ *So in MS.*

Alexander says,
"Ye Thebans
boast to be brave,

Said, "ȝe of Tebet ere tried · þe tethiest oñ erth,
Of aH þe seggis vnder soñ · þat citizens hatt;
Mast hiȝe ȝe ere hersil · & herid of ȝoure strenthe. 2200
And nowe sa ȝape meñ as ȝe · þe ȝatis hase stoken,
And me & þe pruddlest of my princes · *proferne* vs werre;
And at ȝe so wiH, I-wis · wondire me thinke, 2203
For þus wald̃ neuer at ȝe wroȝt · þe wirscip̃ of armes.
It contraries kniȝthede · ȝe know wele ȝour selfe,

yet ye shut your-
selves up behind
walls."

To any wiȝt werriours · in wallis þam to close.
For he þat kil̃ is & kene · & couettis a name,
WiH feȝt fersely in fil̃ · his famen agayns." 2208
þan Alexander be-liue · aH a-boute þe cite,
Makis foure thousand · with flanes & bowis,

He orders a grand
assault,

Biddis þam to bend vp · brathly with arowis
To wonde þe wees with-in · þat on þe wallis houys. 2212
And twa thousand be tale · he titely comaundis,
Of wele buskid berñs · in brenys & platis,
AH þe sidis of þe cite · þat sechus had biggid,
And Amphion, aH athiH kempe · onane to distroy. 2216
A full thousand he fangid · to fire þe foure ȝatis,
And thre thousand of thra men · to thraw with engynes.
Him-selfe of slingis & slike · a-semblis a me[n]ȝe, 2219
To heede & help of his hyne · if any harme lympĩ.
Now ere his seggis aH sett · & þe saute neȝis,
Were wakens be-twene · werbild̃ in trompis;

The attack begins.

Oure pepiH with payns · pressis to without,
Halis vp hem̃ cordis · hurled out arowis; 2224
[Fol. 28 b.] Othire athils of armes · Albastis bendis,
Quirys out quarrels · quappid thurȝe mayles.

The Greeks
throw stones out
of guns.

Sum with gunnes of þe grekis · girdis ṽp stanes,
To tene þe Tebis folke · þat oñ þe touris feȝtis; 2228
Sum braide ouir þe barrers · in blasand wede,

The city is fired.

And faire fest on a fire · all þe foure ȝatis;

Sayd, "3e of tebe er triest · & thethiest on erth,
 Off aH þe seges vnder suñ · þat citesyns er called ;
 Most heyly ye be auancett · & hight in hert.¹ 2200
And now so 3ope meñ as 3e · 3ates **Hase** stoken, [Fol. 23 b.]
 Me & my proudest of my princez · 3e do profre were ;
 And þat 3e so wiH, I-wys · wondre me thynke, 2203
 For þus wald neuer þat 3e wroght · worschip of armes.
 It contrarys knyghthod · ye knawe wele *your-selueñ*,
 To any wight wereour · in walles hym to close.
 For he þat kyd is & kene · & couates hym a name,
 WiH fersly feght in þe feld · hys faymen ayayns." 2208
And alexander als belyfe · aH vmbe þe cyte,
 Mase iiij Mille² to fonde · *with* flanes & bowes,
 Byddes þame to bend vp · & brathly *with* arowez
 To wound þe wyes *within* · þat on þe wallez hoved. 2212
 And two thouusand be tale · he tytely *Commandez*,
 Of wele busked bernes · in brenes & in plates,
 AH þe sydes of þe cite · þat sichus had bigged,
 And amphion, þe atheH kemp · anone to distroye. 2216
 And iiij Mille² he fonge · to fyre þe iiij 3ates,
 Bot thre Mille² of thra men · to thraw *with* engynez.
 Hym-self *with* slengers & slyke · he somned³ a men3e,
 To heyd & to help hys hynes · if any harme limpyd. 2220
 Now er is seges aH sett · & þe saute neghed,
 Were wakned be-twene · werblet trompez ;
 Our peple *with* pavyce · presen to *withowt*,
 Halez vp hemp cordez · hurlett owt arows ; 2224
Oþer athells of armes · alblastrez bendeñ,
 Whirres owt qwarels · wappyd through males.
 Som *with* gunnez of þe grekys · gyrdyn vp stones,
 To tene þe tebet folke · þat on þe toure fighteñ ; 2228
 Som bradyn oure þe barres · in blysnand wedes,
 And faire fest on a fyre · aH þe foure 3ates ;

¹ *Catchword*—in hert ; *wrongly*.

² *Read* thousand, which is intended by this contraction for
 Lat. mille.

³ *Or* soumed.

- AH þe burȝe at a braide · was on a bale kyndild, 2231
 They yield. And þa¹ þat sounde ware vnslayn · als sottes þam ȝeldis.
 þan *with-out* in oure ost · as þe buke tellis,
 One Sicistrus is glad to see
 Thebes on fire. A Sire, at Sicistrus · was callid be name,
 A meri man, a Messangere · þat maynly was ioyd
 To se þe cite be sa sone · sindid to brandis. 2236
 One Hismon is sorry to see it,
 Anothre hathiȝ vndire hand · þat Hismon was² callid,
 Ane a maistre of musike · ³a man of þe cite,³
 Aires to *ser Alexander* · & in his hert wepis, 2239
 As qua sai, “prince, of oure place · sum pete þou haue.”
 þan lokis þe lord to þe lede · said, “lettrid berne,
 Quare-to feynys þou þis fare · for-*with* myne eȝen?”
 and begs
 Alexander to
 shew mercy. “Sire conquirour,” *quod* þe clerke · “ȝoure corage to bend,
 And in ridding of oure riche toun · ȝour reuth for
 to caȝ.” 2244
 þan was þe wale kyng wrath · & wigtly comaundis
 The king is
 wrath, and
 destroys the city. To bete in-to þe bare erth · ah þe burȝe-walles;
 And quen all kynd was oȝ colis · & kast apon hepis,
 þan airis he on *with* his ost · mare honour to wynn.
 A Ientill man full ioȝles · iournais him eftir, 2249
 Foloȝes þare fare · ai oȝ fote as þai ride,
 A seȝe at of þe same toun · sire was & maistre,
 Ane callid was Cletomachus · to erie eftir socure, 2252
 One Clytomachus,
 a Theban, follows
 his host. His ledis at left ware o-lyue · a lite of þe cite.
 þan askid at sire Appoline · al⁴ *with* a steuen,
 “If euire it worthe saȝ to wee · quen þe werd stand,
 Oure bu[r]ȝe agayn for to bigȝ · þat bretteȝ is to noȝt?”
 [Fol. 39.] þan gales þaire god · a-gayn & þus spekis: 2257
 An oracle says,
 the man who is to
 rebuild Thebes
 will thice con-
 quer in wrestling. “þe tulke þat tilld ȝour toun · saȝ yeld vp & rere,
 Saȝ thre times haue þe thra · of sum threuyȝ gome
 Of were ore of wristilling · for þus has wirid shapeȝ.
 And quen þat wirschip is woȝ · *within* a wale time,
 þan sall he sett vp him-selfe · þe cite as be-forne.”

¹ MS. *aȝa*, with *first a underlined*.² MS. *was was*; *the second was underlined*.³⁻⁵ *Substituted in MS. for “& in his art wepis;” see next line.*⁴ *Written above the line.*

þat aH þe burgh at a brayde · was on a blasse kyndlett,
 And þo þat sunde wer vnslayne · as seges þaim ȝolden.
 Than was *withowt* in þe ost · als þe buke tellys, 2233
 A syre, þat *sicistreus*¹ · was seget to name,
 A mery man, a messyngere · þat manly **was** Ioynet² [Fol. 24.]
 To see þe cite be so sone · shendit to brandes. 2236
 Ane-*oper* atheH vnder hand · þat Hisman was callyd,
 One maister of musike · a man of þe cite,
 Ayrez hym to *Alexander* · & in hys hert wepys, 2239
 Als wha sa, “Prince, of *your* place · som pite ȝe haue.”
 Then lokys þe lord to þe led · sayd, “lettred berne,
 Whare to fenys þou þis fare · for-*with* my egheñ I see?”
 “Sir Conquerour,” quod þis clerk · “your³ corage to bynde,
 And in riddyng of *our* riche towne · *your* reuth for to
 calle.” 2244
 Than was þe wale kyng wroght · & wittily *Commandes*
 To bete into þe bare erth · aH þe burgh walles;
 And when aH kyndlett was on colez · & castyn vppon hepys,
 Than ayrez he on *with* hys ost · more worship to wyñ. 2248
 A gentilman fuH ioyles · þen iornays hym after,
 Folows þe folke ay on fote · as þe faire ryden,
 A sege of þe same cite · þat syre was & maister,
 That callyd was *elytomacus* · to cry after socour, 2252
 Hys ledes þat left wer on-lyue · a lyte of þe cite.
 Then askyd þai at *sir* Apolyn · aH *with* a stevyñ,
 “Yf it worth saH to wy · whil þe world standes, 2255
 Oure burgh ayayn to be beld · þat brytynd is to noght?”
 Than galez þar god þaim ayayñ · & þus-gates he spekes:
 “The tulke þat teld moñ your towñ · saH teld vp & rerre,
 SaH thre tymeȝ haue þe tro · of some kynne gameȝ
 Off were or of wristylyng · for so hase werdez shapyñ. 2260
 And when þat worship is woñ · within a wale tyme,
 Than saH he sett vp [him] selfe · þe cite als beforne.”

¹ Or sicisterus.² Read Ioyed.³ MS. pore.

Alexander goes
to Corinth,

and holds some
games.

Clytomachus
asks to be allowed
to wrestle ;

and throws his
man three.

He is crowned,
and they ask his
name.

[Fol. 39 b.]

He says it is
Clytless.

"Once I had a
cye, but now
have none."

þus answers þam þaire ald gode · & osses on þis wyse,
And þai als fayne, aH þe flote · as foweH of þe day. 2264
þan aires on *ser Alexander* · with his athiH princes,
To þe casteH of Corynþi · he comes with his ost,
With þe Pers of þa partese · to play on þe toures,
As aH þe sires of þa sidis · him-selfe had required. 2268
þe multitude ware sa miche · of men for to rekeñ,
þat þare was sembilik & sett · þat sizt to be-hald.
Quod Alexander bilyue · to aH at¹ þare stode,
"Quat gome saH þis gammeñ · begin apon first !" 2272
þan comes forth Cletomachus · & to þe kyng swaris,
þe tulke out of Thebie · I tald 3ow be-forne,
"If it 3oure mekiH maieste · mi3t any thinge plesse, 2275
I wald to wacken 3oure welth² · now wirstiH a turne."
þan mas þe prince him a place · & prestly him matches,³
And he him girdes to þe grounde · & þe gree wynnes.
"Now faithly," *quod* þe feH kyng · "faH þe so thrise,
þou sall be crowned, or I caire · for kiddest of þe gameñ."
þan 3ede he⁴ eftsones to · & his euen kastis, 2281
Thringis to þe thrid time · & þe thra wynnys.
And þan comandis him þe kyng · a coroune on hede,
As for þe prise of þe play · putfuH of stanes ; 2284
þan bad him beddels belyue : · "breue vs þi name."⁵
"Sirres, by my sothe," *quod* þe segge · "Sitiles I hi3t."
"Qwi so, my worthe werstillare ?" · þe wale kyng said,
"How tidis it þe & tou[n]les · þi⁶ toname is callid ?" 2288
"Mi louely lorde," *quod* þe lede · & law him declines,
"Be-for 3e come slike a kyng · & þe croune werriek,
I had a cite⁷ my-selfe · & segges I-nowe ;
And sethen 3e a3t þis enpire · I am it aH priued." 2292
þan trowid trewly þe kyng · þat Theby he menyek,
And beddels & bailyfs · he bad on brad crie,

¹ Added in the margin. ² MS. welah, altered to welth.

³ MS. maches, altered to matches.

⁴ MS. he to ; with to struck out.

⁵ MS. name name ; the first struck out.

⁶ MS. þi ton ; ton struck out.

⁷ MS. a h a cite ; with a h struck out.

Thus answers þaim þis old god · & ossus on þis wyse,
 And þai als fayne, aH þe flote · als foule is on morne. 2264
 Than Ayrez hym on *sir Alexander* · with hys atheH Princez,
 To þe casteH of corinthy · he commys with hys osterz,
 With þe peres of þai partez · to play on þe towrez,
 Als aH þe syres of þat sydez · hem-selfe hed required. 2268

The multitude Wher to muche · **oF** men for to rekeñ, [Fol. 21 b.]

That wer þar semblyd & set · þat fecht to be-hold.

Quod alexander als belyue · to aH þat þar stodyn :

“What^t gome saH þis gameñ · begyn vpon first?” 2272

Then commes furth *Clytomachus* · & to þe kyng sweres,

The tulke owt of tebe · I tald you beforne ;

“If it *your* mekyH mageste · might^t any thyng please,

I wald to wakyn oure welth · now wrastyH a turne.” 2276

þen makes þe prince hym a place · & prestly hym maches,

And he hym grydes to þe grund · & þe gre wynnez.

“Now fathfully, *quod* þe feyle kyng^t · “þus faH þou thrisse,

Thu saH be crownyd, or I go · for kyddest of gamme.”

þen ȝode he eftsons to · & hys eueñ castes, 2281

Thyrnges to þe thryd tyme · & þe thro wynnes.

And þen *Commandes* þe kyng^t · a croune on heued,

Als for þe fee of þe play · piȝt-fuH of stanes ; 2284

Then byde hym bedels belyfe : · ‘breue vs þi name.’

“Sirs, be my soght,” *quod* þe seghe · “siteles¹ I hyght.”

“Whi so, my worthy wristiller?” · þe wale kyng sayd,

“How tydes it þe at tounles · þi to-name is called?” 2288

“My louely Lord,” *quod* þe lede · & law he declynes,

“Before ȝe Come suche · & þe crowne wered,

I hed a cyte my-self · & seges enowe ;

And syne ȝe aught þis empyre · & I am deprined.” 2292

Then trowyd trewly þe kyng · at tebet he neuynd,

And Bedels & bailzais · he bad a-none crye,

¹ I. e. city-less ; so also town-less in line 2288.

Alexander
grants him to
rebuild Thebes.
He goes to
Pateua.

Diana's
prophetess
welcomes
Alexander,

and tells
Strasagoras he
will lose his
lands.

And so it
happened.
Alexander comes
to Athens.

[Fol. 40.]

Be-fore his pupil[†] apart · þe powere him grauntis
To sett his cite vp agayn · & of him-selfe haldeñ. 2296
þaū passis he to a proude touū · Platea was hatteñ,
þare was stiztilk ane Strasageras · þat was a¹ stiffe prince,
Duse him in *with* his dukis · to Dyanaas temple,
And fand a pure prophetas · aparaild iñ vailles. 2300
And scho, as sone as scho him saze · said him þi^r wordis:
“Welcom̄ we, at aH þe werd · saH wyñ *with* þi handis.”
þe secund[†] day before þe soñ · he at þe cite willid,
In-to þe temple he turned · tythandis to herkeñ; 2304
“Quat ware þi wiH, *ser*, to wete?” · þe womañ frayned;
“þou lesis aH þi lordschiþ · *within* a lite dais.”
“Quat, & has þou ossed to Alexander · þis ayndain wirtes,
And me þus iH? vn-ably · þine abet þou weris.” 2308
“Nay, tene 3ow nozt, for treuly · þus tide bese it nede.”
And so it worthid, for in a wrath · þe wale kyng swyth
Him of his principalete priued · & þaū þe prince fondis
Onane to Athenas · & oñ þe athiH playntes; 2312
And þai said, soure suld him sowe · bot he þe cite zeld.
And Alexander *with* his osten · aires on forthire,
Ateynes him to-ward þe termes · & of þar tene heres,
And slike a word he þaim wayues · be writ fra him-self.
And qua so wiH has to wete · how it worthid eftir,
Here saH I teH þaū at loues · to here forthire. 2318

Decimus passus Alexandri.

A letter.
“Alexander to
the men of
Athens.

“**I** Alexander, þe aire · & eldest childe hatteñ
Of kyng Philip þe fers · þat fest aī iñ greece,
And of þe quene Olimpaues · þe oddest vnder heuen,
To aH 3ow of Athenes · þus etiH I my sazes. 2322
Fra þat my fadere was fey · & farne out o lyue,
And I was sett in his sege · *with* septour to regne,
Sethen went I *with* my werriours · in-to þe west endes,

[†] Added in the margin.

Before hys peple so pert^t · & hym þe power grauntez
To set hys cite vp agayn · & of hym-self hald. 2296

þan passys he to a prouud touñ · platea was hateñ,
þar was stizlet^t one *strasagera* · þat was a styffe Prince,
Dose hym in with hys Dukes · to Dianas¹ temple,
And fand a pure prophett · apparelt in wales. 2300

And als sone as sho hym see · sho sayd þees wordes :
“ Welcom, wye, þat þe werld · saH wyne with þi handes.”

þe **secund** day before þe suñ · he þat cite weLdit, [Fol. 25.]

To þe temple he ticht · tithamdez to herkeñ. 2304

“ What is² þi witt,” *quod* [the] woman, “ sir, to witt · &
how þou me franes ;

For þou lossez aH þi Lordschips · within a lityH dayes.”

“ What & hase þu ossed to *alexander* · þus aydoñ wordes,
And me þus? vnably · þinē habet þou werys.” 2308

“ Nay, tene þe noght, for trewly · þus tyde bus it nedes.”

And so it worthed, for in a wrath · þe wale kyng swyth
Hym of hys principalite deprīues · & þen þe Prince fondes
Anone vnto athens & on · of þe atheH Planettes ;³ 2312

And þai sayd, saire suld he sike · bot he þe cite zelde.

And *alexander* with hys ost · þen ayres on ferþer,
Attellys hym toward þe terme · & of þe tene heres, 2315
And such a word he þaim wayffez · be writte fro hym-selueñ.

.
.

Decimus Passus.

I alexander, ayre · & heldest child both

Epistola.

Off kyng philip þe fers · þat fessit am in grece, 2320

And of þe whene olimphades · þe oddest vnder hevyñ,

To all you of atthenys · þus atthiH I my sawes.

Fro þat my fader was fey · & fallyn out of lyve,

And I was sett in hys sege · with septour in hand, 2324

Syne went I with my weryours · in-to þe west ende,

¹ Read Dianas.

² Written above the line in MS.

³ So in MS. ; but corruptly.

I have conquered
all Europe.

And ay *with-out* any armes · þaim aH at anys 3olden,
aH Europe to myn empire · enterely þaim geuyn,
Euyt to þe Occiane · out of ald Rome. 2328

All who resist
we destroy.

Qua þat vs rekinly resayues · na riddour þai tholid,
And all at othire wais wrozt · we wast þam for euire.
And now fra þe marche of Messedone · I meued upon late
þurze þe anglis here of Afle · with myne athiH dukis,

The Thebans
resisted in vain.

And so þe Thebies þam tizt · þe toun to defende, 2333
And I þar pompe¹ & þaire pride · to poudire declined.

Send me ten
philosophers;
I ask no more,
except that ye do
homage."

To 3ow now write I on þis wise · þat, wald 3e² me send
Ten fyne Philisofours³ · to fand with my wittes, 2336

3oure burzes ne 3our brizt bees · bidd I þan nothire,

Bot at 3e knaw me for kyng · & caH me 3our lord.

For & 3e nyk now to myn empire · 3our nekis for² to bowe,

þan bos 3ow bigger⁴ to be · þen aH my bald princes,

Or laite anothire ladis-mañ · a-losed mare of strentH

þan I my-selfe or my seggis · be þe seuent dele."

[Fol. 40 b.]

þire athils of Atenes · þir augard clerkis 2343

þan reuerenst þai þe riche seele · & red ouer þe pistiH,

Syne kest vp a crie · with a kene voice at anys,

Sum in comending of his carpe · & on elene it spitid.

A Filisphire þan on first · before þe folke risis,

One Æschylus
recommends
them not to listen
to him.

Ane Eschilus in erle · & ernstly he spekis, 2348

þe douth & aH diuinours · be-dene he comaundis,

þat þai suld corde be na cas · vn-to þe kingis hestis.

With þat aH samen on a sopp · semblis þe pupiH,

One Demosthenes
is next
consulted.

A doctour, ane Domystyne · þai derely beseke 2352

To consaile þaim als in þe cause · & ken þam þe best.

And he rekinly rase · & rekynt þire wordis :

" I be-seke 3ow now, my citizens · if þat 3e safe vouche,

Bot sobirly a sete quile · my sazes for to here. 2356

Sirs, if 3e fele 3ow so fers · his force to with-stand,

Aires agaynes him with armes · admittis nozt his sazes.

He recommends
them to submit,

And if⁵ 3e fynde 3e be to faynt · fulfillis his wiH,

¹ MS. pompe. ² Added in the margin.

³ so is written above the line. ⁴ MS. biggis.

⁵ MS. inserts fy, struck out.

And þai *withowtyn* armys · þaim aH at onys *ȝeldyn*,
 AH europe to my empyre · *enterly* þai geveñ. 2327

Who þat rekenly vs resaued · no *raddour* tholett,
 And aH þat other-wyse wroght · we wastyd for euer.
 And now fro þe marche of *massydoñ* · I mefeld on late
 Torow þe anglez of asy · with myne atheH Dukez, 2332

And so þe tebes þaim *tyzt* · þe touñ to defende,
 That I þair pompe & þair pride · to powder haue declined.
 And now writte I on þis wise · þat, wold ȝe me send
 Ten¹ fyne philosophirs · to fond *with* my wittez, 2336

Your burghes ne *your* bryght bees · bidde I none *oper*,
Bot þat ȝe know me for your kyng¹ · & calle me *your* Lord. [Fol. 25 b.]

For nyk yhe to myne empyre · *your* nekkys for to bowe,
 þan bus you bigger to be · þan aH my bald Princes, 2340
Oper lates ane *oper* lodesmañ · alosed more of strenth
 Then I my-self & my seges · be þe *seuynt* dele.”

þoes athels of athens · þes awgerd Clerkez
 þen reuerenst¹ þai þe riche scale · & red ouer þe pisteh,
 Syne kestyn vp a clene voyce · & cried aH at onys, 2345
 Some in *Commendying* of hys carpyng · & soñ in *dyspysyng*.
 Than A philisofre² on þe frist¹ · before þat folke ryces,
 Ane Esculus in þat erde · & egirly spekes, 2348

þe³ Doughty & aH *Dyuynours* · be-dene he *Commandez*,
 þat þai suld acord be no case · to þe kynggez heste.
 With þat al sampnes in a sopp · assembles þe peple,
 A Doctour, ane Domestyñ · þai derly besekyñ 2352

To CounseH þaim in þat cause · & ken þaim þe best.
 And he þan rakenly rose · & rekens þees wordes :

“ I Beseke you now, my citesyns · if þat ȝe saue woche,
 Bot soberly a sete qwyle · my sawys for to herkyñ.” 2356

And sayd, “ if ȝe feyle you so feree · hys force to *withstond*,
 Ayres ayayns hym *with* armes · admittes noght hys sawes.
 And if yhe fynd ȝe faynt¹ · fulfyH þan hys wyll,

¹ MS. Then.² MS. philipofre.³ MS. ȝe.

because Alex-
ander always
wins.

"Did he not
conquer Tyre?"

[Fol. 41.]
and Thebes?

and the people of
Peloponesus?

Ye are angry
because of
Strasagoras' fate.

But he deserved
it.

Alexander is
known to be
courteous."

The Athenians

Vn-to his mekiH maieste · mekely 3ow bowe. 2360

For Sexes in sum time · surmountid all kyngis,
3it lȳt he law at þe last · for all his lethire prid.

Bot *Alexander* with his armee · in alkin rewmys
Has happend 3it ai hedire-to · þe herre of his faes; 2364

Vnmombirable ere þe not's · to neuen of his weres,
And 3it betid neuir þe time · þat euire tuke he schame.

Ware noȳt þe tulkis out of Tīre · þe tidiest oñ erth, 2367
þe kiddest knȳt's to a-count · vnder þe cape of heuen,

Quat bathe for corage & kene · & connyng in armes?
Loke quare it profet þam̄ a peese · aH þaire proud strenth.

Was noȳt þe Thebes þar-to · þe threyest¹ of othire,
þe worthiest wees of þe werld · & of witt clerest, 2372

Fra þat þaire cites ware sett · þe sotelest of weres?

Quat seruyd aH þai sapient · or sleȳt² of bataH?

Of Poliponenses þe pupiH · with þis prince forȳtē,
And þat þam̄ lethirly con like · by þe lattir ende, 2376

For þat þe kyng of þaire kythe · was killid down & heded,
His renkis raymed aH þe route · & all þe rewme ȳolden.

Wate ȳe noȳt wele þurȳe aH þe werld · how wīrd's with
him cheues? 2379

Has he noȳt cites butt saute · sesyd out of nounbr?

And for Strasagirs þe strang¹ · he of his strenth priueȳ,
ȳe meue al þus malicoly · his maieste a-gayne. 2382

þare do ȳe noȳt ȳour deuire · þat dare I wele proue,
It was þe gilt aH of þe gome · & noȳt of þe gud lord.

Ne had he trispast him to · I take it oñ my trouthe,

Had neuire his cite ne his soile · be sesid fra him
nouthire.

For þe auauȳt *ser Alexander* · is aH þe werd famyd
For aȳe of þe curtast kyng · þat euir croune weriȳ, 2388

And wete ȳe wele at sliȳ a we · at is³ wyse haldeȳ,
He wald neuire suprise · no seȳe vnder heuen."

With þat aH of Atenenys · þis aunceant maistir,

¹ MS. threyest; with a third e above y.

² MS. sleȳt; altered to sleȳt.

³ Added in the margin.

Vnto his mekyH mageste · mekely you bowes. 2360

For sexes in som tyme · sirmountyd aH kynges,
3it list he lawe at þe last · for aH hys lethir pride.

Bot alexander with hys arnes · in alkyn realmes

Hase happynd ay 3it hyder · to þe hyer of hys foes ;

Vnnowmerable er þe notez · to nevyñ of þe weres, 2365

And 3itt betyd neuer þe tyme · þat euer toke he shame.

Wer noght þe tulkez of tire · þe triest of þe werld,

þe kyldest knyghtez to account · vnder þe cope of heuen,

What bath¹ of corage & kene · & connyng of armez ?

Loke quar it profett þam a pese · all þair proude strenth.

Wer noght þe tebettes þarto · þe tithiest of oþer,

The worthiest wyes of þe werld · & of witte clerest, 2372 [Fol. 26.]

.
What seruyd 3itte aH þar sapience · & sleghtes of were ?

Of poliponenses þe peple · with þis prince feghten,

And þat þaim lederly con like · 3it at þe latter ende, 2376

For þar þe kyng of þe kyth · was kyllyd downe & heued,

Hys renkes raymet aH þe route · & hys realme 3olden.

Wayte 3e noght wele þorow aH þe werld · how aH thyng
with hym goys ? 2379

.
And for strasagera þe strang · he of hys strenth priues,

3it 3e make you malicoly · hys mageste ayayns.

þarto yhe do not your Diuour² · I dar it wele prefe,

It was þe gilt of gome · not of þe gode Lord. 2384

For had he noght trasped hym vnto · I take on my saule,

.

And for þe graunt of þe sir alexander · is aH þe werld famed

For one of þe curtasest kyng · þat euer crowne weryd,

And wete 3e wele þat suche a wye · þat is so wyse haldyn,

He wald neuer sussprise · no sege vnder heven." 2390

With þat aH þise athenez · & þa auancet maisters,

¹ MS. has þe after bath, but it is struck out.

² MS. Diuour.

commend
Demosthenes,

And clene aH þe clergy · comensure & othire, 2392
þis diuinour Domestyne · bedene þai comendid,
A-cordis þaim to his consaile · & kendly it prased.

and send a crown
to Alexander.

þan amed þai to *ser Alexander* · onane for to senç
A croune aH of clere gold · clustrid with gemmes, 2396
Of fyfty ponde with þe payse · as þe prose¹ tellis,
þis tresoure tire þai him to · & tribute him hetes.

[Fol. 41 b.]

Now ere þe sandismen² · sett oñ þaire horsis,
A IentiH man þat IoweH · enioyned was to kepe, 2400
þat was full sekirly & soft · aH in silke faldeñ;
Bot clerkis to þe conquirour · caired with þaim many.

The Athenian
messengers
arrive.

þan movis furth þe messagere · of mylis³ bot fewe,
þat þai nere liȝt as belyue⁴ · at þe kyngis tentis, 2404
Knelid doun befor þe kyng · & him þe croune rechið,
And ȝerely tribute him to geue · ȝapely him hetis.

Alexander thanks
them.

þan takis þe gudman þe gifte · & gretly þam þankis,
And vndirstandis in a stound · how it stude clene, 2408

He learns about
Æschylus and
Demosthenes.

Of þe egingr of Eschilus · þat ertid his feris,
þat þai with-sitt suld his sazes · & serue noȝt his pistiH.
þe dities of Domestiane · so did he bathe,
þat comaundid & his⁵ comandmentis · to kepe in aH
wyse, 2412

ȝit neuire-þe-lattir to þa ledis · a lettir he fourmedð,
In presidine with his awen⁶ prince · reportand þa
wordis :

A letter.
“ Alexander to
the men of
Athens.

¶ “ I, kyng Philip soñ þe fers · & his faire ladis,
Honoured Olimpades · þat I obesche maste, 2416
I kepe neuire king to be callid · ne cachē me þat name,
TiH aH þe barbarine blude · a-bowe to þe grekis.

I do not attempt
to enter Athens
forcibly.

I etiH neuir Athenes · with armes for to entre, 2419
Bot ȝow to question enquere · & qwete with my wittis.⁷
I purpose ay out of repreue · ȝoure persons to leue,
And ȝe þe contrari clene · ȝoure concience it opence.

¹ MS. *prorose*.

² MS. *sandisment*.

³ MS. *mylid*, altered to *mylis*.

⁴ MS. *bely*, altered to *belyue*.

⁵ Added in the margin.

⁶ MS. *awent*, altered to *awen*.

⁷ MS. *handis*, altered to *wittis*.

And Clene aH þe clerge · *commensour* & oþer, 2392
 Thys Diuinour domestyn · by-clene þai commendyn,
 Acorde þaim to hys counseH · & kenly it praseñ.
 Then ameyd þaim to *sir alexander* · anone for to send
 A Crowne aH of clene gold · clustred with gemmys, 2396
 Of fifty pound was þe passe · as þe prose tellys,
 Thys tresour tire þai hym to · & tribute hym highteñ.
 Now er þe sandesmen in sute · sett on þar blonkez,
 A gentilman þat IoweH · inioneyd was to kepe, 2400
 þat was fuH sarkenly & full soft · aH in sylke falden;
 Bot clerkes to þe conquerour · cayred with þaim none.
 Then meflyd forth þe messyngers · myles bot a few,
 And list aH belyue · at þe lordes tentes, 2404
 Knele downe before þe kyng¹ · & hym þe crowne raughteñ,
 And 3erly tribute hym to gyf · 3apely hym highteñ.
 Than tase þe godmañ þair giftez · & gretly þaim thanks,
 And vnderstondes in a stound · how it stode clene, 2408
And of þe eggyng of EscuLus · þat ertyd hys foes,
 To withsitte hys sawe · & serue nought hys pistyH.
 The dytes of domestyn · & so dyd of both,
 þat Counsellyd hys Commaundment · to kepe on aH
 wyse. 2412

[Fol. 28 b.]

Yit neuer-þe-leter to þo ledes · a letter he enformed,
 In presydençe hys Awne prince · reportand þes wordes :

“I, kyng Philipp soñ þe ferce · & hys fayre ladys,
 Honourd olymphades · þat I obey most, 2416
 I kepe neuer kyng to be called · ne cache me þat name,
 To ¹ aH þe barberoñ blude · bowe to þe grekys.
 I attellyd neuer athens · with armes to entre, 2419
 Bot you questions to enquire · to wete with my writtes.
 And purposed ay out of reprove · your persens to leue,
 Bot 3e þe contrary clene · in your conscience doys shew.

¹ Better Til.

- Whoever opposes
me will suffer. Bot quilk as first of 3ow found*'s* · a fote vs agayne,
SaH neu*r* deuouide my dedeyne · ne my derfe ire. 2424
And 3e at wickid ere *withiñ* · ay wickidly 3e thinke ;
For as þe *grayne* is in þe *grape* · growis þe *frut*'s**.
[Fol. 42.] þe Tebies tulkid¹ vs *with* tene · a-tired þa*m* in armes,
3it rad for all þaire rebelte · resayued þai þaire medis.
Ye reprove me
because of
Strasagoras. And for Strasagera þe stoute · 3e stithli me blamed,
þare as he gilt me agayns · & I him *gradid* haue, 2430
I wrate to 3ow at me to wayue · be teñ wyse clerk*'s* ;
3e kest out comaundment*'s* · 3e knew nozt my strenth.
I mizt a-coupe of þat cause · if I it kythe walk*ð* ; 2433
I forgive you." Bot I for-geue 3ow aH þe gilt · & greues me na mare.
For-þi bees glad now, aH þe ging*'s* · 3e saH na gref haue,
þe diuinour² domestyne · for 3e his domes held." 2436
The Athenians
rejoice. Fra þai consayued had þe clause · & construed þe lett*r*,
þai ware þe meriest modirsons · on morne mizt³ ryse.
¶ Now fonndis furth þe feH kyng · & flitt*'s* *with* his oster,
Alexander goes to
Lacedæmon. Lendis him to Lacedoyne · a litiH fra þe cite, 2440
With-out þe burȝe oñ a banke · he bild*'s* his tent*'s*,
And þare him-selfe *with* a somme · in a sege le[n]gis.
þe ledis out of Lacedone · belyue þam asemble, 2443
They agree to
resist him. Said, " bow we neu*r* to his bode · for bale apon erth,
Ne lat vs neu*r* be sa lethire · at we like worthe
To þam of Ateynes · it is oure opyn schame ;
For þai ware baist of his bost · bredid for nozt ;
Bot be we kniztly & kene · oure corage to schew." 2448
They defend the
walls. With þat þai 3arkid to þe 3at*'s* · & 3ode to þe wallis,
Sum in Iopons, sum in Iesserant*'s* · sum Ioyned aH in
platis.
A grayne of þe grete see · þa*m* aboute glidis ;
For-þi buskis þa*m* þe burȝh · a bataiH with-out, 2452
They prepare
their navy. Preses furth at posternes · in-to þe porte wyndis,
Schalkis scott in-to shipis · aH in shire mailles ;
Archars with arows · with attrid barbis,

¹ *Sic* ; perhaps for tukkid. ² MS. duinour.³ Added in the margin.

Bot whilke of yow as foundes frist^t · on fote vs agayns,
 SaH neuer voyde my dysdane · ne my derfe Ire. 2424

And 3e at thynkys wykkydly · & wyrkys agayns ;

For as þe grane is of þe grase · & þar growez þe frute.

The tebettes tulkyd¹ vs with tene · atyred þaim in armys,

3itt for aH þair rialte · resaued þai þair mede. 2428

And for strasagera þe stout^t · 3e styfly me blame,

Thar as he giltyd me ayayns · I hym gradit haue,

I wrate to you me to wafe · teñ wise clerkez ;

Yhe kest out *Commandmentes* · & knew noght my strenth.

I might a-couþ you of þat cause · & I it kyth wald ; 2433

Bot I forgyfe you aH þe gilt^t · & grefez me no more.

For-þi beys glade now, aH þe pake · 3e saH no grefe sofre,

The Diuynour Domestyn · for 3e hys domes halden." 2436

And fro þai consaued hed þe clause · & construed þe pistyH,

Thai wer þe meriest modersons · þat might on morne rise.

Now fonndes he furth þe fele kyng · & flittes hys osten,

. 2440

Without þe burgh on a bank · beldit he hys tentez,

And þar hym-self with a soume · in a sege lenges.

þe² ledes out of lacydoñ · belyfe þaim assembled,

Sayd : " how we neuer to hys body · for bale vppoñ erthe,³

Ne lett^t vs neuer be so lethir · þat we leke wortheñ 2445

[Fol. 27.]

To þise out [of] athens · for it wer opyn⁴ shame ;

For þai wer basyt^t for hys beste · & ferd for noght^t ;

Bot be we knyghtly & kene · oure corage to shew." 2448

With þat þai 3arkeñ to 3ates · & 3odeñ to þe walles,

Some in Iompons & in Iesserauntez · som Ioned in
 platez.

A grayne of þe grete see · glad þaim all vmbe ;

For-þi buskys þaime þe burgesse · a batale withowt, 2452

Pressen forth at posternes · vnto a place wenden,

Shalkez shotten into shippez · aH in shire malys,

Arches with arows · with atterd barbes,

¹ *Perhaps* for tukkyd.

² MS. To þe.

³ MS. erthd.

⁴ MS. orpyn.

[Fol. 42 b.]

Gais þam in-to galays · & grathis þam be-forne. 2456
 Bowes bernes in-to bargis · with basinettis on heued,
 Sparrethis spetous to spend · & speris in handis,
 þai crosse ouir toward þe kyng¹ · as kyndmen suld,
 With as feyle on þe flode¹ · as foȝten with-in. 2460

A letter.

"Alexander to
 the men of
 Lacedæmon.

And sent twa vndir his seele · þir saȝes in a pistil.
 ¶ "I, Philip soñ þe fell kyng · as I first sayd,
 And als of Olimpades · I anely ȝow rede, 2464
 þat þe end of ȝoure eldirs · enterely ȝe be-hald,²
 And roomes noȝt at³ þe ray[n]bowe · þat reche ȝe ne
 may,

Resist me, and
 get you a name."

And þe powere of þe Persens · so truly ȝe traist. 2467
 Lat se now, getis ȝow a name · & naytis ȝour stre[n]the;
 Bot bowis first fra ȝour bargis · & blythly þaim wayfe,
 For, fest I aȝ on a fire · þe foly is ȝoure awen."

The assault
 begins.

Ledis out of Lacedone · quen þai þe lettir redd, 2471
 Were drery, bot for aȝ þe dole · þa diȝt þaim to fȝt.
 With þat þe kyng & his kniȝtis · vm-clappis þe cite,
 Settis aȝ þe gailis on gledis · & girdis doun þe wallis;
 þe citizens & seriantis · at vne-slayne ware

They yield.

"Now you have
 lost your ships
 and your walls
 are broken.

Bowis þam to þis baratour · bodis & lyuys. 2476
 "ȝe know wele," quod þe conquirour · "my comyng
 was esye;
 Bot for ȝe fangid me noȝt faire · fired is ȝour schippis,
 ȝour burȝe is bretind & ȝour bernes · I bed ȝow
 my-selfe, 2479

Never handle the
 stars."

ȝe suld noȝt stody ne stein · þe sternes for to handil.
 For he þat steppis on a stee · quen þe staues failis,
 þan fautis him festing¹ to his fete · & faȝ him be-houes;
 So, riȝt as Sexis was slayn · sum time with ȝour eldirs,
 So ettild ȝe ser Alexander · bot þare ȝoure ame failes."
 Quen he þis saȝe had þam said · þe cite he þam grauntid,
 Fondis furth with his folke · þar fraunches þam leues.

[Fol. 43.]

¹ Added in the margin.² þe added in margin.³ Above the line.

Gone þaim into galays · & grathen þaim þarforne. 2456
 Bowyn bernes into bargez · with Basynettes on heued,¹
 Sparthys spitous to spend · & speres in handes,
 þai crossyn ouer toward þe kyng^t · als kene men shuldeñ,
 With als fele on þe flode · as foughten within. 2460
 þe lord hym lokez on þe ledes · & a lityll Smylez,
 And Send þaim vnder hys sealle · þis saughez in a pistyH.
 “Myself, philipp þe feth kynggez [son] · as I first sayd, *epistola.*
 & als of olimphades · I only you rede, 2464
 þat þe ende of your elders · enterly 3e holden,
 And rooues² noght at þe rayne-bowe · þat reche 3e ne
 may,
 And þe power of persyens · so purely 3e trasten.
 Lettes se, nemmys yow a name · & naytes your strenthe ;
 Bot bowes first fra your bargez · & blythly þam woydez,
 For fest I al in a fyre · þe foly is your awne.”
 The ledes owt of lacidon · when þai þe lettres herd, 2471
 War drery, bot [for] aH þe dole · þai dight þaim to fight.
 With þat þe kyng & hys knyghtes · vmbelappes þe cite,
 Sett all þe Galays on gledes · brynt down þe wallez ;
 The cetyners & þe sergeantes · aH þat vnslayne weryñ
 Bowes þan to þe baratour · both bodes & lyfez. 2476
 “3e knowe wele,” quod þe conquerour · “my Commyng [Fol. 27 b.]
 was full easy ;
 Bot for³ 3e fonge me not fair · nowe fyryd er your shippez,
 Your borgh es bryttynynd & your berne[s] · I byd you my-
 selueñ,
 3e suld nott study ne stem · þe sternes to byholde. 2480
 For he þat steppys on a stegh · when þe stoure faylez,
 þen fallys hym þe festyng^t of hys fete · & falle hym byhofys ;
 So ryght as sixes was slayne · some tyme with your aldours,
 Als ettled 3e Sir A[lexander]. · bot þar your kast faylyd.”
 When he þis sagh hed þaim sayd · þe Cyte he þam grauntyd,
 Fondes forth with hys folke · þair franchise þaim lefys.

¹ MS. heuend.² Or roones.³ Above the line in MS.

He goes to Sicily. þis souerayn with his seggis · þurȝe Sycile¹ he wyrd^{is},

Darius is
frightened.

þoȝt to ride & to rayme · þe regions of barbres. 2488

þan was *ser* Darius dred · & sembled derf ost^{is},

His kniȝt^{is}, his consaiht · & carpis þire wordis,

Said: “lo! my *seris*, now may se · ȝour-selfe with ȝour eȝen,

How Alexander in his armes · aȝ-way encreses, 2492

In valour & in victori · & vertues so noble ;

“I threatened
him as a thief;
he fights like a
warrior.

þare as I thret him as a thefe · thedis to dispoyle,

Now werrays he fuht worthily · as wiȝt man suld, 2495

Constreyne with his contenance · kniȝt^{is} to him bow.

þe mare I spek him dispite · & in my speche hindire,

þe hiȝere I here him enhansed · & hersude his name.

I sent him
playthings.

A baht & a herneþaȝ · I to þe barne sent,

For burde & for bobance · þe bab with to play. 2500

Him þat I countid bot a knaue · may now be cald

maist^{er} ;

For quare he fondis on fold · dame fortune him foloȝe[s].

For-þi² vs haue bos in hert · þe hele of oure pupiht,

We must no
longer despise
him.

And for na pompe ne na pride · his person dispice, 2504

For his lose, for aȝ his litillaike · is loued þurȝe þe

werht.

God helps him.”

And þe mare I myn oure maieste · þe mare it abat^{is},

þe grace of þe grete god³ · I ges, wiht him help,

Of prise þe hiȝe prouynce · vn-to þis prince leues. 2508

Quen we hope althire-hiȝest · to hery him with³ armes,

þan am I redd aȝ oure rewme · be reft vs for euire.”

[Fol. 4^v b.]

Sone as *ser* Dary till his dukis · deuysid had þir wordis,

Oriathar,
Darius' brother,
says :

þan answers him ane Oriathire · ane of his awen

brethire,

2512

“þou has þis gome out of grece · so gretly e[n]hansiht,

þat we Elanda suld leue · & he þis land^{is} entre.

“Your majesty
should do as he
does.

Bot wald ȝour maieste þe maners · of þis man sewe,

þe miȝt ȝoure rewme haue in ryst · & othire rewmes wyȝ.

¹ MS. Sytile.

² þi added in the margin.

³ Added in the margin.

Thys souerayne with hys seneours · throghe seeyH he
wendes,

thoght to ryde & to rame · þe regions of Barbers. 2488

þen was *sir* darius a-drede · & derfly þan sembles

Hys knyghtes & hys CounseH · & carped þes wordes,

Sayd : “*sirys*, nowe may 3e se · *your-self* with your eey,

How A[lexander] in hys armys · alway enereses, 2492

In valour & victory · & *vertus* so noble ;

þar as I thratt [him] as a thefe · thedes to dispoyle,

Nowe warreys he full worthily¹ · als wigt² man suld,

Constraynes with hys contenance · knyghtes to bowe.

þe more I speke hym dispite · & in my speche endered,

The heyar I here hym enhaunsyd · & hersud hys name.

A baH & a brayne-pan · I to þe berne send,

For burde & for bobance · þe bab with to play. 2500

Hym þat I Counte bot a knaffe · may now be callyd

[maister] ;

For whar he ffoundez apon fold · dame fortune hym sewes,

For-thi vs hafe buse in hert · þe heyle of our peple, 2503

And for no pompe ne no pryde · hys person to dispyse,

For hys loyse, flor all hys hattellayke · is losyt þorow þe

world.

And þe more I meng *our* maieste · þe more it debates,³

The grace of þe grete god · I gesse, wele hym helpes,

[Fol. 28.]

Of pris þe hegh provynce · vnto þis prince lefys. 2508

When we hope aH þe heldest · to herye hym with armes,

þen am I raddest aH *our* realme · be raymed from vs first.”

Sone as *sir* Dary to hys dukez · devysed hase þees wordez,

þen answers hym oryather · on of hys awne brether, 2512

“ Now hase þis gome oute of grece · so gretly enhaunsed,

And we þe lande shuld leve · & he þe landes entre.

Bot wald 3our maieste þe maners · of þis man sewe, 2515

3e myght *your* realme haue in rist · & other landes wyne.

¹ MS. worthtly.

² MS. with.

³ *Catchword*—þe grace.

- For *Alexander* all-ways · or any of his erles, 2517
 He helps him-
 self." Nayt's him-selfe in ilke nede · & so his name rysis."
 "Quat sall I take of him my temes · tittire þan he myne?"
 Another says, "Sire, on my pereH," *quod* a prince · "he passes all othire;
 þe wee wirkis all be witt · he worthis þe bettir; 2521
 "he is of a lion's
 kin."
 "How so?" For-þi of þe lion, as I leue · lazt is his birthe."
 says Darius, "Quat knowis þou þat?" *quod* þe kyng · & þen þe kniȝt
 swaris :
 "Sir, I once went "Sire, I was sent on a sand · my-seH on a time, 2524
 to Philip's
 court. To Philip his fadere · to feche oure trouage;
 þare had I siȝt of þe segg · his sapient I herde.
 For-þi plese it to *your person* · *your* princes a-sembles,
 Of Mede of Mesopotane · þe men of Itaile, 2528
 þe pupiH of Appolomados · þe panthis folke,
 And ma þat houes to *your* hest · a hundreth & fifti.
 He heard that
 many would come
 to attack the
 Greeks, and
 remarked that
 one wolf can
 worry many
 sheep." Lat vs gedire þus oure gomes · oure gods wiH vs help;
 And quen he sesse vs sike a sowme · sare will he drede.
 3a, bot a wolfe, *quod* a wee · wiH were many
 flokkis,¹ 2533
 And so þe grace of þe grekis · ouire-gos þe barbers."
 Be þis ser Ph[ilip] son þe fers · of feȝtand folk
 Had sembliȝt ane vñsene sowme · as þe buke sais,
 Alexander has
 200,000 men. Twa C. Mille in thede · all² of threuen kniȝtis.
 Ridis furth in aray · removis his tentis; 2538
 2538*
- Vn-to a watere he wendis · as þe buke tellis,
 þat with þa marchesmen · Mociañ was hatten; 2540
 [Fol. 44.] It was clerire þan cristall · & cole as a chiH;
 He bathes in a
 cold river. þare-in couet oure kyng · his cors for to bathe.
 With þat þan wan of his wede · & weschild him all ouire,
 Quare-þurȝe he hent slike a harme · at hatirly him
 greuel. 2544
 He is chilled,
 and has a fever. þis chele eftir chaufing · enchaſis so his hernes,
 þat he was fallen in a feuire · or he first wend.

¹ MS. flokkis, i. e. flokkis.² Added in the margin.

For A[lexander] always · or ony of hys berness, 2517
Nates hym-self in ony nede · & so hys name rysys."

"Sir, on my *perch*," quod a prince · "he passes all *oper* ;
þe wee wyrches all *with* witte · & worthes ay þe better ;
For-þi of þe lyon, as I lefe · laght he hys byrth." 2522
"What knawez þou þat?" quod þe kyng · & þen þe knyght
answers :

"Sir, I was send on a sond · my-self on a tyme, 2524
To philip hys fader · to feche hys trowage ;
þar hed I syght of þe segge · hys sapiens I herd.
For-þi ples it yowur person · 3our princes assembles,
Off medy & of mesopothany · þe men of ytalle, 2528
The peple of appolomados · þe peranthez folkez,
And mo þen hewen¹ to your heystez · a hundreth & fyfty.
Let vs gedir to vs our gomez · our goddes wyll vs help ;
And when he seys vs suche a sowme · sore wyll he drede.
3a, bot þen a wolfe, quod þe we · wyll wery mony
flokkez, 2533

And so þe grace of þe grekez · ouergose þe barbres."
By þis *sir* philip son þe fers · of fightand berness
Had semblyd hym a sowme vnsene · & þus says þe text,
Two hundreth thousand in thede · all of thro knyghtez.
Rydez furth in aray · remewys hys tentes, 2538 [Fol. 28 b.]
And thought to loge þar & rest^t · & ease hym þat
nyght. 2538*

Vntill a water he wendes · as þe writt shewys,
þat *with* þe marche-men · of Mociañ es baldyn ; 2540
Clerar þen cristall · & cold as a chyll ;
And þarin couett þe kyng · hys Cors to be bathyd.
With þat þai wan of hys wedez · & wessh hym all ouer,
Whar-þorow he hynt suche a harme · þat hetterly hym
grefyd. 2544

The chele after chawfyng · enchasys so hys harmes,
þat he was fallen in a feur · or he lest wende.

¹ *Sic* ; read *houn*.

þan mourned all þe Messedons · as meruaiH ware ellis.
 þai saze him so to be seke · said ilkane to othire : 2548
 “Be þis disese to *ser* Darie · & his dukis knaweñ,
 He saH vs sett oñ a-saute · & surely en[c]ounbre.”
 If þai were sary & so · na selly me thingke,
 For ay þe hele of þe hede · helpis all þe menbris. 2552
 þan callis to him þe conquirour · a clerke of his awenñ,
 Ane Philip, his fesisiane · his fare to behald ;
 Of al manere of medeyne · man þat maste couthe,
 A 3onge berdles barne · as þe buke tellis, 2556
 Said : “lat listly my lord · for in a litil stonde
 My-self with a serop · saH saue 3ow be-lyue.”
 þan permeon þe proude · a prince of his ost,
 þat held þe erth of Ermony · & enmyte hadð 2560
 Vn-to þis clerke of þe kyngis · & be no cause els
 Bot for þe lede was loued · & with þe lord chereschest ;
 þan ames he to *ser Alexander* · on ane slike a pistil :
 “Kepis 3ow,” quod he, “conquirour · & caches no3t his
 drenke ; 2564
 For *Darius* eftir his deth · his dozter has him list,
 And 3ow to sla be soñ sle3t · to sese him his landis.”
 3it was þe berne no3t a bene · baist of his wordis,
 He asurid him so sadly · þe serop he takis, 2568
 þe licor in his awen looue · þe lettir in þe tothire,
 And in-to Phili[pi]s face · fast¹ he behaldis.
 He bad him dred neuire a dele · & it drink swyth, 2571
 And þan þe pistill of þe prince · he put him in hand.
 þe leche lokid ouire þe lynes · “my lording,” he said,
 “I am no3t gilty of þis gile · be aH þe grete gods !”
 As fast was he fysche-hale · & Philip he callis,
 Haisis him fuH hertly · & of his hele thankis, 2576
 Said, “wele knew þou my kynd · lufe þi concience,
 First suposid I of þi serop · syne sesid þe þe lettir.
 “Mi lonely lord, be 3our leue · lattes him a-pere,
 þe tulk at sike a trayne · has touchid to my-selfe.” 2580

His men are
sorry.

Alexander sends
for a physician
named Philip,

who says he will
soon heal him.

Parmeon hates
Philip,

and tells
Alexander not
to trust him.

But Alexander
drinks.

[Fol. 44 b.]

Philip says he is
guiltless.

Alexander is
fish-whole.
Alexander
thanks Philip,

¹ MS. face face fast.

þen murnyd all þe massydons · as murvell wer ellez.
 When þai hym sawe so be seke · sayd ichone to oþer :
 “ Be þis disease to *sir* Dary · & to hys dukez knawyn,
 He sall vs sett on a-saute · & surely vs Combre.”
 Yff þai wer sory & so · no selly me thynke, 2551
 For ay þe heylh of þe hede · helpis aȝ þe membrys.
 þen callys to hym þe Conquerour · a clerke of hys Awne,
 On philipp, hys fysycyañ · hys fare to byholde ;
 Off all maner of medycine · mañ þat most kowth,
 A ȝong berdles¹ bern · as þe buke tellys, 2556
 Sayd : “ letes lyghtly my lord · for in a lytyȝ stounde
 My-self with a Syrope · shall safe you bylyfe.”
 þen was þar permeoñ þe prouud · a prince of his hoste,
 þat held þe erth of Ermony · & enmyte hed 2560
 Vnto þis Clerke of þe kengez · & be no cause ellez
 Bot for þe lede was lofed · & with þe lord cheryst ;
 þen says he to *sir* A[lexander] · anone suche a pystyll :
 “ Kepys you,” quod he, “ Conquerour · & kachez nott hys
 drynkez ; 2564
 For Darius after hys deth · hys doghter hase hym hyght,
 And you to sla by som slyght · to seyse hym hys landez.”
 Yitt was þe bern not a beyne · bassyd of hys wordez,
 He assuryd hym so sadly · þe syroppe he fangez, 2568
 þe licour in hys Awne lofe · þe letter in þe toþer,
 And into philipp face · fast he byholdes.
 He bad hym drede neuer a dele · bot drynke it Swyth,
 And þen þe pistyȝ of þe prince · he put hym in hand.
 The leche lukyd ouer þe lynes · “ my lordyng,” he sayd,
 “ I ne am noght gylty of þis · by all þe godes owte !”
 Als fast was he fyssh-hole · & philip he clepys,
 Halsys hym fuȝ hertly · & of hys heylle thankez, 2576
 Sayd, “ wele knew þou my kynde · þi conscience I lofe,
 First suppyd of þi syroppe · syne sesyd þe my letter.
 “ My lofely Lord, be ȝour leffe · lettes hym apere, 2579
 The tulke þat suche a trayne · has attachyd to my-selueñ.”

[Fol. 29.]

¹ The d is above the line.

who suggests
that Permeon
should be sent for
and beheaded.

þan eftir ser Permes his prince · prestly he sendis,
And þare þe trechoure was tane · & for his trayne
hedid.

Alexander wins
Media and
Armenia,

þan mouys he furth with his meñ · & Medy he wynnys
Enterly to his empire · & Ermonye þe mare. 2584
Till a dissert þan he drafe · was dry & na watere,
þurȝe Adriac till Eufraten · & ames þare his tentis,

and makes a
bridge over
the Euphrates.

And mas a brig¹ ouire þe bourne · of Barges¹ with
cheynes;

Comandis his kniȝtis ouire to caire · & þar þai vneachid²
hertis. 2588

His men fear to
cross.

þai saȝe þe streme so stife · it stonaid þam aȝ,
For ferd þe festing¹ suld faile · & þai in þe flode droune.

He sends over
lads and grooms,

þan mas he laddis ouire to lend · & lokars of bestis, 2591
And monestis þam ilk modire-soñ · him maynly to teȝ.

and then crosses
himself.

ȝit was his baratours a-baist · & þen þe berne writhis,

Fandis him first on be-fore · & all folozes eftir.

The rivers Tigris
and Euphrates.

þan passid þare out of Paradese · twa proude Flummes,
þurȝe Medy & Messopotane · þai move, as I fynd, 2596
And so to² Babiloñ þai bowe · ane is þe bourne of Tygre,
þe tothire is Eufrates full euen · & rynnys so to Sylus.

[Fol. 45.]

He cuts the
cables in two.

þan cutis⁴ þe kyng in to þe cablis · & to his kniȝtis sais:
“Lo! þof vs faȝ now to flee · we may na ferryre
wend; 2600

He says, “We
cannot now flee.

þare I rede,” quod þe kyng · “oure bakis neuir to
turne,

And if we did, with-uten dome · to die aȝ at anes;
For he þat folowid has ai þe floure · & he at fled¹
neuire.

We will never
return till we
conquer.”

Bees lizt & laches ȝow a lose · it is a lord gamen. 2604

For I make a-vow at Messedone · we saȝ na mare see,
Tiȝ aȝ þe barbres vs bow · þan may we blith turne.”

¹ MS. Barges. ² MS. cachid, with vn above.

³ In the margin.

⁴ MS. tutis.

þen after for permeoñ hys prince · prestely he sendes,
And þar þe trechour was tane · & for hys trayne hated.

þen mevys he forth *with* hys men · & medy he wynnez
Enterly to hys empyre · & Ermonye þe more. 2584

To a deserte þen he drof · was dry & no waterez,
Throgh andriake to eufrateñ · & settles þar hys tentes,¹
And askez a brigg ouer þe burne · of bargez with
chynez ;

Commandes hys knyghtez ouer to carye · þai hed kokell
hertes, 2588

Seghen þe streme be so styff · þai stoned þe helder,
For lest þe festynyng had faylyd · & þaim þe flude drenchyd.
þen makys laddes ouer to lend · & lokers of bestes, 2591
And monyshyd þen iche moderson · þaim manly to sewe.
3itt wer hys baratours abaist · & þen þe bern wrothed,
Foundez first on before · & all folows after.

þar passys owt of paradyse · twa brade flomes,
Throgh medy & mesopothany · þai mouen, as I fynd, 2596
And so to babyloyn þai bowe · þat is þe burne of tigre,
þat oper is eufrates full eueñ · rynnez so to Nilus. [says :
þen Cuttes þe kyng in two hys cablys · & to hys knyghtes
“ Lo ! þof vs fallys nowe to flee · we may no ferre wend ;

þarfore I breke,” quod þe berne · “ our bakkez neuer to
torne, 2601

And if we did, *withowtyn* dome · to dye all at ones ;
For he þat folows hase þe floure · & he flees neuer.

[Fol. 29 b.]

Be light & lachys þou lose · it is a lordez gamme. 2604
For I make a-wowe þat massydoyn · shall see vs no more,
Tyll all þe barbrems vs bowe · þen² may we blyth bee.”

¹ Here follows—And þe knyghtez of þe coste as þai þe case
seghen ; but this is l. 2641, out of place.

² Above the line in MS.

Undecimus passus Alexandri.

Darius collects
an army.

Now has *ser* Darie þe derfe · of dukis & princes
Heued vp a hoge ost · & fyue hundreth kniȝt^{is}
Ere chosen to chiftans · & chargid þaim to lede ; 2609
Trottis him oñ to Tigre¹ · & þare his tentis settis ;

Alexander meets
him.

þañ mett þai on þe oþire morne · with a mekiȝ nombre,
Sire *Alexander* þe hathiȝ · armed oñ blonkis. 2612
þe multitude ware to me · meruaile to rekeñ,
þat sammed was oñ aipir side · many sadd thousand.
Now ere þe baners out-bred · & þe bate neȝis,

Trumpets are
blown.

Blew bemys of bras · buskis to-gedire, 2616
þe crie of þe clarions · þe cloudis it persyd ;
For þe dewt² of þe dyn · daunced stedis.
Bathe þe twa batails · bremely assemblis, 2619
And aithire segg with his sowme · soȝt vn-to³ othire.

Knights charge.

Kniȝt^{is} oñ cursours · kest þan in fewtire,
Taches in-to target^{is} · tamed þaire brenys.

There is hard
fighting.

þare was stomling of stedis · sticking⁴ of erles,
Sharpe schudering of schote · schering of mailles, 2624
So stalworthly within a stond · sterid þaim þe grekis,
þat of þe barb[r]yne blod · aȝ þe filȝ flowis.

[Fol. 45 b.]

Darius is grieved
to see his men
beaten.

Sone as *ser* Darie þe deth · of his douth sees,
þe pite of þe Persens · him prickis in his saule, 2628
Sees his meneȝe so mynesch · & his men fangid,
A few þat fresch ware vnde foulid · & to þe flizt
tournes.

One Persian
warrior is told he
may marry
Darius' daughter
if he slays
Alexander.

ȝit was ane of his ost · ane odd mañ of strentȝ,
A burly berne & a bald · as þe buke tellis, 2632
A segg at he ensurid had · to sese him his doȝtir,
If he miȝt sla with any sleȝt · þe seniour of greece.
He clel him aȝ in elene stele · a conyschaunce ouire,
þat made was & merkid · oñ þe messedone armes, 2636
Aires him to *ser* Alexander · in aȝ-þir-mast puple,

¹ MS. Tirgre, corrected to Tigre. ² Read dowl.
³ vn in the margin.

[Undecimus Passus.]

Nowe hafys sir Dary þe derf · of dukez & princez
 Hefyd vp a hoge hoste · of fyfe C knyghtez 2608
 Er chosyn for chyftanes · & chargett þaim to lede;
 Trottes on to tygre · & þar hys tentes settes;
 þen mette þai on þe toþer morne · with a muche nombre,
 Sir *Alexander* & hys athett men · armed on þar blonkez.
 The multitude to me · wer merveH to Rekeñ, 2613
 þe[r] sammed was on þat oþer syde · mony sad hundreth.
 Nowe er þes baners oute brade · & þe bates neghez,
 Blew bemes of brase · & buskyn to-gedre, 2616
 þe cry of þe Clarions · the clodez it persyd;
 And for doute of þe dynne · dauncen stedes.
 Both þe two batels · bremly assemble,
 And seggez with hys soumez · soght vnto oþer. 2620
 Knytes on pair coursours · kestyn in fewtre,
 Tachyng into targettes · tamyd pair brynnes.
 þar was stomblyng of stedes · stykkyng of Erles,
 Sharpe shoderyng of shote · sheryng of malys, 2624
 So stalwartly in a stounde · steryñ þaim þe grekez,
 þat of þe Barbren blode · all þe bent flowez.
 Sone as *sir Dary* þe deth · of hys doghty hedys,
 The pite of þe persyens · hym prikkez in hys sawle, 2628
 Seys hys meynze so amenyst · & hys men fonged,
 A flew þat fresh wer vndefowled · to þe flyght turnes.

3yt was on wer of hys oste · an odde man of Strenth,
 A borely berne & a bald · als þe buke tellys, 2632
 A segge þat he sured hed · to seyse hym hys doghter,
 Yf he myght slae with ony sleght · þe seneour of grece.
 He clad hym all in clene stele · a Conyseauce ouer,
 þat mad was & markyd · on massidons armes, 2636
 Kayres hym to *sir A*[lexander] · in all þe most prese,¹

¹ *Catchword*—as he.

He comes
behind the king,

and wounds him
in the head.

Alexander asks
why he hit him;

the Persian being
dressed as a
Macedonian.

"I am no
Macedonian.

I did this to
gain Darius'
daughter."

[Fol. 46.]

"What shall be
done to him?"
says the king.

"Let him be
hung or burnt,"
answer his
counsellors.

"Nay, he only
did as he was
told to do,"
replies the king.

As he a hathliH ware of his · behind him he stelis,
A briȝt brynnand brand · he braidis out of shethe,
And þurȝe-out þe helme in-to þe hede · he hurt him a
littiH. 2640

And þe kniȝtis of oure cost · as þai þe eas saȝe,
þan fange þai þis ilk freke · & be-fore þe kyng bryngis.
"Quat now? my worthi werrecours?" · þe wale kyng
said, 2644

He wend wele at he ware · a wee of his awen, 2644
"Qui has þou brest so my brayn · & with a brand
wondid

ȝour sekire seruant in same · aH were I sire callid,
aH ware I halden as for hede · ȝour helpere at nede?"
"Nay, hope ȝe neuire," quod þe hathiH · "ser hiȝe
emperoure, 2648

Me any Messedone to be · þou ames of þine awen,
Bot of cruell kind · comen of barbres.
And þis I did for ser Darius · his doȝtir me hiȝt, 2651
And cordid oñ þis condicȝon · to couple hire to wyfe,
And he went out of þe werd · to wilH all his regne,
To hew þi hede fra þi hals · & anys it him shewe."
þan callis oure kyng him his kniȝtis¹ · þaire consaile to
frayn,

"Quat saH be done him for þis dede?" · & þai bedene
sware, 2656

Sum, at he hangid suld be hiȝe · sum þe hede priued,
Sum bedis in a bale-fire · brin him to poudire.
"Quat has he fauted?" quod þe frek · "þof he him
forced haue

þe charges² of his chiftan · chefely to fiH? 2660
He þat him demes to þe dede · he dampnes him-selfe,
And diȝtis him his awen dome · & þat dare I proue.
For demed I any of my douth · ser darye to spiH, 2663
As ȝe þis gentiH man enioyne · suld him be iugid þen."

¹ The first i above the line.

² MS. chaungs, with stroke above z.

[Fol. 30.]

As he an atheH war of hys · b[e]hynd hym he stelez,
 A bryght brynnand brand · he brade owt of sheth,
 And þorow þe helme into þe heued · he hurt hym a
 lytyH. 2640

And þe knyghtes of þe coste · as þai þe case sawgh,
 þen fange þai þis ilke freke · & byfore þe kyng brynggez.
 “What now? my worthi werayour” · þe wale kyng
 sayd,

He wend þat witterly it were · a wee of hys awne, 2644
 “Why hase þou bryssyd so my brane · & with a swerd
 woundet

Your sekir seruand in same · aH wer I *sir* clepyd,
 AH wer I haldyn for hede · 3our helpar at nede?”
 “Nay, hope neuer¹,” quod þe atheH · “*sir* hegh Emperoure,

Me ony massydoñ to be · þou myssys of þi Awne, 2649
 Bot of þe crueH kynde · Comen of þe barbrys.

And þus I dyd, for *sir* Darius · hys doghter hyght me,
 And cordytt vnder þis condicion · to coupill hir to wyfe,
 And qwen he went of þis world · to weld all hys realme,
 To hewe þi hede from þi halse · & onys it hym shewe.”

Now kyng Alexander callys þen hys knyghtes · þair counsell
 to frayne,

“What suld be done hym for þis dede” · & þai bydome²
 sone, 2656

Some, þat he hanged suld be · & some þe hede pershed,³
 Some bydes in a bale-fyre · hym bryn aH to poudre.

“What hase he fautyd?” quod þe freke · “þof he hym
 forsyd hafe

The charge of hys chiftane · chefely to fylle? 2660

He þat hym demys to be dede · he dampnes hym-selueñ,
 And dytes hys awne dome · & þat dar I prefe.

For demyd I ony of my doghty · *sir* dary to spyH, 2663
 As he is⁴ genteH-man enjoyne · suld hym-self be iugged þeñ.”

¹ MS. nereuer.² Read beden.³ MS. prishyd.⁴ Read 3e this.

- He dismisses the Persian in peace. He *latiþ þe Persyn* in *pesse* · *pas* with his *hele*,
MekiH for his *mayn strenth* · & for his *miȝt prayesd*.
- Darius assembles his men, As sone as *Darye þe derfe* · of þis *dede heris*, 2667
þat he was¹ *sauyd vnslayne* · he *semblis* his *knyȝtis*,
Vp to a *miȝti montayne* · his *men þaire* he *schewis*,
And *gessis* him *wele þare* to *degrayd* · þe *grekis maistir*.
but takes to flight. þan *fandis* he *furth in-to þe filk* · & *fled als beline*,
And *Alexander with* his *ost* · him *asperly folowed* 2672
Riȝt to þe bu[r]ȝe of *Batran* · & *bildid þare* his *tentis*,
Mas him *glad*² with his *ginge* · & to his *godis ofirs*.
þe *cite þan* he *assailid* · & *sesid on þe morne*, 2675
Alexander takes Batran, and finds Darius' treasure, and his wife and children. With all þe *burȝes þare a-boute* · & *busked þare* his *sete*.
þare *fand* he *tresour vntak* · & als þe *trew spouse*
Of *ser Dary*, bath his *dame* · & *aH* his *dere childre*.
Now *dose* him *fra Darius* · a *dereworth prince*,
Aires to ser Alexander · *adoures* him *lawe*, 2680
A Persian prince says he has served Darius for naught, [Fol. 46 b.] "I haue *erdid with* *ȝoure enmy* · *ser emperoure*," he *said*,
"As *soiet serued* haue I *þat sire* · many *sere wyntir* ;
And all my *trauaill* I *tint* · for *tuke* I no *gudes*.
Bot *wald* it now *ȝour worthines* · to *wend with*
my-selfe, 2684
A ten *Mille* vs *take* · of *tulkis enarmed*,
and offers to deliver up Darius. I *sall ȝow hete* in *ȝoure hand* · to haue at *ȝoure wiH*
Sire Dary, with þe *mast dole* · of his *derfe erles*."
Alexander refuses. "Nay, *leue*, *lat ane*," *quod þe lord* · "þen *leue* I³ no
straungers, 2688
þat þou be *willi in þi witt* · to *werray þine awen*,
Ne *tell þou* me *noȝt þat tale* · I *trow noȝt þi wordis*."
Be þis *ser Dary* fro his *dukis* · *deuysid* his *pistiH* :
þe *kyng of kyngs* was *callid* · & *clere god bathe*, 2692
A letter. "Darius' satraps to their lord þus, *vndirstand* I, was þe *stile* · & *stiȝt in þare-estir* :⁴
"ȝour *satrapaires*, *ȝour seruand* · with *seruand obeschē* ;

¹ In the margin.² MS. *ginge glad*, with *ginge struck through*.³ MS. *leue þe* ; with *þe* altered to *I*. ⁴ or *estir*.

He lattes þe p^{er}sen in pes · pas with hys heyle,
 Mekyll for hys mayne¹ strenth · & for hys myght doys
 prayss.

Als sone as *sir* Dary þe derfe · of pis dede herys, 2667

þat he was saffed so vnslayne · he sembles hys kneghtez,
 Vp tyll a maghty² mountane · hys men þar he schewez,
 And gessys hym ȝitt degrad · þe grekyn maister. 2670

þen foundez he forth in-to þe feld · & fled als belyfe,
 And A[lexander] with hys hoste · hym asperly folows

Right to þe burgh of batran · & byggyd þar hys tentes, [Fol. 30 b.]

And makez hym glad with hys geng · & to hys goddez offers.

þe **Cyte þan** he assaylyd · & sesyd it vppon þe morne,
 With all þe burghes þar aboute · & buskett þar hys sete.³

þar fand *tresour*⁴ vntalde · & þe trew spouse 2677

O[f] *sir* Dary, both hys dame · & hys dere chelder.

Now doys hym on from Darius · a darworth prince,

Kayres hym to alexander · & adours hym lowe, 2680

“I haue erdyd with your enmite · *sir* emperour,” he sayd,

“As sugett seruyd þat syre · mony sere wynter ;

And all my travell I tynt · for tuke I no gudez.

Bot wald now your worthynes · to wende with my-
 seluen, 2684

And teñ thouusand vs take · of tulkez ennarmed,

I shall you hete hym in your hand · to haue at your wille

Sir Dary, witt þe most dele · of hys derfe Erles.”

“Na, leyfe, lett be,” quod þe lord · “þar leuyn þe no lede,

þat þou be willy in þi witte · to werre þine awne, 2689

Na tell þou me not þat tale · I trowe noght þi wordez.”

By pis *sir* Dary fro hys dukez · devyse[d] hath a pistyH :

The kyng of kynges he hym cald · & clere god both, 2692

þus, vnderstandyng I, was þe style · & styght in þar-after :

“Ȝour satrapers, your soueraynte · with seruise obeysshyng ;

¹ MS. maynte.

² So in MS.

³ MS. fete.

⁴ MS. turesour.

Sire, we haue wayued to 3ow writtis · 3it write we þe
same,

Alexander has
defeated us.

How þis maist^r of Messedone · has on oure marchis
entrid, 2696

Help us."

Brynd vp oure biggingis · brettet oure kniȝtis,
And we ouire-sett be to sare · to suffire any langire.
For-þi 3our dignite bydene · we drerily be-seke,
A-gayns þe force of oure faa · vs forthire a quile." 2700
Queñ he had red aȝ þe rawis · for rancour he swellis,
And out oñ-ane to Alexander · aȝ þus he writis.

A letter.
"Darius to
Alexander.

"I, Dary, with þe dignite · þe diademe of Persee,
Of aȝ þe kyng's þe kyng · þat corouned was euire, 2704
To þe, my seruand, I say · as me was sent late,

Thou likenest
thy lowness to
my height.

How þi lawnes & þi litillaike · þou lickyns to my hight.
Bot parde, þi providence · impossible it semes,

Thou lackest
wings.

A heuy As to be houyn · vp to þe sternes, 2708

A thing threuyñ is & thike · & þarnes þe wyngis,
And fautis þe fethirhames · & þe flizt-loomes.

Boast not.

For-þi þi mynd neu^r þe mare · lat mounte in-to pride
For chance of na cheualry · þat þou a-cheued hase. 2712

[Fol. 47.]

For vertu ne no victori · ne vant noȝt þi-selle;
He þat enhansis¹ him to heȝe · þe heldire he declynes.

I have heard of
thy kindness to
my kin.

I haue herd of þi hendlaike · of heraudis & of othire,
Of þi noblay now o newe time · a-nentes my modire.
Bathe to my wyfe & to my barnes · quat bounte þou
shewis, 2717

This will not
make me thy
friend.

Quat curtassy & kyndlaike · I ken alto-gedire.
Bot surely aȝ þe sesoñ · þat þou þam so pleses,
þou fangis me neuire to þi frynd · fyne quen þe likis.
And if þou wirke þaim all þe wa · & wrak at þou may,
þe mare vnfryndship þarfore · fall sall þe neuire;

Work them harm,
if thou wilt."

For-þi to put þam to pyne · I pray þe noȝt wande, 2723
For myñ angire on þine arrogance · saȝ at þe last kindiȝt."

· · · · ·

¹ MS. ens enhansis; with ens expuncted.

Sir, we haue send to you writtes · ȝitt writte we þe
same,

How þis maister oute of massidoynes · our marches hath
enteryd, 2696

Brynt vp our biggenges · bryttynd our kneghtes,
And we ouerset be so sore · to suffre ony lenger.
For whi your dignite bedene · we derely besekyn,
Ayayne þe force of our foes · vs furthers a while." 2700

When he had rekkend all þe rawes · for rankour he swellez,
And oute anone to A[lexander] · aȝ þus he writtez : *Epistola.*

"**I, Dary, with þe dignite** · þe dyademe of pers,
Of aȝ kyngez kyng · þat Crouned was euer, 2704

To þe, my seruand, I say · als me was sent late,
How þou¹ lownys in þi lityllake · þou likens to my hert.

Bot parde, þi prouydens² · impossible it semys,
A hevy asse to heff · on hye to þe sternes, 2708 [Fol. 31.]

A thyng þat thryffyn is and thyke · & þarnes³ wengez,
And fawtes bath þe fethirhames · & þe flyght-lomes.

For-þi mynd neuer þe more · to mounte þe to pryde
For chaunce of no chevallry · þat þou chefyd hase. 2712

For vertew ne victory · avaunte noght þi-selfe ;
He þat enhaunses hym to hygh · þe lawer he declines.

I haue herd ȝit of þi hynlake · at harhaldes & at oþer,
O[f] þi noblay nowe anew · anence my awyn modre. 2716

Both to my bird & my barnes · qwat bounte þou schewys,

What curtasy & hyndlake · I ken aȝ-to-geder.

Bot surly all þe seson · þou þaim so ples,
þou sonnges me neuer to þi frend · fyne if þou likez. 2720

þe more frendshiþ þarfore · fall shall þe neuer ;
For-þi put þaim to pyne · I pray þe nogh[t] wonnd, 2723

For my angre on þi arrogaunce · sall at þe last kyndyȝ ;
þarfor do þou þi best · god forbyd þou⁴ spare." 2724*

¹ *Read* þi. ² MS. *peruydens*. ³ MS. *þarnes*.

⁴ MS. *þan*, altered to þou.

A letter.
"Alexander to
Darius.

Quen he¹ hað lokid our þe lines · he lazes at his wordis,
And ditis agayn to *ser* Dary · þis dete þat folozes :

¶ "I, *Alexander*, þe eldest · & all myne ane
Of kyng Ph[ilip] & his fere · þat frely lady, 2728

Honourd Olimpades · þat anely me fosterd,
To þe kyng of Persy · þis *prolounge* I write :

The gods hate
vanity.

Sire, vanite & vayne-glori · & vices of pride
þa ere þe gaudis, as I gesse · þat all gods hatis, 2732

And ilka dedly douth · þai driffe þam to punesch,
þat has drizten of vnedlynnes · drazen þaim to name.

I apply this to
thee,

þis similitude to þi-selfe · I say all-to-gedire,
þat a-suris so in þi surquetry · & sesis neuire-mare 2736

who so boastest.

To bost ne to blasfeme · blyn will þou nouthire.

Thou upbraidest
me for shewing
kindness.

Bot for þi gold & þi gudis · a god þou þe makis,
þou vp-braydis me for þe beute · þat I þi blod schewid,

As to þi modire I mene · & to þi mery childir, 2740
þare mas þou þe to malicole · & meenes for litil.

[Fol. 47 b.]
I did it not to
please thee, but of
my own bounty.

I wrozt it nopire for þi will · ne for þi¹ wale threte.

If I kid þam curtassy · it come fra my-selfe,
Haly of oure awen hert · & of oure hynd thewis ; 2744

Ne we prid vs for na prouwis · predestayned we ere,
Oure gods gayn vs þare-to · þat gretly þou spises.

Let this letter be
the last."

Latt now þis *lettre* be þe last · & loke to þi-selfe, 2747
For sekire & on my surement · I seke² þow agayns."

þis brefe he bedis þam to bere · þat brozt him þe toþire,
And takis þam of his tresoure · & twynnes with þaim
faire. 2750

Alexander writes
to his princes.

Quen þai to Persy ware past · a pistill he enfourmes,
Wrate a writt of his wið · so sendis to his princes,
His *seruandis* & his seneschalls · out of sere rewmes,
And þus comandis he þam elene · þe kyng his stile.

The letter.

"Alexander

¶ "I, *Alexander*, þat as aire · avauanced is in greece,
þe soñ of Ph[ilip] þe fers · as I first talk, 2756
And als of Olimpades · myne honorable modire,

¹ Above the line.

² MS. se slk, blotted, and altered to seke in the margin.

When he lukyd ouer þe lynes · he smylls at hys wordes,
And dytes ayayn to *sir* Dary · þe deteys þat folows :

“**I, A[lexander]**, þe eldest · & aH my one Epistola.

Of kyng philip & hys fere · þat frelich lady, 2728

Honord Olympiades · þat only me fosterd,

To þe kyng owte of *persye* · þis *prolong* I writte :

Sir, vanye & vaneglory · & vicyes of pride

þes er þe gawdes, I ges · þat þees goddes hatez, 2732

And iche dedly do · þai dreffe þaim to ponysh,

þat hase dryghten of vndedlynys · drawyn þaim onone.

þis similitude of þi-self · I say aH-to-geder,

þat assurys so þi surquidry · & seses neuer more 2736

To bost & to blasfeme¹ · blyn wyll þou nowþer.

Bot for þi gold & þi gudez · a god þou þe makys,

þou vpbardez² me for þe bewte · þat I þi blude schewyd,

As to þi moder I mene · & to þi mery childer, 2740

þou makys þe to malycole · & menys þe for lityH.

[Fol. 31 b.]

I wroght it nowder for þi wille · ne for þi wale thoght.

Yff I kyd þaim ony *curtasy* · it Come of my-seluen,

Holy of owr awne hert · & of our hend thewys ; 2744

Na we pride vs for no prowes · *predestinate* vs here,

Our goddes gyffyn vs þar-to · þat grettly þou dispysys.

Latt nowe þis letter be last · & luke to þi-seluen,

For sekerly *withoute* surement · I seche þe agayns.” 2748

þis brefe he biddes þaim bere · þat broght hym þe toþer,

Takys þam of hys tresour · & twynnys *with* þaim faire.

When þai to *persye* was past · a pistyll he enformes,

Wrote a writte of hys wille · & wafed to hys Princez,

Hys *seruandes* & hys senescals · oute of sere landes, 2753

And þus Comandes he þaim clene · þe kyng in hys style.

“**I, A[lexander]**, þat as heyr · *avaunsyd* am in grece,

þe son of philipp þe fers · as I first told, 2756

And also of Olympades · my honorable lady,

¹ *Read* blasfeme.

² *Read* vpl radez.

to his princes, þus send I to my satraparis · my princes & my dukes,
 peers, My pers out of ¹ siphagoyne · salutis & grace,
 earls, Of þe sele of Surry · my seggis & myñ erles, 2760
 knights, and lords. My kniȝtis out of Capados · & all my kiel lordis,
 þe ledis out of Landace · & all þe landis out-by.
 I comand ȝow oñ þe clere faithe · þat ȝe my croune aȝe,
 þat belyue to Alysaunder · þat is myñ awen cite, 2764
 þat ilkane of ȝow send be your-selfe · of sere slayñ bestis,
 Of fresch & of fyne wroȝt · fellis a thousand,
 Sum grayne to be nepire gloues · graythid to my kniȝtis,
 and send the furs Sum pureȝ pelloure depurid · to put in ourȝ wedis, 2768
 on to the Euphrates on camels." Lat kest þam apoñ camels · þat in þat kith lengis,
 And aires with þaim to Eufraten · þis erand haues in
 mynd."

[Fol. 48.] þan was a mañ, as me mynes · in þe morne-qwile,
 Was of ser Daris a duke · þe derfe Emperoure, 2772
 Nostanda, a duke Ane þat Nostanda was named · & a noble prince,
 of Darius, writes. þat certified his souerane · þer saȝes in a pistil:
 ¶ "Sire Dari, duke of ilk a douth · & driȝten þi-selfe,
 þe grete glorius god · graythid in þi² trone, 2776
 Nostanday, to ȝour nobilnes · þat ay my nek bowis,
 "Nostanda to his lord. With seruage to ȝour senurie · my-selfe I comand.
 It semed noȝt ȝoure seruand · sire, vndistreynd
 Vn-to ȝour mekill maieste · þis mater to write, 2780
 It grieues me to Bot I am depely distressid · þis dede for to wirke,
 write. And made þis myscheffe to myñ · malegrefe my chekis.
 For wete it wele ȝour worthines · þat of our wale³ princes
 Two of our chief Twa of þe tethiest ere tint · & termynd of lyue, 2784
 princes have þat lost was now þe last day · a litiȝ fra Tygre,
 perished in battle. In batail apoñ bent filȝ · in-bland with þe grekis.
 þare was I gird to þe gronȝ · & greuously woundidȝ,
 I scarce escaped. Vnnethe it cheuyd me þat chance⁴ · to chape to þe flit⁵;
 And opire many of oure meñ · miȝtful kniȝtis, 2789

¹ MS. oft.² 'þi' blotted in MS.³ faes crossed through.⁴ MS. can chance; can struck out.⁵ MS. flit.

þus send I to my satrapars · salutez of grace,
 My peres oute of prynphagoyne · my princez & my dukez,
 Of þe seneour of surry · my seggez & my erlez, 2760
 My knytes oute of Capadoce · & all my kyd Lordez,
 The ledes oute of Landace · & all þe Landes vmbe.
 I command you on þe Clere fayth · þat 3e my crowne awe,
 þat als belyfe to alexaunder · vnto my awne Cyte, 2764
 Ilk one send be þaim-self · of sere slayn bestes,
 Off fresh & of fyne slayn · fellys a thouousand,
 Some grayne to be grathyd · to my bernez byhofe,
 Some puryd pelour & depuryd · to put in our wedes, 2768
 And cast þaim vppon camels · þat in þat kyth lenges,
 And karys with þaim to eufraten · þis erand haue in
 mynd."

þe[n] was a man, as me of menyis · in þe morne-while,
 Was of *sir* Daryus a duke · þe derf emperoure, 2772
 One þat Nostandy was namyd · a noble Prince, [Fol. 32.]
 þat certyfyed hys souerente · þees sawez in a pistill :

"**Syre**¹ Dary, duke of iche douth² · drightyn þi-selueñ, *Epistola*.
 The grete glorius god · grathyd in þi trone, 2776
 Nostandy, to your nobelnes · & ay my neke bowe,
 With seruage to your senyoury · my-seluen I Comaund.
 It semyd not your seruand · [syre], vndistreynd
 Vnto your mekyll mageste · þees materys to writte, 2780
 Bot I am depely distryssyd · þis dede for to wirke,
 And made þis mischeff to mene · mawgre³ my chekez.
 For wete it wele 3our worthynes · þat of our wale princez
 Two of þe tithiest er tynt · & termyd of lyfe, 2784
 þat lost wer nowe þe last day · a lityll fro tygre,
 In batell on bent feld · in-bland with þe grekez.
 þar was I girde to þe ground · & greuously woundit,
 Vnneth me chefyd in þat chaunce · to chape to þe flyght;
 And oþer mony of owr men · mightfuH knyghtes, 2789

¹ The e is above the line in MS.

² MS. Syre duke of a Dary iche douth; with a above the line.

³ MS. mawgra.

And erlis of all *3our* empire¹ · enterely deuydid,
3oure lore & *3our* legaunce · lethirly forsaken,²
Aires *paim* to *ser Alexander* · & on-ane *3eldis*. 2792

Alexander
 receives the men
 who forsake you."

And he *paim* faire vndirfange · enfeffid *paim* belyue,
 In palais, in prouince · in principall regnes."

A letter.

þen to Nostanda oñ next · *þus* notis he a lettir, 2795
þat he suld semple him a sowme · & set *paim* agaynes.

"Porus, king of
 India, to Darius.
 [Fol. 48 b.]

Anothire pistill lete he pas · to Porrus of ynde,
 To come & helpe with his here · & he³ him *þus* swaris :

¶ "I, Porrus, *þat* possessid am · *þe* partyse of yynde,
 And am *þe* coron be kynd⁴ · of elene aH *þat* Iles, 2800

Sire Dary, with *þi* dyademe · drest oñ *þi* trone,
 To *þe*³ *þat* salutis I send · *þe* sele of myñ armes.

þou prayes vn-to my person · my powere to semple,
 And *3ow* enforce with my folke · *3our* faes to withstand;

I am ready to
 serve you.

And I am bouñ at *3our* bode · & buxsoñ was euire,
 To heze & to help *3our* hest · quen I my hele lastis.

But I am now
 sick.

Bot now a langour me lettis · *þat* I last haue,
 Slike a seknes for-sothe · is oñ my-selfe haldeñ, 2808

þat I ne may streyne me ne stere · for stondis so hard,
 Bot lyse in langwysches & lokis · queñ my lyfe⁴ endis.

And as warysche I my warke · *þat* I am in wondeñ,

I am sorry for
 you.

As me is wa for *þi* woze · & *þi* wrange bathe, 2812

I may nozt ryde *3ow* to reschow · my reuthe is *þe* mare.

I shall soon
 recover,

Bot I sall leue & be lechid · for-*þi* be lizt-hertid ;

And I be couird of my coth · care for na grekis, 2815

Amay *þe* for na Messedoynes · ne meñ vndire heuen ;

and will then
 help you."

For I sall hele aH in hast · & hale to *3oure* kythis

With ten legions at *þe* last · & aH of lele knyztis."

Rodogars,
 mother of
 Darius, writes.

Be *þis* Rodogars *þe* riche · *þat* renewid lady,

þe dere dame of Dari · of *þis* dede heris, 2820

þat hire awen child with Alexander · amed eft to fezt,

And sorowis selcuthly sare · & sendis him a pistill ;

¹ MS. *emperire*.

² MS. *saken* forsaken ; *with* *saken* struck out.

³ *In the margin*.

⁴ MS. *lese*, corrected to *lyfe*.

And erls of our empire · enterely distroed,
þat oþer your legeance · lethirly forsakyn,
 Karyn þaim to *sir* A[lexander] · & onone *ʒelden*. 2792
 And he þaim fair *vnderfongez* · & *feffys* þaim in Landes,
 In palacys, in *prouynce* · & principall regnes.”

Then to Nostady on next · notez he a letter, Epistola.

þat he suld seemle hym a sowme · & sett þam agayns.
 A-*noper* pistell lete he passe · to porrus of Inde, 2797
 To Come & help with hys heer · & he hym þus aunswers :
 “**I, Porrus**, *þat* possessyd am · þe partyes of Inde,
 And am þe crowne by kend · clene of all þe yles, 2800
 Sir Dary, with þi diademe · dressyd in þi trone,
 To þe with salutes I send · þe scalle of my Armez.
 You pray vnto my person · my power to assemble,
 And you enforce with my folke · *ʒour* foes to withstond ;
 I am bowne at þi bode · & buxme was euer, 2805
 To hye & to helpe at *ʒour* hest · whils my hele Lastes. [Fol. 32 b.]
 Bott nowe a langor me lettes · *þat* I laght haue,
 2808

þat I may strenge me ne stirre · for stoundes *þat* I haue,
 Bott lyse & lukes langt · when my lyfe endes.
 And as euer I warysh of werk · *þat* I am woundit in,
 As me es wo for þi wogh · & þi wrange both, 2812
 I may not ryde you to rescue · þe reuth is þe more.
 Bott I shall lefe & be lightyd · þarfore be ʒe light ;
 And be I couered of my cothe · kare for no grekys,
 Remefe you for no massydons · ne man vpon erth ; 2816
 For I sall hele all in hast · & hye to your kythez
 With teñ legions at þe lest · & all of lele knyghtes.”
 Be *þat* Rodogors þe ryche · þe reuerent Lady,
 The dere dame of Dary · of þis dede herys, 2820
þat hir Awne Childe with A[lexander] · etlyd ʒitte to fight,
 And sorows selkouthly sore · & sendes hym a pistyH ;

"To king Darius,
my son, greeting.

¶ "To kyng¹ dary² þe derfe · þe derrest of my childre,
Rodogoras þe riche quene" · þis rauth scho him writis :
"Bald baratour on bent · borne of my bosom, 2825
Here send I þe, my swete · salutis & ioy.

þou has heuyd vp þi huge ost · as I haue herd teH,
Samed all þi saudiours · & semblid þi pupiH, 2828
And etils to *ser Alexander* · eft to assaiH.

[Fol. 49.]

Though thou
shouldst gather
all men against
Alexander, it
were in vain.

Wete þou wele it is nozt worthe · ware þe be tyme ;
For had þou gedird all þe gomes · I gesse, of þe werH,
3it to with-stand him a stonde · þi strenthe ware to littiH.
For godis prouidence apert · ay prestly him helpis, 2833
Saus & sustenes him-selfe · & socurs him euire.

For-þi hoo with þi hautes · & þine vnhemed wittis,
A-vaile of þi vanite · & of þi vayne pride, 2836
Obey þe to þe baratour · þe best I coñ rede ;

Submit to him.

Magnifie him with þi mouthe · & meke þi hert,
For any hathill vndire heuen · þat at he ne hade may,
Mare sekire it ware him to forsake · þen sewe any
forthire ; 2840

It will be better
to do so."

In pese & in pacience · possede at he mizt,
[þan] Be excludit out of his erd · & euire-mare dueH."

Darius weeps.

Quen he þis rawis had rede · he rewfully wepid,
His eldirs & his ancestris · als he remembris ; 2844
þo3t how pride þaim depriued : · & here a passe ende.

Duodecimus passus Alexandri.

Alexander goes to
Susa.

þen aires him on *ser Alexander* · furth with his
princes,

To þe cite-ward of Susys · him-selfe he aproches.
þare-in *ser Darius* duellid · with his derfe ostis, 2848
So neze he come to þa cliffis · he kend ouire þe cite.

He bids his men
cut branches

With þat comaunds he he[s] kniztis · to cutt dounce
belyue

¹ MS. kynd, corrected to kyng.

² MS. I dary.

"To kyng Dary þe derf · þe derrest of hir childer,
Rodogors þe riche whene" · þus rathe scho hym writtes :

"Bald baratour on bent · berne of my-seluen, 2825

Here send I þe, my swete · salutes of Ioy.

þou hase hefyd vpp þi hoge hoste · as I haue late herl,
Sammyd all þi sougeours · & semblyd þi peple, 2828

And ettlys þe *sir Alexander* · efte to assayle.

Bott wete þou wele it is not worth · & were ye be tyme ;
For hed þou gedderyd all þe gomez · I gesse, in þe werld,
To withstond hym a stoure · þi strenth wer to lityh. 2832

For goddes prouydence a-pert · ay prestly hym helpys,
Saffys & socours hym-self · & sustayns hym euer.

For-þi hoo *with* þi hatness · & þi vn-hemmyd wittes,
Auale of þi vanyte · & of þi vayn pride, 2836

Obey ye to þis baratour · þe best I can rede ;

Magnyfy hym *with* þi mouth · & mekyn þi hert,

For ony hatell vnder heuen · for power þai haue may, [Fol. 33.]

More sekir þai wer to forsake · & sewe ony forþer ; 2840

In pease & in pacience · possede þat he myght,
þen be exclud oute of hys erth · & neuer in ease dweh."
Sir Dary for þoo dytez · was deply diseassyd ; 2842 *
When he þoo rawez had redde · rewfully he wepys,
Hys alders & hys auncesters · als he remenbrys ; 2844
Thocht how pride þaim depriffyd · & here a passe endes.

Duodecimus¹ Passus A[lexandri.]

Fast^t kayrez hym on *sir A[lexander]* · *with* hys athell
princez,

To þe cyte-ward of susys · hym-self he aproched.
þar as *sir Dary* in dwellyd · *with* hys derfe hostes, 2848

So negh he Come þe clyffe · he kend ouer þe cyte.

With þat he *Commandes* hys knytes · to cutte downe
be-lyffe 2850

¹ MS. Vndecimus.

of trees, and
fasten them to
their horses.

Bowis of buskis & of braunches · of bolis & of lindes,
And bynde to þaire hors feete · of bobis of herbis, 2852
Bath to Meeris & to mulis · & all maner of bestis.

The Persians are
astonished.

þe popiþ out of Persy · þat slike a pake saze,
Beheld oñ he to þe hillis · & heterly was stroub[li]d;
þai ware so woundird of þat werke · & wetirly it
semed 2856

[Fol. 49 b.]

As all þe grond & þe greues · had glid þaim agayns.

So neze þe cite he sozt · & sett vp his tentis,
þat thre days to þat thede · him tharne & na mare.

He challenges
Darius.

Said: "let ane dryue to¹ Dary · & bede him dryffe sone,
Or put him to my powere · & plede we na langire."

That night he
sees his god
Ammon in a
dream, who says,

þe same nigt in his slepe · him soda[n]ly a-perid 2862
Amon, his awen god · in aung[e]ls wyse,

In a mery mantiþ · of mervailous hewis,
Meuand as a Messedone² · in Marcure fourme; 2865

"Send no
messenger,
but go thyself."

Said: "vn-to Susys my soñ · na sandisman þou send,
Bot fange my fygour to þe fast · & fand furth þi-selfe,
Clethe þe with my conyschaunce · & for na care drede,
I hete þe haly my help · na harme saþ þou suffire."

Alexander rises,

þan slade he slygly a-way · & he fra slepe ryse,
A breme blasand blis · in his brist rysys. 2871

and determines
to go.

He knew his kniȝt's þat cas · & þai him elene redd,

þat he³ suld graythe him to ga² · as him his god chargis.
þan callis to him þis conquirour · ane of his kid prince[s],

He makes one of
his princes go
with him.

Emynelaus, þat his erlis · & his ost³ ledes, 2875

Hend & hardy of his hand · a huge man of strenthe,

And þare-to lede lelist to his lord · leuand of lyue.

He bad him bouñ him belyue · & oñ a blonk worth,

Anopire foole with him fange · & founde with himselfe.

Strad vp him-selfe on a stede · in starand wedis, 2880

The pair ride to
the flood of
Grantoun,

And on a cursoure þe kniȝt · with⁴ a colt folozes.

To þe grete flode of Grantoun · to-gedire þai ride,

which is frozen.

þai fand it forsen þaim be-fore · a fote-thike yse. 2883

¹ MS. & to; with & subpuncted.

² MS. Messedono.

³ In the margin. ⁴ MS. on with; on being struck through.

þe bowes & þe bobbez & braunches · of bulesse & of lyndez,
And bynd vnto þair blonnkez fete · of buskez & erbes,
Both to merys & to mulez · & all maner of bestes.

The peple oute of persye · þat suche a pake sogheñ, 2854
Byheld on high to þe hyllez · & hetterly wer stourbed;
þai wer son wondderytt of þat werke · þat witterly þam
semyd

As aȝ þe ground & þe gravez · had gane þaim ayayns.
So negh þe Cyte he þame soght · & sett vp hys tentes,
þat thre days to þat thede · he tharnyd & no more. 2859
Sayd: "latt on dryfe to sir Dary · latt drysse hym to feght,
Or put hym to my power · & plete we no lenger."

þe same nyght in hys slepe · to hym sodanly aperyd 2862
Amoyn, hys awne god · in angels wyse,
In A mery mantyll · of mervalous hewys,
Meuand as a massydoñ · in mercurius forme;

¶ Nota
sompnium
Alexandri.

And sayd: "vnto Susys · no Sondesman þou wafe, 2866
Bott fonge þi figour to þe fast · & fonde furth þi-selueñ,
Cleth þe with my Conysaunce · & for no care dred,
I hete þe holy my help · no harme sall þou hynte."

þe[n] slode he slyghtly away · when he fra slepe rysys, 2871
A breme blasand blysse · in hys hert kyndels.

[Fol. 32 b.]

Be-knewe hys knyghtes of hys case · & þai hym clene redyñ,
þat he shuld grath hym to go · as hys god chargyd.

þen callys to hym þe conquerour · one of hys kyd princez,
Emenylaus, þat hys Erlez · & hys hoste ledes, 2875

Hende & hardy of hys hand · & hoge man of strenth,
And parto lelyst to hys lord · of aȝ ledes oute.

He bad hym bowne hym belyfe · & on a blonke worth,
Anoper fole with hym fange · & found with hym-selfe. 2879

Strode hym-self vp on a stede · in a starand wede,
And on a cou[r]sour þe knyght · with a colt folowd.

To þe grete flode of gratun · to-geder þai ryddyñ, 2882
And fyndyn it frosyn þaim byfore · a fute-tyke ysyd.

Alexander crosses
it alone.

[Fol. 50.]

He bids his
friend wait for
him.

This river
always froze
at night,
even in summer,

and melted at
morn,
and then could
not be crossed.

The Persians
wonder.

Darius asks who
he is,

and thinks it
must be Alex-
ander himself,

þat is þe streme of Strama · with many steds clepid,
And 3it þe pure propure name · in pereynne tonge.
þan Alexander belyue · his wedes he changis, 2886
þis renke with his Ronsees · he ridis ouire & leuys.
“A! lat me lend with 3ow, lord” · þe lede¹ him besekis,
“For drede þat angire or a-ventour · or any slike faH.”
“Nay, houe þou here,” quod þe kyng · “vn-to my
hame-come. 2890
He þat I saw in my slepe · saH be my sekire helpe.”
With þat he braides oñ þe blonke · & broches him in
þe syd,
Bowis him to-ward þe burȝe · as briȝt as ane aungeH.
¶ Þis reuere at I first rede · be rewle of his kynde,
As wele in sesoñ of Somere · as in þe sad wintre, 2895
And þat is neuer bot oñ niȝtis · so naytely it fresys,
TiH any powere to pas · or preke oñ with stedis.
3it has þe floum, as I fynd² · a forelange obrede, 2898
And euire-ilke mornynȝ it meltis · for miȝt of þe soñ;
With slike a reryd þan it rynnes² · þe romance it witnes,
þat qua so take it in þat tyme · tint ware for euire.
Be þis enproched him oure prince · vn-to þe proude cite,
Band his blonke at a barrere · with-out þe burȝe ȝatis.
þe Persyns of his passag · was passyngly wondird, 2904
And gesses him to be gode · for glori of his wedis.
“Quat dones man ert þou?” quod Dary · & drafe him
agayne.
“Sire Alexander,” quod þis athiH · “has all þus me sent,
Bedis buske þe to bateH · quat bade makis þou here?
Outhire ȝare þe ȝapely þar-to · or tiH his ȝokke bowe.”
“Qwepire þu be he?” quod þe hathiH · “so hately þou
spekis, 2910
þou melis noȝt as a minister · a messangere bowis;
þou carpis euyn as a³ kyng · þat closid ware in pride.
Bot I am dred neuire a dele · of all þi bald saȝes. 2913

¹ MS. bede.

² MS. remes, corrected to rynnes.

³ In the margin.

Thys is þe streme of Struma · with mony stedes clepyd,
And ȝit pure propre name · in persyens tounge.

Then A[lexander] als belyfe · hys abytt chaungez, 2886

Thys renke with hys rounsey · he rydes ouer & lefys.

“Na! latt me lend with þe, lord” · þe lede hym bysekys,

“Lest anger or aventur · or ony suche falle.”

“Nay hofe þou here,” quod þe athyll · “vnto my agayn-

Come;

2890

He þat I seght in my slepe · shall me sekir helpe.”

With þat he brades on hys blonnke · & brochez hym in þe
sydes,

Bowys hym on toward þe burgh · als bright as an angeH.

Thys reuer þat I first rede of · be rewle of hys kynde,

Als wele in seasun of somer · as in þe sad wynter, 2895

And þat is neuer bott of nyghtys · so nataly it fresys,

To ony power on to passe · or preke with a stede.

ȝit hase þe flode, as I fynd · a furelenth of brede, 2898

And euerilke mornyng it meltes · for myght of þe soñ;

With suche a rerde þen it rynnys · þe Romayns it wittnes,

þat who tuke it in þat tyme · war termyd for euer. 2901

Be þis aprochyd hym þe Prince · vnto þe proude Cite,

*Nota
naturam
aque de
struma.*

[Fol. 34.]

band hys blonnke at a barre · withoute þe brode ȝatez.

The persyens of hys passage · wer passandly wounderyd,

And gessyn hym all to be god · for glory of hys gere.

“What domesman art þou?” quod Dary · & drofe hym

ayayns.

2906

“Sir A[lexander],” quod þis athell · “hase all þus me send,

Byddes þe to batell buske · what bode mase þou here?

Ouder ȝare þe ȝapely þarto · or to his ȝokke bowe.”

“Wheder þou be he?” þe hathell sayd, · “so hetterly þou

spekez,

2910

þou melles noght as a messenger · a mynyster bowez;

þou Carpys likar to A kyng · þat Closyd wer in pride.

Bot I am dred neuer a dele · of all þi derfe sawez, 2913

- Bot for þi souerayne sake · þat sent þe þus hedire,
 3it sall þou sit *with* my-selfe · & soupe or þou wynde.”
 He razt him þan be þe arme · & reuerence¹ him makis,
 And to his palais a-pert · *with* princes him ledis,
 þare aires him in *ser Alexander* · & aH þus he thinkis,
 “þis ilke bar-bryn berne · grete beute me schewys, 2919
 [Fol. 50 b.] þat here þus hyndly be þe hand · ledis to his Innes;
 þis hame *with* help of my god · I haue saH he[r]-
 eftir.”
- Alexander goes to So silis he furth *with* þe sire · in-to a somere-haH, 2922
 sup with Darius. þare sesonde was a soper · þe sotelest vndire heuen.
 Sire Darius drawis to þe dese · & opir dere princes,
 Settis þis sire *with* him-selfe · lete serue þaim to-gedire.
 The hall was all þat bild was aH of brynt gold · as þe buke tellis, 2926
 made of gold. *With* þe bath, þe bordis & þe benkes · beten of þat ilke.
 þe wesseH to vyse on · was verraly þe same,
 And aH þe sale of a² sute · set fuH of stanes.
- The Persians þe popiH of *Persy* · opon þis prince waitis, 2930
 think Alexander þe litillaike of his like · lathely þat þai spyse;
 a mean-looking man. Bot þe wisdom & þe worthenes · & of þe wale thewis
 þat in þat cors was enclosed · kend þai fuH litiH.
 Butlers fuH besyly · brozt vp þe wyne,
 In grete gobletis of gold · graythid fuH of zymmes;
- When Alexander And *Alexander* belyue · as he³ had ay dronkeñ, 2936
 drinks, he secretes With þat he clekis vp þe coupe · & putis in his bosom.
 the gold cup; Anopire boH was him brozt · & bathe he deuoydid,
 this he does thrice. And 3it he threw to þe thrid · & thrust in þare-efter.
 Sone as þe⁴ clientis þat knew · at of þe coupe serued,
 þai knele down before þe kyng · & him þe cas tald.
 þan has *ser Dary* dedeyne · & derfely he lokes, 2942
 Rysys him vp renysch · & rezt in his sete,
 Darius reproves “Quat faris þou *with*,” *quod* he, “frynde? · a foñ þe
 him. besemes;
 Quay voydis þou my vesseH? · it is a vile schame.”

¹ MS. reuerence.² MS. same a; *with* same struck through.³ In the margin.⁴ MS. as a þe.

3itt for þi souerand sake · þat send þe þus hyder, 2914
þou shall sitt *with* my-self · & soupe or þou wende."

He raght hym by þe right harme · & reuerens hym makys,
And to hys palays full pert · *with* princez hym ledes,
þar kayres hym on Sir A[lexander] · & all þus he thynkez,
"þus ilke barberen berne · grete bewte me schewez, 2919
þat here þus hyndly be hand · hase lede me to Innes;
Thys home¹ *with* helpe of my goddez · I hafe sall her-
after."

So sylez forth *with* þis Sire · into a somer-halle, 2922
Thar sesund was a soper · þe sotellest vnder heuen.

Sir Darius drawys to þe deyse · & oper dere princez,
Settes þis sire *with* hym-selfe · lete *serue* þaim to-geder.
þat belde was all of brynt gold · as þe buke tellys, 2926
With both þe burdez & þe benche · betyn of þe same.

The vessell to vyse on · *veraly* of þe same,
And all þe sale of a sute · sett full of Stanes.
The peple oute of *persey* · apon þe prince waytyñ, 2930
þe lityllayke of hys lyth · lothly þai spysyñ;

Bot þe wysdome & þe worthines · of hys wale thewez
þat in þat cors was closyd · knew þai full lytyñ.
Botlers full besely · broght vp þe wynez, 2934

In grete goblettes of gold · grathyd fulle of gemmys; [Fol. 34 b.]
And A[lexander] als belyfe · as he hed onys drunkyñ,
With þat he clyght vp a cupe · & cromys in hys bosom.

Anoper boll was hym broght · & both he devoydede,² 2938
And 3itt he threwe³ to þe thryde · & thristyn þar-after.

Sone as þe clyentez it knew · þat of þe cope *serued*,
þai knele downe bfore þe kyng · & hym þe case taldyñ.
þen hase *sir* Dary disdayne · & darfly he lukes, 2942
Rerys hym vpp & remevys · in hys sete riche,
"What farys *with*," quod he, "frende? · a fonne þou be-
semys;

Whi woyses þou my veseall? · it is a vyle schame."

¹ MS. holme; but marked for correction.

² MS. dovoydede. ³ The h is above the line in MS

Alexander says
it is the custom
of Macedonia to
do so.

“Sire, it is þe custum,” *quod* þe kniȝt · “in oure kyngis
fest, 2946

[Fol. 51.]

þat, be it ane, be it oþire · þat þai of drinke,
þe gestis sall haue þe goblettis · & þaim gud þinke,
To wild & wende *with* a-way · & wirke quat þaim likes ;
Bot sen þis vse is here vn-honourable · here I þam
leue ;”

Some of them
praise
Alexander.

Braidis þaim furth *withouten* bade · þe butlers þaim
yeldis. 2951

One Anepo takes
note of him,

“Now sothely,” *quod* þam ilk a segge · softly to-gedire,
“þis maner at he melis of · is menskefuȝ & noble.”
þan was þare ane proude pere · a prince at þe table,
Anepo, þat oñ Alexander · aȝ-way be-haldis,
þan mynes him anes in Messedone · he had þe man
sene, 2956

and remembers
that he has seen
him before.

Quen he was sent to his syre · to feche þaire trouage.
His vertuse & his vysage · his voise he remenbris,
His fourme & his fetoure¹ · his figoure a-vysis,
He studis & he stuynes · he stemes *with-in*, 2960
“Is þis noȝt Philip soñ þe firs · þe fedare of grece ?”

He leaves his
seat,
and tells Darius.

With þat he sleȝly vp soȝt · & his sete leuys,
Droȝe him euyñ to *ser* Dary · þare he oñ dese bydis,
Said, “surely, *ser*, þis sandisman · þat sittis ȝow be-forne
Is Alexander him awen self · or aȝ myñ ame faillis.”

Alexander
perceives his
danger,

seizes a torch,

Sone þis gouernour of grece · is of þis gaude ware,
He torkans *with* & vndire-tuke · he touched of him-selfe,
Herd a nyngkiling of his name · & naytis him to ryse,
Buskis him vp at a braide · & fra þe burde rysys. 2969
He tas a torche fra a tulke · þat by þe table standis,
Felly fangis it in² his fist · & to his fole wyndis,
Fyndis him faire him before · þare he him feste hade,
Raȝt him radly þe reyne · & oñ his rige worthis. 2973
With þat he brochis his blonke · þat þe blode fames,
Sparis out spacyl · as sparke out of gledes.

mounts his
horse,

¹ MS. fetoure.

² MS. 1 in ; the 1 being an imperfect h, due to his following.

"Sir, it is our costome," quod þe knyht · "in our kynges
fest, 2946

þat, be it one, be it oþer · þat þai of drynkyn,
The gestes sall haue þe goblettez · & þai gude thynke,
To wyld & wynd away · & werke what þaim likez; 2949
Bot sen þe vse is here vn-honorable · here I þam lefe; "

Brades þam forth with-owtyn bode · þe butler þaim
zeldes.

"Nowe, sir," quod euerilke segge · softly to oþer,
"þis maner þat he mellys of · is menskefull & noble."
Then was þar one, a prouude · prince at þe tabyll, 2954
Anepo, þat on *Alexander* · alway byholdes,
þen menys onys in massydoñ · he had þe man knawyn,

When he was sent be hys sire · to sese þair truage.
Hys vertuez & hys visage · hys voyce he remenbris, 2958
Hys forme & hys facioñ · hys fygure he visys,
He stodes & he staddes with · & stempmys hym within,
"Es noght þis philyp son þe fers · fennder¹ of grece?"
With þat he shyllghly vp slayde · & hys sete left, 2962
Droght hym euen to *sir* Dary · þar he on deyse bydes,
"þat surely *sir*, þis sondesmañ · þat sittes yow aforne
Is A[lexander] hym-self · or all my ame falys."
Sone as þis gouernour of grece · apon þis gaud² wates,
He torkys with & vndertuke · it tochyd of hym-self, 2967
Harde a nyckyng³ of hys name · & natys hym to ryse,
Buskys hym vp at brade · & fro þe borde voydes.
He takys a torche fro a tulke · þat be þe burde standes,
Felly fange it in hys fyst · & to hys fole wendes, 2971
Fyndes hym faire hym bifore · þar as he hym fest had,
Raght hym radly þe reyne · & on hys rigge ascendes.
With þat he brochez hys blonnke · þat þe blode folows,
Sparrys oute sarply³ · as⁴ sparke doys on gledes. 2975

[Fol. 35.]

¹ MS. founder, *altered to fennder.* ² MS. gauyd.³ *Sic*; for spacyly.⁴ MS. &.

- and rides away. Be þe lizt at he led · laches he þe way, 2976
 And fandis fast to þe flizt · with a fers wiH.
 þe pepiH of þe palais · quen þai his passe saze,
 All rush after him. Rusches vp in a res · rynnnes in-to chambres,
 [Fol. 51 b.] Sum araies þaim in ringis · & sum in row brenys,
 2980*
 With hard hattis on þaire hedis · hied to þaire horsis,
 Prekis eftir þe prince · prestly enarmed.¹
 Night comes. Bot now was nizt on þam nezeH · þat noyd þaim sare.
 Many lose their way. Sone ware þai willid fra þe way · þe wod was so thiKe,
 Sum on buzes & on brerys · blemysched þe face, 2985
 Sum ware dreuyn down in dikis · sum in depe myrs;
 Alexander escapes. Bot Alexander at myn ame · þaire aze is a-schapid,
 Ay trottis him to þe trod-gate · as him þe torche wyssis.
 Darius mourns at home. Sire Dary as a drery man · duellis² at hame, 2989
 With princes in his palais · aH pense he sittis.
 þe baldnes of þis baratour · he besyly remembris,
 þat skapid so sone skatheles · fra all his schathill dukis.
 There was an image of Xernes, þaH was aH ymage within · as I am enfourmede, 2993
 Of Sexeres þat sum-quyle · þat cite had to welde,³
 Forgid aH of fyne gold · & fettidH his seete
 Vndire þe souerayne sege · þare sett ere þe lawis. 2996
 And sodanly þat semylacre · as tellis þe textis,
 which suddenly fell to pieces. It all to-paschis in-to peeces · & to poudire dryuys.
 þan was þe wale kyng waa · & wepand he saik:
 This is a bad omen. "þis be-takens trombling of my tild · & tene of⁴ my
 regne." 3000
 Alexander rides to the river, and crosses the ice. And Alexander all þat quile · asperly rydis
 To þe grete flode of Granton · & it on a glace fyndis.
 Or he was sozt to þe side · 3it sondird þe qweryns, 3003
 His hors it hunyschist for euire · & he with hard
 schapid.
 He returns safely. þaH aires he with Emynelows · euen to his princes,
 And derfly on þe topir day · a douth he assembles,

¹ MS. enr enarmed: *with enr struck through*.² *The e above the line.* ³ MS. 3 welde. ⁴ *In the margin.*

By þe light þat he hed · lacchys on hys way,
 And fonndez fast to flyght · with a fers wille.
 The peple of þe palays · when þai hym passe sigh, 2978
 þai russhyn vp in a reys · rynnyn into chaumbres,
 Some arays þaim in rynggez · some in rawe brenys,
 Some in stalwart stuffe · & some in stele plates 2980*
 With hard hattes on þair heddez · hyen to þair blonnkez,
 Prikkyn after þe prince · prestly enarmed. 2982
 Bot þen was nyght on þaim negh · þat noyed þaim sore.
 Sone wer þai welt fro þaire way · þe wod was so thykke,
 Some of bowez & of breres · blemyst þe face,
 Some wer drefyn into dykez · some depe mires ; 2986
 Bot A[lexander] at my ayme · þar augerly eschapys,
 And ay trotes on þe troyde-gate · als hym þe torche vysys.
 Sir Dary as a dreery man · dwelland in hys trone,
 With princez in hys palays · aH pensey he sittes, 2990
 The baldnes of þis baratour · he belyfe remenbris,
 þat scapett so sone schatheles · fro all hys schateH dukez.
 þen was ane ymage within · as I am enformed,
 Off serexies þat some-while · þe Cyte hed to weld, 2994
 Forgyd all of fyne gold · & feteld in hys sete,¹
 And vnder þat souerent segge · y-sett war þair lawez.
 And sodanly þat symylacre · as says me þe text,
 AH to-paschys into peces · & into powder dryfez. 2998
 þen was þe wale kyng woo · & wepand he sayd :
 “þis betokyns trublyng of my teld · & tene to my [Fol. 35 v.]
 realme.”
 And A[lexander] þe while · asperly rydes
 To þe grete flude of grantum · & it as glas fyndes. 3002
 And be he soght to þe syde · zitt sounderd þe qwerne,
 Hys hors it honyshyd for euer · & he with hard
 schapyd.
 þen kayres he with Emenylaus · euen to hys princez,
 And derfly of þat oper day · of doghty he assemblez,

¹ MS. fete.

He assembles
200,000 men,

Twa hundreth thousand oñ a throñ · aH of threuen
kniȝt/s, 3007

and encourages
them.

[Fol. 52.]

Cairis him vp to a cliffe · & comfurthis his host/s ;
“ Sall neuir þe Persyns pake · be pere to þe grekis,
And if þai ma ware be many · mayes noȝt ȝour hert/s ;
FuH many flees may feH · bot a fewe waspis.”
And aH þe company clene · comendid his witt/s. 3012

Terciusdecimus passus Alexandri.

Darius and his
men come to the
river.

Be þis ser Dary was diȝt · whit his dere erles,
Heuyd vp a huge ost · & hast him to ryde,
His ginge & aH his garysons · in glyssynand wedis, 3015
Gaes him oñ to granton · & graithes þare his tent/s.
His stoure was so stalworthe & store · & strange to
a-byde,

His host is
innumerable.

He haH of meñ out of mynde · many mayñ hundreth.
þat sike a siȝt & a sowme¹ · of seggis enarmed
Was neuir sene, I suppose · señ þe sege of troy. 3020
þe chiftayne had chariot/s · chosen for þe nanes,

He has 10,000
chariots,
armed with
scythe-blades.

Ten thousand be tale · tried for þe were.
And þai ware sett aþire side · fuH of sythe-bladis,
Kene keruand as knyfes · & cursers þam drowe. 3024
þe next day be þe none · new note rydes,
Aithire freke with his folke · in þe fild met/s,
And bald bernes oñ bent · banars vnfaddis,
Put pennons oñ pollis · payntid of siluir. 3028

Alexander mounts
Bucephalus.

Alexander as helyue · is armed vp clene,
Bounes him to his blonke · þe best vndir heuen,
þat was þe blonk Bucifat · as þe buke tellis,
A foole worth² fyfty of þe firste · þat in þe flode
drowned. 3032

He spyznes him out a grete space · fra he[s] peris aH,
Cowers him fuH clenly · & closed in his gere.

¹ The me above the line.

² MS. with, altered to worth in the margin.

Twa o m in a thrume · all of trefe knytes, 3007

Cayrez hym vp to a Clyff · & comforthez hys hostez;
 “Sall neuer þe persiens pakke · be pere to þe grekez,
 And þof þai war mo be mony · mayse nott in hertes; 3010
 Full fele fleys may nott felle · bott a few wasspez.”
 And all þe Company clene · Comendyd þan hys wittes.

[*Tertiusdecimus passus.*]

By þis *sir* Dary was dight · with hys derfe Erlez,
 Hefyd vp a hoge hoste · & hastyd hym to ryde, 3014
 Hys genge & hys garyson · in glasynand wedes,
 Gose hym to *gratum* · & grathez vp hys tentes.
 Hys stoure was stalwort & sture · & strang to abyde,

He hed of men for to mynd · mony mayne hundreth,
 þat suche a sight & a some · of seggez enarmed
 Was neuer [sene], I suppoysen · sen þe seyge of troye. 3020
 The Chyftanys hed chariottes · chosyn for þe nonest,
 A Ten thouusand be tale · tried for þe were.
 And þoo wer sett on ather syde · full of sythe-blades,
 Kene keruand as knyffes · & coursours þaim drawys. 3024
 The next day be þe none · new note rysys,
 Ather freke with hys folke · in þe feld metyn,
 And bald bernez on bent · banerys vnfaldyn,
 Puttyn penons on pollez · payntyd with syluer. 3028
 A[lexander] als belyfe · es armyd vp Clene,
 Bownez hym on hys blonnke · þe best vnder heuen,
 þat was þe bald bucyfah · as þe buke tellez,
 A fole worth fyfty of þat · at in þe flude drownyd. 3032

He spedes hym on a grete space · fro hys pers ah,
 Couerys hym full clenly · & closys hym in hys gere.

[Fol. 36.]

- The Persians are
frightened. þe powere out of Persy · queñ þay þe prince saȝe,
Frayed was of his fourme · so ferdfuð him semed. 3036
- The battle begins. ¶ Now ere þe batails boune · with braggins in trumpis,
þe breme bemen blaste · beres to þe welkeñ.
Alexander aȝpire first · oñ þaim all¹ he settis,
[Fol. 52 b.] And aithire ward¹ at a waȝp · wigtly inloynes. 3040
Archars & aȝ meñ · asperly figtis,
þare was Iusting o Ioy · Iopons a-tamed; ;
Siles down oñ aithire side · seleuth kniȝtis,
Sum darid, sum dede · sum depe wondid. 3044
- There is hard
fighting. So feH² fligt was of flansys · as I fynd wreten.
Of arrows & of all quat · þat aȝ þe aire blindid; ;
Hogere oñ to be-hald · þaȝ of³ haile-stanes,
- A great flight of
arrows. And aȝ þe fild fuð of folke · fyue mile large. 3048
Als sone as þe soȝ vp soȝt · þe slaȝtere begynnnes,
And so to þe soȝ-sett · slakid þai neuire.
Be þat þe barbyrne blode · be-ȝaȝ to discende,
- The Persians
give way. þe proudest of þe Persyns · past out⁴ of lyue. 3052
Sone as ser Dary it deuysid · & seȝis his foke faile,
- Darius flees. With þat he bedis þam⁵ þe bake · & bidis na langir;
þen queñ þai⁶ fange to ȝe fligt · was furth in with euyȝ,
- Darkness comes. And mirke out⁴ of mesure · na man þaim a-pered. 3056
For-þi þe chariotis in þe chace · choppid þaim to deth,
þe cartis þat I carpid of · with þe kene sythis,
- The scythe-
chariots destroy
the flying host. þare feH as fele þaȝ before · of fotemeñ & othire,
As risonis⁷ in a ranke fild · quen riders it spillen.⁸ 3060
- Darius goes to Sire Dary dryue in þe derke · & his douth folows,
Gaes him on to grantun · vn-to þe grete burne,
- the frozen river,
and crosses it. Fand it frosen him before · as feH for þe time,
Past him oñ with his pers · a pake out of nombre. 3064
His folke fellis aȝ þe flode · a forelange o brede,
þe streme fra þe a strande · streȝt to þat othire.
- The ice gives way, Sone fra him-self was at þe side · it senders behind,

¹ In the margin.² MS. felle felle.³ MS. oerf.⁴ MS. out.⁵ MS. þam þaim.⁶ MS. þaim.⁷ Or risons, or risoins.⁸ MS. spillen.

The power of *persee* · when þai þe prince see,
 Was ferly frayd of hys forme · so ferdfull he semyd. 3036
 Nowe er þe batels bowne · with braggyng of trompettes,
 The breme beeme blast · beryd to þe welkyn.

A[lexander] all-*þar* first · on þaim all settēs,
 And ayther ward at a wappe · wigh[t]ly enioynez. 3040

Archers & all men · asperly shotyn,
þar was Iustying of Ioy · Iopons attamyd;
 Seghen downe on ather syde · semelych knytes,
 Some dasyd, some dede · some depe woundytt. 3044

So felh flyght was of flonys · as I fynd writtyn,
 Of arows & of alblastres · þat all þe Ayre blyndyd;
 Huger to byhalde · þen þe hayle-stormes,
 And all þe feld full of folke · fyfe myle large. 3048

Als sone as þe soñ hup soght · þe slaughter begynnys,
 And to sett was þe same · sesytt þai neuer.

Be þat þe barbaryn blode · began to desend,¹
 The proudest of þe *persyens* · passyd owte of lyfe. 3052

Sone as *sir* Dary devysyd · & sawe hys doghty falle,
 With þat he biddes þam þe bake · & bydes no langer;
 þen qwen þai fange to þe flyght · was nerehand eueñ, 3055
 And merke *withowte* mesur · na man myght þam folow.

For-þi þe chariottes in þe chase · chopyd þaim to deth,
 The *cartes* þat I Carpyd of · with þe kene sythez,
 þai felh all fey þaim byfore · with fotemen & oþer, 3059
 As ressynnys in a ranke feld · when men ouer rydes.

Sir Dary dryfys in þe dirke · & hys doghty folows,
 Goys hym on to *grantum* · vnto þe grete burne,
 Fañde it frosyn hym byfore · as fell for þe tyme, 3063
 Passys ouer with hys perys · a pak oute of nowmbre.

Hys floke fyllys at² þe flud · a furelonge of brede,
 The streme fra þat one strande · streght vnto þat oþer.
 Sone fra hym-self was at þe syde · it sounderytt byhynd,

*¶ Nota
 bellum inter
 Darium &
 Alexan-
 drum.*

¹ MS. defend.

² Read al.

and many
Persians are
lost,

[Fol. 53.]

to the number of
300,000.

Darius goes to
Susa, and
laments.

"Now am I cast
down!"

He writes a letter
to Alexander.

"I, Darius, salute
Alexander.

Ye are wise.

Be not too proud.

Xerxes was
proud, and failed.

And aȝ at lent ware on-loft · loste þar þe swete. 3068
þus many deed þat day · as þe buke tellis,

Of pollis out of Persye · withouten þe grekis,
Thre hundreth Milles thra meñ · þat tharned¹ þaire lyues,
With þe fooles & þe folke · þat þe flode drowned. 3072

þis senioure out of Susys · to his cite wendis,
Fallis down oñ his face · flat in þe sale,
"Wa is me!" quod he, "wriche · wa is me vnhappy!"
Sizis seleuthely sare · & sadly he wepys, 3076
"I þat was straȝt to þe sternes² · am streken now to
grond,

Now cratoñ, now caitefe · now am I kast vndir,
þat had of the Orient all ouire · homage vinqwile.
Wist any we quat him suld worth · þis werd wald he
leue, 3080

Fuȝ sympiȝ in a seteqwile · seke to þe cloudes,
And þai at mast ere of miȝt · smyten aȝ to poudire."

With³ þat reufully he rase · & renkis out he sendis,
To Alexander belyue · & all slike a pistiȝ. 3084

"I, drery kyng e oñ my dese · Darius of Persy,
To Alexander þat Aire · þat all has to wild,
þe lege lord of my lyfe · to lose or to saue,
þus send I to my souerayne · salutis & ioy. 3088

So wyde is þe wisdom · þat wonne[s] in ȝour saule,
þat wele ȝe wate, of aȝ men · at I worthid here before,
Of aȝ þe notis þat ere now · & quat oñ next sewes.
For-þi ȝour werke ay be witt · ȝe wirke vñreproued.
Sire, I knowlage me a creatour · & come of a woman,

Heues noȝt ȝour hert vp to hize · take hede to ȝour end;
It limps noȝt aȝ-way þe last · to licken with þe first,
Quat suld a kniȝt mare to kepe · bot conquire his
emy? 3096

Was noȝt Sexes him-selſe · þe souereynest in erth,
And cheued him of cheualry · chekis out of nombre?
ȝit for his wiȝt out of worde · was woñ in-to pride,

¹ MS. tharned. ² MS. stremes. ³ MS. þat with; þat struck out.

And all þat lent wer on-lofte · lost haue þe swete. 3068 [Fol. 36 b.]

þus mony deyð þis day · as demys me writtes,

Off polles oute of persye · withoute þe prounde grekys,

Thre C Mille¹ of throo · þat tharnyd þair lyfez,

With þe folez & þe folke · þat þe flude drynched. 3072

þis seneour vnto susys · hys awne eyte wendes,

Fallys downe on hys face · flatt in þe sale,

“Wo is me!” quod þe wreche · “wo is me vnhappyñ!”

Sighez selkouthly sore · & sadly he wepys, 3076

“I þat was straught to þe sternes · am strykyn now to
ground,

Nowe a crathan & a knaffe · nowe am I kest vnder,

þat had of the Orient all ouer · homage vmwhile.

Wist ony wee qwat hym suld worth · þis werld wald he
lefe, 3080

Full symple in a sete-while · sekyn to þe clodes,

And þai þat most er of myght · meltyn all to powder.”

With þat he rewfully rose · & renkes oute he sendes,

To A[lexander] als bylyfe · & all suche a PistyH. 3084

“I, drery Kyng on my dese · Darius of Perys,

Epistola.

To A[lexander] þe heyr · þat all hase to weld,

þe leyge lord of my lyfe · to lese or to safe,

þus send I to my soueren · salutes of Ioy. 3088

So wyde is þe wisdom · þat wonnys in your saule,

þat wele 3e wate of all þat was · & worth here byfore,

Off all þe notes þat er nowe · & what on next sewys.

For-þi 3e wirke euer by witte · ye werke vnreprefytt. 3092

Sir, I knalegh me a creatur · & Comyn of A womañ,

Hefys nott your hert to hye · bott hedes to your ende ;

It lym pys nott allway þe last · be lykkynd to þe first,

Quatt suld a knyght more Couett · þen conquer hys foes?

Was not Seryxes hym-self · þe soueranest on ground, 3097

And chefyd hym nott of cheualry · chekez oute of nombre?

3itt for hys wiþt oute of warde · was wonne into pride,

¹ I. e. Three hundred thousand.

[Fol. 53 b.] In þe lede here of Elanda · lithirly he feyned. 3100
 þinke þat allanely of god · þis ourlrike þou haues,
 Remember that victory is from God.
 For-þi haue mercy on þi men · þi meche we¹ beseke,
 Restore my relatives, and take my wealth."
 Als of ȝoure grete gudnes · to grant vs oure modire,
 Oure bride, oure barnes out of bande · for besandis enoȝe,
 For all þe feete² at oure fadirs · in þe fold³ hade, 3105
 In Battri & in þis bild · þe burȝe of Elanda,
 þe maistri & þe maieste · of Mede & of Persy,
 With all þe Iolyte &⁴ Ioy · þat Iubiter vs lenes." 3108
 þe seggis at fra Susses · was sent with þe pistiH
 Aires to ser Alexander · onone hit⁵ him reches ;
 And he dos on before his ost · openly to rede, 3111
 And all his kniȝtis for þe carpe · ware kenely reioysed.
 þon was ane Permeon, a pere · a prince of his oste,
 The letter is taken to Alexander,
 whose men rejoice.
 Permeon advises him to accept Darius' offer.
 Enclynes him down to þe kyng · said : "kid emperoure,
 Resayue þis risches, I rede · þat ȝow þis renke bedis,
 And lyuers him his ladis · & aH his lele childire." 3116
 þan Alexander belyue · þa hathels he callis,
 Alexander says,
 þe berne at broȝt⁶ him þe brefe · said : "bowis to ȝour
 lord,
 And say,⁷ me wondirs, I-wisse · if he it wete walȝ,
 "How can Darius expect anything of me?"
 For any mede a-poñ moldȝ · his meneyhe to lyuire ? 3120
 If he be fallen vndire fote · & his folke streyned,
 And venciust of oure violence · quat vailis him his hestis ?
 His person & his prouynce · he put it in my wiȝh, 3123
 And ȝeld him vndire my ȝoke · þan ȝerne I na mare.
 And if [he] grant him noȝt de-grayd · bot for þe gre
 threpiȝ,
 Bid buske him eft to þe bent · vs bataill to ȝeld."
 þus monest he þe messangers · þaire maistir to say,
 Geuys þan giftis fuH gode · & lete þan ga swyth. 3128
 And þan comands he his kniȝtis · þe corses vp to
 godire,

Let him own himself beaten."

He bids the corpses to be buried.

¹ MS. de. ² MS. fadirs feete ; with fadirs struck out.³ MS. fuld, corrected to fold. ⁴ MS. & oi ; oi struck out.⁵ MS. it hit.⁶ MS. borȝt.⁷ In the margin.

In þe lede of Elanda · lythirly he fynyd. 3100

Thynke howe only of god · þis ouerlake þou fonges; [Fol. 37.]

For þi haue mercy of þi man · þi myght we besekyn,

All of þi grete gudenesse · to graunt vs our moder,

Our birde, our barnez oute of bandes · for besaundes enoghe.

For all þe feetez þat our fadir · in þe molde¹ hyddyn, 3105

In battrye & in þis held · þe burgh of elanda,

The maistre & þe maieste · of medy & of perse,

With all þe Iolyte & Ioy · þat Iubiter vs lemyys." 3108

þe segges þat fra susys · was sent with þis pistiH

Caryn þaim to A[lexander] · onone & it hym raghteH ;

And he doys one before hys hostez · it opynly to rede,

And all þe knyghtes for þe carpe · wer clenly reioysyd.

þen was one permeon, a pere · A prince of hys heste, 3113

Enelynes downe byfore þe kyng · sayd : "kyd Emperour,

Resaue, I rede, þis rechez · þis renkez þat þou byddes,

And leuerys hym hys lades · & aH hys leue childer."

þen A[lexander] als belyfe · þis atheH he elepys, 3117

þe bernes þat broght hym þe breve · sayd : "bowys to

your Lord,

And says, me wonderys, I-wysse · yf he it wene suld,

For ony mede vppon molde · hys meynzey to delyver?

Yff he be fallyn vnder fote · & hys folke strenyd, 3121

And vencust of our vyolence · what valys hym hys heestes?

Hys person & hys prouynce · let put in my wyH,

And ziff hym vndir in zoke · I zarne hym no mare.

And yff he graunt hym nott degradyd · bott for þe gree

threpys, 3125

Byd hym buske hym eft to þe bent · & bateH vs zeld."

þus monyshest he þis messyngers · þair maister at say,

Gyffys þaim gyftes full gude · & byddes þaim go swyth.

And þen commaundeþ he hys knyghtes · þe corsez vp to

gedder, 3129

¹ Read folde.

Of all þe douth at was dede · & diȝt þam in graues.
 And at wondid was, I-wis · as þe writt tellis, 3131
 To serche þaire saluys & þar saris · with surgens noble.
 [Fol. 54.] At þe grete flode of Granton · now graythis he his
 tentis,

He offers to the
gods,

Honoured þare his ald¹ gods · & offirs þam nouches;
 þare fand he palais vp piȝt · & many proud hames,
 Sum-quile of Sexes ware sett · þe sire of þe landis. 3136
 þa bildis he bedis þam to brin · sone of his bone rewis,
 And bad na bereñ be sa bald · a brand for to kyndiȝ.
 þare was a brade bent fiȝt · was beried fuȝ of kniȝtis,
 Of ald peres out of Persy · prince & dukes. 3140

He bids his
men not to burn
any building.

The Greeks find
an old sepulchre,

þe Messedones in þe mold · mynes to þe graues,
 Fand coupis all of clene gold · & costious stanes,
 þe sepulture of a sire · þat of Surre was kyng.

That of Ninus,
made of amethyst.

Him was þe name Ninus · was in a noke fondeñ. 3144
 Was of ane athiȝ amatist · & aȝ within² grauen.
 Plantid fuȝ of palmetres · & many proud fowles.
 And slike a clerete it kest · þu[r]ȝe kynd of it-self.
 þai³ miȝt haue kendȝ without þe kist · þe corps all-
 to-gedire. 3148

They next find
a prison, with
manned men in
it, who are set
free.

þare was a tenefuȝ toure · & tulkis in-closid;
 Sum ware þe handis of heweñ · & sum wondid hoges,
 Sum þe eȝen, sum þe eres · & egirly cries
 On Alexander eftir help · & he þam all liuers. 3152
 He wepis oñ þam for wa · said, “wa is me, my
 childire!”

They were
manned by
Darius.

And ilkane of his talentis · he takiȝ ten thousand.
 þus ware þai diȝt of ser Dary · for he dedeyne hade,
 þat þai⁴ ware comen down of kyngis · & be no cause
 ellis. 3156

Darius writes to
king Porsus of
India.

Be now þe douth of ser Daris · þe derfe messangere
 Fra Alexander agayn · his answare him broȝt;
 And he þan girdis out to grete · eft graythis him to fyȝt,

¹ MS. h ald.

² with is in the margin.

³ MS. þi.

⁴ MS. þat, corrected to þai.

Of aH þe doghty þat was dede · & dight þaim in grafys.
 And aH þat woundytt was, I-wysse · as þe writte tellys,
 He gart seke þair sarys, & þaim salue · with *surgers*¹ noble.
 At þe flude of *gratum* · nowe grathez he hys tentes, 3133

Honours hys olde goddes · & offers þaim ouchez ;
 þair fande he palays vp pight^t · & mony prouude homez, [Fol. 37 b.]
 Some-while of Serxes was set · þe syre of þair landez.
 þose heldes he byddes þaim bryn · & syne of hys bode rewys,
 And bad no berne be so bald · a brand for to kyndyH.
 þar was a brode bent feld · was fuH of beryd kynges,
 Off olde perys oute of pers · of Princez & Dukez. 3140
 The massydoyns in þe mold · mynyñ into þe grafez,
 Founde coupes aH of clene gold · & costyous stonetz,
 þe sepulture of a syre · of Surry was crownyd.
 Hym was þe name Ninus · was in a noke foundeñ, 3144
 Was of ane athyH amatyst^t · & aH within grafen,
 Plantyd all with palmetres · & mony prouude fowlez,
 And suche a clarett² it kest^t · þorow kynde of hym-selueñ,
 Men myght^t haue kend withoute kyst^t · þe cors all-
 to-geder. 3148

þar was a tenefull toure · & tulkez inclosyd ;
 Some was þe harmes of heven · & some þe lygez wantyd,
 Some þe hoghez, some þe eres · & egerly crydeñ
 On A[lexander] after help · & he þaim aH delyuerys.
 He wepys on þaim for woo · sayd : “ woo is me, my
 childer ! ” 3153

And ichone of hys talentes · he takys ten thouusand.
 þus war þai dyght of Sir Dary · for he disdayne hed^z,
 þat þai war comyn of kynges · & be no cause ellez. 3156

Be þen þe Doghty of sir Darius · our derf messengers
 Fro A[lexander] ayayn · hys Answer hase broghtyñ ;
 And he þen gyrdes oute to grete · & grathez hym to fyght,

¹ *Read surgens.*² *Read clartee.*

To þe honoryd here out of ynde · þus ordans a pistiſſ.
 “Darius to Porus.
 “þat þe sceptoure & þe soile · sesid am of Persy,
 To Porrus vndire my present · plesance & ioy.
 First wrate I to *your* worthines · 3it write I þe same,
 Come and help me.
 To help vs at þire hathiſſ meñ · þat haue¹ wald my
 regne, 3164
 [Fol. 54 b.] And, be 3e sure, þe same way · is to *your*-self ettild.
 For he þat werrais vs *with* · þe wildare of grece,
 For Alexander is wroth as a lion.
 Is wrawid & wrathfuſſ of wiſſ · & wode as a lyoñ, 3167

And if I sande meñ & sammen · seggis out of nombre,
 And cokke *with* þe conquirour · tiſſ I be cald drepid,
 It is better for me to die than to live in sorrow.
 3it me is better oñ þe bent · in bataile be slayne,
 þan se þe lose of my ledis · & ay leue iñ sorowe.
 For-þi 3oure lordschip as legeman · I lawly be-seke,
 As I þat am in angwiſch · myne askyng to fiſſ; 3173
 I promise ten shillings to a well-armed soldier, five to a foot-soldier.
 Ten schilling of my trew gold · a mañ þat is armed,
 And fyue to a fote-man · faithely I hete.
 3it sall I ordane to *your* ane · quare-cuire oure ost liggis,
 A ix score of new geere · of nurtrid maydens. 3177
 You shall have the spoil.”
 Bucifalon þe bald stede · saſſ bathe be oure awen,
 And þe armes of Alexander · & aſſ þe pilage.”
 ¶ Now flees þar fra þe feſſ kyng · a fone of his kniȝtes,
 Alexander is informed of this,
 To Alexander beliuē · & aſſ þus him tald, 3181
 How þat ser Dary *with* his dukis · eft drissis him to
 fiȝt,

Had prayd eftir powere · to Porrus of ynde.
 þan ordans him þis honorable · *with* his ost flitiȝ, 3184
 Agayñ þe Persyns king · him ordans to ride,
 For þe name of añ Emperoure · ne wald he neuire fange,
 Or þen þat souerayne ware slayne · or ȝild him his regne.²
 Sone as þe kyng of þat kith · of his come herys, 3188
 þaũ was he ferly a-friȝt · & his folke bathe.
 Than kest þam twa of his kniȝtiȝ · him causeles to spiſſ,
 and prepares to attack Darius again.
 Darius is frightened.
 Two of his own knights lay a plot to kill him.
¹ þat haue in the margin. ² MS. rege, altered to regne.

To þe honound heere oute of Inde · þus Ordayns he a pistyH.

“That þe septour & þe soyle · sesyd am of pers, 3161

To porrus vnder my prynt · plesaunce & Ioy.

First wrote I to your worthynes · 3itt write I þe same,

To help vs Anest þees athell men · þat hery wald oure
realme, 3164

And, be 3e sure, þe same way · is to your-selfe etteld.

And he þat werrys vs · is þe weldar of grece,

Es wrawyd & wrathfull of wiH · & wode as a lyoñ, 3167

As waves of þe wild see · when wynd þaim dis-
troubles; 3167* [Fol. 38.]

And þof I s *omme* & *samme* · seggez oute of nombre, 3168

And cok with þis conquerour · tyll I be cold drepyd,

3itt is me better on þe bent · in bateH to fayle,

þen see þe losse of my ledes · & ay lefe in sorow.

For-þi your lordshiþ as lege mañ · I lofely beseche, 3172

As I þat am in angres · my askyns fullfyH;

Ten schelyng of my trew gold · a tulke þat is armyd,

And fyfe to A fotemañ · faythfully I hete. 3175

3itt shall I ordayne to your one · whar-euer our hoste liggez,
Nyne score of new gere · of norturryd maydens.

Bucyfall þe bald stede · sall als be your awne, 3178

With þe armez of Sir A[lexander] · & all þe oper pelage.”

Nowe fleen þai fro þis feH kyng · a some of hys knyghtes,

To A[lexander] als belyfe · als þus hym told,

How þat Sir Dary¹ with hys dukez · dressyd þaim to
fyght, 3182

Had send after power · to porrus of Inde.

þen ordayns hym þis honorable · & with hys hoste flyttes,
Ayayns þe persyen Prince · he purpose to ryde,

For þe name of emperour · wald he neuer fonnge, 3186

Or þat soueren wer slayn · & seysyd to hym þe realme.

Sone as þe kyng of þat kyth · of hys Come herys,

þen was he ferly affrayd · & hys folke both. 3189

And þen kest two of hys knyghtes · to causles hym spyH,

¹ he added here, but struck out.

þai trowid þan of *Alexander* · to adiH þaim a mede ;
þire traitours oñ þis trechoure · trowthis has strakid,
Lendis þaim on-loft to þe lorle · lazt out swerdis. 3193

Darius asks why
they attack him,

“Quat sall I dreȝe,” *quod ser Dary* · “my dere-worth
childire ?

and says that
Alexander will
avenge him.

First cald I ȝow my clyent^{is} · þat now I caH lordis,
Semes ȝow noȝt it suffice · my sorowe with-out, 3196
þat as a bitand brand · me brettens with-in,

[Fol. 55.]

And slaa ȝe me þus sudanly ? · þe se[n]ioure of grece,
He¹ wiH me wreke on ȝoure werke · wers þan of thefes !”

They wound
him, and he falls.

þar² meuyd þaim³ na mercy · bot maynly him woundid,
þat down he hildis aH to-hewyn · þaire handis be-twene,
þan dryfes furthe þa dones men · & halfe dede him leys,
Famand⁴ out of fresch blod · & here a fitt end. 3203

Quartusdecimus passus *Alexandri*.

When Alexander
hears that
Darius is
wounded,

Quen *Alexander* of þis athiH · þis auntir hadH herd,
How he was digt of his douth · & to þe dele
woundid,

he goes to Susa.

He streȝt him to struma · & ouire þe streme ridis,
Soȝt him in Sussys · him-selfe with his ost.
þe pepill out of Persy · quen þai oure prince see, 3208
þan ȝode þai furthe & vn-ȝarkid · þe ȝatis of þe cite,
Resayues him fuH rially · with reuerence & ioy,

The Persians
welcome him; ;
but some hide
themselves.

Said : “weleum be þou, werraieur · þat aH þe erd loutis.”
Sone as þir weried wiȝtis · was ware of hes come, 3212
þat sloȝe so þaire souerayne · þat neuire sake hadd,
þai heȝe þaim to holes & hyrnes · & hydis þaim belyue,
þoȝt, or þai wist of his wiH · þai wald noȝt apere.

He goes to the
palace.

þan gase he vp be degrece · the greceen maistir, 3216
Passis in-to þe palais · a paradyce semed,
Was oñ þe make of þat mote · noȝt⁵ mervalled a litiH,

¹ MS. ȝe. ² MS. þai. ³ MS. þai him.

⁴ Famend, altered to Famand.

⁵ Here follows we, struck through.

þam afterward of A[lexander] · attelland a mede ;
 þees *tratours* on þat *trichory* · trouthez han stroken,
 Lenden þaim on-loft to þe lord · laghtyn oute swerdes. 3193
 “What sall I dre,” *quod sir* Dary · “my dere worthy
 childer ?

First cald I yow my *elyentes* · þat now I calle *Lordes*,
 Semys you nott it shuld sufficee · my sorow now *withoute*,
 þat as a bytand brand · me bytes *within*, 3197
 And sla 3e me þus sodonly ? · þe senyour of grece,
 He will me wreke on your werke · wers þen of theffes !”
 þar mevyd þaim no *mercy* · bott manly hym wound’it, 3200 [Fol. 38 b.]
 þat downe he heldes aH to-hewyn · þair handes bytwene.
 þen dryfen forth þoo Domesmeñ · & halfdede hym lefes,
 Fomand oute of freche blode · & here a fytt endes. 3203

Quartusdecimus¹ Passus A[lexandri].

Q[u]hen A[lexander] of þis atheH · þis aunturs had herd,
 How he was dyght of hys doughty · & to þe deth
 wound’it,
 He straght hym on to struma · ouer þe streme rydes,
 Soght on to susys · hym-self *with* hys hostez.
 þe peple oute of *persye* · when þai þis Princee see, 3208
 þen 3ode þai furth & vn3arkyd · þe 3ates of þe Cyte,
 Resaved hym full ryally · *with* reuerence enogh,
 Sayd : “welcom be þou, weryour · þat aH þe werld loutes !”
 Sone as þees warryd wightez · was war of hys come, 3212
 þat Sloghen so þair souerent · þat neuer þaim gilt made,
 þai hyen þaim to holez · & hyden þaim belyfe,
 þoght, or þai wist of hys wyH · þai wald not apere.
 þen goyse he vp be degrees · þe greken maister, 3216
 Passyd vnto þe palacys · þat *paradyse* semyd,
 Was in makke of þat mote · noght mervaylled a lytyH,

¹ MS. Duodecim.

- þat compast was of Cusys · þat kyng was of Persy.
 þe flore vndire þe fote · fynely was paved, 3220
 Couerd aH of cristah · & opire clere stanes.
- The floor is
finely paved.
- 3it ware þe wawes of þe wanes · wrozt, as I rede,
 Polischid aH of pure gold¹ · & of plate werkis.
 And þat was streken fuH of sternys · & of sere
 gemmys, 3224
- With brizt blasynand bees · as bemes of þe soñ.
- [Fol. 55 b.] þe hathiH hedis vp-oñ heze · & hogely he wondirs,
 þat euire subl emperoure in erth · slike ane herde wild.
- Alexander
wonders.
- Quen he had ferlyd his fiH · apoñ þat faire hame, 3228
 þurze-out þe sale þan he sozt · in-to þe selfe chambre,
 þare quare þe lord in lay · with laythely woundis,
 Girdid out as gutars · in grete giH-stremes,
 3it was þare lyfe in his like · litiH if it semed, 3232
 At ilk blast of his breth · þe blode fra him gliðis,
 Sire *Alexander* him ayysis · & authly him thinkē ;
- He pities him.
- þe pure pete of his payñ · persid his hert.
 þan nymes he fra his awyn neke · añ empereours
 mantiH, 3236
- He embraces him,
- And þat he² couirs ouire þe kyng · & clappis him in
 armes,
- and weeps over
him.
- With grym gretyng & gro · & grysely terys ;
 Bad : “comfurth þe, *ser conquereur* · & of þi care ryse,
 Don azayne þe dignite · þe diademe of Pers, 3240
 And aH þe riȝtis of þi rewme · resayue as before.
 My pure powarfuH gods · I prestly pauoure,
 þine empire & þine crytage · enterely þe to zeld ; 3243
 Suld neuir na gome be to glade · þofe he grete ware,
 Of his neȝbour noy · enentis him-selfe,
 Quen fortune foundis him fra · & him þe fete schewis,
 And aH þe welth him at-wendis · & þe werd changis.
- Let no man
vaunt of his
success.
- Brynge furth þi banes, & with my brand · I saH þi
 dede venge.” 3248
- Let me avenge
thy murder.”
- þis saze sobband he said · & þe segge wakyns,

¹ MS. gold gold, but corrected.² In the margin.

þat Compast was of Susys · þat kyng was of pers.
 þe flore vnder fute · fynely was pafvyd, 3220
 Couered aH of *cristaH* · & *oper* clere stonez.

3itt wer þe wallez of þe wane · wroght, as I rede,
 Polyshyd all of pure gold · & of plate werkes.
 And þat was strengkyllyd full of sternez · & strykyñ *with*
gemmys, 3224

With bright blasenand beys · as bemys of þe sonne.
 þe hatheH hedes vp on hight · & hugely he wounderez,
 þat euer suld Emperour in erth · suche a place welde.

Qwen he had farlyd hys fyll · on þees fair homez, 3228
 T[h]rogh-oute þe sale þan he soght · vnto þe self chaumbre, [Fol. 59.]
 þar as þe lord in lay · *with* lothlyche woundes,

Gyrrland oute as gutters · in grete gylle-stormez,
 3itt was þar lyfe in hys lyre · lytyll yf it semyd, 3232

Att Iche blast of hys breth · þe blode fro hym 3ettes,
 Sir A[lexander] on hym avysys · & trewly hym thynkez ;
 þe pure pite of hys payn · persyd hys hert.

þen nymmez he fro hys awne neke · ane *emperours*
mantheH, 3236

And þat he Couerys ouer þe kyng · & clepys hym in
 harmez,

With greme gretyng & grone · & gryslyche terys ;
 Bad : “ comforth þe, *sir* conquerour · & of þi care ryse,
 þu dose ayayn þi dignite · þe dyademe of pers, 3240

And þe rightez of my realme · resayve als before.
 My pure powerfull goddes · prestly adoure,

þine empyre & þi herytage · þe purely to 3eld ;
 Suld neuer no gome be glad · þof he grett wer, 3244

Off hys neighbors noye · anentes hym-selueñ.

When fortune fundes hym fro · & hym þe fete schewys,
 And all þe welthe¹ þat he weldes · & þe werld chaungez,
 Bryng fforth þi banes, & *with* a brand · þi bale shall I
 venge.” 3248

þis sagh sobband he sayd · & so þe segge wakyns,

¹ MS. wetheche.

Darius kisses Alexander's hand.	Hyndely hildis him vp · & his hand kyssis, þe brest & þe bare necke · & breues þire wordis : 3251
"Ah! Alexander!	¶ "A! <i>Alexander</i> , athiH soñ" · & augrily granys, "þe depe distruccion of <i>þour</i> dome · has many day bene ¹ knawyn,
All turns at last to corruption.	þat aH þe welth of þe werlð · worthis at þe last To cayrayne & corupeion · clene aH-to-gedire. þe warnes of þi wale gode · þat wist aH before, 3256
[Fol. 56.]	And fully feld aH þe fare · þat faH suld on erthe ;
God made man unstable,	Oñ þis maner made he man · þurze his miȝt first, Suld noȝt be foun in him fast · ne ferme ne stable, Bot houande here a hand-qwile · & hingand in payse,
now up, now down.	Now in leueH, now on-loft · now oñ lawe vndire. 3261 aH werdly þing, I-wis · þurze þe wiH of oure lord, In-to þe contrare clene · is at a clamp turneð.
Ha! He given men prosperity only,	For had he worȝt ² ay to wees · welth & na nothire, So grete had bene vayn glorie · glotony & pride, 3265
none would acknowledge His power.	Suld nane haue gessid þat <i>grace</i> · come of god, bot of þaim-sellic ; So fra þe makare o mold · suld many mañ haue erryd. So feyle had bene þe frelettis · folozand oure kynd, 3268
We should all have despaired.	We had bene drawn aH bedene · in-to disspaire clene, And of þe godness of god · noȝt a grew ³ traisted. For-þi he wald of his wiH · his werkis to be changand, þat, quen a hathiH ware ouire hize · in happ & in welthe, 3272
God's will is that pride should have a fall.	þat he knew noȝt his creatour · bi-cause of his pride, In-to þe dike of debonerte · droune bud him nede. þis was his wiH at it worthid · wene þou na nothire, þe gome his god at for-gatt · for any <i>grace</i> here, 3276 His welth to wite all a-way · & wickidnes apere, To ken þe caytefe to knaw · qua caused him oñ first.
This has now hap- pened to myself.	þe same ensampil of my-selfe · now is betid, þou sees ;

¹ In the margin.² For wroȝt.³ Here follows st. standing alone.

Hendly halsys hym vmbe · & hys hande kyssys,
 þe brest & on þe bare neke · & brevys þees wordez :
 “ A ! *Alexander*, athyll soñ ” · and augerdly gronys, 3252
 “ þe depe distruccion of þi dome · hase mony day beñ
 knawen,

All þe welth of þis werld · waystes be þe last
 To caryon & corrupcion · clene all-to-geder.
 The wyssyng^t of þe wale god · þat wist aH before, 3256
 And fully fele aH þe fare · þat falle shuld on erth ;
 On þis maner made he mañ · þorow hys myght first,
 Suld not be funde in hym fastnes · ne ferme be ne stabyH,
 Bot hofand here an hand-while · & hyngand on payse, 3260
 Now in leueH, nowe on-loft^t · nowe in law vnder.

AH wordly þ[i]ng^t, I-wys · þorow wyH of þat Lord^t, [Fol. 39 b.]
 Into þe contray clene · is at a clampe turnyd.

For hed he wroght ay to wees · welth & none oþer, 3264
 So grete had beñ vaneglory · glotony & Pride,
 Suld nane haue gessyd þaim grace · of god, bott of þaim-
 selueñ ;

So from þe maker of man · myght mony haue erryd. 3267
 And had he shapyn Ay to shalkez · shendship & illys, 3267*
 So fele had ben þe frekes · folowand our kynd^t, 3268
 We had beñ drawyn all bedene · into dispare clene,
 And on þe gudnes of god · noght a dele traistyt^t.
 For-þi he wald of hys will · aH warkys to be chaunged,
 þat, when on athyH was so wele · in happe & in heyle, 3272

þat he knew not hys creatour · be-cause of hys pryde,
 Into þe Dyche of debonerte · drench must hym nede.
 þis was hys wille þat it shuld þus worth · wete þou no oþer,
 The gome þat hys god forgatt · for ony grace here, 3276
 Hys welth to wyte away · & wrychednes to apere,
 To ken þe catyff to knaw · who causyd hym on first.
 þe sampyH of my Awne self · þou seys nowe betyd ;

So grete I grew of my gods · & gold in my cofirs, 3280
þat kindly gods creatoure · I kend noȝt my-selfe,
 Bot for his feloȝe & his fere · faithfully me leued,
 Pride blinde^d me. þus prosperite & pride · so purely me blyndid,
 I couthe noȝt se fra my sege · to þe soile vndire, 3284
þat at me failed þan to fynd · fast at myñ ezen.
 [Fol. 56 b.] Be þe myrrour now of meknes · I may a myle knawe,
 If a man be cast down,
 If any hathill be so hard · *with* vnhapp woundid,
 he shall be exalted.
 So at he hopis him no helpe · of þe heȝe fadire, 3288
 þan listis oure lord him oñ-loft · his langour he breggis,
 In-hanses him in hand-quile · & heues him to welthis
 So heȝe, *þat* he for vn-hele · seȝes noȝt his driȝtē.
 Let man acknowledge his creator.
 Lat þan him know his creatour · in kindling of ioy, 3292
þat he *þat* lawene has a lede · may lyft, if him thinke,
 And he *þat* bringis him on-loft · breten aȝ to poudire.
 Let not pride puff thee up.
 þi saule, soñ, in-to surquitery · lat seke neuire þe
 hiȝhare,
 For gre þe graunt^t ere¹ of god · & noȝt² of þi grete
 strenthis. 3296
 Look to thine end.
 If aȝ þe limp as þe list · loke to þine ende,
 For die þe bose, queñ aȝ is done · & ay þi day scortis.
 My life is like a cob-web, soon blown away.
 ¶ Me þink³ my lyfe as to þe lenȝth · is like to þis werke,
 þat þis coppis opon keȝ-wyse · knytt in þe woȝes, 3300
 With þe lest winde of þe werd · *þat* þe werd touches,
 þe note anentis ilk ane · & aȝ to noȝt worthis.
 Lo ! so þe quele of qwistsumnes · my qualite has changid !
 I, who yesterday ruled all the world, am now driven down to dust.
 I, *þat* was ȝustirday so ȝape · & ȝemed aȝ þe werld, 3304
 To day am dreuyñ all to dust · to dolour & paynes,
 Has noȝt o maistri so meche · as miȝt of my-selfe.
 My dere soñ," *quod* Daryus · "it drawes nere þe tyme ;
 My banes, on my benyson · bery *with* þi hand, 3308
 With þe proued princes out of Pers⁴ · & *with* þe proude
 grekis,
 And þe maistirlings of Messedoyne · ȝe me to mold bring.

¹ Read is.² Added in the margin.³ MS. Me þink me.⁴ MS. Perers.

So grete I grew of my gudez · & gold in my coffers, 3280
 þat kindly goddes creature · I knew nott my-selueñ,
 Bott for hys felow & hys fere · faythfully me made,
 þus prosperite & pride¹ · propyrlly me blyndyd,
 I kouth noght see fro my seyge · to þe sette vnder, 3284
 þat at me faylyd to fynd · fast at my eeyñ.
 Be þe myrrow[r] of mekenes · I may a myle knaw,
 Yff ony hatheñ be so hard · with vnhappy woundit,
 So þat he hopys hym no help · of þe hye fader, 3288
 þen lyftes þe kyng hym on-loft · hys langor abreggez,
 Enhaunses hym in hand-while · & hefys hym on-loft
 So he, þat ere² for vnsele · segh nott hys Dryghtyñ. 3291
 Lete þen hym know hys creature · in kyndyllyng of Ioy,
 þat he laghtnes may lede · & lyft when hym thynkez,
 And þat brynges hym abowe · bryttynd all to powder.
 þi sawle, sir, into Surquydry · latt sech neuer þe
 heyere, 3295

[*Leaf 40 is lost.*]

¹ MS. *proride*.

² *For ere, read he.*

- Let us fight no longer. Lat þan oure kyng-domes a-corde · & cock we na langir,
Bot ay perpetuall pes · oure partys betwene. 3312
- I commend to you my mother and daughter. Vn-to 3oure mekiH maieste · my modire I comande,
Rodogarus þe riaH · & rewis on my bride ;
My doȝtir Rosan þe riche · resayues to 3our spouse,
[Fol. 57.] It comys wele of hiȝe kyñ · kyngis to descend. 3316
- Be kind to my men." Tak tent to þat at I telH · be tendire of my kniȝtis."
And with þis speke at he spake · þe sprete he ȝeldis.
þan was his body enbawmed · &, as he bede, graueñ.
þis bald baratoure him bare · & as a barne gretis, 3320
So did þe pepiH out of Persy · bot for his pite mare
þan for þe dethe of Dary · be dowble of þe twa.
And Alexander belyue · as he was enterid,
He meues agayñ to þe mote · & oñ þe morne eftir, 3324
Vp to þe souerayne sege · with Septour he wyndis,
þat Cusus þe conquirour · of clere gold maked.
þe mody men of Messedone · þe maistirs of Persy
þan put þam in-to presens · as þe prose tellis ; 3328
- Darius' crown is put on his head. Sire Darius aweñ dyademe · þai did oñ his hede,
A coroñ, ane þe costious · þat euire kyng weryd,
On þe propurest of proiecte · þat euire prince bere.
þe massy werke was þe menest · made of þe noble, 3332
þe pride þar-of for to proue · it pyned any cristen ;
It gaue so gloriu a gleme · of gold & of stanes,
þat as þe loge for þe liȝt · lemed as of heuen. 3335
- The crown shines gloriously. þe sete þare him-selfe satte · in soyte with þe croune,
þat was lift a-poñ loft · oñ oþire litiH segis,
Seuyn cubet of clere gold · was countid þe hiȝt.
- The throne is of gold. And vij degrece was þar grayd · for gate vp of kingis,
And þai ware Ientilly Ioyned · in a Ioyly wyse. 3340
þe first añ athil Amatast · as I añ infourmed,
And of a Smeth [s]maragadane · Smyten was þe toþir ;
þe thrid of a Topas a-tyred · & trelest & grauen ;
þe ferH degre a Granate · a gracious gemme ; 3344
þe fyfte was of ane Adomant · aH-to-gedirȝ makid ;
þe sext of gletirand gold · gayle was forgid ;
- It has seven steps ;
1. of amethyst.
 2. of smaragdus.
 3. of topaz.
 4. of garnet.
 - [Fol. 57 v.]
 5. of adamant.
 6. of gold.

7. of earth. þe ouirmast, aH of þe erth · *with-out opire werkis*,
 Apon þis wyse ware þai grayd · & for grete cause. 3348
1. The amethyst
 guards men
 against
 drunkenness. þe first was of aH Amatist · þat aH chaye demes
 Riche, said þe romance · & ronkenes of wynes,
 Lattis na dronkynnes¹ þam dere · þat douth at it beris.
 þe same wyse moH a wee · waite to him-selfe, 3352
 A kniȝt at couettis to clym · to kyngs astate,
 Him bus haue warnes him *with* · of wit & of mynde,
 þat he wirke noȝt oH þe wethire halfe · for wathe apon
 erth. 3355
2. The smaragdus
 protects the
 sight; a king
 must see clearly. þe s[e]cunde was of Smaragdone · þat ay þe siȝt kepis;
 Quat berne as beris it him oH · it briȝtens his eȝeH.
 So bus a kyng to consaile · haue a² clere hert,
 To se at syttis him to se · & sagely to wirke. 3359
3. The topaz
 reflects an
 inverted image. þe thrid was a Topas, I trow · at to þe trone lengis;
 þat is so clere of his kind · þe clause me recordis,
 þat qua-sum-cuire in þat ilk · his ymage behaldis,
 þe face is to þe fold-ward · þe fete to þe firment.
 So comes it wele for a kyng · to knaw tiH his end, 3364
 How ay þe top to þe taa · is turned at þe last.
 QueH fortune festis him · he fendis belieue,
- And aH his dignite bedene · driues in-to poudire. 3367
4. The garnet is
 the brightest of
 gems;
 a king must be of
 pure fame. þe ferd³ was a granate, I gesse · goules althire fynest;
 Is nane so redy, as I rede · of aH þe riche stanes;
 Slike color aȝe a kyng wele · in conyschance to bere,
 þat he schape to na schauadry · þat schend suld his fame.
5. The adamant
 is very hard.
 [Fol. 58.] þe fift was all of adomant · as þe buke tellis; 3372
 þat is he þat is so hard · þat hurt may nane tole;³
 Is nothire stele ne na stane · so stife it may perce,
 And growis out of þe grete see · in graynes & in cragis.
 If any Naue⁴ to it neȝe · þat naylid is *with* iryH, 3376
 I attracts ships. þeH cleuys it ay to þe clife · carryg & othyre;

¹ MS. dronkynnes, *altered to* dronkynnes. ² MS. ai.³ MS. thole tole; *with thole struck out.*⁴ MS. aue, *altered to* Naue *in the margin.*

What berne þat berys it hym on · it brightyns hys syght. [Fol. 41; leaf
40 being lost.]

So buse a kyng to consayve · hafe a clere hert,

To se þat sittes hym to see · & sagely to wirche. 3359

The thryd was a topas, I trowe · þat to þe trone longyd ;

þat is So clere of hys kynde · þe clause it recordes,

þat who-someuer in þat ilke · hys vysage behaldes,

þe face is to þe foldward · þe fete into þe welkyn.

So comys it wele to a kyng · to knaw to hys ende, 3364

Howe ay þe topp to þe toes · is turnyd at þe last,

When fortune fraystes frely hym in-fere · he fyndes hym

belyfe,

And all hys dignite bedene · dryfys into Powder. 3367

The fourte was a granate · þat glowys all þar fynest ;

Is none so rede, as I rede · of all þe ryche stones ;

Suche colour aght a kyng wele · in countenaunce to bere,

þat he shope to no cheualdre · þat shend shuld hys name.

The fyft was all of Adamant · as þe buke tellys ; 3372

þat is he þat is so hard · þat hurt may no tule ;

Is noþer stele nor no stone · so styff may it perce,

And growys out of þe grete see · in granes & in Craggez.

Yff ony navy to it negh · þat nalyd is with Irne, 3376

þen clefys it ay to þe clyff · carrak & oþer ;

Bot blode of body, sais þe buke · bees it neuire
percid,¹

Or þe natour of anothire thing · þat nedis noȝt to rekeñ.

A king should be
steadfast.

þat same kynd suld a kyng · of his craft vse, 3380

So stable & so stedfast · to stand in his werkes,

þat for na prayere ne pres · ne plesaunce oñ erthe,

Out of þe rake of riȝtwysnes · reñ suld he neuire.

6. The gold is
the chief of
metals;

þe Sext was of gold · graciously heweñ, 3384

Of aȝ metals o molȝ · þe maistir & þe syre;

a king should be
chief.

þe same cure is a kyng · be kind of his leggis,

To gy & gouerne² his gomes · þe grettest he is makid.

7. The earth
reminds a king
that he is of
earth.

þe seuynt vp to þe sege · was of þe selfe erth, 3388

þat is na mare for to mene · as me my mynd tellis,

Bot ilka kyng suld him know · cried of þe soile,

And to þe same sustenance · sodanly to werthe. 3391

þus sett oure syre in his sete · with septoure in hand,

In pelour & in paȝ · & proud meñ him by.

Alexander sends
out a letter.

þaȝ lete he lettres belyue · with ledis out to send,

þurȝe aȝ þe prouynce of pers³ · promicid þis werkis.

“þe kyng with-outen compere · of kyngis aȝ othire,

Of all þe lordis now þe lord · þat lefis apon erth, 3397

“ Alexander to
the chiefs and
princes of Persia
sends greeting.

Sire Alexander, athiȝ soȝ · of Amoȝ his driȝteȝ,

And als of Olimpades · anyly consayued,

To þe souerayns & þe Senescalls · þe sires & þe maistris,

[Fol. 58 b.]

And all þe pers out of persy · princes & dukis, 3401

þe Iustis & þe gentils · & Iugemeȝ of lawe,

Bathe citizens & seriant · salutis of grace.

Syn it lokid has þe largenes · of þe lord of heuen, 3404

Since the diadem
of Darius is
granted me,

þat me þis diademe of Dary · demed is & graunted,

And to be⁴ here þus enhansiȝ · in his hiȝe trone,

þe sall be glad of my degre · & gretly reioyd,

And ordans aiquare ouire aȝ · honourable princes, 3408

let all be
administred as
before.

Gouernours & gardens · of all þe grete burȝes,

As was in Darius days · to deme men þe riȝt,

¹ MS. lanced, *altered to percid.*

² MS. gounere.

³ MS. perers.

⁴ *In the margin.*

Withowte blode of body, says þe buke · beys it neuer
persyd,

Or þe nature of a-noper thyng · þat nedes nocht to rekyn.

The same kynd shuld a kyng^t · of hys craft vse, 3380

So stabyll & so stedfast^t · to stond in hys werkez,

þat for no prayer ne preese · ne plesaunce¹ on erth,

Oute of þe rakke of rightwyssnes · rynne shuld he neuer.

The sext degree was of gold · graciously hewyñ, 3384

Off all þe metallys of mold · þe maister & þe syre ;

The same cure is a kyng · be kend of hys leigez,

To gye & goueryne hys gomes · þe grettest is he grathyd.

The Seunte vp to þe sege · was of þe self erth, 3388

þat is no more for to mene · as me þe writte tellys,

Bot euerilke kyng shuld hym knawe · create of þe soyle,

And to þe same substance · sodanly to worth. 3391

þus sett our Syre in hys sete · with septour in hand,

[Fol. 41 b.]

In pelour & in palle · & proude men hym vmbe.

þen lete he letterys belyfe · with ledes oute to send,

þorow ail þe prouynce of pers · pronounsand þees wordez :

“ The kyng withowtyn compere · of kynges aH oþer,

Of all lordes nowe lord · þat lefyn vppoñ erth, 3397

Sir A[lexander], athyll soñ · of amoñ hys drightyñ,

And also of Olympades · only consaved,

To þe souerayns & senescallez, · þe syrez & þe maisterys,

And aH þe peres oute of pers · princez & dukez, 3401

þe iustice & þe gentyles · þe iuggez of þe lawe,

Both cytezeyns & sergeantez · salutes of grace.

Seth lukkyd hath þe largenes · of þe lord of heueñ, 3404

þat me þis Diademe of Dary · demyd is & grauntyd,

And to be here þus inhaunsyd · in hys hye trone,

þe shall be glad of my degree · & gretly reiossed,

And ordayns ouer all & ay · honorable princez, 3408

Gouernours & gardens · of all my grete burghes,

As was in Darius days · to deme men þe right,

¹ MS. plesaaunce.

And clene all þe clientis · to kepe þaire demayndes.
 Ilk a pepill his possession¹ · in pes mozt he broweke,
 Let all armour be put away. Armoure & actons · y latt all þat be kepid,² 3413
 Caires þam to castells · & in kinge houses,
 And none so bald, ere I bide · to bere þam na mare.
 Let the highroad be free." And fra þis marche to Messedone · quilts I am maistir
 here, 3416
 þe passage in aithire part · sall playn be & open,
 þe comers out of aithire coste · to caire vndistrobbed,
 With message & Marchandise · & al manire of nedis."
 ¶ Now is his pistils aH past¹ · & pese he comandis ; 3420
 "Quilke of my fryndis ere þe folke · þat my faa sloze,
 þat was þe drepars of Dary · now doo þam a-pere,
 þat þai may weld for þis werke · wirschip to mede.
 My mekill miȝtfuH gods · I maynly ȝow swere, 3424
 And on þe lay at I leue · & be my lufed modire,³
 þe worthe wage þaim wayne · þat þai haue wele serued."
 þan all þe pepil out of Persy · pouret out to wepe ;
 Bathe Besan & Anabras · as þe buke tellis, 3428
 þat ware þe banes of his body · baldly þam shawis ;
 Said : "we to-hewid him [with] oure handis · liȝe
 emperoure."
 þai wend wele þaim to wyñ · a waryson for euire. 3431
 þan bad he bernes þaim to bynd · & bringe þaim be-lyue
 Vn-to þe gudmans graue · & hewe of þaire hedis.
 "Allas, my lord," quod þa ledis · "& ȝe so late swore,
 To ȝour worthi gods, ȝour wale dame · we suld no waa
 suffice !" 3435
 "Siris, as ȝe worthi ware, I-wisse · I wate wele I hiȝt,
 And bot ȝour harmes were vnhid · I held noȝt myne
 athis.
 For sen I wañ in-to þe werld · my witt has bene aye,
 Quen treid was a trechory · þe tulkis to be hedid."
 þan he did þaim to deth · as driȝten him praysted, 3440

¹ MS. posseciōn, *altered to possession*. ² MS. kepis.³ Here the Dublin MS. ends.

And clene all our clientes · to kepe þair demaundes,
 Iche peple þair possession · in pease myght þai broke,
 Armors & actons · lat aȝ þat be kepyd, 3413
 Cayrez þaim to castellys · & to kynges housez,
 And none so bold, or I byd · to bere þaim no more.
 And fro þis marche to massydoyne · whil I am maister
 here, 3416

The passage shall in ather parte · plane be & opyñ,
 þe Comers oute of athir coste · to cayre vndistourblett,
 With message & with merchaundyse · & all maner of nedes.”
Nowe er hys pistellys forth past · & pease he Commandez ;
 “Which of my frendes er þe folke · þat my foe slogh,
 þat wer þe drepers of sir Dary · nowe doys þaim apere,
 þat þai may weld for þair werk · worship & mede.
 My mekyll myghtfull goddes · I maynly you swere, 3424
 And on þe lay þat I lefe · & be my lofyd moder,

[*Here ends the fragment in the Dublin MS.*]

The land is at
peace.

þe prouynce piȝt is in pes · & princes ere maked,
An¹ ald derling² of Darius · was duke made of pers,
Request of þe rials · ane of his riche vncles. 3443

Alexander again
mounts the gilt
throne,

Oure emperoure, quen þis was endid · erly oñ þe morne,
With all þa alyens him by · & ancient lordis,
He gase a-gayne to de-grece · vp to þe gilt trone,
Dobbed in his diademe · & diȝt as be-fore ; 3447

and bids Roxana
come to him,

As Dary demed, or he deid · his doȝtir he comandes,
Mad Rosañ þe riche · radly to apere,

whom he weds,
and makes
en.press,

Hire hede vn-helid was oñ hiȝe · & hild aH in trissis,
Vñ-by-clappid with a coronacle · of costious stanes ;
As þe manere of þat marche was · he wedd hire to wyfe,
And in þe sege with him-selfe · to sitt he hir makis,
Comands hire as a conqyres · of knyȝtis to be louted,
And all þe pepill out of Persy · was passandly ioyed.

The Persians call
him a god : at
which he is
alarmed.

þai gone agraytheñ vp þaire gods · on gilten segis, 3456
Sayed : “ þou ert duke of ilk dome · & driȝtin þi-selfe ! ”
þan was he fraid in his flesche · bad, “ feyne of ȝour
wordis !

I am a corruptible kyng · & of clay fourmed ! ”

[Fol. 59 b.]

þañ out onone to Aristotil · & to his awen modire 3460
Of all his weris & his welth · he wrate alto-gedire ;
And aȝt daies aH bedene · he dites in his pistiH,
For reuerence of Rosan · to reveH & halowe. 3463

He keeps an
eight-days' feast
in honour of
Roxana.

Al be þe metire bot mene · þus mekiH haue I ioyned ;
Forthi, lordis, be ȝour leue · list ȝow to suffire.
Now will I tary for a time · & tempire my wittis ;
And he þat stize to þe sternes · stiȝtiH vs iñ heuen !

Quintusdecimus passus Alexandri.

I will now tell
you more about
Alexander.

Lordis, wiH ȝe me lithe · & lestin a stonde, 3468
Now sall I kithe vs a carpe · of a kyng riche,
Of þe auntours of ser Alexander · þat aire was of grace,
How all þe werd at his will · he wañ or he deid.

¹ MS. And.

² MS. derlingis.

þe lattir ende of his lyfe · me list ȝow to tel. 3472

For aȝ þe first is in fittis · & folowand þe lettir,

The first part
closely follows
the original.

And he þat made ȝow þis mirth · oft mynes his saule,

þat driȝtiȝ deyne him to dele · a dele of his blis.

Sone as *ser* Dary was deid · & done out of lyue, 3476

And *Alexander* as¹ aire · had aȝ for to wild,

When he had
married Roxana,

Resayued to his riche quene · Rosan his doȝtir,

And was þe croune be-kenet · of elene all þus ends,

He gedird him a grete ost · & graythid him to ride,

A powere of þe *Persens* · & of þe prowde grekis, 3481

þe Messedones & all men · he [maynly] comandis

he proceeds to
attack Porus,

On kyng *Porus* to preke · & prese him with armes.

Now gase he furthe with his ging^r · þe gaynest in-to

and advances to
India.

ynde.

3484

þare many daies be dissert · he dryfes with his ost,

He comes to a
desert.

Be hiȝe hillis & howis · & be holuȝe doȝnes,

Be wast & be wildirnes · & be watirles bournes. 3487

[Fol. 60.]

Sone was he wery of þe way · so was his wale kniȝtis;

Menyd þaim þe Messedones · emang^r þaim-selfe,

The Greeks
mourn,

þai said, it miȝt be sufficient · þe sesyng^r of *Persy*,

And him þat² trouage oȝ tyme · has tane of oure eldirs.

“Quat suld we fonde any ferre · now faylis oure

and ask why they
are to go further.

strent[h]is;

3492

þis eret of ynde is ilk dele · enhabet with bestis,

And he bet willis all þe werd · be weris him to loute,

His flesche is fostard & fedd · be fiȝt & by sternes.

“Alexander lives
upon fighting,

And were his person in pes · bot for a pure tyme, 3496

þan suld he faile as a freke · at þe fode wantis.

Bot lat vs leue him at longe · & lende to oure hames,

but let us go
home in peace.”

And pas quedire as him plese · with þe proud barbres.”

Sone as oure kyng of his kniȝtis · þis carpe vndire-

stondis,

3500

He mas to stand all þe stoure · & standis vp in þe myddis,

Alexander
harangues them.
“Hear me!

“Bald baratours on bent · blythly me heris,

¹ MS. as ar; with ar struck out.

² MS. þat se; with se struck out.

I am your
king.
Ye lightly leave
me.

Did not I comfort
you when Darius
threatened?

I have been in a
hundred perils.

[Fol. 60 b.]

I will never turn
my back,

though ye may
do so."

His princes and
knights beg his
forgiveness,

and promise in
future to follow
him even to
death.

All þe pepill out of Persy · ere put in my wiȝh ;
 All ware rebeȝ in arest · now is þe rewme¹ ȝold, 3504
 And I your kyng as ȝe know · with croune & with septour.
 And now ȝe leue me þus liztly · bot for a litiȝ pyne,
 To caire a-gayne to ȝour kithid² · I cañ noȝt þare-oñ.
 Know ȝe noȝt how in ȝour care · I cu[m]furth ȝow anys,
 Quene ȝe dout so þe dities · of Darus in his pistiȝ?
 Eft quen we ferd in-to fild · & with oure faes mett,
 I was þe first ȝow before · þat þe fild entrid,
 Soȝt in-to Sussys · my-selfe for³ ȝoure hele, 3512
 In þe habet of Amon · oure⁴ allirs drizten,
 Put my person in plegg⁵ · & perils a hundreth,
 And in-to tourment oñ-tald · me tuke for ȝour sake.
 Bot wetis it wele with-out wene · I wene in my saule,
 As I ȝit haue hediretoward · heried all my faes, 3517
 So sall I gete hus ay þe gree · with my gud helpe,
 And for na tene at may betide · turne sall I neuire,
 If ȝe will lend in-to ȝour landis · loke at ȝour hertis!
 Bot me to do slike a dede · driztin it schilde! 3521
 I sall neuire graithe me to greece · gase quen ȝow likis,
 Or mare wirschip I haue woñ · for wathe vndire
 heuen." 3523
 Quen he þis resoñ had redd · þañ rewid his princes,
 And of forge[f]nes of þaire gilt · his grace þai be-seke.
 Kniztis callis⁵ him oñ kneys · said: "kid emperoure,
 All oure life & oure lose · is lent in ȝour handis,
 Oure-selfe & oure seruage · is surely ȝoure aweñ, 3528
 Ai at ȝoure beding to be · oure bodi & oure gudis,
 Quare-euer ȝe wend in aȝ þe werd · in watir or in erthe,
 Ay mekely at ȝour mandment · ȝour maieste to folowe.
 If we suld die aȝ-bedene · at aȝ day tyme, 3532
 We sall neuer spise ȝow ne sporne · in speche ne in dede,
 Ne neuire ȝour rialte renay · bot rede to sewe,

¹ MS. *rewe*, altered to *rewme*.

² Or *kichid*.

³ MS. *oo*, corrected to *for*.

⁴ MS. *a oure*; with a *expuncted*.

⁵ Read *fallis*.

Quils any blast of oure breth · in oure brest lengis."

þan ȝede he furth in-to ynde · & in þase lles weres ;

Queñ all þe iolite of giugne · & Iulus was endid, 3537 June and July
being ended,

And messangers a-poñ þe marche · him metis belyue,

Fra kyng¹ Porrus þe proude · þis pistill him broȝt.

a letter comes
from Porus.

¶ "I, Porrus, þat as principaH · possessid aH in ynde,

To þis michare out of Messedone · þis mandment I write.

þou, Alexander, þou Ape · þou Amlaze out of grece,

þou litiH thefe, þou losangere · þou lurkare in cites,

Sen þou ert destayned to die · & dedely þi-selfe, 3544

þat¹ agayñ driȝtin of vnde[d]lynes · quat may þi dede

vaile ?

3545

Madding marrid has þi mode · & þi mynd changid.

[Fol. 61.]

Sen god has sent þe with to see · & ȝit þi witt failes,

"Madness has
possessed thee.

I hope þou wenes at we be like · to þire lethire Persyñs,

Thou thinkest we
are like the
Persians.

þat þou þi lordschip to loute · has now oñ late strayned.

And for þou fellid has in fiȝt · a fiȝt at was sympuH,²

Now muses þou to þi miserie · my maieste to bowe. 3551

If gomes be gouerners of gods · þan mai þi gesse worth ;

And if þe land here on lawe · be lickned to þe heuen,

þe ministracion of meñ · to me were to febiH.

All driȝtens & dewessis · ere dute of my name ;

Ane ser Denys, a duke · gane many wintire, 3556

All lords are
afraid of me.
I conquered Sir
Denys.

He bed vs bataill oñ bent · & þe back turned.

And or þat Sexes him-selfe · sesid was in Persy,

At þe marche of Messedone · made vs trouage.

Bot for þe³ partise ere vn-prophetable · vs plesse þaim

na langir,

3560

Ai walð þe wise haue wale soile · mare þaH a wast lee.

Caire agayñ to þi kith · caiteffe, I bidd,

Return to thy
country."

Here na lordschip þe limpis · quat list þe disyre."

¶ Sone as þis clause to oure kyng · [was] comyn &

deliuere,⁴

3564

Be-fore his bachelers oñ brade · he bedis it to rede.

¹ Read As ; the usual idiom.

² MS. symplille.

³ In the margin.

⁴ Read deliuered.

Alexander's men
are afraid.

His tulkis of þis titiH · quen þai þe tenour herd,
þan ware þai sory of þa sawes · & selly frayed.
“*Quat* now, my worthe werrayouris ?” · þe wale kyng
sayd, 3568

Alexander com-
forts them.

“For *Porras* pistill, I *pray* · ne for his proud wordis,
No for na manas he mas · mayes noȝt ȝoure hertis.
Did noȝt *ser* Dary to vs write · his pistill *with* pride,
And all þe berbrens bernes · in bestis þam affyed,
As lebards, lesards, & lenxis · lions & tigris ?” 3573

He writes to
Porus.
[Fol. 61 *b.*]

With comfurth of his contenance · his knyȝtis he gladis,
And þaȝn to *Porras* apart · þis pistill he writis.
¶ “I, þat¹ þe kyng am of kyng[s] · & crouned of lordis,
þe eldist child of *Amon* · þat all has to wildȝ, 3577
And honourd *Oлимпades* · *with* him ane geteȝ,
To þe oddest aire out of ynde · þis answare I make.

“Thou hast made
us bolder to
fight.”

I-wis, oure wittis *with* þi wordis · þou has wele scharpid,
And made vs bald *with* þi bost · þe bataill to ȝelȝ. 3581
Oure boundis ere barrayne & bare · & þine fuȝ of welth ;
þe kenir is oure corage · ȝoure kyng-dome to wyȝ,
To put away oure pouerte · & pas to ȝoure hiztes.
And ga noȝt, as ȝe guile ware · agayȝ ȝow to fiȝt, 3585
Bot a berne fuȝ of bost · a barbrene prince,
Wenand me & all þe werd · to waike to ȝow-selfe.”

Porus is wrath,
and assembles his
men ;

Queȝ *Porras* *with* his preue men · þis pistill had redd,
þan was he wondirly wrathe · & wiztly asembles 3589
þe kniȝtis & þe captayns · of all þe coste by,
His champions, his chiftans · his cheualry to-gedire.

also his unicorns
and elephants,

He feris him a faire flote · was feȝ for þe nanes,
Of vnicornes, of olyfauntis · & wondirfulle bestis, 3593
As ilkane vsyd *with* in ynde · vmquile *with* to fiȝte,
And aires agayne *Alexander* · *with* armes him to mete.
þe powere of *sir Porras* · was passandly many ;

and his seythed
chariots.

A stour stiffe vndire stele · þe strangest of þe werde
Of sithid chariotis him sued · a selcuth nombre, 3598
At þe fewist, as I find · a fouretene thousand ;

¹ MS. þat at.

With-outen bachelers on blonk^{is} · & bowmen on fote,
 Foure hundreth Olyfants in-fere · folowid him enarmi[d],
 With ilkane bunden on his bake · a borden casteH,
 And thretty tulkis in ilk toure · tired in plat^{is}. 3603
 Oure mey-he¹ out of Messedone · quen þai so many saze,
 þan ware þai storbet of þat stoure · so was þe stythe
 Persyns.

He had 400
 elephants,
 each bearing a
 castle.

[Fol. 62.]

AH þe athils of *sir Alexander* · was arzed in þaire hertis
 To mache with sike a multitude · of men & of best^{is}.
 þan was þir chiftans chosen · cheualous kniȝt^{is} 3608
 þat buskid ware on bathe halfe · þe bataiH to rewle.
 With þat þai tuke vp þe trumpis · be thretty at anes,
 A-grydis grymly to-gedir · þe grekes & barbres.

The Greeks are
 dismayed.

Sire *Alexander* was armed · & askis his stede 3612
 þat was þe bald bocifaloñ · & on his bake worthes ;
 Mare þan a stanecast at a count · be-fore¹ his kniȝt^{is} aH
 He standis vp in his stereps · in starand maylis.
 þe men out of Medy · he mas, & of Pers, 3616
 To enverom alle þe vaward · of aH þe vile yndes,
 And he was graythid [with] a ging¹ · of grekis kniȝt^{is}
 And maistres out [of] Messedone · þis meyhe² to helpe.

Alexander mounts
 Bucephalus.

þe pepiH out of Persye · ware petusly woundid 3620
 Of Olifaunt^{is} ouir aH · with horrible hurt^{is} ;
 All at vnweried a-way · wynnes in þe stoundis
 Durst neuir his face to his faes · eft on fold bide.

The Persians are
 wounded by the
 elephants.

Sire *Alexander* him a-visis · & ames in his witt^{is} 3624
 How he miȝt bring it a-boute · þire best^{is} to devoide ;
 And mas to beete aH of bras · as bernes it ware,
 And full of glorand gledis · þaim to þe gorge fillis ;
 Ane instrument aH of ireñ · þare ymage to bere, 3628
 Was compast on carte-wise · & cursoures þaim dreȝe.

Alexander makes
 brazen men,
 filled with fire-
 brands.

þire Olifant^{is} of ynde · quen þai þare-on waite,
 þai wend þai ware wees · & wyndis þaim agayn
 To drepe þaim as þaire first did · disclosid þai þe
 chaviles, 3632

The elephants
 attack these,

¹ MS. be before.

² Read meynhe.

[Fol. 62 b.] And sone was snaypid on þe snowte · with þe snart hetis.
 and take to flight. With þat þai fonge to þe flizt · be fifty at anes,
 Of ilkañ athill ware þai aȝed · þat any armes werid.
 Sone as *ser Porrus* of þe poynte · & o þe plite wayt^{is},
 þan was he tangid with tene · & turbled vnfaire. 3637

The Persians and
 Medes attack the
 Indians. þan preses in þe Persyns · & of þe proud Medis
 With arowis & with othire armes · agayn all þe yndis,
 Tolls of þe tirant^{is} · & termynd o lyue, 3640
 Seȝes down on aithire side · a sowme out of nounbre,
 Thretti dais on a throñ · þai threpid euire elike,
 So lange at þe lest way · as lastid þe bataiñ.
 þare was þe Medis martird · & many of *Perses* 3644
 Gorred & gais¹ þurȝe · & grysely woundid.

Alexander comes
 to the rescue. Ourȝe mody kyng of Messedone · þe myscheffe be-hald^{is},
 Seis þaim faile so ethfully · & felly was greued.
 Apon þe bald bucifeloñ · brant vp he sitt^{is}, 3648
 Spring^{is} out a spere · sperid aȝ þe plat^{is}.
 þe brest of þe bataiñ · he baldly a-prochid,
 Girdis down of þe grett^{is} · & þe gree wynnys.

with his Greeks. His awen men of Messedone · maynly þai feȝt, 3652
 So did his gomes out [of] grece · & gate a grete name.
 Sone discendid þare down · þe duȝtiest of ynde,
 And *Porus* prekis fra þe place · & þe playn voidis,
 His ledis at left ware o lyue · lendis him eftire. 3656
 And *Alexander* in þat angle · aȝ þe niȝt logis,
 Offirs all his old gods · his honour þaim thank^{is},
 As wele þe ynde as his² awen · he graue þaim aȝ.

Sextus Decimus [passus] *Alexandri*.

[Fol. 63.] þe secund³ day with a saute · a cite he takis, 3660
 Alexander takes
 the chief city of
 India. þe proddest ane at *Porus* · possessour was⁴ euire.
 He past in-to his palais · & in þe place findis
 þat semed no synfull saule · þe selcuthe to trowe.

¹ *Read* girt (struck)? cf. l. 3651.

² MS. sedū.

³ MS. he.

⁴ *In the margin.*

First fand he þare of fyne gold · a foure hundreth postis, He finds 400
pillars of gold,
 With crafti coronals & elene · coruen of þe same. 3665
 Be-twene þe pelers was piȝt · with precious leuys,
 Gilden wyne with *grapis* · of gracious stanes. and golden vines,
with grapes of
pearls
 Sum were of cristall clere · clustrid to-gedire; 3668
 Sum made ware¹ of Margarits · þe mast of þe werd;
 Sum was smeth smaragdȳns · & opire smaH gemmes, and other gems.
 And new nychometis · nemellus endentid,
 þat ware as semely · quen þai ware samen, 3672
 And all *pargestis* of plate · as pure as þe noble.
 þe Messedons in þam merkid · with þaire mekill brandis,
 And þe thinnest was a nynche thicke · quen þai ware The thinnest
plate of gold on
the walls was an
inch thick.
 þurȝe persed; 3675
 And þo ware strenkild with stanes · as sterne o þe heuȳn,
 With charbokl[e]s oȳ þe champ · & with chefe perles.
 Smeteȳ was smaragdȳns · in-to þe smeth werkis,
 And athill amylists als · in aungels licknes; There were
amethysts,
gates of ivory,
 Of Euor & of Olifants · was ordand þe *zatis*, 3680
 With barrers of ane Ebyȳ-tree · bonden with cheynes. and bars of ebony.
 þe Ebyȳ, as þe buke sais · brin will neuȳr,
 And growis in þe Iles of ynde · as Isodry tellis.
 þe solers was of Sypirs · all of a soȳte makid; 3684 The chambers
were of cypress.
 And Symolacres in þe sale · was sett vp-oȳ trones
 aH of glittirand gold · as gomes it were, There were
images on
thrones of gold.
 Discheualer with chaplets · of changand hewes;
 And ilka tulke a tabernacle · tildid was ouire, 3688
 And þat was grauen aH grayd · of gilden platis,
 Flamband all in filour · & fewlis en-blanchid,
 Mekely merkid & made · of aH manere of kyndis;
 And þa ware proudly depaynt · þe pennes & þe wingis, Also birds,
marvellously
[Fol. 63 b.]
painted,
 Of all colours to a-counte · as þai ere cled here; 3693 with bills of gold,
 Of fethirhame & aH fare · as feetely enjoyned,
 As þai ware shapen o þe scheH · to schew to oure eȳȳn.
 Bet was all of brent gold · þe billis & þe chaȳls, 3696
 And, quen as Porrus coȳ plese · in presens of lordis,

¹ MS. wade w; but corrected.

which sang by
magic art.

þai made as mery melody · & musik þai sanng^t
As in þe moneths of Mai · or mydsomere euyñ !
þare fand he vessale of value · to vyse out of nombre,

Also cups of gold,

Gurds & Goblets · of gold althire-finest, 3701
Coupis all of cristaH · & opire clere gemmes ;

with but few of
silver.

þai fande bot a fewe dele · forged of silu^{ir}.
þan rade he fra þa regions · & remewid his hostis ;

Alexander comes
to the Caspian
gates,

To þe 3atis of Caspy he come · & sett doun his tentis,
A lande, as þe buke tellis · a large & a noble, 3706
All sauand bot serpentis · & opire sere bestis.

and writes to the
queen of the
Amazons,

To þe mode qwene of Amazoyne · þan makis him þis
pistiH.

“ I, þat þe kyng^t am of kyngs · & kiddist of lordis,
Alexander, athil child · of Amon oure driȝtin, 3710
To Calistride þe conquirese · comfurth & ioye !

“ I suppose you
know we have
conquered Darius.

Oure weris & oure wirschips · & of oure wale notis,
How we¹ haue done ser Dary · & drepid his kniȝtis,
Couerd all his kyngdoms · & conquirid his landis,
I leue it to 3our ladyschip · þis lange noȝt vnknawen.
With Porras in þe playñ fild · proued haue my
strenthis, 3716

And opire fele, þat ware to faynt · oure force to with-
stand.

Therefore pay me
tribute.”

For-þi 3our landis, if 3ow list · to leuire fra oure handis,
Tas tite vn-to 3our tresory · & trebute vs pays.” 3719
þañ writis agayne þe wale quene · & on þis wyse spekis :

The queen replies :

“ I, Calistride, þe conquirese · þat kepis all þis endis,
With þe mery mai[d]ons² of Amazoyne · þe miȝtist in
erthe, 3722

[Fol. 64.]

And othire birdis ebland · þe biggist in erthe,
To þe modi kyng of Messedone · message of blisse.
3oure saule sa full of sapient · sedis & floures,

“ Thou knowest
the future.

þat all þe present is apert · puttis þou in mynde, 3726
And has of cases þat ere to come · a knowlage in dole.
For-þi oure soile or þou seke · vmse þe be tyme,

¹ MS. h we.

² MS. maños.

Quat tene & torfare may tide · & tent to pine ende.

þare werraid neuir with vs na wee · þat wirschip
achewid, 3730 All that war with
us are disgraced.

þat he ne was heried in hast · or had a heze schame.

For ilka lered man of lyue · him so lethir haldis,

If he þat for distruccion doun · in-to þe depe fallis.

Bot oure werkis & of oure wonyng-stede · if 3e wald
knaue, 3734

I sal declare 3ow þe cas · clene by þire writtis.

Oure inhabetting, *ser*, is in an Ille · & amed as a sercle, We live in an
island,
With rynand all aboute oure ercl · an endles wattle.

And we ere of females at þe fewis · foure & xx Mille,¹ 24,000 of us at
least.

And twa hundreth þar-to · & all of tried ladis. 3739

A preue planke is at a place · to pas & to entre,

Oure bernis bildis nozt vs by · bot ouir þe bourne
wyndis. There is a secret
bridge.

Bot 3et be-3onde ilka 3ere · make we vs festis, 3742

And thretti dais all be-dene · oure delitis hauntis.

If any consaue þar a knaf · þan kepis him his modire

Vij 3ere with-in oure-selve · & sendis him his fadir. If any of us have
a son, he is sent
to his father when
7 years old;
but we keep the
girls.

And be scho lyuir of a lasse · scho lengis in oure burze,

And is oure thewis of oure thede · thryfandly
enfourmed. 3747

Quen we to fezt with oure faes · fares out of wanes,

A hundreth thousand I hope we be · oñ horses enarmed, We can raise an
army of 100,000.
þa leues in oure lede · oure lithis to defend. 3750

Quen we repaire with þe palme · þan prayses vs oure feris.

And, buske 3e to oure bondsward · vs bataill to 3eld,

3et sall we maynly oñ þe marche · mete 3ow in² armes. [Fol. 64 b.]

To lithe vs aH if þou limpes · na louyng þou gettis,

For þou wynnes nozt bot wemen · þare-of na worde rysis. If you beat us,

Bot & god graunt vs þe gree · grete glorie haue we þan, you will win no
glory;

For þe athelist emperoure we wañ · euen at oure with. and otherwise,
you are dis-
graced."

Be nozt to sturten with þi sturte · to stryue vs a-gayn,

For many leres may þe limpe · slik as þou nozt wenis!"

¹ I. e. thousand.

² In the margin.

Alexander laughs, Quen he had lokid ouir þe lyne · he lazes at hire wordis,
and writes back. And to þat lady belyme¹ · þis lettre he writis. 3761

¶ “I, Alexander, þat am aire · of Amoñ him-selfe,
To þe maistres out of Amazoyne · many-fald ioyes !
Thre partys of þe proud werde · I playnly haue won,
Affrike & Asye · and Europ þat othire. 3765

“No man can
withstand us.

3it was neuire man a-poñ mold · oure miȝtis to with-
stand,

And feȝt with vs in² þe fild; · ȝow fallis þe same.
Bot be-cause we lufe ȝour comyng · we consall ȝow blyth
To pas out with ȝour paramours · & pere vs be-forne.
On Amoñ oure athill sire · an athe I ȝow make, 3770

But if you will
come to me,
I grant a safe
conduct.”

Of vs to suffire na sare · to sauely to wende,
Bathe oure gold ȝow to gefe · & of oure gud kniȝtis,
To mary to ȝoure maidens · & make þam a-vaunced.”
Sone as þai wist of his wiȝt · þai wiȝtly him sente 3774

Ten vncorsayd coltis · þe clenest of þe werd,
And as mony to amend · of milk-kyte stedis,
Of mony & of mekill quat · mayn giftis. 3777

They send him
presents.

Dame Calistride þe conquiris · comes with hire ladis,
Mas hire pes with oure prince · & pas to hire landis.

¶ Decimus septimus passus Alexandri.

[Fol. 65.]
News comes that
Porus has raised
another army.

þen come a sande to þis sire · in þe same tyme,
þat kyng porrus þe proud · with pers out of ynde
Was in þe bonds of Batriane · & eft³ had assemblid
Anopire ost of odmen · him eft oñ to ride. 3783

As hastely as he it herd · his ostis he flittis,
And athils harnest oñ hors · a hundreth & fyfti
Was chosene⁴ to chiftans · & all of chefe⁵ dukes,
Orland of oure emperoure · his ostis to lede. 3787

Alexander goes to
meet him.

þus pas he furthe with his princes · ser Porrus to mete,
In August eftir Iuli · as þe boke tellis.

¹ Read belyue. ² In the margin. ³ MS. oft or ost.

⁴ MS. chosens. ⁵ MS. chede, altered to chefe.

AH ware þai swollen of þe swete · & sweltild oñ þe soñ ; Some of his men
die of heat.
Sum in þaire harnais for hete · was honest for euire.

þai went be waldis & be wastis · þar watirs ware nane,
And armed bud þam aH bee · for angwischis o bestis, They meet with
snakes.
As colwers & for coltris · & crabbid snakis, 3794

And opire warlazes wild · þat in þe wod duelled.

As ai stremand sternes · stared all þaire wedis,

Of gai glitirand gold · glesenyd þaire schildis.

þai droze furth be dissert · & drinkles þai spiH, 3798 They have no
water.

Was nouthire waldis in þar walke · ne watir to fynde.

A kniȝt þat zephall was callid · fand in a cole schade A knight brings
water to Alex-
ander.

A litiH drysnyng of dewe · was droppid fra þe heuen,

þat it was in a holoze stane · & in his helme fillis,

And bringis it to oure bald kyng · to brigge with his hetis.

þan Alexander to þis athill · all þus he spekis, 3804

“ þis solayne sope if I sup · quethire sustene it may Alexander refuses
to drink,

þe menbris of þe Messedones · & of þe many Persens,

Or I my-selfe sall be serued · & þai sitt with nyfils?”

“ Sire, ȝe sall first be refreschid ” · faythly he sayd.

“ Quat ? & ȝe perisch ? ” quod þe prince · “ & pas out o

lyue ? 3809

Queþir euir me list þan to lefe · with langour & sorowe ? ” [Fol. 65 b.]

And hilds it down out of þe helme · befor his athils aH, and pours it out
on the ground,

þan slike a comfurth þam enclosed · for his kynd wordis,

As aH þe watir of þe werd · ware in þaire wambs hellid.

þan ferd þai furth tiH a flode · & findis aH þe strandis They come to
streams full of
reeds,
FuH of Redis, as I rede · rughere þan thornes. 3815

His folke feH to it fast · & freschely þai drynke,

Bot was na¹ renke at to it rañ · at euire rase eftire.

It was so keruand & kene ! · þan was his kniȝtis stroubid

Mare for þe bale of þaire bestis · &² brist of þaim-selfe.

For with his florantis olifants · him folowed a thousand, The elephants
and camels lack
water.
Of sithid chariotis & soo · & sextene hundreth, 3821

With coȝrres³ & with clene floure · camels and mules,

And out of nounbre of nowte · at nedid to his ostis,

¹ MS. r na.

² Put for than.

³ Sic.

- Thre C Mille¹ in thede · of thra men of armes.
 Be now þai ware so neȝe tane · þat þai for nede supposid,
 Sum of his awēn vryñ · & sum oñ Ireñ lickid, 3826
 þat it was sorowe any segge · þe siȝt to be-hald !
 þan aires him on *ser Alexander* · with angwischis & payne,
 Ay foloȝe furth by þe flumme · at I first tald,
 And at þe aȝtand houre · I ame, of þe day, 3830
 þan comes þaim to a castell · was closid in þe borne.
 It was a mervalous mote · made aH of redis,
 And foure forlange, I finde · þe flode was o brede.
 A fewe wīthin þe forslet · of folke þare a-perid, 3834
 Waiteand out at wyndows · to wondire on his ostis.
 Sire *Alexander* bad his men · aske þaim of ynde,
 And frayne quare þai find miȝt · any fresch watir ;
 [Fol. 66.] And þai þañ hent in þaire hedis · & hidd þam belyue.
 And he felly with flane · flingis at þe wallis, 3839
 ȝit for na speH at he spirid · spek wald þai neuire.
 And þan comandis he his kniȝt[is] · kenely to swymme,
 And þai aH bare, saue þe breke · with brandis iñ hand,
 þan thringis in on a throw · thretty & seuyñ. 3843
 Als fast as þai þe forthing-dole · had of þe flode past,
 þan girds þare vp fra þe ground · & grymly þaim woundis
 Of Seeles & of see-Bules · a swyth grete nounbre,
 Droȝe þañ down in-to þe depe · & drouned þañ for euire.
 þañ ȝede he þine with his erles² · & egirly him thristis ;
 Lebarde lendis þaim agaynes · leons & beres ; 3849
 Dragons & dromondaris · & of þir derfe Tigirs
 Fra morne to þe mirke niȝt · þaim maynly assailed.
 þus raȝt he fra þis reuīr · be many ruȝe waies 3852
 To it was meten to þe mere · to myd-ouīr-vndorne.
 þan come he streke oñ a staunke · þe store me tellis,
 Was neuīr na hony in na hyue · vndire heuen swettir.
 A foure furelange or fyue · it was of fuH brede, 3856
 Umby-thorned³ with a thike wod · thre mile a-boute,

¹ I.e. Three hundred thousand.² MS. el erles, *but corrected*.³ MS. Umby-thonred.

- Was aH of þe Rede ryse · as I redd first ;
 And þat he cuttis down clene · & kindils in fyris.
 He gert tild vp his tentis · be þat terne syde, 3860 They pitch their
 þoȝt þare a longe quile to lie · & lachen his esee. tents.
 þe mone ouir þe montayns · meryly it schynes
 Or he miȝt drinke any drope · & þen his dole neȝes.
 þan comes þare-out creuesses · of manykins hewis, 3864
 Scorpions þaim to seere · & scalid neddirs, Scorpions and
 And þai so large & so laith · & so lowd schrikis, snakes appear,
 þat all þe soile of þa sidis · of þe sound ryngis. [Fol. 66 b.]
 Dragons dryfes down o driȝt · fra þe derfe hillis, 3868 and crested
 With kene carefuH crie · and crestis on þaire hedis, dragons
 Grisely gapand & grim · with gilden brestis,
 And flawmes feruent as fyre · floȝe fra þaire eȝen ; with flaming eyes.
 þai drewe toward oure douth · with dedly blastis. 3872
 Sir Alexander & his ost · was arȝed vnfaire, Alexander com-
 Was þare na freke in þe fild · þat faithly he leued. forts his men.
 To be deuowrid & devoidid · & venguste for euire.
 þe kyng þan comfurthid his kniȝtis · all if he care þoled :
 “ Mi bald baratours,” he baȝt · “ a-baste noȝt ȝoure hertis ;
 Seis ensampill at my-selfe · & seke ȝe na ferre,¹ 3878
 Bot hedis haly to my hand · & harmes þar-ef tire.”
 A brand & a briȝt schild · bremely he hentis, He seizes a sword
 Feȝtis freschely & fast · with þa feH bestis, and shield,
 Dasches dragons down · geuys þaim depe woundis,
 Slaes of þa serpentis · many sadd hundreth. 3883 and slays hun-
 þan bildid of his bachelers · & braidis to þaire wapeñ ; dreds of serpents.
 If þai ware mased & amayd · maynely þaim feȝt.
 ȝit was þar twenti þat time · tangid to dede,
 And þat þe comliest kniȝtis · at þe kyng ledis ; 3887 Twenty of his
 Of athiH archars als · as þe buke tellis, best knights
 A-boute a thretty in þat thede · tharned þaire lyfes. perish.
 þus many deid of his douth · as þe boke² tellis,
 And him limpis all þe loose · be þe lattire end. 3891
 Now comes a company of Crabbe-fische · as calues gret, Great crabs
 appear.

¹ MS. ferre.² MS. beke.

- Meuand of þis marras · oure men to assaiH,
 With backis, as þe buke sais · biggir & hardere
 þan any comon cogiH-stane · or cocatryse scales. 3895
- [Fol. 67.]
 No lances could
 pierce them. Queñ kniȝt's of oure conquirours · kest at þam lances,
 Was nane so wele-stelid poynt · at þam perse miȝte.
 Bot gomes with þaire greues in twa · in þe gledis spurned,
 And aH at left ware o lyue · in-to þe¹ loȝe entirs. 3899
 Be þai had fyneschid þis fiȝt · was ferre in with euyñ,
 Foure houres full farne · & þe fiȝte² neghes.
- Lions next
 appear; And leons quyte as lylly · lent þam agayñ,
 Of bodis biggire þan bules · berand vnfaire. 3903
 Oure kniȝt's at þe first come³ · clenly þaim sloȝe,
 Alto-bretind þaim oñ bent · & broȝt þaim oñ flȝt.
- and then wild
 boars, Wild berys in⁴ þe wast · fra þe wodd comes,
 With ilka tenefull tothe · as tyndis of⁵ harowis. 3907
 A cubete lenth, sais þe clause · cald was þe lest.
 þai seke out be sundres · sexti to-gedire,
- together with
 savages having
 six hands each. With wild meñ of þe wast · & women e-bland,
 With sex handis, & soo · sett out of kynd. 3911
 þai held in hettirly · & hurt's of his kniȝt's;
 And þai with brandis & bowis · bremely þaim wound's,
 Sloȝe of þa sauagyus · a sowme out of nombre,
 And many scopid into þe scoghe · without seath mare.
 Sire Alexander & his ost · angwisch enduris, 3916
 Was waik, as na wondre was · & wery for-foȝteñ.
- Alexander lights
 fires all round the
 pool. And þam he bedis at a braide · to beet vp þe stank,
 With-out his ost ouir all · horrible fires. 3919
- A black-headed
 beast appears, þan come a beste of a busche · with a blak heued,
 Mad & merkid as a Meere · þe mast of þe werd,
 Fere fersere þan an olifant · as we find writteñ,
 Stayrand on to þe staunke⁶ · þe stour to asaiH. 3923
 þis breme best bare · as⁷ þe buke tellis,
 Before forne in þe fronte · thre fell tyndis,

¹ MS. to, with in and þe in the margin.² MS. fiȝte, altered to fiȝte.³ MS. cl come.⁴ In the margin.⁵ MS. l of.⁶ Here follows to þe stank, struck out.⁷ MS. as as.

Hedous horns & hoge · & hiȝt in ȝaire tonge
 Adanttrocay *with* aȝ meñ · as I am enfourmed.¹ 3927 having three
horns.
 Before scho drank of ȝis dam · his douth sho assailld,
 And oure kyng *with* his carpe · his kniȝtis he gladis.
 Aȝt & tuenti meñ of armes · onone scho delyuird,
 Bernes was diȝt ȝe deth · *with* dintis enoghe. 3931 The beast slays
28 men.
 ȝan mys out of ȝis marras · as any mayñ foxes² Then appear mice
as large as foxes ;
 Come furth, & fedd ȝaim in-fere · of ȝe ded corsen.
 Aȝ at was bitten of ȝa best · was at a brunt dede,
 Bot ȝit ȝai noyed bot a nykid · to nane ȝat was ermed.
 ȝan floȝe ȝar by ȝe firmament · of ȝa foule Backes,
 Als store & as stalword · as ȝire sediȝ dowis 3937 also bats as large
as doves,
With mekiȝ maȝten teeth · as it of meñ ware ;
 And at vn-armed³ was · ȝai asperly wondid,
 Of sum ȝai nyppid fra ȝe nebb · ȝe nose be ȝe eȝen,
 Of sum ȝai ete of ȝaire eris · euen by ȝe rotis, 3941 who bit the
soldiers.
 Sum ȝai luggid of ȝe lippis · ȝe lire fra ȝe chekis,
 Bot ȝar bitis, as ȝe buke sais · blemest na kniȝtis.
 ȝan come a fliztir in of fowls · as fast as it dawid,
 To vise on as voutres · as vermeon hewid, 3945 Next come birds
of a red colour,
 ȝaire boukis & ȝar bathire fete · was of blak sable,
 And did bot plaid by ȝe pepiȝ · & fed ȝaim on fyschis. but they only
devour fishes.
 Queñ he had voidid ȝis vermyñ · & vencust ȝat of ynde,
 Out of ȝis perlaous⁴ place · he past *with* his ost 3949 Alexander comes
to Bactria.
[Fol. 63.]
 In-to the boundis of Bactry · ȝar bildid he his tentis.
 ȝare reches was of redde gold · & many riche gemes ;
 And clene all ȝat contre · qwen ȝai his come wist,
 ȝai mett him full manerly · & mekely resayued 3953
With presentes of pirre · & many proude giftes,
 And thretti dayis in ȝat thede · he tholes & abidis.
 A sertane folke was in ȝat soile · ȝat Serres ere callid,
 And all ȝe lyndis in ȝat land · *with* leves⁵ as wolle.
 And so ȝire Serres, at I said · ȝaim in ȝe Somere gedirs,
 And makis ȝaim wedis ȝar-of · to were for wintris blastis.

¹ MS. in enfourmed. ² MS. faxes. ³ vn in the margin.⁴ Sic ; read peralous. ⁵ MS. levys, altered to leves.

- þire baratours bawers · ere bremlý reioyed 3960
 Of þe conquest of þire cōcatrices · & of þa kene bestis ;
 And now he caire[s] fra þat kithe · & comes in a stounde
 They find Porus. Quare Porrus with his powere · oñ a playñ lengis.
 Sire Alexander & his ðst · caires¹ þaim a-gayne² 3964
 With brade³ baners & briȝt · & bragging of troumpis.
 Apon þe bald bocifaloñ · before his meñ aH
 He flingis out a forelange · his feris to assaile.
 They attack his Indians. þe Persens putt þaim in pres · & þe proude grekis ; 3968
 þe Medis & þe Messedons · maynely þai feȝt,
 þai swey down as swiftly · þa swart men of ynde,
 As euire did corne in a croft · be-fore a kene sithe.
 Sir Porus chal- Quen sir Porrus saȝe his princes · in þe prese faile, 3972
 lenges Alexander to single combat. þan aires he out be-for his ost : oñ Alexander callis :
 “ It comes,” he said, “ to na kyngt · ne kidd emperoure
 To latt his pepill þus pas · & perisch in ydiH ;
 It fallis mare faire him þe fiȝt · to fynesch him-selfe.
 Forþi lat stediH aH oure stoure · & stedd þañ esoundire,
 þi semble o þe taa syde · & myne oñ þe tothire ; 3978
 [Fol. 68 b.] Lat vs twa termyn þe taite · be-twene vs alane.
 If I be vencust in þe vaile · & voidid of my lyfe,
 Lat aH my seggis & soile · be to þi-selfe ȝolden ;
 And if þou failis in þe fild · & I þe floure wynñ, 3982
 Latt þañ þine erlis & þine erd · myne empire obeyi.”
 Alexander was Thus porrus in his hiȝe pride · to oure kyngt spekis,
 but a small man, For he was litiH & laghe · him laythly dispices.
 For quen he wañ to wax · þe writt me recordis, 3986
 only three cubits Thre cubettis fra þe croune down · his cors had a lenghte.
 high. þe person of ser Porrus · past him þat hiȝt twyse,
 Porus was at least six cubits He feetis him forth in his force · & in his faire hiȝte.
 in height. Bot þe prowis & þe prouidens · & of þe pure thewis
 þat lurkis with-in þis lede · full litiH he kennes. 3991
 Now is þe partise in pes · & þai þe place dele ;
 Aithire kyngt with his cause · encontres oñ othire.

¹ MS. a cayres.² MS. a gyñ gayne : corrected.³ MS. brade brade ; corrected.

Sire Porrus with a proude swerd · him on þe pān strikis
 So snelle at he snatirs with · nere snaypid him for euire.
 þan kastis vp a kene erie · þe kniȝt^{is} out of ynde, 3996
 For he was dased of þe dint · & half dede him semyd.
 Porrus, as a prince suld · persayued þar latis,
 Turnes him toward his tulk^{is} · & titely rehet^{is}.
 Sire Alexander him avises · & his aande takis, 4000
 As bald barratour & breme · his brand vp he lift^{is},
 With bathe his handis in-to þe brayne · his basenet he
 cleuys, 4002
 And he fallis doun fey · & fynes in þat stound. 4002*
 þe pepill of ser Porrus · quen þai [him] pas saȝe, 4003
 With aȝ manere of men · maynly þai fiȝt.
 “A! wriches!” quod þe wale kyng · & wisely he spek^{is},
 “Eftir þe deth of ȝour duke · quat deynes ȝowe to stryue?
 Wete ȝe wele,” quod þe wee · “be werrayours laȝes,
 þat quen þe gouernoure is gane · þaȝ is þe gomes wastid^l.”
 “Sire, it is better for to bate · & on þe bent faile, 4009
 þan se þis rewthe on ȝour¹ renkis · & reft be ȝour¹ gudis.”
 “Sirs, blynes of ȝour bataile · & bowes to ȝoure landis;
 ȝoure fermes & ȝoure fraunches · I frely ȝow grant;
 For ȝe haue cockid for ȝour kyng · ȝe sall no care suffire!”
 And þan callid him on knese · & kest doun þaire armes.
 þai come to þis conquirour · comend^l him as driȝtin,
 þan sett he sales vp of² silke · & sacrifice makis. 4016
 Sire Porrus, as him wele feȝt · he proudely enteris,
 And aȝ þe fey in þe fild · & here a fitt ende.

Porus strikes
Alexander's
helmet severely.

Alexander slays
Porus.

The Indians con-
tinue to fight.

Alexander re-
proves them;

[Fol. 69.]

but grants them
their liberty for
their bravery.

Porus is buried.

Decimus octauus passus Alexandri.

þan aires he furth with his erlis · & entris aȝ Ile,
 Quare fir Exidraces as Ermet^s · inhabet in caues,
 A progenie of pore meȝ · þat neuir pride haunt^{is},
 And ȝit þe gentill genosophis · þaȝ in þe gest callis.
 Is þare na bost þaȝm ebland · ne bataills vsyd, 4023

Alexander comes
to the isle of
Gymnosophists.

¹ Read our.

² In the margin.

- Nouthire cites in to sytt · cellis, nor na tounes, 4024
 They live in caves,
 and go naked.
 Bot crepis in-to creuesse · & craggis oñ hillis,
 And ay is naked [as] a nediH · as natour þam schapis.
 þe kyng of þat contre · quen he þe come heres
 Of þis prince & his parray · þis pistiH he him sendis.
 They write to
 Alexander.
 “We, corruptible creatours · & cald as be-fore, 4029
 To þe mode mañ of Messedone · aH þus-gate I write.
 Sire, it is sayd to oure-selfe · with sere mens tongis,
 How þou comes in-to oure kith-ward · to cumbre vs
 with care, 4032
 [Fol. 69 v.] And þat Vs wondres, I-wis · for wyñ may 3e nouthire¹
 Nouthire gold ne na gude · at euer gode fourmed.²
 “We have no
 gems or jewels.
 Sen at we Ioy nouthire gemmes · ne Iuwels in cofirs,
 Pelour, pirre, ne perle · ne na proude wedis, 4036
 Ne sauand bot to sustene with · oure awen sary craftis,
 What can ye win
 from us?”
 Quat in þis time may 3e take · if 3e oure termes entre?
 If 3e wiH seke in-to oure soile · & sett vs agayne,
 Oure simpilnes & oure sobirte · forsake saH we neuire.”
 Quen he had lokid ouire þe lefe · a lettre he in-dities,
 þat he aproched aH with pes · & in na plite ellis.
 Alexander finds
 them living
 miserably in
 caves,
 Quen he was entrid þar erde · & sees þaim all nakid,
 And woñ as it ware wildirnes · in wastis & greues,
 Darke in dennes vndire dounes · & in derne holis,
 And bath þar bridis & þar barnes · with bestes oñ þe
 fellis,³ 4046
 and asks if they
 have no houses.
 þan Alexander at þam askis · & all him a-wondres :
 “Haue 3e na houses ne na hames · ne holis in to bery?”
 And þar þai schewid him in schurrys · to schellis & to
 caues, 4049
 Said, “here we ilka day dueH · deuyse how 3ow likis.”
 He is sorry for
 his poverty,
 Quen he þaire simpilnes sees · he sorozes in his hert,
 Pleyne of þaire pouerte · & profurs þaim fuH faire,
 and offers them
 whatever they
 like to ask.
 “Quat euire 3e wiH in all þe werd · or I wend, askis,
 And I sall gladly 3ow geue · with a gud wiH.” 4054

¹ Read *neuir*?² MS. *fourmed*.³ MS. *ild fellis*; corrected.

"Sire, neuire to dee," *quod* þai þaṅ · "bot euire dure
o lyue,

They ask for
immortality,

þat we desire ȝow bedene · & þan do vs na mare."

"Be driȝtin, sirs, I am a duke · dedelike my-selfe,
Forþi vnde[d]lynes to dele · I dowe be na ways." 4058

which he cannot
give.

"Now seṅ it worthis," *quod* þa wees · "wriche, for to
die,

Quarto hizis þou fra half to halfe · & all þis harme
wirkis?" 4060

"Sire, be my croune," *quod* þe kyng · "þe cause at I
haue [Fol. 70.]

Is purly gods *prouidens* · predestayned it is before.

Ȝe se, wele seldoṁ is þe see · *with* him-selfe turbild

Alexander says,
"The sea is raised
by winds;

Bot *with* þir walowand windis ; · my wiȝt ware to rifte,

Bot a-nopir gast, & noȝt my gast · þar-of my gast lettis ;"

so is my spirit
stirred by a
higher spirit."

And wendis a-way *with* þat word · & wemles þaim leuys.

þe secunð day *with* vp soṅ · he *with* his sowme neȝes,

Quare þire Imagis ere þat Arculious · had in aṅ Ile rerid.

He finds statues
set up by
Hercules.

þe tane was aȝ athiȝ gold · of siluir þe tothire, 4069

Twelve cubettis fra þe topp̄ down · & twa was þe brede.

He made his pepiȝ þaim to perse · to proue þaṁ *with-in*,

Quethire þai ware hologhe or hale · & hale he þaṁ fyndis,

Saze þaim thiķe þurȝe-out · & aithire thriȝ stoppis,

And fillis þaṁ florentis · a fyftene hundreth. 4074

þaṅ drafe he þine *with* his dukis · in a deyne entris,

He comes to a
dark desert.

A wilsoṁ wast & wild · & wondirly colde, 4076

As mirke as any mydniȝt · queṅ þe mone failes,

þat vnnethes ken may a kniȝt · to se to his ferē.

Fifty days be desert · he foundis *with* his folke, 4079

Tiȝ he come blesenand oṅ a brym · was welland hate,

He next finds a
hot river,

And oṅ þe ferre halfe of þe bourne · was wemen oṅ hors,

þat frely faire ware of face · bot foule ware clethid.

Sum beris all of brent gold · brandis in þaire handis,

and finds there
armed women.

Sum bataiȝ-axes & *with* bowes · aȝ of briȝt siluir,

For brase is nane *with* þa bonds · ne no bige Ireṅ ;

Ne neuire na berne þaṁ ebland · as þe buke tellis. 4086

He cannot cross
the river for the
dragons.

þaṅ wald his¹ pepiH & his princes · haue past ouir þe
bourne,

[Fol. 70 b.]

And miȝt noȝt for þe morsure · & maynyng of bestis,
It was so borely & brade · & bred full of ydres, 4089
Of dragons & of othire deuyls · & doukand neddirs.

He comes to a
dried lake.

þan caires furth oure conquiour · with his kid ostis,
Lede þaṅ be þe left side · of þe lande of ynde, 4092

Sone was he dreuyṅ with his dukis · in-to a dryi meere,
Was full of gladen & of gale · & of grete redis.

þan snyzes þar, out of² þat snyth hiH · as with a snayles
pas,

He finds a
monstrous
animal,

A burly best with a bake · as bedeH as a saȝe, 4096

Kene tethe as a knyfe · a cowdrife breste,

Of sembalaunce as a see-bule · & sloȝe him twa kniȝtis.

which his knights
kill.

Wald þar na brande in him bite · ne no bigge launce,

Bot alto-maukid hire with maces · & mellis of Ireṅ.

A twenti dais ouire ten · with torfare þai ride ; 4101

To þe formast forest of ynde · oure folke³ all aprochiH.

Euyṅ at þe flode of Eumare · oure emperoure logis,

And at þe xj houre · I ame, as it ware, 4104

A great number of
elephants attack
them.

Of Olifants out of þe ways · aṅ endles nounbre

Come with a carefuH crie · oure kniȝtis to assaiH.

A-poṅ þe bald Bucifaloṅ · he bremely ascendis,

Bedis of his swiers ga swyth · & swyne with þaim take.

þai ware a-baiste all belyue · as þe buke tellis, 4109

þat durst na berne oṅ þe bent · a-bide bot him-selfe.

Alexander com-
forts his men.

“Be noȝt a-baist, my bachelars” · þe bald kyng sayd,

“For with þe sweling of þe swyne · we saH þaim aH
voide.” 4112

And so þai did al bedene · & sum oure douth sloȝe,

Take out þe tuskis & þe tethe · & ternen of þe skinnis.

þat oþer dai be desert · þaṅ destaned to ride,

Be þe wild ynde woddis · & wemen þai faund 4116

[Fol. 71.]

With bare hedes as a barne · & berdis to þe pappis,

¹ MS. *repeats* his.

² MS. *if, altered* to of.

³ *In the margin.*

- And had na hatt^r þam to hele · bot hidis of best^s.
 His seggis sesid of þam sum · & to him-selfe broȝt,
 And he þaⁿ askid þa^m of ynde · & at þa^m enquires,
 Quat was þaire viaunce in þa vales · “*ser*, venyson,” þai
 said, 4121 They next find
bearded women,
who live by hunt-
ing.
- “Slike as we haunt in þar holis · with hunting in tymes.”
 þen ferd þai furth all in fere · & to fild comys,
 Euyⁿ to þe heued of Eumaure · as I first rekend. 4124
 þare fand þai bernys & bridis · & a^{ll} bale-nakid,
 At was resild as a resch · & roghe as a¹ bere. They find naked
people,
 3it was þe custom of þar kinde · as þe clause tellis,
 Als wele to bide in þe bourne · as oⁿ þe brale lande. who are amphi-
bious.
 Onone as þai oⁿ Alexander · & oⁿ his ost waites, 4129
 þai flee as fast in-to flode · & to þe founce plangid.
 þan ferd þai furthe be þe frithis · fiftene dais.
 And sa þai willid in-to a wod · was fult [of] wild
 best^s, They come to a
wood of rhi-
noceroses.
- Rynoceros, as I rede · þe romance þam callis ; 4133
 And þai assembild oⁿ oure seggis · bot þai ware some
 drepid.
- þaⁿ sexti days with his seggis · he soȝt be disert,
 Till he was woⁿ in-to a werd · a^{ll} of wast fildis, 4136 Next, to a vast
plain.
 Quare nouthire holt^s was ne hilles · ne no hiȝe [h]eggis,
 Bot a^{ll} as plan^r · & as playⁿ · as a playⁿ table.
 Eueⁿ at þe elleuynt houre · or euynsange tyme, 4139
 Quen he had tild v^p his tent^s · turbils þe welkeⁿ ; A great storm
arises.
 þe semblant sorowis of þe soile · & þe soⁿ wadis,
 þe werd^e wannes at a wa^p · & þe wedire gloumes.
 þan fo^{ll} a flizt & a fire · betwene þe foure wyndis,
 Aquiloun & Affrike · & ewrus þe thrid, 4144 Four winds blow
at once,
 Vultur^{us} þe violent · þat voidis down þe leuys,
 þe south & of a^{ll} sydis · sadly þai mete,
 A breme blast² oⁿ þe bent · as þe buke tellis,
 þat a^{ll} þaire tents it to-terid · & turned down þe hallis ; which destroy
their tents.
 þar paulyoⁿs of pirre · þaire payntid clathis 4149

¹ MS. inserts *abr*, *struck through*. ² MS. A breme a blast.

The army is
disheartened.

It alto-schatird, & to-scailed · þaṁ in sondire.
þaṁ was kniȝt's of þe case · kenely affraid,
And ilka segge be him-selfe · said¹ vn-to othire, 4152
“ þe writhe of þe wale god · I wate, oñ vs liȝt's,
For oure founding ouire his forbod · so ferre to þe est.”
þan comforthis þaim þe conquirour · & carpis oñ þis
wyse,
Bad, “ baise ȝow noȝt, my baratours · ne bat's noȝt ȝour
hert's, 4156

Alexander tella
them it is only
the equinoctial
gale.

It is na greme of oure gode · ne grefe at vs fallis,
Bot þe entring of þe equinox · it euire elike-dele kyndils.”
Sone as þe wedire wex wele · & þe wynde pesid,
As, be þe bale neuir so breme · it blynn'es at þe last,
þan ferd þai forth fra fild to fild · & freschly assemblis
All at was sperpolid on þe spene · & spilt with þe blast's.
¶ þan fandis he furth, as I fynd · fyue & twenti days,
Come to a velans vale · þare was a vile cheele, 4164
Quare flaggis of þe feH snawe · feH fra þe heuen,

They next come
to a cold valley,
where snow falls.

þat was a-brade, sais þe buke · as batt's ere of woH.
þan bett he many briȝt fire · & lest it blin nold,
And made his folk with þaire feete · as flores it to trede ;
þe hete was þaṁ a hoge helpe · & hettirly it void's,
And ȝit was perischist, or he past · a part of his kniȝt's.

They light large
fires.

[Fol. 72.]

þaṁ vmby-clappis þaim a cloude · & couirs aH ouire,
As any pynaund pik · þe planet's it hidis, 4172
And þat so thestir & so thik · a thre dais eftir,
þai saȝe na leme of þe lyft · ne liȝt of þe soñ.

A thick cloud
surrounds them.

Sparks of fire fall
like rain,

þan feH þar fra þe firmament · as it ware feH spark's,
Ropand down o rede fire · þaṁ any rayñ thikire ; 4176
þaire cabons & þar couertours · it kindils oñ a lowe,
And aH þar pauillions of pall · it to poudire wast's.

which burn up
trappings and
banners.

It tinds on tend lowe · trappour of stede,
And many costious costis · consumes in-to askis, 4180
Pages & baners · it blemyschid & swellis,
And quare it neȝes oñ þe nakid · it noȝis for euire.

¹ In the margin.

- þan knelis down oure conquirour · & callis on his driȝtins, Alexander prays,
 Giffe þam siluīr & so · & ¹sens at þaim castis. 4184
 Vnneth his ²prayer was past · quen purid aȝ þe cloudis,
 And stint was all þe stikiȝ stormes · in a stand-quile. and the storm
 þen rade he in aray · remowis his ostis, ceases.
 To þe grete flode of Gangem · & graythid þar his tents. Alex. and Dind.,
 His bernis blischis ouir þe bourne · & on þe banke saȝe p. 6.
 Quare thre wees in a wraa · welk þaim allane. 4190 They come to the
 Sire Alexander bad aȝ athil · aske þeȝ of ynde, Alex. and Dind.,
 Quase þai ware, quethin þai were · & of quat kind. p. 7.
 And þai him swiftly swarid · with a swete steuȝn, Three men ap-
 “We ere bald Bragmenys · þat neuir bale thoȝt.” who say they are
 þan list þe lord on his lyfe · haue with þat ledis spoken, Brahman.
 Miȝt he haue woȝn ouir þe watir · for wounding of bestis,
 As see-bule & serpentis · & soukand locerhes, 4197 [Fol. 72 b.]
 Bathe eddirs & asceres · & atterand wormes.
 þire Cocatricesse in creuensis · þar kindiles þai brede, The river is full
 Scorpions many ³score · scautand neddirs; 4200 of crocodiles,
 And all-way bot in angwiȝch ⁴ · as þe buk sais, scorpions, and
 And saue þe Iolite of Iuly · þai Iowke in þa strandis. July and August.
 Queȝ he ³persayued be na poynt · at he pas miȝt,
 þan was he sary in þat sithe · & sadly he pleynd,
 Callid to his carpentars · & of his kid wriȝtis, 4205
 Bad make him boun at a braide · a barge aȝ of redis. Alexander has a
 Quen it was done at his diuȝse · & draȝen ouer with boat made, and
 hidis,
 Pared & parreld at his pay · pickid & taloghid, 4208 Alex. and Dind.,
 þaȝ bowes þarin a bachelere · to bragmeyn he wendis, p. 8.
 To þe souereayȝ sire of þe soile · & sesid him þis pistiȝ. sends a letter
 ¶ “I, þat kyng am of kyngis · & crowned of lordis, across.
 Alexander þe aire · of Amone oure driȝtin, 4212 “Alexander, son
 And of þe quene Olimpades · þat I am of sprongeȝ, of Ammon, greets
 To þe, ser Dindyȝ, on þi dese · dities of Ioye. king Dindimus.
 Sen we chapid out of childhede · & cheued to eldire,

¹ Above the line.² MS. Vnneth is his; *with* is underlined, and his above the line.³ In the margin.⁴ Read august.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 9.

þat we cuthe any-gates gesse · betwyx gud & ih, 4216
 Syne was oure wiþ ay wiþ witt · to warisch oure saule,
 And kest out all vncleennes · & clene it deuoidid̃;
 For þe philisophour in his fourme · vs feetly declares,
 þat saze wiþ-uten sapience · it seldoum aproues. 4220
 And it is wayued̃ vs to wete · & warned now late,
 þat aþ oure leuyng & oure lazes · 3e wetirly dispice,
 And 3our manars fra all othire mens · so mekiþ ere
 deffirrid,

[Fol. 73.]
 You differ from
us greatly.

It cannot harm
you to impart
knowledge about
yourselves.

þat nouthire in see ne in soile · seke 3e na helpe. 4224
 Bott deynd it 3our doctryne · bedene vs to write,
 3oure customes & 3oure conscience · & of 3our clene
 thewis,

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 10.

Take the case of
a bright candle;
its light is not
lessened, though
it lights others."

We miȝt sum connyng per cas · chaē of 3oure wordis,
 And 3our lare of a leke · suld neuire þe les worth. 4228
 Slike similitude of science · is sett, as of kynde,
 As of a blesand brand · or of a briȝt candiþ.

For many liztis of a lizt · is liztid othire-quile,
 And ȝit þe lizt at þaþ liztis · is liztid as before." 4232
 Queþ he had waytid ouer þis writtis · his mynd he
 remembriþ,

Dindimus sends
an answer.
 "Dindimus to
Alexander.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 11.

And be þe same sandismaþ · him send sike anothire.
 ¶ "I, *ser* Dindimus, a duke · þat neuire deere wroȝt,
 Blith berne on my benke · þe Bragmeyns maistir, 4236
 To þe modi kyng of Messedone · þis maundment I
 write.

We have dis-
cerned your
desire.

Sire Alexander, þe athiþ · at aþ þe werd loutis,
 Sire, þe tenour of þi titiþ · I trow, be na mare,
 Bot any wisdoþ & witt · þu willis in þi saule. 4240
 And bettir it is to þine a-bofe · þaþ buschels of siluþ,
 And mare passand of prisse · þaþ all þi proude rewmes.
 Sen 3e discrecion disire · we depely 3ow pray;

No king can
dispense with
wisdom.

For a kyng wiþ-uten cunnyng¹ · he can noȝt distreyne
 His subiectis, & to be² subi[et]is · as subiectis aȝe,
 Bot subiectis tiþ his subiectis · his subiectis him makis.

¹ MS. cunnyng.

² In the margin.

þou prayes vs to þi¹ person · a pistiH to² write 4247

Of all oure lefyng³ & oure lazes · & oure land techis ;

Quare-of þe proces to preue · vnpossible it were, [Fol. 73 b.]

And if we did it to dome · it dose 3ow na gude. 4250

For þi tent is aH on terrandry³ · & tourment of armes,

In bost & in bobans · in bataills & stryuis,

A craft till oure condicions · at a-cordis bot litiH ;

For simplines & surquetry · a-sewis nozt to-gedire. 4254

Bot leue 3e nozt we be to heze · ne hauten of wiH

To steryn or to sturtyñ · or sterid to enuy ;

A partie of oure propertes · & of oure pure thewis

3it sall I send 3ow to say · sen 3e me sozt haue. 4258

Your customs
agree not with
ours.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 12.
Yet think not I
grudge telling
you.

¶ Decimus Nonus passus Alexandri.

Sire, we þe Bragmeyns blode · birdis & othire,

A lowly lyfe in oure land · we lede, and a clene.

All ydolatris in oure Ile · ere vtirly devoidid,

& to na syñ vndire soñ · a-sent we vs neuire. 4262

AH þat ouire mesure is to mekill · emell we declyne,

And nouthire couet we na corne · bot þat vs kind

leues,

þat is þe filling⁴ of fode · þat ilk flesch askis, 4265

And þar-to suffirand oure-selfe · & sobire as a maydeñ.

Hald we no hors for na harow · ne na horned stottis,

Ne nauthire sondire we þe soile · ne na sede sawis,

Seke we neuire no sustinance · to saue with oure lyuis.

Set we na saynes in þe see · ne sese we na fischis,

Ne nouthire hunt we ne hauke · ne hent we na foules,

Bot sike as growis oñ þe gronde · with-uten gomes

werke. 4272

And þat we fede vs with in-fere · & fillis fuH oure tables,

A dayntefull diete · þat damage vs neuire.

We are lowly
Brahmans.

We live a simple
life.

We plough not.
We sow not.

We fish not.

We hunt not.

[Fol. 74.]

We desire no
dainties.

¹ In the margin. ² MS. inserts pis, struck through.

³ MS. terranrry, alt. to terrandry.

⁴ MS. filning, corr. to filling.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 13.

We never eat too
much,

and are always in
health.

We need no
medicine.

We die at a fixed
age.

We use no fire.

We flee lusts.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 14.

We slay the foes
within us;

thou fightest
against outward
foes.

[Fol. 74 b.]

Haue we no cures of courte · ne na cointe¹ sewes,²
Swanes ne na swete thing¹ · to sweH oure wames. 4276
All superfluyte of soule · & surfet vs wlat^{is},

To pegge vs as a peny hoge · þat praysis noȝt oure laȝes.

Forþi failis vs all infirmit[e]s · of fleuyre & of ells,
Ne for na febiH at we fele · na fysyke vs nedis. 4280

Vs mistris neuire na medeyne · for malidy oñ erthe,
Bot ay as fresche & as fere · a[s] fisch quen he plays.

Oure lord has lemett vs elike · þe lenthe of oure days,

For þar leues na lede in oure lande · langire þan othire.

If he be sexti ȝere of sowme³ · þat a segge last^{is}, 4285

His successoure has bot þe same · & þan þe saule ȝeld^{is}.

We chaufe vs at na Chymmneys · for chelis of wintir,
Ne comes na clathis oñ oure corps · for na cald wyndis.

We bede noȝt to blemysch oure blode · with bodely
dissires. 4289

Perseuerance of pacience · & pes we reserue;

Oure inward ennys ilkane · we inwardly drepis,
þat is to say, aH þe syñ · at solp may þe saule, 4292

As surfet, surquidry, & slawth · þe seuyñ aH bedene;

So þat oure werraours without · vs worthis noȝt at drede.

For wele sonere is a cite · sesid, or a casteH, 4295

þat segid is oñ bath sidis⁴ · [than] þat segid⁵ is with-out.

And þou wrikis bot oñ þa witerward · & worthis þaim
ouire,

And suffirs so within þi flesche · þe faes of þe saule.

And we sitt all-way so sure · be sand & be wattir,

þat na supowett vndire soñ · seke we vs neuire, 4300

Ne schroude to scheld with oure schap · bot þe schire
banes,

And with þe braunches of þe bowis · þat beris vs oure
fodis.

Haue we na deliteable drinke · of diuerse wyne,

¹ MS. comite; but indistinct.

² The former e in sewes is above the line.

³ The me added above the line.

⁴ MS. sidid, alt. to sidis.

⁵ MS. gegid, alt. to segid.

- Bot watir of a wale weH · or of a wild bourne. 4304 We drink of a well.
 And þat sullepe sire · at sett aH þe werde,
 In him we lely¹ beleue · & in na laze ellis.
 In all oure dižans oñ daies · þat duke we comenH, We praise God in all things.
 Wele wenand in anothire werd · to woñ ay o-lyue.
 And quat as pertenyys to na profe · vs plese nozt at lesteñ, Alex. and Dind.,
 Ne mekills² mellis nozt oure mouth · bot mesure oure p. 15.
 wordis. 4310
 Quen as we speke any spech · we speke ai þe treuth, We always speak the truth.
 And þan is still as a stane · & stirs it na ferryñ.
 Riches ne no rede gold · rose we þam nouthire,
 Bot ay voide of enuy · & of vayne thožtis. 4314 We are not covetous, nor envious.
 Is þar na berne vs eblande · biggir þan anothire,
 Of land ne of lor[d]schip · bot all elike simple.
 þe pouert of oure persoñs · for plente we hald, 4317
 þe quilke³ is part vs, aH þe pake · be parcells euyñ.
 Is þar na brag in oure bondis · ne bering⁴ of armes, We forsake warfare.
 B[o]t ay perpetuall pes · pižt iñ oure landis. 4320
 Ne nouthire Iugement ne IayH · ne Iustice of aire ;
 For dose na douth þar no dere · to dome to be callid.
 Ne custome in oure contre · contraris oure lažes,
 Is þar na mercy ne methe · in oure marche vsyd ; 4324 We shew no mercy.
 And I sall quethe þe forqui · & quat is þe cause :
 þar dose na modirsoñ o-mys · na mercy to craue,
 For auyrice & errogaunce · & aH we devoide, None have to ask for mercy.
 And to na licherous lustes · leeue ve⁴ oure membris, [Fol. 75.]
 A-vowtri ne na vayne glorie · ne na vice hauntis, 4329 Alex. and Dind.,
 Ne neuire to-pližt worth a perle · to-ponyschit be-fore. p. 16.
 Fynd we na faute in na freke · þat vs emange duellis, We flee lusts.
 For ay oñ reson & oñ rižt · rewelle we oure-selfe. 4332
 Ne sežes na segge of oure sede · sodanly of lyue,
 For þe aire within oure habitacle · is ai vñ-corumpid.
 Nouthire to toly ne to taunde · transmitte we na vebbis,
 To vermylioñ ne violetl · ne variant littis. 4336

¹ MS. lyly lely ; *with lyly struck out.* ² Read mekill.³ MS. quikke ; *wrongly.*⁴ Sic ; *for we.*

Our wives wear
no finery of any
kind.

Oure paramours vs to plesse · ne pride þaim bewenes,
Nouthire ffurrers, filettis, ne frengs · ne frettis of perle.
Is þaim na surcote of silke · ne serkis of raynes,
Ne kirtils of camlyn · bot as þaim kynd leues. 4340
Ne neze we neuire þaim on niȝt · to naite for na luste,

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 17.
We never use a
bath except the
dew.

Bot for to sustayne oure sede · & syn ay to voide.
Make we na salues for na sares · ne na somir-bathis,
Bot with þe wale dewe · & with þe warme soñ. 4344
Howe durst any be so bald · to blemysche for schame
þe hand-werke of þat hiȝe gode · þat aȝ oure happe
haues ?

All are equal
amongst us.

List vs na lordschips lache · of ledis as oure-selfe,
For all oure libertes elike · ere lante vs & payسد ; 4348
And to sett him in-to seruitute · a syn vs it thinke,
þat god has fourmed to be free · & to his face licknud.¹
Make we na vessaȝ of virre · ne of na clere siluir,
Ne store staned strenthis · ne na stithe lames, 4352
Manere mynstre, ne mote · ne marbryn werkis,

We dwell in
caves.

Bot duells here in disolatis · in dennes & in cauis ;
Ne nouthire housing we haue · ay quils we here dueȝ,
[Fol. 75 b.] Bot at is fetid of flesch · & of na fraunche piers ;
þat is þe carions kistis · þat couers þe saule, 4357

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 18.
We do not go to
sea.

A full faynt forcelett · & of feñ makid.
We ere na sailers on þe see · to sell ne to byi ;
Ne rede we neuire na retorik · ne rial to speke ;
Bot certis in aȝ simplines · sett we oure wordis, 4361
þat latis neuire lesing · in oure lippis spring.

We do not culti-
vate learning.

Ne foloze we na ficesyens · ne philisophour scolis,
As sophistri & slik thing · to sott with þe pepiȝ.
It is bot wiles & wrenkis · at þai with dele, 4365
And aȝ þare fete & þar fare · in ² falshede it endis.

We dislike play.

Lufe we no laike in oure lede · ne lazand mirthis,
Bot queñ vs pleses to play · we passe & we rede 4368
Of þe actis of oure auncestours · & of þar athill thewis ;
And queñ we gamen suld & glade · we grete & we pleyñ.

We only read
romances.

¹ Or licknid ; with misformed n. ² Written above the line.

And othire sertis wee see¹ · þat solace oure hertis ;
 First, þe faire firmament · fischid fuH of sterres, 4372 **Alex. and Dind.,**
 þe rede soñ, queñ he ryses · & rynnys in his sercle, p. 19.
 þat aH þe land with his leme · lewis & cleres ; We observe the
 þe playne purperyñ see · fuH of prode fischis, 4375 is not subject to
 For tide ne for tempest · it touchis nozt oure kythis, storms.
 Ne neuire sondres oure soile · bot sesis at þe brinkis.

¶ *Vicesimus passus Alexandri.*

Another mirth is in May · þat vs maste ioyes,
 þe faire floryschit filds · of floures & of herbys,
 Quare-of þe breth as of bawme · blawis in oure noose,
 þat ilk sensitife saule · mast souorly delyte, 4381
 As in þe woddis for to walke · vndire wale schawis,
 Queñ all is lokiñ ouire with leuys · as it ware littiH
 heuen.
 þañ haue we liking to lithe · þe late of þe foules,
 þe swoying of þe swift wynde · & of þe swete wellis.
 þe kind of þire customs · we kepe euire-mare, 4386 **Alex. and Dind.,**
 þe quilk, I hope, ser, þe to hald · vnhalesom it ware. p. 20.
 If þou wiH chalangi þaim be chaunce · chese if þe likis,
 For here is writteñ aH þi wiH · & we na writh serue.
 As þe tenour of þour titiH is · oure techis haue we
 schawid, 4390 **These are our**
 Oure dedis & of oure disciplyne · a dele of þaim aythir ;
 And of þi lare a litiH-quat · likis me to write,²
 For þe sothe of oure solitude · wiH serue þe stille aftir.
 Sire, 3e haue lazt now oñ late · withiñ a lite 3eres 4394
 Añ Europ & Asie · & Auffrik þe mare ;
 þat seising burde sufficiant · þofe sozt 3e na ferre.
 Bot ay mekiH wald haue mare · as many man spellis ;
 þe soñ, for sake of þour syñ · sesys his lizt, 4398 **Thou preventest**
 Be-cause of þoure couatise · to clym to his bounds. **the sun from**
shining.

¹ Written above the line.² MS. lere write; with lere struck out.

And 3e *with* wodnes of weris · aH þe werde fretis,
And 3it for-feztis 3oure face · all fasting it semes. 4401

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 21.
Ye sacrifice your
children.

A-nothire laze is in 3oure lande · at oure lord hatis,
As, slaa 3oure soñnes in sacrifice · & othire synnys many,
To sawe emang þir simpliH meñ · sedis of debate, 4404
And make a terant of a tulke · þat neuire tene thozt.

Ye cannot have
enough.

þe soile ne þe foure sees · suffice 3owe nouthire,
Bot if 3e mizt keñ þe costis · of þe clere heuen. 4407

Your gods used to
work all evil.

3oure giltis growis of 3our gods · or god geue þam sorowe,
For many modirsoñ þai marre · mizt ellis haue bene safe.
A-vise 3ow now be Venus · quat vertous him folozes,
þe Iusule of Iupitir · & of his Iapis als, 4411

[Fol. 76 b.]

Dame Proserpyne, a prophetese · of 3oure praysid lazes;
Latis þis be witnes of¹ my wordis · & waitis now þar
tetchis.

Venus was a-vowtrere · & many vice hauntid,

Jupiter was
lecherous.
So was Proser-
pine.

And Iupitir a Iettoure · þat Iapid many ladis²; 4415
Dame proserpine in preue place · playd as hire likid.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 22.

Loo, sary sottis slike a sowme · of synnars 3e lufe!

3e lett meñ of þar libertes · at þam oure lord grauntid,
Thryngis þam in-to thraldoñ · & of thaire þede spoiles.

Ye are all unjust.

Vn-iust is 3our Iugementis · so is 3oure Iugis aH; 4420
þe dedis of 3our domesmen · 3e for dere halde.

Is þare na renke in 3oure rewme · þat othire rewitt kepis,
Bot “ þus me pinke ” & “ so me pinke ” · & threpis it is
lawe!

þus fra þe rote of rihtwisnes · rauyst ere 3e clene, 4424
And to þe way of wickidnes · be warlazes gidid.

Ye esteem
flatterers.

3e hald na wee of þe werd · of witt worthe a myte,
Bot he cañ practise & paynt · & polisch his wordis.
For all 3oure wisdom, I-wis · is³ wroken to 3our tongis,
And aH þe sauour of 3oure sauls · is sattild in 3our
mouthis. 4429

3oure grete garisons of gold · vngastly 3e spende

¹ In the margin. ² MS. dadis ladis; with dadis struck out.

³ In the margin.

In bigging¹ of burgis · & bilding of toures ;
 And quen 3e sitt in 3oure sale · *with* syris & dukis,
 þan haue 3ee seggis 3ow to serue · sowmes enogh.
 þaṅ as a Mare at a moghe · 3oure mawis 3e fiḥ, 4434
With bakin mete & *with* briddis · bolnes 3oure paunches,
 Stuffis so 3our stomake · *with* stullis & of wynes,
 þat vnethis haldis, be 3e hoo · þe hide of 3ow hale !
 Quat dewis 3ow þan þire diatis · & aḥ þis dere fode,
 3oure sowing in vneseoṅ · 3oure surfete of drinkis,
 Bot settis 3ow in-to sekenes · of sere-lepy kyndis, 4440
 And gers 3ow die or 3oure day · many dre3e wyntir ?
 þan 3e couett & craue · castels & rewmes,
 And thristis eftir aḥ thingis · at in 3oure tho3t rynnes,
 Iaspre, Iuwels, & gemmes · & Iettand perle : 4444
 And all sall leue 3ow at þe laste · & in-to laire worth !
 And maydese 3it, for aḥ your molle · þat modire ws¹ cried,
 þat fourmed þe flode & þe flynt · & þe faire lyndis.
 And, as I brefe it in þis buḥ · þe bragmeyns takens
 Surmontis aḥ 3our sapientis · & oure assemy thewis.²
 And opir werkis of wast · is wro3t in 3oure landis, 4450
 As, graffis garnyscht of gold · & gilten tombis,
 Thurghis to thrawyn in · quen 3e þraa worthe,
 Sum of siluir, sum of sipirs · sum of sere gemmes.
 þus make 3e vessels in vayṅe · to 3oure foule corses,
 To croṁ in 3oure cariouns · þat kind 3ow defendis,
 þat ilk slymand slugḥ · quen 3e ere slide hyne, 4456
 And wiḥ no3t suffire þe erth · to haue at him fallis.
 For iolite of Iupitir · 3e ioyeṅ vp templis,
With Imagis of 3oure ydolatry · aḥ *within* payntid ;
 Symolacris vp sett · of Seropis & othir, 4460
 And slees in-to þe sacrifis · many sere bestis.
 Quen 3e haue tildid vp-oṅ [top] · 3our trouthles gods,
 Sum of gold, sum of glas · sum of gray marbiḥ,
 Sum of latoun & of lede · & sum of li3t siluir, 4464
 And sum ere tiffid aḥ of tree · & sum of tyṅ pured,

Ye like to have
many servants.

[Fol. 77.]

Ye are but
earth-born.

We surpass you
in all things.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 23.
Ye build fine
tombs.

Ye make temples
and idols,

¹ Read 3ow. ² MS. twethewis, *alt.* to thewis.

and worship your
graven gods.

[Fol. 77 b.]

God hears not
men because of
sacrifices.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 24.

We are like unto
God through
His Son.
All are sustained
by Him.

After death ye
will go to hell.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 25.

Ye have as many
false gods as
a body has limbs.

þan fall 3e flatt on þe fold · with fees þaim adoures,
 Bath Amon & Appolyne · & asskis at þam welthys;
 Of any gud at 3e geet · a gift ye þam offirre, 4468
 A quantite of all *quat* · of quike & of ellis;
 3e latt as þai miȝt all leth · at ony lede wald,
 And þai may send 3ow bot vnsele · & noȝt opir godis.
 þus 3e comende þaim on knees · as cocards suld, 4472
 þat nouthire siȝt has ne saule · bot of segge werke;
 3e haue na sauour, I suppose · how þat þe kyȝng of heuen
 He has na hert vs to here · ne no hathiȝt ellis 4475
 For calues ne for kidis blode · ne for na crispe wethris,
 Bot an[l]y for oure orisons · & for na nopire giftis.
 God seȝis oure saȝes for his soȝn · at in him-selve duellis;
 For sekire god is þe soȝn · þat all oure sede loues. 4479
 And sothly, by þe same soȝn · we ere him all like,
 And aȝ he sustayned of þat soȝn · þat any saule wildis.
 Forþi vnhappy we 3ow hald · þat in 3oure hertis leues
 3oure kind with slike a conquirour · to comen or to euen.
 And othire harlotry 3e¹ hant · þat heris þe goste, 4484
 Of fornicacioȝ & filth · & many foule synnes,
 Maumentry, & manslatir · mosardry & pride,
 þat dose 3ow dompe to þe deviȝt · quen he² ere dede
 hethen.
 And we³ þe contrari clene · kepis aȝ oure lyue, 4488
 þat we may bowe to þat blis · þat neuir saȝ haue ende.
 3e gronde 3ow noȝt⁴ on⁵ a god · þat aȝ of glett fourmed,
 þat note newid aȝ of noȝt · þat neuire sall haue ende,
 Bot opire many do 3e menske · ere him na⁶ mare sibbe
 þan was þe flesch of þe fysch⁷ · to þe faire me[m]bree.
 Ilk lede þat liȝt is of 3our lede · 3e call þe litȝt werde,
 And gesse wele as many gods · as growis in him membris;
 Ilk a *parcele* of his *person* a-*proprid* · is a-*pert* driȝtin,
 And euire-ilk lym, it awne lust eȝuir · as him list craues!

¹ MS. inserts to hald, struck through. ² Read 3e.

³ MS. 3e, but underlined, and corrected to we in the margin.

⁴ MS. repeats noȝt; but the second noȝt is underlined.

⁵ MS. ai (C) ⁶ MS. no, all. to na. ⁷ MS. fesch, all. to fysch.

- For marcure was manslaȝt · a mammlere of wordis,
 3e graith him to be gouenoure · & god of þe tonge.
 And Arcules has aythire arme · in his awen warde,
 For þe xij wondirfuȝ werkis · he wroȝt *with his handis*.
 Mars for his maisterris · & for his many weris, 4502
 Him brefe 3e for his¹ baratris · þe breste to defend.
 Dame Iuno was a iettir · & ioyned fuȝ of iree,
 For-þi scho hedis to þe hert · & has it to ȝeme.
 Bary² he was brayne-wode · for bebbing of wynes, 4506
 Forþi [þe] swire & þe swallow · þat swiere he kepis.
 Cupido has þe custodi · & cure of þe mawe,
 For he³ was couatus & cursid · vnclene of him-selfe.
 Serenon is sustenour · & sire of þe wambe, 4510
 For hem was quartirs of qwete · vmqwile out of nombre.
 Dame venus þe a-v[er]ous⁴ · for vices opoñ niȝtis,
 Is possessour & principale · of aȝ þe preue menbris.
 þus ilk cantef of ȝoure cors · 3e caȝ þam driȝtins, 4514
 Deu[i]dis it in-to duesses · & opire deuels many.
 Of ilk gobet of þat glett · 3e a god make,
 And leues noȝt as mekill as a lym · ȝour liches oñ to
 stand.
 3e haue na hoping¹ in þat hathill · at oñ hiȝe sittis, 4518
 How he ȝoure nase & ȝoure nebb · & aȝ of noȝt cried,
 Bot þinkis on þir othir thefis · & þam as thraȝ seruys,
 And sacrifice to ilk a segge · a sere-lepy gifte.
 To Mars in his mynstir · at maynteines þe weris, 4522
 3e bringe him a wild bare · for his wale dedis.
 þe carcas of a fatt kid · þat carayne is worthe,
 þat bring¹ 3e to *ser* bacus · to bere vp his drinke.
 And Iupitir þat Ioglour · sum Iape bos haue⁵; 4526
 A bullok or a fell bule · is broȝt to his temple.
 And Iuno þe Ientiȝ · for ioy of his pride,
 3e presand hire a pakoke · *with* pennes of aȝ Aungeȝ.

Mercury is god of
the tongue;

[Fol. 78.]
Hercules presides
over the arms;

Juno, over the
heart;
Alex. and Dind.,
p. 26.
Bacchus, over
the throat;

Cupid, over the
stomach;

Ceres, over the
womb.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 27.

Ye believe not in
the Creator.

To Mars, ye offer
a boar;

to Bacchus, a kid;

to Juno, a
peacock;

¹ MS. ȝour his; *with ȝour marked for erasure.*

² Read Bacy, *i. e.* Bacchus; see l. 4525. ³ *In the margin.*

⁴ MS. a vious. ⁵ MS. hs haue, *with hs struck out.*

Minerua¹ was a maistres · of many king's werkis, 4530
A ratland niȝt ravyñ · is him to rent ȝoldeñ.

[Fol. 78 b.]

To Venus þe vowtriere · may noȝt ells a-vaile,
Bot ilk moneth to mede · &² mi[l]ke-quite doufe.

t. Apollo, a white
swan;

Appollo with a quite swan · is paid him to tende ; 4534
A manere of³ corne to mercure · þat we þi muld cañ.

to Ceres, bran.

And Serenon is sone serued · þat sees to þe paunche ;
Haue he a boll fuñ of brañ · bedis he na mare.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 28.

And Ereules as emperoure · emyddis añ he⁴ standis⁵ ;
And for he preuyd ay þe prise · in prowis of armes,
He has a hatt on his hede · hiȝtild o floures, 4540
Of palme & of peruyk · & othire proud blossoms.

The temple of
Cupid is strewn
with roses.

þe kirke of cupido · is clenly a-rayed,
þe stallis & in all stedis · strowid with Rose. 4543
Lo, to so many mayned gods · ȝour menbris ȝe dele,
And will noȝt knaw ȝour creatour · at ȝow of clay
fourmed.

For your wor-
ship, ye shall be
punished.

þire deme ȝe for ȝour drigtins · þat drepis þe saule ;
For þai may sende ȝow na sele · bot sla ȝow within.
As many of þat feleschip · as ȝe trow & adoures, 4548
As many turmentis & tene · ȝow tidis in heñ.

A-vise ȝow now quat velany · & vices þai ȝow teeche ;
Ane leris ȝow to be licherus · & leris ȝow to syñ ;
Ane, to be grindand gluttis · & glorand dronkin ; 4552
And ane, to bragg & to bost · & bate with þe pepiñ.

If ȝe be herd of ȝour happ⁶ · vn-happe þai ȝow keñ ;
Forþi bot harlotry or harme · is at ȝe here craue ;

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 29.
Whether they
hear you or not,
ye suffer.

And if ȝe hede to ȝour hestis · ȝour hert¹ is a-meued,
So queþir þai here or els-quat · it hurtis ay þe saule.
ȝour doctours ere ȝoure duesses · þaire ditis alegis,
How þat þai hampire in ȝour here · with many hard
payñ. 4559

þai cause añ vunkindnes · & corperañ lustis,

¹ MS. Minuera. ² Read a. ³ In the margin.

⁴ MS. y he ; with y struck out. ⁵ MS. stondis, alt. to standis.

⁶ happ marked for erasure.

As surquetry & sacrilagi · & othire sere tecches ;
 Constrene 3ow in-to cauatisse · to clame aH þe werd,
 To rayme & to robry · to rayme men þaire godis, 4563
 Wailaway to wriches · & wa is 3ow in erthe ;
 Herefore 3e hinge mon in hell · queñ 3e ere hethen
 passed !”

[Fol. 79.]

Ye shall dwell
in torment.

þan was þe kyng of his carpe · crabbid vnfaire,
 For he was spetous of speche · & spised his driztins ;
 Queñ he had lokid on þe lyne · he lappid it to-gedire,¹
 And notid to him a-nothire new · þat now next fologhes.

Alex. and Dind.,
p. 30.Alex. and Dind.,
p. 31.

Vicesimus primus passus Alexandri.

“ þe kyng crowned of kyngis · o lordis aH othire,
 Ser Alexander þe athelest · of Amons childire,
 And of þe quene Olimpades · þat I was of geteñ, 4572
 To þe best of bragmeyns · blissing & hele² !
 Sire, be þis sothe at 3e say · of all seggis oute
 3e may be sett be 3ow-selfe · for syn doo 3e neuire !
 Bot sothely slike a simpilnes · as me my saule demys,
 It comes bot of acoustoumes · & of na clene thewes.
 And owþir 3e gesse at 3e be gods · for 3oure gud werkis,
 Or deynes with oure driztins · for³ þat we þam dere hald.
 3e say 3e sawe neuire soile · ne na citis biggis ; 4580
 How suld 3e telle withouteñ toles · or any tild rere ?
 Is þer non Instrumentis of Ireñ · in aH þat Ile founden,
 Ne nakiñ metaH of to make · messelyne ne othire.
 For-quy as bestis on þe bent · 3e growe on þe greuys,
 Refete 3ow with refuse · of rotis & of herbys ; 4585
 þe same wyse dose a wolfe · þat wantis of his pray ;
 Quen he has faute of his flesch · he fallis to þe soile !
 Lo, if me list in-to 3oure land · with all my ledis entre,
 Quat wisdom at 3our wricchidnes · or witt mizt I lere ?
 þe, lede, is litiH to loue · þat leuys ay in sorowe, 4590
 Bot mekill mare he is menskid · þat in a mene duellis.

“ Alexander, son
of Ammon,to Dindimus,
greeting.
If all is true, ye
are very good
men.Alex. and Dind.,
p. 32.

Ye have no iron.

A hungry wolf
must eat earth.¹ MS. to godire. ² MS. helee. ³ MS. inserts we, *underlined*.

[Fol. 79 b.] Ware þai so wyse þat has waes · qua ware so¹ wide
prayed

As þa þat lepros ere & lame · þat neuire of leth knewe?

Alex. and Dind., If I ȝoure parties approche · & piȝt vp my tentis, 4594
p. 33.

If I it miȝt, as I ne may · for missyng of schipis,

þare suld my folk for defaute · be famyscht for euir,

And worthe in a wale quile · to wricchis as ȝour-selfe!

Your wives use no ȝe say ȝour women has na wedis · þe werd with to plesse,
gay apparel,

Garlands ne no gay gere · to glyffe² in ȝour eȝen, 4599

Silke of Sipris, ne say · ne saffronde kellis;

For-quy þare is nane to gete · now neuyn I þe cause!

and no man com- Adultery on aȝ wise als ȝe deuoyde,
mits adultery.

Echchewis³ ay þat caffare · as castite wald; 4603

If ȝe na wiȝh haue to þat werk · it wondres me littiȝh;

How suld ȝe nayte euir þat note · þat neȝes neuir þe
fode?

Slik lust is lang on þe leuir · & likand spices,

Mast cherischid & encheson · of chasteand metis; 4607

Ye are chaste And ȝe⁴ bot fede ȝow with frute · at flays noȝt ȝoure
perforce. hongir,

Alex. and Dind., For-þi neuire ailes ȝow þat appetite · þir artis with to
p. 34. dele.

Ye never study; Is þar na lare in ȝoure land · labour of scolis,
Fesike, ne no filosofy · ne no fourme ellis, 4611

Piromancie, ne poisei · ne practyse of lawe,

and never shew Ne neuire na merey ȝow emeȝ · as mynes me ȝour pistiȝh;
mercy.

Ye are as beasts. AH þis condicions I call · bot comon of bestis,
þat has no sent in þaire saule · ne sauour in na gude.

Bot we þat fourmed is & fast · & has a fre wiȝh 4616

Differis as in oure fraunches · fere fra ȝoure kynde.

It ware no possible poynt · to paise in my witt,

þat all miȝt ay be eftir ane · with-uten any chaunge.

After lare comes After eftir bareȝ or bale · blis vs aperis 4620
bliss.

And eftir wele comys wa · for so þe werd askis.

¹ MS. *inserts wyse h, underlined.* ² A curl over the g.

³ MS. *Echchewis.*

⁴ In the margin.

Ouir¹ wild is many ways wraiste · as þe wedire skiftis ; **Alex. and Dind.,**
 For a clere cloudles day · mas a clene mynde ; p. 35.
 Quen it is² briȝt all a-bowte · it blithis oure hertis. 4624 [Fol. 80.]
 And be þar gold in oure gate · or any gud stanes, In fair weather,
 We do bot foules it with oure fete · vs fayns it na more, men are merry.
 And quen it walows · & wannes aȝ oure thestres,
 Ȝet ere we toghid to & fra · be turnyng of eldris. 4628
 For quilk a frek is bot a faȝt · þan is he first simple, **Man changes**
 And quen he preues fra þat prike · þan is he proud-lokid, according to his
 Metis oȝ þe mediȝ merke · & þare his mynd stablis. age.
 Mekill variaunce of vertus · enveronis oure saules, 4632
 For we ere fetid fuȝ faire · & has oure fyue wittis. **We use our five**
 Ane, oure siȝt with to see · & sauour at þe nasee, wits,
 And ane to tast & to touche · & þen oure twa eris. sight, savour,
 Of all þe frutis oȝ þe fold · we fange at oure wiȝt, 4636 taste, touch, and
 Bath venyson & volatile · & variand fisches. hearing.
 If ȝe refreyne ȝow þar-fra · it falis bot of pride **Alex. and Dind.,**
 Or ellis ȝow writthis with ȝour wele · for ȝe na welth p. 36.
 haue ! 4639 We catch fish.
 Be many opynion I prefe · þat pure is ȝoure tecches,
 Mare fonden opoȝ foly · þan ficchid oȝ resoȝ.
 Sone as þe kyng of þe kith · þe clause had devysid,
 He settis him down full sobirly · & sendis him anothire.
 ¶ “ I, sir Dyndyn þe derrest · at duells in þis Ile,
 þe best of þe bragmeyns · of bounte & of thewis, 4645
 To Alexander, þat aire · þat erles aȝ þe werd,
 þe souerayne sire of aȝ þe soile · salus & ioȝe.
 Sire, we erd noȝt in elementis · as euȝmare to dueȝ,
 Bot as qua pas a pilgrymage · fra Parysch to rome ;
 To othire hames vs hiȝe · quen we ere hethen voided,
 And in þe cites of syȝn · þan sitt we na langire. 4651
 Vse we nane Epocrise · ne ire, ne no theftis,
 Ne nothire gesse we vs gods · ne gryȝn at oure driȝtiȝ.
 For many seerties we seet · þat sysed aȝ þe werde,
 And wroȝt þe will of ilk we · to wale as him likid. [Fol. 80 b.]

¹ Or Oȝ.² In the margin.

- Alex. and Dind.
p. 36.
How we should
behold
And he þat waynes ay þe werst · & wirkis þe bettir,
þat¹ gome is gods gud frend · & god neuire þe hildire.
And þis smeltilde þat oure sode · þou settis my pistill.
þe same ensampill, as me somes · in-to þoure-self touches.
For so þe qwele of qwistounes · þoure qualite enoreses,
þat naþir gesse þe gouverneur · no god but þour-selle!
þe brinsill ear² benignite · oure bonerte repreues, 4662
And beris a-þou vs blasfeme · þat neuire bale thoȝt.
All be we suggests in oure-selfe · & simplill oure latie.
Voble & vaward of vices · as virgyns it ware.
Neuþr-þe-les of a laȝe · hald we vs driȝtins. 4666
It is þoure-selfe & naȝt oure-self · þat ai þe self hantis;
Aboundance of Aunoure · þow all has englaymed,
For þe bot fage ay þe flesche · & felsen it wele.
þe bide no besynes of bedis · bot to þe body clethe.
Els þe may east þow to be coynt · þe count for na fernir.
With soft serkis of silke · þoure sidis viñ-loke, 4672
Douboletis of damaske · & sum of dere tars,
With like fingir on þoure fist · allid full of ryngis,
Schard al of shire³ gold · as it a schryne were. 4675
Quat poudetis þow þis paraille · & all þis proud liddis?
For mouthire saues it þe saule · ne þour-selfe fedis.
Iht we, þat knowis wele & ken · þe kynd of þe noble,
Quew we ere drinkelis & dry · we draw to þe bourne;
And be þur gold in oure gate · or any gud stanes, 4680
We do bot fealis it with oure fete · vs faynes it na more.
Alex. and Dind.
p. 36.
Gold greunches
that thrist.
Ne nouþir salues it oure sares · ne sesis it oure thrist.
For folowid it slike a fraunchis · at it⁴ vs fede wald.
þe cursed laike o couatis · ware elene⁵ with it drenchid.
þe vise þow þur-of vessell · for vanyte & pride; 4686
As gud ware crestyns of clathe · þe caryon to serue.

¹ MS. þate, with e expuncted.² MS. þour, altered to our.³ MS. schire, altered to shire.⁴ In the margin.⁵ MS. whane.

I se na godlaik in gold · bot grefe to þe saule,
 For þe fastir it fallis oñ a freke · þe fastir he conetis.
 Sire Alexander aH at ese · avisis him oñ þis pistiH, 4690
 And wayues¹ to him a-nopire writt · at oñ þis wyse
 spellis.

The more gold a
 man has, the
 more he wants."

Alex. and Dind.,
 p. 40.

¶ "Hiþe kyng with-out comparison · of kyngis aH opire,
 Of all lordis þe lord · þat leues vndire heuen,
 Sire Alexander, þe aire · of Amon oure driȝtiH, 4694
 To þe, ser Dyndyn oñ þi dese · þis dities I write.
 In slike a side of þe soile · ȝour-selfe is in-closid,
 May wele na wee, if he wald · wyñ to ȝour kithis.
 Forþi enhabete ȝe in angwysch · at ȝoure vnthankis;
 And aH ȝoure lefing & ȝoure lare² · at ȝe so loude prayse,
 It comis bot of a kyndnes · & of na clene thewys. 4700
 And als ȝe fonde may na forþire · to hiȝeñ ȝoure name,
 Bot pyned þar in a parroke · inparkid as bestis,
 þus pere to þir presoñs · þat ay in payñ lengis,
 And he þat seȝis to vs sage · ȝe bot a sott caH. 4704
 Be þe³ grace of my god² · miȝt I ȝour grond entre.

"Alexander, son
 of Amon,
 to Dindimus.

Alex. and Dind.,
 p. 41.

No strangers can
 come to you.

You are like wretch-
 ed prisoners."

I suld ȝow ken to be kniȝtis · & clethe ȝow with armes."
 þan piȝt oure prince in þat place · a pelare⁴ of marble,
 Quare-oñ a tulke with a toile · þis titiH vp he wrate,
 Sum langage oñ latine · & lettres of ynde, 4709
 Sum was graithid o grew · þat þus to-gedire spekis;
 "I, Philip soñ þe fell kyng · þe fondere of grece,
 Sire Alexander þe athill · þ[at] aȝe aH þe barbres
 Eftir þe day & þe dethe · of Dary & of Porrus, 4713
 þus fere I folozed haue my faes;" · & here a fitt end.

Alex. and Dind.,
 p. 42.

Alexander rears a
 pillar of marble.

[End of
 Alexander and
 Dindimus.]

¶ Vicesimus secundus passus Alexandri.

N ow gase he fra gangaH · and aH his ging eftir,
 Fondis forth with his folke · & a fild entris,

[Fol. 51 b.]

¹ Or waynes.

² In the margin.

³ MS. Be þe be þe: with Be altered to Bet, and the second
 be þe underlined; Bot be þe is probably intended.

⁴ A curl over the e.

They come to a wood,	Vmfaldin <i>with</i> a faire wod · florisch ¹ out ouire	4717
	Of Appils & almands · & aH manere of frut ^{is} .	
	All þe chiere of þe champe · was chargid <i>with</i> floures,	
	Acrea, sais oure autour · þat angih is hatten.	
full of giants,	3it wont meñ in þa woddis · as þe buke tellis,	4721
	Of Ioynttours as Ieants · in Iopons of hidis,	
who eat fruit only.	And þai ware fedd all of frute · & of na fode ellis,	
	Of grapis & of gernetis · & othire gude spices,	
	Of sike as growis in þe grewis · I tald of before.	4725
	þai ware as rughe as a resche · þe bake & þe sidis ;	
	Quen þai persayued of oure prince · & slik a pake Armed,	
They stand staring at Alexander.	þan stode þai glorand on his gome · <i>with</i> grisely mawis.	
	And he mas heraud & heres · to hant for þe nanes,	
Alexander's men raise a shout,	And sett vp a scharp schoute · at aH þe schaw ryng ^{is} .	
	And þai for skere of þe skrike · in-to þe schaw fledd,	
	For þai hadd herd neuire of how · ne of mans noyse ;	
and the giants flee and are slain.	And sex hundreth was slane · & sesid <i>with</i> oure kniȝt ^{is} ,	
	And foure and threti, as I flode ² · was in þe fild drepid,	
	And iiij ³ score on þis side · & seuen at was armed	4735
	Was <i>with</i> þe churles in þe chace · choppid to deth.	
	þus thre daies in þat thede · thurgh-out þai lengid,	
The Greeks eat damsons.	And diet ^{is} þam <i>with</i> damysens · & opir dere frute.	
	þan ferd he furth to a flumme · & sett þare his tent ^{is} ,	
	And newly eftir þe none · or nere þare-about, 4740	
	þare coms a bonde of a brenke · & breed þaim vnfaire ;	
An uncouth beast appears,	A burly best & a bigg ⁴ · was as ³ a mañ shapē,	
	Vnquile he groned as a galt · <i>with</i> gryselly lat ^{is} ,	
[Fol. 82.]	Vnquile he noys as a nowte · as a nox quen he lawes,	
	3armand & 3erand · a 3oteñ him semed ;	4745
with bristles like a boar,	And was as bristils as a bare · aH þe body ouire ;	
	Doñ as a dore-nayle · & defe was he bathe,	
	<i>With</i> laith leggis & lange · & twa laue ⁴ eres ;	
and a head like a horse.	A heuy hede & a hoge · as it a hors ware,	4749

¹ MS. florischst.² MS. flode, in the margin, substituted for fynd.³ In the margin.⁴ Or lane.

And large was his odd lome · þe lenthe of a ȝerde.
 With þat comands oure kyng · his kniȝtis him to¹ take,
 And þai a-saillid him sone · bot he na segge dredis,
 For nouthire fondis he to flee · ne na fens made, 4753
 Bot stude & stared as a stott · & stirred he na forthire.

þan callis to him þe conquirour · a comly maydeñ,
 Bad hire be broȝt be-fore þe best · & bare to be nakid.

Alexander sets
before him a
naked maid.

And he be-held oñ þat hend · & hissis as a neddire,
 He wald haue strangild hire streȝt · ne had stiffe men
 bene ; 4758

He wald haue schowid oñ þat schene · had noȝt men He is then caught,
 halden,

And to þe prince paelioñ · prestly him lede.

Queñ he had ferlied his fiȝh · oñ his foule schapp̄,

He gers þaim bynde him at a braid · & brent him to and burnt.
 poudire. 4762

þen rade he fra þat reuīr · & remowid his ost

In-till a brade bent fild · & bildid vp his tentis.

þare fande he lindis oñ þat lande · þe² lenthe of a spere,

And þai ware frett fuȝh of frute · þe fairest of þe werde.

It ware to tere any tong to tell · of þa trees kinde, 4767

For þai wald sett wiȝh þe soñ · & wiȝh þe soñ rise.

Alexander comes
to the trees of the
Sun and Moon,

Fra morewane to þe mydday · merely þai spring,

And þan discende þai doun · as þe day passis.

which wax and
wane in a day.

Lo, þis was a wondirfull werk · bot gods aweñ wiȝh,

þat þai suld wax soo & wane · wiȝhin a wale time.

For, fra it droȝe to þe derke · ay tiȝh it dawid eftir,

It was bot vacant & voide · as vanite it were. 4774

[Fol. 82 b.]

þe kyng in his cabañ · wiȝh his kniȝtis he ligis,

Tutand out of his tents · & þe trees waitis.

A baȝk a berne of a bobbe · bring him a nappiȝh ;

þañ bowis furth a bachelere · his bedinge to fiȝh ; 4778

A man who
attempts to pluck
an apple is slain.

And he was sodanly sesid · & slane wiȝh a sprete.

Wiȝh þat enverrouns aȝ þe vale · a voice fra þe heuen,

Said, “qua so fangis o þis frute · bees fey in a stounde!”

¹ In the margin.

² MS. a þe, but corrected.

The birds on the
trees are defended
by flames of fire.

3it bred þar briddis in þa braunches · at blith was & tame,
And if a man had þaim hent · or with his hand touchid,
þan floze þar flawmes out of fire · before & be-hind,
And quare it lizt oñ his like · it lichid him for euire.
Now bowis furth þis baratour · & bidis na langire,

Alexander climbs
a huge mountain.

Vp at a mazte¹ mountane · he myns with his ost,
And viij daies be-dene · þe drize was, & mare, 4788
Or he miȝt couire to þe copp · fra þe caue vndire.
Queñ he was comeñ to þe crest · his kniȝtis wald haue
esid ;

Dragons, drome-
daries, snakes,
&c., appear.

And namely a new note · neghis oñ hand,
Of dragons & of dromondaris · & of diuerse neddirs,
Of lioness & of leopards · & othire laith bestis. 4793
þare was hurling oñ hize · as it in heH ware,
Quat of² wrestling of wormes · & wounding of kniȝtis.
As gotis out of³ guttars · in golanand wedres,
So voidis doun þe vemon · be vermyns schaftis. 4797

Many men are
stung to death.

At opir time of⁴ oure tulkis · was tangid to dede,
And slayñ with þa serpents · a sowme out of noimbre.
So hard þai hampird oure heere · & herid oure erles,
Vnneth it chansid þaim þe cheke · þe cheffire to worthe.
Quen he skonfet & skerrid · all þa skathiH fendis,
þen metis he doun of þe mounte · in-to a mirk vale,
A drere⁵ dale & a depe · a dym & a thestir. 4804

They next come
to a valley, very
dark.

Miȝ[t] þare na saule vndire soñ · see to a-nothire ;
þai ware vmbe-thonrid⁶ in þat thede · with slike a thike
cloude,

[Fol. 83.]

þat þai miȝt fele it with þaire fiste · as flabband webbis ;
With all þe bothom fuH of bournes · briȝt as þe siluire,
And bery-bobis oñ þe braes · brethand as mirre. 4809
þus drafte þai furth in derknes · a neȝen daies euen,
So lang þaim lackis at þe last · þe lizt of þe soñ.
þañ come þai blesnand tiH a barme · of a brent lawe,⁷

They are 9 days
in darkness.

¹ Written maztene; see l. 4883.

² MS. ost.

³ In the margin.

⁴ MS. of of.

⁵ MS. dreȝe.

⁶ Or vmbe thourid.

⁷ MS. lawe, substituted for schawe.

Neȝe throtild¹ with þe thik aire · & thrange in þare andes.
 þai labourde¹ vp a-gayn þe lift · aȝ elleuen dais, 4814 They next climb
for 11 days,
 & quen þai couert to þe crest · þen clerid þe welkyȝ;
 þe schaftis of þe schire soȝ · schirkind þe cloudis, and the sun shines
out.
 And gods glorious gleme · glent þam e-maunge. 4817
 þaȝ past þai doun fra þat pike · in-to a playȝ launde, They come to a
plain,
 Quare all þe gronde was of gols · & growen fuȝ of Impis,
 A cubete lenth, sais þe clause · cald was þe maste,
 Quare-of þe feloure & þe frute · as fygis it sawour.
 þare fand þai Revers,² as I rede · ricchest of þe werd, with excellent
rivers.
 þof it ware Ioly Iurdaȝ · or Iacobs weȝ; 4823
 Was neuir no mede ne no milke · so mild vndire heuen,
 Ne cliffe of cristall so clere · at euire god fourmed.
 A hundreth daies & a halfe · he held be þa playnes,
 Tiȝ he was comen tiȝ a cliffe · at to þe cloudis semed, They come to a
steep cliff,
 þat was so staire & so stepe · þe store me tellis, 4828
 Miȝt þar no wee bot with wyngis · wiȝ to þe topp.
 ȝit fand he clouen þurȝe þe clynt · twa crasiȝ³ gatȝ, with two paths,
 Ane to þe noke of þe north · a-nothire to þe est. one north, and
one east.
 Sire Alexander him a-vises · &⁴ all him a-wondres,
 And trowid it was wroȝt · of na lede werkȝ. 4833
 With þat stairis he forth þe styte · þat streȝt to þe est, They go eastward.
 And seuȝ dais with his meȝ · he soȝt be þa costȝ.
 And on þe aȝtent day · eftire þe prime,
 A Basilisk in a browe · breis þaim vȝ-faire, 4837 They find a
basilisk,
[Fol. 83 b.]
 A straȝtill & a stithe worme · stinkand of elde,
 And is so bittir & so breme · & bicchid in him-selfe,
 þat with þe stinke & þe strenth · he stroyes noȝt allane,
 Bot quat he settȝ on his siȝt · he slaes in a stonde.
 He vemons in þe vaward · valiant kniȝtis, 4842
 Maistirs out of Messedone · of Mede & of Persee;
 þai seȝe doun sodanly · slane of þaire blonkis,
 To steȝ & to stand-dede · & in þe strete liggis. who slays many
knights.

¹ MS. babourde.² Written in the margin, as a substitute for piners.³ MS. traside.⁴ In the margin.

With þat areris aH þe route · & radly þai said, 4846
 “ þe writh of þe wale god¹ · vs of þe wai lettis.”

Alexander finds
 the basilisk asleep,

þe kyng to know of þat case · vp to þe cliffe wendis,
 Saze quare þe same serpent · slepit in a roke.

þaH mas he bonds in a braide · at sall na pepiH pas,
 In bole & in balaH · buskes he his fotes, 4851

and sets a mirror
 before him.

A blasoH as a berne-dure · þat all þe body schildis,
 And fikes in a fyne glas · oH þe fere side.

Then the basilisk
 slays himself.

þe sc[h]rewe in þe schewere · his schadow be-haldis,
 And so þe slaztir of his sizt · in-to him-selfe entris.

þaH cals oure kyng him his kniztis · & comandis him
 to bryn, 4856

And þai as sone as þai him saze · him for his slezt thankis.
 Sone² as þis balefuH best · was brozt out o lyfe,

þan ridis furth oure riche kyng · & remowis his ost.

And of þis way at he went · sone worthis him a nende,
 So at he flitt may na ferre · ne his folke³ nouthire. 4861

They come to
 huge mountains,

þare was so hedous & so hoge · hillis þam beforH,
 Clozes at was cloude · he clynterand torres,

Rochis & rogH stanes · rokkis vnfaire,

Scutis to þe scharpe schew · skerres a hundreth. 4865

and return to the
 plain.

[Fol. 84.]

þan 3aris he him 3apely · & a-3ayne turnes,

And past in-to þe proud playH · I proued to 3ow first,

þat aH was brett-fuH of bowis · & blossoms so swete,

þat bawme ne braunche o aloes · bettir was neuire.

They next try the
 path to the north.

Fra þens oure note⁴ men be northe · nymes þaim þe way,

And þat þaH⁵ fonde aH þe flote · fiftene dayis. 4871

And þai croke ouire crosse · to cache þaim anothire,

þat led þam to þe left hand · & þat a lange quile ;

And þus þai dryfe furth þe drizt · of daies foure score,

Till at þai come till a cliffe · as þe clause tellis, 4875

They come to a
 cliff covered with
 diamonds.

Ane egge þat was all ouire · of Adamand stanes,

With, hingand in þe rughe roches · rede gold cheynes.

þan was þare graythed of degreces · for gomes vp to wynde,

¹ In the margin.

² MS. Cone.

³ MS. fokke.

⁴ Here fellows o, expuncted.

⁵ Perhaps þaim.

Twa thousand be tale · & fyue trew hundrethe. 4879 It has 2500 steps
 And þai ware sett so in soute¹ · of safers fyne, on its face.
 þat of þe noblay to neuen · it neyd any cristeñ.
 þare logis þe leue kyng · late oñ añ eueñ,
 Vndire þis maȝte mountayne · & oñ þe morne eftir,
 þare settis he furth of sere gods · a selle nounbre, 4884 Alexander offers
 þat he honours & his ost · & offirs ilk ane. to the gods.
 Syne tas he *with him* titly · his twelue tried prince[s],
 Gas him vp be degreces · to þe grete lawe, He then ascends
 Trenes to þe topward · þat touched to þe cloudis, 4888 the steps.
 þat he miȝt lend þar o-loft · & waite eftir wondirs.
 Vp-oñ þe coþ of þe cliffe · a closure he fyndis, On the top is a
 A palais, ane of² þe precioussest · & proudest in erth, palace,
 A bild, as þe buke sais · *with twa brade ȝat's*, 4892
 And seuenti wyndows beside · of serelep's werkes.
 þe ȝat's ware of ȝeteñ gold · ȝarkid of platis, with gates of gold;
 þe windows on þe selfe wyse · as þe writ schews³; [Fol. 84 b.]
 And þai ware coruen fuñ clene · & clustrid *with gemmes*,
 Stiȝt staffuñ of stanes · stagis & othire. 4897
 ȝit was a mynstir on þe mounte · of metall as þe nobiȝt, also a temple,
 Vmbe-gildid *with a garden* · of goldeñ vynes, and a garden of
 Was chatrid fuñ of chefe frute · of charbocke stanes, golden vines.
With-oute mesure emaunge · of margrite grete.⁴ 4901
 þis hame at houes on þis hiȝt · was in þe hiȝe est,
 Forthi ȝit hedirto it hat · þe hous of the soñ. This is the house
 It was so precious a place · & proudly a-tired, of the sun.
 þare was na place it a pere · bot *paradyse selfe*. 4905

¶ Vicesimus tertius passus Alexandri.

þen aires furth *ser Alexander* · in-to þis athiȝt temple, Alexander enters
With Caulus & with cleopas · & othire kidd princes, the temple,
 And fand a berne in a bedd · bawnand alane, and finds a man
 Ane of þe graciosest gomes · þat euire god fourmed. in a bed.
 All lemed of his letere · þe loge as of heueñ, 4910

¹ Or soute. ² In the margin. ³ Substituted for schis.

⁴ Substituted for stanes; see line above.

- For it was gayly begane · with golden webbis.
 A blewe bleaut o-bofe · brad him al ouire, 4912
 Was browde all with brent gold · full of brizt aungels.
 The bed is gorgeously adorned. þe testre trased full of trones · with trimballand wingis;
 þe silloure full of Seraphens · & othire sere halows,
 With curtyns all of clene silke · & coddis of þe same,
 With cumly knottis & with koyntis · & knopis of perle.
 It ware to tere me to tel · þe tirement to-gedire, 4918
 Or a nany¹ clerke · þe cost to de-vise ;
 [Fol. 85.] And he þat ristis in þat rowme · þe romance it tellis,
 Was ane of þe borliest bernis · þat euire body hade,
 With fell face as þe fire · & ferly faire schapen, 4922
 Balgh brade in þe brest · & on þe bely sklendire.
 His cheuelere as chauele² · for changing of eld,
 The man's beard is white as snow. And as blazt was his berd · as any brizt snaw.³ 4925
 Sone as oure prince with his peris · his person avyses,
 Alexander perceives it is a god. He gesse him wele to be god · & of na gome kind.
 He knelis down with his kniȝtis · on þe cald erthe,
 With haile him hailsis on heȝe · & opir hend wordis.
 þe renke within þe redeȝ · þan raxsils his armes, 4930
 Rymed him full renyschly · & rekind þir wordis :
 The god salutes him, “Haile, Alexander !” quod þis athiȝ · “at⁴ all þe erth
 weldis,
 and welcomes him. þou ert welcum, I-wis · & all þi wale princes.
 Sire, þou sall see with þi siȝt · slike signes, or þou passe,
 As neuire segge vndire soȝ · saȝe bot þine ane. 4935
 And þou saȝ here apou happis · or þou hethen founde,
 þat neuire hathill vndire heuen · herd bot þi-selfe.”
 “A ! A ! happy haly here maȝ” · quod þis hathiȝ þaȝ,
 Alexander is surprised to find himself known. “How þat þou neuynes my name · & þou me neuire
 kend ?” 4939
 “Ȝis, sothly, ser,” saied þe segge · “þi-selfe & þi werkis,
 Or any drope of þi delume · drechet had þe erd.
 “Do you wish to List þe noȝt loke on þe lindis · þat leuys euire mare,

¹ Sic in MS.² Or chaele ; indistinct.³ Substituted for swaw.⁴ In the margin.

- þat has þe surname of þe soñ · & of þe mone alls ; hear the trees of
 þat is to mene, bot of þe mone · & miȝt has to speke, the Sun and Moon
 And teH þe trewly aH þe text · *quat* tide saH here-ef*tir* ? ” tell your fate ? ”
- “ ȝis, by my croune,” *quod* þe kyng · & kyndly was
 ioyed, 4946
- “ þis word I wald, be ȝour wiH · noȝt aH þe werd leu*ir* ! ” “ Yes, gladly.”
- “ Ser, waite at þou be wemles · for womaH touchinȝ,
 þan may ȝe leuely oH þaH loken · & lesten ȝour wurdis. [Fol. 85 b.]
 For be ȝe pure of þat plizt · ȝe may þis place entre,
 þat is þe sette of þat sire · þat sett aH þe werd.” 4951
- “ Ser, I am clene of þat craft · I know wele my-selfe,
 Be þou oure gide to þe greuys · apoH gods name.”
- With þat bownes him þat berne · & fra his bed ryse, The god rises
 Cled aH in clene gold · kirtiH & mantiH, from the bed,
- A grym grisely gome · with grete gray lokis ; 4956
 Al glitered þe ground · for glori of his wedis.
- “ Sirs, ȝe þat will has to wend · ȝour wapens deuoidis, and bids Alex-
 Nymes of ȝour nethirgloue · & nakens ȝoure leggis, ander lay aside all
 Pesan, pancere, & platis · aH to ȝoure preue clathis, his arms.
- IopoH & iesserand · & radly me folows ! ” 4961
 þe kyng at his comaundment · with his kniȝtis him
 spoilis,
- Puttis of to þe selfe serke · senture & othire, He, Alexander,
 Takis with him ser telomew · aH of his princes, 4964 and two others,
 And Antiet, aH athill duke · & eft*ir* him wendis. set out.
- þai ferd furth all in fere · þ*ir* foure aH to-gedire ;
 þe lede at was þar ladisman · þe lord & his kniȝtis The guide goes
 Went þurȝe a wale wode¹ · was wondire of to teH, through a wood,
- As it ware hiȝtild in þat hill · with handis of aungels.
 For þare ware tacchid vp trees · þe triest of þe werd,
 A hundreth fote to þe hede · þe hiȝt was & mare,
 Lyke oleues out of lebany · & lores so grene, 4972 containing olives,
 With sichomures² & sipresses · & sedrisse e-blande. sycamores, &c.
- þar trekild doun of þa · teres of iemmes,
 Boyland out of þe barke · bawme & mirre, 4975

¹ Here follows an s erased.² MS. sichourmes.

- [Fol. 86.] Of scence & of othire salue · as sechis out of wellis,
þat rase neuire of Aromitike · sike rekils in erthi.
 They find a tree bare of leaves, *þai* fande a ferly faire tre · quare-on na frute groued,
 Was void of aȝ hire verdure · & vacant of leues,
 A hundreth fote & a halfe · it had of leȝt large, 4980
 With-uten bark ouþir bast · fuȝ of bare pirnes.
 upon which is a strange bird. *þar* bade a brid on a boghe · a-bofe in *þe* topp,
 Was of a port of a paa · with sike a proude crest,
 With bathe *þe* chekis & *þe* chauyls · as a chykiȝ brid,
 And all gilden¹ was hire gorgi · with golden fethirs,
 All hire hames be-hind · was hewid as a purple.
 And aȝ *þe* body & *þe* brest · & on *þe* bely vndire
 Was finely florischt & faire · with frekild pennys, 4988
 Of gold graynes & of goules · fuȝ of gray mascles.
 The king wonders. *þan* waitis on hire *þe* wale kyng · & wondire him thinke,
 Was in *þe* figure of hire fourme · noȝt ferlid a littiȝ.
 “Quat loke ȝe?” *quod* *þe* ladisman · “do lendis on²
 forthire, 4992
 ȝone is a fereles foule · a Fenix we calle.”
*þan*³ bowe *þa* forthe aȝ ebland · & to *þire* treis comes,
þe plants of *þe* proud soȝ · & of *þe* palo mone.
 Their guide tells Alexander to ask what his fate will be. “Behalds now,” *quod* *þis* hare maȝ · “to *þir* haly bowis,
 And quat *þou* wiȝ of *þaim* to wete · wis in *þi* saghe.
 Appose *þaim* aȝ in preuate · bot make na playȝ wordis,
 And *þou* may swythe haue a sware · at swike sall *þe*
 neuire.
þan may *þou* gesse in *þi* gast · it is a gude sprete 5000
þat sends *þe* sike asouerance⁴ · & sees to *þi* thoȝtis.”
 The tree of the Sun is like gold. *þire* boles was, as *þe* boke sayes · borly & hiȝe,
þe lind of *þe* liȝt soȝ · louely clethid, 5003
 [Fol. 86 b.] With feylour as of fine gold · *þat* ferly faire lemes,
 The Moon-tree is like silver. *þat* opir loken ouire with leues · as it ware liȝt siluȝr.
þaȝ Alexander at *þis* athiȝ · askis a demande,
 “In quatkyn manir of lede · sall me *þir* treis sware?”

¹ MS. wing lidin gilden : with wing lidin struck through.² In the margin.³ MS. þam.⁴ MS. asouerante.

"Sothly, *ser*, þe soñ-tree" · said þe segge þaṇ, 5008
 Entris in *with* yndoyes · & endis in greke ;
 And mast-quat ay þe mone-tree · þurze miȝt of hire
 kynde,

The Sun-tree
 begins to speak in
 Indian, and ends
 in Greek.

Quen it kithis vs any carpe · þe contrarie spekis ;
 For scho begynes aȝ in grew · & endis in ynde, 5012
 And þus be twinlepi tongis · teȝ þai oure wurdis."
 þan knelis down þe¹ conquiour · vn-to þe cald erthe,
 And aithire bole eftir bole · blithly he kisis,
 And þoȝt if he suld *with* þe thra · of aȝ þe thiedes wete,
 If he suld move agayn to Messedoñ · quare his modire
 duellid. 5017

The Moon-tree
 does the contrary.

þaṇ schogs hire þe soñ-tree · & schoke hire schire leues,
 And *with* a sweȝand swoȝe · þis sware scho him ȝeldis :
 "Sire, þou ert lele of ilk lede · þe lorde & þe fadire ;
 Bot þi sire soile in na side · see saȝ þou neuire. 5021
 For þi modire nor ȝit Messedoñ · þou seȝis þaim na
 mare."

Alexander asks if
 he will return
 home.

þaṇ list him lithe of his lyfe · & of his last ende :
 "So maideux," quod þe mone-tree · "þi meere bees na
 langir 5024

He then asks
 about his death.
 The Moon-tree
 tells him he will
 live a year and
 eight months.

Bot out þis anlepi ȝere · & aftir viij monethis ;
 þaṇ sall he duale þe *with* a drinke · at þou full dere
 traistis."

þaṇ makis he² mournyng & mane · & in his mynd
 thinkis, 5027

Qua suld þat trecherous trayne · of tresoñ him wirke.
 He said, "hende haly tree" · & halsid hire in armes,
 "Quat person sall do me depresse · I pray þe me teȝ ?"
 "Sire, sothely," said þe soñ-tree · "if I² þe sothe neuened,
 Qua suld þe wite out of þe werd · & þe þi werdis dele,
 þan suld þou slaa þe same segge · & so my sawis faile ;
 And þat² may worthe be na wai · for ay my wordis
 standis." 5034

He asks, "who
 will kill me ?"

The Sun-tree
 refuses to tell.

þaṇ lokid oñ him his ladismañ · said, "lefe of þi wordis,

[Fol. 87.]

¹ MS. þe k conquiour.

² In the margin.

For writhing of þir wale treeis · & willne þaim na mare.
 Bot graythe þe, gome, oñ gods behalue · and a-gayñ
 turne, 5037

For ouire þe lemetis of þir lindis · may no lede founde."

Alexander weeps,

þen bownes agayñ þe bald kyng · baldly he wepis,
 þat he so skitly suld skifte · & fra¹ his skars terme.
 So did his princes, sais þe prose · for pete of him-selfe,
 With 3edire 3oskingis & 3erre · 3ett out to grete. 5042

and tells his com-
 panions never to
 say what they
 have heard.

þañ bedis þaim þe barotour · oñ bathe þaire ezen twa,
 þat þai suld neuire þis note · to nane of his ost neuyn,
 Quat þai beheld in þe hiH · & herd with þaire eres ;
 And he þan styntis of his stoure · & steris his hert.
 "If 3e will gange," quod þis gide · "a-gayñ to 3oure
 kniȝtis, 5047

Moves 3ow to þe nethire-ward · next I it hald."

þan passis he to þis proud place · & oure kynge leues,
 And he gose doun be grece · a-gayñ to his tentis.

Alexander
 laments his fate.

þar logis he fra þe late niȝt · till eftē þe² liȝt schewis,
 With sare sighingis & sadd · for sake of his wirdis ;
 Costreynes him with his contenance · to with his kniȝtis
 play, 5053

Bot þat bot sprang of þe splene · þe sprite was vñ-esid.

Sone as þe day-rawe³ rase · he risis vp belyue,

Riches him radly to ride · & remows his ost,

Driues oñ with his dukis · day eftir othire, 5057

TiH he was meteñ to þe meere · quare he þe monte
 entird,

He returns to the
 plain,

þat was þe proud playñ fild · I proued 3ow be-fore,
 Quare aH þe face of þe fild · was of fyne goules.

and remains there
 one day.

þare piȝt he doun his paulyions · & with his princes
 bidis, 5061

And þe driȝt of a day · he duellis in þa costis.

[Fol. 87 b.]

Betwene þa styes in a stound · þat strekis þurȝe þe
 mountis

¹ Sic ; perhaps read for. ² MS. his þe ; with his struck out.

³ MS. day day rawe ; but corrected.

He mas twa pylars¹ doun to pynche · all of playn marble, He makes two
pillars of marble,
 And tacchis vp of treid gold · a pelare in þe myddis,
 With a prolouge in þat plate · oñ aithire post writen.
 “I, Alexander þe athiH · eftire þe date² 5067
 Of þe prince & Persye & Porrus · þire pilars en-haunsid.
 Qua list þis lymit ouir-lende · lene to þe left hand,
 For þe rake oñ þe riȝt hand · þat may na mañ passe.”
 þis titill was of twa tongis · tane out & græuen, 5071 inscribed with ‘a
title in prose.’
 Of Ebru & of yndoys · & of þire ald lettres,
 Of latine & of othire lare · & leues out of grece,
 Proudly prikid aH in prose ; · & here a pas endis.

¶ Vicesimus quartus passus Alexandri.

Now strekis he furth with his stour · & steris with He removes his
tents,
 his tentis, 5075
 He leuys all þe march-gats · I neuend ȝow before,
 And nymmes a-nothire oñ þe north · þe next to his kith,
 þat to þe marche of Messedone · was him mast qweme.
 Sone was he lent in a lande · a large & a noble, He comes to the
Precious Land.
 Preciosa, þe precious · þe prose þus it callis ;
 And clene aH þat contre · quen þai his come wist, 5081
 With sike as provid in þa partis · presentis him faire, He receives pre-
sents of skins of
fishes.
 Sum fellis of fischis · ferly to teH,
 Was like as of lepardis · & lions skynnes ;
 Sum with lions oñ lyue · & lamprays sloȝis, 5085
 þat sex cubettis clere · was of clene lenghe.
 þar was a cite in³ þat side · asisid aH with gemmes, In a city in that
land
 With-uten lyme or laire · a lady it kepid, 5088
 A worthi wedow & a wlonk · with thre wale childire, [Fol. 88.]
 þat qwene Candace þe clere · was callid in þa bonds. dwelt queen
Candace.
 Now sall I sothely of hire soñs · say ȝow þe names ;
 þe first wos Candoyle callid · a kniȝt althire-fairest ;
 þe medilmast of þe meñ · was Marcipy hatteñ ; 5093
 þe thrid Caraptus is cald · þat kepid aH hire landis.

¹ A curl over p. ² MS. datere. ³ MS. þ in ; with þ struck out.

Alexander writes
to Candace.

Sone as þe kyng of hire knew · a clause he hire writis,
An Image all of athill gold · of Amōn hire sendis ;
To mete him in þe montayns · þat mild he¹ be-sechis,
þat þai miȝt sacrif[is]e samme þar · to his sere driȝtins.
Sone as þis princes of pris · þis pistiH had deuysid,

Candace sends
him presents,

þaH sendis scho to him sandis-men · with selid lettris,
With tribute & trouage · & many tried giftis, 5101

and writes a
letter.

And þire þe wordis of hire write · at oH þese wyse
spekis.

¶ “To þe kiddest kyng · of kyngs aH othire, 5103
Sire Alexander þe athilest · of Amons strinds,

“I commend
myself to you.

I, Candace þe conquires · coround of Mede,
To ȝour honoure with obeyaunce · me ane I comaunde.

For it was purveid a-pert · of þe kyng of heuen,
Pre-desteyned of his prouydence · & of his pure miȝt,
þat ȝe suld pas in-to Pers · & prese it with armes. 5109

Your worth is
widely known.

Itale, Egipt, & ynde · & aH þire Iles ouire,

ȝour wirschiþ & ȝour worthenes · [in] aH þe werd sprong,
ȝour curtassy, ȝour kniȝthede · & aH ȝoure clene thewis.

And þat with meH of þe mold · noȝt melid vs alane,
Bot driȝtins & duesses · ȝour dedis declaris. 5114

[Fol. 88 b.]

Forþi like it to ȝour lordschip · & lathis noȝt my sawis.

We at ere voide ay of vice · & vacant of syn,
Quat suld we moue in-to þe montts ? · þat mysters bot
litiH, 5117

We do not care to
adore Apollo;

Outhire Appole to adoure · or any othire driȝtins.

Bot seH it syttiH noȝt to oure simpilnes · ȝour saȝe to
with-stande,

but I send you
presents,

Ne nopir to mele ne to mote · ȝoure maieste a-gayH,

ȝit sall I send ȝow fra my soile · a certaH of giftis, 5121

For reuerence of ȝour rialte · & of ȝoure rosid werkis.

I drysse ȝow here a diademe · ȝoure druits to were,

þe gaigest gift vndire god · of gold & of stanes,

And to ȝow selfe of þe same · o serelepy hewis, 5125

A hundreth in a hale heere · hiȝtild with crestis,

¹ MS. ho ; in the margin.

And twa hundret & teñ · be tale at þe leste,
 Of rekanthes of rede gold · railed of gemmes,
 With pellicans & pape-ioyes · polischt¹ & grauen, 5129 pelicans, and
parrots, all of
gold,
 With cambs & with coronacles · aȝt of clene perle,
 Thretti goblettis of gold · þe grattest in þe worde,
 Fyue hundreth aȝt of euyñ elde · of Ethyops childire,
 Rynoseros,² a roghe best · with raggid tyndis. 5133 a rhinoceros,
 Añ azte to³ ȝour empire · I fra myn erd wayue,
 Berrers of ane Ebyñ-tree · & brilles a thousand,
 Foure hundreth Olifants in fere · þis fardiȝ to bere, 400 elephants,
 And thretti hundreth of my thede · þat threuen ere &
 tame. 5137
 I presand ȝow, of panter · fuȝt of proud maseles, and 400 panther-
skins."
 Foure hundreth fellis ȝit to fee · þat fynely ere tewid."
 Of lepardis & of lionesses · þis lady him sendis,
 A purtrayour in preuate · scho prays with þaȝn to pas, She prively sends
a painter to take
Alexander's
portrait.
 And his personele proporcions · in perchemeñ hire bring.
 All was done as scho demed · & he⁴ hire dere thankis,
 And graithis hire giftis agayñ · þe gaieſt vndire heuen.
 Þe payntour presentis his aport · & shoo was proud þeñ,
 For scho had depely many day · desyrid him to see. [Fol. 89.]
 Þeñ wendis furth hire dere soñ · a litiȝ dais eftir, 5147
 Þat was ser Candoile þe kene · þat was hire kidd aire,
 His wife & his womē · & with his wale feres, Candace's son,
Candoil, goes
from home.
 Out of þe cite þai soȝt · to solace þar hertis;
 Þe kyng of Bebrike þe bald · him oñ þe bent metis, The king of
Bebrik assaults
him,
 With a company clene · of kniȝtis enarmed,
 Maynes many of his meñ · & him his make refis, 5153
 For he þat lady had loued · many lange wintire. and robs him of
his wife,
 He gers a berne oñ a blonke · hire bremely to cast
 Before a bald bachelere⁵ · oñ a bigg stede;
 Scho gaffe skirmand skrikis · at aȝt þe skowis range, who shrieks
shrilly.
 It miȝt a persid any hert · to here how scho wepid.

¹ MS. polischa, *altered to* polischt.² MS. lynoseros.³ MS. fra to; *with fra struck out.*⁴ *In the margin.*⁵ MS. bachele, *altered to* bachelere.

Candoil goes to
Alexander's tents,

to ask his help.

Candoil is led to
Ptolemy, the
second in com-
mand.

Candoil tells him
of his misfortune.

[Fol. 89 v.]

Ptolemy tells
Alexander.

Alexander tells
Ptolemy to per-
sonate him,

and to call for
him by the name
of Antiochus,

þan was *ser* Candoile in þat cas · kenely distourbid,¹
Aires oñ as bely[ue] · to *Alexander* tentis, 5160
Thoȝt he wald sewe to þat sire · & seke him of grace,
If he wald helpe *with* his heere · þat hend to reschowe.
Be he þe paulyoñ a-*prochid* · it past *with-in* euen,
And sone þe wacche-meñ *with-out* · quen þai him þare
sawe, 5164

þai tuke him, & to Telomew · titte þai him ledd,
þe mast praysed of þe pers · bot þe prince selfe.
“Quat dons mañ ert þou?” *quod* þe duke · “& quat
dos þou here, 5167

Quat is þe cause of þi come? · do kith vs þi name.”
“Sirs, Candaces soñ þe conquires · & Candoile I hiȝt;”
And clene tald him [of his²] care · þe cause aȝ-to-gedire.
þan trines oñ *ser* Telomew · & fra his tent wyndis,
Comands *ser* Candoile to kepe · in a kniȝt's warde,
Cairys in-to a cabayne · quare þe kyng liggis,¹ 5173

Fand him slowmand oñ slepe · & sleely him rayses,
And tellis him of þat tithandis · þe tale how itt standis,
How þar was comyñ slike a kniȝt · to craue him of help,
þe soñ of Candace þe quene · þe kepare of Mede; 5177
And how þe Bebrik kyng¹ · had him his wyfe refid.

“Ȝa, aire a-gayñ,” *quod* *Alexander* · “in-to þine aweñ
tent;

Do oñ þi hede a dyademe · þe derrest at I haue,
A crouñ all of clene gold · & a kyngis mantiȝ, 5181
A-seȝce þe doun in my seȝe · as þou my-selfe ware;
Lat com a-boute þe my kniȝt's · & call ye my name,
*with*³ liȝt lions latis · as a lord suld;

Say þi-selfe is my-selfe · & þañ my-selfe caȝ, 5185
As I ware Antioc þat athill · noñ aghe of me þou stand,
And I sall hiȝe to þi hest · as [I] þi hathiȝ ware.

Quen I com to þi call · & knele þe before,
þou saȝ declare me þe cas · of Candals auntir, 5189

¹ MS. distrouubid.

² MS. tald him him care.

³ MS. w, followed by a blot and with; probably with with.

Befor his *persoñ* apert · ilk poynt as he touchid.
 Be noȝt a-baist quen I bow · ne bede me¹ noȝt to ryse,
 Bot lat þi semblance be sadd · quen þou þi saȝe ȝildis ;
 And sai þaṇ, ‘ Antioc, myn athiH’ · quen þou has aH tald, and leave the rest
to him.
 ‘ Latt se þi witt in þis werke’ · & wysely me rede.”
 þaṇ² trines furth *ser* Telomew · & tyris him belyue ;
 In emperouris apareH · his³ *persoñ* he clethis. 5196
 And Alexander as belyue · in antioks name, Alexander pre-
tends to be
Antiochus,
 Quen he was⁴ callid, *with* a kniȝt · he coms in a stounde.
 þan tellis to him *ser* Telomew · þe tale aH-to-gedire,
 Be-fore *ser* Candale þe kene · his consaile him askis.
 “ Ware⁵ it ȝour will,” *quod* þe wee · “ wale emperoure, and offers his
advice.
 þan wald I fare *with* þis freke · his fere to reskowe,
 And bid þe Bebrike · oñ bathe twa his eȝeṇ, [Fol. 90.]
 Withouten bade to þis briȝt · his brid to restore ; 5204
 And say þat sire, oñ þi⁶ be-half · bot he hire sone ȝeld,
 We saH his cite & him-selfe · syngē in-to poudire !”
 With þat inclynes þe kniȝt · & kyndly him loues, Candoil is pleased.
 Said, “ antiok, of aH men · ay be þou Ioyed ; 5208
 It semes þe, for þi sapience · to sit in a trone,
 And to be cled as a kyng · *with* croune & *with* septir !”
 þan aires him furth *ser* Alexander · as Antiok it ware, Alexander, sup-
posed to be
Antiochus,
 Cairis oñ *with* candoile · & caȝt him his leue,⁷ 5212
 Soȝt furth þe same niȝt · & to þe cite wan,
 Quare þe Bebrik kyng · *with* þe bird lengis. goes against king
Bebrik,
 Sone þe wacchis oñ þe wallis · þaṇ wiȝtly ascryes,
 Qua þai ware, & of quethen · & quat was þar errande.
 “ It is *ser* Candoile,” *quod* þe kyng¹ · “ is comyn for and says he is
come for Candoil’s
wife.
 his spouse ; 5217
 And I am messangere made · þat mild to delyuire.
 þe maistir out of Messedone · ȝow maynly enjoynes,
 If ȝe ȝoure cite wiH saue · to sese him his brid.” 5220
 þan was þe burgaige a-baiste · & brest vp þe ȝatis,

¹ ne bede me *in the margin*.² MS. La þaṇ ; *corrected*.³ MS. his his ; *corrected*.⁴ MS. had was ; *corrected*.⁵ MS. With ; *altered to Ware*.⁶ *In the margin*.⁷ MS. wyfe, *altered to leue*.

She is restored. Of þe palais of þe proud kyng · his *paramour* him take.
Sire Candoile to oure *conquirour* · carpis þire wordis,
And adoures him for his athiH dede · & Antiok him calls.

Candoil asks the supposed Anti-
ochus to go with
him to Candace. “I pray þe, prince, *with* me pas · to my *praysid* modire,
þat þou may merote haue &¹ menske · & mede for þi
werkis.” 5226

[Fol. 90 b.] þan was oure kyng of þat carpe · kyndly reioyed,
For him had list oñ hire to loke · many lang^t wintir.
He said, “aire we to *Alexander* · & askis him his leue,
And I saH fayn *with* þe found · & felsyn þi wiH.”

Alexander pre-
tends to ask leave
to go. þan trines he to *ser* Telomew · at in² his trone sittis,
Lazt his leue at þe lede · as he his lorde ware. 5232
þis kid he for a coyntise · & kest slike a wile,
Lest he ware knawyn for þe kyng · þe kniȝt for to
blinde.

Candoil and Alex-
ander ascend a
hideous hill. þan caires he furthe *with* Candoile · vp at a cliffe wyndis,
A hidous hiH & a hiȝe · þat to þe heuen semed,
Was loken all in lange lindis · like to þe cedres, 5237
Growand full of gernetts · & gracious frutes.
þare fand þai bery-buskis · & braunches *with* grapis,
þat vnnethes bere miȝt a berin · a bole oñ his schuldire.
With hesils hild of hodere · cloud lang^t þa appills,
And aH þe woddis fuH of wolfes · & of wild apis. 5242
þai bow vp to a² banke · & þe burgh neȝes;

Candace hears
they are coming, And Candace þe conquires · *quen* scho þe cas heris,
How bathe hire barne & his brid · was broȝt hame sond,
þan was scho glad in hire gast · & gretly reioysed.
In-to a *chambre*³ scho chese · & changid hire wedis;

and attires herself
richly. A Robe aH of rede gold · & þan a riche mantiH, 5248
A croune & a corecheffe · clustert *with* gemmes,
And [cam] doun of hire closere · *with* kniȝtis him to
mete.

A grete gate be degrece · agayn þaim scho foundis;
“Kys me, *ser* Candoile” · & clappis him in armes,

¹ Above the line.² In the margin.³ The h is above the line.

Said, "welcum be þou, wale soñ · & þou, my wale doʒtir ! She welcomes her
And I am glad of ʒoure gest · as gode geffe me ioye." son Candoil.

Sire *Alexander* hire a-vises · & aH his hert liʒt'is, 5255

Him þoʒt hire like at a loke · his lady his modire.

Scho was so faire & so fresche · as faucoñ hire semed, Alexander is
Añ elfe out of añ-othire erde · or ellis añ AungeH. pleased with
Candace.

Hire palais was fuH precious · þof it *parades* ware,

Plied ouir with pure gold · aH þe plate-rofes, 5260

And þat was ioyned fuH of gemes · & of ioly stanes, [Fol. 91.]

With breme blasenand bemes · briʒt as þe soñ.

þe kyng with dame Candace · þe casteH he entres, Alexander enters
a large hall,

Silis in with þat semely · in-to a somere-haH, 5264

A strenthe, was stiʒtild all of stagis · þe stithest of þe
werd,

Was nane so comly a close · vndire þe can[o]pe of heuen,

þe bild was aH of brent gold · þe beddis of þe same,

Piʒt fuH of pentests · & opire proude stanes, 5268 full of precious
stones and
adorned with
gems.

Of Onycles & orfrays · & orient perles,

And with þire precious piers · of paradise stremes,

Bathe þe benkis & þe bordis · bett of þe noble,

Smeten fuH of smaragdins · & opir small gemmes, 5272

Of Acats & of Amatistis · & adamants fyne,

Calcidoynes & crisopaces · & opir clere bees.

þe pilars ware of purfire · polischt & heweñ, The pillars are of
porphyry.

With gomes grouelings of gold · graythid for þe nanes,

Fondand on aH foure · on fote & oñ handis, 5277

Buskid vndire þe baisens · to bere vp þe postis.

þare ran a reuire, as I rede · vndire þat riche hame, A crystal river
runs through the
hall.

Was neuir na cristah so clere · as was þa clere strandis.

þe kyng & Candace þe quene · & Candeile hire aire,

þe same day in þe sale · was serued to-gedire. 5282

Scho sesis him on þe secunde day · [& sone] with him Next day Candace
takes Alexander
to her chamber.

laches,

Raʒt him by þe riʒt hand · & raikis to a chambre,

Was parraillid aH of plate-gold · pariet & opire,

With stoute starand stanes · þat stremed as þe soñ. 5286

Was þar na leuyand lede · ne lyfe bot þam ane.
 And þan scho laches him be-lyfe · & ledis him forthire,
 In-to a clochere with a kay · þe clennest of þe werde,
 Was sammed aH of sipris · & seder-tables. 5290

¶ Vicesimus quintus passus Alexandri.

[Fol. 91 b.]

This room turned
 round by con-
 cealed machinery.

It begins to move.

þis selere was be sorsry · selcuthely foundid,
 Made for a mervaH · to meeue with engine ;
 Twenti tamed Olifants · turned it a-boute,
 Quirland aH oñ queles · quen þe quene entres. 5294
 Quen þai ware sett þar in sameñ · oñ silkin webbis,
 Sone begynnes it to gaa · & gretly he wondres.
 “Ware slike a wondire in oure marche · of Messedone,”
 he said,

“It ware a daynte to deme · for any duke oute !”

Candace calls him
 by his true name.

þañ answare him þis athiH quene · & Alexander him
 callid, 5299

“Mekill grettir it ware to 3ow of grece · & to¹ gomes
 here.”

þan stemes he with þe stoute kyng · & stiggis with his
 name ;

Alexander turns
 pale.

His chere out of chere hew · it changis in-to pale,
 þan has þat hende him by þe hand · & hent vp a laztir.

Candace shews
 her portrait of
 him.

In to A preue parlour · þai passe bathe to-gedire, 5304
 And þar in perchement depayntid · his person scho
 schewid.

Said, “se þi-selfe a sampiH · þat I þe sothe neuyn !”

When he sees this,
 he trembles.

As fast as he oñ þis figour · festid his sizt,
 AH falowis his face · & his flesche trimblis ; 5308

“Qui fadis so þi faire hew ?” · said þe faire lady

“þe werreour of aH þe werd · & wastoure of ynde,

þou þat has brettend oñ þe bent · þe barbrins folke,²

þe pepiH out of Panty · þe Persens & þe Medis. 5312

She tells him he

Loo, now, þe here withouten hi3t · in-to my handis sesed,

¹ In the margin.

² MS. fokke.

Bot in a womans ward · for aH þi wale dedis !

is in a woman's
power now.

Ser, wete it wele ȝoure worthenes · þat for na wele here
Suld neuire no hathiH vndire heuen · [be] to hiȝe losed ;

For aH þe welthe of þe werd · ware it a wee grantid,

It witis a-way at a wapp · as þe wynd turnes." 5318

þan chawfis him þat chiftane · & with him-selfe chidis,

[Fol. 92.]

All if he spared to spek · his sprete he rehetis.

Alexander is
enraged, and
gnashes his teeth,

As any terand for tene · he with his tethe gnaistes,

And hitherly on ilk side · his heued he declines. 5322

"Qui colkins þou, ser conquirour · & crabbis so þi saule,

Quat may þi vertu now a-vaile · & aH þine vayn pride?"

"I swete," quod þe swete kyng · "þat I na swerd haue,

because he has no
sword.

For I na wapen haue, I-wis · my writh with to venge!"

"Now, bald baratour on bent · if þou a brand hade,

Quat prowis miȝt þi person · a-preue in þis stounde?"

"For I vnwarly," quod þe kyng · "am to ȝoure wiH

taken,

5329

If he had one, he
would kill her and
then himself.

I suld þe slaa þare þou sittis · & þan my-selfe eftir !"

"Now, be my croun," quod þe quene · "as kniȝtly þou

swaris ;

Bot neuir-þe-lattir ȝit be liȝt · & lete of þi sorowe.

For þou has broȝt my soñ wife · of bebricans handis,

And I sall surely þe saue · vnseid of þe berbrens.

Candace assures
him he is safe,

For ware it knawen of þi come · þai walld þi cors schind,

For opressing of þe gud prince · Porrus of Ynde. 5336

And Caratros my kid soñ · has couplid him to wyfe

þe doȝtir of þis dere kyng · þat þou to dethe broȝt."

With þat scho sesis þis sire · & to þe sale ledes,

She takes him
back to her sons.

Sendis eftir hire sons · & sobirly þam tretis 5340

þis athiH of ser Alexander · as þai were aH haldeñ,

At þai suld menske him & mirthe · & make him at esee.

"I knaw it wele," quod Caratros · "my comly modire,

Caratros says he
must kill Alex-
ander,

þat he my brothirs¹ brid · has out of bands leuird,

& how þe kyng, be þat cause · has to þis kith sent ;

Bot my wyfe will ga wode for wa · bot I þis wee spiH.

or his wife will go
mad,

¹ MS. brothirð.

- Ne ware he a messangere · & 3it mare for 3oure-selfe,
 Sure suld him sowe for his sake · at him has sent hedire.
 [Fol. 92 b.] So saht his maistir, & I may · be my dire saule, 5349
 For he þe fadire of my fere · has in þe feld drepid.”
 “A!” quod þis lade, “leue soñ · if we þis lede slo3e,
 Suld we vs nymme any name · o3t bot of sorowe?”
 Candail says he
 must save him. “3a, Cartros,” quod Candoile · “þis kni3t has me saued,
 And I sal¹ lede him on lyue · vn-to his lord tentis.”
 ‘Quat baitis þou me so, my brothire · with þi breme
 wordis, 5355
 List² ye we stryfe in þis stede · & strike aithire opir?”
 The brothers
 quarrel. “þat kepe I no3t,” quod Candoile · “3it for na cas
 neuend,
 Bot if þe langis to þat laike · lo me here redy!”
 Candace tells
 Alexander to
 pacify them. þan callis Candace þe kni3t · in consaille him takis,
 Sees hire sons wald him sla · & radly scho pleynes;
 ‘Lord Alexander, þine are · quare is þi wittis? 5361
 I prai þe for þi prouidence · pesse now my childire.”
 þan bows þis baratour · þire brethire to stere,
 He finds the
 brothers fighting. Fand caratros & candoile · at knyfes to-drawen,
 Bad, “blyns, bernes of 3oure brathe · & of 3our breme
 wordis; 5365
 3e fare bot with folite · quare ere 3oure fyue wittis?”
 Alexander pacifies
 Caratros, þan carps he to ser Caratros · & kythis on þis wyse,
 Ser, if þou lessen my life · na lowere þou wynnes.
 For Alexander of his aweñ · has many athi3t kni3tis
 þat ere mare sekire at a-say · þan slike seuen houndreth.³
 For if I ware fallen fey · him forced bot litti3t. 5371
 saying that it is
 not worth his
 while to kill him. For ware I a tresour to þat tulk · trowe wele þi-selfe,
 þat me so sodanly þat sire · had no3t sent hedire,
 With-uten wees me to warde · nay, wene þou þat neuir.
 Bot if þe list oñ þat lede · loke with þine e3en, 5375
 Sire Alexander þe athi3t · þine aldfadire bane,
 þe thare bot graunt me to geue · quat guds as I craue,

¹ In the margin. MS. Lift.³ MS. henn dreth, altered to houndreth.

And I saß prestly þat prince · present in-to þi handis.” [Fol. 93.]

þan ware þire brethire fuß blithe · þus ware þai bath
pesed, 5379

And Candoile callis to þe king · & kindly him thankis, Candoil thanks
Alexander.

“Had I ȝow ay with me here · happy ware I þan,
þan wald I wene with ȝour witt · to wast aß my fais.”

With þat scho kende him a croun · clustrid with gemmes, Candace gives him
a crown covered
with gems.

With Amatists & Adamands · & an athið mantil,
Sterind & stiȝt fuß of stanes · sithin stelis to him cussis,
With othire preuates him plesis · bad pas oñ with hele.
Nowe aires furth oure conquirour · & candoile him gidis,
Driues furth all þe dai · till doun was þe soñ, 5388

And so þai come till a caue · was out of course hoge,
Betwene twa hillis in a hope · & herberd all niȝt.

“Sire,” quod candoile þe kene · & to þe kyng said, Candoil and Alex-
ander come to a
magic cave.

“All spritis in þis spelonk · here speke þai to-gedire,
Here is þaire comon consaile;” · & þis þe kyng heris,
Makis he *gracis* to his goddis · & þan þe grofe entres.
Quen he was douñ in þe depe · he saȝe a dym cloude
Full of starand sternes · and stiȝtild in þe myddest
A grete gryselȝ god · oñ a gay trone, 5397

þat liȝt lemand eȝen · as lanterns he had.

Oure mode kyng was so maied · myndles him semed :

“Haile, Alexander þe hende” · quod þat hiȝe driȝtin. An oracle calls
Alexander by
name.

“Sire, qua ere ȝe?” said oure *ser* · “Synches I hiȝt ;
And to my powere vndire-putt · is aß þe playn werd.

For þi name a cite has þou sesid¹ · bot þou settis me na
temple.” 5403

“Sire, if I miȝt merke to Messedone · a Maistir I þe
hiȝte ; Alexander is told
he shall never
return to
Macedon.

Saß nane be like it in na lede ;” · “nay,² lange noȝt
þar-eftir !

þou saß neuir loke on þat land · ga lawere & be-hald.”

þan kend him quare anothire cloude · was fuß of briȝt
sternes, 5407

¹ MS. *sisis*.

² MS. *nay nay*.

[Fol. 93 b.]

And quare a-nothire grym god · was graythlid on a sege.
 “Sire, quat ert þou,” said þe segge · “*ser* Sirapis, I-wis ;
 þe grond & þe begininge · of all þe godis oute.”

Alexander asks
 Serapis who is to
 slay him.

“Now I be-seke þe, Serapis,” · said oure kyng¹ þaⁿ,
 Quat segge is sett me to slaa · þe sothe þou me teH.”

“Sire, I haue neuend þe or now · þat, ware þat note
 knawen 5413

Serapis will not
 tell him.

Till any douth of quat dome · þeⁿ died I for sorowe.
 þou has¹ a blisful¹ burȝe · biggid to þi name,
 Quare many bernes sall debate · & bald emperouris,
 þare saH þi berynes be bildid · & þi body graueⁿ. 5417
 þan come vp oure kidd kyng¹ · and fra þe kniȝt partis,
 þus kaires he fro candele · bad, ‘kepe wele him driȝtin.’

Alexander and his
 men come to a
 valley full of
 snakes,

Moues him on to his meny · & on þe morne eftir
 þaⁿ dryues he furth with his dukis · in-to a deyne entris,
 A vale full of vermyⁿ · & all of vile neddirs. 5422

all with crowns
 on their heads.

And þai ware crokid & coynt · with corouns on hede,
 As it smytten [ware] aH of smythis · of smaragdens fine.
 ȝit ware þai pasturde of pepir · as þe prose tellis, 5425
 Of gyloffre & of gingere · els ioyed þaim na fodis.

For all ouire couerd¹ was þe coue · claggid with spices,
 þat makis þire wormes so wele · & wond in þaire kyndis,
 þat ilka twelmonth a turne · þai turnay to-gedire, 5429
 Ilkane mellis with his make · & so þare many dies.

The snakes kill
 some of his men.

þaⁿ pas þai thethen tiH a place · of perlious bestis,
 With clouen clees, sais þe clause · as kynd of þe hoggs.
 þai ware thihe & threuen² wele · thre foote o brede,
 Quare-with þai faȝt with in-fere · & fellid of his kniȝtis,
 þai ware so brefe at a blisch · borely & grym.

On ilka best a bares hede · full of breme tuskis, 5436
 þus ware þai fourmed aH be-fore · & farand be-hynde
 Like as it ware lepardis · & lions with tailis.

Griffins also
 appear.

ȝit was þar gedird out of gripis · & griffons emange,
 þat felly flappid at þe faces · of þe feH erles, 5440

¹ MS. *inserts* biggid, *struck through*.

² MS. *theeuen*, *altered to* threuen.

And euir ilka best was so bigge · of body & of wyng,
 þat he miȝt bere away a blonke · & a kniȝt armed.
 þe kyng was oñ his couresere · to comforth his dukis,
 Oñ þe bald bucefaloñ · eblande þaim he rydis,
 Prekis fra place in-to place · bad, “plukis vþ ȝour
 hertis,” 5445

[Fol. 94.]

Alexander mounts
Bucephalus,

And cherischest his chiftans · with chelous wordis.
 He baldis of his bachelers · & his bowmen he cheris,
 To flay with flanes of þe fowlis · & þe feH bestis. 5448
 And it was done at his dome · with-drewe þai na langir,
 Bath archere & alblastis · & all þaim a-sailed.
 þe bataile oñ bathe halfis · brymly begynnys,
 Oure seggis & þe Synagyns · sembrid vnfaire ;
 Gripis gripis of oure gomes · out of gilt sadils, 5453
 Tuk þam in þaire talons · & titt fra þaire blonkis.
 Bot ȝit oure kyng with his kniȝtis · so kenely defendis,
 And with his ginge out of grece · þat he þe gree wynnes.
 Bot ȝit was herid of his here · twa hundreth & ouire,
 þus gafe vþ þe gaste · with gold oñ þai heles.
 þan ferd he furth tiH a flode · & þat a ferly hoge, 5459
 Twenti forelangi & ferre · it had of fuH breede,
 And aH þe strands of þe streme · stode fuH of stith
 reedis,

and encourages
his archers.

A great battle.

The griffins tear
men out of their
saddles.The army comes
to a great river
full of reeds,

Quare-of he beds at a braid · him bargis to make.
 Quen it was hewyn at his hest · with heggis ouire-folden,
 þan entirs in of his erles · & ouire þe ee passis. 5464
 And aH þat kith of oure kyng · quen þai his come wist,
 þai perid to him with presands · þe proudis of þat land.
 Sum spends oñ him of spon[ges]¹ · a sparles nounbre,
 Of mirre & of mekiH quat · milke-quite² 5468
 Sum meñ muscles him mett · & with so mekiH schellis,
 þat sex pond miȝt of paise · haue ni of watre.
 Sum of seelis of þe see · sendis to him cotis,

which they cross
in barges.Alexander re-
ceives presents of
shells and seal-
skins.

¹ MS. þ spon, followed by a small blank space. The Latin text has spongiās.

² The line is incomplete; add—‘& purple.’ Latin text, albas et purpureas.

[Fol. 94 b.]

Sum bees at ware blode-rede · & borely wormes
 As large as a mans lege · & lamprays of wezt 5473
 Twa hundreth pond ay a pece · & past it be fifty.

In that river were
 creatures like
 women,

3it was þar wonand in þis watir · as women it semed,
 þat ferly faire ware of face · with haare to paire heelis.
 Ouire-stride þar any strange mañ · or be þir strand's
 sailed, 5477

who drew men
 down under
 water, and
 drowned them.

þai droze þaṁ doun in-to þe depe · & drowned þaim for
 euire,
 Or els þai tillid þaim to þe trees · as þe buke tellis,
 And gert þaim laike with þaim so lange · till þaim þo
 life wantis. 5480

Two of them are
 caught.

Oure meñ take of þaim twa · was teñ foote of hiȝt,
 Als blaȝt as any briȝt snaw · & as biche sons¹ tothed.

Vicesimus sextus passus Alexandri.

Alexander en-
 closes two and
 twenty kings,

þan aires furth ser Alexander · & with his arte closis
 Of terands of þir tartaryns · twa & twenti kyngs.

including Gog
 and Magog.

He stekis þaṁ vp with þar stoures · in a straite lawe,
 And I saȝ neuen ȝow þar names · if ȝe þaim neuire herd.

Gogg & magogg þe grete · he with þir gomes pyndis,
 Agekany & Anafrage · & Almade bathe, 5488

Sire Camour & ser Cacany · with aȝ þar kidd ostis,
 And ane ser Clambert þe kene · was kyng of þer ostis ;

Gamarody þe goblyn · a-nothire gryñ² sire,

Marthyney þe miȝtful · & Magen his fere,

Appedanere, Olaathere · & Alane þe grete, 5493

Names of all the
 kings.

And ane ser naȝy onone · he in þe nabb speris.

He lockis in ane ser limy · with a laith mey[n]he,

And raryfey, a riche ray · he in þe roche stoppis,

Sire Filies, a fell kyng · with aȝ his fers kniȝtis, 5497

And ane ser Bedwyn þe bald · with many briȝt helmes.

[Fol. 95.]

Arteneus ane athiȝ kem̄ · als-so he in-parkis,

And ane ser Tarbyñ, a tulke · with many toore
 thousandis ; 5500

¹ Or sous.² Read grym.

Sire Saltary, a-nothire sire · now is þe sowme reckend.

All þire he closis in þat cliffe · & cairis on forthire

Alexander comes
to the ocean at the
world's end.

To þe oceyañ at þe erthes ende · & þar in an Ilee he
heres

A grete glauir & a glaam · of grekin tongis. 5504

þañ bað he kniȝt's þaim vnclethe · & to¹ þat kithe swym,

Bot all at come in-to þat cole · crabbis has þaim drenchid.

þañ sewis furth þat souerayñ · ay by þa salt strandis

Toward þe settinge of þe soñ · in sesoñ of wintir ;

He turns to the
west,

Sexti dais with his sowme · sadly he ridis,

Raȝt oñ to þe reede See · & reridþ þare his² tentis. 5510

and reaches the
Red Sea.

þare was a miȝti montayne · at to þe mone semedþ,

He gessis it gaynir to god · þan to þe grounde vndire,

And slike a fonned fantasy · þan feþ in his hert,

How þat he listid miȝt be fra þe lawe · vn-to þe list
sternes. 5514

He wishes to
ascend in the air.

þan made he smythis to gaa smert · & smethe him a
chaiere

Of blake ireñ & of bigge · & bynde it with cheynes,

He has an iron
chair made,

A sekire sege in to sitt · & sett him on-loft. 5517

And foure Griffons full grym · he in¹ þat graythe festes ;

to be raised by
four griffins.

He makis to hinge ouir þaire hede · in hokis of ireñ

Flesch on ferroim þaim fra · at þai miȝt noȝt to reches,³

To make þaim freke to þe flizt · þat fode for to wyn,

For þai ware fastand be-fore · halden for þe nanes.

Now is he woñ þurȝe þar wingis · vþ to þe wale cloudis ;

They bear him up
to the clouds,

So hiȝe to heuen þai him hale · in a hand-quile, 5524

Midil-erth bot as a mylnestane · na mare to him semed,

And aþ þe watir of þe werd · bot as a wrethen neddire.

þe vertu of þe verray god · enviroounis⁴ him swythe,

And þañ þai feþ oñ a fild · as ferre fra his ost 5528

and descend in a
field.

As any freke miȝt founde · in fiftene daies,

And he vnhurt with mikiþ vnhome · he to his ost

[Fol. 95 b.]

wynes.

¹ In the margin.

² MS. is his; with is struck out.

³ Read reche.

⁴ The first i above the line.

- A-nothire wondirfuH witt · 3it worthid in his hert,
 He wishes to dive in the sea. How he miȝt seke doun sounde · in-to þe see bothom,
 To see quat selcuthe is seet · in þe salt watir, 5533
 How many kind^e of creatours · þat in þe cole duellis.
 He has a glass box made, strengthened with iron,
 þan gert he gomes for to gangi · & grayth him a tonn
 Of grene glitterand glas · with gerrethis of iren,
 þat he miȝt sitt in him-selſe · & with his seȝt persee
 Ane & othire & aH þing · at outwith it lengid. 5538
 Sone was it blawen at a braide · & broȝt him be-forne,
 and supported on chains. AH boun as he badde · & bunden with cheynes.
 þan of his bald bachelers · þe biggist out callis,
 And raȝt to þaim þire rekenthis · to rewle & to hald.
 He makis a conand^e with his kniȝtis · & kend þaim þe
 time, 5543
 Howe lange him likid fra þe lande · to lengi in þe depe,
 He enters the box, and is let down. In at a wicket he¹ went · & wynly it speris;
 Princes pointid it with pik · & he þe plunge entres.
 þare saȝe he figours of fischis · & fourmes diuerse, 5547
 þat kend he neuir so many kindis · ne of so qwaynt
 hewis.
 He sees strange four-footed fishes. Sum ferd all oñ foure feete · & farand^e as bestis,
 Bot quen þai blischt oñ þis berne · þan bade þai na langir.
 And opir sellis² he saȝe · at sai wald he neuir, 5551
 þat ware vnlikly to leue · to any man wittis.
 Sone so þe setnes was gane · þat him-selſe made,
 He is drawn up again. þai dreȝe him vp to þe drye · & he na dere sufird.
 þan raikis he by þe reede see · & rides ay þe sannet,
 Ferly ferre with his³ folke · &⁴ ficchid his tentis, 5556
 þare fande he bestis oñ þe brym · with bemes as sawis,
 Strange beasts attack his men. þat ware as bitand breme · as bladis of swerdis.
 þai sett in a sadd sowme · & sailid his kniȝtis,
 Porris doun of his princes · & persys þar schildis, 5560
 3it fellid his folke of þaim fey · foure score hundreth,
 And foure hundreth, & ferre · be fifti, þai drepid.

[Fol. 96.]

¹ In the margin. ² MS. seer sellis; with seer struck out.³ MS. he, altered to his.⁴ MS. repeats &.

þan drines he þethin *with* his dukis · in-to desert landis, He comes to a
great desert.
 Is riȝt betwene þe reede see · & Arrabie costis, 5564
 A wilsom wast & a wild · & wons fuȝ of neddirs,
 And þai ware hedously hoge · & horned as Tupis.
 þai turred down of his tulkis · & *with* þar tyndis sloȝe;
 Bot þe dreȝest deele of þaim died · of his dukis handis.
 þan past he to a-nopir place · & piȝt down his tentis, He fights against
various strange
beasts.
 And fand a bataiȝt of bestis · as breame as þe first. 5570
 þai ware of figour & of fourme · as fendis of heȝt,
 With heuy hedis & hoge · as horses it were.
 And þai ware tacchid fuȝ of tethe · as tyndis ere of Some are like
fiends.
 harows,
 And feȝ flammes as of fire · floȝe fra þaire mouthes.
 A selly sowme of his seggis · was slane or he wist,
 And he þaȝ hertis his here · biddis, “hewis oȝ, my
 childre;” 5576
 And ferly ferd of his folke · was in þe fill strangild.
 Bot aȝ þe dreȝe of þa deuels · þai drenchid or þai past.
 þan fondis he furth *with* his folke · in-to a fild entris,
 And þar he logis *with* his lordis · & lengis for a quile.
 For slike a feȝ infirmite · was in his hors bundeȝ,
 Buceifalon þe bald stede · þat he for bale dies. 5582 Bucephalus dies.
 þe berne blisчис oȝ his blonke · & seȝes his breth faile,
 Sighis selcuthly sare · & sadli he wepis,
 For he had standen him in stede · in stouris fuȝ hard,
 Woȝ him wirschip in were · fra many wathe saued.
 þe kynge to þis carioȝ · he castis his eȝen,
 Said, “fare wele, my faire foole · þou failid me neuire ! Alexander
laments over him,
 Saȝ now þi flesch here be freteȝ · *with* fowlis & *with*
 wormes, 5589
 þat has so doȝtly done ? · nay, driȝtin for-bede !”
 þaȝ bilda he þare a berynes · þis beste in-to ligg,
 Of schene schemerand gold · as it a schrine ware,
 A tombe as a tabernacle · & tildis vȝ a cite 5593 and builds him a
costly tomb.
[Fol. 96 b.]
 In reuerence of þat riche stede · & eftir him it callis.
 þan ridis he to a Reuere · a ruyde & a hoge, He comes to a
great river;

Detiraty þe depe · þe meñ þare it callis ;
 Fyue thousand Olifants in feree · þa frithmeñ him broȝt,
 A hundreth Mil¹le heuy chargis · ware heweñ for þe
 were.

and then to a
 palace of Xerxes.

þan pas he to a proude place · a palas of ioye, 5599
 Of Saxis, at sum time · was senyour of Persy.
 þar fand he garet^{tis} aH of gold · & gildiñ chaumbres,
 And many a miracle in þe mote · þat miche ware to
 reken.

He finds white
 birds,

þar fand þai bridis in þa bilds · borely & quite,
 Of fepir fresch as any fame · as ere þir fedith dowfis,
 þat see wald of a sekemañ · or any sorow ailid, 5605
 Queþir he suld warisch of þat waa · or of þe werd
 turne.

who can tell
 whether a sick
 man will recover.

For if þai blithly vp blenkid · & blischt oñ his face,
 þañ suld he couir of his² care · men knew by þe
 takens ;

He conquers
 Babylon,
 and kills king
 Nabuzardon.

And if þai chaungid opoñ chaunce · his chere to be-hold,
 With-outen doute he was dede · þañ durid he na langir.
 Now bowis furth þis baratour · & Babiloyñ he wynnys,
 Bretteneþ þe bald kyng · & bringis him of lyue, 5612
 Ane Nabizanda was named · & a noble kniȝt,
 Was ane þe proudest of his pirs · & prñce of his ward.
 He lengis in lithis & in lee · to his lyues ende,

He writes home
 to his mother
 and to Aristotle.

A seuen monethis in sonde · & sende out a pistiH 5616
 To his modire in-to Messedone · & to his maistir als
 Of his auntours, of his angwisch · & of his athiH werkis,
 And AristotiH be-lyue · him anothire writis.

“To þe kyng of kyngis,” quod þis clerke · “comande I
 myselfe. 5620

[Fol. 97.]

Sire, quen I waitid oñ ȝour werkis · I wex aH affraid
 Sum grayne of godhede, I gesse · was growen ȝow
 within ;

Aristotle's reply.

For þou has said þat neuir did segge · ne saȝe bot þine
 ane ;

¹ I. e. thousand.

² In the margin.

3it miȝt neuir, I lofe oure lorde · my lege, ȝow with-
stande ;

Sire, blissid be aȝ þi bachelers · at þe in¹ bales helpid !”

And now fynes here a fitt · & folows a-nothire. 5626

Vicesimus septimus passus Alexandri.

Oure bold kyng in Babiloun² · nowe bildis vp a trone, Alexander builds
a throne in
Babylon.
þe postis with aȝ þe apurtynance · as pure as þe
noble,

þat was so wondirly wroȝt · of werkis diuerse,

þat slike a sege vndire soȝ · was neuire sene eftir.

So grete garisons of gold · þe grekis in broȝt, 5631

þe Medis & þe Messedons · many horsis chargid,

þat þai out of ynde & els-square · with olifants lede ;

It wald haue wlatid any wee · þat welth to be-hald.

Twelve cubettis fra þe cald erth · he castis it oȝ hiȝt,

It was 12 cubits
high,
with 12 images.

And xij degreces aȝ of gold · for gate vȝ of lordis ;

And twyse sex Semylacris · sesid he þar-vndire, 5637

þat held oȝ hiȝe with þaire handis · aȝ þir heuy werke.

And þar was grauyn in þos gomes · with grekin letteris,

And titild in þe tried names · of his twelve princes.

With ilk a statute þat þar stude · stoutely enarmed,

And euer-ilk a person a prince · payntid was eftir.

Aȝ þe sete of þe sege · was smaragdys fyne, 5643

The seat was of
precious stones.

Off tried topaces & trewe · tyrid was þe wawes,

A tabernacle ouir þe trone · tildid vȝ oȝ³ loft,

And þan with stanes of ilka state · waȝ þe stoure clustrid.

A charbocke as a chase · was in þe chefe boȝ, 5647

þat brynt in bely-blind niȝt · as briȝt as þe soȝ,

[Fol. 97 b.]

With Imagis vndire in ilka nend · & Impid in þe names

Of aȝ þe prouyncees & þe places · þat he was prince ouire.

And þai ware visid aȝ in versis⁴ · in variant lettirs,

It had inscriptions
in various
languages,

Sum in latens lare · sum langage of grece,

¹ In the margin.

² MS. Baliloun.

³ In the margin.

⁴ MS. verser.

	Assisid aH of sex foote · & sett in betwene,	5653
	Ay thre paire oñ a plate · qware a poynt ristis.	
with the names of all the countries he had conquered ;	Now sall I neuyn 3ow þe names · note 3e þe wordis ;	
	¶ þe pepiH out of Panthi · is plant in first,	
	Pruto, Picard, & Pers · & Pamphalie ¹ bathe,	5657
such as Portugal,	Portingale & Paiters · it paies me trouage,	
Arabia,	Arrabe & Artoyes · and Assie þe mare,	
	Abbeoñ & Aufrike · & Acres anothire,	
Ethiopia,	Effosyñ & Ethiops · þire ebrues folke ;	5661
	aH Ermony & Ewrope · enterely me serues,	
England and India, and Ireland,	Ingland, Itaille, & Yndee · & Ireland costis,	
	Meede & Mesopotayme · & Massedoyne eke ;	
	Turke, Tuscane, & Troy · and Tartary ² elene,	5665
	Surre, SysyH, & Saarde · & Syres aH ouire ;	
Greece and Gascony,	Gyane, Garnad, & Grece · & Gascoyne I haue,	
	Baxe, Bayoñ, & Burdeux · & Bretayñ þe graunt,	
	Capidos, & Calde · þe Canony pepiH,	5669
Russia and Cornwall,	Russe, Romain & Ramys · a rent þai vs 3elē.	
	aH Calabree & Corwaile · oure coroun obieñ,	
	Bathe naples & Norway · þire Nauernes aH,	
Hungary and heathen Spain,	þe beeris ³ out of Hungry · & out of haythen Spayñ,	
	Frigie, Flandres, & Fraunce · & Femony vs loutis,	
	Ascaliouñ, & Arcagee · all of vs haldis ;	
Tyre, Thessaly, and Palestine.	Tiree, & Tasse, & Tessale · oure tributars ere,	
	Poliponens, & Pentapot · & Palestyne þe riche.	5677

[Here ends the fragment in the Ashmole MS.]

¹ MS. Pamplalie.

² MS. Tartasy.

³ Sic ; perhaps for heeris.

The remainder of the story may be briefly paraphrased as follows from the Historia de Preliis :—

Alexander next causes a golden crown to be made, adorned with precious stones, with an inscription.

A certain woman in Babylon is delivered of a monstrous child,

the upper half of which is born dead. A soothsayer tells Alexander that it signifies his approaching death.

At that time there was a man in Macedon named Antipater, who conspired with others to kill Alexander. He designed to do so by poison.

Antipater procures very strong poison, and sends it to his son Cassander. Cassander instructs his brother Roboas (whom Alexander loved, but had chidden for a slight fault) how to convey the poison to Alexander.

Alexander makes a great feast in Babylon. Roboas puts the poison in a cup, and hands it to Alexander, who drinks it, and cries out, "Help, help!" In falling, his sword pierces his liver; yet he rises again, and bids his guests continue the feast.

Alexander asks Cassander for a feather, to cause vomiting, and Cassander hands it to him, dipped in poison, which only increases the malady. Alexander passes a sleepless night, during which his lamp goes out. He crawls along on hands and knees to drown himself in the Euphrates. Roxana stops him, and replaces him in his bed, lamenting. Alexander sends for a notary to make his will.

The will instructs Aristotle to give a thousand talents of gold to the priests of Egypt. If Roxana gives birth to a boy, he is to be emperor; if to a girl, she is to be empress, married to some princely Macedonian, who is to be made emperor. Let Ptolemy have Egypt and marry Cleopatra; let Cleother have Ethiopia, Antiochus Syria, Arrideus Peloponnesus, Aristus India, Nicanor Seleucia, Ysmachas Hungary, Haulus Armenia, Lyochus Dalmatia and Sicily, Simon the notary Cappadocia and Pelagonia; lastly, let Cassander and Roboas have all as far as the river named Sol, and let their father Antipater have Cilicia.

When the will was made, there followed thunders and lightnings and great earthquakes, and all the world knew that his death was near. The Macedonians crowd round the palace, demanding to see him, and to know who is to be his successor. He names Perdiccas, to whom he commends Roxana and all his soldiers.

Then the Macedonians all begin to kiss him and to weep bitterly. Their lamentations are as low thunder, and even the sun is eclipsed.

A certain Macedonian, named Solentius, asks what they shall do when Alexander is gone. They all deplore the great calamity, and think that the great empire will fall to ruins. Alexander directs his crown to be sent to the temple of Apollo, gives instructions for the embalming of his body, directs Ptolemy to erect to his memory a golden sepulchre in Alexandria, and dies.

After his death, his princes dress the body in imperial state. He is conveyed to Alexandria, and buried in a costly tomb.

Alexander was of middle height, with a long neck, bright eyes, and ruddy cheeks. The days of his life were thirty-two years and seven months. He began to war at eighteen, and in seven years subdued all the barbarian nations. He was born on the eighth of the kalends of January, and died on the fourth of the kalends of April. He built twelve cities (which are enumerated).

Alexander's tomb was of gold. It was visited by philosophers, of whom the first said: "Alexander has made his treasure of gold." The second said: "Yesterday all the world was not enough for him; to-day four ells of it suffice him." The third: "Yesterday he ruled the people, to-day the people rule him." The fourth: "Yesterday he could deliver many from death, to-day he could not deliver himself." The fifth: "Yesterday he led an army out of the city, to-day he is led by it to his burial." The sixth: "Yesterday he pressed the ground, to-day the ground presses on him." The seventh: "Yesterday all nations feared him, to-day they despise him." The last: "Yesterday he had both friends and enemies, to-day all men are alike to him."¹

¹ Compare the *Gesta Romanorum*, ed. Herrtage (E. E. T. S.), p 516, no. **xxx**i.

The Story of Alexander.

[THE following epitome of the life of Alexander, in English prose, is copied from the Dublin MS., beginning on fol. 45, back.]

- Alexander the grete, þe sone of philip kyng¹ of macedon, which philip regned vij zere, and þe said alexander began to regne in the xvij zere of hys age.
- 4 And he said to hys peple in þis wise: "Fair lordez, I will in no wise be contrarye to your willes, ne to your dedes. But I schewe to you þat I hate frawdez & maleces, & as I haue loued you duryng my faders lyff,
- 8 so will I do in tyme Commyng. And I bothe councell & pray you that 3e drede god, obeye hym as souerayn of aH, And chese hym for kyng; & be most obeyssiant to hym þat shall best purway for þe gude astate of hys
- 12 people, & þat shall be most debonar & mercifuH to pure folkez þat beste¹ woll kepe iustice & þe right of þe feble ayenst² the mighty; hym also that shaH best dispoyse for þe publyke wele² & for no dilectacion of
- 16 wordly³ plesaunce shaH not be slowefuH to kepe & defende you, and by whom 3e shall be defendytt, & aH eueH & harmez by þe meane of hys goode dedes shall be destroyed; And he þat most hardly shall put hym
- 20 in devour to distroy your enmys; for suche ought to be chosen kyng¹ and none other."

Alexander begins to reign.

His address to his lords.

"Dread and obey God;

obey also him who takes most care for the public welfare;

and him who best endeavours to destroy your enemies."

¹ MS. þat beste þat best. ² MS. publyke like wele.

³ A correct form.

His people
applaud him.

And whan hys people had herd hys reasons aboue-
said, & knowen his grete discrecion, witte, & vnder-
standyng, thei wer gretly amercveld, and answered to 24
hym þus: "We haue herd & vnderstand thy grete
reasons, And haue resseyued & resseyue thy good
CounceH, and theirfor we will & besече the that þou
regne vppon vs & haue þe lordship vppon vs. Duryng 28
þi lyf we hope þer is none that hase so wele deseruyd
to be our kyngt." And þus þai chese hym to be þair
kingt, and Coroned hym, & yaff hym þair blessynges,
And prayd to god that he wold blesse & maynt[en]e¹ 32
hym. To whom he said: "I herd þe prayer that 3e
haue made for me, besechyng þat he wol stedfast þe
loue of me in your hertes & coragez, And þat by no
maner of the delectacion he suffre me do þat thyng 36
þat is ayen your profectez ne to my disworship."

He thanks them
for their prayers
on his behalf.

Darius, king of
Persia, demands
tribute from him,
which he refuses.

And sone after he send letters to all hys princez &
good townez of all hys Royaume. And when [he] hed^t
sent hys letters, one Dary, king of perce & of medy, 40
sent to alexandre for tribute like as he hed of hys
fadre. And he sent hym word at þe henne þat layde
þe gret egge was deyde. And after þis alexandre
made grette conquestes, And conquer^t Inde, he went to 44
a cuntree called Bragman; the which when þai wist of
hys Comyngt, þai sent mony wise men to hym, whiche
salute hym & sayd: "Sir alexander, þou hast no cause
to werre vppon us, ne to euill willyng; For we be² 48
both meke & poure, & we haue no-þing bott sapience,
the whiche if you will haue, pray god þat he wyll
gyff hir the; for by batayH þou shalt neuer hafe hir."
And when alexander herd hym say so, he made all hys 52
oste to tarye, & with few of hys knyghtez went within
þe sayd cuntree, for to enquire further of þe trouth.
And when he entred within þe same ground he found
mony poore folkez, women & chyldre all naked, gad- 56

The Brahmans
of India ask
Alexander not to
war against them.

He goes to visit
them.

He finds them to
be very poor.

¹ MS. maynte.

² MS. be ben.

- deryng herbis in þe feblez. And he asked of þaim
 mony questions, to whiche þai answerd wisely. And
 þan he bad þaim aske of hym some þing þat might
 60 do þaim good & to all þair people, and he wold gyff
 þaim it gladly. And þen þai said: "Sir, we aixe þe
 none other þing bot at þou wol gyff vs euerlastyng
 lyfe." Thenne alexander answerd & said: "howe
 64 might a man make other mennes liues euerlastyng¹ when
 he may not lennthe hys awne life one houre? And
 þat 3e axie of me is in no mannez power þat leueth."
 Thenne þai said to hym: "Seth þou hase good know-
 68 legh therof, wher trayvelles þou þi-self² to distroye all
 the worlde and gadre aH¹ þe wordly tresours, And
 wotte not when þou must lefe þaim?" Then Alex-
 ander sayd to hym: "I do nott aH þis at 3e say as of
 72 my-self. Butt god hath sent me through all þe world
 for texalte² and magnifye hys lawe and distroy all þen
 þat beleue not in hym."

He offers to grant
 them a boon.

They ask for
 everlasting life.

He says he
 cannot give it.

They ask him
 why he toils so
 much to win
 what he cannot
 long keep.

He replies that
 he is doing God's
 will.

- And some tyme Alexander wente disgyse¹ visityng¹
 76 hys lordez & enquiryng¹ of þair dedes. And on a tyme
 he Come in-to a towne of hys awne, And sawe two men
 of þe same towne bifore a iuge pletyng¹, of the which
 on said to þe Iuge: "Sir, I haue boght on house of
 80 thys man; And, long¹ after, I haue founde in it a
 tresour vnder þe erthe, which is nott myne. And I
 haue offerd¹ to deliuer it to hym: And he hath refusyd
 it; wherfore, Sir, I beseche the he be compellyd to
 84 take it, for alse moche as he knoweth it is not myne;
 for I haue no right þerto." Thenne the Iuge com-
 maund¹ hys aduersarie parte to answeere to þe same.
 And þen he sayd: "sir Iuge, that same tresour was
 88 neuer myne; but he hath edyfyed¹ in þat place that
 was byfore comyn to aH þoo that wold haue edyfyed
 ther-in. And þerfore I haue no right to take it."

He visits a town,
 and sees two men
 pleading before
 a judge.

One says, "I have
 found a treasure
 in the house
 which I bought of
 this man; compel
 him to take it."

The other replies
 that the treasure
 was never his.

¹ MS. and gadre alle (fol. 46 b) And to gedyr all.

² MS. to texalte: (texalte = to exalte).

Both ask the
judge to take it
himself,

but he refuses.

He finds that one
of them has a son,
and the other a
daughter; and
says, they must
be married, and
so divide the
treasure.

Alexander is
astonished,
saying, that many
judges would have
done otherwise.

The judge makes
a reply,

at which Alex-
ander marvels
still more.

Alexander comes
to a city where all
the houses are of
equal height, and
before every
house-door there
is a grave.

And þen þai both required þe Iuge that he wold take
it to hym-self; to qwom he answerd & sayd: "sithen 92
it is so that ye say that [ye] haue no right herto, ne he
hath no right to whom þe herytage hath longed and
yet bylongeth whar þe tresour was founden, how shuld
I haue ony right þerto, that am bot a straunger in that 96
caas, And neuer afore herd speke þerof? And ye wold
excuse yow þerof & yeue me þe charge of þe tresoure;
which is euyH done." Thenne he askyd of þaim þat
hed founde þe tresour, whether thay had ony children? 100
and þe tone answerd & sayd, he hed a soñ: and [he]
asked þat other in like wyse, & he sayd, he hed a
doghter. And þen þe Iuge comaundyd to make a
maryage bitwene þaim two, And at þai shuld haue þe 104
tresour by þat meane. And when Alexander herd þis
Iugement,¹ he hed gret mervayle therof, and sayd þus
to þe Iuge: "I trowe þer is nott in all þe world so
rightwise a Iuge as þou art." And the Iuge, þat 108
knew hym nott, sayd & asked of hym whether ony
Iuge in hys cuntree wold haue done otherwyse: "ye,
certainly," sayd alexander, "in many landez." Thenne
þe Iuge, hauyng grete mervayH þerof, asked of hym 112
whether it rayned and þe some dyd shyne in tho
landez; as he wold haue sayd, that it was mervayH
þat god shuld send ony light or rayne or other goode
thynges to them that do nott right & trew Iugement. 116
And therfore Alexander had gretter meruayH than by-
fore, And said, þer was bott few suche people vpon
erth as þai were in þat land.

And as alexander went owt of þat land, he passyd 120
thurgh a cite in þe which all þe housez of þat Cyte
were of one hight, & byfore þe dure of euery hous was
a grete pitte or graue; in whiche cite þer was no Iuge,
wherof he had gret mervayll; and asked of þe inhabit- 124

¹ The latter syllable (*ment*) is written in the middle of the lower margin of the leaf. Fol. 47 begins with he hed,

antis therin wherof such thynges shuld serue. The
 which answerd hym & sayd: "First, for þe outragez¹ The inhabitants
 hight of housez, loue & Iustice can nott be long¹ a towne explain to him
 128 emong þe people." And þai sayd, þe pittez & grauez the meaning of
 wer þair awne housez, to þe whiche þat þai shuld these things.
 sone go to, and þer dwelle vnto þe day of Iugement.
 And as tochyng^t that thai hed no Iuge, þai sayd, þai
 132 made good^t Iustice of þem-self, wherfore þai nede no
 Iuge. Thenne Alexander departed from þaim² right
 well pleasyd.

And afore hys deth, he wrote a letter vnto hys Alexander writes
 136 moder, desering^t hir to make no sorow for hym. And to his mother,
 sone aftir Alexander died & was putt in a coffre of gold, dies, and is buried
 & buried in alexandria with grete reuerence by princez in Alexandria
 & oþer grete lordez that keped³ & fulfilld hys testa- with great
 140 ment^t as he had ordeigned: thenne stert vp one of þe honour.
 grettest^t lordez of þaim that kept⁴ hym, and sayd þus:
 "Thay þat neuer . . .

[*The rest of the story is lost.*]

¹ So in MS. ; read outrageous. ² MS. þaim them.
³ MS. kepeth. ⁴ MS. kepth.

NOTES.

IN the following notes some attempt is made to elucidate a few passages in the text, especially where additional light is to be obtained from comparing it with the original Latin, or with the other English versions. In some cases phrases are explained, but the reader should, in general, turn to the Glossarial Index for help with respect to the more difficult words. The question of the various texts of the Alexander Romance is more fully treated of in the Preface. It is sufficient to mention here that the Latin text cited below is the "*Historia de preliis*," as printed (at Strassburg) in 1489. The English alliterative fragment cited as "A." is that edited by myself in 1867 as an Appendix to William of Palerne (E. E. T. S.); whilst that cited as "B." is the text called "*Alexander and Dindimus*," also edited by me in 1878. These two fragments are allied to very different parts of the present text. A part of A. resembles ll. 23—803* of our text, whilst B. resembles ll. 4019—4714.

Lines 1—22 are obviously original, and intended as a Prologue.

13. *Bot if*, unless. "It were a wonder else, unless they would in many a way (desire to hear wanton works); for, as their wits are within (them), so their will follows (those wits)."

15. *Ettillis*, I will endeavour, the present being used for the future. *Ettillis* is the first person; and the suffix *-is* at once marks the dialect as Northumbrian; for further remarks on this point, see the Preface.

17. *The buke*, i. e. the Latin text here followed.

18. "All the world over" is a phrase still in use.

21. *And ye will*, if ye will. *Renkis*, men, hearers; the story is supposed to be recited or read aloud.

23. Here the Romance begins, and in order to shew clearly how the translator has treated his original, the whole of the first chapter of the Latin text is here given, answering to the *Primus Passus* of the translation, which ends at l. 213. It should be further compared with the corresponding passage of A., viz. ll. 452—573.

"[S]apientissimi Egipcii, scientes mensuram terre vndasque maris et celestium ordinem cognoscentes, id est, stellarum cursum, motum etiam firmamenti, tradiderunt etiam vniuerso orbi per altitudinem et per noticiam artium magicarum. Dicunt enim de Anectanabo rege ipsorum quod fuerit ingeniosus in astrologia et mathematica eruditus. Quadam autem die dum nunciatum fuisset ei quod Artaxerses rex persarum cum valida manu hostium super eum veniret, non mouit militiam neque preparauit exercitum, sed intrauit cubiculum palatii sui; et deprendens

concham eream plenam aqua pluuiali tenensque in manu virgam eream, hic per magicam incantationem demones conuocabat, et per magicas incantationes intelligebat in ipsa concha classes nauium super eum potentissime venientes. Erant enim principes in custodiam militie positi Aneeta[na]bi a confinibus persarum. Uenit quidam exors dicens, "Maxime Aneetanabe, insurgit in te Artaxerses rex persarum cum multitudine hostium et gentiliuum infinitis. Sunt enim Parthi, Medi, Perse, Syrii, Mesopotamii, Drapes, Phares. Argiri, Caldei, Bachiri, Confires, Hircani, atque Agiophii, et alie pluresque gentes de orientabilibus partibus procedentes." Cum hec audisset Aneetanabus, suspirans dixit: "Custodiam quam tibi condidi bene obserua, sed non tamen sicut princeps militie egisti, sed sicut homo timidus. Uirtus enim non hec valet in multitudine populi sed in fortitudine animorum; an nescis quod vnus leo multos ceruos in fugam vertit?" Et hec dicens iterum intrauit cubiculum solus, et fecit nauiculas ereas in concha cum aqua plena pluuiali, tenensque in manu virgam palme et respiciens in ipsam incepit totis viribus incantare, et videbat qualiter egyptii sternebantur impetu classium Barbarorum. Statimque mutato habitu, radens sibi caput et barbam, et tulit aurum quantumcunque portare potuit, et quaecunque erant sibi necessaria ad astrologiam et ad artes magicas exercendas, fugit prope pelusium de egypto. Denique veniens ethiopiam induit linea vestimenta egipcium quasi propheta, intrauit macedoniam, sedensque manam (*sic*) grecis (*sic*) coram omnibus palam videntibus diuinabat. Egiptii vero vt viderunt quia Aneetanabus non inueniebatur ad curtum, perrexerunt ad Serapim deum illorum maximum, et rogaerunt eum vt vera responsa daret eis de aneetanabo rege eorum. Serapis autem respondit: "Aneetanabus rex vester abiit de egypto propter Arthaxersem regem persarum, qui vos suo imperio subiugabit. Post modicum vero tempus reuertetur ad vos reijciendo a se seruitutem et vleiscetur de inimicis vestris subiugando illos vobis." Et hec responsa recipientes statim fecerunt statuam regalem ex lapide nigro in honorem Aneetanabi, et scripserunt ad pedes eius responsa vt in posterum memorie mandaretur. Aneetanabus autem mansit macedonie incognitus."

We must not omit to notice here that Gower, in his *Confessio Amantis*, bk. vi. (ed. Pauli, iii. 61), gives a long extract from the *Alexander Romance*, which he designates as being

"A great cronique emperiall,
Which euer into memoriall,
Among the men, how so it wende,
Shall dwelle to the worldes ende."

See also the verse translation of "*Kyng Alisaunder*," edited by Weber, and the *Life of Alexander* by Plutarch.

25, 26. Here we have mention of the two lower elements, earth (*mulde*) and water (*see*).

27. Here the third element of *air* is mentioned, beyond which was a "*periphery*" of fire, not noticed. The "*odde home*" above the air

refers to what Gower calls *orbis* or the fifth element, otherwise the firmament; see Conf. Amant. iii. 105, 107. In this *orbis* are contained the seven planets and the fixed stars. The "courses of the clear stars" in l. 28 refers to the orbits of the planets.

29. For *aghill tre* read *athill thre*. The reference is to the three "peripheries" into which the element of air was subdivided.

"This air in periferies *thre*

Devided is, of such degre," &c.; Gower, C. A. iii. 93.

Articus and *Antarticus* refer to the two poles of the heavens.

35. A clear reference to the opening words of the Latin text—"Sapientissimi Egiptii," &c.

36. "They taught all, that desired to learn it, (some) of that lore." *Lere* is here improperly used, the right word being *learn*. The converse error, of using *learn* in the sense of 'teach,' is common in provincial English.

41. "When he beheld the heaven, he was wise enough to reckon the destinies of men alive."

44. How Aristotle taught Alexander "the nature of philosophy" is told by Gower in his seventh book. On the "seven arts," see my Notes to P. Plowman, p. 243.

46. The three authors alluded to are doubtless Plato, Pythagoras, and Priscian; they are not mentioned in the Latin text, the translation being much amplified.

50. "To pass (i. e. to march) against him."

56. Compare A. 480—"Of rain-water ryght full · þe rink gon it dress." Lat. "concham plenam aqua pluuiali."

70. *Hare wod*, hoar wood, i. e. bare wood, one stripped of leaves, as in winter-time. So also "*hore* okez" and "bare twyges," Gawain and the Grene Knight, 743, 746; "a forest highe and *hore*," Le Morte Arthur, ed. Furnivall, l. 314.

71. *Ane*, for Anectanabus; this shortened form occurs frequently.

81. *Artaxenses*, Artaxerxes. As in all M.E. poems, the spelling of proper names is very inaccurate. So in l. 87, the MS. has *panthy*.

87. These names may be compared with those in the Latin text (above), and in A. 494—500. Hence *Syre* is Syria; *Sychim* (perhaps suggested by Sichem in the Bible) answers to none of the Latin names; *Cupidos* no doubt means Cappadocians; *Faire* represents the Lat. *Phares*; *Batary*, the Lat. *Bachiri* (perhaps Bactrians). See note to A. 493.

97. *Kepe to þe marche*, guard the border-land; or, as A. has it, "Keepe well thyue owne koste" (coast).

105. "But only in that case where they (i. e. men) are blended (i. e. compounded) with greatness of will" (i. e. of courage).

107. For *þe* (as in MS.) we should certainly read *þu*, thou (voc. case).

110. "Will cause to take to flight, and will terrify, many harts." See note to A. 515.

118. "Without more hindrance."

126. None of the texts help to explain this line.

128. This line curiously resembles that in Chaucer, C. T. 3209—"His astrolabe, longing for his art." See Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe.

129. *Quadrentis*, quadrants. We suggest this word as an improvement upon the corrupt reading *In adventis* of the MS. The alliteration demands a word beginning with *qu*, and as the MS. has the rest of the word, the correctness of the suggestion can hardly be doubted.

130. *Mekil quat*, much of various kinds, many various things. See Morris, Outlines of English Accidence, p. 137, § 213.

145. *Opely deuynes*; Lat. "palam . . diuinabat." Frequent similar coincidences of expression leave little doubt as to the fact that the poet's translation was made (mainly) from the "Historia de preliis."

146. "Let him hear, whoso desired"; *here* being in the imperative mood. Phrases of a similar cast are not uncommon in Middle English.

150. *Tere* is a less common form of *tore*, difficult; see *tere*, *tor* in Stratmann, and the Glossary.

161. *Ser Sirraphis*, the Egyptian god Serapis. See l. 5409.

168. This is an instance of an ambiguous oracle, but the ambiguity only appears in the original Greek, as given in the note to A. 565. It could be read as meaning: "Your fugitive king will again return to Egypt, not as an old, but as a young man, and will destroy and subjugate our enemies," or otherwise, "and will subjugate our enemies, the Persians"—*τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἡμῶν πέρσαις ὑποτάξει*. See ll. 184—189 below. It was fulfilled in the latter sense, when Alexander, the son of Anectanabus, arrived in Egypt before defeating the Persians; see ll. 1121—1136.

174. *Bers*, shall be; just as the A.S. *beon* is often used with a future sense.

179. "Since it is ordained to be so, and it cannot fail, nor (be) shewn to be in any other way, nor (are) we (likely) to avoid it, (there is nothing for us) but to give them up the girdle; it avails us not (to think) otherwise." Many of the sentences have similar abrupt transitions; it is easier to catch the sense than to define it precisely. The phrase "to give up the girdle" means to submit to the inevitable, to acknowledge oneself to be powerless, and is a translation of a French proverb given in Cotgrave, s. v. *cointure*. In Howel's Familiar Letters, 5th ed. (1678), p. 463, we find: "The other Proverb was *Il a quitte sa cointure (sic)*, he hath given up his girdle, which intimated as much as if he had become bankrupt, or had all his estate forfeited. It being the ancient Law of *France*, that when any upon some offence had that penalty of confiscation inflicted upon him, he us'd before the Tribunal of Justice to give up his *Girdle*, implying thereby, that the *girdle* held every thing that belong'd to a mans estate, as his budget of money and writings, the keys of his House, with his Sword, Dagger and Gloves, &c."

192. Here again we are referred to "the book"; and accordingly the Lat. text (sign. a 1, col. 2) has "ex lapide nigro."

199. For "at his fortes," as in MS., read "at his feet," as in A. 570. Lat. "ad pedes eius;" same column.

210. *All his ane*, alone by himself; precisely equivalent to the mod. Sc. *his lane* (short for *his all ane*).

214. Here the Second Passus begins precisely where the second chapter of the Latin text does, but comprises four chapters of the latter; and, in general, each Passus contains several such chapters.

227. "Put his hand up to his hair, and bent it downward but a little." This was a form of salutation, much like that practised by the modern soldier. Lat. "extendensque manum suam salutavit eam;" a 1, back, col. 1.

228. Lat. "*Aue regina* Macedonie; dedignatus ei dicere *domina*."

246. "For there dwell, in that region that thou before didst speak of, the wisest men," &c.

257. "Whether the child be a male or a female." *Werdes*, destinies.

274. Lat. "protulit de sinu suo purificam tabulam eream et eburneam mixtam auro et argento, tres in se circulos continentem. Primus continebat in se intelligentias duodecim. In tercio vero sol et luna parebant. Post hec apparebat cathena eburnea et ex eo protulit septem splendidissima astra, horas explorantia et natiuitates hominum, et septem lapides sculptos et duos lapides ad custodiam hominum constitutos;" a 1, back, col. 1. The "blesand table" was an astrolabe planisphere, with circles (1) of the 12 intelligences, (2) of the "dozen of beasts," i. e. 12 signs of the zodiac, (3) the circle of the sun and moon. Gower expressly calls it an astrolabe; C. A. iii. 64. And see Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, l. 287.

282. The seven stars are the seven planets, and the seven stones are the precious stones severally assigned to them; see them enumerated in the note to A. 628.

295. "What shall happen between us, viz. between me and Philip."

299. "Nevertheless, ere any long time, it shall happen as thou saidst."

308. *Or it be fere*, ere it be far, ere long.

309. *Is amed*, is destined to know thee carnally and afterwards to help thee in all adversities.

317. "But just so between the two, and too much of neither."

319. "With two tough horns, attached to his forehead." These horns characterised the god Ammon. Hence Alexander acquired the surname of Dulkarnein, or the two-horned, as being the supposed son of Ammon.

340. *Erne till exorzise*, eager to exorcise. Here *erne* stands for *zeorn*, eager, as shewn by Mätzner, s. v. *eorne*, and cf. Alex. A. 1091. In the word *exorzise*, the symbol 3 stands (as occasionally in other

MSS.) for the letter *z*. *Ethis ever elike*, conjures continually. The verb *ethen* is only known to occur in two other passages, both in Gawayne and the Grene Knyght, ll. 379, 2467—

“Fyrst I *eþe þe*, haþel, how þat þou hattest.”

I. e. first I conjure thee (to tell me), noble one, what is thy name. And again—

“Perfore I *eþe þe*, haþel, to com to þy naunt.”

Dr. Morris translates it by ‘ask,’ and Mätzner thinks it may be allied to the word *ask*. Both have missed the obvious etymology. The M.E. *e* (when long) often corresponds to A.S. *é*, as being a modification of *á*; as in *ehte*, possessions, from A.S. *éht*, a derivative of *ágan*, to own. So also here, *ethen* = A.S. *éðan**, to conjure by oath, from *áð*, oath. This sense explains all three passages.

368. “Then shall I cherish thee with such demeanour as if thou wert my child.” The translator has quite missed the point. Lat. “te quasi patrem pueri habebo;” a 2, col. 1. In fragment A. 771, this is given correctly.

397. “For it (the child) and Philip her husband were related afar off,” i. e. were not sufficiently nearly related.

403. “Even to the value (lit. weight) of a pea.”

408. See note to fragment A. 808.

421. “Make his market with her.” Doubtless a proverbial phrase.

423. See notes to fragment A. 826, 837.

427. *The bounde*. Surely the translator must have read his text as having *cursus* (not *currus*) *solis*. *Bounde* would signify limit, orbit. This is verified by l. 442, where we have the very word “course.” So also in A. 853. Other versions have ἐκτύπωμα ἡλίου (see Notices des Manuscrits de la Bibl. du Roi, xiii. 233, Append.) ; *solis effigies*, *solis forma* (id. 270); and *le char du soleil* (id. 296).

440. *Chefe sall*, shall achieve, or attain to be.

464. “Either meat has mended thee,” i. e. food has fattened thee.

477. Read *þe na* for *þe þe*. “No blame shall be to thee from me, nor from any man else.”

488. Here the translator again appeals to the Lat. text, which reads: “Anectanabus autem per artem magicam induit formam draconis, et per medium triclinium discumbentium transiens fortiter sibilabat, vt conuiantes omnes pauore ac perturbatione maxima torquerentur;” a 2, back, col. 1. Cf. Gower, C. A. iii. 74; also Alex. A. 981.

501. So also in Gower, C. A. iii. 76; and Alex. A. 999.

525. See the *French* version of this passage, as given in Alex. A., p. 209.

532. For *doute*, a better reading would be *doutis*, i. e. fears.

539. “On account of the pain I go nearly mad, and I suffer such woe that I would rather be dead (lit. it were dearer to me to be dead) than thus remain alive.”

580. *Schoutid*; Mr. Stevenson prints *schouted*, but the Lat. text

shews that the right reading is *schontid*, i. e. shunted, moved; Lat. "vidi elementa *mutari*;" a 2, back, col. 2.

581. "And nevertheless, on any account, let him be kept awhile and nourished as particularly as if he were my own."

583. "Yet will noble people make remembrance of him, and record it hereafter, that I had in my time such a divine son."

588. The poet here departs from his original, which says, on the contrary, that Philip's elder son was not to be his heir; Lat. "in filii quem ex altera vxore habui succedat [Alexander] locum;" a 2, back, col. 2.

597. As the Latin text is appealed to, the description of Alexander is here given. "Coma capitis sicut leonis aspersa videbatur. Oculi eius sicut stelle micantes sed colore dispari radiabant, vnus niger, alter vero glaucus apparens. Dentes siquidem eius erant acuti, impetus illius feruidus vt leonis."

608. "If, as the original shews, he was wall-eyed." Here "wall-eyed" seems to be used in the sense of having eyes of different colours.

642. "He escapes him with great difficulty, unless he can skip away more quickly."

668. *Sa party is*, is so different from mine.

676. "It shall not annoy thee to the value of an egg, viz. none of his thoughts" (shall annoy you).

678. Here begins the Dublin fragment; see p. 23.

684. For *sterne* read *merke*, as in the Dublin MS., on account of the alliteration. The reader, having both texts before him, can readily supply for himself improvements of this character.

686. "Only follow me." Here *nozt bot* is the familiar North of England *nobbut*, i. e. not but, only.

692. "Many winters being done," as in Dublin MS., i. e. many winters ago.

703. Lat. "Vide stellam Herculis qualiter conturbatur. Mercurius vero gaudet. Iouem siquidem video coruscantem;" a 3, col. 1.

708. I. e. death at the hands of my own son. Cf. l. 722.

722. Here two leaves are lost in the Ashmole MS., as shewn by the Dublin MS., which supplies the missing 122 lines. As we are here dependent upon one MS. only, the corresponding portion of the Latin text is here given (a 3, col. 1, &c.):

"Alexander dixit, 'Ergo filius tuus sum?' Anectanabus respondit, 'Reuera ego genui te.' Et hec dicens expirauit. Alexander autem filiali pietate motus eleuansque corpus eius super humeros suos portauit ipsum in palacium suum. Cumque videret illum Olimpia dixit Alexandro, 'Fili Alexander, quid est hoc?' Cui ille respondit, 'Corpus Anectanabi est.' Olimpia dixit, 'Anectanabus pater tuus fuit.' Respondit ille, 'Quemadmodum stulticia fecit tua, ita est.' Et iussit illud sepeliri.

Qualiter quidam princeps de Capadocia adduxit equum buci-fallum ad Philippum regem Macedonum.

[I]n ipsis denique temporibus princeps Capadocie adduxit vnum equum indomitum, magnum corpore et pulcrum nimis, ligatumque ex omni parte catenis ferreis. Comedebat enim ille equus Bucifallus homines, propter aspectus horribilitatem, siue a signo quod thaurinum caput quod maius habebat vstum, seu quod in fronte eius quedam mine corniculorum procedebant. Cum igitur vidisset Philippus rex ipsius equi pulcritudinem, dixit ministris suis: Conficite cancellos ferreos vt latrones qui mori debent ex lege trucidentur ab eo.

Qualiter reuelatum fuit Philippo quod ille post eum regnare debebat qui dictum equum Bucifallum equitabit, et de Alexandro sedente in curru et de verbis habitis cum rege Arridorum.

[I]n ipsis denique diebus responsum habuit rex Philippus per somnium quod post mortem suam ille regnare deberet qui hunc ferocem equum equitaret. Alexander itaque cum esset annorum duodecim factus fortis, audax, sapiens et discretus. Didicerat enim plene omnium liberalium artium disciplinas Aristotilis et castoriem. Quadam vero die cum pertransiret per locum vbi stabat ille equus indomitus, vt videret inter cancellos ferreos, et ante eum manus et alia membra hominum dispersa iacentia, miratus est valde; misit ilico manum suam per cancellos. Equus autem extendens collum suum cepit lambere manum illius, et prostrauit se in terram pedibus complicatis, erigensque caput cepit fortiter aspicere Alexandrum. Intelligens autem Alexander voluntatem equi aperuit cancellos, et ingressus cepit dorsum equi suauiter manu tangere. Statimque incepit ille mansuescere nimis. Et sicut videtur canis coram domino suo, sic equus coram Alexandro parebat. Denique Alexander ascendit illum et equitans cepit exire. Cumque ergo vidisset eum Philippus, dixit ei: 'Fili Alexander, omnia responsa deorum impleta sunt in te, quia post mortem meam regna mea tuo imperio gubernabuntur.' Cui Alexander ait: 'Pater, si fieri potest, dirige me vt in curru sedeam regali.' Respondit ei Philippus: 'Gratanter hec facio. Tolle tibi centum equites et septuaginta milia solidorum aureorum, et vade potenti militia circumfusus.' Et factum est. Exiens igitur Alexander vna cum Ephesio philosopho amico et duodecim pueris quos elegerat et iugo suo docuerat, detulitque ornamenta preciosa et solidos. Precepitque militibus suis vt equis curam imponerent diligentem. Ueniente itaque Alexandro in Peloponensem, occurrit ei Nicolaus, rex eiusdem prouincie, cum exercitu suo, vt pugnam cum eo committeret. Et appropinquans dixit ei: 'Quis es tu, dic mihi.' Cui Alexander respondit: 'Ego sum Alexander Philippi Macedonis.' Nicolaus rex ait: 'Quem me speras esse?' Alexander respondit: 'Tu es rex Arridorum. Non tamen eleuetur cor tuum in superbia, quia regalem honorem tibi attribui. Solentque alta petere profundum, Paruitas vero vsque ad sidera sublimari.'

Compare also Alex. A. 1110—1201.

751*. "Bears a brand on his shoulders like a bull's head, and out of his top there stick up as it were tines of horns." Thus the English version adopts *both* reasons for the name of Bucephalus (i. e. Bull-head),

where the Latin text merely offers alternative explanations. The reason assigned in the Greek text is: ἐπειδὴ ἐν τῷ μηρῷ αὐτοῦ ἔκκαυμα βόος κεφαλὴν ἐξέφηνεν (Notices des Manuscrits, xiii. 246). See note to Alex. A. 1114, p. 248.

766*. *At*, from. As to the seven arts, see note to l. 44 above.

769*. *Warloked*, fettered. In the Prompt. Parv. we find *warlok*, a fetter-lock. The verb is also found in the form *warroken*, as in P. Plowman, B. iv. 20.

778*. Here a line has probably been lost, as shewn by the sudden change of subject. In the preceding line, *hys* refers to Alexander; but here *He* refers to Bucephalus. In Alex. A. 1164, the words *þe horss it awaytes* partly fill up the gap.

803*. Here ends all agreement with fragment A. of the romance. Here also begins the imperfect edition of Julius Valerius, as edited by Mai in 1817.

809*. "Neither men nor any excellent armour shall be lacking to thee; and hold on (go forth) with a well-equipped (lit. hale) army, where thou shalt be obeyed." For the form *held*, see *helden* in Strattmann. And see l. 820, p. 39.

813*. It is remarkable that the Latin text has *Ephesio*, for the English form *Eufestys* is somewhat nearer the mark; probably our author found in his copy the form *Ephestio*. The person alluded to is certainly Hephæstion of Pella, celebrated in history as Alexander's friend; even in the romance the Greek text has Ἡφαιστίωνι (Notices des Manuscrits, xiii. 248).

828*. Julius Valerius says that Nicolaus was king of Acarnania (ed. Mai, p. 3).

729. *Sa ma aydeus*; *So madeus*. These are corruptions of the hybrid phrase *So m'aide deus*, so may God aid me, the first word being English, the rest French.

738. "As angry as a wasp" is given in Heywood's Proverbs; see Skelton, Elynour Rummyng, 330, and Dyce's note.

743. The Ashmole MS. is right here; it means, "as a speck of my spittle is sprinkled on thy face." See l. 745.

748. *Cure*, i. e. cur, hound; Lat. "Tolle quod te decet habere, catule, et erubescere;" a 3, back, col. 2.

757. *Seis*, shalt see; cf. note to l. 174.

758. "And I will either gain for myself thy kingdom, or reach up the girdle." To *reach up the girdle* is the same as *give up the girdle*; see note to l. 179. Omit the second *me* in the Dublin MS.

773. Lat. "Itaque tubis bellicis clangentes vterque hostiliter sunt commoti, et acriter pugnare ceperunt;" a 4, col. 1.

798. In the Dublin MS. the insertion of *þar* before *wod* seems necessary; "they wrested in pieces their wood," i. e. the shafts of their spears. It deserves to be especially noted here, as a proof of our author's poetical powers, that the whole of the fine passage comprised in ll. 777—806 is expanded out of the four words *et acriter pugnare ceperunt*!

804. *Starand stanes*, shining stones. This seems to shew that the helmets of chieftains, at any rate in romances, were adorned with gems.

817. The Ashmole MS. is the better here; Lat. "Imposuerunt siquidem milites Alexandro *et equo* coronam;" a 4, col. 1.

821. "Inuenit autem Philippum in conuiuio nuptiali sedentem;" ib.

826. This line is hardly correctly translated. Lat. "Prime mee victorie palmam recepi coronatam. Attamen quando matris nuptias celebrabo, sociando eam regi alteri in vxorem, te nullatenus inuitabo; cum ipse nuptias facias, ad quas nullo indicio sum vocatus;" ib.

834. *Lcsias*; Lat. "Lisias;" Julius Valerius has "Lysias," p. 8; but Plutarch has "Attalus."

838. *Wardrere*, warder, i. e. staff or truncheon; Lat. "baculo."

847. *Snapiers*, trips up. Though Stratmann gives but two examples of this word, it is not very scarce. Jamieson cites from Kelly, p. 26, the Scotch proverb—"A horse with four feet may *snapper* by a time," i. e. sometimes. "I *snapper*, as a horse dothe that tryppeth; my horse dyd nat stumble, he dyd but *snapper* a lytell;" Palsgrave. And see Dyce's index to Skelton.

872. *At grete*, to weep. The use of *at* for *to*, as in Scandinavian, is a clear instance of Northern dialect.

879. *Anes with*, becomes one with, is reunited to. *Woydis*, leaves.

885. *Litill kyngis*; Lat. "reguli;" a 4, back, col. 1. This accounts for the reference to the original "clause."

890. *Sais*, tell; imperative plural. Lat. "Postquam enim Philippi filius adoleuit, gallina que oua aurea generabat consumpta est sterilitate;" ib. An allusion to the fable of the goose with the golden eggs.

907. *Ermony* is the usual M.E. form of Armenia; Lat. "Armenia."

911. This line is omitted in the Dublin MS., as shewn by the dots. On the other hand, l. 933* is omitted in the Ashmole MS.

916. Lat. "Pausania (*sic*) filius Cereuste;" ib.

935. *Hopid*, supposed; see Notes to P. Plowman, p. 371.

946. *Syngnes*, standards; Lat. "signa et vexilla;" a 4, back, col. 2.

949. Lat. "Fili Alexander, vbi est fatum quod a diis accepisti, vt victor et non victus existeres?" (ib.)

969. *Bane*, murderer; Lat. "interfectorem;" ib. Cf. Icel. *bani*, a slayer. So also in l. 3248.

985, 986. Lat. "Uiri Macedones, Traces, Thessalonicenses, et Greci, intuemini Alexandrum;" a 5, col. 1.

1010. *Here-wedis* is probably a compound word; lit. 'army-weeds,' i. e. armour. So also, perhaps, *topp-haris*, hairs of our head, in l. 1009.

1018. "Quia iuuenes solent mortem recipere in iuuentute sua nimium confitentes. Senes autem agunt cuncta consilio titubantes;" ib.

1028. *Calodone*; Lat. "Calcedoniam;" a 5, col. 2.

1033. *Namely*; read *maynly*, as in the Dublin MS.

1042. *Besandis*, besants; used to translate Lat. *talenta*.

1044. "Alexander vero, recepto a Romanis tributo, et a cunctis

Italiam habitantibus vsque ad mare Occidentis, quorum regio vocatur Europa, reliquit eos in pace;" *ib.*

1053. "In qua paucos rebelles inuenit;" *ib.*

1057. "Venit ad Pharanradem (*sic*) insulam ad deum Hamonem consulendum;" a 5, col. 2. Valerius has "Pharum." In North's Plutarch, ed. 1631, p. 686, it is "the Ile of Pharos, the which at that time was a little about the mouth of the river of Nilus, called Canobia, howbeit it is now ioyned vnto firme land, being forced by mans hand."

1063. The Lat. text (*ib.*) has simply "ceruus," without further description. Read *with tyndis*; it means "a hart with a huge head, the hoarest on earth, (which head) was to look upon like a harrow, covered all over with tines." The allusion is to the immense number of tines on the horns of this very aged hart; they were as numerous as the tines (prongs) of a harrow. The age of a hart was known by the number of tines; see the Book of St. Albans.

1077. "In locum qui dicitur Taphostri;" *ib.* Valerius calls it Taposiris, which he explains as 'tomb of Osiris;' from Gk. *τάφος*, a tomb. The form *Caphoressey* seems to have come out of *Taphosiri*, first changed to *Taphorisi*, and then misread as *Caphorisi*.

1097. Note that l. 1098 is purposely omitted in the numbering; see footnote 1, p. 56.

1106. "Post bibitam potionem mortem gustabis amaram. In iuuentute enim finies tuos (*sic*). Noli tamen horam aut tempus inquirere, quia nullatenus tibi reuelabo. Dicetur enim tibi a diis orientalibus fatum tuum;" a 5, back, col. 1. As to this matter, see ll. 5024, 5406, 5413.

1116. *Ascoiloym*, Ascalon; not mentioned in the Latin text.

1120. *Alexsander*, an error for *Alexandria*.

1121. *Egist*, an obvious error for *Egipt*, Egypt. The translator has inserted this line, quite forgetting that Alexander is already supposed to be there.

1126. This black monument is the one already mentioned, in l. 192.

1142. *Sydoyne*, Sidon; not in the Lat. text.

1147. "What with one thing, and what with another."

1149. "Erat fortis ciuitas, tam maris circumdatione, tam edificiorum constructione, tam et ipsius loci fortitudine naturali quod nullatenus ciuitatem poterat cum impetu obtinere;" a 5, back, col. 2.

1154. *Populande*, poppling. To *popple* is to bubble (Halliwell), or to purl, ripple (Jamieson). *Hurle* is shewn by the alliteration to be an error for *purle* or *perle* (as in Dublin MS.). The sense, however, is not 'pearl,' but 'ripple' or 'wave'; it is the Scotch *pirle*, a ripple (Jamieson). Thus the sense is—'the pure rippling wave (or bubbling ripple) encompasses it around;' a poetical rendering of *maris circumdatio*.

1171. Lat. "ad pontificem Iudeorum nomine Iadelum;" *ib.* Josephus mentions this letter, and calls the high priest Jaddua; Antiquities of the Jews, bk. xi. c. 8. §§ 3, 4.

1178. "For the (sake of) any riches, advises him rather," &c.

1191. The right reading is to be got by comparing the MSS., viz. "I sall seche Iewise on the Iewes enioyne or I die," I shall enjoin such punishment on the Jews ere I die. *Iewres* is certainly an error for *Iewis* = *Iewise* or *Iuwise*, not an uncommon word for judgment, punishment, used by Chaucer. It is merely the O.F. form of the Lat. *iudicium*. Lat. "Talem faciam vindictam de Iudeis vt discernant quorum precepta debeant obseruare;" a 5, back, col. 2.

1193. Here begins the famous episode known as 'the foray of Gadirs,' which is sometimes expanded almost into a separate romance. This foray is the subject of the first part of 'The Buik of the most noble and vailzeand Conquerour Alexander the Great,' printed at Edinburgh for the Bannatyne Club in 1834, being a reprint from an earlier edition by Arbuthnot in 1580.¹ It is concerned with the exploits of Meleager and others in trying to obtain cattle for the support of the army at Tyre. In the present romance, this episode terminates at l. 1336. *Gadirs* is in the Latin text *Gadii*; and, since Plutarch describes Alexander as making war at this time against the Arabians of Antilibanus, I suppose the place meant is Kedesh in Galilee, which belonged to the Tyrians, and is at no great distance from Tyre; see *Kedesh* in Smith's Dict. of the Bible.

1207. The Lat. has "predamque ducerent *infinitam*;" a 6, col. 1.

1212. Lat. "Theosellus dux armentorum;" ib.

1225. *Arystes*; not mentioned in the Lat. text till further on (l. 1277), where the Lat. has *Arrideus*.

1229. Lat. "Gaulus vero ipsius ducis armentorum verticem amputauit;" ib.

1242. *Beritinus*; Lat. *Bitirius*. "Dum igitur hec omnia essent Bitirio cognita, de ciuitate Gadii exiuit cum equitibus triginta milibus ad prelium preparatis. Tanta siquidem erat copia pugnatorum quod ex nimio clamore terre [*read terra*] tremere videbatur;" ib.

1270. *Malstrid*; so written, but (by the common use of *t* for *c*) it stands for *malscrid*, as noted by Stratmann, s.v. *malskren*. It means bewildered; see *Maskede* in Halliwell.

1282. This line, in the Dublin MS., is written in large letters merely because it is the first line on the page. Ll. 1281—1341, with all their graphic details, are expanded out of a few lines of the Lat. text, which merely has the following passage. "Alexander autem relinquens Tyrum venit in Iosaphat vbi Bytirium et totum eius exercitum confudit. Reuersus autem Tyrum inuenit edificium quod in mari construxerat funditus dissipatum. Balaam enim cum omnibus habitantibus Tyrum, post recessum Alexandri egressus, edificium illud viriliter expugnavit. Quod videntes Macedones iterum turbati sunt;" ib.

1350. *Fetles to mete*; probably *fetles* is for *fittes*, vessels (Stratmann). Then *fittes to mete* would mean 'vesselsful by measure,' which is equivalent to 'floods enough' in the Dublin MS.

¹ See an epitome of it in Weber's Metrical Romances, vol. i. p. lxxiii.

1360. *Foulire*, for *foule hire*, i. e. tread her (the city) under foot; Lat. "ipsamque pedibus conculcabis;" a 6, col. 2. "*Fouler*, to tread, stampe, or trample on;" Cotgrave.

1366. "Where the building that he built was first reared."

1370. *Ane eld*, put for *a neld*, or *ane neld*, a needle; so also *a nedyll* in the Dublin MS. The Lat. has: "Construxit itaque in mare ingens edificium classium quod erat centum anchoris alligatum. Erat siquidem tante celsitudinis quod muris et turribus Tyrorum Alexander eminebat;" ib.

1385—1420. This spirited passage, evidently written with keen enjoyment of the scene, is not in the original.

1421—4. This somewhat varies from the original, which has: "De-scissis itaque anchoris edificium parebat ad latera muri ciuitatis;" ib.

1437. "Alii scalis, alii manibus adherentes;" ib.

1447. "In quibus quanta mala sustinnerunt Syrii vsque hodie inemoratur;" a 6, col. 2, and a 6, back.

1457. A large portion of the Seventh Passus, down to l. 1687, agrees rather closely with the account in Josephus, Antiq. of the Jews, b. xi. c. 8, which should be compared with the text.

1460. "Had refused him an errand," Ashmole; "had denied him by saying nay," Dublin.

1462. "In all his greatest need, had he not failed that man."

1466. "On as many halidoms as open and shut." The sense of *halidom*, in this case, is a small box for containing relics. Hence the phrase "to swear on the halidom"; Rob. of Brunne, Handlyng Synne, 5629. See the glossaries to Layamon and the Ormulum.

1469. *Iaudes*, Jaddua; see note to l. 1171.

1504. "Deinde ipsum ira domini conculcabit;" a 6, back, col. 1. Hence *ire*, not *ayre*, is right.

1513—1572. This splendid passage, abounding in fancy and invention, is not in the Latin text.

1536. "And powdered (sprinkled over) with jewellery, which was purer than (any) other." Cf. Rich. the Redeles, i. 46.

1575. *By sum skill*, for some reason. Lat. "peruenit ad locum qui *sopolus* nuncupatur, vnde templum et ipsa ciuitas conspicitur;" ib. *Sopolus* represents the Gk. *σκόπελος*, a look-out place. Josephus (tr. by Whiston) says: "a place called *Sapha*, which name, translated into Greek, signifies *a prospect*, for you have thence a prospect both of Jerusalem and of the temple;" Antiq. xi. 8. 5.

1583. "Doctors both of dialectics and of decrees."

1592. Lat. "super caput ei[u]s habentem sydonem mundam et desuper laminam auream fabricatam, in qua nomen Dei *tetragramaton* scriptum erat;" ib. Josephus likewise mentions this head-plate. The *tetragrammaton*, or word of four letters, is YHWH, or *Yahveh*, the exact origin of which is still disputed; see Gesenius, Heb. Dict. 9th ed. p. 323.

1605. Lat. "Uiuat uiuat altissimus Alexander venit. Uiuat uiuat altissimus imperator Alexander," &c.; a 6, back, col. 2.

1614. Lat. "Uidentes hec reges Syrie plurimum obstupefacti murmurabant;" *ib.*

1617. *Permeon*; Lat. (*ib.*) "Parmonen;" in Josephus, Parmenio.

1630. *Anell*; read *angell*, i. e. angle, corner. *Aysy*, Asia.

1631. Lat. "illud siquidem in somnio me negligere nullatenus incitabat, sed confidenter transire;" a 6, back, col. 2.

1633*. Not in the Ashmole MS. For *he*, read *I*, twice; for *hoppyd* read *hopis*, 1st pers. pres. indicative. Lat. "Ideoque animaduerto ipsum esse quem per somnium intuebar;" *ib.*

1650. *Lythis of*, listens to; the reading *lightez* is corrupt. In the Dublin text it would be better to put commas after *&* and *wald*; it means, "and, as the law appointed, he offers," &c.

1655. See Daniel vii. 6; viii. 3—8, 20—22; xi. 3. The text expressly meant is no doubt Dan. viii. 21.

1679. "Then we should be bound, all the heap of us, to speed thee (*otherwise*, to pray for thee) for ever."

1681. *Men of Medi*, i. e. the Jews dwelling in Media. Lat. "vt Iudei in Media et Babylonia constituti suis legibus potirentur;" a 7, col. 1.

1687. Here ends the parallel passage in Josephus.

1691. The Lat. text (*ib.*) calls him Adromaticus.

1710. The words "he thought him so feeble" are in a parenthesis; the "three things" are in the accusative case.

1712. Lat. "Direxit ei pilam ludricam et zocham que fit de virgis que a capite curuatur, et cancrum auream;" *ib.* See note to l. 1900.

1720. Part of the story here following agrees tolerably closely with the account in Julius Valerius, ed. Mai, ch. xlii, &c.

1725. *In fang with*; Lat. "vna cum;" a 7, col. 2.

1731. *Puruayd þe pletours*, provided for thyself pleaders. *Pleaders* is here used as a term of reproach; Jamieson gives *plede*, a quarrel, broil. Hence it means brawlers; Lat. "latrunculos;" *ib.*

1738. *Fere*, far, by a long way.

1744. "Therefore it is better to unbend [*as in Dublin MS., for see 1974*] and desist from thy violence, and feign all with fairness, and rejoice as far you may." Perhaps for *feyne* (or for *fayne*) we should read *fange*, i. e. receive, accept.

1753. *Sorowe* is certainly an error for *schrewe*, i. e. shrew-mouse. "Ane erd-growyn schrewe" is a close translation of the Lat. "mus protiliens de scissura;" *ib.*

1756—8. Not in the original.

1759. Lat. "Egressus enim de terra Cethim et per spaciosa loca Perside tradis, saltus et ludos exercis [*read exercens*] vt mus in domibus vbi catule vel muscipule non sunt;" *ib.*

1766. "I shall set an assault (i. e. make an attack) on thee."

1767*. "For if thou overshoot thy shot, thou spoilest thine arrows." A hyphen should be inserted between *ouer* and *sheet*, *ouersheet* (over-

shoot) being all one word. For the distinction between *shot* (shot) and *shete*, to shoot, see Stratmann, s. v. *shot*, *scheoten*.

1774. *Forthe*, afford; the simple verb whence M.E. *aforthen* (now spelt *afford*) is derived.

1792. *Atell*; for *athell* (the usual spelling). See l. 1831.

1809. "The great stores of gold shall gather up our hearts," i. e. rouse our courage.

1813. This harsh command is made more intelligible by noting that it was meant in retaliation for the threat of Darius to *crucify* Alexander; for, in l. 1789, where the E. version has *pyne þe to dede*, the Latin has "vt principem latronum *crucifigant*;" ib. Cf. l. 1821. Julius Valerius tells the story very well; ed. Mai, pp. 55, 56.

1816. "Alas! what fault lies in us?"

1832—5. The Lat. text is more clearly worded. "Sedentibus illis dixerunt Alexandro, Rex, si vestre placet maiestati, imperate vt equites mille nobiscum veniant, quia Darium in manibus eorum trademus. Quibus Alexander respondit, Letetur animus vester in hoc quod sedetis, quia pro traditione vestri regis non dabitur vnus miles;" a 7, back, col. 1.

1837. *Crest*; i. e. the crest on the seal; see l. 1845.

1846. "If we see with a sooth," i. e. truly; Lat. "si bene volumus inspicere veritatem;" a 7, back, col. 2.

1850. *þe rime*, the rim; not *þi reme*, thy realm (as in Dublin MS.). Lat. "cum omnes in rota fortune volabili militemus;" ib.

1858. "Therefore a wise man, though he be in prosperity."

1859. *Set*, sets. This is a Midland and Southern form, short for *setteth*; the right Northern form is *settis*.

1864. "Cum minimus sepiissime extollatur, et altissimus vsque ad puluerem deprimatur;" ib.

1874. "Sed cum dii sint immortales, mortalium habere consortium penitus vilipendunt;" ib. He argues that, if Darius were really godlike, he would not have any transactions with a mortal like himself.

1881. "Nor any praise, except that you happened to overcome a little thief" (Lat. *latrunculum*).

1882. "But if it befal me, that am a child, to be the stronger" (lit. chiefer).

1893. Lat. "et quam nos dixisti habere paupertatem repellere;" b 1, col. 1.

1900. "Per zocham que a capite curua existit, contemplamur quod omnes reges et terrarum principes coram nostra presentia curuabuntur. Per caneram auream, quod caput hominis induit et congrirat, nos victores et non victos arbitramur;" ib.

1911. Lat. "Primo et Anthiocho satrapibus gaudium;" ib. J. Valerius calls them Hystaspes and Spynther; p. 61.

1915. *Fra*, from the time that. *For*, i. e. since, is better.

1924. Lat. "vt illo pueriliter flagellato induam purpura et dirigam eum matri sue Olimpie derogatum;" b 1, col. 2.

1929. Lat. "sed cum pueris puerilia exercere;" ib.

1949. "Before our worship departs;" or, "For our worship is gone."

1951. *Be þat*, by that time.

1953. Lat. "super fluuium qui Siragma dicitur;" ib. J. Valerius gives no name to the river.

1970. "For very great (lit. well wide) would be thy weal," &c. Read *þi wele*, as in Dublin MS.

1972. *Mayntene*, hold, keep. Perhaps *þi-selfe* is in the dative, and means 'for thyself.'

1974. See note to l. 1744.

1976. *Nyf*, were it not for; understand *wer*. Note the reading *yf ne wer* in the Dublin MS. Lat. "Cum absque nostra dominatione terra posset quasi vidua nuncupari;" b 1, back, col. 1. Perhaps *vidua* merely means 'empty, desert,' rather than 'a widow.'

1984. Lat. "hec grana papaueris que in mantica destinamus;" ib.

1988. "If thou failest to count them;" Lat. "quod si facere non valebis;" ib. See *trukien* in Stratmann.

1991. "For this seed that I send thee shall ever be uncounted;" Lat. "innumerabilis est nostrorum copia pugnatorum;" ib. For *neuire* read *euir*, as in the Dublin MS.

1997. *Tastis* is the right reading, as shewn by the alliteration. Lat. "mittens manum in mantica tulit de ipso semine, mittensque illud in os suum cepit mandere dicens: Uideo quod homines illius multi sunt, sed sicut hoc semen molles reperiuntur;" ib., and col. 2.

2004. *Wald worth*, would become, i. e. set out. *For* in the Dublin MS. is a mistake for *worth*.

2021. "An host (which is) a trouble thus to enumerate," i. e. too great to count; Lat. "maxima copia pugnatorum;" b 1, back, col. 2.

2025. "Shall be subdued, all the pack, unto these peppercorns" (Ashmole); "So subdued by all the pack of these little grains" (Dublin).

2037. Lat. "Amonta princeps militie;" ib.

2051. Lat. "passus fuit sol eclipsim nolens tantam sanguinis effusionem contemplari;" b 2, col. 1.

2060. Lat. "tergauersus de manibus inimicorum vix cum paucis euasit;" ib.

2067. *In his loue*, in the palm of his hand; Lat. "in manu;" ib.

2097. "His heart was none the fuller of pride, even by the value of a haw;" lit. "was never, the higher by a haw, his heart full of pride."

2103. *Cecile* is the usual M.E. form of *Sicily*; but the Lat. has *Cilicia*, which is clearly intended. So also in l. 2487. It is due to changing *Silice* into *Sicile*.

2106. *Yssanna*; Lat. text (ib.) *Sauinia*, which is not called an island. In fact, the M.E. *ile* merely means 'province'; see l. 2116, where it is used of Phrygia.

2109. *The tor of Tare*, the tor of Taurus. *Tor* is still used in Devonshire in the sense of hill-top. In passing from Cilicia, Alexander

crossed the Taurus range of mountains. Lat. "Ascendit . . . in montem Thaurum;" b 2, col. 2.

2112. Here the poet must have had a different reading or have used a different text, since the Lat. has only "in qua [ciuitate] sunt nouem milia;" ib. I have no doubt this allusion is due to a passage in Julius Valerius, ed. Mai, p. 69, where, immediately after a mention of the "culmen Tauri montis" (see l. 2109), we have an account of Alexander coming to a "Pierian" city, sacred to the muses; "ibidem musæ etiam Pierides consecratæ videbantur, unaque omnigenûm figmenta viventium Orpheï musicam demirantia."

2117. Lat. "ingressus templum solis ibidem victimas immolauit;" ib.

2118. *Flum*, river; Lat. "flumen." *Fyue*; the Lat. says *fifteen*.

2120. Lat. "Beati qui laudes Homeri adepti estis. Quidam vero ex circumstantibus nomine Doccomictus respondens ait: Rex Alexander, vberiores laudes de te scribere queo quam fecit Homerus de hiis qui ciuitatem destruxerunt Troianam;" ib. In l. 2123, *And* has the force of 'than.'

2124. Lat. "Magister, cupio sapientis esse discipulus magis quam vilis laudes habere;" ib. The translator has quite missed the point; it means, "I would rather be the disciple of a wise man (like Homer) than receive the praises of an inferior man (like you)."

2131. *Abandra*; Lat. "Abdyron;" ib. *Abdera* is meant; see J. Valerius, ed. Mai, p. 74.

2150, 2151. *Wyothy*; Lat. "Brochia;" b 2, back, col. 1. *Caldipol*; Lat. "Caldeopolis."

2152. But the Lat. calls it "flumen senis;" ib. In J. Valerius, ed. Mai, p. 75, it is called lake Mæotis.

2165. "Then all the strong steeds stand us in stead not to the value of a straw."

2170. *Luctus*; Lat. "Lutrus;" ib. *Locris* is meant; see J. Valerius, p. 77.

2174. *Tergarontes*; Lat. "Tragacintes;" ib. In J. Valerius, p. 77, it is called *Agragantum*.

2179. *Zacora*; Lat. "Zochora;" b 2, back, col. 2. For *summe* read *nunne*, as in the Dublin MS.; the Lat. calls her "sacerdos femina virgo."

2210. Insert *to fonde*, i. e. to advance, as in Dublin MS.

2215. *Sechus*; Lat. "Zochus;" ib. The allusion is to Zethus, brother of Amphion.

2221—30. Not in the original. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 79.

2234. *Sicistrus*; Lat. "Sistorus;" b 3, col. 1.

2237. *Hismon*; Lat. "Ysuimea;" ib.

2252. *Cletomachus*; Lat. "Dithomatus;" ib. But *Clytomachus* in J. Valerius, p. 83, where the story is told at length.

2258. Lat. "Ille qui Thebanam construet ciuitatem tres victorias consequetur;" ib. Thebes was rebuilt by Cassander, B.C. 316.

2285. *Beddells*, beadles; Lat. "precones;" b 3, col. 2.
2286. Lat. "Sine ciuitate vocor;" ib.
2288. & ; error for *at*, that. *To-name*, nickname.
2298. *Strasageras*; Lat. "Straxagonas;" ib. In J. Valerius, "Strasagoras"; p. 86.
2299. *Duse him in*, enters; referring to Alexander.
2303. "He that ruled the city;" i. e. Strasagoras.
2308. "Non es digna sacerdotio fungi. Alexander ingressus est ate, et bene vaticinata es ei; mihi autem dixisti quod vniuersum perderem principatum;" b 3, back, col. 1.
2312. "Venit Athenas; audiens autem que Athenienses dicebant, scripsit," &c.; ib. The English is obscure, but is cleared up by referring to J. Valerius, p. 88, where it appears that the *prince* (l. 2311) is Strasagoras, who "goes to Athens, and complains of (Alexander) the noble one. And they (the Athenians) said harm would come to him (Alexander) unless he yielded up the city to Strasagoras."
2332. *Afle*, an error for *Afric*; Lat. "Affrice;" ib.
2348. *Eschilus*; Lat. (b 3, back, col. 2) "Eusculus," as if Æschylus were meant; but J. Valerius (p. 90) correctly has *Æschines*.
2352. *Domystyne*, Demosthenes; Lat. "Demosteni;" ib.
2361. *Sexes*, Xerxes; but the Lat. has "Sennes;" ib. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 93.
2384. "Culpa enim Straxagonis interuenit; quoniam sicut audiuius Alexandrum etiam sapientia circumfulsum, quod sine culpa Straxagonem minime eiecisset;" b. 4, col. 1.
2397. *Poyse*, weight; "pensantem libras centum quinquaginta;" ib.
2412. Omit &, which interrupts the sense.
2419. The English is obscure. "Non cogitauimus ciuitatem vestram cum exercitu introire, sed tantum cum principibus quos habemus. Proponimus siquidem vos ab omni suspitione criminis liberare. Vos autem de nobis contrarium cogitastis, prout vestra manifestat conscientia;" b 4, col. 2.
2425. "Sed, vt scitis, mali semper cogitant mala et committunt;" ib. The next line is not in the Latin.
2430. *Gradid*, degraded; "deposuimus;" ib.
2431. "Scripsimus vobis vt decem philosophos mitteretis;" ib.
2436. "Because ye held to the counsels of the sage Demosthenes."
2440. *Lacedoyne*, Lacedæmonia. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 111.
- 2451—2460. Expanded out of a few words: "Ascenderunt etiam naues sibi que ad littus maris obuiam exierunt;" b 4, back, col. 1.
2466. "Et nolite manus extendere ad altissima que tangere non potestis;" ib.
2469. Lat. "vt gratis de vestro nauigio exeatis priusquam ignis vos turpiter compellat prosilire;" ib.
2480. Compare note to l. 2466 above.
2487. *Sycile*, Sicily; but Cilicia is meant; see note to l. 2103.
2494. "Whereas I threatened him as being a robber (fit only) to

despoil small nations." Lat. "Ego autem putabam illum esse latrunculum qui tanquam predo regiones debiles preliaret;" b 5, col. 1.

2505. "For his fame, notwithstanding all his littleness of stature, is celebrated throughout the world."

2506. Lat. "magnitudo nostra deficiat;" ib.

2508. *Leues*, leaves, grants; answering to Lat. "concedere;" ib.

2512. *Oriathire*; the Lat. has "Macher;" ib. But J. Valerius (p. 115) has *Oxyathrus*.

2513. "Magnificasti Alexandrum, dicens quod ille exardescit ingredi Persidiam quam nos Elladam occupare;" ib. Here *Elladam* clearly stands for *Hellada*, i. e. Hellas or Greece, and such is meant by *Elanda* in l. 2514. "We are to give up Greece, and he is to enter Persia."

2519. "Debeo ab illo, an ille a me exemplum colligere?" b 5, col. 2.

2528, 2529. *Itaile*; Lat. "Itali;" ib. *Appolomados*; Lat. "Appolli-mati." *Panthis*, for *Parthis*; Lat. "Parthi."

2533. "A wolf will worry many flocks of sheep." Compare the saying of Anectanabus in l. 109, which gives point to l. 2522 above. In the text, *a wee* is taken as being an inferior reading to *pe we*, i. e. the man, which in that case is Alexander. This clearly gives the most point to the story, and was probably the original form of the narrative; and, if so, the gathering together of the Persians (ll. 2527—32) should also refer to the same occasion; cf. l. 889. Still, it must be admitted that, as the story now stands, the right reading must be *a wee*, i. e. a certain man, viz. another of the courtiers of Darius. This requires the insertion of marks of quotation after *drede* (l. 2532), and then l. 2533 should be read—"3a, bot a wolfe," quod a wee · "will were [i. e. worry] many flokkis," &c. The side-note should be altered accordingly. The Lat. text and J. Valerius agree with this latter view.

2540. *Mocian*; Lat. "Oceanus;" b 5, back, col. 1. In Plutarch, the river is the Cydnus, according to the usual account. So also in J. Valerius, p. 117; cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 145.

2554. *Philip*; called by Plutarch "the Acharnanian."

2559. *Permeon*, Parmenio; see the epitome of the story in the note to J. Valerius, p. 119. The Lat. calls him "Parmerius;" ib. Parmenio was put to death by Alexander, but not on this occasion. In fact, he is alive again in l. 3113. This error is noticed in Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 146.

2575. *Fysch-hale*, fish-whole, as sound as a fish. Hazlitt's Proverbs, p. 71, has "as sound as a roach" and "as sound as a trout." *Fysh-hole* occurs again in the Chevalere Assigne, l. 353. And see l. 4282 below, p. 232.

2586. *Adriac*; Lat. "Adriacus;" b 5, back, col. 2.

2588. *Vncachid hertis*, lost their courage; Lat. "timuerunt;" b 6, col. 1.

2592. *Him to tell*; an error for *thaim to sewe*, to follow them, as in the Dublin MS. Lat. "deinde omnis exercitus sequeretur;" ib.

2593. *Writhis*, better *wrethis*, grows angry; "iratus est;" ib.

2598. *Sylus*, or *Nilus*; Lat. "in Nilo incorporantur" (*sic*); *ib.* This is a singular specimen of medieval geography.

2603. *The floure*, i. e. the floral crown of victory.

2631. So also in J. Valerius, note to p. 119; and in Kyng Alys-aunder, ed. Weber, p. 160.

2646. "Nonne cognoscebas me esse Alexandrum adiutorem et seruum vestrum?" b 6, col. 2.

2670. *Degrayd*, subdue; Lat. "superare;" b 6, back, col. 1. But a line or two should have been added after this line, stating that a new battle took place, in which Darius was soon worsted.

2673. *Batran*; Lat. (accus.) "Bacerem;" *ib.*

2707. "Sed impossibile est inertem et ponderosum asinum ad sidera sublimari, cum alis et volatiuis careat instrumentis;" c 1, col. 1. Hence *As* = ass.

2725. *Lazes*, laughs; Lat. "subridens;" *ib.*

2733. *Dedly*, mortal. "Sicque mortales puniunt cum sibi nomen immortalitatis assumunt;" *ib.* Hence l. 2734 means—"who have assumed the name of Lord of Immortality."

2759. *Siphagoyne*; Lat. "Deplogione" in the gen. case; c. 1, col. 2. *Surry*, Syria. *Capados*, Cappadocia. *Landace*, Laodicea.

2767. Lat. "et nostris militibus tam indumenta quam calciamenta preparentur;" *ib.*

2773. *Nostanda*; Lat. "Nostodi;" *ib.*

2795. *He*, i. e. Darius; as the Latin shews; c. 1, back, col. 1.

2810. *Lyse*, I lie, abide; *lokis*, I look, expect, wait.

2811. "And, as I hope to recover (lit. may recover) of my sickness that I am now involved in, so am I sorry," &c.

2819. *Rodogars*; Lat. "Rodoga;" *ib.* Her name was Sysigambis. J. Valerius calls her Rogodune; p. 131.

2839. *Hade*; read *haue*. "For, as for any noble under heaven, it were safer for him to give up that which he cannot have than to pursue (his object) further."

2851. An early example of the "Birnam wood" story. Cf. Kyng Alys-aunder, ed. Weber, p. 168.

2875. *Emynelaus*; Lat. "Eumulus;" c 2, col. 1.

2882. *Granton*; Lat. "Grancus;" *ib.* Evidently the Granicus, though the battle there fought belongs to an early period in Alexander's career.

2884. *Strama*; Lat. "qui Stagnia lingua Persica nuncupatur;" *ib.*

2900. Lat. "cursu tam rapido fluit," &c.; c 2, col. 2.

2906. *What dones man*, what sort of man, lit. man of what make or sort; Lat. (*ib.*) "quis es tu?" On this curious expression see my note to P. Plowman, B. xviii. 298 (p. 419); and cf. Alex. and Dindimus, ll. 222, 999. For the story, cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 171.

2955. *Anepo*; Lat. "Anapolis;" c 2, back, col. 1. In Weber's edition, he is called Pertage; l. 4230. Cf. ll. 883—888.

2988. For *to read on*, as in D. *On the trode-gate*, along the trodden

road, along the pathway ; Lat. "recto tramite incedebat;" c 2, back, col. 2.

3003. Lat. "Sed antequam exiret, dissolutus est fluuius, et equum eius absorbuit, et ipse cum difficultate maxima exiluit;" *ib.*

3011. "Multitudo muscarum nullam inferet lesionem vespium paucitati;" c 3, col. 1. Cf. ll. 109, 2533.

3032. *The firste*, the former one ; see l. 3004.

3060. Lat. "sicut messis in campo;" c 3, col. 2. See *rizome* in Halliwell.

3078. "Nunc fugitiuus et subiectus factus sum;" *ib.*

3080. "Si cognitum esset homini misero quid accidere sibi debeat in futuro, illud in presenti cogitaret. In puncto enim vnus diei venit quod homines vsque ad nubes exaltat fortuna, et sublimes vsque ad tenebras demergit in profundum;" c 3, col. 2, and back, col. 1. Perhaps some lines have been lost in the English version.

3100. Lat. "omnes suas victorias in Ellada consummauit." *Ellada* (E. *Elandu*) appears to refer to Hellas, i. e. Greece, as above ; see note to l. 2513.

3113. *Permeon*, Parmenio ; see note to l. 2559.

3123. *He put it*, i. e. let him put it.

3148. *Kist*, chest, i. e. tomb. The sense intended is that the amethyst was so transparent that the body could be as clearly seen as if it had been tombless. "Et tam lucidus erat ametistus vt etiam a foris integrum corpus hominis appareret;" c 4, col. 1.

3164. *At*, against ; Lat. "contra illos qui," &c. ; c. 4, col. 2.

3174. Cf. the parallel passage in Valerius, p. 121.

3190. The two traitors are, by Valerius, called Besas (usually written Bessus) and Ariobarzanes ; p. 122. See l. 3428 below.

3219. *Cusys*, put for *Curys*, i. e. Cyrus (as in the Lat. text).

3242. "Iuro enim tibi per potentissimos deos meos quod veraciter tibi totum imperium renuncio;" c 5, col. 1.

3248. *Thi banes*, thy murderers ; "interfectores tuos;" *ib.* See l. 969.

3267*. This line is essential to the sense.

3274. "In humilitatis foueam demergatur;" c. 5, col. 2.

3293. "Et quem deprimit exaltare potest ; et quem exaltat hominem potest sternere in profundum;" *ib.*

3296. For *ere* (are) read *is* ; "for victory is granted thee by God."

3299. Lat. "aranearum artificio comparatur;" *ib.*

3301. For the second *verd* read *werk* (as in l. 3299) or *web*. "With the least wind in the world that touches the work (*or* web), each (bit of the) work is destroyed and all comes to nothing." *Note* is profit, advantage, &c.

3315. *Rosan*, Roxana, whom Alexander married ; but it is doubtful if she was the daughter of Darius. See Mai's note to J. Valerius, p. 125.

3324. *Mote*, meeting, assembly ; "ad regale palacium Darii;" c 5, back, col. 1.

3326. *Cusus*, i. e. Cyrus; as before. See l. 3219.

3342. "Secundus ex smaragdo;" c 5, back, col. 2.

3349. "Amatistus enim reprimit fortitudinem et fumositatem vini;" ib.

3355. Lat. "vt nequaquam incidat ratione impericie in sinistrum;" ib.

3365—7. "Ne prout thopasius ostendit caput eius, hoc est dignitas ipsius ex altitudine vsque ad puluerem deprimatur;" ib.

3376, 3377. These two curious lines are not in the Latin text; but the same statement occurs in Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvii. p. 270. In the Bestiary by Philip de Thaum, ed. Wright, p. 125, we are told that the adamant could be broken by means of the blood of *gouts*, and this is what is meant in l. 3378, where the Lat. has "nec . . . potest collidi nisi sanguine fuerit hircino perfusus;" c 6, col. 1.

3386. A *lyng* is here a dative case; "the same diligence is for a king," i. e. is needful for a king to have.

3390. *Cried*, created; Lat. "procreatum;" ib.

3427. "Omnis populus Persarum fleuit amarissime;" c 6, col. 2.

3428. Lat. "Byflex et Anarbasontes;" ib. Cf. note to l. 3190.

3437. "And, unless your crimes had been discovered, I should not have kept my oaths." The story is told at much greater length in Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 192.

3443. Perhaps a line is lost before this, as the sense is imperfect. "Eodem siquidem tempore quidam senex cui nomen erat Duricius auunculus Darii imperatoris, qui plurimum a Persis amabatur, hic ad petitionem totius populi ab Alexandro dux in Perside est constitutus;" c 6, back, col. 1.

3458. *Fyue*, put for *fyne*, cease; "nolite me colere;" col. 2.

3467. Here ends the *first part* of the romance; the second part is concerned chiefly with the war against Porus and the description of the wonders of India. See ll. 3472, 3473. Cf. J. Valerius, bk. iii. p. 135. Ll. 3464—3479 are not in the Latin text.

3494. "Alexander autem iste nihil optat nisi vt vniuersum mundum debellando sibi subiiciat. Prelia enim et contentiones nutriunt corpus suum;" ib.

3517. *Haried*, harried, beaten; "sicut hucusque vici;" d 1, col. 1.

3521. *Me*, for me. *Driztin*, &c., the Lord forbid it!

3534. *Bot rede*, but (we are) ready to follow.

3540. Cf. J. Valerius, bk. iii. c. 4.

3547. "Cum tuipse oculos habeas et non videas;" d 1, col. 2.

3550. For the second *þȝt* read *folk*, i. e. people; "cum mollibus siquidem pugnasti;" ib.

3556. *Dengs*, the French form of *Dionysius*; Lat. "Dionisius Bachus, qui Liber pater dictus est;" ib. Hence Porus refers to Dionysus or Bacchus; and this explains the context, especially l. 3555, which means "all gods and goddesses are afraid of my name;" Lat. "non solum homines verum etiam Dii nomini nostro famulentur." This also

explains *ministration*, i. e. lowly service, in l. 3554. See J. Valerius, p. 139.

3558. "Ante siquidem quam Xerxes regnaret in Persida, Indis censum Macedones erogabant. Sed quoniam inutilis erat eorum terra regique displicens, dedignati sunt illam Indi;" *ib.* In l. 3559, *At* = that, i. e. know that.

3560. *Vs*; "it pleases us (to regard) them no longer."

3604. *Oure mecy[u]he*, our company; see l. 3619.

3622. "All that, in the times (of fighting), get away unharmed never durst afterwards abide on the field, (each with) his face to his foes."

3633. "Statimque ex calore nimio vrebantur;" d 2, col. 1.

3642. "Itaque per continuos viginti dies pugna duravit;" *ib.*

3658. "Offers to all his old gods, and thanks them for his honour; as well the Indians as his own men, he buries them all." For *grauē* read *grauēs*.

3665. "Quadringentas columnas aureas cum capitellis aureis preparatas;" *ib.*

3670. Lat. "alii de smaragdis, et alii onichimata quod naturaliter videretur ibi esse. Parietes vero ipsius palatii erant de laminis aureis cooperti," &c.; d 1, coll. 1 and 2.

3676. "Erantque ipsi parietes ornati ex margaritis, vnionibus, carbunculis, smaragdis, et amatistis;" d 1, col. 2.

3682, 3683. Not in the Latin text; yet the translator alludes to his original here.

3688. "And a shrine was built over each man."

3707. "Sed in ea multa genera serpentium consistebant;" *ib.*

3711. Lat. "Talifrida;" *ib.* Cf. J. Valerius, p. 202.

3725. "Audiuimus quod animus tuus sapientia floreat et coruscat, et preterita recolis, presentiaque disponis, habens noticiam futurorum;" d 2, back, col. 1.

3738. "Et sumus numero ducentarum quatuordecim milia feminarum;" *ib.*

3746. "Si autem femina fuerit, nostris moribus enutritur;" col. 2.

3751. "Cum autem cum victoria redimus, a nostris vnanimiter adoramur. Itaque si contra nos veneris, viriliter proposuimus preliari. Quod si tu nos viceris, nullam laudem penitus consequeris," &c.; *ib.*

3759. "Quia multa tibi possent aduersa contingere que nullatenus meditaueris;" *ib.*

3768. "Sed quia conuersationem vestram diligimus, in consilium vobis damus," &c.; d 3, col. 1.

3771. For the second *to*, we should perhaps read *but*.

3775. Lat. "polleros decem indomitos;" *ib.*

3777. The line is too short; read *many mayn giftis*.

3778. *Conquiris*, put for *conqueres*, conquers.

3780. Cf. J. Valerius, bk. iii. c. 11, p. 145.

3782. *Batriane*; Lat. "Bactricen"; i. e. Bactria (*ib.*). Written

"Bactriacen" in the Lat. text given in Cockayne's *Narratiunculae*, 1861, p. 53, l. 1; which text may also be profitably consulted.

3790. *On*; read *of*, i. e. "*by* the sun."

3794. Lat. "vbi multitudo serpentiam et ferarum erat;" *ib.*

3800. *Zephall*; Lat. *Zephir* (col. 2); or, in Cockayne's Latin text, *Severus*. A similar story is told by Plutarch. See 2 Sam. xxiii. 16.

3807. "An ego solus nutriar sine illis?" (*ib.*)

3820. "Habebat enim elephantes mille Alexander, qui aurum eius portabant, et quadringentas quadrigas omnes falcatas, et mille ducentas bigas, equites trecenta milia, camelos, mulos, dromedarios, innumerabilem multitudinem qui annonam et alia necessaria exercitui deferebant;" *ib.* It may be observed that the translator, in the latter part, begins to curtail the story, omitting some unimportant details. Cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 211.

3834. "Et in ipso castro homines apparebant;" d 3, back, col. 1.

3844. "Et cum iam quartam partem fluminis transnatassent, insurgentes ipsius fluminis yppotami eos continuo deuorauerunt;" col. 2. See Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 214.

3849. "Occurrebant eis leones, pardi, et vrsi, rinocerontes, tigres, dracones, et eos fortiter impugnabant;" *ib.*

3852. "Mirantes autem ipsum fluium circa horam vndecimam inuenerunt stagnum mellifluum et suauē;" *ib.*

3858. "Que silua . . . ex prenomiatis calamis est iuncta;" *ib.* It would thus appear that *ryse* means 'rushes', with reference to *redis* in ll. 3815, 3832, where the Latin text also has *calamis*.

3862. "Cumque luna inciperet lucere, subito inceperunt in ipsum stagnum scorpiones mire magnitudinis aduenire; deinde dracones et serpentes ceperunt ex diuersis coloribus festinare, totaque ipsa terra ex eorum sibulis resonabat," &c.; *ib.*

3884. "Then (some) of his soldiers were emboldened." Lat. "milites eius confortati sunt;" d 4, col. 1.

3888. Lat. "viginti milites et triginta serui a draconibus perierunt;" *ib.*

3891. "And to him, finally, falls all the praise."

3894. Lat. "habentes dorsa duriora cocodrillis;" *ib.*

3898. "Uerum multos ex eis interfecerunt. Alii intrauerunt stagnum;" *ib.* The English is obscure; but cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, l. 5380:

"Ac natheles in her honden
Hy henten grete fire-bronden:
And thorough that fyre, and goddes myghth
Hy hem sloughen dounerighth."

3902. Lat. "venerunt super eos leones albi;" *ib.*

3906. *Berys*, (properly) bears; but read *barys*, boars; Lat. "porci;" *ib.*

3907. Lat. "quorum dentes vno cubito longi erant; et illis homines agrestes . . . vna cum porcis super homines similiter currebant;" col. 2.

3918. "And then he bids them quickly to light, close upon the pool, outside his army everywhere, horrible fires."

3921. *Meere*, mare; "similis equo;" ib.

3926. "Nominabantur autem, secundum Indicam linguam, *Onocentaurus*; et antequam de ipsa aqua liberet, fecit impetum super illos;" ib. Cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 224, where the same strange animals are called *dentygraus*. But the name should certainly have been printed *dentygran*, short for *denti-tyran*, Lat. *dentityrannus*. In fact, Cockayne has "dentem tyrannum;" p. 56, l. 18. This is the Lat. form of *Odontotyrannus*, the name given to the creature in J. Valerius, p. 167. The E. version has *Adanttrocay*, evidently founded (partially) on the same name; for which *Onocentaurus* has been substituted by confusion in the Lat. text. It is probable, however, that the form *Odontotyrannus* is also a corruption (as it gives no good sense); and I suspect that the original word was *Odontokeratias*, i. e. 'with horns like teeth.' The form in the E. version seems to point to this name. In Mandeville's Travels, ed. Halliwell, p. 290, a picture of the animal is given; he is there called *Odenthos*.

3932. Lat. "mures maiores talpis," ib.; Cockayne has "mures . . . *uulpibus* similes;" p. 56.

3936. "Ceperunt enim volare vespertiliones vt columbe, quorum dentes erant vt dentes hominum;" ib. J. Valerius (p. 168) has: "Ad hæc alites quibus apud nos vocabulum vespertilio est, sed quæ illic super columbæ magnitudinem," &c.

3939. "And they sharply wounded that which was unarmed," i. e. the unprotected faces of the soldiers.

3943. *Blemest*, killed; in a stronger sense than mod. E. *blemished*. The Lat. has "vulnerantes," from the employment of which word the poet infers that no one was actually killed.

3944. "Venerunt aues magne, colorem rubicundum habentes, pedes vero et rostra nigra, neque nocuerunt eis;" ib. Cockayne has "aves *uulturibus* similes;" p. 56. Hence *voutres* are vultures. *Boukes* (bodies) is an error for *bekkes* (beaks).

3947. *Did bot plaid by*, did no more than played with.

3950. Lat. "venerunt in partibus latrimariis" (*sic*); d 4, back, col. 1.

3957. "Et arbores folia vt lana habentes, que gentes ipse colligebant et ex ea vestimenta faciebant;" ib. An interesting notice of silk. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvi. p. 268; Cockayne's text, p. 53, l. 2.

3987. "Confidebat igitur Porus in altitudine corporis sui, que in quinque cubitorum altitudine videbatur;" d 4, back, col. 2.

3995. "So sharply that he totters with it, and (he) nearly felled him for ever."

3996. "Milites vero Pori altis vocibus vociferauerunt, audiens itaque Porus clamorem quem suus exercitus faciebat, faciem suam versus eos voluit;" ib. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 148.

4010. For *your* read *our*; it refers to the Indians.

4015. Lat. "ceperunt Alexandrum tanquam deum glorificare;" ib.

4019. Here begins the "Fragment B" of the Alexander Romance, edited by me for the E. E. T. S. under the title of Alexander and Dindimus. The Latin original of several passages is printed in the same book, to which the reader is particularly referred. See also the notes to the same, at p. 45. It is needless to repeat here explanations which have been already given. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxix.

4026. "As naked as a needle;" a proverbial phrase. See P. Plowman, C. xv. 105, xx. 56; and the Notes to P. Plowman, p. 290.

4044. Insert *in* before *wildernes*. The scribe has obviously omitted it by error.

4060. "Why dost thou hasten from place to place?"

4064. *Rifte*; evidently an error for *riste* = *reste*, rest. "It would be my desire to rest, but another spirit, and not my spirit, prevents my spirit from so doing." Lat. "Uellem siquidem in pace consistere," &c.; d 5, col. 2.

4067. Here there is a break in "Fragment B"; see Alex. and Dind. p. 5.

4068. Lat. "vbi erant statue quas Hercules erexerat;" ib.

4074. Insert *with* after *jillis*; "and fills them with florins, to the number of 1500." The story is that this enormous quantity of gold was required (or at any rate, assigned) merely to fill up the holes which had been made through the statues. This is shewn by the parallel passage in J. Valerius, p. 214, which is much more clearly expressed.

4096. "Exinit . . bestia similis ippotauro habens pectus vt cocodrilli, dorsum vt serra, dentes vero ipsius vt gladii acuti videbantur. In accessu vero ipsius tarda erat vt testudo;" d 5, back, col. 1. Cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 236.

4103. *Eumare*; Lat. "Thamar." Cf. Kyng Alis. p. 236.

4108. The Latin is clearer. It tells us that the squealing of swine (called *sorchyng* in l. 4112) was efficacious in frightening the elephants. Hence Alexander directs his men to take swine with them, and beat them till they should squeal. Cf. Kyng Alis. p. 237.

4121. *Viaunce*, viand, food; as if from Lat. *uiuentia*.

4126. Lat. "habentes corpora pilosa sicut bestie;" d 6, col. 1. Cf. Kyng Alis. p. 239.

4130. Lat. "se in ipsum fluium dimerserunt;" ib. Cockayne has "marini fluminis se immerserunt uorticibus;" p. 58.

4140. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 169.

4158. Lat. "propter autumnale equinoctium hoc contingit;" ib.

4162. Lat. "omnia que ventus disperserat collegerunt;" ib.

4166. Lat. "cadebantque nives magne vt lana;" d 6, col. 2. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 169.

4168. For *And* read *He*; "and, lest it should not cease, he made his men tread it down, like floors, with their feet."

4182. "And, where it approaches the unprotected skin, it harms it for ever."

4188. See the references, in the margin, to the parallel passages in

Alexander and Dindimus. The side-notes, in many places, closely correspond.

4221. See the note to Alex. and Dindimus, p. 47 (l. 221).

4228. "And your learning shall be none the less, even to the value of a leek," i. e. in the least degree.

4233. *He*, i. e. Dindimus. *Him* (l. 4234), Alexander.

4246. The fourth *subiectis* should be *subiect*. "For an unwise king cannot rule his subjects, and (make them) to be subjects as subjects should be, but his subjects make him subject to his subjects."

4263. "We decline, amongst us, all that is too much above measure."

4264. "Except that which Nature leaves us."

4293. *The sewyn*, i. e. the seven deadly sins.

4318. "Which is parted, among all the pack of us, by equal portions." In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 15) read "*quia* communiter omnia supportamus," not *quam*; e 1, col. 1.

4321. *Iustice of aire*, judge on circuit; "justice in eyre" is a common law-phrase.

4326. For *nulla*, in the Lat. text (Alex. and Dindimus, p. 15) read *nulla mala*; the word *mala* was accidentally omitted.

4376. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 19) for *mouetur* read *mouetur*.

4387. "The which I suppose, sir, it would be unwholesome for thee to observe." In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 20) for *videtur* read *videtur*.

4389. *And we*, &c.; "and we deserve no wrath." Cf. the E. version in Alex. and Dind. l. 512.

4397. "Much would have more;" a proverb.

4408. *Or* should probably be *our*; "may our God give them sorrow!" It is a form of curse.

4410. *Him*; a curious error. Read *hir*, her.

4416. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 21), last line but one, read *Proserpina*. The letter *p* was unfortunately shifted.

4417. Insert a comma after *sottis*; it is in the vocative case.

4446. *Maydese*, may God aid us! "And yet, as may God aid us, for all your toil(?), that mother created you;" [read *your* for *us*].

4449. *Asseny*; perhaps an error for *senly*, seemly. The alliteration demands the letter *s*.

4460. *Serapis*, Serapis. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 23, last line but two) for *solem* read *solam*.

4470. "Ye act (lit. let) as though they might cure all that any man would like (to have cured)." *Leth* is the same as *lethien*, to mitigate, relieve, assuage, comfort, cure. The sb. *leth* occurs in l. 4593.

4473. "Which (gods) have neither sight nor soul, but (are) the work of man."

4478. *For his son*, for the sake of His Son. This is a curious specimen of anachronism; the Brahmaus are here made Christians. In

l. 4486, they are made to denounce ‘maumetry’, i. e. the idolatry supposed to be practised by Mahometans.

4487. “That thrusts you plump down to the devil, when ye are dead (and gone) hence.”

4492. “But ye pay respect to many others that are no more akin to Him than is the flesh of fish to the fair member (of men),” i. e. to a man’s limb.

4494. See note to l. 645 of Alex. and Dindimus, p. 52.

4510, 4511. *Serenon*, a form due to *Cereren*, acc. of *Ceres*; see the Latin. *Hem* is for *him*, i. e. Ceres (supposed masculine). “For formerly quarters of whete without number (were owing) to him;” i. e. Ceres first sowed wheat. See notes to Alex. and Dind. p. 54, l. 692.

4517. “And leave not so much as a limb for your bodies to stand on.”

4528. “For joy of his (the peacock’s) pride.”

4531. For *him* read *hir*; “is yielded to her as tribute.”

4534. See notes to Alex. and Dind. p. 54, l. 719.

4583. “Nor any sort of metal to make (tools) with, neither *meslin* nor other metal.”

4589. *Lere at*, learn from.

4592. “Were they that have pains so wise, who would be so widely praised as lepers?”

4619. “That all might continue in one condition.”

4621. *So*, &c.; “so the world requires.” A common phrase; see P. Plowman, B. prol. 19; Alex. and Dind. l. 407.

4622. *Ouir wild*; an error for *our will*; Lat. “humana voluntas;” e 2, back, col. 2.

4626. “We do but trample on it.” See l. 4681.

4639. “Or else ye are angry with your good fortune.”

4640. Probably *pure* is an adverb, signifying purely, wholly. If so, omit the comma after *tecches*.

4649. “From Paris to Rome.” A singular illustration.

4653. “Nor (are) angry with our Lord.” Understand *ar*.

4654. *Seerties*, varieties; Lat. “varietates;” e 3, col. 1. For *we seet* read *he set*, he appointed; Lat. “constituit.”

4657. “That man is God’s friend, and (yet) is none the more a god.” Lat. “non Deus, sed Dei amicus appellatur;” *ib*.

4658. Read *in* before *my*. “This similitude, that thou appliest to our race in my letter.” Also by “my letter” we must understand “the letter sent to me.”

4664. *All be we*, although we be. At the end of l. 4665, substitute a comma for the full-stop.

4666. “Nevertheless (as *ye* say) we consider ourselves to be gods by a (recognised) law(?); but it is *you*, not *we*, that continually practise the same,” viz. that attempt to be as gods.

4682. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 38, last line, p. 39, first line) for *bibibrit* read *hiberit*.

4685. "The cursed game of avarice would be altogether drowned (i. e. put an end to) by it."

4714. Here ends Fragment B. of the Romance.

4720. *Acrea*; Lat. "Adzea;" e 3, back, col. 1. *Angill*, angle, nook.

4734. For *flode*, read *fynd*; see the footnote. "As I find (in the book)."

4741. Lat. "venit super eos quidam homo agrestis corpore magno et pilosus vt porcus et vox illius tanquam porci, et non loquebatur sed semper tanquam stridebat;" e 3, back, col. 2. The description in the English text is much amplified.

4765. *Lindis*, lindens; hence, trees in general. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 171; also Alex. and Dind. p. 5.

4777. *A bad*, he bade. *A nappill*, an apple.

4791—4802. The Lat. merely has: "Subito peruenit draconum serpentium et leonum multitudo, qui eos maxima angustia angustiauerunt. Tandem ab eorum periculis euaserunt;" e 4, coll. 1 and 2.

4808. *Bothom*, bottom of the valley. *Bournes*, streams.

4810. *A neȝen daies*, a (period of) nine days; Lat. "Complectis . . octo diebus;" e 4, col. 2. Cf. l. 4814.

4812. Lat. "peruenerunt ad radicem vnus montis;" ib.

4819. *Gols*, gules, i. e. red; cf. l. 5060. Lat. "inuenerunt planiciem maximam, cuius terra erat valde rubicunda. Erantque in ipsa planicie arbores infinite que vltra mensuram cubiti non crescebant, quarum fructus et folia suauissima vt ficus;" ib.

4830. "Erantque ipsi montes excissi vt paries, ita vt nullus posset ascensum facere ad cacumen;" ib.

4850. Lat. "constituit terminos quos nullus [trans]ire presumebat. Et fecit fieri clipeum magnum et longum cubitis septem et latum cubitis quatuor; et ab exteriori parte in superficie clipei fecit speculum maximum fieri. Fecitque sibi subtalares lineos. Cepit contra basilicum opposito sibi clipeo incedere," &c.; e 4, back, col. 1. The English version is too much abridged.

4867. The plain is described before; l. 4818.

4875. "Et . . . peruenit ad quendam montem adamantinum in cuius ripa auree cathene dependebant;" e 4, back, col. 2.

4885. "That he and his host honour, and offers to each."

4908. "Inuenerunt hominem iacentem in lecto aureo pallio textilorum ornato;" e 5, col. 1. Lines 4912—4919 are not in the Latin text.

4925. Lat. "cuius caput et barba tanquam purissima lana videbatur;" ib.

4936. "And thou shalt hear, perhaps, ere thou go hence."

4941. For *þi delume* read *þe deluue*, the deluge; Lat. "Priusquam vnda diluuii operiret terram;" ib. And probably *drechet* should be *drenchet*. The form *diluue* (deluge) occurs in P. Plowman, B. x. 411.

4942. "Does it not please thee to look on the trees that live for evermore?" As to the Trees of the Sun and Moon, cf. J. Valerius,

p. 172; Kyng Alisaunder, p. 277. See also Yule's edition of Marco Polo; Mandeville's Travels, p. 298; Cockayne's text, p. 60.

4917. "This word I would desire (to hear), if it be your will; all the world is not dearer to me (than this desire)."

4964. Lat. "vna cum Ptholomeo et Anthiocho et Perdica incedebat;" ib.

4972. "Erantque ipse arbores alte pedibus centum et lauris erant similes et oliue ex quibus thus et balsamus largissime effluebant;" ib.

4982. The Lat. description of the Phoenix is as follows. "Et auis gerebat in capite cristam similem pauoni, et fauces cristatas, et circa collum circulum aureum fulgentem. Postrema vero parte purpurea erat. Extra caudam vero roseis pennis in quibus ceruleus color erat;" e 5, col. 2.

4996. "Sursum aspice et de quocunque seire volueritis in corde vestro reuoluetis. Sed palam nolite aliquid enarrare;" ib.

5017. "Si cum triumpho Macedoniam remearet;" ib.

5036. *For writhing*, for fear of making angry, for fear of offending.

5083. Lat. "encenia plurima sibi contulerunt, videlicet, pelles ex piscibus habentes figuram pardi et leonis, et pelles morenarum que per longum septem cubitis tendebantur;" e 5, back, col. 2.

Hence *slozis* (5085) means 'sloughs' or skins.

5088. Lat. "sine calce constructa;" ib. Cf. J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 44, p. 177. The name of *Candace* is doubtless borrowed from Acts viii. 27. Cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 305.

5092. Called in the Latin Candeolus, Marsipius, and Carracorius. In J. Valerius, the eldest son is called Candaules; in Weber, Candulake.

5113. *With*, by. Before *we* understand *is*. "And that is not only told us by men of this world."

5123. "Dirigo Amoni deo tuo bipedes centum, aues spirciones ducentas, catenas aureas insertas lapidibus preciosis in quibus erant decem dependentes plena anibus supradictis; et ceneras aureas triginta, uectes hebenos mille quingentos, rinoceros octuaginta, pantheras tria milia, pelles pardi et leonis quingentos;" e 6, col. 1. The translator makes the description in l. 5127 refer to the *rekanthes* (i. e. chains) in l. 5128, and translates the whole in a very free way. He seems to have consulted J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 47, which has: "Habebis ergo tibi ex nobis amicitiae argumentum centum laterculos auri grandissimos, Æthyopas impubes quinque (cf. l. 5132), psittacos sex, phrygasque sex, præterque hæc Hammoni deo nostro coronam smaragdis ac margaritis etiam toreumatis pretiosiore. His et loculos refertissimos cuiusque generis margaritarum atque gemmarum ad decem numerum, eburneosque alios loculos octaginta una misi . . . elephantos trecentos quinquaginta," &c.

5151. Lat. "rex Ebraicorum;" ib. But J. Valerius has "a quodam Bebryciorum tyranno;" p. 181. See Weber, p. 307.

5158. "It might have pierced any heart."

5163. "By the time that he approached the tent."

5205. "And say to that sire, on thy behalf," &c. *On thi behalf* = in thy name, i. e. in the name of the (pretended) Alexander.

5239. "Uidebant etiam vites habentes vuarum botros maximos, quos vnus homo portare non potuisset, et nuces ferentes maximos fructus vt pepones;" e 6, back, col. 1. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvi. p. 265.

5268. *Pentests*. There is no such word in the Lat. text, nor in J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 57.

5299. "Respondit regina, bene dieis, Alexander. Plus enim apud Grecos quam apud Indos digna fuissent;" f 1, col. 1. Hence, in l. 5300, & stands for 'than'.

5319. "Audiens hec Alexander stridere dentibus et caput eius reuoluere cepit omni parte;" ib.

5323. "Ut quid inter temetipsum irascaris et turbaris?" (ib.)

5333. *Bebricans handis*, the hands of the Bebrician; cf. l. 5151.

5337. Lat. "Karothers" (col. 2); but before, Carracorus; see note to l. 5092.

5377. "It is only needful for thee to grant (assent) to give me what goods I ask for."

5401. "Quis est tu, domine? At ille respondit, Ego sum Thinthisus, regnum mundi tenens et mundum subingans, qui vniuersos mundanos tue supposui maiestati. Fabricasti nomini tuo ciuitatem [i. e. Alexandriam], et nomini meo non construxisti templum;" f 1, back, col. 2. J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 67, calls this deity Sesonchosis.

5413. "I have told thee ere now;" see l. 1103. Lat. "Si esset homini nota causa mortis, dolore intollerabili moueretur;" ib. The E. text is corrupt; in l. 5414, *I* should of course be *he*. "Were that evidence known to any man, of what (were his) doom, then *he* would die for sorrow." Serapis, being immortal, could not die at all.

5417. "Ibi fabricabitur sepulcrum tuum;" ib.

5419. "Prayed that the Lord would well preserve him."

5425. "Ipsi vero serpentes viuebant de lasere et pipere que vallis ipsa gignebat;" ib.

5433. The side-note, by an oversight, is wrong. Alexander's men are not killed by the snakes, but by the beasts having claws three feet wide.

5442. A picture of this griffin is given on the title-page of Halliwell's edition of Mandeville's Travels; see ch. xxvi. of that book, p. 269.

5458. For *thai* read *thair*. "With gold on their heels," i. e. knights of rank, who wore gold spurs.

5467. Lat. "obtulerunt ei munera, scilicet spongiarum albas et purpureas mire magnitudinis et conchas maximas, per singulas duos vel tres sextarios continentes. Necnon et tunicas de vitellis (*sic*) maximis confectas, et vermes quos de ipso fluuio attrahebant, quorum grossitudo erat maior coxa hominis, et eorum gustus erat dulcis vt piscis . . . et morenas . . . Pondus autem de vnaquaque morena erat ducentarum quinquaginta librarum;" f 2, coll. 1 and 2.

5475. Here we have the story of the sirens or mermaids.

5482. Lat. "dentes habebant vt canes;" col. 2.

5483. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvi. p. 265.

5487. Lat. "Gog et Magog, Agatan, Magehon, Alegthor, Appelmai, Limith, Iunii, Rothe, Redem, Cemarre, Cabellea, Camarciant, Cathomi, Amarde, Getimadi, Anafag, Candorem, Rinocephali, Thirbei, Alonis, Accimei, Philonis, Satramei et Soltani;" ib.

5504. Lat. "homines lingua Greca loquentes;" f 2, back, col. 1.

5512. Lat. "vt fere celo propinquius esset;" ib.

5520. "Flesh a little way off from them that they could not reach to."

5530. Lat. "cum angustia maxima ad exercitum peruenit;" col. 2.

5531. I give the Latin of this remarkable passage. "Post hec ascendit in cor Alexandri vt maris profunda quereretur et omnium piscium genera scrutaretur. Statimque iussit vitrarios ante se venire, et precepit eis vt facerent dolium ex vitro clarissimo et splendidissimo vt possent a foris omnia clarissime conspici. Factumque est ita. Deinde iussit eum cathenis ferreis religari et a fortissimis militibus teneri. At ille intrans ipsum dolium clausa porta ex pice composita descendit in profundum maris. Uiditque ibi diuersas figuras piscium et diuersos colores habentes imagines bestiarum terre, et per terram in profundo maris tanquam bestie pedibus ambulantes et comedebant fructus arborum que in profundo maris nascebantur. Ipse autem belue veniebant vsque ad eum, postea fugiebant. Uiditque alia mirabilia que nemini voluit enarrare eo quod hominibus incredibilia viderentur. Tempus vero mansionis sue in aquis quod militibus suis predixit Alexander completum erat, et traxerunt eum milites ad superiora;" ib.

5557. "Inuenerunt animalia que habebant in capite ossa serrata et acuta vt gladius;" f 2, back, col. 2, and f 3, col. 1.

5566. *Tapis*, tups, rams; Lat. "arietes;" f 3, col. 1.

5594. Lat. "quam in eius memoriam nominauit Bucifallam;" col. 2.

5596. *Deliraty*; Lat. "flumen qui (*sic*) dicitur Tyrum. Et obuenerunt sibi homines illius terre ferentes ei elephantum quinque milia et currus falcatos centum milia;" ib.

5613. *Nabizanda*; Lat. "Nabuzardon;" ib.

5615. Lat. "vsque ad diem obitus sui ibidem per septem menses, in pace mortuus;" ib.

5619. The letter of Alexander to Aristotle is given by J. Valerius, bk. iii. capp. xxiii—xliii, and contains an account of the wonders which Alexander had seen in his expedition, many of which have already been narrated in the present version. An Anglo-Saxon version of Alexander's letter was edited by Mr. Cockayne in 1861 in his "*Narratiunculæ Anglice Conscriptæ*."

5641. *Statute*, an error for *statue*; the Lat. text has *statua*.

5644. "Parietes vero ex topasio et per vniuersos gradus erant preciosi lapides cuiusque generis inserti. Erat etiam in summitate ipsius lapidis rubicundus qui tam in nocte quam in die lucebat. Et in ipso

throno erant imagines vndique constitute. in quibus erant versus scripti Grecis literis et Latinis nomina omnia prouinciarum que seruiebant Alexandro ; " f 3, back, coll. 1 and 2.

5656. This list of names is not in the Latin text. *Panthi* is Parthia. Many of the names seem to be inserted at random, and the list includes places scattered over almost every part of Europe and Asia ; compare the list of places conquered by king Arthur, as given in the alliterative *Morte Arthure*, p. 2.

5677. The fragment ends here. The rest of the story, as given on pp. 276—278, is abridged from the Latin text, leaf f 3, back, &c.

NOTES ON THE "STORY OF ALEXANDER."

- P. 280, l. 42. See p. 42, l. 893 of the Poem.
 „ , l. 45. See ll. 4019—4066 of the Poem ; and cf. l. 4194.
 P. 281, l. 62. See Alexander and Dindimus, p. 3, l. 69.
 „ , l. 72. See the same, p. 4, l. 88.
 „ , l. 75. This story is neither in the Romance here printed, nor in Alexander and Dindimus. The same remark applies to the next story, beginning at l. 120.
 P. 283, l. 135. See p. 274, l. 5617.
 „ , l. 140. "One of the grettest lordez" may refer to Ptolemy of Egypt ; but the story referred to is insufficiently indicated.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX, AND INDEX OF NAMES.

Forms enclosed in marks of parenthesis, as for instance (Abaytez), given under Abates, occur in the Dublin MS. As a rule, words should be looked for under the form in which they occur in the Ashmole MS. Thus *abaytez* in the Dublin MS., l. 2161, should be sought as if spelt *abatis*, the spelling in the Ashmole MS. in that line. It is then easily found under Abates.

Lines marked with an asterisk, such as 789* (under Aboute), occur only in the Dublin MS. See the starred lines, 723* to 844* on pp. 25 to 33; also a few additional lines so marked further on, which can cause no difficulty.

Besides the abbreviations *s.*, *adj.*, *adv.*, for *substantive*, *adjective*, *adverb*, &c., the following are used in a special sense:—*v.*, a verb in the infinitive mood; *ger.*, a gerund; *pr. s.*, present tense, 3rd person singular; *pt. s.*, past tense, 3rd person singular; *pr. pl.*, present tense, 3rd person plural; *pt. pl.*, past tense, 3rd person plural. Other persons are denoted by the figures 1 or 2. Note also *imp. s.*, imperative singular, 2nd person; *imp. pl.*, imperative plural, 3rd person; *pp.*, past participle.

A large number of references are given, but they are not exhaustive. All forms of words are recorded, with but few unimportant exceptions.

- A, *art.* a, 13, 22, 39, 47, &c. So, probably, in l. 131.
A, *adj.* one, 57, 1131, 3066.
A, *interj.* ah! 242, 964, 3252; (Aa, in Dublin MS.), 964.
A, *pron.* he, 4777; (A), 1492.
A, *v.* have, 5158.
Aande, *s.* breath, 4000. Icel. *andi*, *önd*. See Ande.
A-baist, *pp.* abashed, afraid, 2593, 5191; (Abaysed), 1492; Abaiste, dismayed, 4109; Abayste, cast down, 402.
Abandra (Bandara), *a city*, 2131. See Abrandra.
A-baste, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* abase, 3877. (*Error for* Abase.)
Abates (Debates, *wrongly*), *pr. s.* lessens, 2506; Abatis (Abaytez), *pr. pl.* fail, sink, 2161.
A-bayste, *pp.* afraid, cast down, 402; (Abaysed), 1492. See A-baist.
- Abbeon, *a country*, 5660.
Abet (Habet), *s.* habit, dress, 2303; Abite (Habett), garment, dress, 1487, 1531. See Abite, Abytt.
A-bide (Abyde), *v.* endure, 2137; Abidis (Abydez), *pr. s.* awaits, 1576. See A-byde.
Abite (Habett), *s.* habit, dress, 1624. See Abet, Abytt.
Able, *adj.* powerful, 941.
Abletus, *for* Abbetus, *pl.* habits, robes, 1928. See Abet.
A-bleyd, *pp.* with sorrowful looks, sad, 402. "To look *blae*, to look blank, having the appearance of disappointment;" Jamieson.
Abofe (Abowne), *adv.* above, 1398; (Aboue), 1374; (Abowue), to the top, uppermost, 727. MS. D. can be read either as *abowue* or *abowne*; perhaps the latter is better. See *Above* in Murray's New Dict.

- A-bofe (Abowne), *prep.* over, 1587.
 A-bofe, *s.* a being above, exaltation, 4241.
 A-bore, *pp.* born, 590.
 Aboue (Abofe), *adv.* above, 1416. See Abofe.
 Aboundance, *s.* abundance, 4668.
 A-boute, *adv.* about, around, 108, 505, 556, 945; (Abowt), all round, 1152; (About), everywhere, 1763.
 Aboute, *prep.* around, round, 595, 2209; About, 505; (Abouute), 789.* See *per.*
 A-bowe (Bowe), *pr. s.* submit, 2418.
 A-brade (On brade), *adv.* abroad, widely, 774.
 A-brade, abroad, cast or strewn abroad; *but prob. an error for* As brade, as large (see note), 4166.
 Abrandra (Bandra), *a city*, 2148. See Abandra.
 (Abreggez); see Breggis.
 Absens, absence, 637.
 A-byde, *ger.* to resist, 3017. See Abide, Bide.
 (Abytt), *s.* habit, dress, 2886. See Abet, Abite.
 Acats, *pl.* agates, 5273.
 Acheles, Achilles, 2125.
 A-cheues (Achevys), *pr. s.* achieves. wins, 1052; (Achele, *pr. s. subj.* may happen, 822*; A-cheued (Achevet), *pt. s.* finished his journey, got away, 1036; Achewid, *pt. s.* achieved, 3730; A-cheued (Chefyd), *pp.* achieved, 2712; Achevyd (Acheuett), 1237.
 A-corde, *s.* agreement, 620.
 A-corde, *v.* agree, 3311; A-cordis (Acordes), *pr. pl.* agree, 1023.
 A-count, *ger.* to account of, 1934; A-counte, *ger.* to reckon, compute, 3693; A-counte (Acount), *ger.* to count, 1993; A-count, *v.* count, 1987; A-conte, *v.* count, 673.
 A-coupe (Acoup), *v.* accuse, blame, 2433. O.F. *accuper*, to blame.
 Acrea, *Lat.* Adzea, 4720.
 Acres, Acres, 5660.
 Actis, *pl.* acts, 4369.
 Actons, *pl.* tunics, leather jackets, 3413. Orig. a jacket of quilted cotton, worn under the coat of mail. O.F. *auqueton*, from Span. *alcoton*, lit. 'the cotton.'
 Acoustounes, *pl.* customary behaviour, customs, 4577.
 Adamand, *s.* adamant, diamond, 4876; Adamands, *pl.* 5384; Adamants, 5273. See Adomant.
 Adanttroceay, 3927. See the note.
 Adill, *ger.* to earn (for themselves), 3191. Icel. *öðla*, refl. *öðla-sk*, to earn for oneself; from *öðal*, property. See *Addle* in Murray.
 Admitts (Admittes), *imper. pl.* 2 *p.* admit, receive, 2358.
 Adomant, *s.* adamant, diamond, 3345; (Adamant), 3372. See Adamand.
 Adoure, *ger.* to adore, 2176, 5118; (Adour, *v.* adore, 1059; Adoures, *pr. s.* does honour to, honours, 5224; (Adours), reverences, 2680; Adoures, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* adore, 4466, 4548; Adoured (Adouret), *pt. pl.* 1619; Adhoured, 1931; (Adoure), *imp. s.* adore, 3242.
 A-dred (Dred), *pp.* afraid, 1355; (A-drede), 2489.
 Adriac (Andriake), *prop. name.* 2586.
 Adversites, *pl.* adversities, 309.
 A-ferd, *pp.* afraid, 492.
 Affie (Affye), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* trust in, 1725. See Affyed.
 Affinite, affinity, kindred, 923; followers, 1235.
 Affirmed (Enformed), *pp.* declared, 1897.
 Affraid, *pp.* afraid, 4151, 5621; (Affrayd), 3189. See Afray.
 Affrike, Africa, 3765; (Aufrike), 1047; (Aufrik), 1050; the South wind, 4144.
 Affyed, *pt. pl.* trusted, relied; þam affyed, put their trust in, 3572. See Affie.
 Afle, *error for* Asie, Asia, 2332. (Dublin MS. *has* Asy.)
 Aforme; see Before.
 Afray, *v.* frighten, affright, 448; A-fraid (Afrayd), *pp.* 851; A-frayd, 675; (Affrayed), 1795. See Affraid.
 A-fright, *pp.* affrighted, 395, 675, 3189.
 (After), *adv.* after, afterwards, 1435; (Aftir), 736.* See Eftire.

- (Aftir), *prep.* after, 763*; Eftir (After), 976; Eftire (Aftir), 695.
 Agayn, *adv.* again, 188, 332, 383; Agayne, 1336; Agayn (Ayayn), back, 1183, 1785; Agayn, back, 185, 889.
 Agayn, against; Agayn-stande, *v.* resist, 636.
 Agayn, *prep.* against, 50, 82, 3545; towards, 4814; (Ayayns), against, 1322; (Agayns), to meet, 1123; A-gayne, to meet (them), 3964; (Agayns), against, 2423; (Ayayns), against, towards, 795, 1969, 2382; Agaynes, against, contrary to, 473; (Agayns), against, 1501, 1878, 1973; towards, to meet, 170, 953; Agayns (Ayayns), *prep.* against, 2208, 2748; to meet, 2857.
 (Agayn-come), *s.* return, 2820.
 (Agaynward; see Agynward.
 Age, *s.* age, 315, 1002, 1108, 1109, 1474.
 Agekany, *Lat.* Agatan, 5488.
 Aghe, *s.* awe, 5186.
 Aghille, *adj.*; error for Athille, 29.
 See Athill.
 (Aght), *pt. s.* ought, 3370.
 A-glopedn (Aglopedn), *pp.* terrified, alarmed, 874. The prefix *a-* is intensive (A.S. *á-*). Icel. *glúpnna*, to be downcast.
 Agraythen, *v.* to array, deck, set out, 3456. Icel. *greiða*, to arrange.
 A-greyyd, *pp.* aggrieved, angered, 1954.
 A-grydis, *pr. pl.* dash, clash, 3611. Cf. *gride*, *v.* as used by Milton, P. L. vi. 329; M. E. *girden*, to strike.
 Agynward (Agaynward), in return, 1933.
 Ai, *adv.* ever, always, 239, 242, 1875, 3529; (Ay), 1225, 1401, 1773, 2114, 2250. See Ay, Aye.
 Ailis (Ayles), *pr. s.* ails, 849; Ailes (Aylez), 2158; incites, 4609; Ailed, *pt. s.* (who) was ill (of), 5605.
 Aiquare, *adv.* everywhere, 3408.
 Aire, *s.* air, 27, 542, 4334; Of the aire (ayre), (made) of the air, 1487; Airis, *pl.* atmospheres, 29.
 Aire, *s.* heir, 233, 3470, 3579; (Heyr), 2755, 3086; (Hayr), 1606; (Ayre), 977; Ayr, 2006.
 Aire, *s.* eyre, circuit, 4321.
 Aires, *pr. s.* goes, journies, 2680, 3595; (Ayres), 1277, 1907, 1994; (Ayrez), 1050, 1072, 2239; (Ayers), 912, 2034; Airis, goes, 53, 135, 407; (Ayres), 695, 873, 1597; (Ayers), 795, 1121; (Ayrez), 2248; Aires, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 2637; *pr. pl.* go, 3110; Airid, *pt. s.* went, 843; Aire, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* go thou, 5179; Aires, *imp. pl.* go, 989, 2770; Airis, 1185; Airand (Ayrand), *pres. pt.* coming, 942. O.F. *eirer*, to journey, Low Lat. *iterare*; from L. *iter*, a journey. See Ayres.
 Aipir, *adj.* each, either, 2614; Aithire, 2620, 5066; (Ather), 770, 785, 1520, 3417; (Apir), 802.
 Aixie, for Axe, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* ask, *p.* 281, l. 61; Axie, 2 *pr. pl.* *p.* 281, l. 63.
 (Ak), *conj.* but, 875. A.S. *ac*.
 Akis, *pr. s.* aches, 538.
 Al, *adv.* all, 943; wholly, 640, 790, 798, 799; Al to, wholly too, much too, 1010, 1738. See All.
 Al, *conj.* although, 3464.
 A-lande, *adv.* on land, hence downwards to a place of rest, 394. See the context.
 Alane, *adj.* alone, 132.
 Alane, *Lat.* Allonis, 5493.
 Albastis, for Alblastis (Alblastrez), *pl.* cross-bows, 2225.
 Alblaster (Awblester), cross-bow, or cross-bow-bolt, 1400; (Alblastres), *pl.* cross-bow-bolts, 3046.
 Alblastis, *pl.* cross-bow-men, 5450.
 Ald (Old), *adj.* old, 2263; (Olde), 2117; (Alde), 2176; Alde (Ald), 1020.
 Aldfadire, *gen.* of thy father-in-law (?), lit. old father's, 5376. A.S. *eald-fæder*, a grandfather, ancestor.
 (Aldours); see Eldirs.
 Alegis, *pr. pl.* allege, 4558.
 Alexander, *passim*, spelt Alexsander, 17, 620; *gen.* 904.
 Alexsander (Alexander), Alexandria

- (the town), 1120. See Alysaunder.
- Algate, *adv.* by all means, i.e. especially, 128.
- Alkin; Alkin rewmys (Alkyn realmes), realms of every kind. 2363; Alkens (Alken), of every kind, 1400.
- All, *adj.* all, 68, 76, 82, &c. See Al, All-þir, Allire.
- All, *adv.* wholly, entirely, 121, 532, 875, 1302; All him-selfe, quite by himself, 111, 335; All his ane, alone by himself, 210, 1377; All him ane, 407; All þus, just thus, 2907. See Al.
- All, *conj.* although, 933, 2646, 4664; notwithstanding that, 2647; All if, although, 3876, 5320.
- Allane, *adj.* alone, 4840; (Alon). 1828.
- Allanely, *adv.* only, solely, 3101. Compounded of *all* and *anely*, i.e. only.
- Allas (Alas), *interj.* alas, 1816, 3434.
- All-bedene, all at once, 3532. See Bedene.
- Allire (Aller), *gen. pl.* of them all, 1255; Allirs, of all, 620; Oure allirs, of us all, 3513. See All.
- All-quat, *s.* everything, something of every kind. 4469.
- Alls, *adv.* also, 4943. See Als.
- All-þir, *put for* Alþir, *gen. pl.* of all; (All-þar), 1855; All-þir hiest (eldest), highest of all, especially, most particularly, 1765; All-þir-most (All þe most), most of all, greatest of all. 2637; All-þir-first, first of all, 3039. From A.S. *calra*, *gen. pl.* of *cal*, all, with inserted *th*. See All, All-thire.
- All-to-gedire, *adv.* altogether, 476; (All-to-gedyr), 1703; (All-to-geder), 715, 1204, 3255; (All-to-geder), 782.*
- All-to-hewyn, *pp.* cut all to pieces, 3201.
- All-way, *adv.* always, 404; ever, 4299; (Alway), continually, 2492; All-ways (Always), 2517.
- Almaide, *Lat.* Amada, 5488.
- Almaunds, *pl.* almonds, 4718.
- Almast (Almost), *adv.* almost, 1459.
- Aloes, *pl.* aloes, 4869.
- A-losed, *pp.* renowned, 2341; *mis-written* A-lose (Lowshed), 1960. O.F. *aloser*, to praise; from *los*, sb. praise, due to L. *laus*.
- Als, *conj. and adv.* as, 430, 439, 2353; also, 1840, 2677, 5617; (Als, as, 633, 2152; Als, as, when, 2844; as it were, 751*, 752*; where that, 769*; Als (Also), so, 1270; as (I hope), 724*; Als belyue, as soon as may be, 2183; Als belive (belyfe), as quickly as possible, immediately, 2671.
- Also, also, 31; Als-so, also, 5499.
- Althire-fairest, fairest of all, 5092. See All-þir.
- Althire-finest, finest of all, 3701; Althire-fynest, 3368.
- Alþire-graythist, readiest of all, *but an error for* Alþire-gretist, greatest of all, 162.
- Alþir-heist (All-þar heldest), *adj.* the highest (chief) of all, 1855; Althire-higest (All þe heldest), *adv.* chief of all, especially, 2509.
- Alþire-mast, *adv.* greatest of all, excessive, 486.
- Althire-thickest (All þe thickest), *adj. superl.* thickest of all, 1323.
- Alto-bretind, *put for* Al to-bretind, *pt. pl.* utterly broke in pieces, 3905. See Bretens.
- Alto-bruntes (-brountes), *pr. s.* wholly destroys, 1214. Bruntes is an error for Brutens, *pr. s.* of Brutenen, or Brutnen, to dash, break in pieces. See *brutnen* in Mätzner; and see Alto-bretind.
- Altogedre, *adv.* altogether, 174; Al-to-gedire (All-to-gedre), 903.
- Alto-maukid, *misprint for* Alto-maukid = Al to-maukid, *pt. pl.* maimed to pieces, mangled, 4100. See *Mauk* in Jamieson. Cf. Lat. *mancus*.
- Alto-schatird, *pt. s.* (for Al to-schatird), utterly shattered in pieces, utterly scattered, 4150.
- Alyens, *pl.* aliens, strangers, 3445; (Aliens), 989; Alyens, *gen. pl.* strangers, 947.

- Alysaundire (Alexaunder), Alexandria, 2764. See Alexandria.
- Am, 1 *pr. s.* am, 574, 842*, &c. (Amaced), *pp.* amaz-d, 1814.
- Amatist, amethyst, 3145, 3349; Amatast, 3341; Amatists, *pl.* 5384; Amatistis, *pl.* 5273; Amytists, 3679.
- Amay þe, *imp. s.* dismay thee, be dismayed, 2816; A-maied, *pp.* dismayed, 1814; Amayd, *pp.* 1253, 3885. O.F. *esmaye*, to dismay.
- Amazoyné, the land of the Amazons, 3708, 3722.
- Ame, 1 *pr. s.* I think, judge, suppose, 3830, 4104; Ames, *pr. s.* aims, thinks, 3624; addresses, 2563; (Amez), directs his way, 1047; pitches, sets, 2586; Ames (Aymes, *M.S. Aymes*), *pr. s.* aims, endeavours, 843; Ames, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* supposeth (but a false reading), 2649; Amed, *pt. s.* intended, 2821; *refl.* intended to go, 219; Amed (Amejd), *pt. pl.* purposed, intended, 2395; Amed, *pp.* determined, 309; reckoned, considered, 3736. F. *aimer*.
- Ame, *s.* aim, guess, suspicion, 2965; aim, endeavour, 2484; At myn ame (ayme), as I suppose, 2987.
- Amend, *ger.* to amend (the gift), to add (thereto), 3776; Amendid (Mendyd), *pp.* recovered, 2127.
- (Amenyst), *pp.* diminished, 2629.
- A-meued, *pp.* moved, 4556; (A-meved), 1253.
- Amlage (Amlaugh), *s.* an imbecile, weak person, 1705, 3542. Icel. *amlóði*.
- Amon, Ammon, 345, 404, 420, 3398; Amone, 4212; Amon (Amone), 1059; (Amoyñ), 2863; Amon (Amonez), *gen.* Ammon's, 1072.
- Amonest (Amonesh), 1 *pr. s.* admonish, charge, 1493. E. *admonish*.
- Amonta, *proper name*, 2059, 2078; Amont, 2037.
- Amoued (Amejd), *pp.* moved, disturbed, 1796; (Amoved), moved, exhorted, bidden, 1493.
- Amphion, *proper name*, 2216.
- Amytists; see Amatist.
- An, one, 3532; a space of, 4814; (Ane), an, 800. See Ane.
- Anabras, Anarbasontes, 3428.
- Anafrage, *Lat.* Anafag, 5488.
- An-ane (Anone), *adv.* anon, at once, 1377. See Anone.
- Ancestris (Ancesters), *pl.* ancestors, 2844.
- Ancient, *adj.* old, 3445.
- And, *conj.* and (usually expressed by &), 6, 12, 15, &c.; if, 21, 354, 2164, 2339, 2653; than, 540, 2840, 3819, 5300. *An* = than, is given in Halliwell as in use in the North and East. Hence, in l. 540, the reading *and* is to be retained. Cf. Icel. *en, enn*, than. See *And* in Murray, p. 317, col. 2.
- Ande (Aynde), *s.* breath, 749; Andes, *pl.* breathings, 4813. See Aande.
- Ane, *adj.* one, 40, 189, 307, 586, &c.; an, 191, 697, 767*; alone, 391; some one, 465; Eftir ane, after one pattern, all alike, 4619; Ane oþer, another, 1240; þine ane, thyself alone, 732, 5623; Him ane, himself alone, 53, 169; þour ane, each one of you, 3176. See All, An.
- Anec, *short for* Anectanabus, king of Egypt, 40, 71, 79, 95, 168, 191, 210, 219, 242, 290, 306, 352, 398, 537, 670, 701, 717, 1126, 1134.
- Anectanabus, king of Egypt, 533, 693; Anecanabus, 486; Anectabus, 1131. See Anec.
- Anelep, *adj.* a single, 109. See Anlepi.
- Anell (Angle), *put for* Angle, nook, corner, region, 1630. See Angle.
- Anely (Only), *adv.* only, merely, 995, 2464, 2729; alone, 1020. See Anly.
- A-nente (Anense), *prep.* about, concerning, 735 [Anense = Anentes; and hence Anens-t, with added t]; A-ntentes (Anence), touching, regarding, 2716. See Enentis.
- Anentes, *pr. s.* becomes annihilated, 3302. O.F. *anienter*, to bring to naught. See *aniente* in Murray.
- Anepo, *proper name*, 2955.

- Anes, *adv.* once, 478, 1191; At anes (At onys), at once, 929. See Anys.
- Anes, *pr. s.* unites 879.
- (Anes), *prep.* as regards, 3161. Put for Anest. See Anente.
- Angire (Angre), *s.* anger, 857, 1908, 2724; (Anger), trouble, sorrow, 2889; Angirs, *pl.* angers, passions, 750; (Angers), miseries, 2160. See Angurs.
- Angirs, (Angers), *pr. s.* becomes angry, 837.
- Angle, *s.* corner, place, province, region, 3657; Angill, 4720; Anglis (Anglez), *pl.* angles, corners, 2332; Anglies (Anglez), nooks, 1917.
- (Angres), *pl.* sorrows, troubles, 3173. See Angire.
- Angrile (Angirly), *adv.* angrily, 733; Angrily (Angerly), 2185; (Angrely), 832.*
- Angwisch, *s.* anguish, pain, 3173; hardship, suffering, 2160, 5618; woe, 3916; Angwische, 1011; Angwischis, *pl.* sorrows, 3828; annoyances, 3793.
- Ankers; see Ankirs.
- Anlepi, *adj.* one, single, 5025. A.S. *ánlêpig*. See Anelepy.
- Anly, *adv.* only, simply, 4240. See Anely.
- (Anonc), *adv.* anon, 2294. See Anane.
- Anoþer (Ane oþer), another, 822; Anoþer, 585; Auothre (Ane oþer), 2237; Anoþire, 297, 501, 795, &c.
- Anoyed (Noyet), *pp.* annoyed, vexed, 737.
- Anoyntis, *pr. s.* anoints, 413.
- Answer (Answer), *s.* answer, 3158; (Answer), 2180. See Aunswer.
- Answeringis, *pl.* answers, 2180.
- Answers, *pr. s.* answers, 234, 290, 362; (Answers), 2183, 2263; Answard (Answerd), *pt. pl.* answered, 1009.
- Antaroyne (Antigon), Antigonus, 1912.
- Antaroyne, the Antarctic or south pole, 31.
- Anter, *pl.* adventures, 656. See Anater.
- Antiek, Antiochus, 5208; Antiec, 5186, 5193; Antiet [*or* Antiec], 4965; Antioks, *gen.* 5197.
- Any, any, 84, 134, 261; (Ony), 1200; Any mare (more), any more, 1011.
- Any-gates, *adv.* in any way, 4216.
- Anly (Only), *adv.* only, singularly, 3399. See Anely, Anly.
- Anys, *adv.* once, 3508; (Onys), 1467, 2654; At anys (anes, onys), at once, 1609, 2326, 2345. See Anes, *adv.*
- Apareld (Aparaerld), *pp.* apparelled, 1497; Aparaild (Apparelt), 2300.
- Aparell, *s.* apparel, 5196.
- Apart, apart; *or for* Apert, openly, 3575.
- Ape, *s.* ape, 1705, 3542; Apis, *pl.* 5242.
- A-pere, *v.* appear, 361; Apere, 3215, 3422; be present, 2579; Aperis, *pr. s.* appears, 451, 1084; (Aperes), 1487; A-perid (Aperyd), *pt. s.* appeared, 2862; (Appered), 1084, 1626. See below, and see Apperys.
- A-pered, *pt. s.* appeared (to them), 3056. Perhaps for Apeired == harmed.
- Apert, *adj.* open, evident, obvious, 2833, 4496; manifest, 3726; Aperte, well-known, 261.
- Apert, *adv.* openly, plainly, 1896, 2295, 5190.
- Apetite, *s.* appetite, 4609.
- Apon, *prep.* upon, 31, 251; (Vpon), 778, 930, 1130; on, 773; (Vppon), on, 1641; in, 1670, 2247.
- Aport, *s.* outward appearance, personal bearing, deportment, 598, 5145.
- Apparail (Apperale), *ger.* to apparel, prepare, 1919.
- (Apparement), *s.* apparel, 820.*
- Appedantere, *Lat.* Appelmai, 5493.
- (Apperys), 2 *pr. s.* appearest like, 1842. See Apere.
- Appils (Appills), *pl.* apples, 4718, 5241.
- Appollo, Apollo, 4534; Appole, 5118. See Appolyne.
- Appolunadas, 2529. See note.
- Appolyne, Apollo, 4467; Appoline (Apolyn), 2254; (Appolyn), 2176; (A. polyne), 2183. See Appollo.

- Appose, *imp. s. 2 p.* question. 4998.
 A-prefe, *v.* approve, be approved, 598. See *Apréne*.
 A-prefe, *s.* approbation, approval, 648.
 A-preue, *v.* exhibit, prove, make good (lit. approve), 5328; A-preued (Preved), *pt. pl.* acquired (for themselves), 1206; A-preuyd, *pp.* gained, attained, 614. See *Apréfe*, *Aproues*.
 Aproche, *ger.* to approach, 1595; *pr. s. subj.* 74; *Approchid*, *pt. s.* approached, came, 4102.
 A-proprid, *pp.* considered by itself, 4496.
 Aproues, *pr. s.* proves good, 4220.
 Apurtynance, appurtenance, 5628.
 Aquiloun, the wind *Aquilo*, north wind, 4144.
 Arabie (Araby), Arabia, 2034.
 Aray, *s.* order, manner, 425; (*Arayes*), *pl.* ranks, 1320.
 Aray, *pr. s. 2 p. subj.* array, 1494; *Arais* (*Arayes*), *pr. s.* arrays, 1513; *Araies* (*Arays*), *pr. pl.* 2980; *Arayd*, *pp.* dressed, 1633; (*Aræd*), arrayed, 1382; *Arayed*, arrayed, 93; (*Arayede*), 883.
 Arcagee, Arcadia (?), 5675.
 Archere, *s.* archer, 5450; *Archars* (*Archers*), *pl.* 1390, 3041; *Archars* (*Arches*, for *Archers*), 2455.
 Arcules, Hercules, 4500; *Arculious*, 4068.
 Ardromacius (*Andromacius*), *proper name*, 1691.
 Are, *s.* favour; *pin are*, with thy favour, 5361. A.S. *ár*.
 Are, *adv.* ere, before, 246, 1140. A.S. *ér*.
 Areris, *pr. s.* retreats, draws backward, 4846.
 Arest, *s.* arrest, seizure, 3504.
 Arestes (*Aristes*), *proper name*, 1277. See *Arystes*.
 (Arestotell), Aristotle, 766.* See *Aristotil*.
 (Arghes), *imp. pl.* be afraid, fear, 989. See *Arzes*.
 Arise (Rise), *v.* arise, 1880.
 Aristotil, Aristotle, 3460; *Aristotill*, 44, 5619; *Arystotill*, 623, 637.
 Arly, *adv.* early, 350, 351.
 Arme, *s.* arm, 494, 503, 805; *Armes*, *pl.* 345, 384, 420.
 Armed, *pp.* armed, 49, 83, 1213; (*Armyd*), 2034, 2102; (*Enarmed*), 757, 954.
 Armee, *s.* army, 2363.
 Armes, *pl.* arms, 90, 803*, 996; (*Armez*), 764, 908, 1594; *Armys*, 9, 16, 444; (*Armes*), 2363; *Armes* (*Armez*), coat-armour, hence, array, special dress, 1624.
 Armoure, *s.* (*Armors*, *pl.*) armour, 3413; (*Arinour*), 996.
 Aromatike (*Aromatyke*), *adj.* aromatic, 1566.
 Aromitike, aromatics, 4977.
 Arows, *pl.* arrows, 2455; (*Arowes*), 1390; *Arowis* (*Arowez*), 2211; (*Arows*), 2224.
 Arrabe, Arabia, 5659; *Arrabie*, *gen.* Arabia's, 5564.
 Arrabiens, *pl.* Arabians, 92.
 (Art), 2 *pr. s.* art, 843.* See *Ert*.
 Artaxenses, Artaxerxes, 49, 81, 169.
 Arte, *s.* art, science, 128, 333, 681, 5483; *Artis*, *pl.* arts, 44, 376, 522; ways, 4609; (*Artez*), 766.*
 Arteneus, *Lat.* Accimei, 5499.
 Articus, Arctic pole, north pole, 29.
 Artoyes, Artois, 5659.
 Arystes (*Arestes*), *proper name*, 1225. See *Arestes*.
 Arystotill, Aristotle, 623, 637. See *Aristotil*.
 Arzes, *pr. s. impers.* it terrifies me, I am afraid, 537; *Arzed*, *pp.* terrified, afraid, 3606, 3873. A.S. *eargian*, to be inert. See *Arghes*.
 As, *conj.* as, 11, 14, 17, 18, 24, &c.; as if, 193, 225, 368, 421, 504, 506, 558, &c.; like, 1063, 1152, 1159, 3796; *As . . . as*, as . . . so, 2811, 2812.
 As, *as rel. pron.* that, which, 1783.
 As (*Asse*), *s.* ass, 2708.
 Asaile (*Assaylle*), *ger.* to assail, 1296; *Asaille*, 3923; *Asailes* (*Assaylez*), *pr. s.* assaults, 2038; (*Assalez*), 1029. See *Assaile*.
 A-saile (*A-sawte*), *s.* assault, attack, 924. See *Asaute*.

- Asald, *s.* ass, little ass, 1928. See below. O. Northumb. *asal*, *asald*, Matt. xviii. 6; xxi. 2.
- Asilny (Aslyn), *s.* little ass, 1705. See above.
- Assaute, *s.* assault, attack, 2550; (Asawte), 924. See Asaile.
- Assay, *s.* trial, 5370.
- Ascalioun, Ascalon, 5675. See Ascoiloym.
- Ascendis (Ascendez), *pr. s.* ascends, climbs up, 1377; (Assendes), mounts, 767; Ascendis (Ascenden), *pr. pl.* 1434; (Ascenden), 1398; (Ascendyn), 1030; Ascendid, *pt. pl.* 1030, 1398.
- A-schapid, *pp.* escaped, 2987.
- Ascoiloym (Ascalon). Ascalon, 1116. See Ascalioun.
- Aseres, *pl.* newts, lizards, 4198. M.E. *ask*, *arsk*; see Mätzner.
- Ascryes, *pr. pl.* cry out to, challenge, demand of (them), 5215. Cf. O.F. *escrier*; see *ascrien* in Mätzner.
- A-semblis, *pr. s.* assembles, 2219; (Assembles), gathers, 762; (Asssemblez), 923; Assembles (Asssemblez), 1470; A-sembild (Asssembled), *pt. s.* assembled, encountered, 783; A-sembles (Assembles), *imp. pl.* gather together, 2527. See Assemblis.
- A-sent, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* assent, 4262; Asentis (Assent), *pr. pl.* 1510.
- A-sewis, *pr. pl.* agree, suit, 4254.
- A-sejee, *imp. s.* sit, 5182. O.F. *asseoir*, from Lat. *assidere*.
- Asie (Asy), Asia, 1917, 2114. See Aysy.
- Asisid, *pp.* constructed, 5087. Lat. text, *constructa*. O.F. *assis*, *pp.* of *asseoir*, 'to set, settle'; Cot. See Assisid.
- Askis, *pr. s.* asks, 670; (Askez). 1672, 1701; asks for, 3612; requires, 1500, 4265, 4621 (see note to this line); Askis (Asken), *pr. pl.* seek, 727; ask, 888; Askid (Askyd), *pt. pl.* asked, 2254; (Askid), 888; Aske, *imp. s.* ask thou, 1670, 1685.
- Askis, *pl.* ashes, 4180.
- Askynge (Askyns = askyngs, *pl.*). *s.* request, 3173; (Asking), enquiry (*a false reading*), 732.
- (Aslakes), *pr. s.* ceases, 857. Lit. 'grows slack.'
- Asouerance, *s.* assurance, 5001.
- Asperly, *adv.* fiercely, 2039, 3041; quickly, eagerly, 2672; sharply, roughly, severely, 1088, 3939; fiercely, swiftly, 3001.
- Assaile (Asayle), *ger.* to assault, 1380; Assaill (Assaylle), to assail, 1162. See Asaile.
- Asselis, *pr. s.* seals up, 424.
- Assemblis, *pr. pl.* collect, re-unite, 4161; (Assembled, *pt. pl.*), encounter, 1387; Assemblid on, *pt. pl.* gathered against, attacked, 4134. See Assemblis.
- Assemy, 4449. Probably a false reading; the alliteration requires a word beginning with *s*, and *oure* gives no sense. For *oure assemy* read *your seemly* (i.e. your seemly).
- Assie, Asia, 5659.
- Assisid, *pp.* made of a certain size, sized, 5653. See Asisid.
- Asskis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* beseech, 4467. See Askis.
- Astate, *s.* estate, dignity, rank, condition, 723, 3353, *p.* 279, l. 11.
- Astralabus, *pl.* astrolabes, 128. (MS. Astralalus.)
- Asuris (Assurys), 2 *pr. s.* trustest, art secure, 2736; Asurid (Assuryd), *pt. s. refl.* assured himself, felt confident, 2568.
- A-swage (Swage), *v.* be assuaged, 750.
- Asy. See Afle, Asie.
- Asyc, Asia, 3765. See Asie, Assie.
- At, *prep.* at, 71, 132, 178, 5364; of, 1618; of, from, 766*, 1670, 2715, 4467; by, 757*; to, suitably with, 4208; against, 3164; At hand, 81. See Att.
- At, *pron.* which, that, 927; who, 1045, 1171; that which, 636; whom, 1059, 1216; that, 10, 56, 68; *conj.* that, 100, 266, 1480. Most common as a relative pronoun, as in 152, 161, &c. Used like mod. E. *that*. See *pat.*
- At, to (as sign of gerund), 872, 4294.

At, 3559; *read* Al, i. e. all.

At flee; see At-flee.

A-tamed (Attainyd), *pp.* pierced, 3042. See Gloss. to Piers Plowman.

At anes (At anez), *at once*, 784.

Atell, *for* Athell, *adj.* noble, 1088, 1792, 2030. Only in the Dublin MS. See Athel.

Atenes (Athens), Athens, 2343;

Ateynes, 2446; Atenenys (Athenez), 2391. See Athenes.

Ateynes, *pr. s. refl.* attains, reaches, 2315.

At-flee, *v.* flee away, pass away (from you), be dismissed, 988. It is better to take *atflee* as one word. A.S. *ætflēan*. See *ætflēan* in Matzner.

Athe, *s.* oath, 3770; Athis, *pl.* 3437.

Athel, *adj.* noble, 242; Athill, 17, 168, 306, 404, 620, 849, 1994, 3145; (Athell), 810, 996, 1577, 1597; (Atell), 1831; Athil, excellent, 3341; Athil (Athell), 701, 909, 1134; Athill (Athell), *adj.* as *sb.* noble one, 681, 837, 964; noble king, 3204; Athils (Hatsels), *pl.* nobles, 1433; (Athelles), 1474; (Athellys), 1445; (Athells), 2225. A.S. *æþel*. See Atell.

Athelest, *adj. superl.* noblest, 40, 4571; Athelist, 3757; Athilest, 5104.

(Athelfullest), *adj.* noblest, 1606.

Athenes (Athens), Athens, 2419; (Atthenys), 2322; Athenas, 2312. See Atenes.

(Ather); see Aþer.

Aþire (Ather), *adj.* either, each, 3023. See Aþer.

Atired (Attyred), *pt. s.* attired, decked, 1525; (Atyred), *pt. pl.* 2427; A-tired, *pp.* 4904; (Attyred), 1628; (Atired), 1294, 1633. See Atyres.

(Att), *prep.* at, 964.

(Att), *conj.* so that, 1527.

(Attachyd), *pp.* attached, 2580.

Attamyd; see Atamed.

(Attellys), *pr. s. refl.* advances, 2315; (Attelyt), 1 *pt. s.* intended, 1819; (Attelland), *pres. pt.* devising, expecting, 3191. See

Etlit. Icel. *atla*, to think, intend.

Atter, *s.* poison, 1390. A.S. *átor*.

Atterand, *pres. pt.* poisoning, i. e. poisonous, 4198. See above.

(Atthill), *miswritten for* Attell, 1 *pr. s.* direct, 2322. See Attellys.

Attrid (Atterd), *adj.* poisoned, 2455. See Atter.

At-wendis, *pr. s.* leaves, escapes, goes away from, 3247. Cf. A.S. *ætwindan*, to flee away, escape.

At-wynde, *pr. s. subj.* may depart, 1949. A.S. *ætwindan*.

Atyres, *pr. s.* attires, 1294; Atyred, *pp.* adorned, made, 3343. See Atired.

Aufrike, Africa, 5660; Auffrik, 4395. (*For* Au- = Av-, see under Av-.)

Augard (Awgerd), *adj.* proud, or excellent, 2343. This word is the same as *ogart*, proud, in Halliwell, and allied to *overgart*, excessive, in Stratmann. I suppose the orig. sense to be merely 'extreme'; it stands probably for *of-gart*, where *gart* is the *pp.* of *gar*, to make. Cf. Swed. *afgjord*, *pp.* of *afgöra*, to settle; Dan. *afgjort*, *pp.* of *afgjøre*, to finish; Norw. *avgjord*. See Augird.

(Aughfulest), most terrible, 1062.

Augird (Awgerly), *adv.* exceedingly, 772. See Augard, Augirly.

Augirly, *adv.* extremely, excessively, 661; (Awgardly), 717; (Awgerdly), 972; (Augerly), entirely, wholly, 2987; Augrily (Augerdly), extremely, 3252; (Augerdly), proudly, 1726; severely, greatly, 1277; fiercely, 1401; Augrely (Awgerdly), extremely, 1342. See above.

August, August, 3789.

Auncestours, *pl.* ancestors, 4369.

Auncient, *adj.* ancient, 1002; Aunceant, old, 2391.

Aungell, *s.* angel, 4529, 5258; (Angell), 1487, 1872, 2893; Aungels (Angels), *pl.* angels, 1556; figures of angels, 4913; *gen.* Aung[e]ls (Angels), angel's, 2863.

Aunkirs (Ankers), *pl.* anchors, 1372.

- (Answer), *s.* answer, 751. See Answer.
- Aunter, *s.* adventure, 3204; peril, 538; (Awentur), mischance, 1109; Auntir, adventure, 5189; Aunter, (*pl.* Aunters), adventure, case, 693; Auntirs (Aunters), *pl.* adventures, 1278; Auntours, 3470, 5618; (Aunturs), 3204. See Anters.
- Authere (Owder), *conj.* either, 1180.
- Authly, *adv.* (?) 3234. It seems to mean 'sadly'; cf. Icel. *auðr.* void, desolate.
- Autour, author, 4720.
- Autere, *s.* altar, 1572.
- A-vaie, *s.* *pr. s.* informs, 1508; Avaied, *pp.* informed, made aware, 116; If þou avaied worthe, if thou art (well) informed, if you take heed, 103. O.F. *avair*, *avoir*, to set on the road, guide, inform; Godefroy, p. 537.
- A-vaile, 2 *pr. s.* subj. prevail (to be), 1880.
- A-vaile (Ayale), *imp. s.* lower, diminish, 2836. O.F. *avaler*.
- A-vanced (Auancyd), *pp.* advanced, exalted, 2096; Auancet, *pp.* advanced, chief, 2391; A-vansid, *pp.* advanced, exalted, 389; (Auancet), *pp.* advanced in years, 1002; (Auancett), *pp.* advanced, honoured, 2200; A-vaunced, *pp.* advanced, rendered prosperous, 3773; (Avaunsyd), exalted, 2755.
- Auaunt, *shortened form of* Aueuaunt, courteous, 2387. O.F. *aveuant*, spelt *advenant* in Cotgrave. See the context; and see *Auaunt* in Halliwell.
- (Avaunte), *imp. s.* vaunt, 2713.
- A-vauntour (Aventur), *s.* mishap, 2889.
- A-verous, *adj.* avaricious, 4512.
- A-vised (Avyse), *imp. s.* consider, 1767; *imp. pl.* 4410; A-vised (Awysez), *pr. s.* reads over, 2066; A-vised him, considers with himself, 1000; Him a-vised, 3624. See Avyses.
- Auoure, *s.* property, wealth, 4668. O.F. *avoir*.
- A-vow (A-vowre), *s.* vow, 2605.
- A-vowtrere, *s.* adulterer, 4414.
- A-vowtri, *s.* adultery, 4329.
- Avyn, *adj.* own, 188. See Awen.
- Auyrice, *s.* avarice, 4327.
- Avyses, *pr. s.* perceives, 4926; Avysis, beholds, 3234; (Visys), *pr. s.* notices, takes notice of, 2959; (Avysed), *pt. s.* perceived, 753*; Avysid him, looked, 116. See Avise.
- A-wai, *adv.* away, 865; Away, 508.
- Awe, *pt. s.* behoved, 868. (Properly *pr. s.*) A.S. *āh*. See Awght.
- Awen, *adj.* own, 364, 420, 623, 708, 3659; (Awne), 873, 3178.
- Awen (Awne), *adj.* one, 2569. (A curious spelling; confused with *awen* = own.)
- Awgerd, Awgerdly, &c.; see Aug-.
- (Awght), eight, 764.* See A3t.
- (Awght), *pt. s.* behoved, 868. A.S. *āhe*, *pt. t.* of *āh*. See Awe, A3t.
- Awne, *adj.* own, 4497; also in 7339*, 759*, 777*, 800*, 814.* See Awen.
- (Awnterez), *pl.* adventures, 1011. See Aunter.
- A-wondres, *pr. s.* surprises, 4832; *refl.* is amazed, 4047; Awondird, *pp.* astonished, 302.
- Awyn, *adj.* own, 79, 168, 210, 219; (Awne), 3236. See Awen.
- Ax, *s.* axe, 1400.
- Ay, *adv.* ever, 265, 298, 972, 994, &c.; Ay elike, always alike, 536, 2046. See Ai, Aye.
- (Ayaynez), *prep.* against, 829.*
- Aydeus (for Aide deus), God aid (me), 729. Adapted from O.F. *aide deus*.
- (Aydom), *adj.* 2307. See Ayndain.
- Aye, *adv.* continually, 3438. See Ay.
- Aykewordly, (Aukwardly), *adv.* indirectly, ambiguously, 2183.
- Ayndain, *adj.* 2307. The Dublin MS. has *aydom*. These forms point to a reading *aydand*, i.e. aiding, assisting, hence favourable, which seems to be the sense required. See the note. Cf. F. *aidant*, helping; *Dieu aidant*, if God help me; Cotgrave.

Ayre, *s.* heir, 588. See Aire.

(Ayres), *pr. s.* goes, 832*; (Ayrez), 2114; (Ayres hym), goes, 749; (Ayres), *imp. pl.* go ye, 889. See Aires.

Aysy (Asy), Asia, 1630. See Asie.

Aythire, *pron.* either, each, 4500; (Ather), 2043; Aythir, 4391; (Ather), either, 1583.

(Ay-whare), *adv.* everywhere, 781.*

Azayne (Ayayn), *adv.* again, back again, 1393, 3240.

Aze, *s.* awe, terror, danger, 2987; (Aw), awe, 1459; Artaxenses aze, fear of Artaxerxes, 169.

Aze, *pr. s.* ought (lit. owes), 3370; ought (to be), 4245; (Aght, *pt. s.*), 3370; (Awght, *pt. s.*), it becomes (him), 1820; (Aught, *pt. s.*), it becomes, 1928. A.S. *āh*.

Aze (Awe), *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* owe, 2763; *pr. s.* owns, rules over, 4712. A.S. *āh*.

Azed, *pp.* terrified, lit. awed, 3635. See Aze, *sb.*

Aze-fullest, *adj. superl.* awfullest, most terrible, 16.

Azt (Awght), *pt. s. impers.* ought (for him to do), 717; owed, 918; Azt, possessed, 2125; (Aught), 2 *pt. pl.* did possess, 2292; Azt, *pt. s.* owned, possessed, 18. A.S. *āhte*. See Awght.

Azt, *num.* eight, 3462, 3930.

Aztand, *ord.* eighth, 3830; Aztent, 4836.

Azte, *s.* possession, valuable property, hence, present, 5134. Lowl. Sc. *aucht*; A.S. *dht*.

Bab, *s.* babe; The bab with to play = for the babe to play with, 2500; Babbis, *pl.* babes, 1772.

Babilon, Babylon, 1683; (Baby-loyne), 2597; Babiloun, 5627; Babiloyne, 5611.

(Babyst), *error for* Bayst, 2146. See Baise.

Bac (Bake), *s.* back, 932; Backis, *pl.* 3894.

Bachelere, *s.* young knight, 4209, 4778; (Bachelers, *pl.*), 1594; Bachelers, *pl.* bachelors, young

knight, novices in arms, 155, 974, 1003, 1797, 2088; Bachelars, 4111.

Backes, *pl.* bats, 3936. "Bakke, *respectilio*"; Prompt. Parv.

Bactry, Bactria, 3950.

Bacus, *s.* Bacchus, 4525.

Bad, *pt. s.* bale, 2291, 3138, 3458; (Bade), 1667; Badd, 5540; Bad, *pt. pl.* 2195; (Byde), *pt. pl.* 2285.

Baddis (Baddez), *pl.* cats, 1763. Cf. Sc. *badrans*, a cat; the game called *cat* is also called *bad* (see Halliwell).

Bade, *pt. s.* abode, 4982; remained, waited, 811*; *pt. pl.* waited, abode, 5550.

Bade (Bode), *s.* delay, tarrying, 2908, 2951, 5204.

(Badly), *adv.* badly, 1782. A corrupt reading; see Badrich.

Badriche, *s.* foolish one (?), 1782. It seems to be a vocative case. Cf. A.S. *bædling*, an effeminate person; *badling*, a worthless person (Halliwell).

Bages, *pl.* badges, 4181.

Baggis, *pl.* bags, 123.

Baies (Bays), *pr. s.* bays, barks, 1805.

Bailyfs (Bailzais), *pl.* bailiffs, 2294.

Baise, *imp. pl.* abase (yourselves), be dismayed, 4156; Baiste (Babyst), *pt. s.* humbled, 2146; Baist (Bassyd), *pp.* abashed, cast down, 2567; (Basyt), humbled, 2447. See Bayst.

Baisens, *pl.* basins, 5278.

Baistell (Bastell), *s.* building, fort, tower, 1161, 1306, 1339, 1398, 1422; Baistall, 1333. O.F. *bastille*, from *bastir*, to build.

Baisting, *s.* boasting, 2016.

Baitis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost bait, dost provoke, 5355.

Bak, *s.* back, 928; Bake, 124, 218, 711, 732*, 3054, 3602; Bakis (Bakkez), *pl.* backs, 2601.

Bakin, *pp.* baked, 4435.

Bakward (Bakeward), *adv.* backward, 1408.

Balaan, *proper name*, 1293, 1430, 1442; Balaa[n], 1301, 1312.

Balan, *s.* (perhaps) a kind of hempen

- cloth, 4851. Lat. text—'subtilares lineos.' Cf. O.F. *ballin*, a kind of hempen cloth (Godefroy); Bret. *ballin*, *pallin*, a linen quilt, a winnowing-cloth. See Bole. "*Bautlin*, pièce de toile grossière que l'on étend sur le sol quand on vente le b'é;" Godefroy.
- Bald, *adj.* bold, 157, 289, 761*, 915, 1138, 1263, 1394, 1442; a bold man, 1228.
- Balddest, *adj. superl.* boldest, 764.
- Baldre (Balder), *adv.* more boldly, 1825.
- Baldis, *pr. s.* encourages, 5447; (Beldez), 1018. Cf. A.S. *byldan*.
- Baldly, *adv.* boldly, 969.
- Baldnes, *s.* boldness, 2991.
- Bale, *s.* bale, calamity, 396; sorrow, harm, injury, 1146, 1974; i.l. evil, 4194, 4620; sorrow, 2053; illness, 5582; misfortune, 2444; evil fate, 3248; Bales, *pl.* dangers, 5625.
- Bale, *s.* fire, blaze, 2231. A.S. *boll*.
- Bale-fyre, *s.* pyre, fire for burning a man, funeral pile, 562, 2058. See above.
- Balefull, *adj.* destructive, 4858.
- Balefully, *adv.* sorrowfully, 155.
- Bale-nakid, *adj.* belly-naked, naked down to the belly, hence, entirely naked, 4125. See *Belly-naked* in Halliwell.
- Balgh, *adj.* swelling out, full in shape, 4923. Cf. A.S. *balgan*; and see examples in Matzner, s.v. *balg*.
- Ball (Bale), *s.* ball, 1898, 1929; (Balle), 1712.
- Banars (Banerys), *pl.* banners, 3027; (Banars), 774. See Baners.
- (Band), *pt. s.* bound, tied, 1371, 2903.
- Band, *s.* bond, 786*; Bande (Bandes, *pl.*), imprisonment, 3104; Bands, *pl.* bonds, 5344; (Bandez), 769*.
- Bane, *s.* slayer, 5376; murderer, 969; Banes, *pl.* murderers, 3248, 3429. Icel. *bani*.
- Baners, *pl.* banners, 781, 4181; (*unlettered* Baners), 1563. See Banir, Banars.
- Banes, *pl.* bones, 773*, 3308.
- Banir, banner, 2088.
- Banke, *s.* bank, 5243; (Bank), low hill, 2441.
- Banned, *pt. s.* cursed, 157.
- Barante (Barayate), *s.* barrenness, 894. See Barayn.
- Baratour, *s.* bold fighter, hero, warrior, 2476, 2825, 2991, 3320, 4786; Barotour, 5043; Barratour, 4001; Baratours, *pl.* fighters, 830*, 1138, 2593, 3502, 3877; Baratorus (Baratours), 2159; (Barotours), 1799. O.F. *barateour*, from *barat*, confusion, strife.
- Baratris, *pl.* conflicts, 4503. *Error* for Baratis, *pl. of* Barat, confusion, strife. See Baret.
- Barayn (Baren), *adj.* barren, 1199.
- Barbare (Barberon), *adj.* barbarous, barbarian, 991; Barbarine (Barberon), 2418; Barbres, *pl.* barbarians, 3499, 3611; (Barbers), 2488; (Barbrys), 2650; (Barbrens), 2606; Barbers (Barbres), 2534. See Barbryn.
- Barbis (Barbes), *pl.* barbs of arrows, 2455.
- Bar-bryn (Barberen), *adj.* barbarian, 2919; Barbryne (Barbaryn), 3051; Barbrene, 3586; Barbyne (Barbren), 2626; Barbrins, *gen. pl.* barbarians', 5311. See Barbare.
- Bare, *s.* hoar, 4523, 4746; Bares, *gen.* 5436; Bare, *gen.* 610.
- Bare, *pt. s.* bore, pushed along, 711; (Bare), bare, 974; *pt. pl.* bore, 1408; (Borne), carried, 1570.
- Bare, *adj.* bare, 1339, 2246, 3842.
- Bare, *s.* bar (of justice), 758*.
- Barely, *adv.* nearly, 894.
- Baret, *s.* strife, debate, hardship, 4620; trouble, 527; (Barettes), attacks, 2137. O.F. *barat*, *baret*, confusion.
- Barge, *s.* barge, raft, 4206; Bargis, 66, 5462; (Bargez), 1305, 2457.
- Barke, *s.* bark (of a tree), 4975.
- Barne, *s.* baim, edge, verge, 4812. Icel. *barro*, baim, edge.
- Barneken, barbican, the outermost defence of a fortified town or castle, 1591. Lowland Sc. *barnekin*. See Barne.
- Barve, *s.* bairn, child, 396, 517, 585, 597, 1559, 1712, 1927, 3320, 4117;

- young man, 811*; Barnes, *pl.* children, 2717, 4046; (Bernes), 1473; (Barnez), 1018.
- (Baron), *s.* baron, 761*; Barons, *pl.* 155, 974, 1003, 2159. See Beron.
- Baronage, baronage, assembly of barons, 984.
- Barotour, Barratour; see Baratour.
- Barrayne, *adj.* barren, 3582. See Barayn.
- (Barre), *s.* enclosure formed by bars, 783*; (Barrez), *pl.* bars, 1081.
- Barrere (Barre), *s.* barrier, 2903; Barrers, *pl.* barriers, 3681; (Barres), 2229.
- Barris, *pr. s.* bars; Barris (Barres) to, bars to, fastens up, 1312; Barris, *pr. pl.* (Barred, *pt. pl.*) bar, fasten, 2133; Barred, *pp.* 1080.
- (Barslett), *s.* a kind of hound, 786.* Barslett in band == hound in a leash. See *Barsletys* and *Bercelettus* in Halliwell.
- Bary, *error for* Bacy, Bacchus, 4506.
- Basenet, basnet, helmet, 4002; Basinettis (Basynettes), *pl.* 2457; cf. 787.
- Basilisk, *s.* basilisk, 4837.
- Bast, the inner bark of a tree, 4981; Als bare as a bast (baste), as bare as a tree with only its inner bark left, 1339 (cf. l. 4981).
- (Basyng), *s.* abasement, attempt to put down, 2016. *Short for* Abasyng.
- Bataillid (Bateld), *pp.* embattled, 1152.
- Bataill, *s.* (1) battle, 296, 3643; (Batell), 999, 1879, 1891, 2047; (Batele), 1808; Bataile, battle, war, 650; Batall, 2374; Bataills, *pl.* 4023; (2) Bataill (Batell), battalion, body of troops, 768, 783; Batails, *pl.* battalions, 93, 3037. See Batell.
- Bataill-axes, *pl.* battle-axes, 4084.
- Batary, *prop. name*, 93.
- Bate, *ger.* to debate, to fight, contend, 4009, 4553.
- Bate (Bates, *pl.*), debate, conflict, 2615.
- Bate, *s.* stick, piece of wood, lit. bat, 1340. See Battis.
- Batell, *s.* battle, 2908, 830*; Batill, 137. See Bataill.
- Bath, *adj.* both, 4046; (Both), 1983, 2678; Bathe, 88, 177, 5203; (Bath), 769, 1422, 1584; *pe* bath, both of them, 2927; Bathe, *adv.* also, 492.
- Bathe, *ger.* to bathe (Bathyd, *pp.*), 2542.
- Bathire, *adj.* both, 3946. Icel. *báðir*, both.
- Batill; see Bataill, Batell.
- Batis (Botez), *pl.* boats, 1305.
- Batis, *imp. pl.* abate, lower, 4156.
- Batriane, Bactria, 3782; Batran, 2673; Battri (Battrye), 3106.
- Battis, *pl.* lumps, large pieces, 4166. Cf. *brick-bat*. See Bate.
- Bawdkyns (Bawdkens), *pl.* rich cloths, expensive pieces of cloth, 1514. O.F. *baudequin*, Ital. *balzacchino*, from Ital. *Baldacco*, Bagdad.
- Bawers, *pl.* archers; Baratours bawers, warrior-archers, 3960. Lit. 'bowers,' bow-men.
- Bawme, *s.* balm, balsam, 4380, 4869, 4975.
- Bawnand, *pres. part.* 4908. The sense is clearly 'abiding' or 'dwelling'; prob. for *bownand*, as if from M.E. *bounen*, to get ready; but used in the sense of the orig. Icel. verb *búa*, to dwell, abide.
- Baxe, a country, 5668.
- Bayne, *adj.* prompt, ready, 323. Icel. *beinn*.
- Bayon, Bayonne, 5668.
- Bayst, *pt. s.* cast down, made abashed, 466. See Baise.
- Be, *v.* to be, 5, 118, 159, 1476, &c.; *ger.* 179, 180, 204; Sall be, shall be, 178; Be, *pr. s. subj.* 249, 322; may be, 308; whether it be, 257; 2 *pr. s. subj.* 844*; *pr. pl. subj.* 106, 2076; *imp. s.* be thou, 242; Be þis = if this be, 2549. See Bee.
- Be, *prep.* by, 58, 206, 240, 443, 617, 2084; by aid of, 714; beside, close to, 3940; with respect to, 4410; through, 3792. See Bi.
- Be, *conj.* by the time that, 3900, 5163.

- Be now, by now, by this time, 3825.
 Be þis (þat), by this (that) time, 1313.
 Be tyme, betimes, 1746.
 Bebbing, *s.* bibbing, drinking, 4506.
 Be-bled (To-bled), *pp.* covered with blood, 1274.
 Bebricans, the Bebrician's, 5333.
 Bebrik, *adj.* Bebrician, 5178, 5214.
 Bebrike, Bebricia, 5151.
 Be-cause, *conj.* because, 230. See Bicause.
 Becomen, *pp.* gone, 166.
 Bed, *s.* bed, 381; (Bede), 1506; Beddis, *pl.* 5267; (Beddes), 1763.
 Beddles (Bedels), *pl.* heralds, lit. beadles, 2285, 2294.
 Bede, *v.* bid, 2860; Bedis, *pr. s.* bids, commands, 3565; Beds, 5462; Bedis (Biddez), 1473, 1668, 1906; Bedis (Byddes), *pr. s.* bids, 1492, 3137; (Biddes), 2749; Bedis, *pr. s.* offers, 3115; Bedis þam þe bake, offers them his back, takes to flight, 3054; Bede, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* offer, 4289; Bedis (Bydes), *pr. pl.* bid, advise, 2658; Bed, 1 *pt. s.* (Byd, 1 *pr. s.*) bade, 2479; Bede, *pt. s.* bade, 811*, 3319; Bed, *pt. s.* offered, 3557; (Badde), offered, 1664; Bed hem (bidden þaim) þe bake, took (taken) to flight, 1944; Beden, *pp.* bidden, 71.
 Bedell, *adj.* sharp, 4096. Evidently a variant of M.E. *bitel*, biting, sharp, Ormulum, 10074; Layamon, vol. ii. p. 395; vol. iii. p. 73.
 Bedene, *adv.* forthwith, at once, quickly, 474, 1905, 2100, 2656, 3367, 4056, 4113, 4225; continually, 4788; All bedene, all at once, 3743. See All-bedene.
 Beding, *s.* bidding, 3529; Bedinge, 4778.
 Bedis, *pr. s.* requires, asks, 4537; (Bedes), prays, 1482; Bede (Bid), 1 *pr. pl.* pray, ask. 1633.
 Bedis, *pl.* prayers, 4670.
 Bedsted, *s.* place for a bed, 373.
 Bedwyn, *name*, 5498.
 Bee, *v.* be, 3793; (Be), *ger.* to be, 2092; Bees, *pr. s.* used as future, will be, shall be, 174, 1899, 1991, 4781; (Beys), 892; will be, can be, 3378; Bees (Be), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* be ye, 2604; (Beys), 874, 2435; used for the sing., 1355. And see Be.
 Beeris, error for Heeris (as shewn by the alliteration), *pl.* armies, hosts, 5673.
 Bees, *pl.* ornaments, jewels, chains (of gold), 1548, 2337, 5274; (Beys), 3225. A.S. *béah*. In l. 5472, *bees* signifies ornaments of gold; and as gold is, in poetry, said to be red, the author has been led by alliteration to describe the *bees* as blood-red.
 Beet, *ger.* to kindle, 3918. A.S. *bētan*.
 Beete, *ger.* beat out, forge, 3626.
 Befall, *v.* happen, 251, 433; (Befalle), 1641.
 Before, *prep.* before, 1146, 2295, 2303; Befor, 272, 1900, 3973; *adv.* before, beforehand, 76, 736*, 798*, 1240; Be-for (Before), *conj.* before, 2290; Here-before (before), ere now, 721.
 Be-forne, *prep.* before, 361, 3769, Beforn, 4862; Beforne (Before), 1321, 1598; (Aforne), 2964.
 Be-forne, *adv.* before, 2262, 2274; in front, 1561.
 Begane, *pp.* adorned, 4911. A.S. *be-gán*, *pp.* of *be-gán*, to go round.
 Begin (Begnyn), *v.* begin, 2272; (Began), *pt. pl.* 2044. See Begyn.
 Be-glouird, *pt. s.* deceived, beguiled, lit. flattered, 417. See *glaveren* in Stratmann.
 Begyle, *ger.* to beguile, 415; Begylid, *pt. s.* 390.
 Begyn, *ger.* to begin, 324; Begynnes (Begynnez), *pr. s.* 1026; Begynnys, *pr. s.* 5451; *pr. pl.* 2044.
 Be-hald, *ger.* to behold, 1063; (Behold), 2270; Behaldis, *pr. s.* (Beheld, *pt. s.*), looks, 1589; Behaldes (Bihaldyn), beholds, 2058; Behaldis, *pr. s.* beholds, 266; Behald, 2 *pr. pl.* 269; Beheld, *pt. s.* 42, 223, 264; Behald (Byhald), *imp. pl.* 4996.
 Behalue, *s.* behalf, 5037.

- Be-heryd (Heret), *pp.* bepraised, 1616. A.S. *herian*.
- Behind (Byhynde), *adv.* behind, 1433; Be-hynde, 5437; Be-hynd (Byhynde), back, 1596.
- Be-houys, *pr. s.* it behoves, must needs, 172.
- Be-hynde; see Behind.
- Be-kend, *pp.* proclaimed, made known; Was *be croune be-kend*, was proclaimed as the crown, i.e. as the chief, 3479. Or *croune* may be taken as dative; i.e. he was entrusted with the crown. *Be-kenne* is properly to commit to, entrust to.
- Bekirs (Bekers), *pr. s.* fights, 1297; Bekire (Bekeryng), *pr. pl.* skirmish, 1394. E. *bicker*.
- Be-knew, *pt. s.* acknowledged (to), 671; (Be-knewe), made known, 2872.
- (Beld), *pp.* built, 2256.
- (Beldez); see Baldis.
- Bele, *s.* belly, 394. See Bely.
- Belechiste, belly-chest, belly, 423.
- Belieue (Belyfe), *adv.* soon, 2209; Belyue (Belieue), 1511; Belife, 256, 731*; Als *belieue*, as soon as possible, at once, 800*; (Als *belyue*), 2183; (Als *belyfe*), 3181. See Belyue, Bilyue.
- Bellis (Bellys), *pl.* bells, 1563.
- Bely, *s.* belly, 4923. See Bele.
- Bely-blind, lit. belly-blind, extremely dark, 5648. See Bale-nakid.
- Belyme, *error for* Belyue, *adv.* quickly, 3761. See Belyue.
- Be-lyue, *adv.* quickly, soon, forthwith, 493, 670, 777, 2793; (Belyfe), 956, 1810, 2285; (Byliue), 1792; (Belieue), 1452; Belyfe, 190, 382, 621; (Belyue), 1051; (Belieue), 909; Belyf (Belyue), 1425; Als *belyfe*, as soon as possible, 710, 2404; (All *belyue*), very soon, 2404; As *belyue*, as quickly as possible, 3029, 5160.
- Bemes, *pl.* beams of light, 1543; (Bemys), sun-beams, 3225; Bemys, 62.
- Bemes, *pl.* beams, i.e. projecting horns (*but prob. an error for* Banes, bones, Lat. text, *ossa*), 5557. See the note.
- Bemys (Bemes), *pl.* trumpets, 1387, 2616; Bemen (Beeme), *gen. pl.* of trumpets, 3038. A.S. *býme*, *béme*, a trumpet.
- (Ben), 1 *pr. pl.* are, 1992.
- Ben, *for* Baned, i.e. boned, 1702. MS. D. *has baned correctly*.
- Benche; see Benke.
- Bend (Bynde), *ger.* to bend, soften, cause to give way, 2243; Bendis (Benden), *pr. pl.* bend, 2225; Bende, *pt. s.* bent down to, 1620; Bend up, *ger.* to wind up or draw up (their crossbows and bows), 2211.
- (Bene), *v.* to be, 1465; (Bene), *pr. pl.* are, 1008, 2155; Bene, *pp.* been, 233, 489, 596; (Ben), 1004, 1123.
- Bene (Beyne), *s.* (the value of a) bean, 2567.
- Benere (Bener), *adj. comp.* fitter, better, easier, 1715. See Bayne.
- Benignite, benignity, goodness, 4662.
- Benke, *s.* bench, seat, 625, 4236; Benkis, *pl.* 5271; Benkes (Benche), 2927.
- Bent, *s.* field, plain, grassy field, 830*, 1328, 2053, 2825, 3027, 3126, 3170, 3502, 3557, 5151.
- Bent-fild (Feld), open field, field of battle (lit. field of bent-grass), 2786, 3139, 4764.
- Benyson, *s.* benison, blessing, 1692, 3308.
- Berand, *pres. part.* making a noise, roaring, 3903. See Bere, *s.*
- Berbrens, *pl.* barbarians, 5334; *gen.* 3572.
- Berd, beard, 320; Berdis, *pl.* 4117. See Bered.
- Berdles, *adj.* beardless, 2556.
- Bere, *v.* bear, carry, 124; bear (a child), 439; bear, 835, 1906; wear, 1715; Beres, *pr. s.* carries, 732*; (Beres), bears, 1219; Beris, bears, 312; thrusts, 788; carries about, 3351; (Berez), thrusts, 932; Beris, 2 *pr. pl.* bear, 2120; Beris, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.*: Beris a-pon vs, bring upon us, accuse us of, 4663; Bere, *pt. s.* bore, 751*.

- Bere, *s.* noise, din, 489, 496. See *here* in Matzner.
- Bere, *s.* bear, 4126; Beres, *pl.* 3849.
- Bered, beard, 122. See Berd.
- Beren (Berne), *s.* man, 3138. See Berin, Berne.
- Beres, *pr. s.* resounds (Beryd, *pt. s.*), 3038. See Bere, *s.*, Berand.
- Beried (Beryd), *pp.* full of graves, lit. buried, 3139.
- Berin, *s.* man, 5240. See Berne.
- Bering, *s.* bearing, 4319.
- Beritinus, *proper name*, 1242; (Bertinus), 1263.
- Berne, *s.* man, hero, 107, 157, 402, 446, 547, 585, 761*, 872, 999, 4110; (Bern), 787*, 1328, 1349, 2172; Bernes, *pl.* men, warriors, 66, 489, 747*, 781, 1146, 1214, 1220, 2517, 3432, 3572; husbands, 3741; (Bernes), 1037; Bernns (Bernes), 2214; (Bernes), 984; Bernys, 93, 236, 4125; (Bernes), 1307. A.S. *beorn*. See Beren, Berin.
- Berne-dure, *s.* barn-door; As a b., as great as a barn-door, 4852.
- Bernys (Bernes), *pl.* barns, 1763.
- Beron, baron, 1594; (Barouns), *pl.* 1594. See Baron.
- Berrers, *pl.* caskets(?), lit. bearers, things to carry things in (?), 5135. Lat. text, *loculos*, of which it is probably a translation.
- Bery, *s.* berry, 1349, 1357.
- Bery, *ger.* to hide, 4048; *imp. pl.* bury, 3308.
- Bery-bobis, *pl.* bunches of berries, 4809. See Bobb.
- Bery-buskis, *pl.* bushes bearing berries, 5239.
- Berynes, *s.* sepulchre, tomb, 5417, 5591. See the Troy-Book (E. E. T. S.).
- Berys, *pl.* bears, 3906. (But see the note.)
- Besin, Byffex, 3428.
- Besandis, *pl.* besants, i. e. coins of Byzantium, 124; (Besandes), 3104; Besandez, 1042; Besands (Besandez), 1664, 1891; (Besandes), 1906.
- Be-seche (Beseke), *pr. s.* 1 p. be-seech, 1097; Be-sechis (Besekes), *pr. pl.* 1 p. 1012. See Beseke.
- Bescke, 1 *pr. s.* 311, beseech, 801*; (Besече), 3172; Besekis (Besেকে), *pr. s.* beseeches, 1075; Beseke (Besekyn), 1 *pr. pl.* beseech, 1947, 2699; *pr. pl.* 2352. See Besече.
- Besely, *adv.* quickly, 1944.
- Besemes (Besemys), *pr. s.* besemens, helms, suits, 2944; Be-s-emys, 439.
- Besegis, *pr. s. refl.* considers, 751. A.S. *bescon*, to look about.
- Beside (Besyde), *prep.* beside, 1158. See Besyde.
- Besom, brush, 320. Du. *bezem*, A.S. *besma*.
- Be-sojt, *pt. s.* besought, 303, 515. See Beseke, Besече.
- Best, *adj.* best, 35, 807*; Beste, 401.
- Best, *adv.* best, 160, 289, 373, 439.
- Bestid, *s.* cattle, 1199. O.F. *bestaille*.
- Beste, *s.* beast, 3920, 5591; Best, 762*, 4096, 4742, 5133, 5436; Bestis, *pl.* beasts, 280, 3493, 3572, 3593, 4118; animals, 5431; creatures, 3793; Bestes, beasts, 2765; Bestis (Bestes), 1207, 1632, 1549, 2853.
- (Beste), *error for* Beste, *s.* boasting, 2447. See the other MS.
- (Bestound), *for* Be stound, by the time, at this time, 1468.
- Besy, *adj.* busy, 595.
- Be-syde, *prep.* beside, 236, 1144; (Bysyde), against, with respect to, 875; Besyd (Besyde), beside, 2431. See Beside.
- Besyde (Bysyde), *adv.* near, 1694.
- Besyly, *adv.* busily, 2991; (Besely), 2934.
- Besyues, *s.* business, busy employment (about), 4670.
- Bet, *adv.* better, rather, 3494.
- Bet, *pp.* beaten, made, 5696; (Betyn), beaten, 2088.
- Be-takens (Betokyns), *pr. s.* bet-takers, fencers, 3090; Betakend, *pt. s.* betokened, 613.
- Bete, *ger.* to beat down, 2246; Beten (Betyn), *pp.* beaten, made, 2927. See Betis, Bett.
- Betid, *pt. s.* betided, befel, hap-

- pened, 214, 524; (Betyd), 2366;
 Betid (Betyd), *pp.* happened,
 come to pass, 3279.
- Be-time (Be-tyne), *adv.* betimes,
 in time, 1768, 1978.
- Betis (Betes), *pr. s.* beats, 1223;
 (Betyne), beat, 1153. See Bete.
- Betokyns; see Be-takens.
- Bett, *pt. s.* kindled, 4167. A.S.
bētan.
- Bett, *pp.* beaten, 1927; beaten (out),
 5271. See Bete.
- Better, *adj.* 1102; *adv.* 106, 642.
- Be-twene, *prep.* between, 295, 317,
 353, 660; (Bytwene), 797.
- Betwene, *adv.* between whiles, 1414;
 at times, 1299; (Bytwene), be-
 tween, 1370.
- Betwyx, *prep.* betwixt, 4216.
- Beute (Bewte), *s.* beauty. In ll.
 2739, 2919 it occurs in the un-
 authorised sense of 'kindness';
 but it is probably an error for
bonte, i. e. bounty, goodness, kind-
 ness.
- Bewenes, *error for Beweues, pr. pl.*
 cover (themselves with no proud
 clothing), put on (no proud cloth-
 ing), 4337. See *biweven* in Mätzner,
 and *biweved* in Halliwell.
- Bewte, *s.* beauty, 224. See Beute.
- Bezonde, *adv.* beyond, i. e. on the
 other side of the stream, 3742.
- Bi, *prep.* by, 79; along, 1538. See
 Be.
- Bi-cause of, because of, 3273. See
 Because.
- Biechid, *pp.* as *adj.* evil, 4839. See
bieched bones in Chaucer.
- Biche, *s.* bitch, 5482.
- Bid, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* pray, 1782; Biddis
 (Biddez), *pr. s.* prays, asks, 2191.
- Bide, *ger.* to bide, wait, remain, stay,
 137; (Byde), *v.* 2172; *ger.* 1689;
 (Abyde), *v.* 2180, 2195; Bidis
 (Bydes), *pr. s.* waits, 3054; en-
 dures, 527.
- Bide (Byd), 1 *pr. s.* bid, command,
 3415; Bidd, 3562; Bidd (Bidde),
pr. s. 1 *p.* I bid, require, 2337;
 Biddis, *pr. s.* bids, 5576; (Byddes),
 1717, 2211.
- Bir, *adj.* strong, 1295; Bigg, big,
 great, 4742, 5156; (Bigg, bold,
- 1838; Bigge, strong, stout, 5516;
 Big Bigg), 915; Bige, big, strong,
 4085.
- Bigg, *ger.* to build, 2256; Biggis,
pr. pl. 2 *p.* build, 4580; Biggid,
pp. built, 5415; (Bigged), 2215;
 (Bigget), 1366. Icel. *byggja*.
- Bigger, *adj.* stronger, 2340; Big-
 gire, bigger, 3903.
- Biggest, *adj.* strongest, 2159.
- Biggings, *s.* building, 4431; Bigging-
 is (Biggenges), buildings, towns,
 2697. See Bigg.
- Bigly, *adv.* strongly, 1371; stoutly,
 1138; largely, 423.
- Bignes, *s.* greatness, 105; arrogance,
 1018.
- Bild, *s.* building, 1366, 4892, 5267;
 (Beld), building, 1297; town,
 3106; (Belde), building, 1307,
 2926; town, fort, 1080; (Beylde),
 1338; Bilds, *pl.* buildings, 5603;
 Bildis (Beldes), 3137.
- Bilds, *pr. s.* builds, 5591; Bildis,
pr. s. (Beldit, *pt. s.*), builds,
 pitches (tents), 2441; Bildis, *pr.*
pl. build, hence dwell, 3741; Bi[l]-
 did (Bild), *pt. s.* built, 1366;
 Bildid, *pt. s.* set up, 2673; Bildid,
pt. pl. built, pitched, 3950;
 Bildid, *pp.* built, 5417; Bild, *pp.*
 1161.
- Bildid, *pt. pl.* became emboldened,
 took courage, 3884. (*Of* = some
 of.) A.S. *byldan*.
- Bilding, *s.* building, 4431.
- Bilding (Beldyng), *s.* emboldening,
 encouragement, 1797. See Bildid.
- Bill, *s.* bill, writing, 1827.
- Billis, *pl.* bills, beaks, 3696.
- Bilyue (Belyue), *adv.* soon, 2271.
- Bird, *s.* lady, 5214; Birdis, *pl.*
 women, ladies, 595, 3723, 4259.
 (Birde); see Bride.
- Bire (Bir), rush, force, 711. Lowl.
 Sc. *birr*, *beir*, force. Cf. Icel.
byrr, a favouring wind.
- Birth, *s.* birth, 256, 289; child, 439,
 526.
- Bishop, *s.* bishop, 1458, 1473, 1489;
 (Bishop), 1506, 1570, 1644, 1692;
 (Bischopp), 1598, 1664.
- Bise (Byse), *adj.* bice, blue colour,
 1532. Often described as purple;

- see *bis* in Mätzner. O.F. *bisse*, Lat. *byssus*, Gk. *βύσσος*.
- Bitis, *pr. s.* bites, 224, 2070; (*Bitez*), 1805; Bitand, *pres. pt.* biting, sharp, 610, 788, 3197, 5558; Bitten, *pp.* 3934.
- Bitterly, *adv.* keenly, 1301; bitterly, 963.
- Blaa, *adj.* livid, 559. Icel. *blár*, Dan. *blaa*.
- Blade, *s.* blade of a razor, 122; Bladis, *pl.* blades, 5558.
- Blak, *adj.* black, 112, 696, 3920; Blake, 192, 562; (Blak), 1127.
- Blakenid, *pp.* blackened, 556.
- Blamed, 2 *pt. pl.* (Blaine, 2 *pr. pl.*), blamed, 2429.
- Blan, *pt. s.* ceased, 381, 1228. A.S. *blinnan*, *pt. t. blann*. See *Blin*.
- Blasand, *pres. part.* blazing, bright, ardent, 2871; (Blesand), 1563; (Blysnand), 1524, 2229.
- Blase, *s.* blaze; On blase, in a blaze, 559; (On a blasse), 2231.
- Blasand, *pres. part.* blazing, shining, 5262. See Blasand, Blasynand.
- Blasfeme, *ger.* to blaspheme, 2737.
- Blasfeme, *s.* blasphemy, 4663.
- Blason, *s.* large shield, 4852; Blasons, *pl.* shields of arms, 787.
- Blaste (Blast), *s.* blast, noise, 3038; blowing, drawing, 3233; Blastis, *pl.* blasts, 3959, 4162.
- Blasynand (Blasenand), *pres. pt.* blazing, shining, 3225. See Blasynand.
- Blawis, *pr. s.* blows, 4380; Blawen, *pp.* 5539; (Blayn), *pp.* 1757.
- Blagt, *adj.* bleached, white, 4925, 5482; (Blaught), 1559. Lowl. Sc. *blaucht*; cf. A.S. *blæced*, bleached, *pp.*
- Ble, *s.* countenance, mien, 466; Blee, 394. A.S. *blæc*.
- Bleaut, *s.* coverlet of linen, 4912. O.F. *bliaut*, *bliaut*, F. *blonde*, a rich vestment. Hence E. *blouse*. (Bleez), *pl.* appearance, 1518; see Ble. But doubtless an error for *bæc*, as in MS. A.
- Blemysche, *ger.* to blenish pollute, 4315; Blemysch, to harm, 4283; Blemyschid, *pt. s.* blenished, damaged, spoilt, 4181; Blemysched (Blemyst), *pt. pl.* blenished, harmed, tore, 2985; Blemest, *pt. pl.* blenished, (but here) killed, 3943; see note.
- Blend, *pp.* blended, compounded, 105.
- Blenkid, *pt. pl.* glanced, looked, peered, 5607. E. *blink*.
- Blesand, *pres. pt.* blazing, 604, 4230; shining, bright, 274. See Blasand.
- Blesenand, *pres. part.* blazing, 562; Blesynand (Blysnand), flashing, 802; Blesnand, gazing, staring, 4812; Blesenand, 4080. See *blusuen* in Mätzner; so also the M.E. *bluschen* means (1) to shine, (2) to gaze.
- Blew, *pt. pl.* (they) blew, 2616; Blewe (Blew), 1387.
- Blewe (Blew), *s.* blue, 1524.
- Blid (Baldit), *error for* Bild, *pp.* emboldened, encouraged, 1891. See Bildid, of which *Bild* is a shorter form.
- Blin, *v.* cease, 4167. See *Blan*, *Blyn*.
- Blinde, *ger.* to blind, deceive, 5234; Blindid (Blyndyd), *pt. s.* became dark, 3046.
- Blis, *s.* bliss, 244, 1489; (Blyss), mirth, joy, 1834, 2871.
- Blisch, *s.* glance; At a blisch, at a glance, in a moment, 606, 5435. See *blusch* in Mätzner; cf. E. 'at the first blush.'
- Blische (Blissh), *ger.* to look, 2053; Blischis, *pr. s.* looks, gazes, 5583; Blisches (Blyshys), looks, 1338; (Blysez), looks, 984; Blischis (Blisses) *vp.* looks up, 872; Blischis, *pr. pl.* look, 4189; Blischt, *pt. pl.* looked, glanced, 5559, 5697. See *bluschen* in Mätzner.
- Blisfulle, *adj.* happy, fair, 5415.
- Blissid, blessed, 5625.
- Blessing, *s.* blessing, 4573.
- Blithe, *adj.* bāthe, 517; (Blyth), 1834.
- Blithis, *pr. s.* gladders, 4624.
- Blithy, *adv.* blithely, 5697.
- Blode, *s.* blood, 640, 991; kindred, 550, 590; (Blod), 2053; Boed

- (Blode), 1966; Blod (Blude), kindred, 2739. See Blude.
- Blonk, *s.* horse, 749*, 758*. (Blonke), 1222, 2172; Blonke (Blonk), 767, 928; (Blonke), 2974; (Blonkez), *pl.* horses, 791, 821*; (Blonkes), 1247; Blonkis (Blonkes), 886, 2057. Orig. a *white* horse.
- Blopers (Blothers), *pr. s.* gurgles, rattles, 970. Cf. *bloberond*, bubbling, gurgling, in the Troy-Book, l. 9462; and see *blother* in Halliwell.
- Blude (Blode), *s.* blood, 2048; race, 2418. See Blode.
- Blyckenand, *part. pres.* glittering, 604. See *blyknen*, to glitter, in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
- Blyn, *v.* cease, 2737; Blynnes, *pr. s.* 4160; Blynnes, *imp. pl.* desist, leave off, 4011; Blyns, cease, 5365. See Blin, Blan.
- Blyndid, *pt. pl.* blinded, 3283.
- (Blysse), *s.* prosperity, 1827. See Blis.
- Blyssis, *pr. s.* looks, 789*. See Blisch.
- Blyth, *adv.* blithely, gladly, 3768.
- Blythly, *adv.* gladly, 789*, 3502.
- Bobance, *s.* arrogance, vanity, presumption, boasting, 2500; Bobans, 4252; (Bobas, *for* Bobans), 2016. "*Bobance*, insolencie, surquedrie, proud or presumptuous boasting;" Cotgrave.
- Bobb, *s.* bunch, cluster, 4777; Bobis, *pl.* 2852; (Bobbez), 2851. Lowl. Sc. *bob*, a bunch. Cf. 'a *bob* of grapy's,' Cath. Anglicum.
- Bocifalon, Bucephalus, 3613; Boci-filas (Bucifolon), 767.
- Bode; see Bade.
- Bode, *s.* command, message, 534, 2805, 3137. A.S. *bod*.
- Bodely, *adj.* bodily, 4289.
- Bodword, *s.* message, 48, 1458 (Bod-worde), 1489. See Bode.
- Body, *s.* body, 1127, 1548; Bodi, 224; (Body), 870, 894, 1482; Bode, 192; Bode (Body), body, person, 2444; Bodis, *pl.* 3903; (Bodes), 2476.
- Boghe, *s.* bough, 4982.
- Boke, *s.* book, 597, 625; (Buk), 1207.
- Bole, *s.* trunk (of a tree), 5915; Boles, *pl.* trunks (of trees), 5902; Bolis (Bulesse), *pl.* boles, trunks, 2851. *Bulesse* in Dub. can hardly mean 'bullaces.' Cf. Icel. *bolr*, *bulr*, trunk.
- Bole, *s.* coarse linen, 4851. "*Baule*, pièce de toile grossière;" God-froy. See Balan.
- (Boles), *gen.* bulls, 751*.
- Boll, *s.* bowl, cup, 55, 112, 2933, 4537; a cluster, 5240; a boss, 5647. Cf. *Bolls*, ornamental knobs; Halliwell. In l. 5240, perhaps we should read *bob*; see Bobb.
- Bolne, *v.* swell, 394; Bolnes, 2 *pr. pl.* swell, fill out, 4435. Icel. *bólga*.
- Bolstirs (Bolsters). *pl.* cushions, 1569.
- Bonde, *s.* peasant, hence, uncouth man, 4741. Lat. *homo agrestis*. Icel. *bóndi*.
- Bonden, *pp.* bound, 396, 3681; (Bondyn), 745*.
- Bondis, *pl.* bounds, territories, 4320.
- Bonds, limits (Lat. *terminos*), 4850; bounds, 3782; territories, regions, 4085, 5090.
- Bondsward; To our bondsward, i.e. to our bounds-ward, towards our bounds, 3752. See Bondis.
- Bone, *s.* boon, prayer, request, 547, 1492, 1672.
- Bone, *s.* command (lit. petition), 3137. (But read *bode*, as in D.)
- Bonerte, *s.* goodness, 4662. Short for Debonerte.
- Borde (Burde), *s.* board, table, 842; (Borde), 1340; Borde, 1857; Bordis, *pl.* tables, 5271; (Burdez), 2927; boards (of the tablets), 640. See Damme-borde.
- Borden, *adj.* wooden, 3602.
- Bordren, *error for* Broden (Brouden), *pp.* ornamented, 787. A.S. *brogdan*, *pp.* of *bregdan*, to braid, &c.
- Borely, *adj.* burly, great, large, 4089, 5435, 5472, 5603; Borly, 5002. See Burly.
- Boris, *pr. s.* becomes dim, is surrounded by a *burr* or haze, 556. A haze round the sun or moon is called a *burr* in the Whitby dialect and in East Anglia.

Borliest, *adj. superl.* burliest, biggest, 4921. And see Borely.

Borne, *pp.* born, 517, 590, 597.

Borne, *s.* burn, stream, 3831.

Borowid (Borrowed), *pp.* borrowed, 1849.

Bos, *pr. s.* behoves; Bos haue, behoves to have, must needs have, 4526; Vs bos (buse) haue, it behoves us to have, 2503; Bos (Bus), it behoves, 2340; Bose, 1927; is necessary for, 3298; (Bus), it is necessary, 2309. See Bus, Bud.

Bosom, *s.* bosom, 274.

Bost, *ger.* to boast, 2737.

Bost, *s.* boasting, 2447, 3581, 4023.

Bot, *conj.* but, 53, 101, 146, 147, 159, 161, 2913, 3321; (Bott), 686, 793; unless, 2313, 3437, 4427; Bott, but, 844*, 4225; (Bott), 686, 846; (Bod), 1623; Bot, only, 106, 139, 447, 5054, 5525; Bot if, unless, 13, 642, 1786; Bot and, but if, 3756; Bot out, except the whole of, save wholly, 5025.

(Bote), *pt. s.* bit, 2070.

Bote, *s.* use, advantage, 137; remedy, 160. A.S. *bót*.

Botez; see Batis.

Both; see Bath.

Bothom, *s.* bottom, 5532; (Bothom), 1306; (Bothum), 712; Bothom, bottom (of the valley), 4808.

Botis, *pr. s. impers.* it profits, 208. See Bote, *s.*

Bott, *prep.* but, except, 2080; (Bot), 1328.

Boukis, *pl.* bodies (but see the note to l. 3944), 3946.

Boun (Bowne), *v. reflex.* get himself ready, 2878; Bounes, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 3030; (Bownez on), advances, 768; Bounes him (Bownes him), *pr. s.* makes him ready, 1506; (Bownez him on), 3030; Bound, *pt. pl.* made themselves ready, hence, journeyed, went, 1116. Formed from Boune, *pp.* and *adj.* See Bownes.

Bourde, *s.* orbit, circuit, 427 (see the note); Boundis, boundaries, lands, 3582.

Boune, *pp.* (properly ready to go),

gone, 218; *adj.* ready, 323, 534, 3037; (Bowne), 870, 999; Boun, 4206, 5540; Boun (Bowne), 2805. Icel. *búinn*, *pp.* of *búa*, to make ready.

Bounte, bounty, goodness, 2717.

Bourde, *s.* jest, 462.

Bourne, *s.* stream, burn, brook, 3741, 4081, 4304; (Burne), 2587, 2597; Bournes, *pl.* burns, water-courses, 3487. See Burne.

Bowe (Bow), *v.* bow, submit, 991; *ger.* to bend, 3551; Bow, *v.* pass, go, 2195; Bowes, *pr. s.* bows down, 423; turns, 1333; proceeds, 534; Bowis, *pr. s.* bends, comes, 4778; Bows, *pr. s.* goes, applies himself, 5363; Bowis (Bowes), *pr. s.* bows, 1672; (Bowys), bows down, 1692; (Bowez), bows down, is subservient, 2911; Bowis (Bowes), *pr. s.* directs himself, 2893; stoops, 1598; Bowes parin, enters in, 4209; Bowis (Bownes), *pr. s.* goes, hastens, 1312, 1553 but here we might rather read *bounis*; Bowis (Bowe), 1 *pr. s.* bow, 2777; Bowe, *pr. pl.* bend, turn, 2597; Bow, go, mount, 5243; Bowis (Bowes), *pr. pl.* yield, submit, 2476; (Bowed), *pt. s.* bowed to, 1620; Bowid, *pt. pl.* bowed, 196; Bow, *pr. s. subj.* if he return, 296; Bowe, *pr. pl.* submit to, 2606; (Bowed) (Bowez), *pp.* bowed, bent, 1900; Bow, *imp. s.* bend, 547; Bowis (Bowys), *imp. pl.* return, 3118; (Bowes), depart, 2469; Bowes, return, 4011.

Bowes, *pl.* bows, 4084; Bowis (Bowes), 1413, 2210.

Bowis, *pl.* boughs, 4302, 4868, 4996; (Bowes), 2851.

Bowlis (Bulez), *pl.* game of bowls, 1929.

Bowmen, *pl.* archers, 3600, 5447.

Bowne, *adj.* ready, 1380. See Boune.

Bownes, *pr. s. refl.* prepares him, gets ready, 4954; goes, 1305; (Bownes pain up), make their way up, 629. See Boune.

- Boyland, *pres. part.* oozing, welling, 4975.
- Bozes him vp, *pr. s. refl.* turns, goes up, 699.
- Brad, *pt. s.* spread, 4912. A.S. *brædan*. See Braidis, Bredid.
- Brade, *adj.* broad, 496, 768, 732*, 783*, 1653, 1717, 3965, 4089; (Brode), 1340, 1514; Brad, 2118; (Brod), 2133; (Brade), 1408; (Brade), 802, 1297; On brade, abroad, in public, 1800; aloud, 3565; On brad, aloud, 2294. See Brode.
- (Brades vppe), *pr. s.* opens, 783*; (Brade), *pt. s.* drew, 2639. A.S. *bregdan*, Icel. *bregða*. See Braidis.
- Bradnes, *s.* broadness, breadth, 1374.
- Braes, *pl.* steep banks, 4809.
- Brag, *s.* bragging, 4319.
- Bragg, *ger.* to brag, 4553.
- Bragging, *s.* braying, noise, 3965; Braggins (Braggyng), brayings, loud sounds, 3037.
- Bragmenys, *pl.* Brahmans, 4194; Bragmeyns, *gen. pl.* 4236, 4448.
- Bragmeyn, the land of the Brahmans. 4209.
- Braide (Brayde), *s.* instant, moment; In a braide (brayde), in a short time, at once, 381, 1956, 4850; At a braide, in a moment, as soon as possible, 1220, 1956, 2231, 3918, 4206, 5539; At a braid, 5462; Braidis, *pl.* attacks, sudden assaults, 2137. Icel. *bragð*. See Brayde.
- Braidis, *pr. s.* draws, 2639; (Brades), snatches, 2951; leaps, 928; leaps quickly, jumps, 2892; Braide (Bradyn), hurry, 2229; Braidis, *pr. pl.* seize; Braidis to, take to, 3884; (Braden to), seize, 1413; Brait (Brade), *pt. s.* drew, 802. See Brades vppe, Braydis.
- Braidis, *pr. s.* spreads, extends, 1514; (Bradez), *pr. pl.* unfurl, display, 774. See Brad, Bredid.
- Brak, *pt. s.* broke, 510; Brake, 2 *pt. pl.* ye brake, 1357.
- Bran, *s.* bran, 4537.
- Brand, *s.* brand, fire-brand, 3138, 4230; sword, 446, 802, 3197, 3248; (Brand), 842, 870; (Brande), 1426; Brande, sword, 427, 1223; Brandis (Brandes), *pl.* brands, burning logs, 2236; swords, 3674, 3842.
- Brant, *adj.* straight, erect, 3648. Cf. Swed. *brant*, steep. See Brent.
- Bras, *s.* brass, 55, 276; (Brace), 1387; Brase, 4085.
- Brasen, *adj.* brazen, 112.
- Brased, *pt. s.* pricked (?), 1317; *but doubtless an error for broched, as in MS. D.*
- Brast, *pt. s.* burst, 510, 1416; Braste, 872.
- Brathe, *s.* anger, 1744, 5365; (Breth), 1956; Brath (Breth), violence, fury, 1220. Cf. Icel. *bráðr*, sudden, rash.
- Brathly, *adv.* severely, 1214; vigorously, 2211. Icel. *bráðr*, sudden.
- Braunches, *pl.* branches, 2851, 4782, 5239.
- Brayde, *s.* turn, throe, 527; At a brayd (brade), in a moment, 1380. See Braide.
- Braydis, *pr. s.* rushes, 496; Braydis him vp (Brades up), springs up, 842; Brayd, *pt. s.* drew, 274. See Braidis.
- Brayne, brain, 4002; (Brane), 2645; Braynes, *pl.* 1419.
- (Brayne-pan), *s.* cap, hat, head-piece, 2499; (Brayn-pan), 1713.
- Brayne-wode, mad in the brain, 4506.
- Bre, *ger.* to frighten; To bre hire o bourde, to frighten her in jest, 462; Breis, *pr. s.* terrifies, 4837; Breed, *pt. s.* terrified, 4741. A.S. *brégan*, to terrify; from *bróga*, terror. 'Bree, to frighten, North'; Halliwell.
- Bred, *in phr.* Bred-full, i. e. brim-full, 4089. Swed. *brädd*, brim; *bräddfull*, brimful. See Bret-full.
- Brede, *pr. pl.* breed, 4199; Bred, *pt. pl.* bred, 4782; Thyn bred, *pp.* thinly grown, 320.
- Brede, *s.* breadth, 3856, 4070, 5433; (Brede), 1502, 2118; O brede, in breadth, 3065, 3833. A.S. *brádu*.

- Bredid, *pp.* scattered abroad, dispersed, lit. made broad, 2447. See Brad, Braidis.
- Breed, *pt. s.*; see Bre.
- Breede, *s.* breadth, 5460. See Brede.
- Brefe, *s.* letter, 1717, 1906, 2749; (Breue), 1956; (Breve), 3118. "*Bref*, a briefe, note, short writing;" Cotgrave. See Breue.
- Brefe, *adj.* speedy, quick in action, 5435. Cf. '*brief* in hand' in Shak. K. John, iv. 3. 158, which Schmidt explains by 'must be speedily dispatched.' Jamieson gives '*brief*, keen,' as in use in Upper Clydesdale.
- Brefe, *v.* describe, 256; briefly state, 4448; *ger.* to record, 208; Brefe, *pr. pl. 2 p.* appoint, 4503. Icel. *brefa*, to give a brief account of; from Lat. *breuiare*. See Breue.
- Breggis (Abreggez), *pr. s.* abridges, shortens, 3289. *Short for* Abreggis.
- Breis, *pr. s.* frightens, 4837. See Bre.
- Breke, 1 *pr. s.* disclose my opinion, 2601; Brekis, *pr. s.* breaks, 787; (Breky's), 1230. *Break*, to disclose or open one's mind, occurs in Shakespeare; cf. *breaking*, disclosure, Anthony, v. 1. 14.
- Breke, *s.* breaks, breeches, 3842. A.S. *bréc*, pl. of *bróc*.
- Breme, *adj.* glorious, bright, 5262; fierce, 610, 787*, 2146, 4001; furious, 3038, 4147, 4839; sharp, 5558. A.S. *bréme*, illustrious; and see Mätzner.
- Bremely, *adv.* fiercely, 767, 1398, 3880; (Bremly), 2619; Bremely, sternly, 969; severely, 3913; angrily, 1413, 1805; quickly, 1827, 5155; Bremly, extremely, 3960.
- Brene, *ger.* to burn, 606; Brenes, *pr. s.* 1037; Brent, *pt. s.* burnt, 4762; Brent, *pp.* burnished, 3696, 4913; Brend (Brent), burnished, 1713. See Brin.
- Breheid, *adj.* cuirassed, armed with a 'birnie' or breastplate, 66. See Brenys.
- Breke, *s.* brink, bank of a river, 4741; edge of a dike, 699. See Brinkis.
- Brent, *adj.* steep, 4812. See Brant.
- Brenys, *pl.* 'birnies,' coats of mail, 1247, 2980; (Brenes), 2214; (Brynnes), 2622; (*used for the sing.*) Brenys (Brenes), a cuirass, coat of mail, 915; Breneis (Brenes), coat of mail, 1295. Icel. *brynja*, A.S. *byrne*.
- Brerys (Breres), *pl.* briars, 2985.
- Brest, *s.* breast, 224, 932, 970, 841*; (Briste), 1599; Brestis (Brestes), 2162. See Brist.
- Breste, *s.* breast, 4097. (Prob. an error for *beste*, beast.) See Cowdrife.
- Brestes, *pr. s.* bursts, 728*; Brest, *pt. pl.* burst, 5221; Brest, *pp.* broken, 2645. See Brosten.
- Bretage (Britage), *s.* battlement, parapet, 1416. "*Bretesche*, *Bretesque*, a port, or portall of defence in the rampire or wall of a towre;" Cotgrave. "*Bretage*, a parapet;" Halliwell. See Britage.
- Bretagid (Britagett), *pp.* fortified with wooden towers, 1152. See above.
- Bretayn, Britain, 5668.
- Bretens, *pr. s.* breaks, batters, 1307; Brettens, cuts in pieces, 3197; Brettenes, beats down, 5612; Bretned (Brityned), *pt. pl.* cut to pieces, 1263; Bretind, *pt. pl.* 3905 (See Alto-); Breten, *pr. s. subj.* may break in pieces, 3294; Bretend, *pp.* defeated, 5311; Bretind (Bryttynyd), beaten down, destroyed, 2479; Bretened (Bryttynett), *pp.* killed, 1328. Cf. A.S. *brytnian*, to dispense, distribute; *bryttian*, to dispense, allied to Icel. *brytja*, to chop. See Brettend.
- Bret-full, *adj.* brimful, 1548; Brettful, 4868. See Bred.
- Breth, *s.* breath, 970, 1274, 3233, 5583.
- Brethand, *pres. part.* breathing, smelling, 4899. Cf. A.S. *bræð*, an odour.
- Brethire, *pl.* brothers, 2512, 5363.
- Brettend (Brytynd), *pp.* broken to pieces, 2256; (Bryttynyd), destroyed, 2697. Icel. *brytja*, to chop, from *brjota*, to break;

- Swed. *bryta*, to break. See Bre-
tens.
- Breue, *s.* brief, letter, 1181. See
Brefe.
- Breue, *ger.* to describe, 1374;
Breues, *pr. s.* speaks, 984; (Bre-
vys), utters, 3251; Breuys, *pr. s.*
utters, 462; (Breues), 1797;
Breue, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* mean, indicate,
1898; Breuyd, *pp.* recorded as
being, noted, 1172; Breued, *pp.*
described, 35; assigned, 749*;
Breueyd (Breuet), recorded, 764;
Breue, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* tell, 2285. See
Brefe.
- Brid, *s.* bird, 411, 503, 4982; Brid-
dis, *pl.* 252, 4435, 4782; Bridis,
5603; (Birdes), 1532.
- Brid, *s.* bride, 5204; (Birde), bride,
854; spouse, 3104; Brides, *pl.*
wives, 4046; Bridis, women, 4125.
(Bridyll), brid'e, 789*.
- Brig (Brigg), bridge, 2587.
- Brigge, *ger.* to abate, mitigate, lit.
abridge, 3803. *Short for* Abridge.
(Brightfull), *error for* Bretfull, 1548.
See Bretfull.
- Brilles, *pl.* beryls, 5135. Cf. F.
briller, to shine, which is derived
from a sb. *brille**, a beryl (Littré).
- Brin, *ger.* to burn, 3137; *v.* 3682;
(Bryn), 2658. See Brene, Bryn.
- Bring, *v.* bring, 1199; *ger.* to carry,
1715; (Bring), *v.* 2101; Bringes
(Brynges), *pr. s.* brings, 927;
Bringis (Bringes), 1653.
- Brinkis, *pl.* brinks, shores, 4377.
See Brenke.
- Brist, *s.* breast, 2871. See Brest.
- Brist, *s.* want, need, 3819. Swed.
brist, want, need, failure; A.S.
byrst, loss, defect. In this line
& = than; the sense is, 'more
for the harm of their beasts
than their own need.' See *burst*
in Mätzner.
- (Bristes), *pr. s.* bursts, 872. See
Brestes.
- Bristils, *adj.* bristly, 4746. A false
form; *read* And had bristils.
- (Britage), *s.* fortification, parapet,
1301. See Bretage.
- (Britens), *pr. s.* destroys, 1037. See
Bretens.
- Brixsill, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* reproach, up-
braid, blame, 4662. Icel. *brigzli*,
s. shame, blame; *brigzla*, to up-
braid.
- Bright, *adj.* bright, 276, 427, 559,
604; fair, 466; *as s.* bright one,
5204; (Bright), 1524, 1715;
(Bryght), 2337.
- Brightens (Bryghtyns), *pr. s.* bright-
ens, renders clear, 3357.
- Broches (Brochez), *pr. s.* spurs,
2892; Brochis (Brochez), 2974;
(Brochys), pricks, 1317; (Broch-
en), *pr. pl.* pierce, 787. F. *brocher*.
- Brode, *adj.* broad, 1898; (Brode),
1553. See Brade.
- Brode, *s.* child, lit. brood, 1929.
(Broke); see Broweke.
- Broken (Brokyn), *pp.* broken, 1223,
1349.
- Brolle, *s.* child, brat, 1928. See
Gloss. to P. Plowman.
- Bront, *s.* brunt, 783.
- Brosten (To-bristen, *pr. pl.*), *pp.*
broken, 789. See Brestes.
- Brothire, *s.* brother, 5355; Brothirs,
gen. 5344.
- Browden, *pp.* braided, woven,
twisted, 1524; Browde, 4913.
A.S. *brogden*, *pp.* of *bregdan*, to
braid.
- Browe, *s.* brae, steep bank, 4837.
- Broweke (Broke), *v.* possess, use,
enjoy, 3412. A bad spelling;
read *broweke*.
- Brozt, *pt. s.* brought, 974; (Broght),
3118; Brozt (Broght), *pp.* 48, 727,
1228; (Broghtyn), 3158.
- Brunt, *s.* sudden blow; At a brunt,
on a sudden, 3934. See Bront.
- Brusche (Broush), *s.* conflict, sud-
den rush, swift movement, 783;
(Brush), 2133.
- Bruschis (Brushes), *pr. s.* hastens,
hurries, 1222, 1426; Brusches
(Brushys), flings himself, 963.
- Brym, *s.* shore, 5557. A.S. *brymme*.
- Brym, *s.* river, 4080. A.S. *brim*,
wave, surf, sea.
- Brym, *adj.* fierce, 496. See Breme.
- Brymly, *adv.* fiercely, 1222, 1333,
5451. See Bremely.
- Bryn, *ger.* to burn, 4856; Brynt,
pt. s. burnt, shone, 5648; (Brynt),

- pt. pl.* burnt, 2474; Brynnand, *pres. part.* burning, shining, 2639; Brynt, *pp.* burnished, 276, 2926; Brynd (Brynt), burnt, 2697. See Brin, Brene.
- (Bryn), *s.* burn, mark made by a brand, 751*.
- Bryng furth, *v.* bring forth, 526; Bryngis (Bringeze), *pr. pl.* bring, 1207.
- (Bryssyt), *pp.* bruised, broken, harmed, 2645; Bryssid (Bresyd), bruised, *hence* broken in, much experienced, 1003. See *brusen* in Mätzner.
- (Bryttynd), *pp.* broken to pieces, 3294; destroyed, 2697. See Bretens.
- Bucifalon, Bucephalus, 5582; (Bucifelon), 1316; (Bucyfall), 3178; Bucifelon, 3648; Bucifal, 3031.
- Bud, *pt. s. impers.* it behoved, 3793; Bud, *pt. s. subj.* would behove, 3274. See Bus.
- Buke, *s.* book, 17, 35, 192, 203, 881, 916; (Boke), book, i. e. Romance, 1371, 1570.
- Bule, *s.* bull, 4527; Bules, *pl.* 3903; Se-bules, sea-bulls, 3846.
- Bulle, *s.* writing, record, 4448.
- Bullok, *s.* bullock, 4527.
- Bunden, *pp.* bound, 3602, 5540; firmly settled, 5581.
- Burde, *s.* sport, play, 2500.
- Burde, *s.* board, plank, 1340; (Borde), table, 2969.
- Burde, *pt. s.* behoved, 510, 1966; (Burd), ought, 776*; Burde, *pt. s. subj.* should prove to be, 4396. Icel. *byrja*.
- Burdeux, Bourdeaux, 5668.
- Burgaige, *s.* burgesses, people of the borough, 5221. See *bourgage* in Cotgrave.
- Burgh, *s.* city, 1559, 5243; Burgis, *pl.* boroughs, 4431; Burghes (Burgess), towns, 1978.
- Burly, *adj.* burly, great, 4096, 4742; Borely, 2632. See Borely.
- Burne, *s.* burn, brook, 3062. See Bourne.
- Burneschid, *adj.* burnished, 55.
- Burnet (Burnett), brown stuff, 1569. "*Brunette*, fine black cloth;"
- Cotgrave. Orig. a brown cloth; F. *brun*.
- Burze, *s.* town, borough, city, 218, 3746, 5415; Burz, 147; (Burgh), 928, 1037; (Burght), 1380, 2148; Bu[r]ze (Burgh), 2256, 2673; Burzes (Burghes), 2337; (Burgh-ez), 1446.
- Burze-walles (Burgh-walles), *pl.* town-walls, 2246; Burze-wallis (-walle, *sing.*), 1297.
- Bus, *pr. s. impers.* it behoves, 3354; (Buse), 3358; Buse, 1808. See Bos, Bud. *Short for* Behofis.
- Busche, *s.* bush, 3920.
- Buschels, *pl.* bushels, 4241.
- Busifolen, Bucephalus, 749*. See Bucifalon.
- Buske, *ger.* prepare, 373; *v.* get ready, deck, 1511; (Buske), *v.* go, 2195; Buske þe, *v.* prepare thyself, 2908; Buske hym, *v.* prepare himself, 3126; Buskis (Buskes), *pr. s.* puts, 1506; (Buskes hym), gets ready, 811*; arrays himself, 1295; Buskis (Buskez), goes, 1306; Buskis (Buskes), *pr. pl.* prepare, make ready, 774; (Buskys), *pr. pl. refl.* prepare themselves for, get themselves ready for, 2452; Buske, 2 *pr. pl. subj.* if (ye) come, if (ye) advance, 3752; Busked (Buskett), *pt. s.* prepared, 2676; Buskid, *pp.* made ready, 3609; (Busked), arrayed, 2214. Icel. *búa-sk*, to prepare oneself.
- (Buske), *s.* bush, stick, 1340; Buskis, *pl.* bushes, 2851.
- Buskest, *adj. superl.* readiest (?), 1247. (*But prob. an error for* Busket, *pp.* arrayed; see Buske). Cf. Lowl. Sc. *buskie*, fond of dress.
- But, *prep.* without, 1678, 3378; (Bout), 1340; Butt, 2380.
- Butlers (Botlers), *pl.* butlers, 2934.
- Buwrne (Bowrne), *ger.* to go, lit. get ready, set out, 1511. See Boun.
- Buxsom, *adj.* obedient, consenting, 323; (Buxme), obedient, 2805; (Buxum), 786*.
- Buzes (Bowles), *pr. s.* turns, lit. bows, bends, 1181. See Bowe.

- Buzes (Boweze), *pl.* boughs, 2985.
See Bowis.
- By, *prep.* by, 54, 250, 253; near, beside, 482, 681, 769*; (Be), by reason of, for, 921. See Be.
- (Byd), *v.* offer, 1891.
- (Byde), *ger.* to dwell, 966; Bydis (Bydes), *pr. s.* abides, sits, 2963; Bydis (Abydez), *pr. pl.* wait for, 1116.
- Bydene, *adv.* forthwith, 2699. See Bedene.
- (Bydome), *error for* Beden, *pt. pl.* bade, advised, 2656.
- (Byforne), *prep.* before, 770*.
- (Byggyd), *pt. s.* set up, 2673; *pp.* built, 1161.
- (Byheld), *pt. s.* saw, 780*, 1600.
- Byi, *ger.* to buy, 4359.
- (Byliue), *adv.* soon, 857. See Beliuē.
- Bynde, *v.* bind, 4762, 5516; (Bynd), *ger.* 2852; Bynd, *ger.* 3432.
- Bytand, *pres. pt. as adj.* sharp, biting, 122, 446.
- Caban, *s.* cabin, tent, 4775; Cabayne, 5173; Cabons, *pl.* 4177.
- Cablis (Cablys), *pl.* cables, ropes, 2599.
- Cacany, *Lat.* Cathomi, 5489.
- Cache, *v.* take, assume, 2417; *ger.* to gain, 4872; Cachis (Cachez), *pr. s.* goes, marches, 1049; (Caches), gathers together, 2134; Cache, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* catch; Cache *vp* þine hert, regain thy courage, 470; Caches (Kachez), *imp. pl.* take, 2564.
- (Cafe), *s.* cave, hollow, 730*.
- Caffare, *error for* Chaffare (*as shewn by the alliteration*), *s.* chaffer, traffic, intercourse, 4603.
- Caggis (Cachez), *pr. s.* draws, fastens, 1521. See numerous examples in Mätzner of *caggen*, to bind, fasten.
- Caire (Care), *ger.* to go, 1688, 1832; Caire, *ger.* to go, to cross, 2588; Caire, *v.* return, 3507; Caire (Cayre), *v.* return, travel back, 3418; Caire, 1 *pr. s.* go, 2280; come, 1878; Cairis (Cares), *pr. s.* goes, walks, 859; Cairys, goes, 5173; Caires (Carys), goes, 953; (Carez), 1038; Caires, comes, 3964; returns, 3962; Cairis, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 3008; Caires (Cairen), *pr. pl.* go, 887; Cairis (Caires), go, 900; Caired, *pt. pl.* went, 2402; Caire, *imp. s.* turn, return, 3562; Caire (Carez), go thou, 1501; Caires (Cayrez), let them retreat, 3414; Caires, *imper. pl.* 2 *p.* go ye, 889. Cf. Icel. *keyra*, to prick on, urge, drive. See Kaire, Cares.
- Caitefe (Catef), *adj.* caitiff, vile, 1775.
- Caitefe, *s.* caitiff, wretch, 3078; Caiteffe, 3562. See Caytefe.
- Cait[if]este (Catyfest), *adj.* most caitiff, vilest, 1707.
- Calabree, Calabria, 5671.
- Calceidoynes, *pl.* chalcedonies, 5274.
- Cald, *adj.* cold, 1599, 4928; (Cold), 3169.
- Calde, Chaldea, 5669; Caldec, 90.
- Caldipol (Cadypolez), *a city*, 2151.
- Calistride (Lat. Talifrida), queen of the Amazons, 3711, 3721, 3778.
- Calke, *v.* calculate, 673.
- Call, *v.* call, name, 618; (Calle), call, 1479, 1848; Call, *ger.* 229; (Calle), *ger.* to call upon, 2244; Callis, *pr. s.* calls, 431, 1077; (Calles), 948; Calls, 5224; Cals, 4856; Callis, 2 *pr. s.* 1871; Cald, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* called, 3195; Callid, *pt. s.* 559; Callyd, *pt. pl.* 2138; Callid (Callyd), *pp.* called, 1046, 1903; summoned, 5198; Caled (Callyd), called, 823; Cald, *pp.* called, said to be, 1820; reckoned, 3908.
- Calodone (Calydon), Chalcedon, 1028; (Calidon), 1038.
- Calodoyns (Calodons), *pl.* men of Chalcedon, 1032.
- Calues, *pl.* calves, 3892; *gen.* of calves, 4476.
- Cambs, *pl.* combs, 5130.
- Camels, *pl.* camels, 2769.
- Camlyn, *s.* camlet, the name of a stuff, 4340.
- Camour, *Lat.* Cemarre, 5489.
- Can, *pr. s.* 1 *p.*; Can noȝt þare-on, cannot agree to that, 3507; can bear, endure, 832; know, 260,

- 685; Can, *pr. pl.* can, 248, 250.
See Kan.
- Candace, *prop. name.* 5090, 5105, 5177, 5245, 5263, 5281.
- Candill, candle, 4230.
- Candilstickis (Candelstyke), *pl.* candlesticks, 1571.
- Candoyle, Candaules, 5092; Candole, 5148, 5159; Candele, 5419.
- Canony, *a country*, 5669.
- Can[o]pe, *s.* canopy, 5266.
- Cantelle, *s.* portion, 4514. *Cantle* in Shakespeare.
- Capadose, Cappadocia, 742*; Capados (Capadoce), 2761; Capidos, 90, 5669.
- Cape, *s.* cope, vault, 1537, 1755, 1871; (Cope), 2368.
- Capho Resey (Chaipho rosey), *a place-name*, 1077. See note.
- Captayns, *pl.* captains, 3590.
- Capyll, horse, 754*.
- Caraptus, *prop. name.* 5094.
- Caratros, *prop. name.* 5337, 5343, 5364, &c.
- Carayne, *s.* carrion, 4524. See Carion.
- Carcas, carcace, 4524.
- Care, *s.* anxiety, 149, 166, 349, 1104, 3508, 4013; trouble, 5698; sorrow, 3239.
- Care (Kare), *imp. s.* be anxious, care, 2815.
- Carefull, *adj.* mournful, 3869; (Carfull), sorrowful, 1815.
- Careles, *adj.* free from anxiety, 405.
- Cares hym, *pr. s.* betakes himself, turns, goes, 730*; Carez, goes, 768*. See Caire.
- Carid (Cared), *pp.* cared, 1461.
- Carion, *s.* carcace, 5587; Carions, *gen.* body's, 4357; Cariouns, *pl.* carcasses, 4455. See Caryon, Carayne.
- Carpe, *s.* speech, talk, 3500, 3929, 4566, 5011; relation, 3112; meaning, 1794; story, tale, 3469; Carpe (Carpyng), *s.* speech, saying, message, 2346; speech, 748; story, 1455; decision, 1023.
- Carpe, *v.* talk, say, 592; Carpe, *ger.* 8; Carpis, 2 *pr. s.* speakest, 100; (Carpys, 2911; Carpis (Carpez), *pr. s.* speaks, 860; *miswritten*
- Crapis (Carpes), 833, 2490; *pr. pl.* speak, 1604; Carps, *pr. s.* says, 5367; Carpid, 1 *pt. s.* spoke, told, 3058; 2 *pt. s.* spakest, 234; *pt. s.* spoke, 230; Carped, *pp.* 108. Cf. *lecl. karpu*, to boast.
- Carpentaris (Carpenters), *pl.* carpenters, 1117; Carpentars, 4205.
- Carryg (Carrak), *s.* carrack, carrick, barge, 3376; Carrygis, *pl.* 63. "*Carraque*, the huge ship termed a *carricke*;" Cotgrave.
- Cartes, *pl.* carts, cars, 3058.
- Carte-wise, chariot-wise, 3629.
- Cartros, Caratros, 5353. See Caratros.
- (Carye), *put for* Cayre, *ger.* to go, cross, 2588. See Caire.
- Caryn baim, *pr. pl.* return, 3110. See Caire.
- Caryon, *s.* carcace, body, 4687. See Carion.
- Cas, *s.* case, 282; event, 940; chance, 292, 405, 719; (Case), circumstance, 2350, 2641; way, means, 1362; luck, 2163; (Cause), chance, 1104; Case, circumstance, 671, 848, 1464; misfortune, 401; Cases, *pl.* things, circumstances, 3727.
- Caspy, Caspian Sea, 3705.
- Cast, *s.* throwing, casting, 1302; Castis (Castez), *pl.* plans, 1764. See Kast.
- Cast, *ger.* to cast, 5155; *v. refl.* endeavour, 4671; Castis, *pr. s.* casts, 5587; (Castes), plans, 1361; (Kest), throws, 1537; Castes, casts, 1997; Castis, *pr. pl.* cast, 163. See Kast, Kest.
- Castans (Castanez), *gen.* of a chestnut; Of castans hewes. of the colour of a chestnut. 1086; (Castans), *gen. sing.* of the chestnut, of chestnut colour, 1537. See Kastand.
- Castell, *s.* castle, 1152, 2266, 3602, 5263; Castels, *pl.* 4442; Castells (Castellys), 3114.
- (Castell-arde), castle-yard, 768*.
- Castite, *error for* Chastite, *s.* chastity, 4603.
- (Castor), *prop. name.* 766*.
- Canitise, covetousness, 4562.

- Cauels, *pl.* fragments, 799. Icel. *kufli*, a piece, bit.
- Caves, *pl.* caves, 4020, 4049; Caufs, 4354.
- Caulus, *proper name*, 1229, 4907.
- Cause, cause, 577, 848, 921; cause, plea, side (in the dispute), 3993.
- Caused (Causyd), *pt. s.* made, 3278.
- Causles, *adj. as adv.* without a cause or reason, unreasonably, 3190; Causeles (Causles), 1817.
- Cayrayne (Caryon), *s.* carrion, 3255. See Carayne.
- Caytefe (Catyff), *s.* wretch, 3278; Caytefes (Catyffez), *pl.* wretches, 1754. See Caitefe.
- Cayt, *pt. s.* took, 5212. See Kayt.
- Cecile (Cesyll), Sicily, 2103.
- Cedres, *pl.* cedars, 5237.
- Cellis, *pl.* cells, 4024.
- Cerastis, *prop. name*, 916.
- Certayn, *adv.* certainly, 326; Certayne, 1101; For certayn, 183.
- Certiñ, *v.* certify, 250; Certified (Certifyed), *pt. s.* informed, 2774.
- Certis, *adv.* certainly, 4360.
- Ceyle; see Sele.
- Chace, *s.* chase, 3057, 4736.
- Chache, *v.* catch, seize hold of (one), 1804; Chach, catch, derive, 4227; Chacches (Chakez), *pr. s.* brings together, 1281; Chache (Cache), *imp. s.* receive, 748.
- Chaffe, or Chasse, 468. It seems to mean 'great heat,' or 'a chafing-dish,' from F. *chauffer*, to heat, chafe. Or *chasse* may mean a jewel case of red gold. See Chasse.
- Chaiere, *s.* chair, 5515; Chaiare, 493.
- Chalang, *v.* challenge, claim, 4388; (Chalynge), claim, 1848.
- Chalk-quite (Chalke-white), white as chalk, 1584; Chalke-quyte, 468; *miswritten* Shalk-quyte (Chalke-white), 1562.
- (Chaltird), *pp.* 746*. Sense unknown; the sense required is 'tightly bound,' with reference to the horse's jowl.
- Chambre, chamber, 53, 111, 151, 358; (Chamer), 944; (Chaumbre), 1762; (Chawmbre), 1113, 1181; Chambres (Chaumbres), *pl.* chambers, 2979.
- Chambirlayn (Chamerlayn, *MS.* chamernlayn), chamberlain, 1584.
- Champe, *s.* field, meadow, plain, 4719; space in which the gems were set, 3677.
- Chance, *s.* chance, accident, 144; (Chaunce), chance, 2788; Chance misfortune, 403.
- Chance (Chaunce), *pr. s. subj.* (if) it befall, 1882; Chansid, *pt. s.* happened, 4801.
- Changis, *pr. s.* changes, 120, 382; (Changez), 1851; Changis (Changes), 2 *pr. s.* changest, 831; Changid, *pt. s.* changed, 377, 466; (Chaungett), 1119; Changand, *pres. part.* changing, 3271, 3687.
- Chape, *ger.* to escape, 2788; Chapid, 1 *pt. pl.* escaped, passed, 4215.
- Chaplayne (Chapelayn), chaplain, 1584.
- Chaplets, *pl.* chaplets, garlands, 3687.
- Charbocle, carbuncle, 4900; Charbocles, *pl.* carbuncles, 5647; Charbokles, 3677.
- (Chare), *s.* chariot, 822*.
- Charge, *s.* amount, lit. weight, 403; Chargis, *pl.* loads, 5598; Charges (Charge), commands, 2660.
- Charge, 1 *pr. s.* charge, command, 1918; Charge[s], (Chargez), *pr. s.* charges, enjoins, 1194; Chargid, *pt. pl.* loaded, 5632; Chargid, *pp.* covered, 4719; Charge, *imp. s.* care for, mourn, 866.
- (Chariott), *s.* chariot, 802*; Chariotis, *pl.* chariots, 3021, 3057.
- Charme, *s.* charm, incantation, 343.
- Chasse, *s.* 5647. One sense of F. *chasse* is 'a shrine for a relick' (Cotgrave); Lat. *capsa*. Here 'as a *chasse*' may mean 'as big as a box,' or 'as big (or as red) as a jewel-case.' See Chaffe.
- Chasteand, *pres. pt.* correcting (*but here apparently used in the sense of provoking*), 4607. O.F. *chastier*, to chastise, correct, amend.
- Chater, *v.* chatter, gabble, mutter, 115; (Chaterand), *pres. pt.* talking, 824*.

- Chatrid. *pp.* filled, filled quite full (?), 4900. A doubtful word; cf. *chook-lefull* in *Morte Arthure*, 1552.
- Chauale, 4924. Indistinct in the MS. Perhaps we should read *chanele*, which we might explain as 'hoary,' or 'whitened with age.' Cf. O.F. *chanes*, white hair, *chanuer*, to turn white, said of the hair; from Lat. *canus*, hoary.
- Chaufe, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* warm, chafe, 4287; Chawfis, *pr. s.* chafes, 3519.
- Chawfing (Chawfyng), *s.* heat, 2545.
- Chaumbres, *pl.* chambers, 5601.
- Chaunce, *s.* chance, good fortune, 4388; Opon chaunce, perchance, 5609.
- (Changez), *pr. s.* changes, 1854; Chaungid, *pt. pl.* changed, i.e. turned sad in look, 5609.
- Chaunes (Chauncez), *impers. pr. s.* befalls, happens to, 1036.
- Chauly, *pl.* jaws, 3696, 4984; Chaviles, 3632; (Chaualez), 746*. A.S. *ceaflas*, jaws.
- Chawfis; see Chaufe.
- Chaye, *s.* (perhaps) company, assembly, 3349. Roquefort gives O.F. *chaye*, company, assembly. The sense may thus be: 'an amethyst, which all the company consider rich (so says the romance), and, as for rankness of wines, it lets no drunkenness hurt them, viz. the men who bear it.' As to the virtues of the amethyst, see the note.
- Cheele, *s.* chill, cold, 4164. See Chele.
- Chefe, *adj.* chief, 115, 440, 493; excellent, 343; large, 3677.
- Chefe, *s.* chief, chieftain, 440.
- Chefe, *adv.* chiefly, 363.
- Chefe, *v.* happen, befall, 403; (Chefyd), *pp.* achieved, 2712. See Gloss. to *Troy-Book*.
- Chefely, *adv.* especially, 2660.
- (Chefest), *adj.* chiefest, largest, 1985.
- Cheffire, *adj. comp.* chiefter, superior, 4801.
- Cheke, *s.* check, resistance, defence, 4801; Chekis (Chekez), *pl.* checks, victories, 3098.
- Chekis, *pl.* checks, 3942, 4984; (Chekez), 2782; (Chekys), cheeks, face, 1747.
- Chele, *s.* chill, 2545; Chelis, *pl.* 4287. See Cheele.
- Chelous, *adj.* zealous (?), 5446.
- Chere, *s.* face, countenance, 468, 743, 5302, 5609; appearance, 375; favour, 368; (Chere), look, 1815.
- Chere, *adj.* dear, loving, hence bright (?), 5302. A curious use of the word, as if confused with *cheerful*. *Clere* would make better sense.
- Cheris, *pr. s.* cheers, 5447.
- Cherische, *v.* cherish, 368; Cherishest (for Cherischet), *pt. s.* cherished, comforted, 5446; Cherest, *pt. pl.* cherished, 594; Chereshest, for Chereschet (Cheryst), *pp.* cherished, made much of, 2562.
- Chesboll (Chessebollez, *pl.*), poppy, 1985. "*See papaver. chesbolle*;" Wright's *Vocab.* col. 644, l. 15.
- Chese, *v.* choose, 337; (Chese), 1773; (Chese), *qr.* 1178; Chese, 1 *pr. s.* 1020; Chese, *pt. s.* chose, 493; Chese him, chese for himself, 1194; (Chesez hym), chooses for himself, 1194; Chese, *imp. s.* choose, 363, 807*, 4388; Chese (Chesse), *imp. pl.* 1922.
- Chese, *pt. s.* went, chose (to go), 5247. A badly selected word; merely introduced for the alliteration. See above.
- Chesses, *pl.* seed-pods of a poppy, called *cheeses* from the shape, 1985. See Chesboll.
- Chenalous, *adj.* chivalrous, brave, 3608; Chenalus, 655.
- Cheualry, *s.* chivalry, 3098; (Chevallry), deeds of chivalry, 2712.
- Cheneleere, *s.* hair, 4924. F. *chevelure*.
- Cheuer, *adj.* chiefter, superior, 1882.
- Chenys, *pr. s.* achieves to be, 655; Chones, *pr. pl.* prosper, 2379; Chevyd hym, *pt. s.* there happened to him, 739*; Cheuyd (Chefyd), happily, happened successfully, 2788; Cheued (Chefyd), *pt. s.* refl. achieved, accomplished, 3098; 1 *pt. pl.* arrived, attained, 4215.

- F. *chevir***, to compass, &c.; Cotgrave.
- Chevalry**, cavalry, 816*.
- Cheynes**, *pl.* chains, 1081, 3681, 4877, 5516; (*Chynes*), 1565, 2587.
- Chidis**, *pr. s.* chides, 5319.
- Chiere**, *s.* face, surface, 4719. **O.F.** *chiere* is given by Godefroy as a spelling of **O.F.** *chere*, face. See *Chere*.
- Chiftayne**, *s.* chieftain, captain, 3021; **Chifan**, 440, 655; **Chiftane**, 1194. **Chifan** (**Cheftan**), 1036; **Chiftans**, *pl.* captains, 5446; **Chiftanes**, 807*, 824*.
- Child**, *s.* child, 594, 697, 835; knight, 825 (*in MS. D. where A. has knyȝt*); **With child**, 393; **Child**, *gen.* child's, 824*; **Childir**, *pl.* children, 1017; **Childire**, 256, 3116, 5576; **Childre**, 723*; young men, 815*; **Childire** (**Childer**), *gen. pl.* children's, 1773; (**Chelder**), *pl.* children, 2678.
- Childhede**, *s.* childhood, 4215.
- Chill** (**Chyll**), *s.* chill, i.e. frost, ice, 2541. See *Chelo*.
- Choll**, *s.* cheek, jowl, 746*. **E.** *jowl*; from **A.S.** *ceaf*, jaw, cheek, whence **M.E.** *chaul*, *choll*.
- Choppid**, *pt. pl.* chopped, cut, 3057; *pp.* hewn, cut, 4736.
- Chosely**, *adv.* choicely, 594.
- Chosen** (**Chosyn**), *pp.* chosen, 1562, 1985; **Chosyn**, *pp.* chosen, choice, 802*; **Chosene**, 3786.
- Choslest**, *adj. superl.* choicest, 337.
- Churles**, *pl.* churls, savages, 4736.
- Chykin**, *s.* chicken; **Chykin-brid**, *s.* young bird, 4984.
- Chymmneys**, *pl.* fire-places, 4287.
- Chynez**, *pl.* chains, 746*, 788*. See *Cheynes*.
- (**Cipriss**), cypress, 790.
- Cite**, *s.* city, 407, 1118, 1148; (**Cyte**), 1513; (**Cety**), 1510; (**Site**), 1144; **Citis** (**Citez**), *pl.* 2104, 2115; (**Setez**), 1694.
- Cite-ward**; **To þe cite-ward**, i.e. toward the city, 2487.
- Cithe**, *s.* country, 209. (**The c** is hard, as **k**.) See *Kithe*.
- Citizens** (**Cytez-cyns**), *pl.* citizens, 3403; (**Citesyns**), 2199.
- Claggid**, *pp.* clogged, sticky, 5427. **Lowl. Sc.** *clag*, to clog.
- Clambert**, *name*, 5490.
- Clame**, *ger.* to claim, 4562.
- Clame** (**Clam**), *pt. s.* clomb, 2108.
- Clamp** (**Clampy**), *s.* pinch, i.e. moment, 3263.
- Clappis** (**Clepys**), *pr. s.* clasps, clips, i.e. embraces, 3237; **Clappis**, 384, 5252.
- Clarions**, *pl.* clarions, 2617; **Clarons** (**Clarions**), 775.
- Clathe**, *s.* cloth, 4687; **Clape**, 141; **Clathe** (**Clath**), clothing, garment, 1086; **Clathis**, *pl.* cloths, 236, 4149; garments, 4960; **Clathis** (**Clathez**), clothes, garments, 1498.
- Clatirs**, *pr. s.* mutters, 412; **Clatird**, *pt. s.* muttered, 342; *pt. pl.* rattled, 555.
- Clause**, clause, passage (of the text), 278, 885; story, 1613, 3361; short letter, message, 1794, 1955, 5095.
- Clayme** (**Clame**), *v.* claim, 1848.
- Clede**, *pt. s.* clad, 121; **Cled** (**Clad**), 2735; **Cled**, *pp.* 3693, 4955, 5210.
- Clees**, *pl.* claws, 5432. **A.S.** *clés*.
- Cleke**, *s.* snatch, clutch, 2163.
- Clekis**, *pr. s.* draws, plucks, 282; snatches, 2937; (**Clekez**), seizes, 842. See *Clyght*. **Lowl. Sc.** *cleik*.
- Clene**, *adj.* pure, 3822, 4700; good, 259; clear, 1479; fair, 495; bright, 1378; new, 978.
- Clene**, *adv.* cleanly, 55, 1497; wholly, thoroughly, entirely, altogether, 19, 174, 209, 357, 671, 799, 900, 1023, &c.
- Clenly**, *adv.* neatly, 1837; wholly, 555, 3904.
- Clewest**, *adj. superl.* cleanest, purest, brightest, 5289; purest bred, 3775.
- Cleopas**, **Cleophas**, 4907.
- Cleopatras**, **Cleopatra**, 823, 835.
- Clepis**, *pr. s.* calls, 534; (**Clepys**), 1507, 2184, 3117; **Clepid** (**Clepyd**), *pp.* 2884. **A.S.** *cleopian*.
- (**Clepys**); see *Clappis*.
- Clere**, *adj.* clear, bright, 28, 259, 282, 1378, 3361; pure, 1571, 1892; fine, 1043; fair, 5090; illustrious, 2692.
- Cleres**, *pr. s.* becomes clear, becomes

- bright, 4374; Clerid, *pt. s.* grew clear, 4815.
- Clerest, *adj. superl.* finest, 2372.
- Clerete (Clarite), *s.* brightness, 2052; (Clarett, *error for* Clarete or Clartee), radiance, 3147. O.F. *clarte*.
- Clergi, *s.* learning, skill, 54; Clergy (Clerge), clergy, 1509.
- Clerily, *adv.* clearly, 442.
- Clerire (Clerar), *adj. comp.* clearer, 2541.
- Clerke, learned man, scholar, 39, 121, 231, 370, 398, 514, 1353; poet, 2121; Clerkis, *pl.* 624, (Clerkez), 1549.
- Clethe, *v.* clothe, 4706; Cleth, *ger.* 820*; Clethe (Cloth), *ger.* 1775; Clethis, *pr. s.* clothes, 140; Clethe, 2 *pr. pl.* put on clothes, 4670; Clethe (Cleth), *imp. s.* clothe, 2868; Clethid, *pp.* clothed, 4082, 5003; (Clethyd), 1624.
- Cletomacus (Clytomacus), Clytomachus, 2252, 2273.
- Cleuys, *pr. s.* cleaves, sunders, 4002.
- Cleuys (Clefy's), *pr. s.* cleaves, sticks, 3377.
- Clientis, *pl.* clients, subjects, 3411; attendants, 1549; (Clyentez), servants, 2940.
- Cliffe, *s.* rock, cliff, 4825; (Clyff), 775, 3008; Clife (Clyff), 3377; Cliffis, *pl.* (Clyffe, *s.*), 2849.
- Clippis (Clepy's), *s.* eclipse, 2052. "The *clippys* of the son and moyn, *celuppsis*;" Cath. Anglicum.
- Clochere, *s.* room, apartment, 5289. Cf. E. *closet*. See Closere.
- Clodes), *pl.* clouds, 3081.
- Close, *ger.* to enclose, 2206; Closis, *pr. s.* encloses, 5483, 5502; Closed, *pt. s.* enclosed (himself), 3034; Closid, *pp.* enclosed, 3831; (Closyd), wrapped up, 2912; (Closed), enclosed, 1378.
- Close, *s.* enclosure, fort, 5266.
- Closere, *s.* enclosure, chamber, 5250. See Clochere.
- Closettis, *pl.* closets, secret chambers, 153.
- Closure, *s.* enclosure, 4890.
- (Clothez), *pl.* cloths, 1515. See Clathe.
- Cloud, 5241. The sense is incom-
- plete: probably parts of one or two lines are omitted.
- Cloude, *s.* stone, rock; or *adj.* rocky, 4863. A.S. *clúd*, stone, rock; *clúdig*, rocky. (Or it may be short for *clouded*, covered with clouds.)
- Cloudis, *pl.* clouds, 555; (Clowdez), 2108.
- Clouen, *pp.* cloven, 4830, 5432.
- Cloves, *pl.* cloughs, ravines, but used in the sense of cliffs, 4863. So in Morte Arthure, 941.
- Cluster (Clostre), *s.* cluster, heap, 1438.
- Clustird, *pp.* clustered, 978; Clustert, 5249; Clustrid, 3668, 5383; thickly set, 2396.
- Clyentis, *pl.* vassals, retainers, 3195. See Clientis.
- (Clyftez), *pl.* cloven bits, splinters, 799.
- (Clyght), *pt. s.* snatched, 2937. Pt. t. of *cleke*; see Clekis.
- Clym, *ger.* to climb, ascend, 3353, 4399; Clyme, *v.* 1440.
- Clyne (Incline), *v.* incline, bend, 1901.
- Clynt, *s.* rock, crag, cliff, 4830. Icel. *kleitr*, a crag; Swed. *kliant*, top of a mountain; Dan. *kliint*, a cliff.
- Clynterand, *pres. part.* forming crags, craggy, 4863. See above.
- Cocards, *pl.* foolish people, 4472. *Coquard*, "a proud gull, peart goose, quaint fop, saucy dolt;" Cotgrave.
- Cocatrices, *pl.* cockatrices, 3961; Cocatricesse, 4199; Cocatryse, *gen. sing.* cockatrice's, 3895.
- Cocken, *pr. pl.* strive, contend, fight like cocks, 2042; Cock, 1 *pr. pl.* dispute, 3311; Cockid, *pp.* contended, fought, 4013. A word borrowed from the sport of cock-fighting. See Cokke.
- Coddis, *pl.* pillows, 4916. "A *cod, cruical, pulvinar*;" Cath. Anglicum.
- Cofyre, coffer, chest, 807*; Cofirs, *pl.* 4035; (Coffers), 3280.
- Cogill-stane, *s.* cobble-stone, round stone, 3895. O.Du. *keopl*, a globe, sphere, ball; et; Hexham.

- Cointe, *adj.* quaint, curious, 4275.
O.F. *cointe*.
- Cokke (Cok), 1 *pr. s.* contend, fight, 3169. See Cocken.
- Cole, *adj.* cool, 2541, 3800.
- Cole, *s.* cold water, 5506; cold sea, 5534. Merely the above *adj.* used as a *sb.* See two more examples in Mätzner. We still say, 'the cool of the evening.'
- Cole, *s.* coal, 606; Colis (Colez), *pl.* coals, 2247.
- (Colettes), *pl.* acolytes, 1549. "Colytte, *accolitus*;" Prompt. Parv. See Way's note.
- Colkins, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* do-t gasp (?), dost gulp (?), 5323. Cf. l. 5320. Cf. O.Du. *kolcken*, 'to swallow or to gulfe in,' Hexham: Dan. *kulke*, to gulp.
- Colt (Colt), *s.* colt, 2881. See Coltis.
- Color (Colour), colour, 3370; (Colour), 1086.
- Coltis, *pl.* colts, 3775. See Collt.
- Coltris, *pl.* 3794. Prob. an error for *coktris* = *cokatris*, i.e. cockatrices. See Cocatrices.
- Colwers, *pl.* adders, snakes, 3794. F. *couleuvre*, O.F. *coluevre*, an adder; Lat. *colubra*.
- Comande, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* commend, 3313, 5620; Comaunde, 5106; Comand (Comaund), 2778. See Comendid.
- Comandis, *pr. s.* commands, 1117; (Comandes), 1381; (Cominandes), 2283; Comandes, 3448; Comands (Cominandez), 1810; (Comand, *pt. s.*), 1475; Comaundis (Commandez), 2213; Comand, *pt. s.* commanded, 821*; (Command), 1177; Comande, 1064; Comandid, *pp.* commanded, 73; Comands (Comand), *imp. pl.* 1832.
- Comandment (Commaundement), commandment, 1192.
- (Comber), *pr. s. subj.* vex, 1480; Combrid, *pt. s. subj.* would embarrass, 1755. E. *cumber*.
- Come, *s.* coming, arrival, 51, 456, 1458, 1576, 3188, 3212, 3904, 3952; (Commyng), 1040.
- Come, *ger.* to come, 1256, 1362, Com (MS. Con), to come, happen, 292; (Come), *v.* 982; Comes, *pr. s.* comes 78, 940; Coms, 4741; Comes (Comez), 1504; (Commes, 2273; Comys, *pr. s.* comes, suits, 3316; Commes, comes, 768*; Comes, it is becoming, 3974; Comys, *pr. pl.* come, 946; (Comes), 815; Comyn (Come), 983; Come, *pt. s.* came, 144, 503, 696, 882, 5418; it became, befitted, 627; Come, *pt. pl.* came, 815, 885, 905; Come, *pr. s. subj.* may come, 1104; Comen, *pp.* come, 1313; (Comyn), 2002; Come, 578; Comyn, 85, 3564; Comen (Common), 1613; Comen, *pp.* come, descended (from), 2650; Comen down of, descended from, 3156; Comand, *pres. pt.* coming, 63, 176.
- Comendid, *pt. s.* commended, 659; Comend, *pt. pl.* praised, 4015. See Comande.
- Comending (Commendying), *s.* commendation, 2346.
- Comensure (Commensour), 2392. Prob. an error for *commentour*, i.e. commentator. Godefroy gives *commenteur*, a commentator.
- Comers, *pl.* comers, men who come, 3418.
- Comforth, *s.* comfort, pleasure, 8; Comfurth (Comforth), 859.
- Comforthis, *pr. s.* comforts, 4155; Comfurthis (Comforthez), 3008; Comfurthid, *pt. s.* comforted, strengthened, 3876; Comfurth (Comforth), *imp. s.* comfort, 3239.
- Comliest, *adj. superl.* comeliest, 3887.
- Comly, *adj.* comely, 354, 470, 1086, 1621, 1822; (Comle), 1281.
- Comly, *adv.* in a comely manner, 456; fittingly, 878.
- Comon, *adj.* common, 3895, 5393.
- Comonly, *adv.* publicly, 108.
- Comparisson (Comparison), *s.* comparison, 1721.
- Compas, *s.* compass, circumference, 278.
- Compas, *v.* contrive, 415; Compas, *pr. s.* compasses, contrives, 1361; Compast, *pp.* fashioned, contrived, 3629; constructed, 3219.
- Compere, *s.* peer, equal, 3396.
- Comyn, *adj.* common, p. 281, l. 89.
- Comyng (Commyng), *s.* coming, 953.

- Con (Can), 1 *pr. s.* can, 2837; *as auxiliary verb*, did, 115, 673, 2376; Con please, pleased, 3697.
- Conand, *s.* agreement, 5543. "A conande, *condicio, pactum*;" Cath. Angl.
- Concepcion, *s.* conception, 388.
- Concience (Conscience), *s.* conscience, 2422, 2577.
- Condicion, condition, stipulation, 2652.
- Coniurisons, *pl.* incantations, 58, 342. O.F. *conjuroison* (Godefroy).
- Connynge, *s.* knowledge, 4227; (Connyng), 1021.
- Connyng, *adj.* skilful, 2369.
- Conquire, *v.* conquer, 3096; Conquired, *pt. pl.* 209; Conquirid, *pp.* 10, 174.
- Conquires, conqueress, female conqueror, 5105, 5169; Conquyres, 3454; Conquirese, 3711, 3721; Conquiris, 3778.
- Conquirour, *s.* conqueror, 1501; Conquerour, 815; Conquiroure, 1480.
- Consaille (Counsell), *s.* counsel, 832; thought, purpose, 254; Consail, council, 1955; Consaille, counsel, 5359.
- Consaille, *ger.* to take counsel, 618; Consais (Counsellies), *pr. pl.* advise, 1509; Consall, 1 *pr. pl.* (we) counsel, 3768.
- Consayue (Consauue), *v.* conceive, 835; Consauue, *pr. s. subj.* conceive, 3744; Consayued (Consaued), *pt. s.* conceived, contained, 1837; Consayued, *pp.* conceived, 349, 578; Consauyd, 429; Consayued (Consued), conceived, understood, 2437.
- Constreynes (Constraynes), *pr. s.* constraints, 2496; Constreine, *pr. pl.* compel, 4562.
- Constru (Constrew), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* infer, 1901; Construed, *pp.* construed, made out, 2437.
- Consumed, *pp.* consumed, 891.
- Contenance, countenance, 484; demeanour, 2496.
- Contrarie, *s.* contrary, 5011; Contrari (Contrary), 2422; Contrare (Contray), 3263.
- Contraries (Contrarys) *pr. s.* is con-
 trary to, contravenes, 2205; Contraris, 4323.
- Contre, *s.* country, 39; (Cuntree), 1122; Contrees, *pl.* 108; Contres (Cuntres), 1056.
- Conyschance, *s.* cognisance, 3370; (Conyschaunce), badge, 1128; Conyschaunce (Conysaunce), appearance, 2868; Conyschantis, *pl.* tokens, cognisances, badges, emblems of rank, 193.
- Cop, *s.* top, 4890; Coppe, 4789.
- Coppis, *pl.* spiders, 3300. Hence E. *cob-arch.* i. e. *cop-arch.*
- Corage, *s.* heart, 2243; courage, 2369; Coragez, *pl.* hearts, courageous thoughts, p. 280, l. 35.
- Corageous (Coragious), *adj.* courageous, 1892.
- Corde (Acord), *v.* consent, agree, 2350; Cordis (Cordes), *pr. s.* accords, agrees, 878; Cordid (Cordyt), *pt. s.* agreed, 2652.
- Cordis (Cordez), *pl.* cords, 1521, 2224.
- Corecheffe, *s.* kerchief, 5249.
- Corne, *s.* corn, 3371; Cornes, *pl.* grains, seeds, 1998, 2070; (Corney), 2025.
- Coronacle, *s.* coronal, circlet, coronet, head-dress, 3451; Coronacles, *pl.* 5130.
- Coronals, *pl.* capitals (of pillars), 3665.
- Corone, crown, 193; Coron, 1128; (Crowne), crown, chief, 2800; Coroune (Croune), 2283; Corouns, *pl.* crowns, 5423.
- Coroned, *pt. pl.* crowned, p. 280, l. 31; Coround, *pp.* 5105.
- Coronest, *adj. superl.* most worthy of a crown, chiefest, worthiest, 624; Corounnest (Coroundest), 1910.
- Corporall, *adj.* bodily, 4560.
- Corrupcion, *s.* corruption, 3255.
- Cors, *s.* body, 349, 730*, 1775, 2542, 2933; Corps (Cors), corpse, 3148; Cors, *s.* body, (living) frame, 3387; Corses, *pl.* corpses, bodies, 3129, 3923, 4454.
- Coruen, *pp.* carved, 129, 3665; (said of millions), 4896; Cornyn, 426.
- Cornes (Crownen), *pl.* crowns, 1043. See Corone.

- Corruptible, *adj.* corruptible, 3459; (*Corruptiblez*, mortal, 1878.
- Corwaile, Cornwall, 5671.
- Corynthi (Corinthy), Corinth, 2266.
- Coste, *s.* coast, region, country, province, 1610, 3418, 3590; (*Cost*), 1028; Cost (Coste), region, 1843; side, 2641; Costis, *pl.* coasts, regions, 4407, 5564; (*Costez*), 1204; Costes (Costez), sides, 1522.
- Costious, *adj.* costly, precious, 3142, 3451, 4180; *put for* Costiousast, most costly, 3330.
- Costis, *pl.* ornaments, costly things, 4180.
- Costreynes, *pr. s.* constrains, forces, 5053. See Constreynes.
- (Cosyn, *for* Chosyn), chosen, 816*.
- Cote, cottage, 1804.
- Coth (Cothe), disease, 2815. A.S. *cōðu*.
- Cotis, *pl.* coats, 5471.
- Couaitise, *s.* covetousness, 4399.
- Couatus, *adj.* covetous, 4509.
- Couatyng (Covetyng), *s.* coveting, desire, 1016.
- Coue, *s.* hollow, cove, 5427.
- Couent, meeting, assembly, 1576. "A couent, *conuentus*;" Cath. Angl.
- Couer, *v.* recover, regain, 520, 5608; *ger.* 2163; Couers, *pr. s. refl.* covers himself, arms himself, 3034; Couert (*for* Couerit), *pt. pl.* gained their way, attained, 4815; Couerd, *pp.* won, lit. recovered, 3714; Couerid (Coueryd), *pp.* won, 1038; Couerd, covered, 5427. See Couir.
- Couertours, *pl.* coverings, tent-covers, 4177. "*Couverture*, a covering, apparel, a coverlet;" Cotgrave.
- Couet (Couett), *v.* covet, 1754; Couet (Couett), 1 *pr. s.* 690; Couettis, *pr. s.* covets, 3353; (Couates), 2207; Couettis, *pr. pl.* desire, 8; Couett, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* covet, 4442; Couet (Couett), *pt. s.* desired, 2542.
- Couir (Couer), *ger.* to recover, gain, get, 1755; Couire, 794; Couir, *v.* attain, 1362; Couirs (Couers), *pr. s.* covers, 1902; (Couerys, 3237; Couird (Couered), *pp.* recovered, 2815. See Couer.
- Count, *s.* computation; At a count (*or* At a-count), by computation, 3614.
- Countid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* accounted, esteemed, 2501; *pp.* computed, 3338.
- Coupe (Cupe, Cope), *s.* cup, 2937, 2940; Coupis, *pl.* 3142, 3702.
- Couple (Cowpyll), *ger.* to couple, 828; Couplid, *pp.* 5337.
- Couresere, *s.* courser, 5443; Courseris (Coursours), *pl.* 2163.
- Courte, *s.* court, 78, 4275; Courete, 213.
- Couthe, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* knew, 354; (Couth), 685; Couthe, *pt. s.* was able, could, 337; Couth, knew, 43; Couthe (Kowth), *pt. s.* knew, 2555; (Couth), knew how, 835*; Couthe, *pt. pl.* knew, 25; Couth, *pt. pl.* knew, 160; (Couth), could, 1439.
- Cowdrife, *adj.* sluggish (*Lat. tarda*), 4097. Lowl. Sc. *caldrife*, *cauld-rife*, cold, slow.
- Coynt, *adj.* curiously arrayed, gaily dressed, 4671; Coynte, strange, 412; Coynnt, curious, 5423. See Cointe.
- Coyntise, *s.* trick, wile, 5233. Godefroy gives 'ruse' as one sense of O.F. *cointise*.
- Cozres (*sic*), *pl.* 3822. Evidently a corrupt reading; probably for *coferes*, i. e. coffers, boxes, which gives good sense.
- Crabbe-fische, crabfishes, 3892.
- Crabbis, *pl.* crabs, 5506.
- Crabbis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* vexest, 5323; Crabbid, *pt. s.* made crabbed, angered, vexed, 4566; Crabbid, *pp.* as *adj.* angry, venomous, 3794.
- Craft, *s.* craft, art, 33, 650; skill, 3380; work, dealing, 4953; Craftis, *pl.* crafts, skilful arts, 125, 414; feats, 9; employments, 4037.
- Crafti, *adj.* skilful, 3665.
- Craggis, *pl.* crags, 4025; Cragis (Craggez), 3375.
- Crasid, *pp.* broken, rough, 4830. (MS. *trasid*, wrongly.) See *cra-sen* in Mätzner.

- Craton (Crathan), *s.* a poor creature(?), 3078. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *crat*, puny, feeble; also, as a sb., a weakling. Godefroy gives O.F. *craton*, of which the sense is unknown.
- Craue, *ger.* to crave, 4326; (Crauen), to ask, 887; Craue, 2 *pr. pl.* 4442; Craues, *pr. s.* craves, desires, 4497. The last line means—'and every limb craves, as (it) pleases it, according to its own desire.'
- Create, *pp.* created, 3390.
- Creatour, creature, mortal, 3093; (Creature), creature, 1475, 3281; (Creatur), 1707; Creatours, *pl.* 5534.
- Creatoure, creator, 259.
- (Credylt), *pp.* cradled, 1707.
- Crepis, *pr. pl.* creep, 4025.
- Crest, *s.* crest (of the hill), 4790; crest, 1837; Crestis, *pl.* 3869, 5126.
- Crestyns, *pl.* panniers, vessels for carrying food, &c., 4687. O.F. *crestin*, the same as *cretin*, a sort of pannier; Godefroy.
- Creusses, *pl.* crayfishes, 3864. "*Escrerisse*, a crevice, or crayfish;" Cotgrave.
- Creuensis, *pl.* crevices, 4199; Creuesse, 4025. "A creuesse, *fissura, rima*;" Cath. Angl.
- Crie (Cry), cry, proclamation, 981, 1815, 2154; (Crye), 1604.
- Crie (Crye), *v.* cry, proclaim, 2294; *ger.* 1475; Crie (Cry), *ger.* 2252; Cries, *pr. pl.* cry, 2138; Cried, *pt. s.* 491; *pt. pl.* called out, 959.
- Cried, *pt. s.* created, 4446, 4519; *pp.* 1707, 3390 (*where D. has Create*). O.F. *crier*, to create (Roquefort); Span. *criar*.
- Crisopaces, *pl.* chrysoprases, 5274.
- Crispe, *adj.* curly, i. e. woolly, 4476.
- Cristall, *s.* crystal, 2541, 3221, 5280.
- Cristen, *s.* Christian, 3333.
- Croft, *s.* croft, small field, 3971.
- Croke, *pr. pl.* cross, go sideways, turn aside, 4872.
- Crokid, *adj.* crooked, 5423.
- Crom, *ger.* to cram, push, 4455; (Cromys), *pr. s.* crams, thrusts, 2937.
- Chronaclis (Cronacles), *pl.* chronicles, 940.
- Crosse; Ouire crosse, cross ways, diagonally, 4872.
- Crossis (Crosez), *pr. s.* crosses, 1049; Crosse (Crossyn), *pr. pl.* cross, go across, 2459.
- Croune, *s.* crown, 978; (Crown), 817; (Corone), 1016; Croune, crown of the head, 121, 231, 639.
- Crowned (Crownyd), *pp.* crowned, 2280.
- Cruell, *adj.* cruel, 2650.
- Cubete, *s.* cubit; Cubete lenth, cubit's length, 3908; Cubettis, *pl.* 3987, 5635; Cubet, *pl.* 3338; Cubetis (Cubettes), 2118.
- Cumbre, *ger.* to oppress, lit. to cumber, 4032; (Combred, *for* Combre), *v.* trouble, vex, 1471.
- Cu[m]furth, 1 *pt. s.* comforted, 3508.
- Cumly, *adj.* comely, 4917. See Comly.
- Cunnyng, *s.* knowledge, 4244. See Connyng.
- (Cuntre), country, 742*; (Cuntree), 827*. See Contre.
- Cupido, Cupid, 4508, 4542.
- Cure, *s.* care, anxiety, 3386 (*kyng is in the dat. case*); Cures, *pl.* cares, 4275.
- Curre, *s.* cur, dog, 1804; Cure, 748.
- Curses, *s. pl.* courses, 28.
- Cursid, *pp.* cursed, 4509.
- Course (Coursour), courser, horse, 2881; Coursours, *pl.* 3629; Coursours (Coursours), 2621; Coursers, 3024.
- (Curtasly), *adv.* courteously, 835*.
- Curtassy, courtesy, 5112; (Curtasy), 2718, 2743; Curtaissy, 9.
- Curtast (Curtasest), *adj. superl.* most courteous, 2388. Read *curtastest*, as in D.
- Curte, *s.* court, 149; (Courte), 887, 900, 981.
- Curten, curtain, 860; Curtyns, *pl.* 4916; (Cortyns), 860; Curteyn (Curtayne), 1521.
- Cussis, *pl.* kisses, 5385.
- Custom (Costome), *s.* custom, 2946.
- Cusus (*for* Curns), Cyrus, 3326; Cusus (Susys), *error for* Curyus, i. e. Cyrus 3219.

- Cuthe (Couht), *pt. s.* knew how, could, 1364; Cuthe, 1 *pt. pl.* could, 4216; Cuthe (Couth), *pt. pl.* 1412, 1701.
- Cutt (Cutte), *ger.* to cut, 2850; Cutis (Cuttes), *pr. s.* 2599; Cuttis, 3859.
- Cyte, *s.* city, 335; (Cyte), 1362, 2110, 2189; Cytes, *pl.* 72.
- Daies, *pl.* days, 3462, 5529; Dais, 4814; (Dayes), 1172; (Days), 1024; Daies, *gen. pl.* 4810; On dais, for some days, 1363.
- Dale, *s.* dale, valley, 782; Dales, *pl.* 1337.
- Daliance, dalliance, pleasure, 1877.
- Dam (Dame), *gen.* dam's, 1769. See Dame.
- Dam, *s.* dam of a reservoir, the reservoir itself, 3928.
- Damac; see Damaske.
- Damage, *pr. s.* hurts, 4274.
- Damaging (Damagyng), *s.* injury, 1188.
- Damaske, Damascus, *or* damask, 4673; Damac (Damask), Damascus, 1141.
- Dame, *s.* dame, lady, 322, 459, 3778, 5263; wife, 2678. See Dam.
- Damme-borde (Dame-borde), *s.* dam-board, sluice-gate, 1857.
- Dampnes, *pr. s.* condemns, 2661; (Dampned), *pp.* condemned, 757*.
- Damysens, *pl.* damsons, 4738.
- Dangell, *or* Daugell, 126. Sense unknown; the reading is probably corrupt.
- Dangird (Dangert), *pp.* legally bound, bound under penalty, 1176.
- Daniell, Daniel, 1655.
- Darid, *pp.* dazed (MS. D. has dasyd), 3044. See *darien* in Mätzner.
- Darius, 882, 895, 902, 1176, 1188, 1777, &c.; Dari, 2009; (Dary), 1958; Dary, 2005, 2066, 2140, 2144; Darie (Dary), 2607; Darye (Dary), 2663; Darys, 2035, 2058; Daris (Daryus), 2772.
- Darke, *v.* lie hid, 4045. See William of Palerne, 17, 1834, 2851, for the phrase 'to darke in a den.'
- Dart (Dartez), *pl.* darts, 1299, 1396.
- Dart-wondid, dart-wounded, wounded with a dart, 225.
- Dasches, *pr. s.* dashes, 3882.
- Dased, *pp.* dazed, 3997; (Dasyd), 3044.
- Dauncid, *pt. pl.* danced, pranced, 2618.
- (Dawes), *pl.* days; (On dawes), in your days, 1766. See Day.
- Dawid, *pt. s.* dawned, 3944, 4773. A.S. *dagian*.
- Dawyng, *s.* dawning, 431. See above.
- Day, *s.* day, 47, 158, 288; life, time, 518, 763*; Daye (Day), 1802; Day, death-day, 1100; Days (Dayes), *gen. sing.* of the day; A litill days, a little of the day, soon, 858; Dayis, *pl.* days, 3955; Days, days (of life), 1112.
- Dayute, *s.* novelty, wonderful thing, 5298; dignity, 229. See Deynes.
- Dayntefull, *adj.* dainty, delicate, 4274.
- Day-raw, *s.* dawn, 392; Day-rawe, 5055. So in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
- Debate, *s.* strife, 4404.
- Debate, *v.* debate, 5416; Debatis (Debates), *pr. s.* fights, 1217.
- (Debates), *error* for Abates, 2506.
- Debonar, *adj.* courteous, p. 279, l. 12.
- Debonerte, *s.* humility, 3274.
- Declare, *v.* declare, 254, 442; Declaris, *pr. s.* declares, 514; (Declaris), 1793.
- Declines, *pr. s.* hangs down, 5322; (Declynes), bows, 2289; Declynes (Declines), sinks, 2714; Declyne, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* set aside, 4263; Declined, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* crushed, brought down, 2334.
- Decre, *s.* decree, decretal, 1583.
- Ded (Deth), *s.* death, 1112. See Dede.
- Dede, *s.* deed, 313; action, 3545; Dedis (Dedes), *pl.* deeds, 1095, 1863, 2058. See Deyd.
- Dede, *adj.* dead, 540, 718, 935, 1166, 1233, 2100, 3130, 3934. See Dee, Deyde.
- Dede, *s.* death, 532, 1789, 2661, 3886, 4798; (Deth), 3205. See Ded, Deth.

- Dedely, *adj.* mortal, 1877; Dede-like, 4057. See Dedly.
- Dedeyne (Disdayne), *s.* disdain, 3155; anger, 2942; (Dysdane), disdain, 2424; (Dysdene), 1711.
- Dedly, *adj.* mortal, 2733; (Dedlich), 1879. See Dedely.
- Dedly, *adv.* mortally, 1396.
- Dee, *ger.* to die, 4055; (Dey), *v.* 720; Dee, 1 *pr. s.* 400; Deed, *pt. pl.* 3069. See Deis.
- Deele, *s.* deal, part, 5568.
- Deere, *s.* harm, injury, 4235. See Dere.
- Defaute, *s.* default, lack of food, want, 2153, 4596.
- Defe, *adj.* deaf, 4747.
- Defence (*pl.* Defenceez), *s.* defence, 1151.
- Defend (Defende), *ger.* to oppose, 2139; Defend, *v.* defend, 349; Defendis, *pr. s.* forbids (to keep), 4455; (Defenden), *pr. pl.* defend, 1298; Defend (Defenden, *pr. pl.*), *vt. pl.* (with of), kept off, 1406; (Defendyng), *pres. pt.* defending, 1031.
- Defendoure, *s.* defender, 429.
- Defirred, *pp.* made to differ, 4223.
- Degradyd (Degrad), *ger.* to overcome (Lat. *superare*), 2670; De-grayd (Degradyd), *pp.* degraded, put down, overcome, 3125.
- Degree, *s.* degree, rank, 485; (Degree), rank, 3407. See below.
- Degree, *s.* step, 3344; Degrece (*for* Degrees), *pl.* steps, stairs, 1183, 3339, 5251; (Degrees), 3216; To degrece, to the steps, 3446; Degrees (*a double plural*), steps, 4878, 4887, 5636.
- Deis (Dyes), *pr. s.* dies, 1459; Deid, *pt. s.* 3448, 3471; Deid, *pp.* dead, 3476. See Dee. Dede, *adj.*
- Delauyly (Delavy), *adv.* abundantly, 1351. Cf. E. *lavish*. Godefroy gives: "*deslavement à la manière d'un grand lavage.*"
- Dele, *s.* part, portion, 432, 1368, 3475, 4391; (MS. *adele*), 521; A fewe dele, a small portion, 3703; Grete dele, great deal, 544; Ik dele, each bit of it, 3193; Neure a dele (Neuer a dele), never a bit, 2913; Neuer a dele, not at all, 1355. See Deele.
- Dele, *ger.* to deal, to give, to impart, 736, 3475, 4058; (Dele), 1015; Dele, *v.* deal, 5032; Dele, 2 *pr. pl.* distribute, 4544; Dele, *pr. pl.* mark out, divide, apportion, 3992; Delt (Delytn), 1 *pt. pl.* dealt, 2091.
- Delingis, *pl.* dealings, 451.
- Delite, *s.* delight, 265; Delitis, *pl.* pleasures, nuptial joys, 3743.
- Deliteable, *adj.* pleasant, 4303.
- Deliuere, *for* Deliuered, *pp.* delivered, 3564.
- Delume, *miswritten for* Deluue, *s.* deluge, 4942. See the note.
- Delyte, *pr. pl.* please, 4381.
- Delyuire, *ger.* to deliver, 5218; Delyuire (Delyver), *v.* deliver, give; hence Let delyuire him, let be delivered to him, 997; Delyuird, *pt. s.* speedily destroyed, 3930; Delyuird, *pp.* delivered, 548.
- Demaunde (Demande), *s.* demand, request, 1096; Demayndes (Demauudes), *pl.* demands, 3411.
- Deme, *v.* judge, esteem, 2122; decree, 1260; *ger.* to be considered, 5298; Deme, 1 *pr. s.* deem, consider, 1849; Demes, *pr. s.* represses (Lat. *reprimis*), 3349; (Demys), condemns, 2661; Me demys, judges for me, 4576; Deme, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* account, 4546; (Demys), *pr. pl.* assure, 3069; Demys, *pr. pl.* tell (us), 1231; Deme, *pr. pl. subj.* 2 *p.* decide, 400; Demed, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* decreed, ordered, 2663; *pt. s.* judged, 593; Demed, *pp.* decreed, doomed, 836; (Demyd), doomed, 2164; condemned, 757*; appointed, 98, 313; (Deme), *imp. s.* judge, 735*.
- Demerlayke, *s.* magic, jugglery, 414. See *duemerluk* in Matzner.
- Demyd, *pt. s.* dimmed, 561.
- Den, *s.* a den, 1769; Dennes, *pl.* dens, 4045, 4354.
- Denys, Dionysius, *but put for* Dionysus, i. e. Bacchus, 3556.
- Departid, *pp.* parted, divided, 1941.
- Depaynt, *pp.* painted, coloured, 3092; Depayntid, painted, 5305.

- Depe, *adj.* deep, 225, 265, 336, 700, 1866.
- Depe, *s.* deep, sea, 64; (Depe), 1308.
- Depely, *adv.* deeply, passionately, 919; greatly, 1673; heavily, 1698; (Depl), deeply, 1186, 1363, 1396.
- Depest (Dyppest), *adj. superl.* deepest, 712.
- Depresse, *v.* cast down; Do me de-
presse, cause me to be slain, 5030.
- (Deprines), *pr. s.* deprives, 2311;
Deprined (Depriffyd), *pp.* de-
prived, 2845; Depryued (De-
prined), 895; (Deprevett), 1469.
- Depurid (Depuryd), *pp.* thoroughly
cleansed, 2768.
- Dere, *adj.* dear, 1024, 1545; beloved,
479; precious, costly, 1655, 4438;
pleasing, 1638; *as sb.* dear one,
265; For dere halde, hold dear,
4421.
- Dere, *adv.* dearly, 2122, 5143.
- Dere, *adj. comp.* dearer, liefer, 540.
- Dere, *s.* harm, 4322, 5554. See
Deere.
- Dere, *v.* harm, 3351; Deris (Deres),
pr. s. injures, 2041. A.S. *derian*.
- Derely (Derly), *adv.* dearly, ear-
nestly, 2352; (Derely), heartily,
2699.
- Dere-worth, *adj.* precious, dear,
3194; (Darworth), worthy, noble,
2679.
- Derfe, *adj.* bold, 1958, 2667, 3850;
(Derf), 3157; Derfe, presumptu-
ous, 1811; strong, 2140; noble,
2772; steep, huge, 1211; rugged,
3868; severe, 2091, 2424; Derf,
mighty, 2489; (Derf), strong, bold,
2607; (Derfe), firm, bold, 1024.
A.S. *deorf*.
- Derfely (Darfly), *adv.* boldly, angrily,
2942; Derfly, boldly, 3006; (Derfly),
2489; Derfley, strongly, 1406.
- Derke, *s.* dark, night, darkness, 4773;
(Dirk), 687; (Dyrke), 1505.
- Derknes (MS. Dreknes), darkness,
561.
- Derling, *s.* favourite, 3442.
- Derne, *adj.* secret, 4045. A.S. *derne*.
- Derrest, *adj. superl.* dearest, 1909,
2823; most worthy, 4644; most
valuable, 5180.
- Dese, *s.* daïs, throne, high seat, 47,
479, 902, 1720, 1841, 2009, 2066,
3085, 4214; (Deyse), 2924.
- Desert, *s.* desert, 406.
- Desiris, *pr. s.* desires, 922; (Desired),
pt. s. desired, 922; Desyrid, *pp.*
5146.
- (Despersset), *pp.* dispersed, 1941.
- Despetously (Dyspytussly), *adv.*
shamefully, 746.
- Destaned, *pt. s. impers.*; þam des-
taned, it was destined for them,
4115; Destaned, *pp.* destined, 313,
518; (Destinate), 692, 763*, 836;
Destand (Destinate), 809; Des-
tained (Destanet), fated, 1100.
- Destany, destiny, 706.
- (Destinate); see Destaned.
- Det (Dett), *s.* a debt, 1849; Dett
(Dette), due, 895; Dettis (Dett),
pl. dues, 887.
- Dete (Deteys, *pl.*), *s.* writing, letter,
tale (lit. ditty), 2726.
- Deth, *s.* death, 512, 744, 836, 966;
(Dede), 2196; (Deyde), 922;
Dethe (Deth), 957; (Dede), 720,
1263. See Dede, Ded.
- Detiraty, *Lat.* Tyrum, 5596.
- Deu[i]dis, 2 *pr. s.* dividest, 4515.
- Devoll, *s.* devil, 4487; Deuuls, *pl.*
devils, 4515, 5578.
- Deuire (Deuer), *s.* duty, 867; (Di-
uour), 2383. F. *devoir*.
- De-vise, *ger.* to tell, 4919; (Deuised),
pp. explained, 1905.
- Devoide, *ger.* to destroy, to get rid
of, 3625; to escape, 2061; De-
uoide (Voyde), *v.* escape, avoid,
2424; (Deuodes), *pr. s.* escapes,
2061; Devoide, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* eschew,
4327; Deuoyde, 2 *p.* are free from,
avoid, 4602; Deuoydid (Deuoyd-
ed), *pt. s.* hid away, 2938; De-
uoidid, *pt. pl.* 1 *p.* emptied out,
got rid of, 4218; Devoided, *pp.*
avoided, put away, 4261; De-
voidid, destroyed, 3875; Deuoidis,
imp. pl. 2 *p.* lay aside, 4959.
- Devour, *s.* duty, *p.* 279, l. 20.
- Deuowrid, *pp.* devoured, 3875.
- Denydid, *pp.* divided, scattered,
sundered, 2790.
- Deuyllis, *gen.* devil's, 414; Deuyls,
pl. devils, 342; fierce animals,
monsters, 4090.

- Deuynes, *pr. s.* divines, 145; (Devyne), considers, 1363.
- Deuys, *s.* device, shape, 359; (Devyse), design, will, 830.
- Deuyse, *imp. s.* think, 4050; Deuysid, *pt. s.* perceived, 3053; made out, 5099; Devysid, *pp.* looked at, considered, 4642; (Deuysid), devised, pourtrayed, 280; (Devysed), spoken, said, 2511. See below.
- Deuysid (Devyse(d) hath), *pt. s.* made out, read, 2691. (A bad use of the word; *deuyse* is rather to write or indite.)
- Dewe, *s.* dew, 3801, 4344.
- Dewe (Dew), *s.* due, right, 1176.
- Dewessis, *pl.* goddesses, 3555. A curious fem. form of *F. dieu*.
- Dewis, *pr. pl.* avail, 4438. (A bad spelling of *dowis*; see Dowe.) Cf. Dewt below.
- (Dewly), *adv.* duly, 763*.
- Dewt, *error for* Dowt (= doute), fear, 2618. Cf. Dewis above.
- (Deyd), *s.* deed, 1071. See Dede.
- (Deyde), *adj.* dead, 933*. See Dede.
- Deyne (Dene), *s.* disdain, 1863.
- Deyne, *s.* dell, valley, 4075, 5421. A.S. *denu*.
- Deyne (Digne), *adj.* worthy, 882, 1958.
- Deynes, *pr. s. impers.* it deigns (me), i. e. (I) deign, 830; Deynes, *pr. s.* is it worth; Quat deynes now, lit. what is it worth your while, why is it worth your while, 4006; Deyne, *pr. s. subj.* may deign, 3475; Deyned, *pt. s.* was thought worthy, 4225; Deyned, *pt. s. refl.* deigned; Deyned him na daynte, no dignity allowed him, his dignity did not allow him, 229.
- Deynes, *pr. pl. 2 p.* are disdainful, are filled with disdain, scorn (at), 4579. Misused for *dedynes*.
- Dialiticus (Dialecticus), dialectics, 1583.
- Diademe, *s.* diadem, 3240.
- Diates, *pl.* diets, feasts, 4438. See Diete.
- Did, *pt. s.* did, 414; put, 3440; Didd, did, acted (so to her), 346; Did on, put on, 487; D.d. *pt. pl.* did, 593; put, 3329.
- Die, *v.* die, 3298; *ger.* 2003; (Dye), 2164; Die (Dye), 1 *pr. s.* 1191; Dies, *pr. s.* 5430; (Dyes), 1908; Died, *pt. s.* died, 1908; Dies (Dyez), *imp. pl.* die, 1033. See Dye.
- Diete, *s.* diet, 4274. See Diates.
- Dietes, *pr. pl.* feed, 4738.
- Differris, *pr. pl. 1 p.* differ, 4617.
- Digne, *adj.* worthy, 1720.
- Dignite, *s.* dignity, 3240; Dignites (Dignitez), honours, 1905.
- Dike (Diche), *s.* ditch, 3274; (Dyke), 700, 712; Dikis (Dykez), *pl.* dikes, ditches, 2986. See Dyke.
- Dilectacion, *s.* delight, p. 279, l. 15; Delectacion, p. 280, l. 36.
- Dindimus, 4235; Dindyn, 4214.
- Dingis (Dynges), *pr. s.* dashes, strikes, 2041.
- Dint, *s.* blow, 3997; Dintes, *pl.* 3938; Dintis (Dyntes), 2091.
- Dire, *adj.* dear (?), 5349. (A bad spelling; read *dere*.)
- Discende, *ger.* to descend, to fall, 3051; *pr. pl.* descend, 4770; Discendid, *pt. pl.* descended, fell, 3654.
- Discheualer, *adj.* having ruffled hair, with loose hair, 3687. (Insert a comma after this word.)
- Dis[e]iple, *s.* disciple, 2124.
- Disciplyne, *s.* disciple, 4391.
- Diselosid, *pt. pl.* opened, 3632.
- Discrecion, discretion, 4243.
- (Diseassyd), *pp.* disturbed, 2842*.
- Disese (Disease), disease, 2549.
- Dishonoure (Dishonor), dishonour, 1866.
- Disire, *pr. pl. 2 p.* desire, 4243; Disire (Desirre), 1 *pr. s.* 1673; Disired (Desirred), *pt. s.* 919.
- Disolatis, *pl.* desolate places, 4354.
- Dispersous, *pr. s.* reviles, insults, 746.
- Dispice (Dispyse), *v.* despise, 2504; Dispices, *pr. s.* 3385; Dispisis (Dispysys), 746; (Dispysez), 1709; Dispice, 2 *pr. pl.* 4222; Dispiced, *pt. s.* 1709.
- Dispite, *s.* contempt, scorn, 1711, 2497; (Dispyte), 1863.
- Dispyle, *ger.* to despoil, rob, 2494.
- Dispyse, *v.* dispose, p. 279, l. 15.

- Dissert, *s.* desert, 336, 3485, 3798 ;
 (Deserte), 2585.
 Dissires, *pl.* desires, 4289.
 Disspaire (Dispare), *s.* despair, 3269.
 Distourbid, *pp.* disturbed, 5159.
 Distressid (Distryssyd), *pp.* distressed, 2781.
 Distreyne, *v.* control, rule, govern, 4244. (See the note.)
 (Distrobles), *pr. s.* disturbs, 3167*.
 Distroy, *v.* destroy, 1454, 1639, 1658 ;
ger. 912 ; Distruye, *v.* 187 ; (Distroy), *ger.* 1027 ; Distruy (Distroye), *ger.* to destroy, 2216 ; (Distroyde), *pt. s.* 1941 ; (Distroyd), *pp.* 2088.
 Distruccion, *s.* destruction, 3253 ; 3733 (for *he þat* read *þat he*).
 Disworship, *s.* dishonour, *p.* 280, *l.* 37.
 Disyre, *v.* desire, wish for, 3563.
 Dite, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* indite, 1841 ; Ditis (Dytes), *pr. s.* indites, dictates, 2726 ; Ditis (Ditez), indites, 1909 ; Dites, commands, 3462 ; (Ditez), indites, 2005.
 Dites, *pl.* enditings, declarations, 3509 ; sayings, 4558 ; Ditis, words, 1823 ; sayings, 1954 ; (Detes), writings, 1908 ; Dities, *pl.* greetings, 4214 ; sayings, words, 4695 ; (Dytes), sayings, 2411 ; (Ditez), 2009 ; (Dytes), letters, 2066. See Dytez.
 Diuined, *pp.* explained, 1905.
 Diuinour (Deuinour), *s.* diviner, interpreter of dreams, 1355 ; wise man, 2393 ; diviner, sorcerer, 406, 431 ; Diuinours (Deuynours), sages, 1545 ; (Dyuynours), augurs, 2349.
 Diuyse, *s.* order, 4207.
 Dizans, *pl.* (put for Dizans), sayings, 4307. *F. disant*, pres. *pt.* of *dire*. Cf. *l.* 4309, which speaks of *listening* to them.
 Dightes (Dytes), *pr. s.* appoints, 2662 ; Digtis, *refl.* prepares himself, 922 ; Digt, *pt. s.* got ready, 2005 ; (Dight), *pt. s. refl.* prepared himself, 922 ; Digt (Dight), *pt. pl. refl.* prepared themselves, 2472 ; buried, 3130 ; Digt, *pp.* dight, destined, 744 ; clothed, 232, 322, 3447 ; (Dight), prepared, ready, 3013 ; ordained, 1504 ; Digt (Dyght), *pp.* arrayed, treated, 3155 ; handled, treated, 3205.
 Do, *ger.* to do, 98, 736, 1260 ; *v.* 1071 ; Doo, 2 *pr. pl.* 4575 ; Do, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* ; Do on, don, put on, 5180 ; Do kith, do tell, 5168 ; Do, *imp. pl.* do ; Do lendis, do go on, 4992 ; Doo (Doys), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* cause, 3422 ; (To do), i. e. to be done, 735*.
 (Do), *s.* deed, 2733.
 Dobbbed, *pt. s.* dubbed, i. e. arrayed, 3447.
 (Dochre), 1647. Prob. an error for *dochee*, i. e. *duchy*. Or it may be meant for *duchery*, like *E. dukery*, with the same sense.
 Doctoneus, *proper name*, 2122.
 Doctour, doctor, 232, 432 ; Doctours, *pl.* 1545, 1583 ; teachers, 4558.
 Doctryne, doctrine, 4225 ; Doctrine (Doctryne), 1655.
 (Doghtly), *adj. pl. as sb.* doughty, men, 2627, 3006, 3061, 3130, 3157.
 (Dokes), *pl.* dukes, 1326.
 Dole, *s.* a portion, part, 736, 3727 ; Forthing-dole, fourth part, 3844 ; (Dele), part, 2687.
 Dole, *s.* dool, grief, sorrow, trouble, 1877, 2472, 3863. *F. deuil*.
 Dolour, *s.* pain, 3305 ; Doloure, dolour, 935.
 Dom, *adj.* dumb, 4747.
 Dome, *s.* doom, judgment, sentence, fate, 521, 720, 1095, 2164, 3253, 3457, 5414 ; condemnation, 2602 ; trial, 2196 ; To dome, in accordance with judgment, justly, 4250 ; Domes, *pl.* sentences, decrees, 593 ; fates, fatal circumstances, 706, 736.
 (Domesman), *error* for Dones man ; see Dones.
 Domesmen, *pl.* magistrates, 4421 ; executioners, 3202.
 Domestyne, Demasthenes, 2352, 2393, 2436 ; Domestiane (Domestyn), 2411.
 Dompe, *v.* dive down, descend swiftly, fall, 4487. See *dumpen* in Mätzner.
 Don, *imp. s.* don, put on, 3240. *Short* for do on.

- Done, *pp.* caused, made, done, 346, 1186; put, 3476; destroyed, 3713; (Done), ended, 692.
- (Done), *adv.* down, 2088. See Doune.
- Dones, *in phr.* Quat dones man, i.e. a man of what make, what sort of man, 2906, 5167. (See note, p. 304.)
- Dones men; þa dones men, those men of that kind, such men, 3202; þe donesmen, 1811. (But prob. in both cases an error for *domesmen* (as in D.), i.e. judges, great men, nobles.) See Dones, and see Domesmen.
- Dore-nayle, *s.* door-nail, Dom as a dore-nayle, dumb as a door-nail, 4747. Cf. 'deaf as a door-nail,' a proverb.
- Dos, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost, 5167; (Dose), 2 *pr. s.* as *fut.* shalt do (*read* dose on = shalt put on), 3240; Dose, *pr. s.* does, 226, 406; (Doys), 793; Dose him (Doys hym), goes, departs, 2678; Dose him, *pr. s.* goes, gets him (out), 2181; Dose, *pr. s.* as *fut.* will do, 4250; Dos (Doys) on, makes one (of his men), 3111; Does him furthe (hym furth), advances, 1024; Dose, *pr. pl.* do, 528; Dose þam in, go in, 902. See Duse.
- Doubeletis, *pl.* doublets, 4673.
- Douce, *fem. adj.* sweet one, 830.
- Doufe, *s.* dove, 4533. See Dowfis.
- Doughty, *adj.* as *sb.* valiant men, 1205. In D. 2349, it is better to read *douth*, as in A.
- Doukand, *pres. part.* ducking, diving, 4090.
- Doune, *adv.* down, 332, 452, 547; (Downe), 791; (Doun), 853; Doun (Downe), 1183; (Done), 2088.
- Dounes, *pl.* downs, hills, 3486, 4045.
- Doute, *s.* doubt, 5610; terror, fear, 2015; (Dowte), 1166.
- Doute, *ger.* to fear, 1965; (*for* Doutes), *pr. s.* fears, 532; (Dout), 2 *pr. pl.* fear, 1801; Dout, 2 *pt. pl.* feared, 3509.
- Douth, *s.* manhood; also, collectively, a band of young men, a band, host, army, soldiery, 1647, 2100, 2349, 2627, 2663, 2733, 2775, 3006, 3061, 3130, 3157, 3205, 3351, 3890, 3928, 4113. A.S. *duguð*, manhood, army; cf. G. *Tugend*.
- (Dow), 2015. A false reading; read *ne doute*, as in A.
- Dowble, *adj.* double; Be dowble, by double, twofold, 3322.
- Dowe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* avail, am able (to do), 4058. A.S. *dugan*.
- Dowfis, *s.* doves, 5604. See Doufe.
- Dowis, *pl.* doves, 3937. See note.
- (Downe), *adv.* down, 730*, 2057.
- (Dowte), *s.* doubt, 2196.
- Doykis (Dukez), *pl.* dukes, 791.
- (Doyngez), *pl.* doings, 1823.
- Doztir, *s.* daughter, 3315, 5253; (Doghter), 823, 2633.
- Doztyly, *adv.* doughtily, 5590.
- Drabland, *part. pres.* trailing, 232. M.E. *drablen*, to dirty, Prompt. Parv.; Sc. *drabble*, to dirty; hence prov. E. *drabble*, to draggle in the mire (Halliwell).
- Drafe, *pt. s.* drove, went quickly, rushed, 336, 487, 561, 712; came, 2035; (Draue), 1141; (Drof), 2585; Drafe (Drofe), went (to meet him), 2906; (Drafe hym), *pt. s.* went, gat him (out), 2181; (Drafe), 1 *pt. pl.* drove, dealt (blows), 2091.
- Dragon, *s.* dragon, 378, 451; Dragons, *pl.* dragons, 3868, 4792; Dragons, *gen. sing.* dragon's, 359.
- Dragon-hame, *s.* dragon-covering, 487. A.S. *hama*, a covering.
- (Drawe), *ger.* to draw, 818*; Drawis (Drawes), *pr. s.* draws, pulls, 1308; (Drawys), comes, 2924; Drawis (Drawes), *pr. pl.* draw, 706; Drawe, *imp. s.* draw, go, 1769; Drawen (Drawyn), *pp.* drawn, 3269. See Drazes.
- Drazes (Drawez), *pr. s.* draws, drags, 1857; Drazen, drawn, hence covered, 4207; (Drawen), drawn, acquired, tried to get, 2734. See Drawe.
- Drazt, *s.* drawing, picture, 280; Drazte (Draught), draught, 1106; drawing (of a bow), 1067.
- Drechet, *pp.* vexed, spoilt, 4942; Drechid, destroyed, 1106. A.S. *dreccan*, *dreccean*, to vex.

- Dred (Drede), *s.* dread, fear, 2140 ; Drede, 2015.
- Dred, 1 *pr. s.* dread, fear, 400 ; Dredis, *pr. s.* 532, 669 ; Dred, *pp.* afraid, 2489, 2913 ; Dred, *imp. s.* dread thou, 98 ; Drede, *imp. s.* fear, 322.
- Dredfull, *adj.* dreadful, 359.
- Dredles, *adv.* without dread, i. e. doubtless, 1472 ; (Dredles), 1965.
- Dreis, *pr. s.* endures, 531. *Sc. dree.* See Dreze.
- Dreme, *s.* dream, 474.
- Dreme, *v.* dream, 346 ; Dremyd, *pt. s. refl.* 432.
- Drench, *v.* be drowned, 3274 ; Drenches, *pr. s.* drowns, 1308 ; Drenchis (Drenchez), 1857 ; Drenchyd, *pt. s. subj.* should drown, 2590 ; Drenchid, *pp.* drowned, 5506.
- (Drenchett), *error for* Drechett, *pp.* destroyed, 1106. See Drechet.
- Drenke (Drynkez, *pl.*), *s.* drink, potion, 2564.
- Drepars (Dreppers), *pl.* murderers, slayers, 3422.
- Drepe, *ger.* to kill, slay, 867, 1777, 3632 ; Drepis, 1 *pr. pl.* 4291 ; *pr. pl.* 4546 ; Drepid (Drepyd), *pt. s.* slew, killed, 1067 ; Drepid, *pt. pl.* 5562 ; Drepid, *pp.* killed, 3169, 3713, 4134, 4734, 5350 ; (Drepyd), 744, 961, 1233. *A.S. drepan, Icel. drepa.*
- Drepe, *adj.* dreary, 4804. (But the MS. reading *dreze* should have been retained ; see Dreze, *adj.*)
- Drerely, *adv.* drearily, sadly, 976 ; Drerily, sorrowfully, 2699.
- Drery, *adj.* dreary, sorrowful, sad, 2472, 2989, 3085.
- Dressis (Dressyd, *pt. s.*), *pr. s.* directs, sends, 1711 ; (Dresse), 2 *pr. s. subj.* appoint, 801* ; Drest (Dressyd), *pp.* dressed, adorned, 2801. See Drissis, Drysse.
- Dreun, *pp.* driven, 1647, 3305 ; (Dréven), passed, 1337 ; (Dryven), gone forward, 687.
- Drewe (Drew), *pt. s.* drew near, 1337 ; Drewe *vp.* 336.
- Dreze (Dre), *v.* suffer, endure, 3194. *Sc. dree.* See Dreis.
- Dreze, *adj.* tedious, weary, long, 4441 ; severe, 2091. See below.
- Dreze, *adj.* tedious, wearisome, 4804. This is the reading of the MS., and should have been retained ; see the footnote. See *dre3* in Mätzner.
- Dreze, *s.* annoyance (lit. tediousness), 5578. See *dreze* in Mätzner.
- Dreze, *pt. pl.* drew, 3629, 5554. See Drawe.
- Drezt, *adj. superl.* chief, greatest, most considerable, 5568. Lit. 'most tedious ;' see Dreze, *adj.*
- Drezt (Drozt), *s.* length, extent, 1112. Spelt *dreight* in the Troy-book, l. 10,633. See Drizt.
- Drifes, *pr. s.* drives, 225 ; Driffe (Dreffe), *pr. pl. refl.* drive themselves, endeavour 2733. See Driue, Dryfe.
- Drifte, *s.* drift, 1756.
- Drinke, *s.* drink, 1106.
- Drinkles, *adj.* drinkless, without drink, 3798 ; Drinkeles, 4679.
- Drissis, *pr. s.* prepares, arrays, disposes, 3182 ; Drised (Dressyd), *pp.* dressed, robed, 1935. See Drysse.
- Driue (Dryve), *ger.* drive, scour, 1198 ; Driues (Dryves), *pr. pl.* 1396 ; Driuand (Dryvand), *pr. pt.* driving, hurrying, 882. See Drifes.
- Drize, *s.* interval, space of time, 4788. See Drizt, Drezt.
- Drizt, *s.* duration, length, interval, 4874, 5062. See Drezt, Drize.
- Drizt, *s.* host ; O drizt, in a host, 3868. *A.S. dryht, driht.*
- Drizten, *s.* a lord, the Lord, 809 ; Driztin, 3457, 5400 ; Drizten (Drighten), 1260 ; (Dryghten), 1472 ; Drizten (Dryghten), 2734 ; (Dryghtyn), 3291 ; Driztyn, 518 ; Driztens, *pl.* lords, 3555 ; Driztins, 4546 ; gods, 4183, 5118 ; Driztens (Drightenez), *gen.* Lord's, 1504. *A.S. dryhten.*
- Dromondaris, *pl.* dromedaries, 3850, 4792.
- Dromonds, *pl.* swift vessels, 64. Low Lat. *dromondus*, from Gk. *δρομων*, a swift ship.

- Dronken, *pp.* drunken, drunk, 2936; Dronkin, 4552.
- Dronkynnes, *s.* drunkenness, 3351.
- Drope, *s.* drop, 3863, 4941. See the note to l. 4941.
- Dropis (Drops), *pr. s.* drops, lets drop, i. e. discloses, 1363; Dropid, *pp.* dropped, 3801.
- Droues (Drafes), *pl.* droves, flocks, 1211; (Drawes), 1233.
- Droune, *v.* be drowned, 3274; Drowned, *pt. s.* was drowned, 3032; Droune, *pr. pl. subj.* be drowned, 2590.
- Drowe, *pt. pl.* drew, 3024. See Droze, Drawe.
- (Drowpys), *pr. s.* droops, falls, 734*.
- Droze, *pt. s.* drew, drew nigh, 4773; (Drogh), drew, 1067; (Droght, error for Drogh), 2963; Droze, *pt. pl.* drew, 3847, 5478; went, 3798. See Drawe, Drowe.
- Druits, *pl.* friends, 5123. O.F. *drut*, *dru*, a friend; see Godefroy, *s. v. dru*; also Lex Salica, ed. Hessels and Kern, *s. v. druchte*.
- Drye, *s.* dry land, 5554.
- Dryfe (Dryve), *ger.* to drive, 1777; Dryffe, *v.* drive, hasten, 2860; Dryfes (Dryffes), *pr. s.* drives, 1231; Dryfes, *pr. pl.* 64; (Dryfen), drive, rush, 3202; Dryfuys (= Dryfvys), *pr. pl.* they drive, 791. See Drifes, Drine.
- Dryi, *adj.* dry, 4093.
- (Drynched), *pt. s.* drowned, 3072. See Drench.
- Drynke, *pr. pl.* drink, 3816.
- Drysnynge, *s.* drizzling, few drops, 3801. From A.S. *drosen*, dregs (Leo).
- (Drysse), *v.* prepare, 2860; Drysse, 1 *pr. s.* I direct, send, 5123. See Dressis, Drissis.
- Dryue (Dryfe), *v.* drive, go, 2860; Dryues (Dryvez), *with vp, pr. s.* drives, sends, 718; Dryue[s], drives on, 3061.
- Duale, *v.* poison, put to a mortal sleep, 5026. Cf. *duale* in P. Plowman.
- Duchepers (Doceperes), *pl.* peers (lit. *douce-peres*), 791. O.F. *doze pers*, the twelve peers (of France).
- Duceses, *pl.* 1965. An obvious error for Duesses, *q. v.*
- Duelle (Dwelle), *ger.* to dwell, 830; Duell (Dwell), *v.* remain (so), 2842; Duellis, *pr. s.* dwells, remains, 2989; Duell, 1 *pr. pl.* 4050, 4355; Duells, 4354; Duellis, *pr. pl.* dwell, 5534; Duellid (Dwellyd), *pt. s.* dwelt, 913, 2848; Duellid (Dwellyd), *pt. pl.* 1045; Duelled, 3795.
- Duesses, *pl.* goddesses, 4515, 4558, 5114; *miswritten* Ducses, 1965. O.F. *dieuesse*, goddess; Roquefort.
- Duke, *s.* duke, leader, general, 1211, 1231, 1442; (Duk), 1879; Dukis, *pl.* 64, 480; (Dokez), 1141; Duykis, 47.
- Duly (Dewly), *adv.* duly, 836, 895.
- Durand (Endurand), during; Durand his lyfe, while his life endures, 1188. See Dure.
- Dure, *v.* endure, last, 540, 4055; Dures, *pr. s.* 1687; Durid, *pt. s.* 5610; Dured, *pt. s.* endured, lasted, lived through, 158.
- Dure, *s.* door, *p.* 282, l. 122. (Durely), *adv.* with difficulty, hence (perhaps) mournfully, 976. (Apparently only used for the alliteration; cf. *dure*, difficult, in Halliwell.)
- Durst, 1 *pr. s. subj.* if I durst, 1673; (Durst), 2 *pt. s.* durst, 1966.
- Dusan, *adj.* dozen, twelve, 280.
- Duse him (Dose hym), *pr. s.* goes, lit. does him, 2299. See Dos.
- Dust (Duste), dust, 782.
- Dute, *adj.* afraid, 3555. From O.F. *duter*, *douter*, to fear.
- Duykis, *pl.* dukes, 47. See Duke.
- Duztiest, *adj. superl.* doughtiest, 3654.
- Dwaje (Drawgh), *s.* a feeble person, puny creature, 1752. Jamieson gives Scot. *dwaub*, a feeble person, *dwaile*, flexible, weak, *dwaifil*, pliable. The spelling *drawgh* probably stands for *dwaugh*.
- Dwerze, *s.* dwarf, 1752. A.S. *dweorg*.
- Dwynyng (MS. A. *dwinnyng*, MS. D. *dwynyng*), a diminutive person, 1752. From A.S. *dwīnan*, to dwindle.

- Dyademe, *s.* diadem, 3329; (Diademe), 2801.
- Dyanaas (*Dubl. MS.* Dianas, *for* Dianas), *gen.* Diana's, 2299.
- (Dyd), *pt. pl.*; (Dyd paim), went, 902.
- Dye, *ger.* to die, 1100, 1874, 2155; (Dy), 692; Dyi (Dye), *v.* 1260; Dye, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* die, 990; Dyi (Dye), 1638. See Die.
- Dyke bothum, bottom of the ditch or dyke, 712. See Dike.
- Dym, *adj.* dim, 5395.
- Dymed (Demmyd), *pt. s.* grew dim, 782.
- Dymly, *adv.* dimly, faintly, 718.
- Dyn, *s.* din, noise, 2618; (Dyne), 935.
- Dyndyn, Dindimus, 4644.
- Dyntis, *pl.* blows, 451.
- (Dytez), *pl.* enditings, words, 2842*. See Dites.
- Dyuerse, *adj.* diverse, 85.
- Ebland, *prep.* amongst, 160, 3723 (where it follows its case), 4023, 4086; Eblande, 4315, 5444. Dan. *iblandt*, *prep.* among.
- E-blande, *adv.* among, 4973; Ebland, amongst (them), together, also, 3910, 4994. See above.
- Ebru, Hebrew, 5072; Ebrues, Hebrews, 5661.
- Ebyn, *s.* ebony-wood, 3682.
- Ebyn-tree, *s.* ebony-tree, 3681, 5135.
- Echchewis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* eschew, 4603. [MS. Ethchewis.]
- Eddirs, *pl.* snakes, adders, 4198.
- Edyfyed, *pp.* built (a house), *p.* 281, l. 88.
- Ee, *s.* water, stream, 5464. A.S. *éa*.
- (Eey), *s.* eye, 2491. See Eje.
- Effecte, *s.* work, 357.
- Effosym, Ephesus, 5661.
- Eft, *adv.* again, 140, 185, 511, 1359, 2821, 3126, 3159, 3510, 3783; Efte, in return, 2141, 5051.
- Efter, *prep.* after, 2, 95, 518; for (i. e. sends for), 352; (After), for, 3152, 3183; according to, in the likeness of, 191; Eftir, *prep.* according to the likeness (of a prince), 5642.
- Efter, *adv.* afterwards, 205, 309, 478, 4773; Eftire, 360, 614; (Aftir), 1551.
- Eftirsons, *adv.* again, 408. See below.
- Eftsones (Eftsons), *adv.* again, immediately, 2281; Ef[t]-sones, afterward, 1083.
- Egg, *s.* egg, 507, 509; (Egge), 893.
- (Egen), (*for* Ege), fear, care, 731. Read *eye*, as in MS. A. The final *n* is wrong.
- Egge, *s.* edge of a hill, backbone of hills, 4876. Wenlock *Edge* (Salop) is a long ridge; and so elsewhere.
- Eggis, *pl.* (*for* Heggis), hedges, 4137.
- Eging (Eggyng), *s.* egging, instigation, 2409.
- Egipt, Egypt, 23, 71, 135, 173, 233, 239; Egipte (Egipt), 1132; Egist (Egip), 1121.
- Egirly, *adv.* sharply, 551, 580; eagerly, 3151; fiercely, 3848; (Egerly), 703, 1205.
- Elacion, elation, 1729.
- Elanda, *prop. name, put for* Hellada, i. e. Greece, 2514 (see note, *p.* 303); 3100, 3106 (see note, *p.* 305). In l. 3106, perhaps Elam is meant.
- Eld, needle; Ane eld = a neld, i. e. a needle, 1370. MS. D. *has* nedyll.
- Elde, *s.* age, 622, 657, 764*, 5132; old age, great age, 184, 4838; Eld, age, 646; (Elde), 1001.
- Elder (Helder), *adv.* rather, 1016. *Properly spelt* helder; cf. *Icel. heldr.* rather.
- Eldest, *for* Heldest, most especially, 1765. See above.
- Eldire, *adj. comp.* older, 616; (Alder), 1619; (Elder), elder, 1474.
- Eldire, *s.* greater age, 4215.
- Eldirs, *pl.* forefathers, 3491; (Elders), ancestors, 2465; (Aldours), 2483; (Alders), elders, 2844; Elders, parents, 838*; Eldris, *pl.* parents, elders, guardians, 4628.
- Eldist, *adj. superl.* eldest, 3577; (Eldest), chief, 2006.
- Element, *s.* element, 60; Elementes, *pl.* elements, 542, 580; El[c]mentis (Elementes), 784.
- Elfe, *s.* elf, spirit, 5258.

- Elike, *adv.* alike, 536, 1225, 1258, 1422, 4283; continually, 560; Elike (Elik), 1401; Ay elike, ever the same, 1288; Euer elike, continually, 340.
- Elike-dele, in like measure, similarly, 4158.
- Elis, *adv.* else, 107. See Ellis.
- Elkend, *pt. pl.* adored, propitiated, 164. Cf. A.S. *óleccan*, to adore, flatter, soothe.
- Elleuen, *num.* eleven, 4814; Elleuyn, 646.
- Elleuynt, *adj.* eleventh, 4139.
- Ellis, *adv.* else, otherwise, 181, 290, 395, 477, 570, 685; (Elles), 841, (Ellez), 1814; (Ellys), 1761. See Elis, Els.
- Ellyn (Elne), *ell*, 800.
- Els, *adv.* else, otherwise, 13, 5426; (Ellys), besides, 1685; Ells, anything else, 4279; Els, *conj.* except, 4671. See Ellis.
- Els-quare, *adv.* elsewhere, 5633.
- Els-quat, *adv.* otherwise, 4557.
- Emang, *prep.* amongst, 47, 104, 565, 1163, 3489; Emange, 628, 4331; Emaunge, 4817.
- Emaunge, *adv.* among, in the midst, 4901.
- Emell, *prep.* amongst, 4613; (governing *us* understood), 4263. Dan. *imellem*, between.
- Emperoure (Emperour), emperor, 975, 1125, 1516, 1607, 1720, &c.; Emperoure (Emperour), 882; Emperouris, *gen.* emperor's, 5196; Emperours, *pl.* 189.
- Empire, *s.* rule, empire, 1001, 3983.
- Emyddis, *prep.* amidst, 4538.
- Emynelus, *proper name*, Emulus, 2875; Emynelows, 3005.
- Enarmed, *pp.* fully armed, 652, 1397, 1787, 2020, 2137, 3019, 3601, 3749, 5152, 5641. (Enarmed), 2685, 2982; (Enarmed), 954.
- Enbawmed, *pp.* embalmed, 3319.
- Enblanchid, *pp.* whitened, made white, 3690.
- Enbrouden (Enbrowden), *pp.* embowered, 1569. See Brouden.
- Enchalis, *pr. s.* influences, 2545.
- Enchant, *v.* make enchantments, 115; Enchantis, *pr. s.* 412.
- Enchantmentis, *pl.* enchantments, 377.
- Encheson, *s.* occasion, cause, 4607. O.F. *encheson*, *encheison*, occasion.
- Enclosed, *pt. s.* surrounded, came round, 3812.
- Enclynes, *pr. s.* inclines, bows, 3114; (Inclines), *pr. pl.* bow down, 1603; *refl.* bows (himself), 495.
- En[c]ounbre (Combre), *v.* vex, trouble, harass, 2550. See Encumbre.
- Encontres, *pr. s.* encounters, 3993.
- Encressis (Encresses), *pr. s.* increases, grows, 891; Encreses, 2492.
- Encumbre (Combre), *v.* destroy, overcome, 1881; Encumbrid, *pt. s. subj.* should trouble, should vex, 1480; Encumbrid (Encombred), *pp.* destroyed, 1817. See Encounbre.
- Ende, *s.* end, 880; death, 1103; End, (one) end, 173; death, 739*; Endis (Ende), *pl.* ends, parts, 1733; districts, 3721; Ends, *pl.* ends, limits; Of clene all þus ends, of all these limits (*or* boundaries) entirely, 3479.
- Endentid, *pp.* indented, engraved, 3671.
- (Endered), *for* Hendered, 1 *pt. s.* hindered, opposed, 2497.
- Endis, *pt. s.* ends, puts an end to, 1220; Endid (Endytt), *pp.* ended, 1486; Endid, *pt. s.* finished, killed, made an end of, 453.
- Enditis (Inditez), *pr. s.* indites, 1955; (Inditid, *pt. s.*), 1836; Endited (Indited), *pt. s.* indited, 1823.
- Endles, *adj.* endless, 60, 1916.
- Endurang; see Durand.
- Enduris, *pr. s.* endares, 527; *pr. pl.* 1483; (Indurett), *pt. pl.* 1483; Endured, *pp.* 7.
- Enentes (Anentes), *prep.* anent, about, concerning, 3245.
- Enerid (Enhered), *pt. s.* inherited, possessed, 1132. See Enherit.
- Enfamyschist (Enfamyschyde), *pp.* famished, 2153.

- Enfeffid, *pt. s.* enfeoffed, gave (them) lordships, 2793.
- Enforce, 2 *pr. pl.* enforce, bid, 2804 ; Enforced (Enforced), *pp.* strengthened, 1155.
- Enfourme, *s. put for* Enfourmer, informer, teacher, 626. (See the context.)
- Enfourmes (Enformes), *pr.* prepares, 2751 ; Enformed, *pt. s.* indited, 2413 ; Enfourmed, *pp.* instructed (in), informed (of), 3747 ; informed, 306 ; (Enformed), 904, 1897.
- Engine, *s.* engine, machinery, 5292 ; Engynes, *pl.* engines, 1302, 1415 ; (Engynez), 2218.
- Englaymed, *pp.* ensnared, 4668. Lit. caught as with birdlime ; see *engleinen* in Mätzner.
- Engrauen, *pp.* engraven, 279.
- Enhabetis, *pr. pl.* inhabit, dwell, 245 ; Enhabet, *pt. pl.* 23 ; *pp.* 3493.
- Enhansis (Enhaunses), *pr. s.* enhances, exalts, 2714 ; En-haunsid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* enhanced, raised, 5068 ; Enhansid (Enhaunsed), *pp.* advanced, increased, 2513 ; (In-haunsyd), 3406 ; Enhansed (En-haunsyd), exalted, 2498.
- Enherestis (Inheretes), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost inherit, 1870. See below.
- Enherit, *v.* inherit, 588. See *Enerid*.
- Enioyne, *v.* enjoin, lay a command, 1191 ; Enioyne (Enioyne), *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* bid, 2664 ; Enjoyed, *pp.* compounded, put together, 3694 ; enjoined, 1493.
- Enlympyd ; *error for* Limpid.
- (Enmite), *error for* Enmy, enemy, 2681.
- Enmy, *s.* enemy, 819, 2681, 3096 ; Enmys, *pl.* 60, 453, 1916, 4291 ; Enmes, 206 ; (Enmys), 1251, 2096.
- Enmyte, enmity, 1729, 2560.
- Enoje, *adj. pl.* enough, sufficient, abundant (this *pl. adj.* always follows its substantive), 2135 ; (Enogh), 1663 ; Enoghe, 3931 ; Enogh, 38 ; (Enowe), 1350, 819*.
- Enoje, *adv.* enough, sufficiently, 41 ; (Enogh), 1324, 782*.
- Empire (Empyre), *s.* empire, 2292, 2327 ; (Empire), 1899.
- Enproched (Aproched), *pt. s.* approached, 2902.
- Enquere (Enquire), *ger.* to ask, 2420 ; Enquire (Inquire), *imp. s.* ask, 1110 ; Enquirid, *pt. s.* enquired, 239.
- Ensampill, *s.* example, 3878 ; parable, 4659 ; Ensampl (Ensampl), example, 1802 ; Ensampl (Ensampyll), example, instance, 730 ; (Sampyll), ensample, 3279.
- Ensence, incense, 163.
- Ensuirid, *pp.* promised, 2633.
- Enterly, *adv.* entirely, wholly, 2790, 3243, 5662 ; Enterly, 2584 ; Enterly (Entirely), 1899 ; (Enterly), 2327, 2465.
- Enteris, *pr. s.* inters, buries, 4017 ; Enterid, *pp.* interred, buried, 3323.
- Enteris, *pl.* approaches, entries, ways of approach, 71.
- Enterment, interment, 738*.
- Entre, *ger.* to enter, 2419 ; *v.* 2514 ; Entire (Entre), *ger.* 1760 ; (Enter), *v.* 1359 ; Enter, 511 ; Entris, *pr. s.* enters, 381, 4075, 5009, 5421 ; Entres, 450 ; Entirs, 53 ; (Entrees), 1039 ; Entirs him (Entrez hym), *pr. s.* enters, 1125 ; Entird, *pt. s.* entered, 490 ; Entred, 1433 ; Entrid (Entred), *pp.* 1916 ; Entird, 206.
- Entring, *s.* entering, beginning, 4158.
- Entyre (In tere), *adj.* entire, in detail, 1261.
- Envemonde (Enuenmonyd), *pp.* envenomed, 1390.
- Enverom, *ger.* to surround, 3617 ; Envirounis, *pr. s.* environs, 5527 ; Enveronis, environs, surrounds, 4632 ; Enverrouns, resounds through, pervades, 4780.
- Enuy, *s.* envy, 4256 ; (Enuye), 1729. (Enys), *adv.* once, 1191 (*but a misreading*).
- Epocrise, hypocrisy, 4652.
- Equinox, *s.* equinox, 4158.
- Er, *pr. pl.* are, 1013 ; (Er), 949, 797*.
See *Ere*.
- Erاند, *s.* message, 1467, 2770. See *Errande*.
- Ercules, Hercules, 703, 2184, 4538.

- Erd, *s.* earth, 551, 580, 3493; country, land, region, 239, 246, 453, 3983; Erd, *s.* dwelling-place, 3737; land, native land, native country, 2842; Erde, earth, 271; region, land, 1046, 2348, 5258; native country, 135, 206, 4043; (Erth), land, 912, 975. A.S. *eard*. Erd, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* dwell, 4648; Erdid (Erdyd), *pp.* dwelt, 2681.
- Erd-growyn (Erth-growen), *adj.* earth-grown, 1753.
- Erdis (Erdes), *pr. s.* buries, 975. See Erþed.
- Erdly (Erthlich), *adj.* earthly, 1612.
- Ere, *pr. pl.* are, 1, 12, 14, 104, 105, 437, 542, 789, &c. See Er.
- (Ereles), *pl.* earls, 1121. See Erle.
- Eris, *pl.* ears, 3941, 4635; Eres, 3151, 4748.
- Erle (Erell), *s.* earl, 1612; Erlis, *pl.* 153; Erles, 64; (Ereles), 1001, 1166; (Erelez), 907, 1578.
- Erles, *pr. s.* governs, lit. is the earl of, 4646. A coined word; from the sb. above.
- Erly, *adv.* early, 3444.
- Ermed, *pp.* armed, 3935.
- Ermets, *pl.* hermits, 4020.
- Ermony, Armenia, 907, 912, 942, 5662; Ermonye, 2560; (Ermony), 1046.
- Erne, *adj.* eager, anxious, 340. Put for *jern*; see two other examples in Mätzner, s. v. *corne*.
- Ernest; On earnest, in earnest, 1359.
- Ernestly, *adv.* earnestly, 2348.
- Errande, errand, 5216. See Erand.
- Errogaunce, arrogance, 4327.
- Erroure (Errour), *s.* wrong, 1699.
- Erryd, *pp.* erred, wandered, 3267.
- Erst, *adv.* first of all, 1531.
- Ert, 2 *pr. s.* art, 102, 834*, 1738.
- Erthe, *s.* earth, 158, 1190; country, land, 1046; Erth, earth, 509, 784; land, country, territory, 23, 173, 233, 942, 2560; Erthes, *gen. s.* earth's, 5503.
- Erþed, *pp.* buried, laid in the earth, 588. See Erdis.
- Ertid (Ertyd), *pt. s.* urged, 2409. O.F. *arter*, Span. *artar*, to compel, from Lat. *archare*. See *arten* in Mätzner.
- Erytage (Herytage), *s.* heritage, 3243.
- Es, *pr. s.* is, 663, 1008, 1713. (Eschapys), *pr. s.* escapes, 2987.
- Eschilus (Esculus), Æschylus, 2348, 2409.
- Ese (Ease), *s.* ease, 1829; Esee, 3861, 5342. See Esse.
- Esid, *pp.* eased, rested, 4790.
- E-soundir, *adv.* asunder, 510; Esoundire, 3977; Esondre (In-sonder), 760. See Esundire.
- Esse (Ease), ease, peace; At esse, in peace, 1047. See Ese.
- Est, *s.* east, 20, 445, 4902.
- Esundire, *adv.* asunder, 338. See Esoundir.
- Esy (Easy), *adj.* easy, peaceful, 2477.
- Esyngis (Esynges), *pl.* easings, eavesings, eaves, edges of the roofs, 1522.
- Ete, *pt. pl.* ate, 3941.
- Ethfully, *adv.* easily, 3647. A.S. *ēaþ*, easy.
- Ethis, *pr. s.* conjures, 340. See the note.
- Ethyope, Ethiopia, 140.
- Ethyops, Ethiopia's, 5132; Ethiops, Ethiopians, 5661.
- Etill (Atthill), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* direct, 2322; Ettillis, attempt, intend, 15; Etille (Attelyd, 1 *pt. s.*), 1 *pr. s.* purpose, aim, intend, 2419; Etils (Ettlys), 2 *pr. s.* attemptest, intendest, 2829; Etils (Etellez), *pr. s. refl.* attempts, 1157; Etlyd, *pt. s.* intended, sought, 2821; Ettild (Ettled), 2 *pt. pl.* attempted (as regards), 2484; Ettild (Ettled), *pp.* designed, proposed, purposed, intended, 3165; Ettid (Attelytt, 1 *pt. s.*), *pp.* attempted, 1819. Icel. *atla*.
- Etyn, *pp.* eaten, 774*.
- (Euell), *adj.* evil, 1759.
- (Euell), *adv.* evilly, ill, 1066.
- Euen, *s.* evening, 697.
- Euen, *adj.* straight, smooth, 2598; as sb. fellow, antagonist, 2281. See Euyñ.
- Euen, *adv.* exactly, 1357, 4810; even, 731*; (Euen), evenly, 1127; (Euen enon), just immediately,

- 940; Even-furth, straightway, directly, 53.
- Euen, *ger.* to make equal, 4483; Euens, 2 *pr. s.* art equal, 1870.
- Euer, *adv.* ever, 16, 158.
- Euer-elike, continually, 340, 781*; Euerelike, 972; (Euerelike), always alike, 2046; (Euerilyke), ever the same, 1288. See Elike, Eueryllyke.
- (Euerilke), each, every, 1497, 1802; (Euerylke), 999.
- Euer-mare, *adv.* evermore, 205.
- Eueryllyke, *adv.* continually, 727*. See Euer-elike.
- Eufestynus, *prop. name*, 813*.
- Eufrates, Euphrates, 2598; Eufra-ten, 2586, 2770.
- Euill, *s.* evil, harm, 1699.
- Euire, *adv.* ever, 329, 1165; (Euer), 1067.
- Euire in ane (Euer onon), contin-ually, 2184.
- Euire-ilk, *adj.* each, 4497.
- Eumare, the river 'Thamar,' 4103; Eumaure, 4124.
- Euor, *s.* ivory, 3680; Euour, 275.
- Europe, Europe, 1046, 2327; Europ, 3765, 4395.
- Euyll, *adj.* evil, 703.
- Euyn, *adj.* even, equal, 5132. See Euen.
- Euyn, *adv.* exactly, fully, even, just, 18, 140, 542, 551, 646, 1045; (Euen), alike, 1381; Euyn on (Euen ouer), *adv.* even on, fully throughout (the host), 1793.
- Euyn, *s.* evening, eve, 350, 3055, 3699; Euyns, *gen. as adv.* in the evening, 375.
- Euynsange, evensong; Euynsange-tyme, the hour of evensong, 4139.
- Ewrus, *s.* Eurus, the east wind, 4144.
- Excludit (Exclud), *pp.* shut out, 2842.
- Exidrares, *pl.* a nation of Gymno-sophists, 4020.
- Exorjise, *ger.* to exorcise, practise charms, 340. (Here 3 stands for z.)
- Eze (Egen), *s.* fear, heed, care, 731. A.S. *ege*.
- Eze, *s.* eye, 222, 1589; Ezen, *p.* eyes, 344, 498, 603, 3151, 3940; (Eghen), 688, 1133, 2242; (Eugh-en, *for* Eghen), 1782; (Eeyn), 3285. See Eey.
- Fa, *adj.* few, 106.
- Faa, *s.* foe, 54; (Foe), 3421; Faas, *pl.* 452; (Foes), 2700. See Faes, Fais.
- Fable, *s.* fable, 1886.
- Face, *s.* face, 600, 965; Face to face, 357.
- Facultes (Facultez), *pl.* possessions, 1847.
- Fadere (Fader), father, 2323; (Fad-re), 1491; (Fader), 701, 910, 961; Fadire, 600; (Fadir), 741, 1652; (Fadre), 824, 874; Fadirs, *pl.* fathers, 3; (Faders), 1675.
- Fadis, *pr. s.* fades, 5309; (Fades), 1007.
- Faes, *pl.* foes, 2061, 2096; (Foes), 1238, 2364, 2804. See Faa, Fais.
- Fage, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* flatter, soothe, 4669. See *fagen* in Mätzner.
- Faille, *v.* fail, 102, 341; (Faille), 1643; Failes, *pr. s.* fails, 1274, 1325; (Failez), 1443; (Falys), is wrong, 2965; Us failis, (Vs falez), fails us, 1006; Failed, *pt. s.* it failed; Fayled me, it failed me, I failed, 3285; Failid, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* failedst, 5588; Failis, *pr. pl.* fail, are absent from, 4279; fail, 844.
- Faille, *s.* failing, error, 1886. *Read* fable, *as in* Dublin MS.
- Faire, *adj.* fair, 601, 1725, 1847; good, 454; (Fair), 1541, 2116.
- Faire, *adv.* fairly, well, exactly, 195, 424, 535, 878, 899, 1041; kindly, 1695, 1700; completely, 2230; courteously, 2750; (Fair), kindly, 1897, 2478; (Faire), quickly, 2250.
- Faire (Fare), *s.* welfare, 2019.
- Faire, *prop. name*, 91.
- Fairere (Feirare, *in MS.* feirhare), *as s.* greater part, 1238.
- Fairnes, *s.* courtesy, 1745.
- Fais, *pl.* foes, 136, 186, 217, 810, 1945, 5382; (Faes), 1034. See Faa, Faes.
- Faithly, *adv.* truly, certainly, verily, 3874; (Faythfully), 3175, 3282; (Fathfully), 2279.

- (Faldes), *pr. s.* folds, bends, 779* ; Falden, *pp.* folded, 2401.
- Falle, *v.* befall, happen to, happen, 1109 ; Fall, 172, 295, 1641, 2722 ; (Falle), 1897, 3257 ; Fall (Fale), *ger.* to fall, 849 ; Fallis, *pr. s.* falls, 78, 509, 568 ; (Falles), 846 ; (Fallez), 1135 ; (Falles hym), falls before him, 779* ; Fallis, *pr. s.* betakes him, 4587 ; befalls, 405 ; happens (to), 3767 ; Falis, befalls, 4638 ; Fallys hym, falls away from him, 2482 ; Fallis, *pr. s.* suits, 4457 ; (Falles), befits, 975, 1927 ; Fallis me, suits me, 829 ; (*with to*), befits, 864 ; belongs, is fit for, 1549 ; (Falles), belongs, 896 ; Fallis, *pr. pl.* fall, 815, 1822, 2055 ; Fall on, attack, 2132 ; Fall *be*, *pr. s. subj.* if it befall thee, 2279 ; (Fall þou), if thou succeed, 2279 ; Fall (Fallez), *pr. s. subj.* may befall, may concern, 1192 ; Fall (Fallys), befall, 2600 ; Fall (Falle), happen, 1785 ; Fallyn (Fallen), *pp.* fallen, 1756 ; (Fallyn), 2323 ; Falne (Fallyn), 856. And see Falne.
- Falne (Fallyn), *pp.* fallen, (but misused in the sense of 'felled'), 2087.
- Falewis, *pr. s.* turns pale or yellow, 5308.
- Fals, *adj.* false, 1697 ; (art) false, mistaken, 715 ; (False), false, 2186.
- Fals, *adv.* falsely, 298.
- Falshede, *s.* falsehood, 4366.
- Fame, *s.* foam, 5604.
- Famen (Faymen), *pl.* foemen, 2208.
- Fames, *pr. s.* foams, 2974 ; Famand (Fomand), *pres. part.* foaming, 3203.
- Famyd (Famed), *pp.* famed, 2387.
- Famyschist (Famyshyd), *pp.* famished, 1167 ; Famyscht, 4596.
- Fand, *pt. s.* found, 536, 2110, 2300, 3063, 3664, 5364 ; Fande (Fand), 1053.
- Fand (Fond), *ger.* to try, prove ; To fand with my wittez, to try my wits against, 2336 ; Fande, (Fonde), *ger.* to go, 1196 ; Fandis, *pr. s.* is trying, 681 ; tries, exercises, 376 ; (Fondez), goes, advances, 2671, 2594 ; takes, 2977 ; Fand (Fonde), *imp. s.* advance, go, 2867. A.S. *fandian*. See Fonde.
- Fang (Fange), *s.* hold ; In fang, in the embrace, in the hold, in the protection, 1725. Cf. Icel. *i fang*, in the grip or hold.
- Fange, *v.* take, 2879 ; Fange (Fonng), *v.* receive, accept, 3186 ; (Fang), catch, get, 2168 ; Fange, *ger.* to take, 110 ; Fang (Fange), to receive, 1692 ; (Fannge), to receive, 1257 ; Fangis, *pr. s.* takes, 411, 508, 4781 ; (Fangez), takes, 819* ; Fanges hym, *pr. s.* receives for himself, 760* ; Fangis, *pr. s.* (Fange, *pt. s.*), seizes, 2971 ; (Fonges), takes, 766 ; (Fangez), collects, 1332 ; Fanges (Fonges), takes, 877 ; (Fannges), gathers, 2059 ; Fangis (Fangez), catches, 2197 ; Fangis (Fonnges), 2 *pr. s.* catchest, obtainest, 2720 ; Fange, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* take, 4636 ; *pr. pl.* catch, take, 2642, 3055 ; Fangis, 2028 ; Fang (Fangen), 899 ; Fangid, *pt. s.* took, 819 ; gained, 500 ; (Fonge), took, 2217 ; Fangid (Fonge), 2 *pt. pl.* received, 2478 ; Fangid (Fonged), *pp.* taken, 2629 ; Fange (Fongel), *imp. s.* take, 2867 ; Fange (*with to*), hold to, keep to, 1990 ; Fang *be*, *imp. s.* take to thyself, 805* ; Fange *vp* (Fongez *vp*), *imp. pl.* pluck ye up, 988. A.S. *fōn*.
- Fanous, *pl.* maniples of the priests, 1581. "Fanon, *fanula*, *manipulus*;" Cath. Anglican.
- Fant, *s.* infant, 4629 ; (Faunt), son, 1788 ; child, 1477.
- Fantasy, *s.* fancy, 5513.
- Far, *adv.* afar, 831*.
- Farand ; see Fare, *v.*
- Fardill, *s.* burthen, 5136. O.F. *fardel*.
- Fare, *s.* journey, march, 2250 ; equipment, 3694 ; doings, acts, manner of action, behaviour, 300, 1990, 2242, 4366 ; business, welfare, 172, 433, 672 ; affair, 925 ; condition, state, 2554 ; circumstance, 513, 569, 3257.

- Fare, *v.* fare, prosper, 1788; go, 5202; Faris, *pr. s.* fares, goes, 847; Fares, 2116; Faris *vp.* gets up, 545; Faris (Farys) with, 2 *pr. s.* behavest, 2944; Fares, *pr. pl. 1 p.* go, 3748; Fare, *pr. pl. 2 p.* act, 5366; Farne, *pp.* gone, 216; past, 3901; departed, 2323; (Faren), gone, 1004; Farand, *pres. part.* going, walking, 5549; as *adj.* seeming, 5437; good, excellent, 2. A.S. *faran*.
- Farkis (Ferkys), *pr. s.* goes, 766; Farkis furth, goes forth, 545. See *ferken* in Mätzner, p. 102. See Ferkis.
- Fast, *adj.* fast, constant, firm, 4616; close, 1369; enduring, 3259.
- Fast, *adv.* fast, 505; steadfastly, 1034; earnestly, searchingly, 2570; close, closely, 433, 672; hard by, 3285; soon, 2575, 5307; quickly, soon, 380, 891; As fast as, as soon as, 3944; Faste, close, 626.
- Fast, *ger.* to fast, 1477; Fastand, *pres. part.* fasting, 5522.
- Fast, fastened, 747*.
- Faster, *adv. comp.* faster, 847, 943; Fastir, more quickly, 1805; more, 4689.
- (Fastnes), *s.* stability, 3259.
- Fattest, *adj. sup.* fattest, 759*.
- Fauchon, falchion, 448.
- Faucon, *s.* falcon, 5257.
- Faund, *pt. pl.* found, 4116.
- (Faunys), *pr. s.* fawns, 785*.
- Faute, *s.* lack, deficiency, 4587.
- Fautis (Fawtes), 2 *pr. s.* lackest, wantest, 2710; Fautis, *pr. s. impers.* lacks, 2482; Fauted (Fautyd), *pp.* been in fault, erred, done wrong, 2659.
- Fax, *s.* hair, 601. A.S. *feax*.
- Fay, *adj.* dead, 591; (Fey), dying, 792. Icel. *feigr*. See Fey.
- Faylis, *pr. pl.* fail, 3492; Fayle, *pr. s. subj.* may give way, 1372; (Faylett), *pt. s. subj.* 1372; Faylid, *pp.* proved wanting to, 1462.
- Fayn, *adv.* gladly, 1, 5230.
- Fayn, *ger.* to gladden, 2; Fayne, *v.* be glad, rejoice, 1745; Faynes, *pr. s.* gladdens, 4681; Fayns, *pr. s. impers.* pleases, delights, 4626.
- Fayne, *adj.* glad, 2264.
- Faynt, *adj.* faint, weak, feeble, 2359, 3717, 4358; (Faynte), 1275, 1738.
- Fayntir (Faynter), *adj. comp.* weaker, 2085.
- (Fayr when vs likez), let us go on when it pleases us, 740*. See Fare.
- Fayre (Faire), *adj.* fair, 2019.
- Fayre, *adv.* fairly, honourably, 164.
- (Fayrnes), fairness, beauty, 753*.
- Faythly, *adv.* faithfully, 3808.
- Fayt, *pt. s.* fought, 643; *pt. pl.* 5434.
- Febill, *s.* weakness, 4280.
- Feble, *adj.* feeble, weak, 1710, 1275; mean, poor, 1516; Febill (Feble), 1013.
- Feche, *ger.* to fetch, 884; Feches (Faches), *pr. s.* fetches, 806.
- Fedare, *s.* feeder, provider, 2961.
- Fede, *ger.* to feed, 1775; Fed, *pp.* fed, 1, 575, 3592; Fedd, 3495; (Fed), 2173; Fede, *imp. pl. 1 p.* let us feed, 591.
- Fedill, *adj.* (perhaps) fatted, well-fed, in good case, 5604. This is a guess; cf. "*Altillis, fedels*" in Wright's Glossaries, ed. Wülcker, col. 190. If the word be of French origin, it may mean 'faithful,' from O.F. *fedel*, Lat. *fidelis*.
- Fee, *s.* reward, 2284; Fees, *pl.* offerings, 4466; Fees (Feys), fiefs, 1847; To fee, i.e. as a tribute, 5139.
- Feete, *pl.* feet, 844, 4168; (Fete), 2852; (Fote, *sing.*), 1360; Feet, 199.
- Feete (Feetez), *prob. for* Feetes, *pl.* (cf. the Dublin MS.), feats, deeds, works, acts, 3105.
- Feetis, *pr. s.* acts; Feetis him forth, acts beyond him, surpasses him in feats, 3989. See *feted* = acted, behaved, in Sir Gawayne and the Grene Knight, 1282. From *feet*, sb. See Fetid.
- Feetles, *s.* a vessel, small vat, 1350. See *jetles* in Stratmann.
- Feetly, *adv.* well, excellently, 4219; Feetely, 3694.

- (Feffys), *pr. s.* enfeoffs, 2793.
 (Feght), *s.* contest, fight, 910, 2270.
 (Feghtyn), *pr. pl.* fight, 2042.
 (Feghys), *pr. s.* fastens, 1369. A.S. *fegan*; see *fegen* in Mätzner.
 Felaw (Felow), fellow, comrade, 864.
 See Feloze.
 (Feld), *s.* field (of battle), 1004.
 Feld, *pt. s.* felt, perceived, 3257.
 See Fele.
 Fele, *adj.* many, numerous, 448, 471, 803*, 1005, 1037, 1155, 1215, 2001, 2055, 2071, 3059, 3717. A.S. *fela*.
 Fele (Feyle), *pr. pl. 2 p. subj.* feel, 2357; (Fele), *for* Feld, *pt. s.* felt, perceived, 3257. See Feld.
 Fele, *s.* feeling, perception, *hence* power over oneself, 850.
 Feleschip, *s.* company, 4548.
 Felire, *adj. comp.* more in number, 2084. See Fele.
 Fell, *adj.* furious, 3180; fell, fierce, 613, 906, 3881; (Fell), 1220, 2075; (Fele), 825, 861, 2197; (Feyle), 2279; Fell, destructive, 1756, 5581; terrible, 1697; sharp, cruel, bitter, severe, 91, 1795, 3925, 4165.
 Fell, *pt. s.* fell, 56, 550, 1133; happened, 501, 2085, 3063; Him fell, it was fitting for him, 4017; Fell (Felle), *pt. pl.* were born, 2081; Fell, *pt. pl.* (which) fell, 567.
 Felle, *v.* fell, kill, 3011; Fellis (Felles), *pr. s.* fellis, 1215; Fellis (Felles), *pr. pl.* they fell, 792; Fellid, *pt. s.* felled, 5561; Fellid, *pt. pl.* felled, killed, 1406, 5434; Fellyd, 2055; Fellid, *pp.* overcome, 3559; (Fell), *imp. s.* fell, 1360.
 Fellis, *pl.* skins, 5083, 5139; (Fellys), 2766.
 Fellis, *pl.* fells, hills, 4046; (Fellys), 1211.
 Fellis (Fylls), *pr. s.* fills, 3065.
 Felly, *adv.* savagely, fiercely, boldly, 1053, 2971, 5440; (*miswritten* Fellyd), terribly, 1795; furiously, 3839; bitterly, 3647; (Felly), fiercely, 906; keenly, 1341.
 Felons, stern warriors (not in a bad sense), 819*.
 Feloure, *s.* foliage, 4821. "*Fuill-lur*, leaviness, also leaves;" Cotgrave. See the note; and see Feylour.
 Felowis, *pr. pl.* follow, 1555.
 Feloze (Felow), *s.* companion, equal, 3282. See Felaw.
 Felsen (Filson), *ger. to aid*, assist, 829; Felsyn, *v.* perform, fulfil, 5230; Felsen, 2 *pr. pl.* aid, foster, 4669. The same word as *filstnen*, in Ormulum, 6170; from A.S. *fylstan*, to aid.
 (Femand), *pr. pt.* foaming, gushing, 1133.
 Femony, a country, 5674.
 Fen, *s.* clay, 4358.
 Fendere (Fender), defender, 1839.
 Fendid, *pt. pl.* defended; Fendid of, repulsed, 1031.
 Fendis, *pl.* fiends, 4802, 5571.
 Fendis, *pr. s.* shifts, makes a shift, 3366. (Doubtful. The right reading is probably *fynis*, i. e. comes to an end, corrupted to *fyndes* in *Dubl. MS.* See Feyne, Feyned.
 Fenix, *s.* phoenix, 4993.)
 (Fennder), *s.* defender, 2961.
 Fens, *s.* defence, 4753.
 Fenyshid (Fenyshyd), *pp.* finished, ended, 2144; Fenyyst (Fynyshytt), 1107; (Fenyshit), put an end to, 1766*.
 Fer, *adv.* far, by far, 3922. See Fere.
 Ferd, *pt. s.* went, 813*; Ferd (Fared), journeyed, 1057; (Faryd), went, 2118; Ferd, 1 *pt. pl.* fared, 3510; went, 1943; *pt. pl.* went, 4966; went about, 5549; (Faired), went, stepped, 2049. See Fare.
 Ferd, *s.* host, 5577. A.S. *fyrð*.
 Ferd, *adj.* fourth, 3344; (Fourte), 3368.
 Ferd, *pp.* afraid, 395, 569, 851, 1443; Ferde, 846; (Ferd), 2447.
 Ferd, *s.* fear, terror, 136, 2590.
 Ferdfull, *adj.* frightful, terrible, 3036, 750*.
 Ferdship (D. frendshipys), terror, 988.
 Fere, *s.* fellow, comrade, companion, 3282, 4078; consort, husband, 397; wife, 434, 497, 2728, 5202, 5350; Feres, *pl.* companions, 5149; Feris, 637, 643, 2409, 3751, 3967. A.S. *gylfra*.

Fere, *adj.* far, 136, 217, long hence, 308; far, i.e. outer, 4853.

Fere, *adv.* far, by far, 1738. See Fer.

Fere, *s.* fear, dread, 1167, 1276; danger, 2155.

Fere, *adj.* healthy, 4282. Icel. *færr*.

Fere, company; In fere, together, 4123, 5136.

Feree; see In-feree.

Fereles, *adj.* fearless, 4993.

(Ferer), *adv.* farther, 847.

Ferid, *pp.* terrified, 101.

Feris; see Fere, *s.* (p. 368).

Feris, *pr. s.* assembles, provides (for himself), 3592. This verb is perhaps formed from *fere*, sb., a companion. It answers rather (perhaps) to A.S. *geféran*, to go, also to obtain, allied to *geféra*, a 'fere,' than to A.S. *geferian*, to convey. Both are from *faran*, to go.

Ferkis (Ferkez), *pr. s.* sallies, 926. See *ferken* in Mätzner, p. 102. See Farkis.

Ferlied, *pp.* wondered, 4761; Ferlid, astonished, amazed, 4991; Ferlyd (Farlyd), wondered, 3228.

Ferly, *adj.* strange, wondrous, 601, 5083; large, 5577. A.S. *fêrlíc*, sudden.

Ferly, *adv.* wonderfully, 4922; strangely, 513; extremely, very, exceedingly, 380, 457, 3189; (Ferly), 3036.

Ferly, *s.* wonder, 395, 501, 925.

Ferlyd; see Ferlied.

Ferne, *adj.* firm, 3259; (Ferme), strong, 1057.

Fernes, *pl.* farms, rents, 4012; (Fermez), 1847.

Fernes (Fernesse), *s.* distance; O fernes (On fernesse), in the distance, 1424.

Ferre, *adj.* far, distant, 210, 1057, 3900.

Ferre (Fere), *adv.* far; To ferre, too far, by too much, 2085.

Ferre, *adj. comp.* farther, more advanced, 633; more, 5460.

Ferre, *adv.* farther, 3492, 3878, 4396; (Ferrer), 1455.

Ferrir, *adv. comp.* further, 4671; Ferrire, 208; Ferryre, 98; (Ferre), 2600.

Ferrom, *adv.* afar; On ferrom, far off, 5520. Cf. A.S. *feorran*, *adv.*

Ferryn, *adv.* farther, 4312.

Fers, *adj.* fierce, proud, strong, 216, 657, 884, 899, 2007; (Fers), 743*; (Ferce), 1167, 2087, 2357; (Ferse), 836*, 1839. See Firs.

Fersere, *adj. comp.* fiercer, 3922; (Forcer, for Fercer), 2031.

Fersly, *adv.* fiercely, 1031, 1406; Fersely (Fersly), 2208; (Fersly), 1053.

Feruent, *adj.* hot, 3871.

Fesike, *s.* physic, 4611.

Fesisiane (Fysycyan), physician, 2554.

(Fessid), *prob. for* Feffid, *pp. as adj.* enfeoffed, 2320. See below.

Fest, *pp. as adj.* established, set, 2320. See above. (Perhaps for *feft*, i.e. enfeoffed.)

Feste, *s.* feast, 480; Fest, 821, 856, 2946; (Feste), 825, 1828; company, 492; Festis, *pl.* feasts, 3742.

Festes, *pr. s.* fastens, 5518; Festis, *pr. s.* holds him fast (?), 3366 (but prob. an error for *fraystes*, as in Dub. MS.); Fest, *pr. pl.* fasten, set, 2230; Fest, 1 *pr. s. subj.* (if I) fasten, (if I) set, 2470; Festid, *pt. s.* fastened, 5307; Fest, *pt. pl.* fastened, plighted, 1259; Feste (Fest), *pp.* fastened, 2972.

Festid, *pp.* feasted, 1.

Festing (Festynyng), *s.* fastening, 2590; (Festyng), support, lit. fastening, firm hold, 2482.

Fete, *pl.* feet, 133, 505, 779*, 850, 1135, 1348, 2482, 3946; feet, i.e. heels (in departing), 3246. Cf. the phrase 'to shew a fair pair of heels.'

Fete, *s.* action, movement, lit. feat, 30; feat, doings, 4366; (Fetez), *pl.* feats, 817*.

Fetelakis (Fete-lakez), *pl.* fetlocks, 2049.

Fepir, *s.* plumage, 5604; Fethirs, *pl.* feathers, 4985.

Fethirhame, *s.* clothing or covering of feathers, 3694; Fethire-hames, *pl.* plumage, 380, 2710. A.S. *fêðer-hama*.

- Fetid, *pp.* fashioned, made, 4356, 4633. O.F. *faitier*, to arrange (Godefroy); from O.F. *fait*, sb. See Feetis.
- Fetoure, *s.* feature, fashion, make, 2959; Fetour, feature, 600.
- (Fett). *ger.* to fetch, 884.
- Fettild, *pp.* prepared, 626; (Feteld), fitted, 2995.
- Feuire (Feuer), *s.* fever. 2546; Feuyre, 4279. Written *ffeuyre*; *the ff is merely the (sole) way of writing the capital letter.*
- Fewe, *adj.* few, 251, 501, 654, 2061.
- Fewis, *for* Fewist, *adj. superl.* fewest, 3738. See Fewist.
- Fewist; At þe fewist, at least, 3599.
- Fewlis, *pl.* birds, 3690.
- Fewtire (Fewtre), *s.* rest for a lance, 2621. O.F. *fautre*, *feutre*, in Godefroy.
- Fey, *adj.* dying, fated to die, ready to die, 1215, 2055, 2087, 4002*; (Faye), 1034; Fey, dead, 2153, 2323, 4018, 4781, 5371, 5561. Icel. *feigr*. See Fay.
- Feyle, *adj.* many, 2055; (Fele), 2460, 3268.
- Feylour, *s.* foliage, 5004. See Felour.
- Feyne, *v.* feign, 1745; Feynys (Fenys) *pr. s.* 2 *p.* feignest, assumest, 2242; Feyned (Fenyd), *pp.* feigned, pretended, 715, 2197.
- Feyne, *error for* Fyne, *imp. s.*; Fyne of = cease from, 3458. See below.
- Feyned, *pt. s. error for* Fynynd (*as in* Dubl. MS.), ended, died, 3100. The same error recurs in l. 3458.
- Feynes, 2 *pr. s.* dost faint, art discouraged, 101. O.F. *fuindre*, 'hésiter, manquer de courage'; Godefroy.
- Fegt, *ger.* to fight, 217, 910; *v.* 3767; (Feght), *v.* 2208; Fegtis (Feghtez), *pr. s.* 1401, 2039; Fegtis (Foghten, *pt. pl.*), *pr. pl.* fight, 1262, 1441; (Figheten), 2228; Fegtand, *pres. pt. as adj.* fighting, 91; (Feghtand), 2080; (Feghtyng), 1315; (Fighand), 2535.
- Feuyre. See Fanyre.
- Furrers. See Furrers.
- Ficesyns, *pl.* physicians, 4363.
- Fiches, *pr. s.* fixes, 1369, 4853 (see the note); Ficchid, *pt. s.* fixed up, 5556; *pp.* fixed, 4641; Fichid, *pp.* stuck, 4372. O.F. *ficher*.
- Fifte, *ord.* fifth, 3901; Fift, 3372.
- Fight, *s.* fighting, 817*.
- Fight, *s.* fight, 2051. An error for *sight*: note the alliteration.
- Figour, *s.* figure, form, 360.
- Fild, *s.* field, also field of battle, 450, 454; (Feld), 926, 961, 1238; (Felde), 770, 819; Filde, 500, 2061; Fildis, *pl.* 4136.
- Filets, *pl.* fillets, 4338.
- Filies, *Lat.* Philonis, 5497.
- Filisphire (Philosofre), philosopher, 2347.
- Fill, *ger.* to fulfil, grant, 3173; (Fylle), to fulfil, 2660; Fillis, *pr. s.* fills, 56; fulfils, 547; (Fillez), fills, 1661.
- Fill, *s.* fill, 4761; (Fyll), 3228.
- Filling, *s.* the being full, 4265.
- Filour, *s.* thread-work, filagree-work, 3690. F. *filure*, a spinning.
- Findis (Fynde), *pr. s.* finds, 1125, 2034.
- Finely, *adv.* well, 5139.
- Fineschid, *pp.* finished, 3900.
- Fingire, finger, 4674.
- Fire, *s.* fire, 558, 4167; (Fyre), 2230; A fire, on fire, 2470.
- Fire (Fyre), *ger.* to set on fire, 2217; Fired (Fyryd), *pp.* set on fire, 2478.
- Firment, *s.* firmament, 3363; Firrament, 30.
- Firmes (Fermes), *pr. s.* fastens, makes firm, 1369.
- Firs (Fers), *adj.* fierce, 770, 2961. See Fers.
- First, *adj.* first, 657; (Frist), 893, 1429; Firste, 375.
- First (Frist), *adv.* first, 1366, 2423; first of all, 1712.
- Fisch, *s.* fish, 4282; Fischis, *pl.* 4270, 5083.
- Fist, *s.* fist, hand, 4674; (Fistez), *pl.* 799.
- Fitt, *s.* fit, division, canto, passus, 4018, 4714, 5626; (Fytt), 3203; Fittis, *pl.* 3473. Cf. A.S. *fittan*, to sing.
- Figt (Fight), *ger.* to fight, 759;

- Fiztis (Feghtez), *pr. s.* 1225, 1301; Fiztis (Feght), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* fight ye, 1034.
- Fizt, *s.* fight, 1004; fighting, 3495; battle, 418, 3550. For the second *fizt* in l. 3550, read *folk*; see the note.
- Flabband, *pres. part.* flapping, 4807. See Flappid.
- Flaggis, *pl.* flakes, 4165. Lowl. *Se. flag.*
- Flames, *pr. s.* burns, flames, 558; Flammand, *pr. pt.* flaming, inflaming, 1133; Flamband, *pres. part.* flaming, glowing, 3690.
- Flammes, *pl.* flames, 5574. See Flawmes.
- Flandres, Flanders, 5674.
- Flane, *pl.* arrows, 3839; Flanes, 2210; Flanis, 5448; Flany, 3045. A.S. *flán*, *pl.* arrows; *flan-es* is a double plural. See Flayne, Flonys.
- Flange (Flonge), *pt. s.* flung, 1348.
- Flappid, *pt. pl.* flapped, 5440.
- (Flashed), *pt. s.* flashed, rushed suddenly, 1133.
- Flat (Flatt), *adv.* flat, 1135.
- Flaw, *s.* flake, mass of snow, 1756. See Flaggis.
- Flawmes, *pl.* flames, 3871, 4784. See Flammes.
- Flay, *ger.* scare away, 5448; *v.* terrify, 110; Flays, *pr. s.* appeases, lit. drives or frightens away, 4608. "To flay, *terrere*;" Cath. Anglicum.
- (Flayne), *pl.* arrows, 1767*. See Flane.
- Flee, *v.* flee, 988; Flees (Fleen), *pr. pl.* flee, go, 3180; Fled, *pt. s.* fled, 136.
- Flees (Fleys), *s. pl.* flies, 3011.
- Flekirs, *pr. s.* flutters, 505. A.S. *flicerian*.
- Fleme, *v.* banish, 300. A.S. *flýman*.
- Flesche, flesh, 569; (Fleche), 1006.
- Fleschely, *adv.* carnally, 308.
- Flete, *s.* train, host, 803*. Cf. E. *fleet*. See Flote.
- Flett (Flete), hall, 821. A.S. *flæt*, a floor, a house, a hall.
- Flextirs, *pr. s.* flutters, 505. See Flekirs, Fliztir.
- Flinges, *pr. s.* hurls, shoots, 3839; rushes, darts, 3967; (Flyngez), rushes, 1218. See Flonge.
- Flisch (Flechett, *pt. s. subj.*), *pr. s. subj.* may bend, may give way, 1372. F. *fléchir*.
- Flitt, *v.* remove, advance, 4861; Flittis, *pr. s.* removes, 3784; (Flittes), 2173, 2439; Flites (Flyttes), 3184. Cf. Icel. *flytja*.
- Flizand, *pres. pt.* flying, 380.
- Flizt, *s.* flight, 110, 508, 5521; (Flyzt), 1236; *miswritten* Filzt (Flyght), 2788; sudden blast, 4143; On flizt, to flight, 3905.
- Fliztir, *s.* flight, 3944.
- Flizt-loomes (Flyght-loomes), *pl.* implements of flight, means of flight, 2710. A.S. *lōma*.
- Flode, *s.* flood, sea, 558, 2460; river, 2119, 3814; water, 56; flood (of tears), 1133; (Flodez), *pl.* floods, 1350. See Fludis.
- Flode, *error for* Fynd (see note), 1 *pr. s.* find, 4734.
- Flode-3atis (Flode-3ates), *pl.* flood-gates, 1856.
- Flokkis (Flokke3), *pl.* flocks, 2533.
- Flonge owt, *pt. s.* rushed out, 831*. See Flinges.
- (Flonys), *pl.* arrows, 3045. See Flane.
- Florantis, *pl.* florins, 3820. (The Lat. has *qui aurum eius portabant*, which seems to have suggested this translation.) The right form is rather *florentis*. Mätzner (*s.v. florin*) gives examples of the *pl. florentes* and *floranse*. Hence "with his florantis" means "with his florins," i.e. to carry his florins or money. See Florantis.
- Flore, *s.* floor, 3220; (Floure), 1348; Flores, *pl.* floors, flat surface, 4168.
- Florentis, *pl.* (read with florentis), florins, 4074; Florens, 819*. See Florantis, and cf. 3820.
- Florischt, *pp.* overgrown, 4717; Floryscht, flowered, adorned, 4379.
- Flosches (Flosshez), *pl.* pools, 2049. See *Flosche* in Halliwell; cf. prov. E. *floss*, as in 'The Mill on the Floss.'
- Flote, *s.* (lit. fleet), armament, host,

- 3592; company, 1210, 1758, 1943, 2001, 2264, 4871; Flote (Flete), company, 1196, 1581; band of men, 770. Icel. *floti*, a raft, a fleet. See Flete.
- Floum, *s.* river, 2898. See Flum.
- Floure, *s.* flower, 1007; profit, 2603; victory, 500, 819, 3982; flour, 3822; Floures (Flourez), *pl.* flowers, 1539.
- (Flowe), *pr. pl.* flow, 1350.
- Floze, *pt. s.* flew, 503, 508; *pt. pl.* flew, 3936, 4784, 5574; Flozen, *pt. pl.* fled, 1392.
- Flozes (Flowes), *pr. s.* flows, 2053.
- Fludis (Flodez), *pl.* floods, waters, 1155. See Flode.
- Flum (Flume), *s.* river, 2118; Flumme, 3829, 4739; Flummes (Flomes), *pl.* rivers, 2595. O.F. *flum*. See Floum.
- Flynt, flint, rock, 4447.
- Fode, *s.* food, meat, 2, 1174, 3497, 4605, 4723; Fodis, *pl.* food, kinds of food, 4302, 5426.
- Fode, *s.* child, i.e. one who is fed, 270. (Not uncommon.)
- Fodeles, *adj.* foodless, without food, 2155.
- (Foes), *pl.* foes, 810. See Faa.
- Foke, *s.* folk, 3053. See Folk.
- Folowand, *pres. pt.* following, 803*; (Folowand), 1248.
- Fold, *s.* earth, the earth, 3, 30, 251, 312, 429, 792, 1135, 2502, 4636; land, 3105; ground, 2087; (Falde), 1641; On fold, on the battle-ground, 3623.
- Foldward, earthward, 3363.
- Fole, *s.* foal, horse, 133, 808, 1218, 1236, 743*, 753*; Foles, *pl.* 805*; (Folez), 2049, 2155. A.S. *foli*. See Foole.
- Fole, *s.* fool, 1766*, 1990.
- Folewis (Folowez), *pr. s.* follows, 1860.
- (Folez), *pl.* follies, 1766*.
- Folite, *s.* folly, foolishness, 5366.
- Folk people, 1; Folke, 91, 375, 454, 591, 1174, 2084, 5561; written Fokke, 5311; Foke, 3053.
- Folows, *v.* follow, 640; Foloze (Folow), *ger. to* follow, 829; Folowis, *pr. s.* follows, 14; Folowis, 4569; Foloweth, 736*; Folozes (Folows), 2250; Folowis, follows (*perhaps an error for* Flowis, flows), 1350; Foloze, *pr. pl.* (they) follow, 3829; Folozes (Folows), 2080; Folowis (Folows), 1783; Folow (Flowen), *pr. pl.* follow, go (*but an error for* flow or flowen, fled), 1697; Folowid (Foloued), *pp.* followed, 1675; Folowand, *pres. pt.* following, 1758, 3473; Folozand (Folowand), 3268.
- Foly, *s.* folly, 736*, 2470, 4641.
- Fon (Fonne), *s.* fool, 2944. So in Chaucer.
- Fonde, *v.* advance, 3492, 4701; Fonde, *ger. to* go, 2210; Fondis, *pr. s.* attempts, endeavours, 4753; Fondis, *pr. s.* goes forward, advances, 2502, 4716; (Fonndez), 2129; Fondis, goes, 5579; (Fondes), goes, 2311; (Fonndez), goes, 1856; Fonde, *pr. pl.* explore, 4871; Fondand, *pres. pt.* going, 5277. A.S. *fundian*. See Fonndis, Founde.
- Fonden (Founden), *pp.* found, 3144; Fondyn, 2171.
- Fonden, *pp.* founded, 4641. Miswritten for *founded*; the *pp.* *fonden* can only mean 'found.' See above.
- Fondere, founder, 4711.
- Fone, *adj.* few, 3180. Stratmann suggests that the form should be *foue*; but we also find *fon*; and *u* (= *v*) is never a final letter.
- Fonges, 2 *pr. s.* receivest, 3101; (Fongez), *pr. s.* takes, 819; Fonge, *pt. pl.* took, 3634. A.S. *fón*.
- Fonndis, *pr. s.* advances, 2439; (Fonndez), 2114. See Fonde.
- Fonned, *adj.* fond, foolish, 5513. See Fon.
- Foole, *s.* foal, horse, 5588; (Fole), 2879, 3032; Fooles (Folez), *pl.* horses, 3072. See Fole.
- For, *prep.* on account of, because of, 169, 1164, 1801; as, as being, 35; from, 285; in spite of, 4196; as a defence against, to prevent, 747*, 3959.

- For, *conj.* because, 2136, 2478, 2651, 4013; forasmuch as, 3550; for, 138, 173; in order that, so that, 141.
- For to, to (*with gerund*), 147, 160, 217, 313, &c.
- For-bede, *imp. s.* forbid, 5590.
- Forbod, *s.* prohibition, 4154.
- Force, force, strength, 1006, 1443, 1738, 3989; (Forse), 850; Na force, it is no matter, 471.
- Forcelett, *s.* fortress, defence, 4358. See Forslet.
- Forces (Forcez), *pr. s.* matters, 2001; Forced, *pt. s. subj.*; Him forced, it would signify to him, 5371; Forced (Forsyd), *pp.* compelled, 2659.
- Fore, *pt. s.* fared, 457. See Fare, *v.*
- Forelange, *s.* furlong, 2898, 3065, 3967; Forelang, *as pl.* 5460. See Forlange.
- Forfet, *pp.* forfeited, done amiss, 471.
- For-festils, *pr. s.* appears lean (?), 4401. Apparently from the verb *fetill*, to fettle, prepare, set in order, with the prefix *for-*, giving it a sinister sense; hence *for-fettle*, to disorder, to mar, which is here used in the intransitive sense, 'to seem marred' or 'to seem disordered,' to be out of condition.
- For-fozten, *pp.* exhausted with fighting, 3917; (For-foughten), 1271.
- Forgais, *pr. s.* forgoes, gives up, 188.
- For-gatt, *pt. s.* forgot, 3276.
- For-geue (Forgyfe), 1 *pr. s.* forgive, 2434.
- Forge[f]nes, *s.* forgiveness, 3525.
- Forgid, *pp.* fabricated, made, 3346; Forged, 3703; (Forgett), 1542, 1590; (Forgyd), 2995.
- For-helid (Foreheld), *pp.* covered over, 1063. A.S. *helan*.
- Forlange, *pl.* furlongs, 3833. See Formlange, Furlange.
- Formast, *adj. superl.* furthest, extremest, lit. foremost, 4102.
- Formed, *pt. s.* made, 1611.
- Forne, in front, 3925.
- Fornicacion, fornication, 4485.
- Forrayouris, *pl.* foragers, scouts, 2171.
- For-quy, why, wherefore, 4584; Forqui, 4325.
- Forsake, *ger.* to give up, 2840; Forsaken, *pp.* 824.
- Forsen (Frosyn), *pp.* frozen, 2883.
- Forslet, *s.* stronghold, fortalice, 3834. See Forcelett.
- For-sothe, *adv.* of a truth, forsooth, verily, 665, 2808; Forsothe, 498; Forsoth, 1070.
- For-sworn (Forsworne), *pp.* forsworn, 1465.
- Forth (Forth), *adv.* forth, 827; Forth, 371; (Forth), 749, 732*.
- Forthe (Forth), *v.* afford, 1774. A.S. *forþian*.
- Forthi, *conj.* therefore, 3465; Forpi, 241, 1012, 4279; on that account, 4609; wherefore, 1767.
- Forthing-dole, *s.* fourth part, quarter, 3844. Lit. 'farthing-deal.'
- For-thinkis (For-thynkez), *pr. s. impers.*; Him for-thinkis, it repents him, 1464.
- Forthire, *adv.* further, 523; (Forthier), 1907, 1989; (Ferþer), 2314; Forthere (Ferther), 1693.
- Forthire (Furthers, *error for* Further), *v.* further, help, assist, 2700; (Forthier), *ger.* to help, 1948.
- Fortoun (Forton), fortune, 1851, 1856.
- For-top, forehead, 319.
- For-trauailid (For-traveld), *pp.* worn with travail, 1009.
- (For-tyred), *pp.* tired out, 1009.
- Forward (Forwardez, *pl.*), *s.* agreement, 1259.
- Forward (Forthward), forward, 847.
- Forwith (Forewith), *prep.* until, 1675; before, 861, 2242; in presence of, 15.
- Fosterd, *pt. s.* brought up, 2729; Fostard, *pp.* nourished, 3495.
- Fostring, *s.* fostering, bringing up, 575.
- Fote, foot, 1236; A fote (On fote), a single foot, one foot, 2423; (Fute), 3220; (Fote), 844; On fote, on foot, 2250; Fotes, *pl.* feet, 4851; *mis-written* Fortes, 199. The curious plural *fotes* (= foots), occurs also in Sir Gawain and the Grene Knight.

- Foteman, *s.* foot-soldier, 3175; Fote-men, infantry, 3059.
- Fote-thike (Fute-thyke), *of* a foot thick, 2883.
- Foule, *s.* fowl, bird, 4993; Foules, 4271. See Fowell.
- Foule, *adj.* unclean, 3936.
- Foule, *adv.* foully, 746; in an ugly manner, dirtily, 4082.
- Foules, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* trample, tread on, 4626; Foulis, 4681.
- Foulire (*for* Foule hire), tread her, i. e. the town, 1360. See below.
- Foun, *pp.* found, 159; (Funde), 3259.
- Founce, *s.* bottom, 4130. O.F. *fons* (Burguy); from Lat. *fundus*. See Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
- Founde, *v. go*, 5529; advance, 5038; Found, *go*, 5230; (Found), *go*, 2879; Foundis, *pr. s.* marches, advances, proceeds, 450, 2423; (Fundes), *departs*, 3246; Foundes (Fondytt, *pt. s.*), *pr. s.* goes forward, 1145; Founde, 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst *go*, 4936; Foundid (Foundez, *pr. s.*), *pt. s.* went, took, 1236; Foundid, *pp.* gone, 169. See Fonde.
- Foundid, *pp.* founded, built, 5291; (Fondyn, *wrongly*), 1649.
- Founding, *s.* going, advance, 4154.
- Foure, *num.* four, 633, 2133, 764*; On alle foure, on all fours, 5277.
- Fourme, *s.* manner, way, 172, 4219; form, shape, 312, 359, 613; (Forme), 987, 1708; disposition, 1276.
- Fourmed, *pt. s.* formed, prepared, 2413; (Formede), made, 1739; Fourmed, *pp.* formed, made, 3, 275, 576, 3459, 4616.
- (Fourte), *ord.* fourth, 3368.
- (Fourth), *adv.* forth, 887.
- Fowell (Foule), *s.* bird, 2264 (alluding to a common proverb, "as fain as fowl of the day"); Fowlis, *pl.* birds, 5448, 5589; Fowles, 3146; Fowls, 3944. See Foule.
- (Fowly), *adv.* foully, evilly, greatly, 934.
- Foxes, *pl.* foxes, 3932.
- Fogten (Foughten), *pt. pl.* fought, 2460; (Feghten), 2375; (Feyten), 2090.
- Fra, *prep.* from, 56, 136, 139, 173, 296, 332, &c.; (Fro), 3245; from the time, 2323; Fra *pat*, from the time when, 2019, 2373; Fra now, from this time, 1094.
- Fraid, *pp.* afraid, 3458. See Frayed.
- Fraist (Fraysted), *pp.* enquired about, 2019. Icel. *freista*, to make trial of. See Fraystes.
- Franch (Fraunches), *s.* freedom, franchise, 917. See Fraunches.
- (Frandes), *pr. s.* enquires, asks, 832*; 2 *pr. s.* askest, 2305. See Frayne.
- Frantites (Francides), the name of a country, 1057.
- Fraunche, *adj.* without flaw, excellent, 4356. Cf. E. *free-stone*.
- Fraunches, *s.* franchise, freedom, 4617; (Franchiez), 2486; Fraunchis, *s.* benefit, good quality, 4684; Fraunches, *as pl.* liberties, 4012.
- Fraward, *prep.* from the direction of, away from, 1335, 1759; (Froward), 1289.
- Frayed, *pp.* frightened, 3567; (Frayd), 3036. See Fraid.
- Frayne, *v.* enquire, ask, 3837; Frayn (Frayne), *ger.* to ask for, enquire, 2655; Fraynes, *pr. s.* asks, 267, 433, 457; (Frandes), 2067; (Franez), 1700; Frayns, 672; Frayned, *pt. s.* enquired, 2305. A.S. *frignan*, Icel. *fregna*. (Fraystes), *pr. s.* tempts, tries, puts to trial, 3366. See Fraist.
- Fre, *adj.* free, 4616; noble, 497.
- Freke, *s.* man, 270, 298, 360, 672, 675, 851, 2186, 2642, 813*; Frek, 101; (Freke), 1477, 2659; (Frekes), *pl.* 1992, 3268. A.S. *freca*.
- Freke, *adj.* eager, 5521. A.S. *frecc*.
- Frekind, *adj.* freckled, spotted, 4988.
- Frekly, *adv.* quickly, soon, greatly, 1795. (Ill used.)
- Frelettis, *pl.* frailties, 3268.
- Frely, *adj.* noble, 270; (Frelich), 2728.
- Frely, *adv.* freely, liberally, 4012, 785*; courteously, 1695; well, 429; very, 4082.
- (Frend), friend, 814*; Frendis, *pl.* 619.
- Frendly, *adv.* friendly, 1695.
- Frengs, *pl.* fringes, 4338.

- Fresche (Fressh), *adj.* new, 891; (Fresh), fresh, 1350; (Freshe), 1007; Fresch, bright, 5604; Fresch (Fresh), *adj.* fresh, 1174, 2766; (Freshe), fresh, 1235; vigorous, 792, where the Dublin MS. has *fers*.
- Freschely, *adv.* eagerly, 3816; Freschly (Freshly), vigorously, 2132; (Fresly), quickly, 923; Freschely (Freshly), boldly, 1031; Freschly, boldly, *or* quickly, 906.
- Fresons, *pl.* Frisians, i. e. men in cloth of Frieze, men roughly clad, 1758. F. *frison*, a Frisian; also a cloth of Friesland (Littre).
- Fresys, *pr. s.* freezes, 2896.
- Fretis, 2 *pr. pl.* fret, vex, irritate, 4400; Freten, *pp.* devoured, 5589.
- Frett, *pp.* adorned, decked, covered, 4766; Fret (Frett), 1542. A.S. *frætwan*.
- Frettis, *pl.* ornaments, 4338. A.S. *frætwæ*.
- Freȝt (Friȝt), *pp.* frightened, 1441.
- Frigie, Phrygia, 5674; (Frige), 2116.
- (Frist), *adv.* first, 805*, 1067; (On þe first), among the first, 2347 (where MS. A. has *on first*).
- Frithis, *pl.* friths, forests, woods, 4131.
- Frithmen, *pl.* woodmen, men of the wood, 5597.
- Fro, *prep.* from, 2691; (Fro), 742*, 842, 1056; *conj.* from the time that, 725*. See Fra.
- (From), *prep.* from, 831*.
- Frosen, *pp.* frozen, 3063.
- Frusch (Frush), *s.* charge, rush, onset, 1215. See the Troy-book.
- Frute, *s.* fruit, 4608; offspring, 575; Frutis, *pl.* fruits, 4636; Frutes, 5238; (Frute, *s.*), 2426.
- Frynde (Frend), friend, 864; (Frende), 2944; Frynd (Frend), 2720; Fryndis (Frendes), *pl.* 3421; Frynde (Frendes), *pl.* 1258.
- Fude (Fode), *s.* food, 2168. See Fode.
- (Fullŷyll), *imp. s.* fulfil, 3173.
- Full, *adj.* full, 56, 65, 66, 112, 358, &c. In l. 1275, the phr. 'full of themselves' seems to mean full of their troubles, full of anxieties. In l. 2168, we have *at the full* = fully.
- Full, *adv.* very, 55, 129, 143, 171, 176, 234, &c.; (Ful hey), very high, 779.
- (Fully), *adv.* full, 1530.
- Fulth, *s.* plenty, abundance, fullness, 2171.
- Fundirs (Fonders), *pr. s.* founders, trips up, 846.
- Furelange, *pl.* furlongs, 3856. See Forlange.
- (Furelenth), *s.* furrow's length, furlong, 2898.
- Furrers, *pl.* furs, 4338. O.F. *fourrure*, fur.
- Furth, *adv.* forth, 53, 120, 286, 335; far on, 375; forward, 636, 3829; Furthe, forth, away, 333, 408, 621; Furth in with euyne, forth into the even, far advanced in the evening, 3055.
- (Furthers), *imp. pl.* assist, 2700.
- Fute, *s.* foot, 545. See Fote.
- Fuyll (Ful), *adv.* full, very, 2197. See Full.
- Fyaunce (Fiance), confidence, 1641.
- Fyfe, five, 633.
- Fyfte, fifth, 3345.
- Fyftene, fifteen, 1078.
- Fyfti, *adj.* fifty, 3785.
- Fygis, *pl.* figs, 4821.
- Fygour (Figour), *s.* figure, 2867; appearance, 312; Figoure, 613.
- Fyld (Feld), *s.* field, 1943.
- (Fyll), 1 *pr. pl. subj.* may fill, 2168*.
- Fynde, *ger.*; To fynde, to be found, 3799; Fynd, 1 *pr. s.* I find, 24, 272, 300, 308, 643; Fyndis (Fyndes), *pr. s.* finds, 821, 1315, 1656; (Fyndeȝ), 962, 1078, (Fyndes hym), *pr. s.* finds himself, finds out his true value, comes to himself, 3366.
- Fyne, *adj.* fine, 1542, 1590; good, 814*; fine, clear, transparent, 4853.
- Fyne, *adv.* finely, 2766.
- Fynely, *adv.* finely, 3220.
- Fynes, *pr. s.* finishes, ends, dies, 4002*; ends, 740*, 5626; Fyne, *imp. s.* cease, 1990; (Fynynd), *pt. s.* ended, died, 3100; Fyne,

- imp. s.* cease, leave off trying, 2720.
- Fynesch, *ger.* to finish, to put an end to, 3976 (it means—it suits him better to finish the fight himself); Fynyst (Fynyshit), *pt. s.* finished, ended, died, 808; (Fynes-hit), *pp.* accomplished, 797*; Fynyst (Fynyshyt), finished, 687.
- Fynest, *adj. superl.* finest, 3368.
- Fynger, finger, 1089; Fyngirs, *pl.* 673.
- (Fyre), fire, 750*; Fyris, *pl.* 3859; see Bale-fyre.
- Fyrmament, firmament, 567.
- Fyrs, *adj.* fierce, 418. See Fers.
- Fysche-hale (Fyssh-hole), *adj.* as sound as a fish, 2575 Cf. “As sound as a trout,” and “as sound as a roach”; see the note, p. 303.
- Fyschis, *pl.* fishes, 3947.
- Fysyke, *s.* physic, 4280.
- Fytt, *s.* fit, canto, 740*. See Fitt.
- Fyue (Fyfe), *num.* five, 1196, 1372, 3175.
- Fyzt, *s.* fight, 450.
- Gaa, *ger.* to go, 5515; (Go), depart, 1826; to move about, 5296; Ga, *ger.* to go, 966; (Go), 2873; Gaa, *v.* proceed, 636; Ga (Go), *v.* go, 1717; Ga (Gay), *pr. s.* 1 p. I go, 1671; Ga, 2 *pr. pl.* go, 459; Ga, *imp. s.* 5406; Gaes (Gose), *pr. s.* *refl.* goes, 3016; Gais him (Gase), goes, 1451; Gais him vp, goes up, 535.
- Gadirs (Gaders), name of a place, 1200, 1243, 1335.
- Gafe, *pt. pl.* gave, 1070; (Gaue), 742; Gaffe, uttered, 5157.
- Gai, *adj.* gay, 3797.
- Gaist, *adj. superl.* gayest, 5124.
- Gailis (Galays), *pl.* galleys, 2474. See Galays.
- Gais; see Gaa.
- Gais, an error (probably) for Girt, *pp.* struck, 3645. Cf. *thurgh-girt* in Chaucer.
- Galawis (Galouse), *pl.* gallows, 1813.
- Galays, *pl.* galleys, 2456; Gales, 65. See Gailis.
- Gale, *s.* gale, a kind of plant, 4094.
- “Gayle, *mirtus*,” Cath. Anglicum, q. v.
- Gales (Galez), *pr. s.* speaks, 2257; (Galet), *pp.* announced (lit. sung, said), 798*. Icel. *gala*.
- Galt, *s.* boar-pig, 4743. See *Galte* in Cath. Anglicum.
- Gamarody, name, 5491.
- Gamen (Gamme), *s.* sport, amusement, 2280, 2604; Gammen (Gamen), 2272; (Gamez), *pl.* 2259; (Gammez), 1773.
- Gamen, *v.* play, sport, 4370.
- Gan, *pt. pl.* did, 201.
- Gane, *pp.* gone, 5553; dead, 4008; Gane many winter, many years ago, 692, 3556.
- Gang, *ger.* to go, 5535; Gange, 1257; *v.* 5047.
- Gangem, Ganges, 4188; Gangan, 4715.
- Gapand, *pres. part.* gaping, 3870.
- Gardens, *pl.* guardians, 3409.
- Garettis, *pl.* watch-towers (lit. garrets), 5601; Garettis (Garrates), 1417.
- Garisons, *pl.* stores, treasures, 4430, 5631; (Garison), 1809. O.F. *garison*. See Garsons.
- Garland, *s.* garland of victory, 818; Garlands, *pl.* 4599.
- Garment, *s.* garment, 1588.
- Garnad, Granada, 5667.
- Garnyscht, *pp.* garnished, 4451; Garnest (Garneshed), adorned, 1533.
- Garsons (Garisons), *pl.* rewards, 1662; Garsons, tributes, sums, 1074. See Garisons.
- Garysons, *s. pl.* (Garyson, *sing.*), garrisons, 3015. See Garisons.
- Gas; see Gase, Gaa.
- Gasa (Gaza), Gaza, 1451, 1453.
- Gascoyne, Gascony, 5667.
- Gase, *pr. s.* goes, 631; Gase him, goes, 332, 1183; Gase (Goys), 1285; (Goyse), 3216; Gas (Gays), 1648; Gase, *imp. pl.* go ye, 3522.
- Gast, *s.* spirit, 4065; life, 726*.
- Gat, 1 *pt. s.* begat, 724*; Gatt, *pt. s.* 1190; Gate, *pt. pl.* got, 3653.
- Gate, *s.* way, road, passage, 3339, 4625, 812*; Gate vp, ascent, 5636; Gatis, *pl.* roads, 143; paths,

- tracks, 4830; (Gatez), streets, 1519; His gate, on its own way, in its own direction, 1310.
- Gaude (Gaud), *s.* trick, 2966; Gaudis (Gawdes), *pl.* gauds, ornaments, vanities, 2732.
- (Gauē), *pt. s.* gave, 726*; Gauē (Gafe), 1778.
- (Gay), *adv.* gay, 790*; Gay, *adv.* gaily, 1533.
- Gayly, *adv.* gaily, 4911; Gaile, beautifully, 3346.
- Gaynes, *pr. s.* avails, 181; Gayn, *pr. pl.* advance, promote, 2746. Icel. *gagna*, to help, be of use.
- Gaynest, *adj. superl.* nearest, shortest (way), 3484; At the gaynest (ganest), by the nearest way, 1137, 1318. See below.
- Gaynir, *adj. comp.* nearer, 5512. Icel. *gegn*, near, convenient.
- Gedire (Gedir), *v.* gather, 2531; (Geder), 1809; Gedire (Geder), *ger.* 2101; (Gedder), *ger.* 3129; Gedirs, *pr. s.* gathers, 1334; Gedirs him, gathers for himself, 911; Gedirs, *pr. pl.* gather, 3958; (Gerdyn, for Gedryn), 2054; Gedird, *pt. s.* gathered, 3480; Gedird, *pp.* 338, 5439; (Gederit), 1739; (Gedderyd), 2830.
- Geere (Gere), *s.* stuff, gear, provision, 3177.
- Geet, *pr. pl. 2 p.* get, 4468.
- Gefe, *ger.* to give, 3772; (Gefe), *v.* 1980; (Gyfe), *v.* 1826; Geffe, *pr. s. imp.* may give, 5254; Gefē, *imp. pl. 1 p.* let us give (up), 181; Gefes, *imp. pl.* give, 1035. See Geue.
- Gemetry, geometry, 339; Gemetri, 43; *written* Gremetry, 410.
- Gemmes, *pl.* gems, 3670; (Gemmys), 978, 1535, 2396; Gemmys, 3224; Gemes, 3951.
- Generall, *adj. as s.* a general meeting, 1507.
- Genosopis, *pl.* gymnosophists, 4022.
- Gentill, *adj.* gentle, 4022; (Gentyll), 705; Gentils, gentry, 3402.
- Gentilli, *adv.* skilfully, completely, thoroughly, 43.
- Gentill-man (Gentell-man), *s.* gentleman, 2664.
- Gere, *s.* gear, dress, 4599; equipment, 824*, 3034; implements, 131; warlike preparation, 2129; trappings for a horse, accoutrements (used of a bridle), 790*; (Gere), dress, 2905; Geris, *pl.* toys, playthings, 1773.
- Gernets, *pl.* pomegranates, 4724; Gernetts, 5238.
- Gerrethis, *pl.* girths, bands, 5536.
- Gers, *pr. s.* makes, 1219, 4441, 4762; causes, 5155; Gert, *pt. s.* made, 5535; caused, 3860; *pt. pl.* made, 5480; Gert make, caused to be made, 191. Icel. *gjöra*.
- Gesse, *v.* suppose, 5000; discern, 4216; Gesse, 1 *pr. s.* suppose, imagine, 990, 5632; (Ges), 2732; Ges (Gesse), 577, 2507; Gessis, *pr. s.* supposes, 5512; Geses (Gessed, *pt. s.*), 2071; Gessis (Gessys), *pr. s. refl.* expects, 2670; Gesse, *pr. pl. 2 p.* suppose, 4495, 4578; Gesses (Gessyn), *pr. pl.* suppose, 2905; Gessid (Gessyd), *pp.* guessed, supposed, 3266.
- Gesse, *s.* guess, thought, supposition, 3552.
- Gest, *s.* guest, 5254; Gestis, *pl.* 485, 497; bedfellows, 460; (Gestes), guests, 2948.
- Gest, *s.* story, 4022.
- Gett, *v.* get, 188, 1440; *ger.* to win, 794; Geten, *pp.* begotten, 473, 3578; (Gettyn), 756, 973; won, 1453; Getis, *imp. pl.* get, obtain, 2468.
- Gett, *s.* child, one who is begotten, 391, 435, 473, 577.
- Geue, *ger.* to give, 5377; Geues (Gyfez), *pr. s.* 1662; Geuys (Gyfez), 1074; Geuyn (Geven), *pt. pl.* gave, 2327; Geuyn (Gefyn), *pp.* given, 1883; Geuyn *vp.* given up, 813. See Gefē.
- Gide, *s.* guide, 4953, 5047.
- Gidis, *pr. s.* guides, 5387; Gidid, *pp.* guided, 4425.
- Gife, *conj.* if, 565.
- Giffe, *v.* to give (*but an error for* Giffis, gives), 4184.
- Giftis, *pl.* gifts, 3777; (Gyftes), 3128; (Gyftez), 1660, 2027.

- Gilden, *adj.* golden, 3667, 4985; Gildin, 5601.
- Gile, *s.* guile, treachery, 2574.
- Gild, *pt. s.* beguiled, 417.
- Gill-stremes, *pl.* cascades, 3231. (*Wrongly gylle-stormez in the Dublin MS.*) Icel. *gíl*, a ravine.
- Gilt, *s.* guilt, fault, offence, 2384, 2434, 3525; (Gilt), 3213.
- Gilt, *adj.* gilt, gilded, 1873; (Gilt), 790*.
- Gilt (Giltyd), *pt. s.* offended, 2430; Giltid, *pp.* sinned, 472.
- Giltén, *adj.* gilded, 3456, 4451.
- Gilty (Gylty), *adj.* guilty, 2574.
- Ging, *s.* gang, following, host, company, 3484, 4715; (Genge), 3015; (Gyn), 1213, 2038; Ginge, 3618, 5456; (Geng), 2674; Gingis (Gyng), *pl.* followers, retinue, 1648; companies (of you), 2435. In ll. 1213, 2038, the Dublin MS. has *gyn* = device, plan (wrongly).
- Gingere, ginger, 5426.
- Girdill, girdle, 181; (Girdyll), 758. See the note to l. 179, p. 288.
- Girdis, *pr. s.* strikes, pierces, 1219; (Girdes), 1213; Girdes (Grydes), throws, flings, 2278; Girdis out (Gyrdes oute), bursts out, 3159; Girdis, *pr. pl.* beat, 2474; strike, 796; Girds, strike, spring, leap, 3845; Girdis (Gyrdyn), throw, 2227; Girdis (Girdes), *pr. pl.* strike, 1417; Girdis vp (Girdes vp), rush up, climb up, 1435; Girdid, *pt. pl.* burst, rushed, 3231; Gird, *pp.* beaten, 1865; Gird (Girde), struck, 2787; Girdand, *pres. part.* dashing, rushing, 1243. See *garden* in Matzner, p. 332.
- Girdis, *pr. s. refl.* surrounds himself, 2038. The Dublin MS. has *girdes in*, strikes in, attacks.
- Gingne, *s.* June, 3537.
- Glaun, *s.* clamour, loud talking, 5504. Icel. *glam*, noise.
- Glacc (Glas), *s.* ice, 3002.
- Glad, *adj.* glad, 1257; Glade (Glad), *adj.* glad, rejoicing, 3244.
- Glade, *v.* rejoice, 4370; Gladis, *pr. s.* gladdens, cheers, encourages, 485, 3929; Gladdes, 966; (Glad), 1 *pr. s. subj.* may please, 724*.
- Gladen, *s.* gladdon, a kind of flag or iris, esp. the stinking iris (*Iris fœtidissima*), 4094.
- Gladen, *s.* a lucky moment, 131. "A gladen he waytis," he watches for a lucky moment. This is clearly the sense. The Icel. *gláðr* means (1) glad, (2) bright, said of sky or weather. Hence Icel. *gláðna*, to brighten up, said of the weather, from which verb the word here used is derived. Similarly, we have prov. E. (Northern) *gladden*, explained as (1) a glade [E. D. S. Gloss. 1] or (2) a void space free from encumbrances [E. D. S. Gloss. 17], i. e. a clear space, with reference to *space* instead of *time*.
- Gladnes (Gladnesse), *s.* gladness, 1971.
- Glas, *s.* glass, 4463, 5536. (Glasynand); see Glyssynand.
- Glaui, *s.* glaver, chattering, noise of tongues, 5504. See Matzner.
- Gledis, *pl.* burning coals, glowing or live coals, 226, 3627, 3898; (Gledes), 2474; Gledes, 2975. A.S. *gléd*.
- Gleme, *s.* gleam, 2044, 4817.
- Glent, *pt. s.* glinted, shone, 4817.
- Glesenyd, *pt. pl.* glistened, 3797; Glesenand, *pres. pt.* 603.
- Gletirand, *pres. pt.* glittering, 3346.
- Glett, *s.* mud, slime, 4516; clay, 4490. See Matzner.
- Glide, *v. pass.* come, 358; Glidis, *pr. s.* glides, flows, 3233; (Glydes), glides, 1310; Glidis (Glad, *pt. s.*), *pr. s.* glides, 2451; Glid, *pp.* glided, 2857; Glidand (Glydand), *pr. pt.* gliding, 1079.
- Glitered, *pt. s.* glittered, 4957; Glitirand, *pres. part.* 3797; Glitirand, 3686; Glitterand, 5536.
- Glode, *s.* way, path, track, road, 1334. A.S. *gelād*.
- Glorand, *pres. pt.* staring, gazing fixedly, glaring, 4552, 4728; gleaming, 3627. Icel. *glóra*, to stare, glare like a cat's eyes.
- Glori, *s.* glory, 1730; (Glory), 1983; Glorie (Glory), 1883, 1971.

- Glorioses (Gloriest), *adj. superl.* most glorious, 1611.
 Glorius, *adj.* glorious, 2776.
 Glotony, *s.* gluttony, 3265.
 Glove (Glofe), *s.* glove, 1984;
 Gloues, *pl.* gloves, 2767; *see* Nethire.
 Gloumes, *pr. s.* becomes gloomy, is overcast, 4142. Cf. *E. glum.*
 (Glowys), *pr. s.* glows, 3368.
 Gluttis, *pl.* gluttons, 4552. So in P. Plowman's Crede. O.F. *glout*; Roquefort.
 Glyffe, *ger.* to dazzle, glare, look bright, 4599. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *gliff*, a glimpse.
 Glyssynand (Glasynand), *pres. part.* glistening, glittering, 3015.
 Gnaistes, *pr. s.* gnashes, 5321.
 (Go), 1 *pr. s.* go, 2280. *See* Gaa.
 Gobet, *s.* gobbet, morsel, 4516; (Gobett), piece, 1310.
 Goblets, *pl.* goblets, 3701; Goblettis, 5131; Gobletis (Goblettes), 2935; Goblettis (Goblettez), 2948.
 Goblyn, *s.* goblin, 5491.
 Gode (God), *s.* God, 329, 1073, 2905; Godis (Goddess), *gen.* God's, 876; Gods (Godez), 1591; Godis, *pl.* gods, 307, 5410; Goddis, 271, 5394.
 (Gode), *adj.* good, 804*.
 Godesses, *pl.* goddesses, 1874.
 Godhede, *s.* godhead, 5622.
 Godlaik, *s.* goodness, virtue, 4688.
 Godness (Gudnes), *s.* goodness, 3270.
 Gods (Gudez), *pl.* goods, wealth, 3280.
 Gogg, Gog, 5487.
 Golanand, *pres. pt.* blowing; hence, rainy, tempestuous, 4796. Cf. Icel. *gola, gula*, a fair breeze, *gol*, a breeze; *E. gale*.
 Gold, *s.* gold, 276, 436, 607; gold (spurs), 5458 (*see* the note); (Goldes), *pl.* gold coins, 1847.
 Golden, *adj.* golden, 201; (Gold), 1533; Golde, 425.
 Gols, *s.* red, gules, a red colour (*see* the note), 4819.
 Gome, *s.* man, 391, 417, 435, 516, 742, 818, 966, 1467, 1691, 2259, 2384, 3276; (Grome), 1190, 1936; Gomes, *pl.* men, 1417, 2054, 3387, 3552; (living) men, 3686; statues of men, 5276; (Gomez), 1657, 1739, 2531; Gomes, *pl. gen.* of men, 4272.
 Gone, *pr. pl.* go, 3456.
 Gorge, *s.* throat, 3627; Gorg, neck, 4985.
 Gorred, *pp.* gored, 3645.
 Gose, *pr. s.* goes, 5050.
 Goste, *s.* spirit, soul, 4484. *See* Gast.
 Gostid, spiritual, endowed with spirits, 1874.
 Gotis, *pl.* streams, 4796. A *gote* is properly a mill-stream; cf. "*goyts* of mills, where the stream passes out;" E. D. S. Gloss. B. 17.
 Gouverne (Goueryne), *v.* govern, rule, 3387 (*where* the Ashmole MS. has *gounere*); (Gouern), 1973.
 Gouvernour (Gouernour), *s.* governor, 1623, 1936; (Gubernare), 852; (Gouerners, *pl.* rulers, 3552.
 Goules, gules, red, 4989, 5060; of a red colour, 3368.
 (Goys), *pr. s.* goes, 2111.
 Grace, *s.* favour, grace, 307, 358, 994; success, glory, 2534; Gracis, *pl.* prayers, lit. thanks, 5394.
 (Graceux), gracious, 798*.
 Gracious, *adj.* beautiful, 3667; (Graciously), gracious, 1748, 1844; (Gracieux), favouring, 1964.
 Graciouses, *adj. superl.* most handsome, 4909.
 Gradid (Gradit), *pp.* degraded, 2430.
 Graffis, *pl.* graves, 4451.
 Graithe, *v.* prepare (myself) to go, direct (myself), 3522; Graithes (Grathez), *pr. s.* prepares, 3016; Graithes him, arms himself, 911; (Grathez hym), prepares himself, 3159; Graith, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* appoint, 4499; Graithed (Grathed), *pt. pl.* prepared, 1933; Graithid (Grath-ed), *pp.* arrayed, 1844; Graithis, *imp. pl.* yield, prepare, 1904. Icel. *greiða*. *See* Grathez.
 Graithly (Grathly), *adv.* readily, worthily, 756; Graithly, readily, 201. Icel. *greiðr*.
 Graithist (Grethiest), *adj. superl.* best prepared, hence, richest, 1865. Icel. *greiðr*.
 Gramere, grammar, 631.

Granate, *s.* garnet, 3344, 3368.

Grane, *v.* groan, 1219; Granys (Granes), *pr. s.* 717; (Gronys), 3252.

(Grane), *s.* groan, 726*.

Grant (Graunt), *ger.* to grant, to ransom, 3103; (Graunte), *v.* grant, 1671, 1676; Grantis, *pr. s.* grants, 362; Grant (Graunt), *pr. s. subj.* grant, allow, 3125; 2 *pr. pl.* grant, 1826; Grantid, *pp.* granted, 5317. See Graunt.

Granton (Grantum), the river Granicus, 3002, 3016, 3062, 3133; (Gratum), 2882.

Grape, *s.* grape, 2426; (Grope), 1347; Grapis, 3667, 4724, 5239.

(Grase), *s.* grass, 2426.

(Grathez on), *pr. s.* puts on, dons, 790*; (Grathes hym), gets ready, 812*; Grathis (Grathen), *pr. pl.* get ready, 2456; Graped, *pp.* prepared, ready, 131; Grapid (Grathed), arrayed, 1588; (Grathyd), made, 3387; (Grathed), armed, 1213. See Graithie.

Grattest, *adj. superl.* greatest, 5131.

Graue, *v.* engrave, 201; *ger.* to bury, 1330; Graue, *for* Graues, *pr. s.* buries, 3659; Grauen. *pp.* buried, 3319, 5417; engraved, graven, 436, 1591, 3343; Grauen (Grafen), engraved, 3145.

Grauns, *pl.* graves (*s.* Graue), 2101; Graues (Grafys), 3130.

Graunt, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* grant, 516, 1684, 804*; Grauntis (Grauntez), *pr. s.* 2295; Graunt (*for* Graunted), *pp.* granted, 3296. See Grant.

Graunt, *adj.* great, 1737, 5668; Graunt mercy, many thanks, gra-mercy, 370, 458.

Graunt, *s.* permission, 990.

(Graunt), *s.* grant, grace, 2387. (Corrupt.)

Gray, gray, 1330, 2044.

Grayd, *adv.* excellently, 3689. Cf. Scot. *graid*, made ready, short for *grathid*; also *grayd* for *grathyd* in lines 3339, 3348.

Grayne, *s.* grain, small portion, 5622; (Grane), grain, seed, 2426; Graynes (Granes), *pl.* seeds, 1984, 2071; granules ?, 3375; grains,

spots, 4989; Grayns (Granes), seeds, 2024.

Grayne, *s.* arm (of the sea), branch (of the sea), 2451. Icel. *grein*. See *Grain* in Jamieson.

Grayne, *meaning uncertain*, 2767; *perhaps it means* (skins) dyed in grain. (*Grayue* means a greave, but this hardly helps us.) In fact, we find *greyn* used in the sense of 'stuff dyed in grain' in the Babees Book, p. 178—"wheþur he were saten, sendell, vellewet, scarlet, or *greyn*." Or it may actually mean 'tanned leather'; for Hexham gives a Middle Du. verb *granen*, to tan leather, and *graner*, a tanner; whilst Jamieson gives *grainer*, the knife used by tanners and skinners for stripping the hair from the skins.

Graythe (Grath), *v.* prepare, get ready, 2873; Grayth, 5535; Graythe (Grath), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* direct, 1984; Graythis (Grathez), *pr. s.* gets ready, 3133; Graythes (Grathes), prepares, 2129; Graythis (Grathes) him. *pr. s. refl.* prepares himself, 1453; Graythid, *pt. s.* prepared, 3480; Graythed, *pp.* prepared, 4878; Graythid, formed, constituted, 1874; Graythid (Grathyd), adorned, set, 2935; prepared, 2767; *shortened to* Grayd, prepared, 3339, 3348; Graythe, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* get ready, 5037. Icel. *greiða*. See Graithie.

Graythe, *s.* machine, gear, contrivance, 5518. From the verb.

Graythist, *in comp.* Alpine-graythist, i.e. most excellent (or benevolent) of all, 162. See Graithely.

Grayuyn, *pp.* engraven, 425. See Graue.

Gre, *s.* degree, hence victory, 3296 (*for ore read is in this line*); (Gree), 3125; prize, 818. See Gree.

Grece, Greece, 852, 994, 1435, 1657, &c.; *written* Grace, 1753.

Grece, *s.* stairs, 535, 5050; Grecis, 332. Grece = *grees*, *pl.* of *gree*, a step. Grecis = *gree-s-es*, a double plural.

- Grecen (Grecken), *gen. pl.* of the Greeks, 3216.
 Gredely, *adv.* greedily, eagerly, 1435.
 Gree, *s.* victory, superiority, 3518, 3651, 3756, 5456; (Gre), 994, 1883, 2278. O.F. *gre*, from Lat. *gradus*. See Gre.
 Grefe, *s.* grief, 1285; harm, 4157; Gref (Grefe), grief, trouble, 2435. (Grefully), *adv.* extremely, 973. Put for *gref-fully*, i. e. grievously.
 Grege (Grig), *s.* grig, cricket, 1753.
 Greke, the Greek language, 5009.
 Grekin, Grecian, 5504, 5639.
 Grekis (Grekez), *pl.* Greeks, 986, 1179, 1279, &c.
 Greme, *s.* anger, 4157. Icel. *gremi*. (Gremly), *adj.* terrible, 726*.
 Grene, *adj.* green, 5536.
 Grese, *s.* grass, herbs, 338.
 Grete, *s.* a kind of stone, 1330. Properly 'gravel' (A.S. *grēot*); but see examples in Mätzner, s. v. *greet*, of its use for sepulchral purposes.
 Grete, *adj.* great, 26, 65, 358, 852, 1809; great with child, 459; (Grett), 1873; great (one), 1347; Gret (Grete), 1254; (Gret), 1352.
 Grete, *ger.* to weep, 872, 5042; *v.* 3159; Gretis, *pr. s.* 3320; (Gretes), 1285; (Grettez), 973; Grete, *pr. pl.* 1 p. weep, 4370; Gretis, *pr. pl.* 155. A.S. *grētan*.
 (Grethest), *adj. superl.* most excellent, 1591. (But read *grettest*, as in the Ashmole MS.)
 Gretis, *pr. s.* greets, 79, 535; (Gretes), 1488; *pr. pl.* 1603; Grete (Gret), 1 *pt. s.* saluted, 1623.
 Gretly, *adv.* greatly, 472; (Grettly), 2746.
 Gretter, *adj. comp.* greater, 5300; Grettir, 1334; (Gretter), 1267.
 Grettest, *adj. superl.* greatest, 271; (Grethest, *wrongly*), 1591; (Gret-est), 1904, 1911; Grettist, 307.
 Grettis, *pl.* great (men), 3651.
 Gretying, *s.* weeping, 3238.
 Greues, *pr. pl.* pain, 2012.
 Greues, *pl.* greaves, 3898.
 Greues, *pl.* groves, 4044; Greuys, 4584, 4953; Greues (Gravez), 2857.
 Greuously, *adv.* grievously, 973, 2787; Greuosly, 796.
 Greuys, *pr. s.* grieves, 472; Greued (Grefyd), *pt. s.* grieved, harmed, 2544; Greued, *pp.* grieved, vexed, troubled, 874; Greuyd (Grevyde), 1342; (Greved), 1467; Greues (Grefez), *imp. pl.* grieve, 2434.
 Grew, *pt. s.* 1 p. grew, became, 3280.
 Grew, Greek, 4710, 5012.
 Grew, *s.* (for Gree), degree, bit, 3270. (The Dublin MS. has dele.) It can hardly be the Gk. γρῦ.
 Grewis, *pl.* groves, 4725. See Greues.
 Gridis, *pl.* outcries, 544. Such seems to be the sense; but the preservation of this O.F. form *gride* is remarkable, as the usual O.F. form is always *cri*; only Italian has the form *grido*, a cry, shriek, outcry. The Span. has *grita*, but *grida* occurs in O. Spanish. See Diez, s. v. *gridare*.
 Griffons, *pl.* griffins, 5439, 5518.
 Grindand, *pres. pt.* grinding, 4552.
 Gripis, *pr. pl.* seize, 5453.
 Gripis, *pl.* vultures, 5439; Gripis gripis of our gomes, vultures seize upon our men, 5453.
 Grippis, *pl.* pangs, 544.
 Grisely, *adj.* grisly, horrible, 4728; *adv.* frightfully, 3870.
 Gro, *s.* shuddering, horror, 3238. (But perhaps read grone, as in Dublin MS.) Cf. Dan. *gru*, horror.
 Groched, *pp.* begrudged, 1467.
 Grofe, *s.* cave, 5394. Grove is the regular word for 'mine' among the Derbyshire miners; E. D. S. Gloss. B. 10.
 (Grome), *s.* man, 2101.
 Grond, *s.* ground, land, 3077, 4705; origin, 5410; (Ground), ground, 2787, 2857; Gronde, ground, 188; (Grund), land, 1973; (Grunde), ground, 1215. See Ground.
 Gronde, *pr. pl.* 2 p. ground, found (upon), base (upon), rely (upon), 4490. See Grond.
 (Grone), *s.* groaning, 3238.
 Groned, *pt. s.* groaned, grunted, 4743.

- Grouelings, *adv.* in a grovelling posture, bending forward, 5276.
- Ground, *s.* real reason, source, 476; ground, earth, 162, 1964; Grounde (Grund), ground, 2278.
- Growis, *pr. s.* grows, 3683; *pr. pl.* (or *s.*), grow, 2426; Groued, *pt. s.* grew, 4978; Growen, *pp.* grown, 5622; mature, 1347; Growand, *pres. part.* growing, 5238.
- Grub (Grob), *s.* grub, 1753.
- Grune, *pp.* ground, pounded, 338. Short for *grunden*.
- Grym, *adj.* grim, terrible, threatening, 26, 65, 5408, 5435; large, 1079; (Grymme), 1085; Grym (Greme), *adj.* bitter, sad, 3238.
- Grym, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* grow angry, or rather *adj.* angry (are being understood), 4653. The M. E. *verb* is *gremen*.
- Grymly, *adv.* terribly, 603; fiercely, 796.
- Gryn, *adj.* (for Grym), grim, 5491.
- Grype (Gripe), *s.* bunch of grapes, cluster, lit. handful, 1347. So the O.F. *grappe* means 'a cluster,' not a single grape.
- Grysely, *adj.* terrible, 5397; horrible, 4743; (Gryslyche), terrible, 3238.
- Gryselly, *adv.* horribly, grisly, severely, 3645; (Grysly), terribly, 796.
- Gud, *adj.* good, 459; (Gude), 1074; (God), 731; precious, 1662; Gude, 390, 3128; sufficient, 3585 (in which line read *vs* for *30w*).
- Gud (Gude), *adv.* well; And þaim gud pinke, if it seem well to them, 2948.
- Gude (Goode), *s.* property, 1778. See Gudis.
- Gudis (Godez), *pl.* goods, wealth, property, possessions, 1852; (Goddez), 1865; Gudis (Gudez), *pl.* goods, wealth, 2738; Gudez (Gudez), possessions, 2683. See Guds.
- Gudly, *adv.* fairly, well, 485, 516.
- Gudman (Godman), master, lord, 2407; sir, 436; Gudmans, *gen. s.* hero's, 3433.
- Gudnes, *s.* goodness, mercy, 1747, 3103; (Goodnesse), 1676.
- Guds, *pl.* goods, property, 5377. See Gudis.
- Gun, *pt. s.* began, did, 394. See Gan.
- Gunnes (Gunnez), *pl.* guns, engines for casting stones, 2227.
- Gurds, *pl.* gourds, 3701.
- Guttars, *pl.* gutters, 4796; Gutars (Gutters), small streams, 3231.
- Gy (Gye), *ger.* to rule, direct, 3387.
- Gyane, Guienne, 5667.
- Gydid, *pp.* guided, governed, 197.
- Gyes (Gydez), *pr. s.* guides, 1642.
- Gyfes, *imp. pl.* give, 1904.
- Gyloffre, *s.* cloves, 5426.
- (Gyn), *s.* device, 812*, 1213, 2038. But in all three places it is obviously an error for *gyng*, a troop. See Ging.
- (Gynge), *s.* gang, company, 2129. See Ging.
- (Gyrddand), *pres. pt.* bursting, 3231.
- Gyse, manner, fashion, 631.
- Haare, *s.* hair, 5476.
- Habet, *s.* habit, dress, 3513.
- Habitacle, *s.* habitation, 4334.
- (Hable), 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst strengthen, lit. make able, 1768.
- Hade (error for Haue as in Dublin MS.), have, get, obtain, 2839.
- Hafe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* have, 461; (Haue), *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* 1004; Hade, 1 *pt. s.* had, 584; 2 *pt. s.* hadst, 5327; Had (Hade), 2 *pt. s. subj.* had, 1739; Hade, *pt. s.* 592; Had, 71, 190; Hadd, 346, 3204; Had (Haddon), *pt. pl.* had, i. e. made way, 803; Hadd, had, 571; (Haddyn), 1447.
- Haile, *interj.* hail! 228, 235, 4929, 4932; (Hale), 1066.
- Haile-stanes, *pl.* hailstones, 3047.
- (Haile), *s.* health; Euill haille, ill success, 1759.
- Hailsis, *pr. s.* greets, salutes, 4929. Icel. *heilsa*. See Haylsid.
- Haire (Heer), *adj.* hoary, bare, 776. Icel. *harr*. hoary, white. The reference is to the hoary appearance of old bare trees in winter. The epithet 'hoary,' better spelt *hare* [for *haire* and *heer* properly

- mean 'hair'], is the stock epithet of trees and forests in alliterative poetry, so that the sense is certain. Cf. 'hore okez' in Gawain and the Grene Knight, 743. Jamieson gives examples of 'ane hare wode,' a hoary wood, from Wyntown, viii. 26. 228, and 'ane hare wode' from Douglas's Virgil; but wrongly supposes the etymology to be from A.S. *hær*, hair. It is from A.S. *hár*, hoary. See also Hare (below), and note to l. 70.
- Hald, *v.* hold, keep, 1093; perform, 366; (Held), hold, keep, observe, 1075; Hald, *ger.* to hold, 5542; to keep, 1596; Halden (Hald), *v.* to hold it, 2296; Hald, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* hold, account, 1102; hold (it as right), recommend, 5048; consider, 4579; (Halde), esteem, 1862; Haldis, *pr. s.* holds, 57; esteems, 3722; beholds (lit. holds), 1527; (Haldez), 948; Haldis (Haldes), *pr. s.* holds, 917; Haldis on (Heldes on), proceeds, 820; (Haldes), holds, 780*; Hald, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* keep, 4267; (Halden), *pr. pl.* hold (their way), go, 1123; Halden, *pp.* kept (so), 5522; seized, 2808; held back, 4759; bound, 5341; beholden, bound, 1679; held, 441; Halden (Haldyn), *pp.* esteemed, 2389; (Halden), held as, 1913; (Haldyn), *pp.* considered, hence, named, 2540; esteemed, 2150.
- Hald, *s.* hold, grip, 1440.
- Haldit (Heldit), *pp.* inclined, given way, 2141. Icel. *halla*, to incline, swerve, lean over; Dan. *helde*, to tilt over.
- Hale, *adj.* whole, 441, 5126; sound, 102; complete, 632; solid, 4072; safe and sound, 820; whole, unburst, 4437; sound, good, 810*. Icel. *heill*.
- Hale, *v.* uplift (lit. hale, drag), 724; draw quickly, come, 2817; *pr. pl.* hale, drag, 5524; Halis, *pr. s.* rushes, 962; (Hales), hales, hauls, 854; Halis (Halez), *pr. pl.* hale, drag, 2224.
- Half, *s.* side, region; Fra half to halfe, from realm to realm, 4060; Halfe, side, 731; Halfis, *pl.* sides, 5451.
- Halfe, *adj.* half, 1368.
- Halfe-dede (Halfe-deyde), *adj.* half-dead, 962.
- Halidoms (Halydoms), *pl.* holy relics, 1466. Icel. *helgidómr*, Du. *heiligdom*.
- Hall, hall, 490; Halle, 2922; (Halle), 854.
- Hallis, *pl.* (for Halis), tents, 4148. "Hale, a tent, pavilion;" see Halliwell.
- Halowe, *ger.* to consecrate, keep as a holy day, 3463.
- Halows, *pl.* holy ones, saints, 4915.
- Hals (Halse), neck, 2654. A.S. *heals*.
- Halsis (Halsys), *pr. s.* embraces, 2576; (Halsys vmbe), *pr. s.* embraces, 3250; Halsid, *pt. s.* embraced, 5029.
- Haly, *adj.* holy, sacred, 584, 1457, 1600, 1636, 4939, 4996; (Holy), 1637.
- Haly, *adv.* wholly, 257, 1946; (Holy), 1780, 2744.
- Hame, *s.* home, 148, 461, 820; abode, dwelling, 4902, 5279; (Home), 2921; Hames, *pl.* homes, 4048, 4352, 4650; (Homez), houses, 3135.
- Hame-come, *s.* home-coming, return, 2890.
- Hames, *pl.* plumage, lit. coverings, 4986. A.S. *hama*.
- Hampire, *pr. pl.* torment, vex (lit. hamper), 4559 (Lat. text *cruciant*); Hampird, *pt. pl.* hampered, harassed, 4800.
- (Hanchyd), *pp.* eaten, gnawed; Som hanchyd of the heued, some with the head gnawed of, 774*. "*Hancher*, to graspe, or snatch at with the teeth;" Cotgrave.
- Hand, *s.* hand, 57, 114, 198; On hand, close at hand, 4791; At hand, near, 81; Hande, hand, 448, 980; To hande (To hand), to close combat, 1256; Vndire hand (Vnder hand), for manual skill, 2237; Handis, *pl.* hands, 5568, &c.

- Hand-ball (Hand-balle), *s.* ball to play with, 1895.
- Handille, *ger.* to handle, 2480.
- Hand-quile, *s.* short space of time, 5524; Hand-quyle, 632; (Hand-while), 3260, 3290. So in P. Plowman.
- Hand-tame, *adj.* hand-tame, so tame as to come to the hand, 504.
- Hand-werke, *s.* handiwork, 4346.
- Hangid (Hanged), *pp.* hanged, 2657.
- Hant, *ger.* to assemble, come together (lit. to haunt, frequent a place), 4729; Hantis, 2 *pr. pl.* practise; þe self hantis, practise the same, endeavour after that very thing, 4667; Hant, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* practise, 4484. O.F. *hanter*, to frequent, practise.
- Happe, *s.* fortune, 4346; Hap (Happe), good fortune, 3272; Happis, *pl.* haps; Apon happis, perhaps, haply, 4937.
- Happend (Happynd), *pp.* chanced, 2364.
- Hard, *adj.* hard, stiff, 2981; severe, 512, 527.
- Hard, *adv.* hardly, severely, 3287, 728*; hardly, 839.
- Hard, *s.* difficulty, 3004.
- Hardere, *adj. comp.* harder, 3894.
- (Hardly), *adv.* boldly, 777*.
- Hardy, *adj.* hard, 84; bold, strong, 2876. In l. 84 we should rather read *hard for to rekyn*.
- Hardynes, hardiness, 615, 658.
- Hare, *s.* hair, 227, 854; Haris, hairs, 320; (Horez), 1009.
- Hare, *adj.* hoary, gray-headed, 4996; hoary, hoar, bare, 70. See the note to l. 70, and remarks on Haire (above).
- Harecest, *adj. superl.* most hoary, whitest, 1062.
- Harlotry, *s.* evil-doing, wickedness, lechery, 4484, 4555.
- Harme, *s.* harm, 285, 638, 2220; Harnes, *pl.* injuries, crimes, wicked deeds, 3437.
- Harnes, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* do harm, do execution, 3879.
- (Harniez), *for* Armez, arms (of the body), 3237, 772*.
- Harnais, *s.* harness, armour, 3791.
- Harnas (Harnes), *imper. s.* let him harness, 998; Harnest, *pp.* armed, 3785. See above.
- (Harnepanne), 1902; see Hernepan.
- Harow, *s.* harrow, 4267; (Harrow), 1063; Harows, *pl.* 5573; Harowis, 3907.
- Has, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* hast, 348, 460, 463; Hase, 2712; Hase, *pr. s.* has, 2380; Has, 81; Hase, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* have, 2201; Has, *pr. pl.* have, 10, 471. See Hafe, Haue.
- (Haslokst), *adj. superl.* 1864. Certainly a corrupt reading; see the Ashmole MS. As it stands, it is a bad spelling of *hastlokest* = *hastilokest*, *superl.* of *hasty*, quick, rash.
- Hast, *s.* haste, 2817; In haste, 379.
- Hastely, *adv.* hastily, soon, speedily, 3784; Hastily (Hastely), 1457.
- Hastis, *pr. pl. refl.* hasten, 1116; Hast (Hastyd), *pt. s.* 3014.
- Hat, *pt. s.* was called, or *pr. s.* is called, 4903; Hatt, *pr. pl.* are called, 2199; (Haten), *pp.* named, 836*. See Hatten.
- Hate, *adj.* hot, 4080.
- Hate, *s.* hate, hatred, 921, 1979.
- (Hated), *error for* Heded, beheaded, 2582.
- (Hatellayke), *put for* Hathellayke, *i. e.* nobleness, 2505. See Hathill. But it is a false reading; read *lytillaik*.
- Hately, *adv.* hotly, 2910.
- Hathill, *adj.* noble, 447, 741, Hathille (Athell), noble, good, brave, 3164; Hatill (Athelles), *adj.* 1945. The spelling *athell* is the correct one; from A.S. *æðele*, noble. See below.
- Hathill, *s.* noble one, noble person, prince, lord, 84, 285, 1102, 2120, 4518; (Athell), 734, 777; Hathill (Athyll), prince, 3272; Hathils, *pl.* nobles, warriors, 584; (Hatels), 1002; (Athellys), 2086; (Hatellys), 1920. See above. In l. 747 it is misspelt Hatill.
- Hatirly (Hetterly), *adv.* severely, 2544; Haterly, passionately, 264. See *heter* in Stratmann. See Hatter.

Hatis (Hatez), *pr. pl.* hate, 2732.

(Hatness), *s.* hotness, rage, 2835.

Hatt (Hat), *s.* hat, 1714, 1895; (Hatte), 1900; Hattis (Hattes), *pl.* hats, 2981.

Hatten, *pp.* called, named, 40, 914, 1913, 2037, 2319, 2540, 4720, 5093; (Haten), 2106, 2297. A.S. *hāten*. See Hat.

Hatter, *adj.* cruel, 702; savage, 490. See *heter* and *hatel* in Stratmann; and see Hatirly.

Hatterly (Heterly), *adv.* fiercely, 803. See above.

Hattir, *s.* clothing, 4118. See *hatre* in Stratmann.

Haue, *ger.* to have, possess, 747, 919, 1669; Haue, *v.* 355, 575; Haue, *pr. s.* 1 p. 258, 585; Have, 98; Haues, 2 *pr. s.* hast, 1728, 3101; Hauys, 428; Hauys (Hase), *pr. s.* has, 1807; (Haue), 2 *pr. pl.* have, 734*; Haue, *pr. pl.* 272; Haue, *pr. s. subj.* if he have, 4537; 2 *pr. s. subj.* 470, 951; Haue, *imp. s.* 97, 731, 2240. See Hafe.

(Haven), *s.* haven, 1160.

Hauen-lest, *adj.* neediest, least possessed of wealth, 1864. A false superlative form of the *adj.* *hauenes* = A.S. *hafenlēas*, poor. Shropshire *avenless*, shiftless.

Hauke, 1 *pr. pl.* hawk, 4271.

Hauntis, 1 *pr. pl.* practice, 4329; enjoy, 3743; track to their home, pursue to their home, 4122; Hauntis, *pr. pl.* practise, use, show, 4021, Hauntid, *pt. s.* practised, used, 16, 4414.

Hauten, *adj.* haughty, 4255. F. *hautain*.

Hautes, *s.* haughtiness, 2835. O.F. *hautesse*, haughtiness; see Cotgrave.

Hawe, *s.* haw, the value of a haw, a whit, 2097.

Haylsid (Haylsed), *pt. s.* 1 p. worshipping, 1622. See Hailsis.

Haythen, *adj.* heathen, 5673.

He, *adj.* high, 70, 4863; On he, upwards, 2855.

He, *pron.* he, 19, 41, 42, &c.

(He); see Heje.

He, he (*where the Dublin MS. wrongly has Ere, formerly*), 3291.

He, *for* 3e, ye, 4487.

(Hed), *pt. s.* had, 812, 2976; 750*, 765*, 776*.

Hede, *s.* head, 438, 445, 494, 2552; chief, 2647; king, 148; (Hed), 702; (Heued), 2283; On hede, *adv.* headlong, 962; To hede, with respect to its head, 1375; Hedis, *pl.* heads, 3433; (Heddez), 2981.

Hede, *s.* heed, 3094.

Hedid, *pp.* beheaded, 2582, 3439; (Hedit), 2086; Heded, 2377.

Hedire, *adv.* hither, 5373; (Hyder), 2914; (Heder), 1923.

Hedire-to (Hyder), hitherto, 2364.

Hediretoward, *adv.* hitherto, 3517.

Hedirward (Hyderward), *adv.* hitherward, 740.

Hedis (Hedes). *pr. s.* takes heed, observes, looks, 3226; pays attention, 678; (Hedys), heeds, observes, 2627; (Hedes), 1527; Hedis, *imp. pl.* pay heed, 3879; (Hedes), take heed, 3094.

Hedous, *adj.* hideous, dreadful, 3926, 4862.

Hedously, *adv.* hideously, 5566; (Hydusly), 1150.

Heede (Heyd), *ger.* to watch, heed, 2220.

Heelis, *pl.* heels, 5476.

Heere, *s.* army, 4800, 5162; host, number, collection, 5126. A.S. *here*.

Heere (*for* Wode, *as in the Dublin MS.*), 776. See Haire.

Heff, *ger.* to heave, raise, exalt, 2708.

Heggis, *pl.* hedges, sticks, 5463.

(Hegh), *adj.* high, tall, 744*; (On hegh), on high, 1589; Heghe, high, 445.

(Heght), *pt. s.* hight, was called, 914.

(Heght), *s.* height; On heght, on high, 678.

Held, *ger.* incline, bow down, 726; (Heldes), *pr. s.* inclines, bows down, 726; sinks, 933*; Heldis, *pr. pl.* bow, 983; Heldid, *pt. s.* inclined, 227; (heldit), *pt. pl.* 983.

- See note to l. 227. A.S. *heldan*, *holden*.
 (H. lies), *pr. s.* holds (for beholds), 1539; Held, *pt. s.* held, had hold, 1346; Held, *pt. pl.* held; Held in, pressed in, 3912; (Heldyn), kept, 1616; Held, 2 *pt. pl.* (Halden, 2 *pr. pl.*), kept, 2436; Held, 1 *pt. s. subj.* should (not) have kept, 3437; (Held on), *imp. s.* hold on, continue, advance, 810*.
 (Heldest), *adv. most*; (All the heldest), most of all, 2509; (Allþar heldest), 1855. See Heldire.
 (Heldest), eldest, 2319.
 Heldire, *adv. comp. sooner*, 2714; (Helder), sooner, rather, 1016, 1633*, 1805, 2097, 2589. See Elder. Icel. *helir*.
 Helyd, *pp. inclined (?)*, 829*. See Held; but the reading is probably corrupt. Perhaps read *held*, i. e. held. But we should rather read—Had rasyd vp a rude hoste, and rode hym ayaynez.
 Hele, *s. health, safety*, 3512, 4573, 5386; Heale, 741; Heyle, 2503, 2665; Heyll, 2552; Hele (heylle), recovery, 2576; health, 2806 (in which line I should be omitted, as in Dublin MS.).
 Hele, *v. be healed*, 2817.
 Hele, *ger. to cover*, 4118.
 Heles, *pl. heels*, 5458; Helis (Heles), 1758.
 Helle, hell, 5571; Hell, 562.
 Hellid, *pp. poured*, 3813. Icel. *hella*.
 Helme, helmet, 1715, 3802, 3811; Helmes, *pl.* 804, 5498.
 Helpe, *v. help*, 404; Help, *ger.* 309, 1256, 1314, 2220; Help, *pr. s.* *subj.* help, 1472; Helpid, *pt. pl.* helped, 5625; Help, *imp. s.* help, 950.
 Helpe (Help), *s. help*, 1636; Help (Helpe), 1946.
 Helpere (Hepar), *s. helper, assistant*, 2647.
 Hemmes, *pl. (sing. Hem) hems*, 1538.
 Hemp, *adv. made of hemp*, 2224. (Hem-selc), themselves, 2268.
 Hen (Henne), *s. hen*, 893.
 Hend (Hand), *pl. hands*, 1440; (Hendez), 774*.
 Hend, *adj. courteous, gentle*, 669; (Hende), 2876; Hende, 5029, 5400; Hend, *adj. as sh. gentle* one, lady, 264, 291, 4757, 5162. A.S. *gehende*.
 Hende, *adv. courteously*, 212.
 Hendlake (Hynlake), *s. courtesy*, 2715.
 Hendly, *adv. gently*, 494; excellently, 883; tamely, 780*.
 Hent, *v. catch*, 520; (Hynt), seize (for himself), get, 810; Hentis, *pr. s.* seizes, grasps, 780; (Hentez), 1402; (Hentes), 936; Hentes, 3880; Hent, *pr. pl.* 1 *p. catch*, take, 4271; Hent (Hynt), *pt. s.* caught, 2544; Hent (Hyntes, *pr. s.*), seized, 1066; Hent, *pt. pl.* drew, 3838; Hent, *pp.* taken, caught, 4783; Hent, *imp. s.* take, receive, 747.
 Hepe, *s. heap, crowd, number, people, company*, 1679, 1780, 1946, 2086; Hepis, *pl. heaps*, 552; (Hepes), 1418; (Hepys), 2247; On hepis, into heaps, 1398.
 (Her), *adv. here*, 740*.
 Her-aftir, hereafter, 714.
 Herand, *s. herald*, 1596, 4729; Heraudis (Harraldes), 883; (Harraldes), 2715.
 Herberd, *pt. pl. harboured, sheltered*, 5330.
 Herbis, *pl. herbs*, 336, 408; (Erbes), 2852; Herbys, 4379.
 Herde (Place), *s. home, place*, 3227. For Erde.
 Here, *adv. here*, 366, 830; (Her), 951, 1864.
 Here, *ger. to hear*, 67, 982, 1164; Here, *v.* 1, 212, 416; Here, 1 *pr. s.* hear, 2498; Heres, *pr. s.* 2315, 5503; Here, *pr. s. subj.* he may hear, 146; (Here), *imp. s.* hear, 740; Here, let him hear, 146; Herd, *pt. s.* heard, 51, *repl.* 669; (Harde), 2968; Herd, *pt. pl.* heard, 1616; (Harde), 1122; Herd, *pp.* heard, 1432; Herd of your happy, heard (by your gods) concerning your fortune. Lat. *si exaudierint te di tui*, 4554. See Heris.

- Here a army, host. 1417; (Here), 1256; (Here), 2708; (Here), 820; (Here), 8108; Here, *pt.* armies, hosts, 4729. A.S. *hæra*.
- Here (Here), 2125; *lost*, 8100; Here (Here), *pt.* 1920, 1061, *terra*.
- Here man, *hæra* Here-man, *lost*, muster, 4042. Compounded of *here*, *lost*, and *man*. See *lost*, *hæra-man*, *lost*, knight, *lost*ly man. See *above*.
- Here, a hair. 4153. The Lat. text has—*give to whet new teeth, radiant et tormentant*. The Eng. seems to mean—'pull you by the hair.' Or read *here*, *hæ*, heart.
- Here, *pt.* praised, 2125, 1607; (Here), *praised*, 1618. A.S. *herian*. See *Here*.
- Her-after (Her-after), *adv.* hereafter, 1111, 2021; Here-after, 552.
- Here-afterward, *adv.* after, 732.
- Here-fore, *conj.* therefore, for this reason, 4065.
- Here-wards (Here-wards), *pt.* armour, *lit.* battle-garments, 1010.
- Herid, *pt.* praised, 2200. See *Here*.
- Heris, *pr.* a. hurries, greatly harms, 4484; Herid, *pt.* *pt.* hurried, ravaged, worried, 4800; Herid, *pt.* hurried, despoiled, killed, 5457; Herid, *vexed*, 5617; defeated, 5731. A.S. *herian*. See *Here*.
- Heris, *pr.* a. hars, 925, 5244; (Herys), 952, 2007; Heris, *imp.* *pt.* 2 *p.* hear, 3102. See *Here*.
- Heris (Here), *pt.* hods, 1020. See *Here*.
- Herken, *pr.* to listen to, *to* hear, 2304; *v.* listen, 212; Herken, *imp.* a. 2 *p.* herken thou, 743.
- Hernepan, a cap, head-piece, 1713, 2406; (Herne-pays), 1806; (Harnepanne), 1001; Harnepanne, *helmet*, 1771. Lit. 'braun-pan.'
- Hernes, *pt.* brains, 839, 2545. Cf. *lost*, *hæra*.
- (Heron), upon it, 802.
- Herre (Hyer), *adv.* higher, superior, 2324.
- (Hersenns), *pr.* a. glorifies, 1600; Herid, extolled, 2300; Hersende
- (Hersend), extolled 2438; (Hersenns), 8108. Cf. *lost* *herre*, a *lost* chief.
- Hert, heart, 2, 225; courage, 470, 658; Hertis (Hertens), *pt.* hearts, courage, 958, 1809, 2064, 2161.
- Hert, a hurt, 1002, 1069; Hertis, *pt.* 110.
- Hertis, *pr.* a. heartens, encourages, 5578.
- Herly, *adv.* heartily, 1452, 2572, 7288.
- Hery (Herye), *pr.* to hurry, 2509; (Hery), 3164. See *Here*.
- Herys, *pr.* a. hars, 3188. See *Here*.
- Hes, *pr.* 145, 1232; (Hys), 3212.
- Hes, *pt.* *lost*, trees, 5241. *lost*, *lost*. The *lost* is obscure.
- Hest, a promise, 200; Heste (Hest), command, 2141; Hestes (Hestes), *pt.* promises, 1078; Hestis, *pt.* (Hestes, a. commands, 2250; Hestis (Hestes), hests, commands, 3122.
- Hes, a heart, 8791; (Hes), 1618; Hestis, *pt.* heart, 5808; *lost*, burnings, 5844.
- Hes, a promise, 1076, 2686; 1 *pr.* a. 2408, 3175; Heses (Heghes), *pr.* *pt.* promise, 2008. A.S. *hesan*. *lost* *lost*.
- Hesely, *adv.* vehemently, 609, 678; (Hesely), Hesely, greatly, 2856; (Hesely), *adv.* extremely, 1632; Hestely (Hesely), *adv.* earnestly, 1076; Hestely sharply hesely, 2910; Hestely 3212; extremely, 4163. See *Hes*, Hestely.
- Heser, *adv.* hars, 4485, 4665, 4950, 4926. *lost*, *lost*.
- Heserward, *hars*, 734.
- Hesing (Hesing), a spear, 1714; Hesing (Hesing), 1806. *lost*, *lost*.
- Hesir, *adv.* cruel, 520; Hester, *lost*, *lost*, 516. A.S. *hesir*, full of hate. See *Heser*.
- Hesid, a head, 2457, 3020, 5322; (Hesid), 731*, 774*, 812; *lost*, 1430.
- (Hesid), for Hested, *pp.* beheaded, 2077.
- Hesun, a heaven, 56, 84.
- Heses, *pr.* a. hits, 1689; (Hesys,

- raises, 3200; Heued (Hefyd), *pp.* raised, 2827; levied, raised, 2608; Heues (Hefes), *imp. pl.* lift, 3094. See Heuys.
- Heuy, *adj.* heavy, 1010, 5572; (Hevy), stupid, dull, 2708.
- Heuyd, *s.* head, 426. See Heued.
- Heuydman (MS. Heuysdman), chief man, 441.
- Heuyn, heaven, 42, 250, 553, 568; (Heuen), 713; Heuyns (Heuens), *pl.* heavens, 1528.
- Heuys (vp), *pr. s.* heaves, lifts, raises up, 677; Heuyd, *pt. s.* heaved, i.e. raised, 3014. See Heues.
- Hewe, *v.* hew, cut, 3433; Hewis (Hewes), *pr. s.* hews, 1224; Hewis, *pr. pl.* hew, 803; Hewen, *pp.* hewn, cut, 1127, 5538; (Hewyn), 3384; (Heuen), 3159; Hewyn, 5463; Hewis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* hew, 5576.
- Hewe, *s.* hue, 467; Hew, 5309; Hewes, *pl.* 1086, 3687; Hewis, 3864, 5125; Hewys, 605.
- Hewid, *pp.* hued, coloured, 3945, 4386.
- (Hey), *adj.* high, 779, 933*.
- (Heyle), *s.* prosperity, 3272. See Hele.
- (Heyre), *s.* heir, 838*.
- Hezre, *adv.* higher, 2097.
- Heze, *adj.* high, great, 3731; (Hye), 883, 3288; (He), 3291; On heze, aloud, 4929; To heze (To hygh), too high, 2714.
- Heze (Hegh), *adv.* loudly, 948.
- Heze, *ger.* to enhance, further (lit. exalt), 2806.
- Heze (Hyeu), *pr. pl. refl.* hasten, lie, 3214.
- Hid, *pt. s.* hid, 146.
- Hide, *s.* skin, 4437; Hidis, *pl.* 4118, 4207.
- Hidirto, *adv.* hitherto, 4903.
- Hidous, *adj.* hideous, 5236.
- Hie, *v.* honour, exalt, 329.
- Hied, *pt. pl.* (Hyeu, *pr. pl.*), hastened, 2981.
- Hiest, highest, most, 1765.
- Hieze, *adj.* high, great, 329.
- (Hight), *pp.* named, considered, 2200.
- Hight, *s.* height, *p.* 282, l. 122.
- Hild, *pt. s.* concealed, 146; *pp.* covered (only), 3450; covered, 5241; Hildid, *put for* Hild, covered, 1010 (*where the* Dublin MS. *has hold*). Icel. *hýlfr*.
- Hildire, *adv. comp.* rather, more, 4657. See note; and see Heldire.
- Hildis, *pr. s.* leans; Hildis him vp, leans up, raises himself a little, 3250; Hildis (Heldes), *pt. s.* falls, 3201; Hildis, *pr. s.* pours, 3811; Hildid (Heldit), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* bowed down to, 1622. A.S. *hyldan*.
- Hill Hille, hill, 1093; Hilles, *pl.* 4137; Hillis, 1211, 4862; (Hillez), 776.
- Hilla! *interj.* halloa! 1066.
- Hin, *dat. and acc.* to him, him, 48, 50, &c.; for himself, 113. *Put for* þam, them, 409.
- Him-self (Hym-self), *pron.* him, 2834; Him-selfe, himself, 500; Him self, 83; Him-seluen, himself, 46, 1120; Him-selwyn, 411.
- Hindire, 1 *pr. s.* oppose, 2497.
- Hinge, *v.* hang, be hung; Hinge men, must hang, 4565; *ger.* to hang, 5519; Hingis, *pr. s.* hangs, 27; Hingand, *pres. part.* hanging, 3200, 4877.
- Hirdis (Herdez), *pl.* herds, keepers of the flocks, 1224.
- Hire, *pron.* her (said of a fortification), 1308; her, 222, 236; *dat.* for her, 305.
- Hire, *pron. poss.* her, 224, 264.
- Hire-selfe, herself, 266, 347.
- His, his, 45, 47, 49, &c.
- Hisman (Hisman), *nume.* 2237.
- Hissis, *pr. s.* hisses, 4757.
- Hit, *v.* hit, attain, 445; hit, 1065; Hittis, *pr. s.* hits, 839; *pt. s.* hit, put, 512; (Hitte), hit, 839.
- Hit (It), *pron.* it, 1374.
- Hitterly, *adv.* vehemently, 5322. See Heterly.
- Hize, *adj.* high, great, 61, 596, 726; (Hye), noble, 1920; high, 812; (Hegh), 1002, 1123; On hize, on high, 678.
- Hize, *ger.* to exalt, 1679; Hizen, 4701.
- Hize, *v.* hasten, 5187; Hizis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* hastenest, 4060; Hiz's him

- (Hyes hym), *pr. s.* hastens, 777 ;
 Hize, *pr. pl. 1 p. refl.* hie, hasten,
 go, 4650.
 Hize, *adv.* highly, 5316 ; (Heyly),
 2200.
 Hizely, *adv.* highly, 658.
 Hizare, *adj. comp.* higher, 810 ;
 (Hyer), 1368 ; (Hegher), 1375.
 Hizare (Hyer), *adv. comp.* higher,
 724 ; Hihare (Hevere), 3295.
 Higt, *s.* height, 3988, 5481 ; (Hight),
 700 ; Higte, 3989 ; On higt, on
 high, 57, 1518 ; Higt (Hert,
wrongly), *s.* height, majesty,
 2706 ; Higtēs, *pl.* heights, glories,
 3584.
 Higt, *s.* hope ; Withouten higt, with-
 out hope, hopelessly, 5313. Or
 it may mean—without expecta-
 tion, unexpectedly. A.S. *hyht*,
 hope, expectation.
 Higt, 1 *pr. s.* am called, 5167 ; am
 named, 5401 ; Higt (Hyght), 1
pr. s. am called, 2286 ; (Hight),
 1 *pt. s.* was called, 2187 ; Higt,
pt. s. was called, 2170 ; Higt,
pp. called, 3926.
 Higte, *pr. s. 1 p.* promise, 5404 ;
 Higt, 1 *pt. s.* promised, 3436 ;
 Higt (Hyght), *pt. s.* 2651 ; Higt
 (Hight), *pt. pl.* promised, 2196 ;
 Higt (Hyght), *pp.* 2565.
 Higtild, *pt. s.* ornamented, decked
 (for himself), 1541 (MS. D. has
heghtlet, set, put) ; Higtild, *pp.*
 ornamented, decked, 4540, 5126 ;
 decked, prepared, set in order,
 4969. See Allit. Poems, ed. Mor-
 ris, B. 1290. Cf. *Higtly* in Gloss.
 to Sir Gawayne.
 (Hocour), *s.* mockery, derision, 1714.
 A.S. *hócor*.
 Hodere, *s.* 5241. The line is plainly
 imperfect. See the note, which
 gives the original Latin.
 Hoge, *adj.* huge, large, 490, 568,
 924, 3926, 4749, 5389 ; (Hoge),
 744*, 821, 1062, 1541, 2827.
 Hoge, *s.* hog, 4278 ; Hoggs, *pl.*
 5342.
 Hogely, *adv.* earnestly, attentively,
 269 ; (Hugely), extremely, 3226.
 Hogere, *adj.* huger, greater, 3047.
 (Hoghez), *pl.* houghs, hams, 3151.
 Hokis, *pl.* hooks, 5519.
 (Hole), *s.* hole, 777* ; Holes, *pl.*
 holes, hiding-places, 3214 ; Holis,
pl. holes, caves, 4045, 4122.
 Hologhe, *adj.* hollow, 4072 ; Holoze,
 3802 ; Holuze, 3486 ; Holewe
 (Holys, *for* Holow), 1900.
 Holtis, *pl.* holts, woods, 4137 ;
 (Holtez), 776.
 Home, *s.* home, 27.
 Homore, Homer, 2121.
 (Honest), *adj.* seemly, splendid,
 1496.
 Honest, *pp.* brought to shame, de-
 stroyed, 3791. From the stem
 (*honiss-*) of the pres. part. of O.F.
honir, to disgrace. See Hunys-
 chist.
 Honge, *pp.* hung, 779.
 Hongir, *s.* hunger, 4608.
 Honoryd (Honour), *pp.* honoured,
 3160.
 Honour, *s.* honour, 2125, 2248 ;
 Honouris, *pl.* praises, 2121.
 Honourable, 223, 310. See Honur-
 able.
 Honoure, *v.* honour, 1059 ; Honours,
pr. s. 1073 ; Honourd, *pt. s.* (Hon-
 ours, *pr. s.*), 2117 ; Honourd, *pp.*
 honoured, 995 ; Honourd (Hon-
 ored), *pp. as adj.* 2008.
 Honurable (Honorable), *adj.* hon-
 ourable, 1840 ; Honourable, 223,
 310.
 Hony, *s.* honey, 3855.
 Hoo, 2 *pr. pl.* desist ; Be 3e hoo, by
 the time that ye desist, 4437 ;
imp. s. stop, cease, 2835.
 Hope, 1 *pr. s.* suppose, 3548, 3749 ;
 Hopis (Hopys), 2 *pr. s.* expectest,
 1765 ; Hopis, *pr. s.* expects, 3288 ;
 hopes, 1640 ; Hopid (Hopyd), *pt. s.*
 expected, 679 ; (Hoppyd), 1633* ;
 Hopid, *pt. pl.* (Hopen, *pr. pl.*) sup-
 posed, 596, 935 ; Hope, *imp. pl.*
 imagine, 2648.
 Hope, *s.* hope, 1859.
 Hope, *s.* dingle, sheltered spot,
 5390. See Grein's note on A.S.
hóp.
 Hoping, *s.* hope, 4518.
 Horned, *pp. as adj.* having horns,
 4267, 5566.
 Hornes, *pl.* horns, 319, 752*.

- Hors, *s.* horse, 777; (Horse), 744*; Horsis, *pl.* horses, 2156, 2399, 5632; Hors (Horsez), *pl.* 883; Horsis (Horse, *pl.*), 1250; Hors, *gen. pl.* horses', 2852. A.S. *hors*, *pl.* *hors*.
 (Horse-fleshez), horseflesh, 2161.
 Hoste, *s.* host, army, 2036, 829*; (Host), 1793; Hostis, *pl.* hosts, armies, army, 3008, 3704; (Hostez), 1694.
 Hote, *adj.* hot, severe, 702.
 Hottre, *s.* contempt, derision, 1714; *miswritten for* Hoccre = Hocer. A.S. *hócor*. Chaucer has *hoker*. The Dublin MS. has *hocour*.
 Houen (Heuen), *pp.* lifted, heaved, 1864. See Houyn.
 Houes, *pr. s.* dwells, remains, 4902; (Hewen), *pr. pl.* await, 2530; Houys, *pr. pl.* (Hoved, *pt. pl.*), tarry, hover, 2212; Houande (Hofand), *pres. part.* hovering, tarrying, 3260; Houe (Hofe), *imp. s.* tarry, wait, 734, 2890. Cf. E. *hover*.
 Houndreth, *num.* hundred, 5370.
 Houre, *s.* hour, 572, 3830.
 Hous, *s.* house, 4903.
 Housing, *s.* shelter, covering, 4355.
 Houyn, *pp.* raised (lit. heaved), exalted, 2708. See Houen.
 How, how, 7, 117; Howe, how, 4345; How pat, how (is it) that, 459.
 How, *interj.* ho! *used as sb.* a shout, outcry, whoop, 4732.
 Howis, *pl.* hills, 3486. Icel. *haugr*. (Howre-selfe), ourselves, 1855.
 Hozes, *pl.* houghs, hocks, hams, 3150. A.S. *hóh*.
 Huge, *adj.* huge, great, 821, 1062, 1150; (Hoge), 1282, 2876.
 Hugir (Hoger), *adj. comp.* huger, 1368.
 Hum (*wrongly for* Him), him, 1717.
 Hunde, hound, 321, 494.
 Hundrethe, *num. adj.* hundred, 94; (Hundreth), 1043; Hundreth, 66, 1316, 1426, 1562; Hundret, 5127.
 Hunger, *s.* hunger, 1168.
 Hungry, Hungary, 5673.
 Hunyschist, *error for* Hunyschit (Honyshyd), *pt. s.* shamed, disgraced, hence, killed, 3004. O.F. *honnir*, *honir*. See Honest.
 (Hup), up, 3049.
 Hurkils, *pr. s.* crouches down, nestles, 504. See Glossary to Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
 Hurle (*in Ashmole MS. wrongly for* perle, *which is in Dublin MS.*), sound, rush, noise (of the sea), 1154. See Hurling.
 Hurled (Hurlett), *pt. pl.* hurled, 2224.
 Hurling, *s.* roaring, 4794. F. *hurler*, to howl, yell; Cotgrave.
 Hurte, *s.* hurt, 285.
 Hurtis (Hurtez), *pr. s.* hurts, 1224.
 Hurtles, *adj.* unhurt, safe, unwounded (lit. hurt-less), 102.
 Hus (*for* Us), *dat.* for us, 3518.
 Hydis, *pr. s.* hides, 504; Hydis (Hyden), *pr. pl.* 3214; Hyddyn, *pt. pl.* hid, 3105.
 (Hye), *ger.* to hasten, 2806; (Hyes), *pr. s.* hies, 962; (Hyed), *pt. pl.* hastened, 1205; Hy, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* hie thee, 734.
 (Hye), *adj.* high, 700, 1491, 1636; illustrious, 841*.
 (Hiest), highest, 726.
 Hym, *pron.* him, 682, 725*.
 Hym-selfe, himself, 1058.
 Hynd (Hend), *adj.* courteous, 2744; (Hynde), obedient, 820. See Hend.
 Hyndelaike, *s.* courtesy, 615; (Hynd-laike), 2718. See Hendlaike.
 Hyndely (Hendly), *adv.* courteously, 3250; Hyndly, 2920.
 Hyne, *adv.* hence, 4456; (Hyne), 799*. Du. *heen*.
 Hyne (Hynes), *pl.* men, servants, 2220. E. *hind*.
 (Hyneward), hence, 734. See Hyne.
 (Hynget), *pp.* hung, 779.
 (Hynten), *pr. pl.* seize, 780. See Hent.
 Hyro, *pers. pron.* her, 412.
 Hyrnes, *pl.* corners, lurking-places, 3214. A.S. *hyrne*.
 (Hys), his, 679, 680, 695, 696.
 Hyue, *s.* hive, 3855.
 I, *pron.* I, 15, 21, 24, 76, &c.
 Jacobs, Jacob's, 4823.

- Iape, *s.* jest, hence pleasant offering, 4526; Iapis, *pl.* tricks, arts, 43, 339; pranks, 4411.
- Iapid, *pt.* *s.* seduced, 4415.
- Iaspre, jasper, 4444.
- Iaudas, *name*, 1488; (Iaudes), 1652; Iaudis (Iawdez), 1171; Iaudes, 1469.
- Iayll, *s.* jail, 4321.
- (Iche), each, 1647.
- Ieants, *pl.* giants, 4722.
- Iemmes, *pl.* gems; but clearly miswritten for gummes, i. e. resinous gums, 4974. See the note.
- Ientill-man (Gentilman), gentleman, 2249, 2400.
- Ientilly, *adv.* excellently (Lat. *mirifico opere*), 3340.
- Ierusalem, 1171, 1454, 1470, 1488, 1652.
- Iesserand, *s.* coat of mail, 4961; Iesserantes (Iesserauntez), *pl.* coats of mail, 2450. See *Iaseran* in Cotgrave.
- Iettand, *pres. pt.* making a great show, 4444.
- Iettis, *pl.* proud gestures, 4676.
- Iettoure, *s.* bragger, 4415; Iettir, flaunter, 4504.
- Iewis (Iewes), *pl.* Jews, 1191, 1587, 1601, 1620, 1652; Iewes, 1171.
- (Iewres), an error for Iewise, judgment, doom, 1191. O.F. *juise*. The right reading is—I shall seche Iewis on the Iewes enioyne or I dye.
- Iewry, Judæa, 1546.
- If, *conj.* if; But if, unless, 13; If, though, 231, 258.
- Ile (Yle), *s.* isle, 2106, 2116; district, 1057; Ile (Ylez, *pl.*), district, 1039; Ilee, 3736, 5503; Iles, *pl.* islands, 3536, 3683; Iles (Yles), *pl.* regions, provinces, 2800. See Yles.
- Ilk, *adj.* each, 1334, 3603; (Ilke), 731, 777; (Iche), 1379; same, 350, 418; Ilke, same, 861, 2927.
- Ilka, each, every, 521, 999; (Ilke), 1080; (Iche), 3412; Ilka (Ilke), each man, 1258; Ilke a, every, 432. For ilk a.
- Ilkane, each one, every one, 1593, 5430; (Ilk one), 2765; (Ichone), 2548, 3154; (Ilkon), 2115; Ilkan, 3635.
- Ill, *adv.* ill, unpropitiously, 2308.
- Ille, *s.* ill, 4216; (Ille), 1699; (Illys), *pl.* evils, 3267*.
- Imagis, *pl.* images, idols, 4068, 4459. See Ymage.
- Impid, *pp.* set; Impid in, set with, marked with, 5649.
- Impis, *pl.* shoots, 4819. See the note.
- In, *prep.* in, 23, 24, &c.; (Into), in, 1852.
- In with = in-with, *prep.* within, 3900.
- In-bland with, *prep.* together with, in medley with, 2786. See Ebland.
- Inchantement, enchantment, 337.
- Incheson, *s.* occasion, cause, reason, 343.
- Inclosid (Enclosyt), *pp.* enclosed, 1837.
- Inclynes, *pr. s.* inclines, bows, 5207.
- In-dities, *pr. s.* indites, 4041.
- Indityngs (Dityng), *pl.* inditings, 1801.
- (In-fere), *adv.* together, 3366; In-fere, 1259, 1276, 3602, 3933, 4273, 5434.
- In-feree, for In-fere, *adv.* together, 5597. See above.
- Infirmite, *s.* infirmity, sickness, 5581; Infirmits (for Infirmitates), *pl.* infirmities, 4279.
- Infourmed, *pp.* informed, 3341; (Informed), 1915; Infourmede (Enformed), 1531.
- England, England, 5663.
- Inhabet, *pr. pl.* inhabit, dwell, 4020.
- Inhabetting, *s.* habitation, dwelling, 3736.
- In-hanses (Enhaunses), *pr. s.* enhancements, i. e. advances, promotes, 3290.
- Inioynes, *pr. s.* commands, orders, instructs, 3040; (Inioneyd), *pp.* enjoined, 2400.
- In-myddis, *prep.* in the midst of, amid, 1586.
- Innes, *pl. as sing.* inn, dwelling, residence, 2920.
- Inowe (Enowe), *adj. pl.* enough, 2291. See Enoje.

- In-parkis, *pr. s.* encloses, 5499; Inparkid, *pp.* 4702.
 Impossible, *adj.* impossible, 2707.
 (Insew), *v.* sew in, 1925.
 In-sondire (In-sonder), *asunder*, 798.
 Instrumentis (Instrumentes), *pl.* instruments, 1564; Instrumentis, 145.
 In-till, *prep.* into, 4764.
 Into, *prep.* into, 151, 153; to, 724; in, 797*; (Vnto), unto, 1503.
 Ioglour, *s.* juggler, 4526; Iogloure, 410.
 Iogis, *pl.* judges, 1546.
 Iogis, *pr. s.* jogs, i. e. stirs up, 1507.
 Iolite, *s.* agreeableness, delight, 3537; pleasant season, 4202; honour, revels in honour of, 4458; Iolyte, happiness, 3108; Iolite (Iolyte), mirth, 1469.
 Ioly, *adj.* beautiful, 4823, 5261.
 Iolye, *adv.* jollily, joyously, 705.
 Iopone, *s.* short coat or doublet worn under the armour, 4961; Iopons, *pl.* 3042, 4722; (Iompons), 2450.
 "Iupon, a short cassock;" Cotgrave. Dimin. of O.F. *gipe*, later *juppe*, a frock, &c.
 Iosaphat (Iosaphatt), the vale of Jehoshaphat, 1197, 1284.
 Journais (Iornays), *pr. s.* journeys, travels, 2249.
 Journey (Jornay), journey, 1197.
 Ious, *s.* juice, 339. See Iuse.
 Iowell, jewel, 2400.
 Iowke, *pr. pl.* sleep, lie torpid, 4202. A term applied to hawks.
 "Se jucher, to roost, or perch;" Cotgrave. See *Iouken* in Gloss. to P. Plowman.
 Ioy, *s.* joy, 486, 704, 1469; Ioye (Ioy), 1914; jest, 2188; O Ioy, of joy, i. e. joyful to behold, excellent, 3042.
 Ioyen, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* (for Ioyen), (ye) join, build together, 4458.
 Ioyes, *pr. s.* gladdens, 4378; rejoices, 1659; (Ioyes), 2128; Ioyes, 456; Ioy, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* delight in, possess, enjoy, 4035; Ioyed, *pp.* rejoiced, gladdened, full of joy, 242, 3455, 4947, 5126; Ioyd (Ioyned, *error* for Ioyed), 2235.
 (Ioyfully), joyfully, 705.
 Ioyles, *adj.* joyless, 1284, 2249.
 Ioyly, *adj.* joyful, joygiving, delightful, 3340. (But prob. an error for *Ioly* = jolly, good.)
 Ioynes (Iniones), *pr. s.* enjoins, 1197; Ioynes him, *pr. s.* marches, approaches, 1284, 1454; Ioyned, *pp.* constructed, 5261; framed, 4504; constructed, joined together (Lat. *constructi*), 3340; composed, put together, 3464; (Ioned), joined, 2450.
 Ioyntly (Iontly), *adv.* together, 1470.
 Ioynttours, *pl.* joints, limbs, 4722.
 Ire, *s.* anger, rage, 733, 737, 805, 1504, 2185, 2424; Ire, 4504. In l. 1504 the Dublin MS. has *ayre*.
 Ireland, 5663.
 Iren, *s.* iron, 3628, 3826, 4085, 5516, 5519; Iryn (Irne), 3376.
 Is, *pr. s.* is, 4, 67, &c.; Is, 1 *pr. pl.* (we) are, 4312; *pr. pl.* are, 178, 5361; (Er), 2478.
 (Is), *for* His, his, 697, 903, 2052.
 Isodry, Isidore, 3683.
 It, *pron.* it, 13, 36, 56, &c.; It-selfe, 277.
 Itaile, Italy, 5663; (Ytalle), 2528; Itale, 5110; Italee (Ytale), 1039.
 Ithis, *pl.* waves, 63. A.S. *ȝð*. See Ythes.
 Iubiter, Jupiter, 705, 3108. See Iupiter.
 Iugemen (Iuggez), *pl.* judges, 3402.
 Iugid (Iugged), *pp.* judged, 2664.
 Iulus, *s.* July, 3537; Iuly, 4202; Iuli, 3789.
 Iuno, Juno, 4504.
 Iupiter, Jupiter, 4411, 4415.
 Iurdan, Jordan, 4823.
 Iuse, *s.* juice, 410. See Ious.
 Iustice, *s.* justice, judge, 4321; Iustis (Iustice), *pl.* justices, 1601, 3402; (Iustes), 1546.
 Iusting, *s.* jousting, 3042.
 Iusule, *s.* lechery (?), 4411. The alliteration shows it is not *Insule*, as in Stevenson's edition. It is perhaps for F. *jeu seul*; but it is difficult to guess at the true etymology.
 Iuwels, *pl.* jewels, 4035, 4444.
 I-wis, *adv.* certainly, truly, clearly,

- verily, 11, 203, 3262, 3580, 4933 ; (Iwys), 2203 ; (I-wisse), 2018 ; I-wisse, 3119, 3436 ; I-wys, 348.
- Kaire me (Caire me), *v.* turn myself, go, 828 ; Kaires, *pr. s.* returns, 5419 ; (Cairez), turns, 1056 ; Kairis, *pl. go*, 153. See Caire.
- Kall (Calle), *s.* call, 983.
- Kan, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* can, 100, 577. See Can.
- (Karyn), *pr. pl. refl. go*, 2792 ; (Karys), *imp. pl. go*, 2770. See Kaire.
- (Kast), *s.* contrivance, 2484 ; Kastis (Castyng), *pl.* casts, throwings, 1395. See Cast.
- Kast, *v.* contrive, 415 ; Kast out, cast aside, 184 ; Kastis (Castes), *pr. s.* overthrows, 2281 ; (Kyst, *pt. s.*), intends, 1688 ; Kast, *pr. pl.* throw, hurl, 1395 ; Kast vnder, *pp.* overthrown, 138 ; Kast (Castyn), cast, 2247 ; Kast (Kest), thrown down, 1421. See Cast.
- Kastand (= Kastanid), *pp. as adj.* made like the chestnut, i. e. of a chestnut colour (Castans in the Dublin MS.), 1537. See Castans.
- Kay, *s.* key, 5289. See Keys.
- (Kayres), *pr. s.* returns, 3005 ; *refl. goes*, 2637 ; Kayres hym, goes, 2680. See Kaire.
- Kagt (Kacht, in MS. Katht), *pt. s.* seized, caught hold of, 2070. See Cagt.
- (Keches), *pr. s.* takes (leave), 1693.
- (Ked) excellent, 1229. See Kid.
- Kellis, *pl.* cauls, hair-nets, 4600. "Kelle, *reticulum*;" Prompt. Parv.
- Kell-wyse ; Opon kellywyse, in the manner of a caul, 3300. See above.
- Kempe, *s.* soldier, hero, warrior, 5499 ; (Kemp), 2216. A.S. *cempa*.
- Ken, (1) *v.* inform, 2353 ; teach, 4706 ; (Kenne), show, teach, 1192 ; Ken, *ger.* teach, 1982, 3278 ; make known, 2023 ; Ken, *pr. pl.* disclose, manifest, 4554 ; Kend, *pt. s.* told, instructed, 5543 ; showed, 5407 ; showed, gave, 5383 ; Kend,
- pp.* informed, taught, 650. See below.
- Ken (2), *ger.* to know, 690 ; *v.* know how, 4078 ; Ken, 1 *pr. s.* know, 577, 843*, 2718 ; perceive, 278 ; Kennes, *pr. s.* knows, 3991 ; Ken, 1 *pr. pl.* know, 4678 ; Kend, 1 *pt. s.* recognised, 3281 ; *pt. s.* knew, 696, 5548 ; discerned, 2849 ; Kend, *pt. pl.* knew, 2933 ; 2 *pt. s.* knewest, 4939 ; Kend, *pp.* known, discerned, 3148.
- Kendly, *adv.* kindly, greatly, 2394. Better read *kenly*, as in the Dublin MS.
- Kene, *adj.* keen, 427, 3971 ; shrill, 1604, 1815, 2345 ; sharp, 1804, 3818 ; eager, 1892 ; brave, bold, 90, 176, 748 ; *adv.* quickly, 746.
- Kenely, *adv.* sharply, 639 ; carefully, 1361 ; strictly, 821* ; quickly, 1353 ; sorely, 4151 ; eagerly, 412 ; loudly, 2154 ; bravely, boldly, 58, 384, 1064 ; (Kenly), *adv.* keenly, greatly, 2394.
- Kenere, *adj. comp.* keener, 544 ; Kenir, bolder, 3583.
- (Kengez), *gen. s.* king's, 1040.
- Kepare, *s.* keeper governor, 5177.
- Kepe, *v.* keep, protect, 285, 405 ; be kept (*after latt*), 581 ; Kepe, *ger.* to keep, i. e. for men to keep, 5172 ; to keep, 1292 ; to observe, 1192 ; to guard, 72, 1480 ; to heed, care for, 3096 ; to look, pay heed, 821* ; Kepe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* care for, heed, 3557 ; care, 2417 ; Kepis, *pr. s.* preserves, 3356 ; Kepe, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* heed, observe, 4386 ; Kepis (Kepys), 2 *p.* care, heed, 1455 ; (Kepe), *pr. pl.* defend, 1395 ; Kepid, *pt. s.* governed, kept, held, ruled, 5088 ; *pt. pl.* kept, 594 ; Kepid (Kepydy), *pp.* kept, 3413 ; Kepe, *imp. s.* keep thou, 97 ; Kepis 3ou, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* take heed to yourself, 2564.
- Kerue[s], *pr. s.* cuts, 1056 ; Keruand, *pres. pt.* cutting, 63, 3024 ; biting, bitter, 3818. A.S. *ceorfan*.
- Kest, *v.* cast up, reckon, 673 ; *pt. s.* cast, 2052, 3147 ; imagined, 5233 ;

- cast, contrived, took up with, 921; *refl.* cast himself, flung himself, 794; Kest vp, *pt. s.* cast up, lifted up, 484; *pt. pl.* cast, 1604, 2154; devised, 3190; Kest in fewtire, laid their lances in rest, 2621.
- Keys (Kees), *pl.* keys, 2147. See Kay.
- Kid, *pp.* renowned, famous, 514, 4091, 4205; (Kyd), 959, 2151, 2207, 2761, 3114; proved, 1824; Kidd, renowned, illustrious, 3974, 5418. Lit. 'made known.' See below; and see Ked, Kyd.
- Kid, *pt. s.* showed; (Kyd), 1 *pt. s.* showed, 2743; Kide him, made himself known, 213. A.S. *cýðan*.
- Kid, *s.* kid, 4524; Kidis, *gen. pl.* of kids, 4476.
- Kiddest, *adj. superl.* most famous, most renowned, 33, 1934, 5103; (Kyddest), 2367; Kiddist, 3709; Kidest (Kyddest), 1885.
- Killid (Kyllyd), *pp.* killed, 2377.
- Kind, *s.* nature, 4264, 4386; (Kend), character, 3386.
- Kindiles, *pl.* young ones, broods, 4199. See *Kyndlyn* in Prompt. Parv.; and see *Kyndild*.
- Kindille (Kyndyll), *v.* kindle, be set on fire, 2724; Kindill (Kyndle), *pr. s. subj.* be kindled, 1979; Kindils, *pr. s.* kindles, 3859; is kindled, 149; Kindlis (Kyndeles), *pr. pl.* are kindled, 1730.
- Kindling (Kyndyllyng), *s.* kindling, ardour, 3292.
- Kindly (Kendly), *adv.* by nature, naturally, 3281.
- King, *s.* king, 50, 184, 456; Kinge (Kyngez), *gen. pl.* kings', 3414.
- Kingis, *error* for Kinnes; Of many kyngis werkes, of works of many a kind, 4530.
- Kinlid, *error* for Knilid (Dublin MS. has knellyd), *pt. pl.* clanged, resounded, 775. "Knyllynge of a belle, tintillacio;" Prompt. Parv.
- Kirke, church, 1549; temple, 4542.
- Kirnells (Kernels), *pl.* battlements, 1421. O.F. *crenel*.
- Kirnels, *pl.* kernels, 2070.
- Kirtill, *s.* kirtle, 4956; Kirtils, *pl.* 4340.
- Kisses, *pr. s.* kisses, 384; Kist (Kyssitt), *pt. s.* 878.
- Kist, *s.* coffin, 3148; chest, coffer, 1043; Kistis, *pl.* coverings; *used in the sing. sense*, cover, covering, 4357; (Kystez), 1043.
- Kithe, *s.* country, 184, 3962; (Kyth), 1871; Kith, 144, 2011, 3562; (Kyth), 2769; Kithis, *pl.* countries, 4697; Kithes (Kythez), 889; Kitthis (Kythez), 1204; (Kithes), 2011. A.S. *cýððe*, native land. See Cithe.
- Kithe, *v.* make known, proclaim, 3469; Kith, tell, 5168; Kithis, *pr. s.* tells, 5011. A.S. *cýðan*.
- Kithid, *s.* kindred, 3507. (Prob. an error for *kithe*.) See *Kithe*.
- Kith-ward; In-to oure kith-ward, towards our country, into our country, 4032.
- Knafe (Knaffe), knave, male, 835; Knaf, man-child, 3744; (Knaffe), knave, wretch, 3078; Knaue, boy, 592; (Knaffe), boy, 2501.
- Knaw, *v.* know, 100; (carnally), 308; *ger.* 1455; Knawe, 679; Knaw, 1 *pr. s.* 1878; Knawe, 183; Knawis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* knowest, 875, 2523; (Knawys), 869; Knawes, 1962; Knawis (Knawys), *pr. s.* knows, 848; Knaw, 2 *pr. pl.* 627; (Knawe), 2205; Knaw, 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayest know, 2014; Knawen, *pp.* known, 204; Knawyn, 5234; renowned, 33; (Knawyn), known, 719. See *Knew*.
- Knawlage, *s.* knowledge, 3727.
- Knawlage, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* acknowledge, 3093.
- Kneis (Kneys), *pl.* knees, 983; (Knees), 1603; Kneys, 78; Knes, 1822; Knese, 4014; (Knes), 815.
- Knelis, *pr. s.* kneels, 4183; Knele, *pr. pl.* 2941; Kneland, *pres. part.* kneeling, 1599.
- Knew, *pt. s.* knew, 28, 63; Knewe, 211. See *Knaw*.
- Knew, *pt. s.* made known, 2872. A wrong sense; due to miswriting *he knew* for *be-knew*, as in the Dublin MS.
- Knilid; see *Kinlid*.
- Knigt (Kny3'), *s.* knight, 1617, 1229;

- Kniztis (Knyghtez), *pl.* 981, 1002, &c. See Knyzt.
- Knizthede (Knyghthode), knight-hood, 1824; (Knyghthod), 2205. See Knyzt-hede.
- Kniztly (Knyghtly), *adj.* knight-like, bold, 2448.
- Knok, *v.* knock, 639; Knockis (Knokez), *pr. s.* 1599.
- Knopis, *pl.* knobs, buttons, 4917.
- Knottis, *pl.* knots, 4917.
- Know (Knew), *v.* to know, 1104. See Knaw.
- Knyfes, *pl.* knives, daggers, 3024, 5364.
- Knytt, *pr. pl.* knit, 3300.
- Knyzt, *s.* knight, 100; (Knyght), 729*, 835*; Knyztis, *pl.* knights, men, 117, &c. See Knizt.
- Knyzt-hede, knight-hood, 659; Knyzthode, 9. See Knizthede.
- Knyztly, *adv.* knightly, 484.
- Kokell, *adj.* shaky, unsteadfast, 2588. Cf. *coggle*, to be shaky, Halliwell; *cocklety*, unsteady; *id.* Jamieson cites *cockle-headed* from Sir W. Scott's *Rob Roy*: "he's crack-brained and *cockle-headed* about his nipperty-tipperty poetry nonsense." See *Rob Roy*, ch. xxi.
- Koyntis, *pl.* adornments, quaint ornaments, 4917. See Cointe.
- Kutt, *pp.* cut, 1421.
- Kyd, *pp.* shown, 719; renowned, famous, 52, 742*, 767*, 1987. See Kid.
- Kyn, *s.* kin, kindred, 3316.
- Kynd, *s.* kind, nature, 28, 3380, 3911, 5432; race, 3268; (Kend), nature, race, lineage, 2800; (Kynde), nature, 3147; Kynde, nature, 578, 2894; race, 696; manner, 650; Kyndis, *pl.* natures, 5428.
- Kynd, *for* Kyndled, *pp.* kindled, 2247. The Dublin MS. *has* kyndlett.
- Kyndild, *pt. s.* came forth, was born, 669. See Kindiles. "Kynled, or kyndelyd, in forthe-bryngyng of yonge beestys, *Fetatus*;" Prompt. Parv.
- Kyndill, *ger.* to kindle, 3139; Kindils, *pr. s.* kindles, excites, 166; (Kyndels), *pr. s.* takes fire, is kindled, 2871; Kyndild (Kyndlett), *pp.* kindled, 2231; (Kyndlett), 2247.
- Kyndlaike, *s.* kindness, 2718.
- Kyndly, *adv.* heartily, 4946.
- Kyndmen, *pl.* well-disposed men, *hence*, bold men, 2459. Dublin MS. *has* *kene men*.
- Kyndnes, *s.* natural inclination, 4700; kindness, 1982.
- Kyng, *s.* king, 39, 73, 78, 97, &c.; Kynge, 193, 202, 215; Kyng, *gen.* king's, 618, 627; Kyngis, *gen.* king's, 5181; (Kyngez), 823; Kyngis, *pl.* kings, 388; (Kengez), 885.
- Kyngdome, *s.* kingdom, 138. (Kynne); Some *kynne* gamez, games of some kind, 2259.
- Kyssis, *pr. s.* kisses, 456, 495, 3250; Kys, *imp. s.* kiss, 5252.
- Kythe (Kyth), *v.* manifest, show, 2433; show, 690; Kythis, *pr. s.* makes known, declares, 5367; Kyth (Kythen), *pr. pl.* show, manifest, 1021.
- Kythe, *s.* country, 219; (Kyth), 827*, 843*; Kythe (Kyth), region, 1049; Kythis, *pl.* countries, lands, 136, 4376; (Kythes), 1777, 1990; (Kythez), 2817.
- Labourde, *pt. pl.* laboured, toiled, 4814.
- Lacedoyne, Lacedæmonia, 2440; Lacedone (Lacidon), 2471; (Lacydon), 2443.
- Lachen, *v.* take, 3861; Lache, *v.* grasp at, 4347; (Lache), seize hold of, 1439; Lache, *ger.* to take, 2149; Laches, *pr. s.* takes, 5283; wins, 1055; (Lacchys), 2976; (Laught), *pt. s.* seized, 1055; Laches, *imp. pl.* catch ye, 1923; Laches (Lachys), *imp. pl.* catch, gain, 2604.
- (Lachynge), *s.* taking, capture, 1835.
- Lackis, *pr. s.* fails, is deficient, 4811.
- (Lad), *pt. s.* led, 793*.
- Laddis (Laddez), *pl.* lads, low fellows, 1734; (Laddes), camp-followers, 2591, 772*.

- Ladisman, *s.* leader, guide, 4967; (Lodesman), 2341. From A.S. *lād*, a leading.
- Lady, *s.* lady, 223, 302, 370, 517; Lade, 5351; Ladi, *gen.* lady's, 379; Ladys, *pl.* ladies, 156; Ladis, 213, 595, 3739; (Lades), 1602, 3116; Ladis (Ladys), *gen.* s. lady's, 2415.
- Ladyschip, *s.* ladyship, 3715.
- Laftyn, *pt. pl.* left, 886; Laft, *pp.* left, 824; (Left), 1331.
- Laghe, *adj.* low, short of stature, 3985.
- Laghtnes, *s.* lowness (?), humility (?), 3293. Probably corrupt; the line gives no sense; see the Ashmole MS. *Laucht* = low, occurs in Barbour, xii. 19 (MS. E.).
- Laghtyn; see Laft.
- Laide, *pt. s.* laid, 494; (Lade), 893; Laide, *pp.* 382.
- Laike, *s.* game, sport, jest, play, 644, 4367, 5358; sin, vice, lit. game, 4685; Laikis (Lakez), *pl.* games, 1761. Icel. *leikr*. See Layke.
- Laike, *v.* sport, 5480; (Layke), *ger.* to amuse, disport (thysself with), 1770.
- Laingire (Langer), *adv. comp.* longer, 2195.
- Laire, *s.* earth, clay, soil, loam, 4445, 5088. Icel. *leir*. See Halliwell, and see note to l. 5088.
- Laite, *v.* (Lates, *imp. pl.*), seek, find out, 2341; *ger.* to seek, 152. Icel. *leita*. See Layte.
- Laith, *adj.* hateful, harmful, 5495; ugly, 4748; noxious, 4793; hideous, 3866.
- Lake, fault, defect, blame, 1816.
- Lamprays, *pl.* lampreys, 5085, 5473.
- Lance (Launce), *s.* lance, 1223; Lances (Launcez), *pl.* 1399; (Lancez), 788.
- Land, *s.* land, country, people, 109, 118, 168; Lande (Land), 757, 1760; Landis, *pl.* 10, 73, 210, 217; (Landez), 900.
- Landace, Laodicen, 2762.
- Lang (Lange), *adv.* long, 1145; Lange, 299, 461, 645.
- Lang, *v.* belong, 1682; Langis, *pr. s.* longs, 385; Lange, *pr. s. subj.* may remain, remains, 3715; If þe langis, if it belongs to thee, if thou dost long, 5358; Lange, *imp. s.* long, 5405. (In l. 3715 the reading *lenge* would be better, as that is the spelling usual with that sense; see *langen* and *lengen* in Stratmann).
- Langage, language, 240.
- Lang on, *prep.* along of, dependent on, 4606.
- Lange, *adj.* long, 602; (Lang), 757, 920, 1325; (Long), 1399.
- Lange, *adv.*; see Lang.
- Langing, *s.* longing, 6.
- Langir, *adv.* longer, 3311, 3560; (Langer), 1411; Langer, 801; Langire (Langer), 734; (Langre), *adv.* longer, 811*; Na langire (No lenger), no longer, 1344.
- Langour, *s.* languor, pining sickness, 3810; (Langor), 2807; ill fortune, 3289; Langor, pining, 7.
- Langwysches, *pl.* languishings, attacks of weakness, 2810.
- Lante, *pp.* lent, 4348.
- Lanterns, *pl.* lanterns, 5398.
- Lape, *s.* lap, 507.
- Lappid, *pt. s.* folded, 4568.
- Lare, *s.* lore, doctrine, teaching, learning, 36, 287, 633, 644, 1674, 4228; language, 5652; story, 523. See Lore.
- Large, *adj.* large, 602.
- Largely (Largly), *adv.* bounteously, 1351.
- Largenes, largeness, extent, 68; grace, 3404.
- Laschis (Lashes), *pr. s.* lashes, draws swiftly, 1325; darts, 553; Lasch (Lashe), *pr. pl.* strike, 1392; Laschid, *pt. pl.* lashed, drew, 801. See *lash* in Jamieson.
- Lasse, *s.* girl, 3746.
- Last, *adj.* last, 592; latest, i. e. very recent, 2785. At þe last, at last, 1007.
- Last, *error for* Lest (as in the Dublin MS.), least, 2818.
- Lastis, *pr. s.* lasts, lives, 989; (Lastes), 1678; (Lastez), 1220; Lastis (Lastes), *pr. s.* lasts (where I should be omitted, as it is in the

- Dublin MS.), 2806; Lastid, *pt. s.* lasted, 3643; (Lastyd), 2047.
- (Lat), *s. bar* (lit. lath), 770*; (Lates), *pl.* 756*. A.S. *letta*.
- Lat, *v.* let, permit, allow, 355; (Latte), 1674; (Latt), *ger.* to let, 1677; Lattis, *pr. s.* lets, 3351; Latis (Lettes), 2665; Lat lightly (Letes lyghtly), consider lightly of it, think little of it, 2557; Latt, 2 *pr. pl.* act, go on, 4470; Lattis, *pr. pl.* let, i.e. suppose (themselves to be), 11; Lat. *imp. s.* 2 *p.* let, permit, 588, 2711; Lat thou (Lett þou), let thou, 724; Lat (Latt), let, 2888; Latt, let, 581; (Lat), 865, 1014; Lat, 102, 355; Lat ane (Lett be), let (it) alone, let (it) be, 2688; God lat, God grant, 364; Lat, let him, 997; Latis, *imp. pl.* let, 4413; Lattes (Lettes), *imp. pl.* let, bid, 2579.
- Late, *adj.* late, 1736, 5051; On late, lately, 3549, 4394; Opon late (On late), lately, 2331.
- Late, *adv.* lately, 2705, 3434, 4221.
- Late, *s.* lightning, 553. See *laite* in Gloss. to the Troy-Book. Icel. *leiptr*.
- Late, *s.* aspect, manner, 491; voice, song, 4384; Latis, *pl.* gestures, port, 152, 4743, 5184; outward habits, 4664; behaviour (of the onlookers), 3998. Icel. *lati*.
- Latens, Latin, lit. of the Latins, 5652.
- Lathely, *adj.* loathly, hideous, 491. See Laythely.
- Lathely (Lothly), *adv.* loathingly, 2931.
- Lathire, *adj. comp.* loather, more loath, 1258.
- Lathis, *imp. pl.* loathe, abhor, 5115. (Lathys), *pr. s.* invites, 1828. A.S. *laðian*.
- Latine, *adj.* Latin, 4709, 5073.
- Latoun, *s.* latten, a mixed metal, 4464.
- Lattire, *adj. comp.* latter, 3891. See Neuer.
- Laue, *adj.* drooping, 4748. Cf. Icel. *lafa*, to droop, dangle as a flap. "Lave-eared, long-eared;" Halliwell.
- (Laughtyn), *pt. pl.* drew, 801. See Lache, Lajt.
- Launce, *s.* lance, 1325. See Lance.
- Launde, *s.* plain, open space, lawn, 4818.
- Law, *adv.* low, 2289; (Lawe), 2362; Lawe, lowly, humbly, 196, 495, 1012, 1620.
- Lawe, *adj.* low, 1868; On lawe, low down, below, 199, 728; (In law), 3261, 3553. See Low.
- Lawe, *s.* law, 1546, 1582, 1682, 3402; (Law), 1568; Lawis (Lawez), *pl.* laws, 2996.
- Lawe, *s.* mountain, hill, 4812, 4887, 5485, 5514; (Low), 1090.
- Lawene, *pp.* brought low, humiliated, 3293.
- (Lauer), *adv. comp.* lower, 2714; Lawere, 5406.
- Lawes, *pr. s.* lows, bellows, 4744.
- Lawest, *adj. superl.* lowest, worst, 2092.
- Lawid, *pt. s.* glowed, 226. Icel. *loga*.
- Lawly, *adv.* lowly, humbly, 3172.
- Lawnes (Lownys), *s.* lowness, littleness, 2706.
- Lay, *s.* faith, religious belief, 3425.
- Lay, *pt. s.* lay, 3230. See also Lies.
- Layd, *pt. s.* laid, stretched, 778*; *pp.* laid, 507.
- Layke, *s.* play, 385. See Laike.
- Lays, *pl.* lays, 6.
- Layte, *v.* seek, 372. See Laite.
- Laythely (Lothlyche), *adj.* loathly, dreadful, 3230. See Lathely.
- Laythly, *adv.* with loathing, 1709, 3985.
- Lazand, *pres. part.* laughing, merry, 4367; Lazes, *pr. s.* 2725, 3760.
- Laze, *s.* law, 4306; custom, 4402; Of a laze, by a law, with good reason, 4666; Lazes, *pl.* laws, 4007, 4222; observances, 4412.
- Lajt, *pt. s.* took, 77; Lajt leue, took leue, 331; Lajt his leue, 5232; Lajt (Laughtyn), *pt. pl.* drew, 3193; Lajt, *pp.* seized, conquered, taken, 4394; Lajt (Laght), caught, 2807; derived, 2522; (Laughten), taken, 2028.
- Lajter, laughter, 96; Lajtir, 5303; (Laughter), 2197.

- Lebany, Lebanon, 4972.
 Lebarads, *pl.* leopards, 3573, 3849.
 Leche, *s.* leech, physician, 2573.
 (Leches), *pr. s.* heals, 1331; Lechid, *pp.* healed, cured, 2814.
 Leddirs (Ledderys), *pl.* ladders, 1439.
 Lede, *s.* man, 96, 226, 240, 438, 664, 757, 834, 858, 1090, 1292, &c.; (Led), 2241; Of na lede werkis, of the works of no man, of no human contrivance, 4833; Ledis, *pl.* men, 7, 77, 141, 199, 4347; (Ledes), 2067, 2253, 2413, 2762, 3171; Lede, *put for* Ledes, men, 42, 1392. In l. 461, we may take *lede* = woman, but it would be better to read *lady*. In l. 3293, *lede* = man (but in the Dublin MS. it is a verb). In l. 4494, the repetition of *lede* is due to some corruption; perhaps the second *lede* should be *land*, i. e. country. In l. 4590, dele the commas before and after *lede*.
 Lede, *s.* nation, people, country, 240, 1503, 3100, 3750, 4494 (where it may be an error for *land*), 844*.
 Lede, *s.* lead (metal), 4464.
 Lede, *s.* language, 5007. *Short for* leden.
 Lede, *ger.* to lead, 3787, 816*; *v.* 939; (Lede), guide, 3293; Ledis, *pr. s.* leads, 1645, 3887; (Ledes), 877, 1202, 2079; Ledes, conducts, 2875; Lede, *pr. pl.* bring, 5633; Led (Lede), *pt. s.* led, 697; carried, 2976; Lede (Ledyn), *pt. pl.* led, 1124; *pp.* taken, 621; Ledis (Ledes), *imp. pl.* lead, 1923.
 Lederly; see Lethirly.
 Lee, *s.* lea, field, 3561.
 Lee, *s.* shelter, escape, 2060. See Jamieson. Or an error for *lyfe*, as in the Dublin MS.
 Lee, *s.* delight, 5615. "Lee, joy, pleasure, delight"; Halliwell.
 Leege; see Lege.
 Leeve, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* leave, 4328.
 Lefn (Leun), *v.* live, 1607; Lef (Leue), 1609. See also Leue.
 Lefe, *v.* to leave; hence Lefys, *pr. s.* leaves, 330; Left, *pt. s.* left, 393; remained, 800; Lefe, *imp. s.* leave off, 5035; Left, *pp.* left, 814, 1269, 2253; (Laf), 728.
 Lefe, *s.* leave, 1826, 2079; (Lefe), 1816.
 Lefe, *s.* leaf, page, 4041; leaf (of a book), 1656; (Leffe), 1932.
 Lefe, *v.* believe, 287.
 Lefe, *adj.* dear, 653; (Leyue), 893.
 Lefe (Leue), *adv.* lief, gladly, 1082.
 Lefe, *ger.* to live, 3810; (Leue), *v.* live, 1605, 1607, 1609; (Lefys), *pr. s.* 889; Lefis (Lefyn), *pr. pl.* live, dwell, 3397.
 Lefyng, *s.* living, mode of life, 4248; Lefing, 4699.
 Legaunce (Legeance), allegiance, 2791.
 Lege, *adj.* liege, 1607, 1948; (Leyge), 3087; (Leege), 987.
 Lege, *s.* liege lord, 5624; Leggis (Leizez), *pl.* lieges, subjects, 3386.
 Lege, *s.* leg, 5473; Leggis, *pl.* 4748, 4959; (Leggez), 772*.
 Legeman (Lege man), liege man, 3172; Lege men (Legemen), *pl.* liege men, 1918.
 Leke, leek; Of a leke, to the extent of the value of a leek, 4228. See the note.
 Lekyn; see Lycken.
 Lele, *adj.* leal, true, 3116; loyal, 1948; trusty, 2818.
 Lele, *adv.* truly, 5020.
 Lelist (Lelyst), *adj.* most loyal, 2877.
 Lely, *adv.* leally, faithfully, 880, 1682; loyally, 4306.
 Leme, *s.* light, ray, flame, 226, 4174, 4374. A.S. *Loma*.
 Lemes, *pr. s.* glows, 5004; Lemed, *pt. s.* 4910; Lemed, *pt. s.* flashed, shone, 3335 (omit the first *as* in this line); Lemand, *pres. part.* glowing, shining, 553, 5398.
 Lemetis, *pl.* limits, bounds, 5038.
 Lemett, *pp.* limited, fixed, 4283.
 Lemmans, *pl.* lovers, 7.
 Lend, *v.* go, journey, march, 2192, 2888, 3520, 4889; ascend, 221; Lende, *go.* 3498; Lend, *ger.* to go, cross, 2591; Lendis, *pr. s.* comes, goes, 333, 858; (Lendez), arrives, 1633; Lendes, 1482; advances, 2149; Lendis, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 2410; Lendis him *vp.* goes

- up, 573; Lendis, *pr. pl.* go, 3656; Lendis þaim, come, 3849; Lendis (Lenden) þaim, *pr. pl.* land themselves, arrive, 3193; Lendid, *pt. s.* arrived, 379; Lend, *imp. s. 2 p.* go thou, 1980; Lendis, *imp. pl.* go, advance, 4992. See Lent.
- (Lendes), *pl.* loins, 965.
- Lenes, *pr. s.* leans forward, 1708; Lened, *pt. s.* leaned, 262; (Lennytt), 1708; Lene, *imp. s. 3 p.* let him lean, incline, 5069.
- Lenes (Lennys), *pr. s.* lends, grants, 3108.
- Leng, *ger.* to tarry, 5544; Lenge, *v.* live, linger, 1104; remain, abide, sojourn, stay, dwell, 273, 372, 2192; (Lenge), 1682; Lengis, *pr. s.* dwells, 1482; tarries, 1029; (Lengez), 1082; (Lenges), 2128; remains, 1293, 3535; Le[n]gis (Lenges), *pr. s.* abides, 2442; Lenges, tarries, 418; remains, 3746; Lengys (Lengez), continues, remains, 1144; Lengis (Lenges), *pr. pl.* are found, 2769; Lengid, *pt. s.* dwelt, 5538; (Lenged), 1293; *pp.* tarried, stayed, 461; Lenge (Leng), *pr. s. subj.* linger, 2162.
- Lengthe (Lenth), *s.* length, 800; A lengthe, in length, 3987; Lenghe (*for* Lengthe), length, 5086. See Lenthe.
- Lennthe, *v.* lengthen, p. 281, l. 65.
- Lent, *pt. pl.* 1 p. went, lit. arrived, 1942; *pt. pl.* came, 3902; Lent, *pp.* arrived, 5079; Is lent, is put, 3527 (perhaps from inf. *lene*); Lent ware (wer), had remained, 3068.
- Lenthe, *s.* length, 4750; Lenth, 68, 3908. See Lengthe.
- Lenxis, *pl.* lynxes, 3573.
- Lenþth, *s.* length, 3299. See Lenthe.
- Leon, *s.* lion, 109; Leons, *pl.* lions, 3849, 3902.
- Lepards, *pl.* leopards, 5084, 5140, 5438; Leopards, 4793.
- Lepis (Lepys), *pl.* leaps, dances, 1761; (Lepys), 791*.
- Lepros, *adj.* leprous, 4593.
- Lere, *v.* learn, 36, 4589 (see note to this line); *ger.* 621; Leres, *pr. s.* learns, 629; Leris, *pr. s.* teaches, 4551; Lerid, *pt. pl.* taught, 36; Lerid, *pp.* learned, instructed, 653; Lered, learned, 3732; (Leryd), learnt, 765*. Properly 'to teach'; but frequently misused.
- Lere, *s.* face, 379. A.S. *hléor*.
- Leres, *pl.* lessons, 3759. See Lare.
- Les, *adj.* less, 1055, 4228.
- Les, *adv. comp.* less, 472.
- Les (*for* Lest), lest, 732. The Dublin MS. has *lest*.
- Lesards, *pl.* lizards (probably crocodiles), 3573.
- (Lese); see Lose.
- Lesias (Lesyas), Lysias, 834; (Lysyas), 866.
- Lesing, *s.* leasing, lying, 4362; legend, fiction, 4. The use of this word in l. 4 is very remarkable, as it usually has a bad sense.
- Lesis (Lossez), *pr. s. 2 p.* shalt lose, 2306.
- (Lesse), *adj.* less, 1596.
- Lessen, *pr. s. 2 p. subj.* lessen, take away, 5368.
- Lest, *adj.* least, 3301, 3643, 3908; Leste, 5127.
- (Lest), *adv.* least, 2546.
- Lest, *conj.* lest, 2141, 4167; (Lest), 1372, 1981.
- Lesten, *ger.* to listen, 523; At lesten, to listen to, 4309; Lestyn, *ger.* 8; Lestin, *v.* listen to, 3468; Lesten, *v.* hearken to, 4949.
- (Let), *ger.* to let, 750; Letes, *pr. s. refl.* behaves, accounts himself, 1726; Lete, *pt. s.* let, 750, 1828; made, 491; behaved, 612; Lete, *pt. pl.* let, 5; Lett, *pp.* permitted, 2192; Lete, *imp. s.* cease, let go, 5332; Lett, 3 p. let, 1497; Letis (Lettes), *imper. pl. 2 p.* let ye, 988; Lettis (Lett), let, 1800. A.S. *lātan*.
- Let (Lett), *v.* hinder, let, 1781; Lettis (Lettes), *pr. s.* hinders, 2807, 4065, 4847; Lett, 2 *pr. pl.* 4418; (Let), *pt. pl.* delayed, 801.
- Letere, *s.* bed (lit. litter), couch, 4910.
- Leth, *v.* listen to, 4470. A bad spelling of *lithe*; see Lithe, Lythe.

- Cf. the Lat. text—'facias vt exaudiant preces tuas.'
- Leth, *s.* alleviation, healing, cure, 4593. See *Lith* in Glos. to Havelok.
- Lethire, *adj.* evil, wretched, 3548; (Lethir), cowardly, 2445; wicked, 2362; Lethir, vile, 3732; Leþer (Lether), wicked, 840. A.S. *lyðre*.
- Lethirly, *adv.* shamefully, 2791; (Lederly), badly, ill, 2376; Lethirely (Letherly), wickedly, 1465. See Lithirly.
- Lett, *s.* hindrance, 118.
- Letter, *s.* letters, reading, 624, 644; Lettir (Lettre), letter, 1463, 1719, 1806; Lettirs, *pl.* letters, 201; (Lettres), 1170, 1868, 1995, 2010; Lettris, 5100; Letteris, 5639.
- Letterure (Lettre), *s.* story, 2170.
- Lettird, *adj.* lettered, learned, 199; Lettrid (Lettred), 2241.
- Leue, *v.* leave, 1193, 3498; leave off, 1744; (Lefe), 2149, 3080; Leue (Leven), *ger.* 1258; Leue (Lefe), 1 *pr. s.* leave, 2950; Leues, *pr. s.* 1047, 4340; 4264 (to which line see the note); Leues (Lefys), 2486; he (God) grants, 2508; (Leuys), 1283; Leuys (Lefys), 2887; Leues, *pr. pl.* leave, 886; remain behind, 3750; Leuys (Lefes), leave, 3202.
- Leue, *s.* leave, 331, 766, 899, 1012, 2028; Be þoure (younr) leue, by þour leave, 1680, 1681, 3465; departure, 1693.
- Leue (Lefe), *v.* live, 2814, 3171; Leue, *ger.* 933; Leues, *pr. s.* lives, 1722, 4284; (Leues), 880; Leueth, p. 281, l. 66; (Leued), *pt. s.* 920; Leuand, *pres. part.* living; Leuand of lyue, living in life, living alive (tautological), 2877.
- Leue, *ger.* to believe in, 5552; Leue, 1 *pr. s.* believe, 1781, 2688, 3715; Leuys (Leues), 2 *pr. s.* 1760; Leues, 2 *pr. pl.* believe, expect, 4482; (Leue), 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayest believe, 1986; (Leuyn), *pr. pl. subj.* may believe, 2688 (misused for the singular); Leued, 1 *pt. s.* believed (myself), 3282; Leued, *pt. s.* expected, 3874.
- Leue, *adj.* dear, 4, 287, 573, 697, 4882; Leue (Leyfe), *adj. as sb.* sir, lit. dear one, 2688.
- Leuefull, *adj.* lawful, permissible, 1674.
- Leuell, *s.* level, 3261.
- Leuely, *adv.* dearly, with welcome, 4949. See Leue, *adj.*
- Leuer, *adv.* rather, 1465.
- Leues, *pl.* leaves (of a book), 5073; leaves, 3957, 5005. See Lefe, and Leuys.
- Leuir, *adj.* rather, 4947.
- Leuir, *s.* liver, 4606.
- Leuire, *ger.* to deliver, 3718; Leuird, *pp.* delivered, 5344.
- Leuyng, *s.* living, manner of living, 4222.
- Leuys, *pr. s.* leaves, 77, 135; Leuyd, *pt. s.* left, 148.
- Leuys, *pl.* leaves, 3666, 4145. See Leues.
- Leuys, *pr. pl.* live, 4942; Leuyand, *pres. pt.* 5287. See Leue.
- Lewis, *pr. s.* becomes warm, 4374.
- Leyge. See Lega.
- Leze, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* lie, tell falsely, 314.
- Lezt, *s.* 4980. Evidently a misspelling; and probably an error for lezt = length, a spelling which occurs in l. 3299. Of lezt large = of length large, i. e. of a large length, of a great height. Compare the parallel phrase "of a longe lengthe," i. e. of great length, in P. Plowman, B. xiv. 241.
- Libertes, *pl.* liberties, 4348, 4418.
- Liche, body, 141; Liches, *pl.* 4517. A.S. *lic*.
- Licherous, *adj.* lecherous, 4328; Licherus, 4551.
- Lichid, *pt. s.* (for Lechid), healed; It lichid him for enire, it healed him once for all (viz. by killing the man), 4785.
- Licken, *ger.* to liken, compare, 3095; 1 *pr. s.* 438; Lickyns (Likens), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* likenest, comparast, 2706; Lickenand, *pres. pt.* likening, hence alike, 666; Lickned, *pp.* likened, 3553; (Lykkynd), 3095; Licknud, made like, 4350.
- Lickid, *pt. pl.* licked, 3826.

- Licknes, *s.* likeness, 3679; (Liknes), 1709. See Liknes.
- Licoure (Liquor), *s.* liquor, juice, 1351; Licor (Licour), draught, 2569.
- Liddis, *pl.* lids, eye-lids, 965.
- Lies, *pr. s.* lodges, 1145; (Lay), *pt. s.* lodged, 1145. See also Lay, Ly.
- Life, *s.* life, 1918; (Lyfe), 2162; Lifis, *pl.* lives, 5.
- Lift, *s.* air, sky, 4814; Lifte, 674.
- Liftis, *pr. s.* lifts, raises, 3289; (Lyftes), 965; Lift (Liften), 1 *pt. pl.* lifted (up), rose (up), 1942; Lift, *pt. pl.* 196; Liftid, *pp.* lifted, 5514; Lift (Lyft), 728.
- (Lig); *v.* lie, 756*; Ligge, 345; Ligg, *ger.* to lie, 5591; Ligg, *v.* lay (*misused*), 2101; His buke on to lig, for his book to lie on, 1570; Liggis, *pr. s.* lies, 5173; (Liggez), stays, rests, 3176; (Ligges), 730*; Ligis, lies, repose, 4775; Liggis, *pr. pl.* lie, 4845; (Liggez), 772*. See Lies.
- Light; see Lijt.
- (Lighter), *adv.* more easily, 1055.
- (Lightyd), *pp.* relieved, cured, 2814. See also Lijtis.
- Like, *adj.* like, 240, 599, 654, 666; (Leke), 2445.
- Like, *s.* body, 2931, 3232, 4785. See Liche.
- Likis, *pr. s.* (it) pleases, 22, 292, 523, 3522; (Likez), 987; Likis (Liked), likes, 2013; (Likez), 2 *pr. s.* likest, 1765; Like, *pr. s. subj.* may it please, 5115; Likid, *pt. s.* liked, 146; pleased, 373; Likid, *impers. pt. s.* it would please, 5544; (Liked), might please, 2172; would please, 1948; Likand, *pres. pt.* pleasing, 4606.
- Likkys, *pr. s.* licks, 778*.
- Liknes, *s.* likeness, shape, 382. See Licknes.
- Limpe, *v.* happen (to), 3759; Limp (Lympe), befall, happen, 2162; Limpis, *impers. pres. s.* happens, 3891; Limps (Lympys), happens, suits, 3095; Limpis, belongs, 3563; Limpes, 2 *pr. s.* chancest, 3754 (rather read *if þe limpes*, if it happens to thee); Limp, *pr. s. subj.* may happen (to thee), 3297; Limpid (Enlympyd), *pt. s.* happened, succeeded, 1881; (Limpyd), was secured (for him), 2060; Vs limpyd (Limpyd), *pt. s. impers.*, it befell us, 209.
- Limy, *name*, 5495.
- Lind, *s.* lime-tree, *used for tree*, 5003; Lindis, *pl.* trees, 5038, 5237; lime-trees, 2851, 4765, 4942.
- Line (Lines), *s.* line, 1932; (Lyne), line of writing, 2047. See also Lyne.
- Lionesses, *pl.* lionesses, 5140. See also Lyon.
- Lippis, *pl.* lips, 3942.
- Lire, *s.* flesh, 3942. A.S. *lira*.
- List, *pr. s. impers.* pleases, 3297, 3810; it pleases (me), 3472; pleases (it), 3563; List vs, it pleases us, 4347; List, does it (not) please, 4942; (Lyst), it pleases, 2149; Liste (List), *pr. s. subj.* may please (thee), 1761; List, 2 *pr. pl.* (MS. lift), are (ye) pleased, do (ye) desire, 5356; List þow, may it please you, 3465; List, *pt. s.* it pleased, 5023.
- Lite, few, 2079, 2128, 4394; (Lyte), 2253; (Lityll), 2306. See Lyte.
- Lite, *s.* a little, 1942.
- Lithe, *v.* listen, hear, 5023; listen to, 3468; *ger.* to listen to, 4384. Icel. *hlýða*. See Lythe.
- Lithe, *ger.* to soften, render pliant, hence, to subdue, 3754. A.S. *gelisian*.
- Lithirly (Lythirly), *adv.* wickedly, evilly, 3100. See Lethire.
- Lithis, *pl.* limbs, 3750. A.S. *lið*. See Lyth.
- Lithis, *pl.* pleasures, 5615. Allied to Lithe, *v.*
- Litill, *adj.* little, 113, 331, 503, 507; few, 2128, 5147; (Lityll), 866, 965; (Litell), 1754. See Littill, Lytill.
- Litillaike, *s.* littleness, smallness of stature, 2505; (Litilayke), 1709; (Lityllaike), littleness, 2931; (Lityllake), pitifulness, 2706.
- Litill-quat, somewhat, 4392.

- Littid, *pt. pl.* delayed, 801. Bad spelling for *littid*.
- Littill, *adj.* little, 130, 227, 1981; *as s.* a little, 139, 541; *adv.* 1054. See Litill.
- Littis, *pl.* dyes, colours, 4336. Icel. *lita*.
- Liuers (Delyuerys), *pr. s.* delivers, 3152.
- Lizt, *adj.* bright, 553; white, 4464; royal, 5184; (Light), cheery, cheerful, 2604, 5332.
- Lizt, *s.* light, 3335; (Light), 1781, 2976; Liztis, *pl.* lights, 4231.
- Lizter, *adj. comp.* lighter, i.e. delivered, 572.
- Lizt-hertid, *adj.* light-hearted, 2814.
- Liztis, *pr. s.* lights, alights, 4153; (Lightes), 1560; Lizt, *pr. pl.* 886; Lizt, *pr. pl. subj.* alight, light, fall, 732; Lizt, *pt. s.* alighted, 4785; Lightyd, *pt. pl.* 886; descended, was born, 599; came down, 2362; Lizt, *pp.* alighted, 2404; Lizt, *pp.* born, 4494 (cf. l. 599).
- Liztis, *pr. s.* feels light, is glad, 5255.
- Liztis, *pr. s.* lights, kindles, 4232; Liztid, lighted, 4231.
- Liztly, *adv.* quickly, 77; without a cause, 3506; (Lightly), easily, 1932.
- Liztyere, *adv.* lightlier, more easily, 1055.
- Lo, lo! 399, 713, 985. See Loo.
- Locerhes; written *Locerhes in the MS.*, but prob. an error for *Leches*, *pl.* leeches, 4197.
- Lockis, *pr. s.* locks, fastens, 5495.
- Lockis, *pl.* locks (of hair), 602.
- Lofe, *pr. s.* 1 p. praise, 259, 5624; (Lofe), 2577; Lofed, *pt. s.* praised, 658. Icel. *lofa*.
- Lofe, *s.* praise, fame, 664. Icel. *lof*.
- Lofe, *s.* love, 226.
- (Lofely), *adv.* lovingly, 3172. See Luffy.
- Lofis, *pr. s.* loves, 880. See Lufe.
- Loft, in *phr.* O! loft, aloft, on high, 196, 221, 385, 426; Fra þe loft, from above, 393; Apon loft (Vpon loft), aloft, 778; Of loft (On-lofte), aloft, 1392.
- Loge, *s.* lodge, defence, hold, 1292; lodge, 886, 1158; lodging, 372; apartment, 4910; lodge, i.e. palace, 3335 (omit the former *as* in this line); abode, 791*.
- Logis, *pr. s.* lodges, 1082; (Loges), 3657, 4882, 5580. See Loygid.
- Lokars (Lokers), *pl.* keepers, 2591.
- Loke, *ger.* look for, 372; *v.* look, 273; Lokis (Lukes), 1 *pr. s.* (I) look, expect, 2810; Lokis, *pr. s.* looks, 603, 674, 677, 1129; looks to, 1331; (Lokys), 2241; (Lukes), 965; Lokes (Lukes), *pr. s.* looks, 2942; (Lokez), 840*; seems, 750*.
- Loke, *s.* look, 5256.
- Loken, *pt. s.* covered, 5005, 5237; Lokin, roofed, 4383. A.S. *locen*, pp. of *lucan*.
- Lokid (Lukkyd), *pp.* decided, decreed, 3404.
- Lokis, *pl.* locks, 4956.
- Lome, *s.* tool; Odd lome, privy member, 4750. A.S. *lóma*.
- Longe, *adj.* long; At longe, at last, 3498.
- (Longen), *pr. pl.* belong, 1549.
- Loo, lo! 4417; (Lo), 705, 1821. See Lo.
- Loose, *s.* loss, 3891.
- Looue (Lofe), palm of the hand, 2569. Icel. *lofi*. See Loue.
- Loran, *s.* bit, 793*. O.F. *lorain* (Roquefort).
- Lord, lord, master, 152, 1656, 1828; (Lorde), sir, 1012; Lorde (Lord), Lord, 848; Lordis, *gen.* lords, 5; Lord (Lordez), *gen.* lord's, 2604; Lordis, *pl.* lords', 196; (Lordez), 814, 1602.
- Lording (Lordyng), lord, 2573.
- Lordschip, *s.* dominion, 1687, 2306; lordship, 1503; Lordschips, *pl.* titles of honour, 4347.
- Lore, *s.* instruction, command, 2791. See Lare.
- Lorell (Losell), mean fellow, rascal, 1760. *Lor-el* and *los-el* are mere variants, meaning 'lost' or abandoned wretch.
- Lores, *pl.* laurel-trees, 4972.
- Lorne, *pp.* lost, 5. A.S. *loren*, pp. of *lōsan*.

- Lose (Lese), *v.* to lose, 3087; Loste (Lost), *pt. pl.* lost, 3068; Lost, *pp.* 118, 152, 840, 2785.
- Lose (Losse), *s.* loss, 3171; Los (Losse), 866.
- Lose, *s.* praise, fame, 1881, 2604, 3527; (Loyse), 2505. O.F. *los*.
- Losed, *pp.* praised, 5316; (Losyt), renowned, 2505.
- Losell; see Lorell.
- Losengere (Losynger), *s.* liar, 1923; Losangere, 3543; Losengers (Losyngers), *pl.* 1734.
- (Loth), *adj.* loath, 1258.
- Lothlyche; see Laythely.
- Loude, *adv.* loudly, 491, 612, 1609.
- (Loudly), *adv.* loudly, 1709.
- Loue, *v.* love, 369; (Loued), *pt. s.* loved, 813*; Loues, *pr. pl.* desire, 2318; Loued (Lofed), *pp.* beloved, 2562.
- Loue, *s.* love, 1687.
- Loue, *ger.* to praise, to be praised, 4590; 1 *pr. s.* praise, 458; Loues, *pr. s.* praises, 5207; Loued, *pp.* praised, 2505. Icel. *lofa*.
- Loue, *s.* palm of his hand, 2067. Icel. *lofi*. See Looue.
- Louely, *adj.* dear, 2289; (Lofely), 3579.
- Louely, *adv.* beautifully, 426; kindly, 369; (Louely), lovingly, 880.
- (Loughly), *adv.* lowly, 1012.
- Loute, *ger.* to render obedient, 3494; to bow down to, 3549; Loute, *v.* do obeisance, 369; (Lowte), submit to, 993; Loutis, *pr. s.* bows to, 4238; (Loutez), bows to, 785*; Loutis (Loutes), bows down to, 3211; *pr. pl.* obey, 5674; Louted, *pp.* revered, bowed down to, 3454. A.S. *hlutan*.
- Louyng, *s.* praise, 3754.
- Low; On low, a-low, low, 788*.
- Low, *s.* a mountain; see Lawe.
- Lowde, *adj.* loud, 96; (Lowd), 1392.
- Lowe, *s.* flame, 4177, 4179. A.S. *log*.
- Lowere, *s.* reward, guerdon, recompense, 5368. O.F. *louier*, *loier* (Roquefort); *loyer*, 'reward, guerdon;' Cotgrave.
- Lownys; see Lawnes.
- (Lowsed), *pp.* praised, 1960. See Losed.
- Lowsys, *pr. s.* loosens, 788*.
- Lowtes, *pr. s.* bends, 788*.
- Loygid (Loget), *pp.* lodged, 1952.
- Loze, *pt. s.* laughed, 96.
- Loze, *s.* lake, 3899. A.S. *lagu*; Icel. *lögr*.
- Luctus, *name of a place*, 2170.
- Lufe, *v.* love, 664; Lufe, 1 *pr. s.* love, 289; 1 *pr. pl.* 3768; Lufed (Lofyd), *pp. as adj.* beloved, 3425.
- Lufe, *s.* love, 6; (Loue), 920.
- Lufe, *error for* I lofe, I praise, 2577. See the Dublin MS.
- Luffy, *adv.* lovingly, 1693. See Lofely.
- Luggid, *pt. pl.* pulled, dragged, 3942.
- Luke, *v.* look, see, 68, 221; Lukis, *pr. s.* 1527.
- (Lukkyd); see Lokid.
- Lurkare, *s.* lurker, skulker, 3543.
- Lurkis, *pr. pl.* lurk, 3991.
- Lust, *s.* pleasure, 4497; Lustes, *pl.* 4328.
- Ly, *v.* lie, 770*.
- Lycken (Lekyn), *v.* liken, 1740.
- Lyes, *pr. s.* lies, is, 920.
- Lyfe, life, 34, 42; (Lyue), 1188; O lyfe, alive, 663; On lyfe, 540; (On-lyue), 1269; Lyfes (Lyue), *gen. life's*, 880; (Lyfez), *pl. lives*, 1826.
- Lyfe, *s.* person, living person, 599, 5287. So in P. Plowman and Gower.
- Lyfe-days, days of my life, 369.
- Lyft, *s.* sky, 4174. See Lift.
- Lyft, *v.* lift, exalt, 3293; (Lift), 1090; (Lyftes), *pr. s.* 731*. See Liftis.
- Lyftyng, *s.* lifting, raising; As a hand lyftyng, like what can be lifted in the hand, i. e. as large as could just be raised by hand, 567. (Lygez), *pl.* legs, 3150.
- (Lykkynd); see Licken.
- Lyly, *sb.* lily, 3902.
- Lym, *s.* limb, 666, 4497; (Lymez), *pl.* 1918; (Lymmes), *s.* 772*.
- Lyme, *s.* lime, 5088.
- Lymit, *s.* limit, 5069.
- Lymp, *v.* happen, 299; Lympid

- (Limpyd), *pt. s. subj.* should happen, 2220.
 (Lymphys); see Limpe.
 Lyn, *adj.* linen, 141.
 Lyndis, *pl.* lindens, trees, 3957, 4447.
 See Lind.
 Lyne, *s.* line, 1656; (Line), 1821; story, 2060; line (of the book), 1439; Lynes, *pl.* lines of the writing, 2573.
 Lyon, *s.* lion, 612; Lyons, *gen.* 426, 602; Lyon, *gen.* 438. See also Lionesses.
 (Lyre), *s.* face, look, 3232. A.S. *hléor*.
 Lyse, 1 *pr. s.* (I) lie, 2810; (Lyes), *pr. s.* lies, 1816.
 Lyte, *adj.* little; To lyte, too little, very little, 1754.
 (Lyth), *s.* limb, form, 2931. A.S. *lith*. See Lithis.
 Lythe, *ger.* to listen to, 4; Lythis (Lightez), *pr. s.* listens, 1650.
 Lythirly; see Lithirly.
 Lytill, *adj.* little, 478.
 Lyue, *s.* life, 2123; Lyues, *gen.* life's, 5615; On lyue, alive, 5085; Of lyue, alive, 3732; out of life, 4333; Brought of lyue (line), brought out of life, killed, 1442; Lyues (Lytez), *pl.* lives, 3071; Lyuys, 1595, 2476.
 Lyuir, *adj.* delivered, 3746.
 Lyuire (Delyver), *ger.* to deliver, 3120; Lyuers (Leuerys), *imp. pl.* deliver, 3116.
 Ma (for Me), me, 729. See note.
 Maa (Make), *v.* make, perform, 1761.
 Maa (Mo), more, besides, 1273.
 Macchis (Mache), *pl.* mates, 831.
 Maes, *pl.* clubs, 4100.
 Mache, *ger.* to match themselves, 3607; Macches, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* match; Macches 3ow, match yourselves, 1033.
 Mad, *pl. s.* made, caused, 3449; Made, 235, 469; Mad, *pp.* made, 3921; Made, 318, 1130.
 Madame, madame, 229, 874.
 Madding, *s.* madness, 1743, 3546.
 (Made); an error for Nad, had not, 1462. See the footnote.
 (Maden), 729; see Maideux.
 Magen, *Lat.* Magehon, 5492.
 (Mageste), *s.* majesty, 1491. See Maieste.
 Magged, *pp.* mangled, 1268. Cf. Lowl. *Sc. magil, maggle*, to mangle, to hash.
 Magnifie (Magnyfy), *imp. s.* magnify, 2838.
 Magogg, Magog, 5487.
 Mai, *pr. s.* may, 3552.
 Mai, May, 3699.
 Maideux; So maideux, i. e. so m'aide deux, so may God aid me, 5024. The words *m'aide deux* are Anglo-French. Cf. note to l. 729.
 Maif[d]ons, *pl.* maidens, 3722.
 Maied, *pp.* dismayed, 5399. Short for *esmaied*. See Mayes.
 Maieste, majesty, 2275; (Mageste), 1947, 1969.
 Mailes (Malys), *pl.* coats of mail, 803, 2454, 2624; Maillis (Males), 1219.
 Maire (Mair), mayor, 1557.
 Maister, master, 235, 268, 310, &c.; tutor, 5617; Maistre (Maister), 2238, 2251; (Maistir mair), Mr. mayor, 1557; Maistris, *pl.* masters, lords, 3400; (Maisters), 1545, 1920; Maistirs, lords, 985; (Maisteres), 767*.
 Maister, *adj.* chief, 2037, 5404.
 Maister-like, *adv.* with dignity, 228.
 Maisterlingis, *pl.* princes, 481; Maisterlings, 3310.
 Maistres, *s.* mistress, queen, 3763, 4530.
 (Maistrett), *pp.* conquered, 1270.
 Maistri, *s.* mastery, rule, dominion, 3306; Maistrie (Maistre), 1969; Maisterris, *pl.* masteries, conquests, 4502; Maistryse, *pl.* powerful charms, feats of astrology, 333.
 Makare (Maker), *s.* Maker, Creator, 3267.
 Make, *ger.* to make, 205, 333, 868; *v.* 356, 583; to be made, 191; Makis (Mase), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* makest, 2908; (Makys), dost, 834*;
 Makis, *pr. s.* 544, 641, 704; Makis (Mase), *pr. s.* disposes, 2210 (better insert *to fonde*, as in the Dublin MS.); Makis, *pr. pl.*

- make, 1266; (Made), *pt. pl.* made, 1266; Maked, *pt. s.* made, 3326; Makid, *pp.* made, 3345, 4358; Maked, 3441; Make, *pr. s. subj.* 890; let him make, 999.
- Make, *s.* mate, wife, 574, 5153; fellow, 5430. A.S. *gemaca*.
- Make (Makke), *s.* make, form, construction, 3218.
- Maleces, *pl.* works of malice, p. 279, l. 7.
- Malegreffe (Mawgre), *prep.* in spite of, 2782; Malegreue (Mawgre), 1747.
- Malicolý, *adj.* melancholy, 2382; Malicole (Malycole), melancholy, sad, 2741.
- Malicolý, *s.* ill-humour, anger, 1981.
- Malidy, malady, 4281; (Maledy), 2127.
- Malstrid, *pp.* bewildered, 1270. Written for *malscrid*; see *Malskrid* in Will. of Palerne, *malskren* in Stratmann, and *malscrung* in Wright's Vocabularies.
- Mammlere, *s.* ready speaker, fluent utterer, 4498. From M.E. *mame-len*, to chatter.
- Man, *s.* man, 185, 211, &c.
- Man (May), *pr. pl. subj.* may, 1681.
- Manars, *pl.* manners, 4223. See Maner.
- Manas, *s.* menace, 3570.
- Mandment, *s.* mandate, commandment, 3531, 3541.
- Mane, many, 104.
- Mane, *s.* moan, lament, 5027; (Mone), 1266.
- Maner, *s.* custom, 2953; manner, sort, 684, 1130; Manere, kind, sort, 1498, 4353, 4535; Maners, *pl.* manners, 2515.
- Manerly, *adv.* courteously, 3953.
- Mangery, feast, 831. See P. Plowman.
- Mankit. See Alto-maukid (*sic*).
- Manly, *adv.* boldly, 762.
- (Manly), *adv.*; an error for Maynly, i.e. severely, 3200. (The Ashmole MS. has the right reading.)
- (Manours), *pr. s.* governs, 837*.
- Manslatir, *s.* manslaughter, 4486.
- Manslajt, *s.* manslayer, 4498.
- Mantill, mantle, 3236, 4956, 5181; (Mantyll), 2864.
- Many, *adj.* many, 13, 86, 94, 124; (Mony), 692; Many day (Mony day), long ago, many a day, 919, 1186. See Mane.
- Many-fald, *adj.* manifold, 3763.
- Manykins; Of manykins hewis, of hues of many a kind, 3864. (Manysflesche), man's flesh, 748*.
- Marble (Marbyll), *s.* marble, 1330.
- Marbryn, *adj.* of marble, 4353.
- Marchandise (Merchaundyse), *s.* merchandise, 3419.
- Marchands (Marchaundez), *pl.* merchants, 1557.
- Marche, *s.* border, frontier, region, boundary, country, 97, 245, 762, 913, 1625, 2012, 3452, 3538, 837*; Marchis (Marches), *pl.* marches, borders, 2696; Marches, 1241, 1972, 2037. See Merche.
- Marchesmen (Marche-men), men of that march or region, 2540.
- March-gats, *pl.* lines of march, 5076.
- Marcipy, Marsipius, 5093.
- Marcure, Mercury, 4498; (Mercury), 704; Marcure (Mercurius), *gen.* Mercury's, 2865.
- Mare, *adj.* more, greater, 118, 130, 182, 1743, 1746, 2584, 2813, 4395.
- Mare, *s.* mare, 4434.
- Margarits, *pl.* pearls, 3669. See Margrite.
- Margon, *s.* muttering, 628. It seems to refer to the muttering of a crowd of boys engaged in learning a task. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *murgeon*, a murmur, the act of grumbling, q. v. in Jamieson. Stevenson explains it by 'sullenness.'
- Margrite, *s.* pearl, 4901.
- Market, *s.* market; To make his market, to do his business, 421.
- Marras, *s.* morass, marsh, 3893, 3932.
- Marres, *pr. s.* wounds, 2040; Marris, *pr. pl.* injure, 1420; Marre, hurt, spoil, 4409; (Merred), *pt. pl.* 1420; Marrid, *pt. s.* spoilt, 3546.
- Mars, Mars, 4502.
- Marthyney, name, 5492.
- Martrid (Martyred), *pp.* murdered, 1268; Martird, slain, 3644.
- Mary, *ger.* marry, 3773.

- Mas (Makes), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* makest, 831; (Makys), 2741; Mas, makes, causes, 2587, 3501, 3570, 3616, 4739; (Makes), 1330, 2277, 2674; (Makez), 1518, 1956.
- Mascles, *pl.* spots, 4989, 5138. The F. heraldic term *macle* (from Lat. *macula*) is in E. heraldry spelt *mascle*. See *macle* in Cotgrave.
- Mased, *pp.* confused, amazed, confounded, 3885; (Masyd), bewildered, 1270.
- Massy, *adj.* huge, heavy, 3332. (Massydon), Macedonia, 837*.
- Mast, *adj.* most, greatest, 1462, 3082, 3669, 3921; (Most), 2687; (Moste), 1115; Maste, 4820.
- Mast, *adv. superl.* most, 5078; Maste, 1725, 2072; (Most), 2416.
- Mast, *s.* mast, *put for pl.* masts, 69.
- Mastif, mastiff, 321.
- Mast-quat, for the most part, 5010.
- Matches (Maches), *pr. s.* provides a match for, 2277.
- Mater (Materys, *pl.*), matter, 2780.
- Matid (Mated), *pp.* exhausted, 1270.
- Maumentry, idolatry, 4486.
- Maundment, *s.* commandment, *but here commendation or message*, 4237.
- Mawe, *s.* maw, stomach, 4508; Mawis, stomachs, 4434; open gullets, 4728.
- May, 1 *pr. s.* may, 464; (if I) may, 327; 2 *pr. s.* canst, 366, 1090, 1986; *pr. s.* may, 179, 520, 636; 2 *pr. pl.* can, 684; *pr. pl.* 592.
- Mayden, *s.* maiden, 4266; Maydens, *pl.* 3177.
- Maydese, for m'aide Deus, so may God aid me, an oath, 4446. See note; and see Maideux.
- Mayes, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* be ye dismayed, 3010; dismay, 3570. *Short for Smayis, imp. pl. of smay.* Cf. O.F. *s'esmayer*, to be astonished; Cot. See Maied.
- Maylis, *pl.* mail-armour, coats of mail, 3615; Mayles (Males), 2226.
- Mayn, *adj.* chief, choice, 3777; strong, complete, 3018; large, 3932.
- Maynes, *pr. s.* maims, wounds, 5153; Mayned, *pp. as adj.* maimed, 1273; hence, wretched, miserable, 4544.
- Maynly, *adv.* exceedingly, extremely, 399, 934, 1341; strongly, severely, 3200; vehemently, 3434; (Manly), boldly, 1033, 1173, 1951; fiercely, vigorously, 2042; strongly, 1217, 1379; greatly, 2235; Maynely, strongly, 3969; fiercely, 3885.
- Maynyng, *s.* maiming, injury caused (by), 4088. See Maynes.
- Mayntenance (Mayntenaunce), maintenance, 1179.
- Mayntene, *v.* defend, 1972; Maynteines, *pr. s.* keeps up, 4522; Maynten, *pr. pl.* maintain, keep, defend (his body), 1265.
- Mayte, *adj.* mighty, great, 4787 (see footnote), 4883; Mayten, 3938.
- Me, *dat.* for me, 3170; to me, 214; *acc.* me, 208; myself, 3093.
- Meane, *s.* mean, means, way, method, p. 282, l. 105.
- Meche, *adj.* great, 3306.
- Meche, *error for* Methe, *s.* moderation, 3102. See Meth.
- Medcyme, *s.* medicine, 4281; (Medycine), 2555.
- Mede, *s.* meed, reward, 1092, 3191, 4534, 5226; ransom, 3120; Wyrship to mede, honour for their reward, 3423; Medis, *pl.* (Mede, *s.*), rewards, 2428.
- Mede, *s.* mead, 4824.
- Mede, Media, 88, 4843, 5105; (Medy), 2528, 3107; Medi, 1681.
- Medill, *adj.* middle, 315.
- Medilmast, *adj. superl.* middlemost, 5093.
- Medis, *pl.* Medes, 3644, 3969, 5312, 5632.
- Medy, Media, 2583, 3616.
- Meenes (Menys þe), 2 *pr. s.* be-moanest, lamentest, 2741. A.S. *mēcan*.
- Meere, *s.* mare, 3921; Meeris (Merys), *pl.* 2853.
- Meere, *s.* boundary, 5058; limit allotted period, 5024.
- Meere, *s.* mere, lake, 4093.
- Meeve, *ger.* to move, 5292.

- Megire (Meger), *adj. as s.* meagreness, famine, 1164.
- Meke, *adj.* meek, humble, 1747.
- Meke, *ger.* to humble (himself), 1746; Meke (Mekyn), *imp. s.* humble, render meek, 2838.
- Mekely, *adv.* meekly, 816, 1947, 2098.
- Mekely (for Mekilly), *adv.* largely, 3691. (Or an error for *metely*, meetly).
- Mekill, *adj.* great, 396, 927, 3313; great, 437; Mekil, great, 69; (Mykle), great, 1947; Mekil quat, many things of various kinds, 130 (see the note), 5468.
- Mekill, *s.* much (see the note), 4397.
- Mekill, *adv.* much, 268, 464, 513, 659; (Mykyll), 897.
- Mekills, *error for* Mekill, *adj.* much, 4310.
- Mekly (Mekely), *adv.* meekly, 1686.
- Meknes (Mekenes), *s.* meekness, 3286.
- Mele, *ger.* to speak, tell, 147, 5120; Melis (Melles), *pr. s. 2 p.* speakest, 2911; Melis (Mellys), *pr. s.* speaks, 2078, 2953; Melid, *pp.* spoken, told, 5113. A.S. *mélan*.
- Meliager, 1195, 1201, 1217, 1237, &c.
- Mell (Melle), *ger.* to meddle, 735; to contend, fight with, 1743; (Mell), intermeddle, 1989; Mellis, *pr. s.* cohabits, 5430. O.F. *mesler*.
- Mellis, *pr. s.* tells, speaks, 4310; (Mellys), 2 *pr. s.* tellest, 729. (Badly spelt; read *melis*, *melys*; but see further examples *s. v.* Mele).
- Mellis, *pl.* mallets, 4100.
- (Meltyn), *v.* melt, 3082; Meltis, *pr. s.* 2899.
- Me[m]bree, *s.* member (of the body, limb, 4493; Membris, *pl.* 4328, 4495.
- Memory, *s.* remembrance, 1118.
- Men, *pl.* men, people, 49, 88, 90, 147, &c.
- Menbris (for Membris), *pl.* limbs, members, 3806, 4513, 4544; (Membrys), 2552; (Menbres), 771*.
- Mendid, *pp.* mended, improved, made more fat, 464.
- Mene, *ger.* to mean, signify, 437, 3389; to signify, to say, 4944; Mene, *pr. s. 1 p.* mean, 2740; Me[ne], 315.
- Mene, *adj.* mean, poor; Al be þe metire bot mene = although the metre be but mean, 3464.
- Mene qwile (Meyne qwyle), mean while, 905; (Meynne tyme), 1163.
- Mene, *s.* mean, moderate state, the golden mean, 4591.
- Menere (Meyner), *adj. comp.* meaner, lesser, 1267.
- Menes (Meane), *pr. pl. refl.* bemoan themselves, lament, 2154; Menyð, *pt. pl. refl.* complained, bemoaned themselves, 3489. A.S. *mænan*.
- Menest, *adj. superl.* meanest, 3332. (This sense is inappropriate; prob. an error for *metest* = fittest; or for *mainest* = chiefest.)
- Meneyhe (Meynȝey), *s.* household, 3120; (Meynȝe), multitude, 1586; Menȝe (Meynȝe), followers, army, 2629; company, 1597. O.F. *maisonnee*.
- (Meng), 1 *pr. s.* call to mind, 2505. See P. Plowman.
- Menske, *s.* honour, respect, 1237, 1746, 4492 (see the note), 5226; *miswritten* Menseke, 1746.
- Menske, *v.* honour, 5342; Menskid, *pp.* 4591.
- Menskefull, *adj.* honourable, 2953. (Menskfully), *adv.* honourably, 737*.
- Meny, *s.* company, 5420; (Menȝe), 2219; train, 823*. See Meneyhe.
- Menys, *pr. s.* means, 253; (Menys), *pr. pl.* tell, relate, 1615; Menyð, *pt. s.* meant, 2292.
- Merche, *s.* marches, borders, 4324. See Marchis.
- Mercure, Mercury, 4535.
- Mercy, mercy, 816.
- Mere, *s.* mere, lake, 3853.
- Merely, *adv.* merrily, pleasantly, 4769.
- Meri, *adj.* merry, 1179; (Mery), 2235.
- Meriest, *adj. superl.* merriest, joy-fullest, 2438.
- Meris (Mers), *pl.* marches, frontiers, boundaries, 1209. See Meere.

- Merke, *s.* mark, 4631; note, 2113; boundary, 1108; (Merke), 684.
- Merke, *s.* mirkness, darkness, 374.
- Merke, *v.* reach, attain, 5404; Merkid, *pt. pl.* marked, i. e. cut down deeply, penetrated, 3674; Merkid, *pp.* marked, 318, 3923; (Markyd), 2636; (Merkyd), made, 1130.
- Merote, *s.* merit, desert, 5226.
- Merris, *pl.* boundaries, 211. *Put for Meris, which see.*
- Merryd, *pp.* marred, harmed, 325.
- Meruailed þam (Amervale þaime), *pt. pl.* were astonished, 1615; Merualid þam (Mervalett), 897; Mervalled (Mervaylled), *pp.* astonished, 3218.
- Meruail, *s.* a marvel, 549; (Mervell), 1245; Meruale, 1061; Mervaille, 318; (Mervell), 1164; (Mervayle), 771*; Mervale, 565, 1814; Mervall, 5292.
- Mervailous (Mervalous), *adj.* marvellous, 2864.
- Mery, *adj.* merry, 2740; pleasing, bright, 2864.
- Meryly, *adv.* merrily, 3862.
- Mesopotane (Mesopothany), Mesopotamia, 2528; Messopotane, 2596; Mesopotayme, 5664; Mesepotayme, 88.
- Messadone, Macedon, 455, 481, 2012; (Massidon), 913; Messadon, 143; Messedone, 215; (Massydon), 985; (Masidon), 1989, 2002, 2126; (Masydon), 762, 1625, 1785, 2033; Messedoyne, 211, 905, 1972; Messidoyne, 228.
- Messadones (Mesidons), *pl.* Macedonians, 934, 1341; Messedones (Masydons), 1253, 1265, 1279, 1434; Massedons, 2040; Messedoyns (Massidons), 1179.
- Message, *s.* message, 1257, 3419.
- Messagere (Messynger), *s.* messenger, 1690; Messagere, *error for* Messagers, *plural (see the Dublin MS.)*, messengers, 2403.
- Messagere (Messenger), *s.* messenger, 2911; (Messyngere), 2235; (Messynger), 1951; Messangirs (Messyngers), *pl.* messengers, 897, 905, 1814.
- Messelyne, *s.* meslin, a kind of brass, 4583. A.S. *mæstling*.
- Mestire (Mister), need, 1774. *See mister in Cath. Anglicum.*
- Mesure, *s.* measure, 25, 1374; Out of mesure, beyond measure, 3056.
- Mete, *ger.* to meet (i. e. to meet and pass each other), 1324; to meet, 774, 1512; Mete, *v.* meet, 325; Metis, *pr. s.* meets, 455, 770, 1061; (Metes), 926, 1210; Metis on, meets with, 4631; Metis (Metyn), 1 *pr. pl.* 1943; Metis, *pr. pl.* 796, 3538; Mett, *pt. s.* met, 1429; 1 *pt. pl.* 3510; *pt. pl.* found (for him), 5469; Mete, 2 *pr. s. subj.* 1981.
- Mete, *ger.* to measure, 1350; Metis, *pr. s.* measures (his way), goes, proceeds, 143, 455, 4803; Meten, *pp.* measured out, completed, 3853; fulfilled, come, 564, 5058; (Metyn), measured, 1108; gone, 1209.
- Mete, *s.* meat, 4435; much food, 464 (see the note); food, 748*; Metis, *pl.* food, 4607.
- Meteles (Metellesse), *adj. as s.* want of provisions, 1164. Better read *metlest*, sb. = A.S. *metlēast*.
- Meth, *s.* moderation, 816, 1981; hence, Methc, pity, 147; mercy, 4324. A.S. *mēðs*. See Meche.
- Metire, *s.* metre, 3464.
- Metis, *pr. s. refl.* dreams, 422. A.S. *mētan*.
- Mett, *s.* dimension, 25.
- (Metyn), *pr. pl.* meet, 770, 796.
- Metyn, *pp.* measured, fulfilled, fully come, 374. See Mete, *v.*
- Meve, *v.* move, 1989; Mevis (Mefis), *pr. s.* moves, comes, 1951; Mevis him (Mefez), moves, 2033; Meue, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* move, 2382; Meued (Mefed), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* moved, 2331; Meuyd (Mevyd), *pt. s.* 3200; Meuand, *pres. pt.* moving, 2865, 3893.
- Mew (Mefe), *imper. s.* 2 *p.* move, remove, 1785. See above.
- Meyhe, *error for* Meynhe or Meyne, *s.* troop, host, army, 3604, 3619, 5495. See Meneyhe.

- (Meynyd), *pt. pl.* bemoaned, 1265.
See Menes.
- Mezne (Meynhe), *s.* company, band, 1269; (Meynje), 2084. See Meneyhe.
- Mi (My), *pron.* my, 2159, 2289.
- Michare, *s.* truant, petty thief, 3541.
- Miche, *adj.* much, 5602; (Much), great, 2269.
- (Michefe), *s.* misery, 1774.
- Midil-erth, middle earth, the world, 5525.
- (Might), *s.* might, 816, 1981.
- Mikille, *adj.* great, 5530.
- Mild, *adj. as s.* mild one, 5097, 5218.
- Milke-quite, *adj.* white as milk, 1579, 3776, 4533, 5468.
- Mille, *written as a contraction for* thousand, 2685, 3071, 3738.
- Minerua, Minerva, 4530.
- Minister (Mynyster), *s.* servant, 2911; Ministris, *pl.* servants, 1557.
- Ministere, *v.* govern, 1738.
- Ministracion, *s.* service, 3554.
- Miracle, wonder, 5602.
- Mirke, *adj.* dark, 2042, 3851, 4077; (Merke), 3056; Mirk, 4803.
- Mirre, *s.* myrrh, 4809, 4975, 5468.
- Mirthe, *s.* pleasure, 1853, 4378; Mirthis, jests, 4367.
- Mirthe, *v.* make merry, 5342.
- Mischife (Mischefe), mischief, mishap, 1163.
- Miseric, *s.* servitude; pi miserie, servitude to thee, 3550; misery, 1774.
- Missyng, *s.* want, lack, 4595.
- Miste (Myssyd), *pt. pl.* missed, 1343.
- Mistris, *pr. s.*; Vs mistris, there is needful for us, 4281. See Mestire.
- Mitre (Myter), *s.* mitre, 1541.
- Mizt, *s.* power, control, 3306; might, 307; Miztes, *pl.* powers, 115; Miztis (Mightez), *pl.* powers, 1657; strength, 1226; feats of strength, 1403.
- Mizt (Might), *pt. s.* 2 *p.* mightest, 1972; Mizt, *pt. s.* might, 598, 1160; could, 124, 845, 937, 1200; could (go), 1370; Mizt (Mighten), *pt. pl.* might, 1509.
- Miztfull, *adj.* mightful, mighty, 1491, 5492; (Mightfull), 2040, 2059; (Myghtfull), 3424; Miztfull (Mightfull), *adj.* mighty, 1201; (Mightyfull), 1420.
- Mizti (Myghty), *adj.* mighty, 1089; Mizty, 985.
- Miztist, *adj. superl.* mightiest, 3722; (Myghtiest), 1241.
- (Mo), more in number, 2084.
- Mocian, i. e. Ocean, 2540. See note.
- Mode, *s.* mood, 3546.
- Mode, *adj.*; see Mody.
- Modire, *s.* mother, 951; (Moder), 2002; (Modre), 827, 855, 2017; Modir (Moder), 2033; Modyre, 600; Modire, *gen.* mother's, 550.
- Modirson, mother's son, i. e. every man, 4326, 4409; Modire-son (Moderson), 1379, 1429, 2098, 2592; Modirsons, *pl.* mothers' sons, 2438.
- Mody, *adj.* brave, bold, 1195, 2078, 3327; Modi, 228, 1114; Mode, 215, 704, 5399; proud, 704.
- Moghe, *s.* heap of corn, 4434. E. *now.*
- Mold, *s.* earth, ground, 550, 1130, 3120, 3141, 3267; To mold bring, bury, 3310.
- Molle, *s.* labour, toil, 628; labour, trouble, 4446.
- Mon, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* must, 691, 707; *pr. s.* must, 1502, 3352; will, 2258; Mon, 2 *pr. pl.* must, 4565. Icel. *munu.*
- Monand, *pr. pt.* bemoaning, sorrowful, 1114.
- Mone, *s.* moon, 281, 3862, 4077.
- Mone-tree, moon-tree, 5010.
- Monestis, *pr. s.* admonishes, charges, warns, bids, 2592; (Monyshit, *pt. s.*), 1379; Monest (Monyshest), *pt. s.* admonished, 3127; Moneste (Monyshytt), 1173; (Monyshyd), 2592.
- Moneth, month, 4533; Monethis, *pl.* months, 5025, 5616; Moneths, *pl.* months (*error for* Moneth, *s.* month), 3699.
- Montayne (Mountane), mountain, 1089, 2669; Montayns, *pl.* 3862, 5097.
- Monte, mountain, 5058; Montts, *pl.* 5117 (see l. 5097). See Mounte.

- Mony, *adj.* many, 2126, 3776 ; (Many), 1005.
- More, *adv.* more, 322, 786*.
- Morewane, *s.* morning, 4769. See Morne.
- Morne, *s.* morning, morrow, 350, 430, 564, 1114, 1353, &c.
- Morne-qwile (Morne-while), *s.* morning-season, *but prob. an error for* Mene qwile, mean season, 2771.
- Morsels (Morsellys), *pl.* morsels, pieces, 1268.
- Morsure, *s.* biting, 4088.
- Morth (Morte), death, murder, 1279.
- Mosardry, *s.* indolence, idle dreaming, 4486. "*Musardie*, a muse, dump, study, dreaming ; a pawse, delay, lingering ;" Cotgrave.
- Mose, *v.* muse, 333. See above, and see Muses.
- Most, *adv.* most, 808*.
- Mot (Most), must, 1773 ; Mote, *pr.* *pl.* 2 *p.* may, 1834.
- Mote, *s.* building, castle, 3832, 4353 ; palace, 3218, 3324, 5602. "*Motte*, a clod, little hill, a fit seat for a fort or strong house ; (hence) also, such a fort or house (of earth) ;" Cotgrave. *E. moat.*
- Mote, *ger.* to discuss, dispute, 5120. *E. moot.*
- Move (Mefe), *v.* move, 1989 ; Moue (Mefe), 1967 ; Moues, *pr. s.* moves, 5420 ; Mouys (Mefes), 1201 ; Movis, *pr. pl.* (Meffyd, *pt. pl.*), move, 2403 (read *messagers*, *pl.*) ; (Moved), *pt. s.* 2032 ; Moued (Amoved), *pp.* moved to anger, 1217 ; Moves, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* move, go, 5048.
- Mounte, *s.* mountain, 4898 ; Mountis, *pl.* 5063. See Monte.
- Mountane, *s.* mountain, 4787 ; Mountey[n]s (Montannez), 1967.
- Mournes (Murnez), *pr. s.* mourns, 1136, 2032 ; *pr. pl.* 1265, 1341.
- Mournyng (Murnyng), *s.* mourning, 1853.
- Mouth, *s.* month, 321, 495 ; Mouth, 245, 904 ; Mouthis, *pl.* 4429. (Mouthed), *pt. s.* ate, 748*.
- Moyt (Mott), *pr. s. subj.* may, 1605, 1607. 1609 : Moyt (Myghu), *pt. s.* might, could, 3412.
- (Much), *adj.* great, 927, 955, 1249.
- Muld, *perhaps for* Mult ; *pi* muld = *pi* mult, thy toll, 4535. Cf. M. E. *multure*, fee or toll for grinding corn. But the Lat. text has *mella*, which the translator perhaps misread or misunderstood. Cotgrave has the F. spelling *mouldure*, which he explains by '*multure*, grist.' The proper sense of *muld* is mould or earth ; see below.
- Mulde, *s.* mould, earth, 25.
- Mulis (Mulez), *pl.* mules, 2853.
- Multitude, *s.* 69, 104, 927.
- Munster, 1173. The simplest correction is to read *minister*, i. e. servant. The sense is—He (Alexander) admonished him (Jaudas) as being his (Alexander's) servant. The Ashmole MS. has—He (Alexander) admonished him (Jaudas) as being his (Jaudas') master ; which comes to precisely the same thing.
- (Murnand), *pres. pt.* mourning, 1114.
- Muscles, *pl.* mussels, 5469.
- Muses, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* thinkest, 3551 ; Muse, 2 *pr. pl.* meditate, 268 ; Mused (Musyd), 1 *pt. s.* mused, 1629.
- Muses (Musys), *pl.* muses, 2113.
- Musike, music, 2238 ; (Musik), 2113.
- (Must), *pr. s.* must, 707, 1502, 1927.
- Mustours, *pl.* dials, clocks, 130. From O. F. *moustrer*, to shew ; lit. 'shewers, pointers' ; cf. F. *montre*, orig. the hand of a watch or clock ; Ital. *mostra*, "a watch or a dyall of the sunne ;" Florio.
- My, my, 250, 270 ; (Myne), 1724.
- Mydday, *s.* mid-day, 564, 4769.
- Myddest, *adj. superl. as s.* midst, 5396.
- Myddis, *s.* midst, 3501.
- Myddis þe way (In myd way), mid-way, in the midst of his journey, 1061.
- Myd-fild (Myd-feld), mid-field, 955.
- Mydill (Medyll), *adj.* middle, 1108.
- Mydnigt, *s.* midnight, 4077.
- Myd-ouir-vndorne, the middle of the period succeeding 'undern,' 3853.

- Mydsomere, Midsummer; Mydsomere euen, Midsummer eve, 3698.
- Myld, *adj.* mild, gracious, 234; *as s.* mild one, 235. See Mild.
- Myle, *s.* mile, 1209; I may a myle knawe, I can tell a mile off, 3286; Mylis, *pl.* 2403.
- Mylk-quyte (Milke-whitte), *adj.* milk-white, 1498. See Milke-quite.
- Mylnestane, *s.* millstone, 5525.
- Myn, *ger.* to mention, relate, 565; (Mene), 2782; (Meyn), to take heed of, notice, relate, record, 1690; Myn, *v.* remember, record, 583; 1 *pr. s.* call to mind, speak of, 2506; Mynnys, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* mentionest; Mynes, *pr. s.* reminds, 4613; (Menys), remembers, 2956; Myns, *pr. s.* intends (to go), 4787; Mynes (Menys), *pr. s. refl.* I remember, 1625; Me mynes, I remember, 2771 (where the Dublin MS. has *me of menys*, i. e. people relate of him); Mynes (Menys), *pr. pl.* tell, record, 1249; Mynned, *pp.* remembered, 1094; Mynes, *imp. pl.* remember ye, 3474.
- Mynde, *s.* mind, 738; remembrance, 1094, 1118; mention, 583; Mynd, attention, 269; memory, 437, 1884; remembrance, 205; recalling (of facts), 1245; In gret mynd, in a great mind, 1254; Out of mynde, beyond memory, hence countless, 3018; (For to mynd), as I can remember, 3018.
- Myndles, *adj.* mindless, stupefied, 5399.
- Myne, *poss. pron.* mine, my, 364, 498, 582, 668, &c.; Myn, 1883, 1912; Myne, i. e. my (rules), 2519.
- Mynes (Mynyn), *pr. pl.* mine, penetrate, dig, 3141.
- Mynesch, *v.* minish, be diminished, 2629.
- Mynistris (Ministers), *pl.* ministers, servants, 1267.
- Mynstre (Mynster), minster, temple, 2174, 4353; Mynstire, 1564.
- Myntis, *pr. s.* points, 1089; (Myntyd), *pt. s.* pointed, 1089. A.S. *myntan*.
- Myrrour, *s.* mirror, 3286.
- Myrys (Mires), *pl.* marshes, bogs, lit. mires, 2986.
- Mys, *pl.* mice, 3932; Myse, 1762.
- Myschefe, *s.* mischance, misfortune, 399, 3646; Myscheffe (Mischeff), trouble, 2782.
- Myselfe, myself, 183, 258, 537; (My-selue), 1976; (My-seluen), 991.
- (Myssys), 2 *pr. s.* missest, art in the wrong, 2649; Myssid, *pt. pl.* missest, 149.
- Myster (Mister), need, necessity, 1462. See Mestire.
- Mysters, *pr. s.* is needful, 5117. See Mistris.
- Myte, *s.* mite, 4426.
- Myter, mitre, 1589.
- Myzt, *pt. s.* might, 68, 415, &c.; (Might), 1 *pt. s.* 1629.
- Myztes, *pl.* powers, 615.
- Myzty, *adj.* mighty, 315.
- Na, *adj.* no, 51, 52, 160, 180, 182, &c.; Na mare, no more, 829; Na ma, 890; Na langer, no longer, 830; Na nothire, for Nan othire, nothing else, 364, 1683; Na way, no way, 341.
- Nabizanda, Nabuzardon, 5614.
- Nabb, *s.* projecting point of a hill, scar, 5494. Cf. *Nab Scar*, near Grasmere.
- Nacion, nation, 993; Nacions, *pl.* 449.
- Nad, *pt. s.* had (he) not, 1462.
- Naite, *ger.* to use, enjoy, 4341. Icel. *neyta*, to use, enjoy. See Naytes.
- Nakens, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* make bare, 4959. See *nakin* in Stratmann.
- Nakid, *adj.* naked, 4043; Naked, 4026; Nakid, stripped (bare), 4756; *adj. as sb.* naked part of the body, 4182.
- Nakin, no kind; Nakin metall, no sort of metal, 4583. See the note.
- Name, name, 79, 619, 993; To name, as a name, 2734; Names (Namez), *pl.* 1591.
- Namely, *adv.* in particular, especi-

- ally, 582, 4791; precisely, 293; (Noměly), especially, 2011.
- Namely, *adv.* (*error for* Manely = mainly or manly), 1033.
- Nane, *adj.* none, no one, 45, 52, 74; (not) any, 3935; no, 989; (None), not at all, 1148.
- Nanes; For þe nanes, for the nonce, occasion, 3592, 4729, 5276, 5522; (For þe nonest), 3021; For þe nanys (nonest), 1985.
- Nany; A nany, *for* An any, *erroneously written for* Any, any, 4919. (The right reading clearly is—Or any [curious] clerke, &c.)
- Naples, 5672.
- Nappill; A nappill, an apple, 4777.
- Narawe (Arow), arrow; A narawe = an arawe, 1066.
- Narrowly, *adv.* with difficulty, 1370.
- Nase, *s.* nose, 4519; Nasee, 4634.
- Na-þing (Nobing), nothing, 735.
- Naby, *name* (cf. *Rothé* in the Lat. text), 5494. See note to l. 5497.
- Natour, nature, 4027; (Nature), *s.* natural power, 3379.
- Naue, navy, fleet, 67, 76; (Navy), ships of war, 1160; ship, 3376.
- Naue, *pr. pl.* have not, 1876.
- Nauernes, *pl.* men of Navarre, 5672. (Nawne); þi nawne = þin awne, thine own, 1356.
- Nay, *adv.* nay, 298, 470, 1016, 5405; (Nay), *as s.* a refusal, 1460.
- Naylid (Nalyd), *pp.* nailed, 3376.
- Naytely (Nataly), *adv.* quickly, 2896; (Naytly), 828*. The lit. sense is 'usefully'; Icel. *neytr*, good, fit for use.
- Naytes (Nates), *pr. s.* employs, 2518; employs himself, sets about, begins, 2968; Nayte, 2 *pr. pl.* use, 4605; Naytis (Naytes). *imp. pl.* use, employ, 2468. Icel. *neyta*. See Naite.
- Ne, *adv.* not, 710; nor, 46, 52, 74, &c.
- Ne, *adv.* nearly, 539. Well ne, very nearly.
- Nebb, face, 807, 3940, 4519.
- Necessari, necessary, 125.
- Necke (Neke). *s.* neck, 3251.
- Neddire, *s.* adder, snake, 4757, 5526; Neddins, *pl.* 3865, 4090, 4200, 5422, 5565.
- Nede, *adv.* needs, of necessity, 3274; (Nedes), 2309.
- Nede, *s.* need, peril, 2518; Nedis, *pl.* necessities, 3419.
- Nedill, *s.* needle, 4026.
- Nedis, *pr. pl.* are needful, 125; Nedid, *pt. pl.* were necessary, 3823.
- Nedis (Nedes), *pr. pl.* compel, urge, 1819.
- Neg, *in phr.* A neg = an eg, i. e. an egg, to the value of an egg, 676.
- (Negh), *adv.* nigh, nearly, 1370, 2153.
- Neghis, *pr. s.* approaches, 4791; Neghes, 3901.
- Nekard (Neker), mean person, nig-gard, 1743.
- Neke, *s.* neck, 3236; Nek (Neke), 2777; (Nek), 807; Nekis (Nek-kys), *pl.* necks, 2339; (Nekez), 1812.
- (Nekyd), *pp.* denied, 1460. Cf. Icel. *neita*, to deny. See Nyk.
- (Nemmys), *imp. pl.* name, 2468.
- Nemellus, *pl.* enamels (?), 3671.
- Nemyll (Nemyll), *adj.* nimble, quick, 1065. From Icel. *nema*, to take, A.S. *niman*.
- Nend; Ilka nend *for* Ilkan end, each end, 5649; A nende, an end, 4860.
- Nerand; A nerand = an erand, an errand, a message, 1460.
- (Nere), *adj.* near, 1161.
- Nere, *adv.* near, closely, 1370; nearly, 400, 489, 1908, 2153, 3995.
- Nere, *for* Ne were, were not, 2404. It means that the messengers had only gone a few miles before they alighted.
- (Nerehand), *adv.* nigh, nearly, 3055.
- Nerre, *adv.* more nearly, 590.
- Nest, *s.* nest, 506.
- Nestild, *pt. s.* nestled, 506.
- Nete, *pl.* neat cattle, 1227.
- Nethire, lower; To the nethireward, downward, 5048.
- Nethirgloue, *s.* nether-glove, i. e. shoe, boot, 4959; Nefire-gloues (Lat. *calciamenta*), 2767.
- Nettild (Netlett), *pp.* nettled, 737.
- Neuen, *ger.* to tell, 4881; (Nevyn), to name, 2365; Neun, *ger.* to

- name, tell, 318, 449; Nevyn, to reckon, 1466; Neuyñ (Newyn), to name, number, 2021; Neuen, *v.* tell, relate, name, 1105, 1456, 1719; Neuyñ, 293, 5044, 5655; (Neuen), 1673; Neuyñ, 1 *pr. s.* name, 4601; mention, 260; tell, say, 5306; Neuens, *pr. s.* names, 1119; (Neuen, *for* Neuens), tells, 1485; (Neues), names, calls, 2119; Neuynes, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* namest, 4940; Neuyns (Neuens), 2187; Neuenyð, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* named, mentioned, 76; (Neuynd), *pt. s.* 2293; Neuened, 1 *pt. s.* *subj.* should name, 5031; Neuend, *pp.* named, told, 5413; (that can be) mentioned, 5257; Neuyned, named, 619; Neuen, *imp. s.* name, tell, 833*. Icel. *nefna*.
- Neuen, *s.* even; A neuen (An euen), an even, an evening, 1082.
- Neuer, *adv.* never, 45, 62, 563; Neuir, 1874; Neuire, 254, 950.
- Neuer-þe-lattir, nevertheless, none the less, 5332; Neuer-þe-latter, 299, 844*; Neuire-þe-lattir (Neuer-þe-leter), nevertheless, 2413.
- Neuer-the-les (Neuer-þe-lesse), *adv.* nevertheless, 1105.
- Neuer þe mare, none the more, 325; Neuer þe more, 322.
- New, *adj.* new, 1240, 1460; On newe time, newly, 2011.
- Newid, *pt. s.* created, lit. made new, 4491.
- Newly, *adv.* newly, soon, 4740.
- Next, *adj. superl.* nearest, next, 619, 1456; On next, in the next place, at once, 2795.
- Neyd, *for* Noyd, *pt. s. subj.* would vex, would tire, 4881; (Neyt), *for* Noyt, would tire, 771. See Noy.
- Nejbour (Neghburs), *gen. s.* neighbour's, 3245.
- Neje, *v.* approach, 324; (Negh), 1160; Nejis, *pr. s.* approaches, draws nigh, 1240, 2221, 2615; Nejes, 2111, 3863, 4067; touches, 4182 (see the note); Nejehis, 396; Neje, 1 *pr. pl.* approach, 4341; Nejes, 2 *pr. pl.* 4605; *pr. pl.* 5243; (Neghez), *pr. pl.* 2615; Neje (Negh), *pr. s. subj.* approach, draw nigh, 3376; (Neghed), *pt. s.* 2221; (Neghyd), *pt. s.* 1240; Nejed, *pp.* approached, drawn nigh, 2983.
- Neje, *adv.* nigh, severely, 3825; almost, 1274; (Nej), nigh, 728*.
- Nejen, *num.* nine, 4810.
- Nicollas (Nicholas), *name*, 737, 753, 771, 793, 807.
- Ninus, Ninus, 3144.
- Nite, *pp.* denied, refused, 1460. *F. nier*, to deny.
- Nijt (Nyght), *s.* night, 1084, 1345, 1485; On nijtes (Of nyghtys), by night, 2896.
- No, *adj.* no, 435, 809*; No more, 725*.
- No, *for* Ne, nor, 3570.
- Nobilnes, nobleness, majesty, 2777.
- Noblay, *s.* nobleness, 2716; noble array, 4881.
- Noble, *adj.* good, 3132; noble, 39, 985; noble (people), 1266; Nobles, *pl.* nobles, 481.
- Noble, *s.* the coin so called, 3673; Nobill, 4898.
- Nobly, *adv.* excellently, 260.
- Noke, *s.* nook, corner, 506, 3144, 4831.
- Nold, *pt. s. subj.* might not, should not, 4167. See the note to l. 4168.
- Noll (Nole), noddle, head, 807. A.S. *hnol*.
- Nombre, *s.* number, 60; (Nowmbre), 1554.
- Nombrid, *pp.* numbered, 1992.
- (Nomyn), *pp.* taken, 1094. A.S. *niman*, to take, *pp. numen*.
- None, *s.* noon, 3025, 4740; None-tyne, noon-tide, 563.
- (None), *adj.* no, 735*; Non, not one, 4582.
- (Nonn), *s.* nun, 2179.
- Noose, *s.* nose, 4380.
- Nor, nor, 46, 316.
- Norisch, *v.* be nourished (*after* latt), 582.
- Norway, 5672.
- Nostanday, *proper name*, 2777; Nostanda (Nostandy), 2773, 2795.
- Note, *s.* employment, business, 3025; work, 324, 4605; fabric (said of a cobweb), 3302; fabric (of the world), 4491; occurrence, circum-

- stance, 1456, 1485, 5044; For that note = on that account, 1160; host, troop, 1240, 1471; fleet, 76; Notis, *pl.* deeds, doings, employments, 1876, 3712; (Notes), 1819; acts, 260; instruments, 125; occurrences, 2365, 3091. A.S. *notu*.
- Note, *s.* tenour (of a letter), 1719. In this sense probably from F. *note*.
- Note, *adj.* excellent (used with *men*), 1227, 4870. See *Nait* in the *Troy-book*; and cf. Note, *s.* employment, above.
- Notesman, *put for* Note man, i.e. excellent one; hence, as a form of address, sir, 833*. See above.
- Notis (Notez), *pr. s.* indites, 2795; Notid, *pt. s.* indited, 4569; Note, *imp. pl.* note, observe, 5655. F. *noter*, to note.
- Nopire, *adj.* another (*after a*), 184; Na nopire = nan opire, none other, 180, 364, 3275; Na nopir, 1988.
- Nothire, *conj.* neither, 402; (Nowder), 1444; Nother, 146, 1372.
- Nouches (Ouchez), *pl.* ornaments, 3134. E. *ouch* (see my *Etym. Dict.*).
- Nounbre, *s.* number, 89, 215, 449, 3641; (Nowmbre), 763, 771, 955.
- Noupire, *conj.* neither, 180, 575, 800; Noupir, 675; Nouper, 600.
- Nouthire-quare (Noperwhare), nowhere else, 993.
- Nowe, now, 101, 188, 193; Now, 80, 212.
- (Nowmbre), number, 1094. See Nounbre.
- Nowte, *s.* neat, ox, 4744; *pl.* cattle, 3823. *Icecl. naut.*
- Nowpire, *conj.* neither, 364. See Noupire.
- Nox; A nox = an ox, 4744.
- Noy (Noye), *s.* harm, misfortune, 3245; trouble, 67.
- Noy, *v.* annoy, vex, 676; To noy (ney) þus [read vs] to neyn, such as would vex us to number, i.e. innumerable, 2021; Noyis, *pr. s.* injures, hurts, 4182; Noyes, *wonies*, 771; Noyed, *pt. s.* hurt, 1227; Noyd (Noyed), annoyed, 2983; Noyed, *pt. pl.* harmed, 3935. See Neyd.
- Noys, *pr. s.* makes a noise, 4744.
- Noyse, *s.* noise, 4732.
- Noȝt, *adv.* not, 100, 102, 103, 107; (Noght), 721; Noȝt bot, only, 270, 686, 1460, 1670, 3755.
- Noȝt (Noght), *s.* a naught, a thing of no value, 1742.
- Noȝtid (Noȝtyd), *pp.* set at naught, 753.
- Nurtrid (Norturryd), *pp.* well-nurtured, well grown, plump, 3177.
- Nychometis, *pl.* (used to translate Lat. *onichimata*), stones of the onyx kind, 3671.
- (Nyckying), *s.* nicking, slight mention, 2968. Cf. E. *nick*.
- Nyf (Yf), *for* Ne yf, if not, 1976.
- Nyfls, *pl.* trifles, 3807. See Stratmann.
- Nyk, *pr. pl. 2 p. subj.* say nay, 2339. See Sir Gawayn and the Grene Knight, l. 607.
- Nykid, *s.* small bit, a very little, a trifle, 3935. "*Nicket*, a small short faggot, *West*"; Halliwell.
- Nyll he so will he, will-he, nill-he, whether he wish to do so or not, 301.
- Nymme, *v.* take, acquire, 5352; Nymmes, *pr. s.* takes, 5077; (Nymmez), 3236; Nymes him (Nymmez hym), *pr. s.* takes, seizes, 793; Nymes, *pr. pl.* 4870; Nymes of, *imp. pl.* take off, doff, 4959. A.S. *minan*.
- Nynche, inch; A nynche = an ynche, 3675.
- Nyngkiling, *s.* inkling, slight mention; A nyngkiling = An yngkiling, 2968.
- Nyppid, *pt. pl.* nipped; Nyppid fra, nipped from, 3940.
- Nȝt, night, 344, 419, 563.
- Nȝter-tale, *s.* night-time, 324. *Icecl. nāttar-tal.*
- O, one, a, 3306; (O), 1147.
- O, *prep.* on, in; O lyue, in life, alive, 4055. O bourde, in jest, 462.
- O, *for* Of, of, 3267, 3385, 3636; cf. l. 276; (some) of, 4781

- O newe time (Anew), of late times, recently, 2716; O new time, 1460. Here *o* = of; cf. *of newe*, anew, in Chaucer.
- Obedience, *s.* obedience, 1965; (Service obidiens), obedience of service, 1937.
- Obeyi, *v.* obey, 3983; Obey, *imp. s.* 2837; Obien (*for* Obeien), *pr. pl.* 5671.
- Obesche (Obey), *v.* obey, 2416; Obeschen, *pr. pl.* 1937; Obeschen (Obeysshyng), *pr. pl.* 2694; Obeschid (Obeyd), *pt. s.* made obeisance to, 1620.
- Obeyaunce, obedience, 5106.
- Obeysyant, obedient, p. 279, l. 10.
- O-bofe, *prep.* above, 4912.
- Obrede (Of brede), in breadth, of breadth, 2898.
- Occident, *s.* west, 1045.
- Occyan, *s.* ocean, 5503; Occiane, 2328.
- Occupy, *ger.* to use, perform, 1478; (Occupy in), to be employed about, 1478.
- Odd, *adj.* distinguished, illustrious, 2121; special, privy, 4750; (Odde), 2631; Od, *adj.* odd, notable, excellent, 94; Odde, notable, 27.
- Oddest, *adj. superl.* most famous, 2008, 3579; Oddist, 189; Oddiste, 1751.
- Odly, *adv.* curiously, excellently, 275.
- Odmen, *pl.* chieftains, lit. odd (excellent) men, 3783.
- Of, *prep.* of, 4, 6, &c.; by, 73, 619, 1106, 3122, 3205, 3621, 3635; from, 210, 1045, 4227, 4844; out of, 1410, 3920; Of lyfe, out of life, 716; Of þe werld, out of the world, 2164; with, 56, 1390; for, 1041, 2576; because of, 1040; at, 302, 456; as regards, 307; at the hands of, by, 739*.
- Of, off, 3151, 5035, 774*.
- Of (*for* þof), in *Dubl. MS.*, 862.
- O-ferrom, *adv.* on far, at a distance, 397.
- Off, *adv.* of, from, 599.
- Offire (Offre), *ger.* to offer, 2177; to sacrifice, 1478; Offirs, *pr. s.* offers sacrifice to, 3658; (Offers), sacrifices, 1073; Offirre, 2 *pr. pl.* offer, 4468; Offird, *pt. s.* sacrificed, 1651.
- Offyrings, *pl.* offerings, 164.
- (Of-lofte), aloft, 791*.
- (Of-ragthe), lit. attained, pp. of *ofrechen* (but a corrupt reading), 1040.
- Oft, *adv.* often, 106, 145, 667; Ofte, 1852.
- Oire (*wrongly in MS. for* Oure), our, 2162.
- Olaathere, *Lat.* Aleghthor, 5493.
- (Old), old, 741.
- Oleues, *pl.* olive-trees, 4972.
- Olifant, *s.* elephant, 3922; Olifantis, *pl.* 3630; Olifants, 3680, 5136, 5293; Olifauntis, 3621. See Olyfauntas.
- Olimpadas (Olimphades), 1840, 2008. See Olympadas.
- Olle, *v.*; Olle on, to triumph over, scorn, condemn, 1861. From A.S. *oll*, scorn, contumely, only used in the phr. *mid olle*, which occurs twice; see Wulfstan's Sermons, ed. Napier, p. 164, l. 19, and Ælfric's Homilies, ii. 166, l. 15.
- Oloft, *adv.* aloft, 4889; O-loft (On-lofte), 858.
- Olyfauntas, *pl.* elephants, 3593; Olyfants, 3601. See Olifant.
- Olympadas, Olympias, 223, 310, 572; (Olympades), 824; (Olimphades), 879. See Olimpadas.
- O-lyue, alive, 3899, 4310; (On lyue), in life, alive, 1331, 2253; Olyfe, 814. For *on lyue*; see below.
- O-lyue, out of life, 1304; (Of lyfe), 1228. For *of lyue*; see above.
- O-mys, *adv.* amiss, 4326.
- On, *prep.* upon, on, 3, 83, 133; upon, 678; in, 13, 230, 341, 666, 1114, 3790; into, in, 4177, 4179; if, 442; at, 214, 3218; upon, over, 3153; Him on, against him, 3783; On first, in the first place, 438; On hand, in hand, 713; On lawe, a-low, low down, 728; On loft, on high, 221; On loude (On lowde), *adv.* aloud, 834; On lyue, alive, 966.
- On, *adj.* one (man), 2346; a, 851; (On), an, 964.

- Onane, *adv.* anon. forthwith, straightway, 79, 95, 191, 290, 352, &c.; (Anone), 2216.
- One: By hym one, by himself, 755*.
- Onest (Honest), *adj.* seemly, splendid, 1496. *For* Honest.
- On-loft, *adv.* aloft, up, 3193, 3261; (On-lofte), 1440, 731*.
- On-lyue, alive, 1875; On lyfe, 540.
- Onone, *adv.* anon, at once, 3110, 3460, 3930; (Anone), 1278; (Onon), 1045.
- On-slepe, asleep, 1486.
- On-tald, *pp.* untold, 3515.
- Ony, *adj.* any, 3895; (Ony), 951, 1102, 1993.
- Onycles, *pl.* onyxes, 5269.
- Open (Opyn), *adj.* 2142. See Opyn.
- Opence, *pr. s.* (for Opens), opens, shews, clearly, reveals, 2422; Opens (Opyn), *pr. pl.* open, 1466; Open (Opyn), 2 *pr. s. subj.* open, 1496.
- Openly (Opynly), *adv.* openly, 824, 868, 1381, 1793; Openly, 145, 1111.
- Opon, *prep.* upon, 158; in (see Kellwyse), 3300; Opon lyfe, in life, alive, 42.
- Opressing, *s.* oppressing, 5336.
- Opyn, *adj.* open, 2446. See Open. (Opynly); see Openly.
- Or, ere, before, 3, 171, 308, 381, 1670, 2915, 3215, 3471, 3728, 4053; Or þat, ere that, 3558; Or þen þat, ere the time when, 3187.
- Or, *conj.* or, 3, 67, 107, &c.
- Oratori (Oratory), oratory, 1651.
- Ordane (Ordayne), *v.* order, prepare, allot, 3176; Ordans (Ordayns), *pr. s.* orders, prepares, endites, 3160; orders, 3408; *refl.* prepares himself, 3184; Ordand, *pt. s.* ordained, arrayed, prepared, 52; Ordand, *pp.* ordained, commanded, 3787; formed, made, 3680.
- Ordere, order, 27.
- Ore (Or), *conj.* or, 2260.
- Orfrays, *pl.* embroideries, 5269. "Orfrays, broad welts, or gards of gold, or silver embroidery;" Cotgrave.
- Oriathire (Oryather), Oriathar, 2512.
- Orient, *adj.* eastern, 5269.
- Orient, *s.* the east, 94, 1111, 3079.
- Origyne, *s.* race, 91.
- Orisons, *pl.* prayers, 1478, 4477.
- Oritorie (Oratory), oratory, 2177.
- Osses (Ossus), *pr. s.* prophesies, 2263; Ossed, *pp.* 2307. See Oss in Halliwell.
- Ossing, *s.* attempt, 868; Ossyngis, *pl.* 732. See Oss in Halliwell.
- Ost, *s.* host, army, 52, 81; (Hoste), 1381; (Oste), 765; Oste, 499; (Ost), 772; (Hoste), 1617; Ostis, *pl.* hosts, 3787; (Hostes), 2848; (Ostez), 1115, 1987, 2031, 2173.
- Oþer, *adv.* either, 3.
- Oþire, *adj.* second, 2611; the other, 173; Oþir, second, 280; Oþer, other, 1014, 727*; Oþire, *pl.* others, 29, 94, 125, 275, 471; other signs, 240; Oþyre (Oþer), others, 3377; (Oþre), 2098.
- Othire-quile, *adv.* at times, 4231; (Oþer-while), sometimes, 726.
- Oþer-wyse, *adv.* otherwise, 2013. (Ouchez); see Nouches.
- Ouer, *prep.* over, 27, 64; (Oure), 1027; (Owre), 1039.
- Ouer, *adv.* over, 1028; All ouer, wholly, 766*.
- Ouer-comyn, *pp.* overcome, 10, 174.
- Ouer-comers (Ouercommer), *for* Ouer-comer, *s.* conqueror, 1903.
- Ouerhand, *for* Ouer hand, upper hand, 810.
- Ouer-heldis, *pr. s.* overturns, is overturned, 726.
- Ouer-laike (Ouerlayke), *s.* conquest, lit. over-play, success in battle, 1861. See Ouirlaike.
- Ouer-qwelmys, *pr. s.* overwhelms, rolls over (said of the sea), 560. (Ouer-rade), *pt. s.* rode over, 1216.
- Ouer-sheet, 2 *pr. s. subj.* overshoot (thy shot), 1767*. Read Ouer-sheet in one word.
- Ouer-sijt (Ouersight), circumspection, 1020.
- Ouerzede, *pt. s.* overpassed, passed away, 350.
- Ouir, *error for* Our, *pron. poss.* our, 4622. See the note.
- Ouire, *prep.* over, 18, 233; (Ouer),

- 1182; beyond, 5038; above, 4263 (see the note); against, 4154.
 Ouire-comen (Ouercomyn), *pp.* overcome, 1903; Ouircomyn (Ouercommyn), conquered, 1610.
 Ouircomere (Ouercommer), overcomer, conqueror, 1610.
 Ouire-drafe (Ouer-drafe), *pt. s.* passed away, passed over, 1505.
 Ouire-folden, *pp.* folded or covered over, 5463.
 Ouire-gos (Ouergoose), *pr. s.* surpasses, 2534.
 Ouirlaike (Ouerlake), *s.* conquest, success, supremacy, 3101. See Ouer-laike.
 Ouir-lende, *v.* pass beyond, 5069.
 Ouirmast, *adj. superl.* uppermost, 3347.
 Ouire-sett (Ouersett), *pp.* overcome, conquered, 2698.
 Ouire-stride, *pt. s. subj.* (if there) strode or crossed over, 5477.
 Oure, *pron.* our, 5, 177, 404, 476, 1006.
 Oures, *pl.* hours of prayer, 1478.
 Oure-selfe, ourselves, 3528, 3745; (Our-selfe), ourself, i. e. I myself, 1727.
 Out-bred, *pp.* outspread, unfurled, spread abroad, 2615.
 Out-by, *adv.* near beyond, just beyond, 2762.
 Oute, *prep.* out, 86; (Owt), 1091; Oute of, 218; Out of, 93, 94, 117, 135.
 Oute, *adv.* out, far away, 23; out, 75; Out, 145, 339; Oute, in existence, well-known (just as in modern slang), 598, 4574, 5410.
 Outhire, *conj.* either, 464, 1777; (Other), 851, 1236; (Owther), 1033; Oupir, or, 4981.
 Outhire (Other), *pron.* another, 1111.
 Outragez, *for* Outrageouz, *adj.* excessive, p. 293, l. 126.
 Outwith, *prep.* without, outside, 5538.
 Ouyre, *prep.* over, 192.
 Owder; see Authere.
 (Owre), *pron.* ours, our own, 1423; (Owr), our, 1006.
 Owt, *prep.* out, 752*; Owt of, out of, 773*.
 Owte, out, i. e. existent, 2574. (As in mod. E.) See Out.
 Owpir, *conj.* either, 4579.
 Ozt, *s.* aught, 290; Ozt bot, anything except, 5352.
 Ozt, *adv.* in anywise, by any means, at all, 299; (Oght), 684, 689, 757, 1090.
 Paa, *s.* peacock, 4983. M.E. *po.*
 Pacience, patience, 2841.
 Paintid, *pp.* painted, decked, 3028.
 Paire, *ger.* injure, impair, 74; (Pare), 1187.
 Paise, *ger.* to poise, ponder, consider, weigh, 4618.
 Paise, *s.* weight, 5470. Anglo-F. *peis.*
 Paiters, Poitiers, 5658.
 Pake, *s.* pack, crowd, host, band, 648, 954, 1554, 2025, 2083, 2435, 2854, 3009; pack, number, set (of us), 4318; (Pakke), 3009.
 Pakoke, *s.* peacock, 4529. See Paa.
 Palais, *s.* palace, 220, 355, 952, 3135, 4891; (Palace), 938; (Palass), 901; (Palasse), 997; Palas, 151, 365.
 Palestyne, Palestine, 5677.
 Pall, *s.* fine cloth, rich robe, 4178; (Palle), 3393.
 Pallen webis (Pallen webbes), *pl.* fabrics of pall or fine cloth, 1517.
 Palme, *s.* palm (tree), 114, 4541; palm (of victory), 826, 3751.
 Palmetres, *pl.* palm trees, 3146.
 Pamphalie, Pamphylia, 5657.
 Pan, *s.* skull, brain-pan, 3994.
 Pancere, *s.* coat of mail, 4960. Lit. a covering for the paunch.
 Panters, *pl.* panthers, 5138.
 Panthi, Parthia, 5656; Panty, 5312.
 Panthy, *for* Parthy, Parthians, 87; Panthis (Peranthis), Parthians, 2529.
 Pape-ioyes, *pl.* parrots, 5129.
 Pappis, *pl.* paps, 4117.
 Paradyse, *s.* paradise, 4905; Parades, 5259; Paradyce (Paradyse), 3217; Paradesse (Paradyse), 2595; Paradise, *gen.* of paradise, 5270.
 Paraile, *s.* apparel, 4676.
 Parailed (Paraeld), *pp.* well apparelled, 1552.

- Paramour, *s.* wife, 5222; Paramours, *pl.* lovers (female), wives, 4337; lovers (male), 3769.
- Parcele, *s.* part, section, portion, 4496; Parcells, shares, 4318.
- Parchement, *s.* parchment, 5305; (Perchemyn), 1704.
- Parde, for *par Dieu*, 2707.
- Pared, *pp.* prepared, made ready, 4208. *F. parer.*
- Pargestis, probably for Pargeste, *pp.* pargetted; Pargeste of plate, covered over with gold plate (Lat. *de laminis aureis cooperti*), 3673.
- Pariet, *s.* wall, side-wall of a room, 5286.
- Parlour, *s.* parlour, 5304.
- Parraills (Apperels), *pr. s.* apparels, prepares, 765; Parreld, *pp.* prepared, 480; got ready, 4208; Parraillid, apparelled, 5285.
- Parray, *s.* nobles, nobility, assembly of nobles, 4028. O.F. *parroye*, with the same sense as O.F. *parage*, rank, quality; see Roquefort.
- Parroke, *s.* park, enclosure, 4702. A.S. *pearruc*.
- Part, *s.* character, 361; Parte, part, 2157.
- Parti (Party), part, 1115; Partie, 4257; Partys, *pl.* 3764; Partis, *pl.* parts, regions, 139; (Partez), 1731; (Parteez), 2056; Partise, 3560; Partese (Partez), 2267; Partyse (Partyses), *pl.* parts, regions, 2799; Partise, parties, sides, hostile armies, 3992; Partys, parties, people, 3312.
- Partis, *pr. s.* parts, 5418; (Partes), 807; divides, gives, 1660; imparts, gives, 2027; Part (Departyd), *pr. pl.* part, break, 1931; Part, *pp.* parted, divided, 4318.
- Party, *adj.* separate, different, 668.
- Partysch, *s.* Paris, 4659.
- Pas, *v.* pass, go on, advance, 3584; go, 997, 5386; depart, 2665; Pas, *v.* pass (from life), die, 4003; Passe, surpasses, 635; Paso, *ger.* pass, march, 59; Pas, *ger.* to march over, 444; to go, 1019; (Passe, to go, 1187, 1919; Pas, *pr. s.* passes, goes, 3772, 3788, 4649, 5599; Passis, goes, 132, 133, 334, &c.; Passes, goes, 1076; marches, 170; Passes, surpasses, 656, 2520; Pas, 1 *pr. pl.* go, 1852; Passe, *pr. pl.* 1397; Pas, 1 *pr. pl. subj.* go, 2167; Pas (Passe), 2 *pr. s. subj.* departest, 1099; Past, *pt. s.* went, 139; surpassed, 3988; Past vp, went up, 944; Paste vp, 220; *pt. pl.* passed, 3052; Pas (Passe), *imp. s.* 2 *p.* pass, go thou, 1499; Passand, *pres. part.* surpassing, 4242; Passid (Passyng), *pp.* past, 1008; (Passed), 825*.
- Pas (Passe), *s.* pace, 2062.
- Passage, *s.* passage, course, orbit, 32; Passag (Passage), passage, crossing over, 2904.
- Passandly, *adv.* surpassingly, 1999, 3596; extremely, 3455.
- Passe, *s.* passing, departure, 2978.
- Passe, *s.* passus, fit, canto, 2845. See Passus.
- Passing, *s.* surpassing excellence, 45.
- Passing (Passyng), *prep.* surpassing, beyond, 1750.
- Passus, a division of a poem; see pp. 7, 17, 27, 42, 58, 78, 96, 114, 132, 152, 166, 178, 190, 206, 212, 216, 223, 231, 235, 241, 245, 251, 257, 264, 270, 275.
- Passyngly (Passandly), *adv.* passingly, exceedingly, 2904.
- Pastours, *pl.* pastures, 1198; Pastors (Pasturs), 1234.
- Pasturde, *pp.* fed, 5425.
- Paues (Pafvyd), *pp.* paved, 3220.
- Pauelion, *s.* pavilion, tent, 2175, 4760; Pauillions, 4178; Pauylions, 4149.
- Pauement (Payment), pavement, 1517.
- Paves, *pl.* pavises, large shields, 1389; (Pavyce), 2223. O.F. *pauois*, 'a great shield;' Cotgrave.
- Paunche, *s.* paunch, belly, 4536; Paunches, *pl.* 4435.
- Paouore, 1 *pr. s.* fear (?), 3242. (The context requires 'beseech.') Probably corrupt, as the alliteration does not require a word with *p*.

- Pausanna (Pausana), Pausanias, 914, 930, 936, 952.
 Pavyce: see Paues.
 Pay, *s.* satisfaction, 4208.
 Pay, *ger.* to pay, 1180; Paye (Pay), 1176; Pays, *imp. pl.* pay ye, 3719.
 Payne, pain, 530, 3828; Payn, 1782, 1783, 3235; A payn, on pain, 1595; Paynes, *pl.* pains, 3305; effort, difficulty, 2223.
 Paynt, *v.* paint, adorn, 4427; Payntid (Depayntyd), *pt. pl.* painted, depicted, 1704; Payntid, *pp.* depicted, 5642; painted, 4149.
 Payntour, painter, 5145.
 Payse, *s.* weight, balance; In payse (On payse), in the balance, 3260. (Passe), weight, 2397.
 Pece; A pece, apiece, 5474; Peces, pieces, 2998.
 Pees (Pease), peace, 1041.
 Peese (Pese), the value of a pea, 2370.
 Pegge (vs), *ger.* to stuff ourselves, 4278. Cf. mod. E. slang *to peg away*, i. e. to eat heartily; prov. E. *peck*, to eat.
 Pelare, *s.* pillar, 4707, 5065; Pelers, *pl.* 3666.
 Pellicans, *pl.* pelicans, 5129.
 Pellid, *pt. s.* beat, 117. See *Palle*, to beat, in Glos. to P. Plowman.
 Pelloure (Pelour), *s.* fur, rich fur, 2768; Pelour, 3393, 4036. See *pelure* in Jamieson.
 Penaunce (Pennance), penance, 1483.
 Pennes, *pl.* pens, wings, 4529; feathers, 3692; Pennys, 4988.
 Pennons, *pl.* pennons, streamers, 3028.
 Pense (Pensey), *adj.* pensive, lost in thought, 2990.
 Pentapol, Pentapolis, 5677.
 Pentests, *pl.* gems or precious stones so called, 5268. (Not found elsewhere.)
 Peny, *in phr.* Peny-hoge, i. e. penned hog, hog in a sty, 4278. *Perhaps we should read pen-hoge.*
 Peper-cornes, *pl.* pepper-corns, 2025.
 Pepill (Peple), *s.* people, 2223, 3208; nation, 3412; Peple, 1389. See Pupill.
 Pepir, *s.* pepper, 5425; (Peper), 2026, 2074; (Piper), 2023.
 Per cas, *adv.* perchance, 4227.
 Peralus, *adj.* perilous, 530.
 Perce, *v.* pierce, 3374; Percid, *pp.* 264; (Persyd), 3378.
 Perchemen, *s.* parchment, 5142.
 Percynne (Persyens, *gen. pl.*), Persian, 2885.
 Pere, *s.* peer, equal, 647, 3009, 4905; peer, noble, 2036, 2954, 3113; Peris, *pl.* peers, 72, 4926; Peris (Pers), peers, companions, 3033.
 Pere, *v.* appear, 3769; Perid, *pt. pl.* appeared, 5466. Short for *apere*.
 Peree (Peir), *for* Pere, equal, 1723.
 Perell, *s.* peril, 2520.
 Perell (Perle), pearl, 1888.
 Peres, 2 *pr. s.* comparest thyself, thinkest thyself equal, 1842; Pere, 2 *pr. pl.* (ye) are like, 4703. See Pere, *s.*
 Perfite, *adj.* perfected, finished, 194.
 Perill (Perle), péril, 1783.
 Perill (Perle), pearl, 1569.
 Perisch (Perische), *ger.* to perish, 1165; Perische, 2 *pr. pl.* perish, 3809; Perischist, *pp.* (*for* Perischit), perished, slain, 4170.
 Perlaous (*for* Peralous), *adj.* perilous, 3949. See Perlious.
 Perle, *s.* pearl, 4036; Worth a perle, to the value of a pearl, 4331; Perles, 3677; (Perelez), *pl.* 1663. (Perle), *s.* purl, i. e. rush of water, used poetically for stream, wave, 1154. "*Purl*, to eddy, as a stream;" Halliwell.
 Perlious, *adj.* perilous, 5431. See Perlaous.
 Permeon, Parmenio, 1617, 2559, 3113; Permes (Permeon), Parmenio, 2581.
 Perpetuall, *adj.* perpetual, 3312.
 Perrils (Perlez), *pl.* pearls, 1542. See Perill.
 Perrou, *error for* Purer (*as in the* Dublin MS.), purer, 1536.
 Perry (Perre), *s.* precious stones, 1536. See *perreye* in Glos. to P. Plowman. And see Pirre.
 Pers, Persia, 3240, 3309, 3616, 5109.
 Pers, *s. pl.* peers, nobles, 3064, 3781,

- 5166 ; (Peres), 2267, 2759. See Pere.
- Persayue, *v.* perceive, understand, 142 ; Persayued, *pt. s.* perceived, 3998.
- Perse, *ger.* to pierce, 4071 ; *v.* 3897 ; Persee, 5537 ; Persed, *pp.* 3675.
- Persee, Persia, 170, 187, 207, 4843 ; (Pers), 2703 ; Perse, 175.
- Persens, *pl.* Persians, 1639, 2099, 3481, 3806, 3968, 5312 ; Perseyns, 87.
- Perses, *pl.* Persians, 3644.
- Pershed, *pp.* pierced, 2657.
- Persid, *pp.* pierced, 5158.
- Persie (Perse), Persia, 901.
- Person, *s.* person, outward appearance, 1704 ; person, 1552 ; figure, 820*.
- Personele, *adj.* personal, 5142 ; Personale, 668.
- Persopole (Persipoll), Persepolis, 2111.
- Persy, Persia, 50, 74, 117, &c. ; (Perse), 1716, 1869 ; (Pers), 3161 ; Persye la graunt (Perse le graunt, great Persia, 1737 ; Persye (Perse), 1658, 1911.
- Persyn (Persen), Persian, 2665 ; Persyns (Persens), *pl.* 2026, 2083 ; (Persyens), 2904 ; Persyns, Persians, 3185.
- Persys, *pr. pl.* pierce, 5560 ; Persyd, *pt. s.* 2617.
- (Pert), *adv.* openly, 2917 ; So pert, so openly, quite publicly, 2295.
- Pertenys, *pr. s.* pertains, 4309 ; Pertines (Pertenys), *pr. pl.* 1772.
- Pertly, *adv.* openly, 255.
- (Perty), *error for* Poverty, i. e. distress, 2156. See the Ashmole MS.
- Pernyk, *for* Pernyak, *s.* periwinkle (flower), 4541. "*Pervinea. Anglice* pervynke ;" Wright's Vocab. col. 602, l. 27.
- Pes, *s.* peace, 3312, 3779, 3992, 4042 ; (Pease), 3412 ; Pese (Pease), 2841, 3420 ; Pesse (Pes), 2665.
- Pesan, *s.* gorget, 4960. It occurs, spelt *pesane*, in the allit. Morte Arthure ; and, though left unexplained in the Glossary, is rightly explained in Halliwell's Diction-
- ary (with a reference to that very passage) as "a gorget of mail or plate attached to the helmet." See also *pesane* in Jamieson.
- Pese, *s.* pea ; Charge of a pese, value of a pea, 403.
- Pesid, *pt. s.* calmed, grew calm, 4159 ; Pesed, *pp.* pacified, appeased, 5379 ; Pesse, *imp. s.* pacify, 5362.
- Pete, *s.* pity, 5041 ; (Pite), 2240, 3235 ; (Pyte), suffering, 1169.
- (Pete), *adj.* little, lit. petty, 2025. *F. petit.*
- Petusly, *adv.* piteously, miserably, 3620.
- Philip, 397, 418, 434, 450, &c. ; (Philop), 891, 917 ; (Philopp), 884, 906 ; (Philipp), 2570 ; Philips, *gen.* 1788.
- Philisophour, *s.* philosopher, 4219 ; Philosofer (*written* Philofr), 814* ; Phyllysofyre, 434 ; Philosophours, *pl.* 2336.
- Picard, Picardy, 5657.
- Pickid, *pp.* pitched, 4208.
- Piers, *pl.* stones, 4356, 5270.
- Pik, *s.* pitch, 4172, 5546.
- Pike, *s.* peak, 4818.
- Piktagaras, Pythagoras, 46.
- Pilage (Pelage), *s.* pillage, plunder, booty, 3179.
- Pilars, *pl.* pillars, 5068, 5275.
- Piple (Peple), people, 1561. See Pepill.
- Pirnes, *pl.* long straight shoots or twigs, 4981. Northern E. *prin*, a pin (Halliwell) ; A.S. *preon*, gloss to *fibula*, in Wright's Vocab. col. 152, l. 37 ; Icel. *prjonn*, a knitting-pin. See *pirn* in Jamieson.
- Piromancie, *s.* pyromancy, divination by means of fire, 4612.
- Pirre, *s.* precious stones, 4036 ; jewellery, 3954 ; Of pirre, adorned with precious stones, 4149. See Perry.
- Pirs, *pl.* peers, 5614. See Pers, Pere.
- Pistill, *s.* epistle, 1791, 3160, 3084 ; (Pistell), 1836, 1909, 1930 ; (Pistyll), 2026, 2065 ; Pistils (Pistellys), *pl.* letters, 3420 ; Pistils (Pistell), 1801.

- Pite, *s.* pity, sorrow for the dead, 3321; sorrow, 1286; (Pyte), pity, 754; (Pety), misery, 2156.
- Piȝt, *pt. s.* set up, erected (lit. pitched), 4707, 5061; (Pyth), pitched, 2130; (Pyȝt), 2175; Piȝt, *pt. s. subj.* should pitch, 4594; Piȝt, *pp. set*, 3666; *set*, stuck, 5268; established, settled, 4320; brought, put, 3441; ornamented, 194; Piȝt (Pight), reared, 3135. (Piȝt-full), *adj.* pitched full, filled, 2284.
- Place, *s.* place, 194, 334, 355, 365; (Place), house, 952. "Place, a house or residence;" Halliwell.
- Plaid, *pp.*; Did bot plaid, did no more than played, merely played, 3947.
- Planet (Planett), *s.* planet, 682; Planettis, *pl.* 32; Planetis, 4172.
- Plangid, *pt. pl.* plunged, 4130. See Plunge.
- Planir, *adj.* flat, 4138. Cotgrave has *planier*, flat, as well as *plain*.
- Planke, *s.* plank, 3740.
- Plant, *pp.* planted, set, 3146, 5656; (Plantyd), 1654.
- Plants, *pl.* plants, trees, 4995.
- Plate, *s.* (gold) plate, 3673; (Playte), plate, 1590; Platis, *pl.* plates (of gold), 4894; plates, 3689; Platis (Plates), armour - plates, plate-armour, 2214; Platis (Platez), plates, plate-armour, 1247, 2450; Plates, 911, 917; (Platez), 1378; (Playthes), 1213.
- Platea, Platæa, 2297.
- Plate-rofes, *pl.* roofs made of plates of gold, 5260.
- Plate-werkis, *pl.* works of plate, plated work, 3223.
- Plato, Plato, 46.
- Play, *ger.* to play, 1772, 5053; to play, to see the (Corinthian) games, 2267; Playe (Play), *v.* play, 1929; With to play (for the child) to play with, 1712; Playd, *pt. s.* amused herself, 4416.
- Play, *s.* game, amusement, 2284, 823*.
- Playn, *adj.* level, flat, 4138, 4375, 4818; (Playne), plain, revealed, 1099; (Plane), clear, free, unimpeded, 3417; Playn, plain, whole, 5402.
- Playn, *s.* plain, 2169, 3655; Playnes, *pl.* 1198, 1210, 4826.
- Playnely (Playnly), *adv.* evidently, plainly, 1654, 1896; Playnly, 3764; (Playnly), 1791.
- Playntes, *pr. s.* complains, 2312 (the Dublin MS. has *planettys*, corruptly); Playnt (Plenyd), *pt. pl.* complained, 1698. "*Plaindre*, to plaine;" Cotgrave.
- Playntis, *pl.* complaints, 1791. F. *plainte*.
- Plede (Plete), *v.* plead, debate, 2861; Plede (Pledyn), 2 *pr. pl.* plead, declare, 1893.
- Plegg, *s.* pledge, 1783, 3514.
- Plente, *s.* plenty, 1852, 1888, 2167.
- (Plenys), *pr. s.* laments, 729*. See Pleynys.
- Plesaunce, *s.* pleasure, 3382; Plesance, 3162.
- Plese, *ger.* to please; The word with to please, to please the world with, 4598; (Please), 1180; *v.* 2275; Plesis, *pr. s.* pleases, 5386; Pleses, 4368; Plese, *for* Plesis, *pr. s.* pleases, i.e. it pleases us (to regard them) no longer, 3560; Ples, 2 *pr. s.* pleasest, 2719; Plece, *pr. s. subj.* may please, 365; Plesed, *pp.* 593.
- Pletours, *pl.* fighting-men, lit. pleaders, 1731. "*Plait*, sute, controversie;" Cotgrave.
- Pletyng, *pres. pt.* pleading, p. 281, l. 78.
- Pleynes, *pr. s.* laments for, 4052; complains, pleads, 5360; *refl.* laments, 399; Pleynes (Plenys), *pr. s.* complains, 1147; (Pleynez), laments, 972; Pleynis, *pr. s. refl.* laments, 1169; Pleynys (Plenys), laments, 1286; Pleyn, *pr. pl.* 1 p. lament, 4370; Pleyne (Plenys), 2156; Pleynded, *pt. s.* lamented, 4204.
- Pleynys, *pr. s.* laments, 1286. See Plenys.
- Plied, *pp.* (with ouir), overlaid, 5260. "*Plier*, to fould, plait, ply, bend, bow;" Cotgrave.
- (Plight), *s.* peril, 1783. See Pligt.

- Plite, *s.* plight, sad state, 3636; state, condition, 635; way, manner, 4042; (Plite), condition, 1165. A word of French origin, and quite distinct from the word below. See Supplement to my Etymological Dictionary, *s. v.* *Plight* (3); and see Plyte.
- Plizt, *s.* danger, 4682, 4951. A.S. *pliht*. See Plight.
- Plukis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* pluck, 5445.
- Plunge, *s.* pool, place to plunge into, 5546.
- Plyes, *pr. s.* spreads, lit. folds, 1517. See Plied.
- Plyte, plight, condition, state, 305. See Plite.
- Pointid, *pt. pl.* secured, 5546.
- Poisci, *s.* poesy, poetry, 4612. (*Better poisie or poesie.*)
- Poliponenses, Peloponnesus, 825*, 2375; Poliponens, 5677.
- Polisch, *v.* polish, 4427; Polischt, *pp.* 5129; Polischid (Polyshyd), polished, 3223.
- Poll (Polle), poll, head, person, 1497; Pollis, *pl.* heads, men, 3069.
- Pollis, *pl.* poles, 3028.
- Pompe, pomp, 2334. (The Ashmole MS. has *poupe*.)
- Pond, *s.* pound, 5470; Pond, *pl.* 5474; Ponde (Pound), *pl.* 2397.
- Popill (Peple), *s.* people, 2854, 2930.
- Populande (Populand), *adj.* rushing, foaming, bubbling, 1154. "*Popple*, to bubble up, *North*;" Halliwell. "*Peple*, to bubble up, purl, ripple;" Jamieson.
- Pore, *adj.* poor, 1661, 4021.
- Porpure (Purpure), *s.* purple, 1824.
- Porris, *pr. pl.* thrust, push, 5560. "*To porre in*; vide *thrust*, and *stuff*;" Baret's *Alvearie* (1580), § 579.
- Porus, Porus, 3162, 3183, 3540, 3575, 3588, 3596, 3636, 3655, 3661, 3781, &c.
- Port, *s.* port, bearing, appearance, 1983.
- Porte, harbour, 2453.
- Portingale, Portugal, 5658.
- Possede, *v.* possess, 2841. O.F. *pusseler*.
- Posterne, postern, small back gate, 132; Posternes, *pl.* 2453.
- Postis, *pl.* pillars, 3664, 5278, 5628.
- Poudre, *s.* powder, dust, 1865, 2334, 3082, 4178, 5206; (Poudre), 2658; (Powder), 2998.
- Pouerte, poverty, distress, 2156, 4052, 4317; Pouert (Pouerte), 1852, 1893.
- Pouret, *pt. pl.* poured; Pouret out, poured out, *i. e.* burst out, 3427.
- Pouwere (Power), *s.* might, army, 2056. See Powere.
- Powarfull, *adj.* powerful, 3242.
- Powere, *s.* power, 117, 5402; host, 207; army, 3963; (Power), 2023, 2295; an army, help, 3183. See Pouwere.
- Poynt, *s.* point, 682, 3897; circumstance, 305; Poynte, circumstance, 3636; In poynt, at the point, 1165; Poyntis, *pl.* points, 32; minute points, 255; Poyntez, *pl.* points, 808*.
- Practisirs, *pl.* practitioners, men of experience, 1582; (Practyf men), 1582.
- Pray, *ger. to pray*, 1477; Pray, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* pray, 826; Prai, 5362; Prayes, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* prayest, 2803, 4247; Prays (Prayes), 1105; Prays, *pr. s.* beseeches, 5141; Pray, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* pray, beseech, 4243; Prays, *pr. pl.* 1041; (Prayd), *pt. pl.* 1041; Prayd, *pp.* prayed, asked, 3183.
- Pray, *s.* prey, 1335; Prai (Pray), 1206.
- Prayris (Prayers), *pl.* prayers, 1483.
- Prayse, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* praise, 661; Prays, esteem, 328; Prayses, *pr. pl.* praise, 3751; (Praysez), 1750; Prayse (Prasen), 1022; Praysed, *pt. s.* praised, approved of, 3440; Prased, *pt. pl.* (Prasen, *pr. pl.*) praised, 2394; Praysed, 898; Praysed, *pp.* praised, lauded, 2666; (Prased), 995; Praysid, 5225.
- Precep (Precept), precept, instruction, 982.
- Preciosa, the name of a country, 5080.
- Precieuse, precious, 820*.

- Precioussest, *adj. superl.* precioussest, 4891.
- Predestayned, *pp.* predestined, fore-ordained, 2745; (Predestinate), 4062; Predestend, 305.
- Predicessour (Predecessour), predecessor, i. e. chief, 1723.
- Prefe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* prove, find out, 4640.
- Prekars (Prekers), *pl.* prickers, riders, 1234.
- Preke, *ger.* to spur, to ride, 3483; *v.* 652; Preke on, ride upon, 2897; Prekis, *pr. s.* pricks, rides, spurs, 5445; (Prekes), 938, 1335; (Prekys), 2169; (Prekys forth), *pr. s.* rides on, 823*; Prekis (Prikkyn), *pr. pl.* spur, ride hard, 2982; Prekand, *pres. part.* pricking, riding, 1578.
- Prektane, Priscian, 46.
- Prelate, *s.* prelate, 1529; Prelatis (Prelatez), *pl.* prelates, 1499, 1554; (Prelates), 1660.
- Prematis, *pl.* primates, 1582.
- Preyns, *pl.* 1250. Probably a scribal error for *bernys* (cf. *bernes* in the Dublin MS.), i. e. men. The sense is obvious.
- Pres, *s.* throng, press of battle, 3968; Prese, throng, 3972; (Prese), 2637; Presse (Prese), heat of battle, 1019; Pres (Preese), *s.* pressure, 3382.
- Presand, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* present, 5138; *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* 4529; Presentes, *pr. s.* 5145; Present, *pr. pl.* deliver, 1791; Presandis (Present), *pr. pl.* make presents, 1041.
- Presands, *pl.* presents, 5466; Presandis (Presandez), 1716, 1772; Presand (Presentes), 1869.
- Prese, *ger.* to attack, 3483; *v.* to overcome, 5109; Presis (Preses), *pr. s.* presses, hastens, 954; Preses, *pr. pl.* press, throng, 151, 3638; (Presen), 2223; (Pressen), 2453; Presis (Prese), press forward, 1389.
- Presens, *s.* presence, 367, 982; Put þam in-to presens, came to court, 3328.
- Present, *s.* present signature, 3162. Cf. "know all men by these presents."
- (Present), *adj.* present, 982.
- Presidine, error for Presidence (Presydence), *s.* presidency, authority, 2414. (But the text is corrupt.)
- Presons, *pl.* prisoners, 4703. See *prison* in Glos. to P. Plowman.
- Prest, priest, 328; Prestis (Pristez), *pl.* 1499; (Prestez), 1529, 1582; (Pristes), 1554.
- Prestly, *adv.* quickly, promptly, soon, 1198, 2277, 2833; (Pristly), 1919, 2027; fully, 1397; (Prestely), 2581. O.F. *prest*, F. *prêt*.
- Preualy, *adv.* privily, secretly, 132, 220, 355, 361.
- Preuate, *s.* privacy, silence; In preuate, privately, silently, 4997; Preuates, *pl.* secrets, 255; Preuatez, 1582; Preuates, private marks of friendship, special kindnesses, 5386.
- Preue, *adj.* privy, confidential, 3588; secret, 3740; under, 4960; (Pre-vay), private, 944; (Preuay), private, small, 823*.
- Preue, *v.* prove, experience, 4249; Preues, *pr. s.* lit. proves, hence, gains experience, 4630; Preued, *pt. s.* proved, experienced, 45; Preuyd, gained, 4539; Preued (Preuett), *pp.* proved, 1004.
- Price, *s.* renown, glory, 826.
- Prickis (Prikketz), *pr. s.* pricks, 2628.
- Prid (Pride), 1 *pr. pl.* pride, 2745.
- Pride, pride, 724, 936, 1639.
- Prik, *s.* point, high point or reach of wisdom, 45; Prike, *s.* time, age (lit. point of time), 4630.
- Prikid, *pp.* inscribed, marked, lit. pricked, 5074.
- Prime, *s.* prime of day, orig. 9 A.M., 4836.
- Prinnus (Priamus), name, 1911.
- Prince, *s.* prince, 914; Prince, *gen.* prince's, 4760; Princes, *pl.* 151, 480; Princis, 51.
- Princes, princess, 5099.
- Principalete, principality, 2311; Principalte (Principalite), 1737; chief place, 648.
- Printe, *s.* impression, imprint (on the seal), 1931.
- Pris, *s.* renown, 5099; Prisse, price, value, 4242; Prise, prize, 1860, 2284.

- Prise (Pris), *s.* praise, fame, 2508.
 (Perhaps an error for *perse*, Persia.)
 Priues, *pr. s.* quenches, takes away,
 4682; Priued, *pt. s.* (Priues, *pr. s.*),
 deprived, 2381; Priued, *pp.* de-
 prived of, 2657; (Depriued), de-
 prived, 2292.
 Proces, *s.* full account, 4259. "*Pro-
 ces*, story, relation;" Halliwell.
 Procession, *s.* procession, 1552, 1561.
 Proches (Prokes), *pr. s.* makes ex-
 travagant demands, arrogates to
 himself, 1926. "*Prokkyn*, or
 styfly askyn; *Procor*, *procito*;"
 Prompt. Parv.
 Proddest, *adj. superl.* proudest, 3661.
 Prode, *adj.* proud, 4375.
 Profe, *v.* prove, 367.
 Profe, *s.* excellence, benefit, profit,
 4309. Apparently the same word
 as M.E. *prow*. "*Prow*, idem quod
profyfe;" Prompt. Parv. O.F.
prou.
 Profectez, *pl.* profits, p. 280, l. 37.
 Profet (Profett), *pt. s.* profited, 2370.
 Profurs, *pr. s.* offers, 4052; Pro-
 ferne (Profre), 2 *pr. pl.* offer, 2202.
 Progenie, progeny, race, 4021.
 Proiecte, *s.* design, 3331.
 Prolouge, *s.* prologue, announce-
 ment, 5066; (Prolong), preamble,
 2730.
 Pronicid, *error for* prononsid (*pt. s.*),
 or pronounsand (*pres. pt.*), 3395.
 (Pronounsand), *pres. pt.* pronounc-
 ing, uttering, 3395.
 Propertes, *pl.* properties, peculiari-
 ties, 4257.
 Prophecy, *s.* prophecy, 1099; Pro-
 phasys (Prophecyes), *pl.* 1654.
 Prophecid (Prophecied), *pp.* pro-
 phecied, 1896.
 Prophet, prophet, 261, 328; *written*
 Prophete, 112.
 Prophetesse, prophetess, 4412; Pro-
 phetas (Prophett), 2300.
 Propire, *adj.* correct, certain, 367.
 See Propure.
 Proportion, proportion, 668; Pro-
 portions, *pl.* 5142.
 Propure (Propre), *adj.* proper,
 correct, 2885. See Propire.
 Propurest, *adj. superl.* most orna-
 mental, 3331.
- Propurly (P[ro]prely), *adv.* entirely,
 1926; (Propyrlly), wholly, 3283.
 Prose, *s.* prose story, 2062, 2397,
 3328, 5041.
 Proserpyne, Proserpine, 4412, 4416.
 Prof[s]perite, prosperity, 1860.
 Proud (Proude), *adj.* proud, 944,
 1000, 1169; Proude, 652, &c.;
 rich, splendid, 480, 2027; noble,
 1660; (Proued), 729*; Proudis,
pl. proud ones, 5468.
 Proudly, *adv.* splendidly, 652;
 Proudely, honourably, 4017.
 Proue, *ger.* prove, shew, 261, 334;
 test, 4071; Proued, *pt. s.* em-
 ployed, 647; (Preved), proved,
 2072; Proued, 1 *pt. s.* described,
 spoke of, 4867; Provid, *pt. pl.*
 were usual, were easily found,
 5082; Proued, *pp.* proved, 1789;
 approved, 914, 808*.
 Prouidens, *s.* foresight, prudence,
 3990; providence, 4062; Prouil-
 ence, *as dat.* for thy forethought,
 2707.
 Prouince, province, 187, 825*. See
 Prouynce.
 (Prouid), 729*; see Proud.
 Prouwis (Prowez), *s.* prowess, excel-
 lence, 2745.
 Prouynce, province, territory, 72,
 1737, 1941, 3123; *pl.* provinces,
 444. See Prouince.
 Prouys (Prenez), *pr. pl.* prove, 2000.
 Prowde, *adj.* proud, 3481. See
 Proud.
 Prowis, *s.* prowess, valour, 444, 614,
 3990, 4539; (Prowes), 936.
 Pruddest (Proudest), *adj. superl.*
 proudest, 2202.
 Pruto, name of a country, 5657.
 Prynce, prince, 99.
 Prynt, *s.* mark, seal, 3162.
 Pryse, praise, fame, 614. See Prise.
 Pull, *s.* throe, 530.
 Pull, *ger.* to pull, 938; Pallis him,
pr. s. draws himself, 2074.
 Punesch (Ponysh), *ger.* to punish,
 2733.
 Pupill, people, 87; (Peple), 1497,
 1658, 1999, 2295; Puple, 142,
 175.
 Pure, *adj.* pure, 2300; complete,
 excellent, 3990; clear, 1154;

- simple, small, 3496; mere, 1869; single, 5108; very, 2099.
- Pure, *adv.* very, 3242.
- (Pure), *adj.* poor, 1661.
- Pured, *pp.* purified, 4465; (Puryd), purified, cleansed, well prepared, 2768.
- Purely, *adv.* completely, 187; entirely, 3283; totally, 1639; clean, 1658; (Purely), entirely, 3243; Purly, 4062.
- Purfire, *s.* porphyry, 5275.
- Purgis, *pr. s.* puts away, clears away, 4682.
- Purid, *pt. pl.* grew calm, grew clear, cleared away, 4185.
- Purpose (Purpasse), *s.* intention, 1767.
- Purpose, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* intend, 682.
- Purple (Purpurre), *adj.* purple, 1532; Purperyn, 4375.
- Purple, *s.* purple colour, 4986; Purpree, 1588.
- Purse, *s.* purse, bag, 1661, 2023.
- Purtrayour, portrait-painter, 5141.
- Purway, *v.* provide, *p.* 279, *l.* 11; Purvaid, *pp.* provided, equipped, 175; Puruayd, *pp.* purveyed, provided (for thyself), 1731; Purueid, provided, foreseen, 5107.
- Put, *v.* put, 982; put, place (*with* to = into), 2861; (Puttes), *pr. s.* 777*; Put vp, *pt. s.* put up, 227; Put, *pt. pl.* put, placed, 816; Putt, *pt. pl.* put, put (themselves) forward, 3968; (Pутten), set (themselves), 1483; Put (Putt), *pp.* 1930.
- Putfull, *adj.* put full, filled (*but read* pist-full), 2284.
- Pylars, *pl.* pillars, 5064.
- Pynche, *ger.* (*prob. error* for Pycche), *i. e.* pitch, place, set, 5064.
- Pyndis, *pr. s.* impounds, pens up, imprisons, 5487.
- Pyne, *s.* torture, pain, 2723, 3506; trouble, 1206.
- Pyne, *v.* torture, 1789; Pyned, *pt. s. subj.* would put to pain, would trouble, 3333; Pynaund, *pres. pt.* causing pain, vexatious, 4172.
- Pyned, *pp.* tormented, vexed, 4702. A far better reading would be *pynned*, *i. e.* pinned, penned.
- Pyte, *s.* sad fate, 729*.
- Qua, *pron. inter.* who, 636; (Wha), 1092; Qua sa, whoso, whoever, 146, 1439; (Who so), 1527, 1718, 1780; As qua, as one who, 4659; As qua sai, as who should say, as if he would say, 2240.
- Quadrentis, *pl.* quadrants, 129. (MS. In *adrentis*; see the note.)
- Qualite, *s.* quality, dignity, 4660; kind, 1556; rank, 3303; sort of character, 1703.
- Quani, *dat.* whom, 463; (Whom), 1637; (Whome), 1624.
- Quantite, *s.* size, 1703.
- Quappid (Wappyd), *pt. pl.* struck violently, 2226. E. *whap*, to hit; M.E. *quappen*, to throb, as in Chaucer.
- Quare, *adv.* where, 104, 363, 373; *conj.* (Quar), whether, 2370.
- Quare-of, whereof, 4249, 4380, 5462; (Wher-of), 1566.
- Quare-on, *adv.* whereon, whereupon, upon what, 268, 269.
- Quare-purge (Whar-porow), whereby, 2544.
- Quare-with, where-with, 5434.
- Quarrels (Qwarels), *pl.* bolts (for the cross bow), 2226; Quarels, 1414.
- Quarto, *adv.* whereto, to what purpose, 4060; (Whare-to), wherefore, 2242.
- Quas (Whoys), *pron.* whose, 1192; Quase, *pron. rel. gen.* whose, under whose rule, 4192.
- Qua-sum-euire (Who-someuer), *pron.* whosoever, 3362.
- Quat, *pron.* what, 171, 251, 253, 295, &c.; why, wherefore, 2519, 3492, 5355; (What), how, 2523; Quat, reason why; For any quat, on any account, 581; Quat so (Qwat so), whatever, 1640; All quat, all what, *i. e.* all sorts of things, 3046; Mekill quat, much of various sorts, 3777. And see Mekill.
- Quat euire (What euer), whatever, 680.
- Quatkyn, what kind of, of what kind, 305, 312, 5007.
- Quaynte, *adj.* quaint, curious, 129.

- Quayntid him, *pt. s.* made himself acquainted, 213.
- Quedire, *adv.* wherever, 3499; Queder, *adv.* whither, in what direction, 166.
- Quele, *s.* wheel, 3303; Queles, *pl.* 5294. See Qwele.
- Quellis (Whelles), *pr. s.* kills, 1307.
- Quen, *adv.* when, 149, 159, 194, &c.; (When), 745; Quene, 3509.
- Quene, queen, 362, 669, 822; (Whene), 919, 938, 944, 1851.
- Question, *s.* question, 1110.
- Quethe, *v.* tell, 4325; Queth, 1 *pr. s.* as *fut.* shall tell, 1110.
- Quethin, *adv.* whence, 4192, 5216.
- Quethire, *conj.* whether (interrogatively), 2161, 3805; Quepir, 3810; whether (introducing a new clause), 5606; (Wheper), although, 2090; Queper zit, nevertheless, however, 581.
- Quethirs (Whirres), *pr. pl.* whizz, fly whizzing, 1414. See *quhidder* in Jamieson, and *quhedirand* in Barbour.
- Qui (Why), why, 1620, 2645.
- Quike, *adj.* alive, 4469.
- Quickly (Whikly), *adv.* quickly, 1414.
- Quile, *s.* space of time, while, 331, 249, 3861; par-quile, at that time, 157.
- Quilk, *error for* Quil, while, whilst, 4629.
- Quilke (Whilke), *pron.* which, 519, 679, 1447; (which), 3421; what, 1888; Quilk (Whilk), which, 996.
- Quils, *conj. and adv.* whilst, 3535; (Whils), 1678; (Whil), 3416; (Whille), 1687; (Whilse), 989; Quills, 19.
- Quirris (Whirrez), *pr. pl.* whir, i. e. go forth with a buzzing noise, 1556; Quirys (Whirres), whir, hurl, 2226.
- Quirys (Enquirez), *pr. s.* asks, enquires about, 1703.
- Quirland, *pres. part.* whirling, 5294.
- Quite, *adj.* white, 4534, 5603; (White), *s.* white robes, 1556.
- Quod, *pt. s.* said, 97, 183, 242, 270, &c.
- Qry (Whi), why, 2945. See Qui.
- Quyehe (Which), *pron.* what, how great, 1807.
- Qnyle, *s.* while, time, 546, 581; (While), 1239, 1861. See Quile.
- Quyte, *adj.* white, 129; (White), 1562; (Whitte), 1498. See Quite.
- Qwaite, *v.* await, 1109. Put for Waite, as in Dest. of Troy, 13245.
- Qwat, what, 740, 1272; Qwatt, 849.
- Qwatis, *pr. s.* (probably) becomes quiet, is lulled again, 560. See *quate*, *quait*, to lull, in Jamieson, ed. 1880. The sense seems to be that the sea was violently agitated, and again suddenly lulled to rest again. *Euer elike* = continually.
- Qwaynt, *adj.* quaint, curious, 5548.
- Qwele (Whele), *s.* wheel, 1851, 1854; round, circle, 4660. See Quele.
- Qweme, *adj.* convenient, 5078. A.S. *gewerne*.
- Qwen, *adv.* when, 374, 392, 649.
- Qwene, queen, 221, 228, 234, &c.
- Qwer, *adv.* where, 1515.
- Qweryns (Quernes), *pl.* cracks, edges of ice on each side of a crack, 3003. Cf. O.F. *carne*, an edge or corner (Cotgrave); and note that the O.F. *caral*, a battlement (spelt *carneau* in Cotgrave), is spelt *quarnell* in Jamieson. *Carne* is merely another form of F. *cren*, a notch, cleft, breach, Lat. *crena*.
- Qwete, *v.* requite, satisfy, 2420. For to question enquire read questions to enquire (see the Dublin MS.); the line means—But to enquire questions of you, and to satisfy my wits with them. *Qwete* is the M.E. *quitten*, to quit, requite, also to satisfy.
- Qwete, *s.* wheat, 4511.
- Qwepire (Wheder), whether, can it be that, 2910.
- Qwile, *s.* short time, 653.
- Qwi (Whi), *adv.* why, 2287.
- Qwilke (Whilke), *pron.* which, 1046.
- Qwill, *conj.* until, 507.
- Qwirre (Whirre), *s.* whir, whirl, 1854; In a qwirre, with a whizzing sound, 560.
- Qwistounes, *pl.* beggars, 4660. O.F. *quistoun*, a beggar; Roquefort. Cf.

1. 3303. The wheel of Fortune is here called the wheel of beggars, contemptuously, because those who cling to it as it whirls have a chance of being exalted from the lowest condition; see the context.
- Qwistsumnes, 3303. A corrupt reading; the MS. has 'qwistsūnes', which may also be rendered 'qwistsuānes', an error for 'qwistunnes' = qwistoūnes, i. e. beggars. See l. 4660, where the phrase recurs; and see above.
- Rabetis, *pl.* war-horses, chargers, 1320. See two examples, s. v. *rabite*, in Halliwell. Cf. O.F. *arabi*, an Arab-horse (Godefroy).
- Babies, *error for* Ribans (in *Dubl. MS.* rybans), *pl.* borders, streaks, 1538.
- (Rachez hym), *pr. s.* prepares himself, 2031. Cf. *Lowl. Sc.* *rax*, to stretch.
- Rad, *adv.* speedily, 2428. See Radly.
- (Raddest), *adj. sup.* most afraid, 2510. Cf. *Swed.* *rädd*, *Dan.* *rød*, afraid. See Redd.
- Raddour, *s.* violence, 2329. O.F. *rador* (Roquefort), later *roideur*, strength, violence.
- Rade, *pt. s.* rode, 3704.
- Radly, *adv.* readily, quickly, soon, 409, 430, 1354, 1382, 1494, 1950, 2031, 2973, 3449, 4846, 4961, 5360.
- Raged, *pt. s.* was angry, 638; Ragid, *pp.* been wanton, 460.
- Raggid, *adj.* jagged, ragged, 5133.
- (Raght), *pp.* reached, taken, 799*. *Pp.* of *rechen*.
- Raikis, *pr. s.* proceeds, goes, 5284, 5555. *Icel.* *reika*, to wander.
- Railed, *pp.* covered, decked, bordered, 1538, 5128. From A.S. *hrægl*, a garment. See Gawain and the Grene Knight, and *hræil-en*, in *Stratmann*.
- Rais him, *pr. s.* arrays him, prepares himself, 2031. Short for *arayis*.
- Bake (Rakke), course, road, way, track, 3383, 5070. See Gloss. to Gawain and the Grene Knight.
- "Cartrack, a cart-rut;" Halliwell. See Raikis.
- Ramys, name of a country, 5670. (*Rau*), *pt. s.* ran, 794*.
- Rancour (Rankour), *s.* rancour, anger, 2701.
- Range, *pt. pl.* rang, 5157.
- Ranke, *adj.* luxuriant, well-grown, 3060.
- Rankest, *adj. superl.* thickest, 1319.
- Ransons (Raunsons), *pl.* rich gifts, lit. ransoms, 1665.
- Rapis (Rapez), *pl.* ropes, 1520; (Rapes), 747*.
- Raryfey, *name*, 5496.
- Raschis (Rachen), *pr. pl.* hurry along, 1239. Cf. E. *rash*.
- Rase, *pt. s.* rose, 392, 430, 1216, 1566, 2354, 3817, 5055; (Rose), 1354, 2354.
- Rase (Rese), race, hurry, 1513. A.S. *rés*.
- (Rastelyng), *s.* tumult, 943.
- (Rasyd vp), *pp.* raised up, levied, 829*.
- Rasyn (Raysyn), raisin, grape, 1352.
- Rathere (Rather), *adv.* rather, 1178.
- (Rapest) (MS. rapeest), most quickly, 726.
- Ratland, *pres. part.* rattling, screeching, 4531.
- Ratons, *pl.* rats, 1762.
- Raueste (Reuest), *pp.* decked, attired, 1500. Lit. re-vested.
- Rauth (Rathe), *adv.* quickly, soon, 2824. See Rather.
- Rauyst, *pp.* ravished, torn away, 4424.
- Ravyn, raven; Nizt ravyn, night-raven, i. e. owl, 4531.
- Raw (Rawe), row, rank; On a raw = in a row, 1500; Be rawe (*pl.* Rawes), in a row, along a row or line, 1320; Rawis (Rawez), *pl.* lines, 2843; rows, lines (of the letter), 2701.
- Raxsils, *pr. s.* stretches out, 4930. See *Glos.* to P. Plowman.
- Ray, *s.* king, 5496. O.F. *rei*.
- Rayme, *ger.* to spread over, overrun, rule oppressively, plunder, 4563; *v.* 177; (Rame), 2488; Raymed (Raymet), *pp.* 1940, 2378;

- (Raymed), *pp.* taken away from, 2510. Halliwell has "*rame*, to rob, plunder; *Lanc.*;" also *raime*, to rule oppressively. But the true sense is not certain.
- Rayme, *s.* plunder, 4563. The line seems to mean—'For plunder and robbery, to rob men of their goods.' But *rayme* should not occur twice.
- Rayn, *s.* rain, 4176.
- Ray[n]bowe (Rayne-bowe), rain-bow, 2466.
- Raynes, *pr. s.* rains, 566.
- Raynes, fine cloth (or linen) of Rheims, 4339; (Reynes), 1550.
- Rayses, *pr. s.* rouses, lit. raises, 5174.
- (Raythely), *adv.* excellently, 1538. Prob. a false reading. Cf. *g-raith*.
- Razt, *pt. s.* reached, arrived, 5510; delivered, 5542; laid hold of, 5284; departed, got away, 3852; (Raght), caught, 2916, 2973; (Raught), went on, 1048.
- (Realm), realm, 758, 799*, 826*.
- Rebell, *adj.* rebellious, 3504; (Rebellez), 1054.
- Rebelte, rebellion, 2428.
- Reche, *v.* reach, 2466; Reches, *error for* Reche, *ger.* 5520; Reche *vp* (*vppr.*) *v.* give over, 758 (see the note); Reches, *pr. s.* gives, hands over, 1653; (Rechez), gives, 1665; reaches out (to), 1996; Rechis (Reches), offers, 1906; Reche *vp*, *pr. pl.* reach up, 817; Rechen, reach, 817; Rechis (Rechys), reach, hand over, 1791; Reches (Rechen) *vp*, *pr. pl.* hand up, deliver up, 958; Rechid (Raughten), *pt. pl.* reached, 2405.
- Reche (Rachen), *ger.* to relate, 1354; Reched, *pp.* related, 521. A.S. *reccan*.
- Reches, *s.* riches, treasure, 3951.
- Reckend, *pp.* reckoned, 5501.
- Recordis, *pr. s.* records, informs, tells, 214; (Recordez), 709, 1044; (Recordes), 2060.
- Reconerd, *pt. s.* won, gained, 19; Recouyre (Recouer), *imp. s.* recover, win for (myself), 758.
- Redd, *adj.* afraid, full of dread, 1040, 2510. Swed. *rädd*, Dan. *ræd*. See Raddest.
- Rede, *v.* advise, 2837; *ger.* to read, 630; 1 *pr. s.* counsel, advise, 2166, 2464, 2601, 3115; read, 1646; Redis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* tellest, 244; (Redes), *pr. s.* reads, 1182, 1996; Redis (Redes), counsels, 1178; Rede, 1 *pr. pl.* read, 1077; Redes (Redyn), *pr. pl.* 1932; Redd, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* I read, 3858; Redd, *pt. pl.* read, 2471; Redd (Redyn, *pr. pl.*), advised, 2872; Red, read, 2344; Redd, *pp.* read, 3588; Rede (Redde), 2843; Red, 1950; Rede, *imp. s.* advise, 5194. A.S. *rédan*.
- Rede, *s.* counsel, 1040. See above.
- Rede, *adj.* red, 20, 425, 1665, 1779, 4176; Redde, 3951.
- Rede, *adj.* ready, 3534. See Redy.
- Rede, reed; Rede-ryse, reed-rushes, reeds, 3858; Redis, *pl.* 3815, 3832, 4206.
- Redell, *s.* curtain, 4930. O.F. *ridel*, F. *ridan*.
- Reden (Riden), *pp.* ridden through, 1940; Redyn (Rydyn), ridden, 1203.
- (Redles), *adj.* without counsel, at a loss, 1040.
- Redy, *adj.* ready, 1382, 5358.
- Redy (Rede), *adj.* red, ruddy, 3369.
- Reede, *adj.* red, 5510.
- Reedis, *pl.* reeds, 5461. See Rede.
- Refete, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* feed, refresh (yourselves), 4587. Formed from L. *refectus*.
- Refis, *pr. s.* carries off, 5153; Refid, *pp.* reft, 5178. See Reft.
- Refreschid, *pp.* refreshed, 3808.
- Refreyne, *pr. pl.* 2 *p. subj.* refrain, 4638.
- Reft, *pt. s.* (with *vp*), tore up, 409; Reft, *pp.* taken away (from), 2510, 4010. See Refis.
- (Refuse), *s.* refuse, 1887. A false reading; see Ashm. MS.
- Region, *s.* region, 992; Regions, *pl.* 19, 1048, 1054.
- Regne (Remes, *pl.*), *s.* realm, 1949. See Regne.
- Regne, kingdom, 1140, 3000, 3164; (Realme), 2653.

- Regne, *ger.* to reign, 518, 836; (Reyne), *v.* 1502; Regnyd, *pt. s.* 19.
- Rehers, *v.* rehearse, relate, describe, 21; consider, 329.
- Rehetis, *pr. s.* cheers, encourages (them), 3999; revives, recalls (his courage), 5320. "*Rehaitier, Rehaiter, Reheter*, encourager, reprendre des forces;" Roquefort.
- Reioyed, *pp.* rejoiced, glad, 3960, 5227; (Reiossed), 3407.
- Reioysed, *pp.* rejoiced, 3112.
- Rekanthes, *pl.* chains, 5128. See Rekenthis.
- Reke, smoke, incense, 1566.
- Reken, *ger.* to reckon, recount, tell, 150, 1206, 1448; to calculate, count, 41, 2269; Reken (Rekyn), *ger.* to reckon, 771; Rekens, *pr. s.* relates, 1280; Rekend, 1 *pt. s.* related, 4124; Rekind, *pt. s.* pronounced, uttered, 4931. See Rekyn.
- Rekenthis, *pl.* chains, 5542. A.S. *racente*, Icel. *rekendr*. Hence prov. E. *reckon-creek*, lit. chain-crook (Halliwell). See Rekanthis.
- Rekils, *s.* odour, perfume, 4977. A.S. *récel*s.
- Rekils, *pr. s.* smokes, reeks, 566. See above.
- Rekinly (Rakenly), *adv.* hastily, 2354; (Rekenly), quickly, soon, 2329; (Rekyndly), 794*. A.S. *recene*.
- Rekyn, *ger.* to count, 84; (Reken), *v.* recount, 1404; Rekyms (Rekens), *pr. s.* utters, 2354. E. *reckon*.
- Rekyn, *v.* control, take heed to, 21. A.S. *récan*, to reck.
- Releckis (Relikkez), *pl.* relics, 1572.
- Remembris (Remenbrys), *pr. s.* remembers, 2844; recalls, 4233; Remenbris, 2958; Remenbrid, 1095.
- Remnant, *s.* part, 22.
- Remowe (Remefe), *v.* remove, withdraw, 1975; Remowis, *pr. s.* removes, 4859; Removis (Remewis), 2538; Remowis (Remevez), 2031; (Remevys), rises up, 2943; Remowed, *pt. s.* removed, 1048, 1450; Remewid, 3704.
- Remys, *pl.* realms, 86.
- Ren (Rynne), *v.* run, 3383.
- Renay, *v.* refuse, 3534. O.F. *reneier*, Lat. *renegare*.
- Renewid, *adj.* (*prob. for* Renownid, renowned), 2819. The Dublin MS. *has* reuerent, i.e. reverend, noble.
- Renge, *the same as* Renke, man, 460.
- Rengis (Ringes), *pr. s.* rings, 1385. (Renishit), *pp. as adj.* passionate, 839*. See Renyst.
- Renke, man, 330, 739, 817, 992, 1203, 1216, 2166; Renkis, *pl.* men, warriors, 21, 177; (Renkes), 2378; (Renkez), 958. A.S. *rinc*. (Renke), *s.* rank, 1850.
- Rent, payment, tribute; To rent, in payment, in tribute, 4531.
- (Rent), *pp.* rent, broken, 775*.
- Renysche, *adj.* furious, 2943; Renyst, passionate, loud, 387. "*Renish*, furious; *North*."—Halliwell.
- Renyschly, *adv.* vehemently, vigorously, 4931. See above.
- Repaire, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* return, 3751.
- Reportand, *pres. pt.* reporting, relating, or sending back, 2414.
- Repreue (Reproue), *s.* reproof, blame, 2421.
- Repreues, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* reprove, blame, 4662; (Reproud), *pp.* rebuked, 1789.
- Request, *pp.* requested, demanded (by), 3443.
- Required, *pp.* asked, 2268.
- Rere, *v.* rear, build, 4581; (Rerre), 2258; Rid, *pt. s.* reared, 5510; *pp.* 4068; Reryd, raised, 81; (Reryd), reared, 1373.
- Rerid, *s.* voice, noise, 488; Reryd, 387; (Rerde), noise, 2900. A.S. *gereord*.
- Res (Reys), *s.* race, hurry, 2979. See Rese.
- Resayfe (Resaue), *v.* receive, 826; Resayues, *pr. s.* receives, 2329; *pr. pl.* 3210; Resayued, *pt. s.* received, took, 3478; received, 1182; (Resaued), *pt. pl.* 1695, 2428; Resaued, *pt. pl.* received,

- 1124; Resayue (Resaue), *imp. s.* 3115; Resayms, *imp. pl.* 3315; Resayued (Resaued), *pp.* received, 1646.
- Resche, *s.* rush, 4126, 4726.
- Reschewe, *ger.* to rescue, aid, 5162; (Rescew), 2813. See Reskowe.
- Resc (Resch), *s.* hurry, 1996. A.S. *ris*. See Res.
- Resild, *pp.* reticulated, covered with network, 4126. O.F. *resel*, F. *réseau*, from Lat. *reticulum*, network. The sense is 'as covered with network as a rush,' which probably means no more than 'furrowed like a rush,' or rough, without any very close resemblance to actual network. Otherwise, if the reading be corrupt, the easiest correction is to read *refild*, or rather *rifeld*, i.e. rivelled, wrinkled.
- Reskowe, *ger.* to rescue, 5202. See Reschowe.
- Reson, reason, 1670; cause, 244; talk, 3524; sentence, 387; Reasons, *pl.* accounts, 1280. (Ressynays); see Risais.
- Reste, *s.* rest; To reste (At rist), at rest, set, spoken of the sun, 686.
- Resyn, *pp.* risen, 82, 351.
- Rethere, *pl.* the cattle, 1239. See *herd* in Strathgou, A.S. *hrēðer*, *hrēðer*; *pl.* *hrēðer*.
- Retorik, rhetoric, 4363.
- Reure, *s.* river, 5595; (Reuer). 2894; Revers, *pl.* 4822.
- Reuerence, *s.* reverence, respect, 197, 1124, 1182, 1646, 3463.
- Reuerent, *pr. s.* does reverence to, 1699; Reuerent, *pl. pl.* 2344.
- (Reuerently), *adv.* reverently, 817.
- Reuersold (Reuest, *pp.*), *pl. s. refl.* dressed himself, 1550.
- Reust; see Rauste.
- Reufully, *adv.* sadly, 3083.
- Reure, *s.* river, 5279; Reuir, 3852.
- Reuth, pity, 2244; Reuthie (Reuth), sorrow, grief, 1280, 2813.
- Reuell, *ger.* to spend in revelling, 3464.
- Revles (Revylez), *pr. s.* reviles, 732.
- Rew (Rowe), *v.* rue, repent, 1975; Rewis, *pr. s.* 3137; (Rewys), *pr. s. refl.* repents, 871; Rewid, *pt. pa.* repented, 3524; Rewis, *imp. pl.* have pity, 3314.
- Rewfully, *adv.* ruefully, sadly, 2843.
- Rewill, *s.* rule, 4122; (Rewle), rule, ritual, 1500; Rewle, 2894.
- Rewle, *ger.* to guide, 5542; to order, 3609; (Rewle), *v.* rule, 799*; Rewelle, 1 *pr. pl.* rule, 4332.
- Rewme, *s.* kingdom, realm, 49, 80, 82, 185, 197; (Realme), 813, 3241; (Reime), 1740; Rewmys (Realmes), *pl.* kingdoms, 2363.
- Rewthe, *s.* pity, sad sight, 4010. See Reuth.
- Reyne, *s.* rein, 2973.
- Rygt, *adv.* rightly, 1740.
- Rejt (perhaps), *adj.* right, upright, 2943. For the spelling, see above.
- Rial, *adv.* royally, grandly, 4360.
- Riall, *adj.* royal, 244, 941, 3314.
- Rialy, *adv.* royally, 1539, 1572; (Ryally), 3210.
- Rialme, *s.* realm, dominion, 20.
- Rials, *pl.* men of the royal rank or kin, 3443.
- Rialte, *s.* royal power, rule, 3534; royalty, royal state, 22, 5122; (Rialtie), royalty, pride, 2428.
- Ribais; see Rabies.
- (Ribbez), *pl.* ribs, 775*.
- Richest, *adj.* superl. richest, 4822.
- Richas (Richez), *s.* riches, 1178.
- Riche, *adj.* rich, powerful, 197, 351, 871, 992, &c.; (Riche), 1539.
- Riches, *s.* wealth, 20, 1663.
- Riches, *pr. s. refl.* prepares himself, 5056. See Gloss. to Gawayne and the Green Knight.
- Richest, *adj.* richest, 1572.
- Riders (Ryders), *pl.* riders, knights, 1654.
- Ridding (Riddying), *s.* clearing, raising (a town), 2244.
- Riddour (Raddour), *s.* harshness, 2329. See Raddour.
- Ride, *ger.* to ride, 82, 999; (Ryde), *ger.* to ride over, 1731; *v.* 1502; Rhis (Rydez), *pr. s.* rides, 943, 2062; (Rides), 1319, 1450; Riden (Ryde), 1 *pr. pl.* ride, 1859; Ride (Ryde), 1 *pr. pl. subj.* 2166; Ride (Ryden, MS. dyden), *pr. pl.*

- ride, 1803; (Ridyn), *pr. pl.* ride, 796.
 Rife, *adj.* abundant, 1663.
 Rife, *error for Riste or Reste, ger.* to rest, 4064. See note.
 Rige (Rigge), *s.* back, 2973; (Rige), 784*; (Riggez), *pl.* 775*.
 (Right), *adj.* right, 784*.
 (Right), *adv.* just, 798*.
 (Rightes hym), *pr. s.* sits upright, 839*.
 Rime (Reme), *s.* rim, 1850.
 Ringe, *s.* ring, border, 1850; (Rynggez), *pl.* ring-mail, lit. rings, 2980.
 Risches (Rechez), *s.* riches, treasure, 3115.
 Rise (Ryses), 2 *pr. s.* risest, 1494; Risis (Ryses), *pr. s.* rises, 2347.
 Risonis (Ressynys), *s. pl.* heads of oats, 3060. "Rizome, the head of the oat; *Chesh.* 'A plume, or bell, or bunch of oats, and such other corn as does not grow in an ear;' Kennett, MS. Lansd. 1033." — Halliwell. Cf. Prov. Swed. *ressma*, an ear of corn, especially of oats, a spike of corn (Rietz).
 Rist, *v.* rest, leave off, 22; Ristis, *pr. s.* 5654; Ristes, 4920.
 Riued (Ryfe), *adj.* abundant, full of abundance, 1740, 1779. Icel. *rifr*, rife; *reifa*, to bestow.
 Rigt, *adv.* right, immediately, 95, 431; just, exactly, 101; (Right), exactly, 1365; (Ryght), just, 2483; Rigt as (Right as), just as, 1756.
 Rigtis (Rightez), *pl.* rights, 3241.
 Rigtwisnes, righteousness, 4424; Rigtwysnes (Ryghtwysnes), 3383.
 Robies (Rubies), *pl.* rubies, 1663.
 Robry, *s.* robbery, 4563.
 Roche, *s.* rock, 5496; Rochis, 4864; Roches, 4877.
 (Roke), rude, 829*.
 (Rodely), *adv.* rudely, boldly, 784*.
 Rodogarus, mother of Darius, 3314; Rodogars (Rodogors), 2819; (Rodogoras), 2824.
 Rofe, *pt. s.* tore, hurt, 638.
 Rogh, *adj.* rough, 4864; Roght, 4126, 5133.
 (Roke), *s.* rock, 4849; Rokkis, *pl.* 4864.
 (Rolland), *pres. pt.* rolling, galloping, 794*.
 Romance, *s.* the original Romance, 488, 4133; (Romayns), 2900; Romaunce (Romanys), 1077.
 Romayn, Roumania (?), 5670.
 Rome, Rome, 2328, 4649.
 Romys, *pr. s.* roars, cries, 612. Cf. A.S. *hréam*, noise, cry. (Better spelt *remys*.)
 Ronde, *adj.* round, 1502.
 (Rongen), *pt. pl.* rang, 775.
 (Ronke), *adj.* rank, abundant, 1762.
 Ronkenes, *s.* rankness, 3350.
 Ronsees, *pl.* (Rounsey, *s.*) horses, 2887. M.E. *rouncy*, in Chaucer. See Rounsy.
 Roomes, *imp. pl.* roam, stretch out, 2466. See *roam* in my Etym. Diet.
 (Rooues), *imp. pl.* rove, roam (after), 2466.
 Ropand, *pres. part.* rushing down, falling swiftly, 4176. Icel. *hrapa*, to fall, fall in ruin.
 Rosan, Roxana, 3315, 3449, 3463.
 Rose, *s.* rose, 4543.
 Rose, 1 *pr. pl.* praise, 4313; Rosid, *pp.* celebrated, 5122. Icel. *hrósa*.
 Rote, *s.* root, 4424; Rotis, *pl.* 409, 3941.
 Rottillyng, *s.* disturbance, 943. Cf. E. *rattle*, which is often provincially pronounced *rattle*.
 Roue, *pt. s.* rived, pierced, 1216.
 Roane, whisper, secret, 244.
 Rounsy, charger, 817. See Ronsees.
 Route, *s.* company, set, 2378; throng, 1319; (Rowte), rout, host, 958, 1239.
 Row (Rawe), *adj.* rough, 2980.
 Rowme, *s.* room, 4920; place, 330.
 Rowme, *adj.* roomy, large, 1762. A.S. *rúm*.
 (Rowmyd), *pt. s.* made room for (*but read Removed*), 1048.
 Rowste, *s.* voice, 488. Icel. *raust*, Dan. *rúst*.
 Rughe, *adj.* rough, 4726, 4877.
 Rughere, *adj.* rougher, 3815.
 Rusehil (Rushes, *pr. s.*), *pt. s.* hurled, 1320.

- Russe, Russia, 5670.
 Ruyde, *adj.* rough, turbulent, 5595.
 Ruze, *adj.* rough, 3852; wild, 1762.
 Rybans; see Rabies.
 Ryde, *ger.* to ride, 915, 2813, 762*; Rydes, *pr. s.* rides, 1284; Rydis (Ryden), *pr. pl.* 1239; Rydyn, *pr. pl.* ride (or *pt. pl.*), rode, 1256.
 Ryfe, *adj.* rife, plain, evident, 1352.
 Ryfenes, *s.* rife, plenteousness, abundance, 1887.
 Ryft, *s.* rift, cleft, 1756.
 (Ryfing), *s.* rending, 747*.
 Rymed, *pt. s.* stretched, 4931.
 Ryn, *ger.* to run, 1352; Rynnes, *pr. s.* 1323, 1513; (Rynnys), 2900; (Rynnyn), *pr. pl.* 2979; Rynand, *pres. part.* running, 3737.
 Ryng, ring, 425, 436.
 Rynges, *pr. s.* rings, 775.
 Rynoceros, rhinoceros, 4133; Rynoceros, 5133.
 Rype, *adj.* ripe, 1347.
 Rise (Rise), *v.* rise, 2438; Rysis, *pr. s.* 330, 392; (Risez), 782; Rysys, 2871; Ryse (= Risis), 557; (Rysys); (Rysys), 2870.
 Ryse, *s.* rushes, 3858. See note.
 Ryst (Rist), rest, 2516; To ryst, at rest, 374.
 (Rytte), *pp.* torn, 775*. Icel. *rita*, to scratch, cut (hence also to tear, as G. *reissen*); cognate with A.S. *writan*.
 Sa, *adv.* so, thus, 146, 259, 268, 269, 459, &c.; (So), 840.
 Sa ma aydens (So madeus), so may God aid me, 729. For So m'aide Deus, so may God aid me.
 Saarde, Sardis, 5666.
 Sable (Sabyll), *adj.* sable, black, 1126.
 Sable, *s.* sable, black colour, 3946.
 Sacchell (Sachell), *s.* wise man, philosopher (?). 716. Used ironically; it seems to be formed from O.F. *sache*, wise (Roquefor). Low Lat. *supius*, wise.
 Sacrife, *v.* sacrifice, 5098 (where read sacrificie); Sacrifice, *pr. s.* sacrifices, 1083; (Sacrificed), *pt. s.* 1083.
 Sacrificis, *s.* sacrifice, 4461; (Sacrificese), 1486; *miswritten* Sacrife, 2182.
 Sacrilag, *s.* sacrilege, 4561.
 Sad, *adj.* settled, 2895; Sadd, *adj.* full, complete, 3883; Sadd sowme, close rank, lit. close (or full) number, 5559; Sadd (Sad), *adj.* close, firm, resolute, 2614; sad, 5052. A.S. *sæd*.
 Sadils, *pl.* saddles, 5453. See Sadyll.
 Sadly, *adv.* seriously, 347; fixedly, 1859; forcibly, 4146; firmly, securely, 2568; with determination, 1139; Sadli, sadly, 5584.
 Sadnes (Sadnesse), *s.* staidness, soberness, steadiness, 1017.
 (Sadyll), saddle, 790*, 795*, 839*. See Sadils.
 Safe, *adj.* safe, 1677; Safe vouch (Saue woche), 2 *p. pr. pl. subj.* vouchsafe, 2355; and see Vouchid.
 Saffron, *pp.* coloured with saffron, 4600.
 Safirs (Saphirez), *pl.* sapphires, 1535; Safers, 4880.
 Sage, *adj.* wise, 1649, 4704.
 Sagely, *adv.* wisely, 3359.
 (Sagh), *pt. s.* saw, 770*.
 Saghe, *s.* saw, saying, 4997.
 Sagitariis, the name of a place, 1070.
 Sai, *v.* say, tell of, 5551; Sais (Says), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* sayest, 730; Sais, *pr. s.* says, 80, 192; (Says), 881, 1371; Sais, *pr. pl.* say, 1732; Saied, *pt. s.* said, 4941; Said, 96, 228; (Sayde), 1355; Said (Saydyn), *pt. pl.* 1815; Sai, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* say, 5193; Sais (Says), *imper. pl.* 2 *p.* say ye, 890.
 Saile (Sayle), *ger.* to sail, 1026; Sailand, *pres. pt.* sailing, 61.
 Sailers, *pl.* sailors, 4359.
 Sailid, *pt. pl.* assailed, 5559. *Short for* Asailid.
 (Saire), *adv.* sorely, 2313.
 Sake, *s.* sake, 5, 1813, 2022; guilt, 3213. A.S. *sacu*.
 Salamon, Solomon, 1649.
 Salcary, *Lat.* Soltani, 5501.
 Sale, *s.* hall, chamber, room, 48, 222, 332, 487, 502, 1183, 1830, 2063, 2929, 3074, 3229, 3685, 4432, 5339; Sales, *pl.* halls, tents, 4016. A.S. *sæl* (Grein).

- Sale (Saule), *s.* soul, 1640.
- Sall, 1 *pr. s.* must, am to, 3194; Sall, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* shalt, 688, 774; Sall, *pr. s.* shall, 177, 184, 251, 403, 519; Sal, 388; Sal (Shal), *pl.* 1358.
- Salmay, *s.* baggage, collection of instruments, &c., 126. Low Lat. *salmaria*, the same as *sagmaria*, baggage.
- Salt, *adj.* salt, 154.
- Salue, *s.* unguent, 4976; Salues, *salves*, 4343; Saluys, 3132.
- Salue, *v.* heal, 3132; Salues, *pr. s.* *salves*, *heals*, 4683.
- Salus, *s.* salutation, 4647.
- Salutis, *pl.* salutations, greetings, 3088; (Salutes), 1914; (Salutez), 1490; Salutes, *pl.* greetings, 2759, 2802.
- Same, *adj.* same, 288, 741*.
- Same, *in phr.* In same, i. e. together (though here used as a mere expletive), 2646. "They gaderyd hem *insame*;" Rich. Coer de Lion, ed. Weber, 4386.
- Samen, *adv.* together, 162, 175, 2351, 3671; (Sampnen), 1550; In samen, 5295. See Samme.
- Samme, *adv.* together, 5098. See Samen.
- Sammen (Samme), 1 *pr. s.* collect, assemble, 3168; Sammes (Sampnez), *pr. s.* gathers, 1520; (Sampnes), *pr. pl.* collect, assemble, 2351; Samed, *pt. s.* assembled, 1026; Samyd, 51; Sammed, *pp.* assembled, 2614; Samed (Sampned), collected, 1732; Samed (Sammyd), *pp.* assembled, gathered, 2828; Sammed, *pp.* filled, gathered full, 5290. A.S. *samnian*.
- Sampill, *s.* sample, example, proof, 5306; see Ensampill.
- Sampson, 1202, 1221, 1264, 1288.
- Sand, *s.* land, 4299.
- Sande, *s.* message, 3780; Sand (Sond), embassy, 2524; Sandis (Sondez), *pl.* messages, 890.
- Sande, 1 *pr. s.* send, 3168.
- Sandisman, *s.* messenger, 4234; (Sondesman), 2866, 2964; Sandisinen, *pl.* messengers, 2399, 5100; (Sandesmen), 1830; (Sondesmen), 1790; (Sendesmen), ambassadors, 1170.
- Sange, song, 253, 1645.
- Sannd, *s.* sand, 5555.
- Sanng, *pt. pl.* sang, 3698.
- Sanys (*read* Sauys), *pr. pl.* save, preserve, 1749.
- Sapience, wisdom, 253, 1022; Sapient, 3725; knowledge, 622; Sapient (Sapience), wisdom, 2374; (Sapiens), 2526; Sapientis, *pl.* wise acts, 4449.
- Sarazens (Sariauntez), *pl.* Saracens, 1510.
- Sare, *s.* sore, harm, 3771; Saris, *pl.* 3132, 4343.
- Sare, *adj.* sore, severe, 797.
- Sare, *adv.* sorely, 385, 531, 856, 1464; (Sore), 2532, 2698.
- (Sarkenly), 2401. Perhaps an error for *sekirly*, as in A.; or miswritten for *certainly*.
- Saroparis (Satrapers), *pl.* satraps, 1913.
- Sary, *adj.* sorry, miserable, 665, 1735, 4417; poor, 4037.
- Sat, *pt. s.* sat, 482; Satte, 3336.
- Satraparis (Satrapars), *pl.* satraps, 2758; Satrapaires, 2694; Satrapairs (Satrapers), 1937.
- Sattild, *pp.* settled, 4429.
- Sauagyus, *pl.* savages, 3914.
- Sauand, saving, except, 4037; Sauand bot, except, 3707.
- Saudid (Sawdett), *pp.* stuffed, set, 1535. F. *souder*, to solder, lit. to make firm; Lat. *solidare*.
- Saudiours (Saugeours), *pl.* soldiers, 1921, 2105; (Soungeours), 2828; (Sowiours), 763. See Saugeours.
- Saue (Safe), *v.* save, heal, 2558, 3087; Sued, *pt. s.* saved, 5586. See Sauyd.
- Saue, *prep.* save, except, 3842.
- Sauely, *adv.* safely, 3771. See note.
- (Saugeours), *pl.* soldiers, 2172. See Audiours. Cf. prov. E. *sodger*.
- Saule, soul, 742, 754, 3089, 3474; (Sawle), 1786, 2628; Sauls, *pl.* 4429.
- Sauour, *s.* smell, sense of smell, 4634.

- Saunour, *s.* knowledge, 4429, 4474.
Cf. *F. savoir*.
- Saute, *s.* assault, 1388, 2221, 2380, 3360; (*Sawte*), 1156, 1431, 1452, 1766, 2135; (*Sawt*), 1968.
- Sauyd (*Saued*), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* saved, 2093; (*Saffed*), *pp.* preserved, 2668. See *Saue*.
- Sawe, *ger.* to sow, 4404; 2 *pr. pl.* 4580; *Sawis*, 1 *pr. pl.* 4268.
- Sawe, *pt. s.* saw, 266; (*Saw*), *pt. pl.* 1616.
- Sawe, *s.* speech, saying, 1845; (*Saw*), 863; *Sawis*, *pl.* words, 5115; sayings, 51, 99, 200, 262; (*Sawes*), 1655; *Sawes*, 3567; (*Sawes*), prophecies, 797*.
- Sawis, *pl.* saws, 5557. See *Sage*.
- Sawourd, *pt. s.* savoured, tasted, 4821.
- Say, *s.* silk, 4600.
- Say, *v.* say, tell, 51, 165, 1097; *ger.* 240, 253, 294; *Say*, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* say, address, 2735; *Saves*, *pr. s.* says, 5002; (*Says*), 1207; *Sayn*, *pr. pl.* tell, 2112; *Sayd*, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* said, 447; 2 *pt. s.* said-est, 246; *pt. s.* 167, 268; *pp.* 262; *Say*, *imp. s.* tell, 288.
- Saynes, *pl.* nets, 4270. *F. seine*, *L. sagenæ*.
- Sayntis, *pl.* saints, 4.
- Saynt-ware (*Sanctuary*), sanctuary, 1567. *O. F. saintuaire*.
- Sage, *s.* saying, saw, 1220; sentence, 5192; answer, 751; (*Sagh*), 3249; *Sag*, *s. pl.* sayings, words, 4478; (*Sawes*), 1795, 2322, 2774; (*Sawez*), 1818; (*Sawys*), *pl.* sayings, 2356.
- Sage, *s.* saw, 4096. See *Sawis*.
- Sage, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* saw, 475; (*Sawe*), 1635; *pt. s.* 61, 222, 419. *&c.*: (*Sawle*), 2072; (*Saw*), 1133, 2112; (*See*), 2301; (*Se*), 1796; *Sage*, *pt. pl.* saw, 1383, 4003; (*Saghen*), 2854. See *Se*.
- Saghtill (*Saghtyll*), *imp. s.* make peace, he reconciled, 865. *A. S. sahtian*.
- Sales, *pl.* scales, 3895.
- Scalid, *adj.* scaled, furnished with scales, scaly, 3865.
- Samanadri (*Samancher*), 2119.
- Sath, *s.* harm, 3915.
- Scence, *s.* incense, 4976.
- Sceptoure (*Septour*), *s.* sceptre, 3161.
- Scere, *ger.* to scare, 3865.
- Schade, *s.* shade, 3800.
- Schaft, shaft, spear, 780; shaft of a spear, 1402; *Schaftis*, rays, 4816; (*Shaftez*), shafts, 789.
- Schaftis, *pl.* chaps, jaws, 4797. *Put for* *Chaftis*. *Icel. kjaptr*, jaw.
- Schakis, *pr. s.* shakes, 551.
- Schalk, man, 469; *Schalkis* (*Shalkys*), *pl.* men, 929; (*Shalkez*), 2454.
- Schame (*Shame*), *s.* shame, 1800; disgrace, 748.
- Schamed, *pp.* ashamed, 469.
- Schap, *s.* shape, body, 4301; destiny, 180; *Schapp*, shape, 4761.
- Schapid, *pt. s.* escaped, 3004. *For* *Aschapid*.
- Schapis, *pr. s.* shapes, forms, 4026; *Schape*, *pr. s. subj.* incline, work towards, 3371; *Schapen*, *pp.* decreed, 178.
- Schard, *pp.* cut, i.e. formed, 4675. From the weak verb *scharen*, of which the *pt. t. scharde* occurs in *Sir Degrevant*, 1630. See *Halliwell*.
- Scharpe, *adj.* sharp, 602.
- Scharpid, *pp.* sharpened, 3580.
- Sharply (*Sharply*), *adv.* sharply, 1299, 1391.
- Schathill (*Schatell*), *adj.* harmful, dangerous, powerful to injure, 2592. See *Scafd* in glos. to *Allit. Poems*. *Goth. shathuls*.
- Schatird, *pt. s.* shattered, 4150. See *Alto-schatird*.
- Schauadry (*Cheualdry*), *s.* baseness, 3371. '*Shavelder*, an idle vagabond:' *Halliwell*.
- Schauyn, *pp.* shaven, 231.
- Schaw, *s.* shaw, wood, 4730, 4731; *Schawis*, *pl.* groves, thickets, 4382.
- Schawe, *ger.* to shew, 601; *Schawid*, *pp.* 4390.
- Scheld, *ger.* to shield, protect; To scheld with oure schap, to protect our forms with, 4301.
- Schell, *s.* shell, 3695; *Schellis*, *pl.* 5469.
- Schelis, *pl.* shellings, shelters, 4049. *Cf. Icel. skjál*.

- Schemerand, *pres. pt.* glittering, shimmering, 483, 5592. See Schondirhand.
- Schend (Shend), *v.* disgrace, 3371; Schende (Shende), *ger.* to destroy, 870.
- Schene, *adj.* beautiful, 5592; splendid, 483, 780; *adj. as sb.* bright one, fair maid, 4759.
- Schering (Sheryng), *s.* shearing, cutting, 2624.
- Schethe (*pl.* Shether), sheath, 802.
- Scheue, *s.* shive, splinter of a broken spear, 1402. *Better* Schiue; but see below.
- Scheuerand (Sheuerand), *pr. pt.* shivering, splintering, 789.
- Scheuyn (Sheuen), *pr. pl.* shake, 776. Cf. *cheueren*, to quiver, shiver, in the *Morte Arthure* and *Troy-book*.
- Schew, *s.* cloud, sky, 4865. Cf. Icel. *ský*, a cloud; Halliwell gives *skew* = sky, from MS. Cot. Vesp. D. 7.
- Schewe, *ger.* to show, 15; (Shewe), 2029; *v.* 255, 684; Schewis, *pr. s.* shews, 286; (Schewez), beholds, 2669; Schewys, shews, 608; (Schewez), 2919; Schewid, *pt. pl.* shewed, 4049; Schewid, *pp.* shewn, 180; Schewyd, 474; Schewid (Schewed), 1896.
- Schewere, *s.* mirror, 4854.
- Schidis (Shidez), *pl.* splinters, fragments, 789. A.S. *scide*.
- Schild (Sheld), shield, 780; (Shelde), 1402; Schildis, *pl.* shields, 3797, 5560.
- Schilde, *pr. s. imper.* shield, defend, forbid, 3521.
- Schilli (Shilly), *adv.* shrilly, loudly, 929. "Schylle, *Sonorus*;" Cath. Anglicum.
- Schilling (Schelyng), *pl.* shillings, 3174.
- Schind, *v.* disgrace, 5335. See Schend.
- Schipis, *pl.* ships, 65, 113; (Schippes), 1367; Schippis (Shippes), 1159.
- Schire, *adj.* bright, 483, 5018; sheer, mere, 4301. Icel. *skírr*.
- Schirkind, *pt. pl.* cleared, rendered bright, brightened, 4816. Cf. Icel. *skíra*, to brighten, cleanse.
- Scho, she, 241, 257, 268, 352.
- Schogs, *pr. s. refl.* shivers, shakes, trembles, 5018. See *Shog* in Halliwell.
- Schoke, *pt. s.* shook, 5018.
- Schomes (*in MS. for* Schoures), *pl.* showers, 1299.
- Schondirhand, *pres. pt., error for* Schemerand (Schemerand *in D.*), shimmering, gleaming, 780. See Schemerand.
- Schondirhed (Shenderet), *pp.* slain, 2048. *Formed as if from a verb* Schonderen, or Schenderen, frequentative of Schonden, Schenden, to disgrace; see Schend, Schont.
- Schont, *s.* jest, disgrace, 469. *Put for* schond; see *schand* in *Stratmann*.
- Schontid; see Schoutis, Schount.
- Schort, *adj.* short, 630.
- Schote (Shote), *s.* shot, i.e. stone shot from engines, 2624.
- Schote (Shote), *ger.* to shoot, 1064; Schotes (Shoton), *pr. pl.* 1391; Schot (Shoton), *pp.* shot, 1299.
- Schount, *ger.* avoid, 180. E. *shunt*.
- Schouris, *pl.* showers, hence sorrows, woes, 529. See also Schomes.
- Schoute, *s.* shout, 4730.
- Schoutis (Shotes), *pr. pl.* shout, 929; Schoutid, *pt. pl.* shouted, clamoured, 580 (but here we should rather read *schontid*, i.e. removed, shrank, lit. *shunted*). See the note, and see Schount.
- Schowid, *pp.* shoved, used force, 4759.
- Sc[h]rewe, *s.* mischievous creature, 4854; Schrewis, *pl.* ill-disposed lads, 628.
- Schrikis, *pr. pl.* shriek, 3866; (Srikes), 929.
- Schrine, *s.* shrine, 5592. See Schryne.
- Schroude, vestment, robe, 483; covering, 4301. A.S. *scrúd*.
- Schryne, *s.* shrine, 4675. See Schrine.
- Schudering (Shoderyng), *s.* crashing, clashing, lit. shuddering, 2624.

- Shuldire, *s.* shoulder, 5240; Schulder (Shulder), 1090.
 Schurrys, *pl.* sheds, 4049. Icel. *skúrr*, a shed.
 Schut (Shotyn), *pr. pl.* shoot, 1413.
 Schynes, *pr. s.* shines, 3862; (Shynes), 705.
 Sckerres, *pl.* scars, scaurs, rough rocks, 4865. Icel. *sker*.
 Skonfet, *pt. s.* discomfited, 4802.
 Scott (Shotten), *pt. pl.* shot, dashed, leapt, hurried, 2454.
 Scoghe, *s.* wood, shaw, 3915. Icel. *skógr*.
 Scolaid, *pt. s.* studied, 645. Chaucer has *scoleye*, Prol.
 Scole, school, 621, 641, 645; Scolis, *pl.* 4363, 4610.
 Scolere, scholar, 641.
 Scopid, *pt. pl.* escaped, 3915. *Put for Scapid*.
 Scopus, a look-out place, 1575. See the note.
 Score, *s.* score (twenty), 1372, 4200; ix score, one hundred and eighty, 3177.
 Scorpions, *pl.* scorpions, 3865, 4200.
 Scortis, *pr. s.* (for Schortis), grows short, wanes, 3298.
 Scoures (Showrez), *pl.* showers, 2048.
 Scriptour (Scripture), writing, 2119; Scripture (Scriptur), text, 1575.
 Scutis, *pr. pl.* project, 4865. Icel. *skúta*.
 Se, *v. see.* 250, 344; (See), 688; Se, *ger.* 356; to look upon, 1528; Se (See), 1 *pr. s.* 1998; 2 *pr. pl.* 1802; Se, *pr. pl.* 1 *p. subj.* see, 1846; (Se), *pt. s.* saw, 1590; Se, *imp. s.* 1914; (See), 702.
 Se, *s.* sea, 83.
 (Seche), *adj.* such, 1191, 1819.
 Seche, *ger.* to seek, 498; Seches (Sokes), seeks, goes, 1056. See below.
 Sechis, *pr. pl.* come, 4976. A better reading would be *as sylkis out of wellis*, like streams out of wells. *Seche* is a Southern form of *sike*, a stream, torrent.
 Sechus (Sichus), Zethus, 2215.
 Second, *adj.* second, 2303, 3660; Secunde, 3356.
 Sede, *s.* seed, 586, 1991, 4268; race, 4333; Sedis, *pl.* 3725, 4404.
 Seder, *s.* cedar; Seder-tables, tables of cedar, 5290. See Sedrisse.
 Sedill, *adj.* (probably) chaste, modest, gentle, 3937. Formed from A.S. *sidu*, good manners, lit. custom; cf. *sedefull*, modest (Ormulum); Icel. *siðugr*, well-bred; Dan. *sædelig*, modest; G. *sittsam*, modest. The suffix is A.S. *-ol*, as in *wac-ol*.
 Sedrisse, *pl.* cedars, 4973. See Seder.
 See, *s.* sea, 26, 61, 411; Sees, *pl.* 4406.
 See, *v. see*, make out, 5605; *ger.* to attend, 754*; Sees (Seys), 2 *pr. s.* seest, 3279; Sees, *pr. s.* sees, 943; perceives, 5360; See, *pr. pl.* 3208; (Seen), 1253; See, *pt. s.* saw, 657, 733*; Seis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* behold, 3878.
 See-bule, *s.* sea-bull, 4098; (*read* See-bulis, *pl.*), 4197; See-bules, *pl.* sea-bulls, sea-cows, 3846.
 Seele (Seale), *s.* seal, 2344; (Sealle), 1914.
 Seelis, *pl.* seals (sea-animals), 5471; Seeles, 3846.
 Seerties, *pl.* varieties, 4654. See the note; and see Sere, *adj.*
 Seet, *pt. s.* (for we read he, see note), set, appointed, 4654; *pp.* set, situate, 5333.
 Seete (Sete), *s.* seat (*supply in, as in the Dublin MS.*), 2995.
 Sege, siege, 1020, 1144, 1156, 3020; camp, 2442; Sege (Seige), siege, 1282, 1336.
 Sege, *s.* seat, chair, 236, 262, 536, 548, 1872, 2324; throne, 3325, 3388, 5182, 5630, 5643; Sege (Seyge), seat, throne, 3284; Segis, *pl.* thrones, 3456; seats (*Lat. sedilia*), 3337.
 (Seget), *pp.* called, 2234. From *seggen*, to say; but the right form is *seid*. The reading is probably corrupt.
 Segge, *s.* man, 111; (Sege), 1316; (Seghe), 2286; Segg (Segge), 2526; (Segh), 1626, 1633; Seg (Sege), 1580; Sege, 2251, 2390; (Segge), 2296; Seggis (Seggez),

- s. pl.* warriors, men, 1137, 2020, 3168; (Segges), 1329; (Seges), 797, 1796, 2199; (Segez), 2103; Segges (Seges), 2291; Segis, 34, 86; (Seges), 1787, 2043; (Seggez), 2137; Segge, *gen. pl.* of men; Of segge werke, of the work of men's hands, 4473.
- (Seggen), *pr. pl.* say, 1070.
- (Segh), *pt. s.* saw, 3291.
- Segid, *pp.* besieged, 4296.
- Seis (Sittes), *pr. s.* sits, 980.
- Seising, *s.* seizing, conquest, 4396.
- Seke, *v.* seek, 908, 5532; find, 1364; go, 3081; advance, 1735; Seche, seek, attack, 2020; Seke (Sech), seek to go, aim, 3295; (Sekyn), go, 3081; (Seke), *ger.* to seek, 1968; Seke (Seche), 1 *pr. s.* seek, seek to fight, advance, 2748; Sekis (Sekez), *pr. s.* goes, 924; (Sekys), goes, 2189; Sekis, 2 *pr. s.* seekest, 1759; Sekand, *pres. pt.* seeking, 154.
- Seke, *adj.* sick, ill, 856, 2003, 2017, 2548. A.S. *séoc*.
- Sekeman, *s.* sick man, 5605.
- Sekire, *adj.* certain, 5370; true, very, 4479; (Sekir), trusty, 2646; certain, sure, 2840, 2891; (Sekyr), good, sterling, genuine, 1042; Sekir (Syker), good, 763; trusty, 1202.
- Sekire (Sekerly), *adv.* assuredly, 2748.
- Sekirly, *adv.* for a certainty, 303; securely, 2401; (Sekerly), certainly, 1634.
- Seknes, *s.* sickness, 2808; Sekenes, 4440.
- Selcuth, *adj.* strange, great, 3598; valiant, 3043. A.S. *seldcûð*, strange.
- Selcuthe, *s.* wonder, marvel, 3663, 5533; Selcuthis (Selcouthbez), *pl.* wonders, 2112.
- Selcuthely, *adv.* wonderfully, 3076; strangely, 5291; (Selcouthly), wonderfully, 1022; Selcuthly, wondrously, exceedingly, 5584; (Selcouthly), wondrously, 2822.
- Selcuthest (Selcouutest), *adj. superl.* wonderfullest, famousest, 1244.
- Seldoum, *adv.* seldom, 4220.
- Sele (Sealle), *s.* seal, 1845, 1931, 2802; (Seale), 1717.
- Sele, *s.* happiness, bliss, good luck, 249, 1855, 4547; (Ceyle), prosperity, 1862. A.S. *sæl*.
- Sele (Syle), *ger.* to ceil, roof, cover, 1519.
- Sele, *perhaps an error for* Soile, i. e. soil, 2760. Or from A.S. *sele*, a house, dwelling; hence, habitation, land. (Probably corrupt.)
- Selere, *s.* cellar, apartment, 5291. *But clearly an error for* Solere, a summer-chamber. (Error of *e* for *o* is common.)
- Selfe, *adj.* same, very, 288, 498, 3388, 4895; (Self), 3229; (Seluen), 754.
- Selfe, *self*; your-selfe, yourself, you yourself, 875; Selfe, himself, 435.
- Selid, *pp.* sealed, 5100; (Selett), 1170.
- Sell (Self), *pron.* self, 2524.
- Selle; see Selly.
- Selly, *adj.* strange, marvellous, 326, 570, 1580; (Sellich), 1732; strange, i. e. great, 5575; vast, 2089; Selle, *adj.* strange, wonderful, great, 4884; vast, 89.
- Selly, *adv.* strangely, extremely, 3567.
- Selly, *s.* marvel, 2551; Sellis, *pl.* wonders, 5551.
- (Selue), *adj.* very, 1998, 741*.
- Semand, *pres. part.* seeming, 1252.
- See Seme.
- Semblance, *s.* appearance, demeanour, 5192; Sembalaunce, 4098.
- Semblant, *s.* appearance, face, aspect, 4141; (Sembland), 1627, 841*.
- Semble, *s.* assembly, army, 3978; encounter, meeting, 797; Semle (Semble), assembly, 1573.
- Semble (Assemblée), *v.* assemble, 1921; Semble, *ger.* to assemble, meet in battle, 759; Semblis, *pr. s.* attacks, 1333; (Sembles), assemblies, 2668; Semblis, *pr. s.* assemblies, 1282; Semblis (Assemblies), *pr. pl.* assemble, 2351; Sembled, *pt. s.* (Sembles, *pr. s.*), assembled, 2489; Sembled, *pt. pl.* assembled, 617; Semblid (Semblyd), *pp.* assembled, 1244, 2536;

- Sembild (Semblyd), *pp.* assembled, 2270.
- Sembling (Semblyng), *s.* assembling, 769.
- Seme, *v.* beseem, suit, 979; Semes, *pr. s.* beseems, 747, 5209; (Semys), 2000; it seems, 1349, 3196; Semys, seems, 1634; it beseems, 716; Semed, *pt. s.* seemed, 635, 1156; (Semyd), seemed, 1423; beseemed, 2779; Semed (Semyd), seemed likely, 2003; seemed, 1375; seemed (to reach), 2108; Semyd, seemed, 70, 1528.
- Seme, *ger. error for* Sene, to see, 682; the Dublin MS. has *se*.
- Semely, *adj.* comely, 238; seemly, 1281; seemly person, 2003; fair one, 5264; (Semlych), 2179; (Semelych), 2017, 3043.
- Semely, *adv.* fitly, 281; fittingly, 198; comelily, 424.
- Sample (Semble), *v.* assemble, 2796; Semple (Assemble), *ger.* to assemble, 2803.
- Semylacre (Symylacre), *s.* image, 2997; Semylacris, *pl.* images, effigies, 5637.
- Sen, *conj.* since, 179, 465, 1105, 1850, 2950, 3438, 3544, 4258; (Seth), 891; (Syon), 1864.
- Send, *v.* send, 1833; Sende, *ger.* 1868; (Send), 1254; Sendis, *pr. s.* sends, 352, 1716; (Sendes), 1711; (Sendys), 1170; Send, *pr. pl.* 1042; Sent, 2 *pt. s.* sentest, 2022; Send, *pt. s.* sent, 4234; Sent, 670; (Send), 1463; Sente, *pt. pl.* sent, 3774; Sent (Send), *pp.* 1490.
- Sendale, fine linen, 1519.
- Sene (See), *ger.* to see, 1061; *pp.* seen, 62, 1551.
- Seneour, *s.* senior, lord (*but a false reading*), 2760. See below.
- Seneours, *pl.* elders, princes, 2487; Seneiours (Senyours), *pl.* seigneurs, lords, 1614. See Seniore.
- Seneschalls (Seneschallez), *pl.* seneschals, 3400; Seneschalls (Seneschals), 2753.
- Seniore, *s.* prince, 3073; Seniour (Seneour), lord, 2634; Sen[i]oure (Senyours), *s.* ruler, lord, 3198;
- Seniours (Senyours), *pl.* lords, 1937. See Seneours.
- Seniourie (Senory), *s.* dominion, 1913, 1976.
- Sens, *s.* incense, 4184.
- Sensitife, *adj.* sensitive, 4381.
- Sensours (Censours), *pl.* censurers, 1565.
- Sent, *s.* feeling, perception, 4615.
- Sent, *s.* assent, 617. *For* Asent.
- Senture, *s.* cincture, girdle, 4963. *F. ceinture.*
- Senurie (Senyoury), *s.* lordship, 2778.
- Senyour, *s.* lord, 5600.
- (Sepe), *ger.* to sink, fail, 716. (Such is the sense required; it is evidently miswritten for *seye* = *seye*.) See *Sejes*, and cf. the reading of Ashmole MS.
- Septer, sceptre, 502; (Septour), 980; Septere (Septur), 1128; Septour, 198, 2324, 3325.
- Sepulture, *s.* sepulchre, 3143.
- Seraphens, *pl.* Seraphim, 4915.
- Seraphis (Serapys), Serapis, 1084; (Seraphys), 1101.
- Ser, sir, lord, 161, 513, 637, 771, 869, 3239; (Sir), 695, 1005; (Sire), 765; Seris, *pl.* sirs, 182; (Sirys), lords, 2491.
- Serche, *ger.* to search, 3132.
- Sercele, *s.* circle, 3736, 4373; Serclis, *pl.* 277.
- Sere, *adj.* various, separate, divers, 86, 277, 570, 1083, 1535, 1567, 1694, 1889, 2010, 2104, 2112, 2765, 3707, 4453, 4461, 4915; various, many, 2753.
- Sere-lepy, *adj.* separate, 4521; various, sundry, 4440, 5125; Serelypy, different, 605; Sere-lepis, *adj. pl.* various, 4893.
- Serenon, Ceres, 4510, 4536.
- Seriantis (Sergeantes), *pl.* serjeants, officers, 2475; Seriant (Sergeantez), serjeants, 3403.
- Serke, *s.* shirt, sark, 4963; Serkis, *pl.* 4333, 4672.
- Serop (Syroppe), syrup, drink, 2578; (Syrope), 2558; Serop (Syroppe), 2568.
- Seropis, Serapis, 4460.
- Serpentis, *pl.* serpents, 3707, 3883, 4197.

Serres, Seres, i.e. Chinese, 3956, 3958.

Sertan, *s.* certain amount, 5121.

Sertane, *adj.* certain, 3956.

Sertis, *adv.* certainly, 4371.

Seruage, *s.* service, 2778, 3528; (Seruage), 918; Seruage (Seruyce), servitude, 1937.

Seruand, *s.* servant, 2779; (Siruand), 1962; (Siruant), 1727; Seruandis (Seruandes), *pl.* servants, 2753.

Seruand, *error* for Seruise (*as* in the Dublin MS.), service, 2694.

Serue, *v.* obey, 2410; serve, suit, 1364; Seruyd, *pt. s.* served, was of service, 2374; Serued, *pp.* served, 1685, 5282.

Serue, *pr. pl. 1 p.* deserve, 4389; Serued, *pp.* earned, 3426. *Short for* Deserue.

Serues, *s.* service, 918.

Seruitute, *s.* servitude, 4349.

Sese (Sesyn), *v.* (1) seize, 1776; Sesis, *pr. s.* seizes, lays hold of, 5283; (Seses), takes, 1452; (Sesez), seizes, 2115; Sesid, *pt. s.* put, placed, 5637; Sesynd, seized, 1142; Sesid, *pt. pl.* seized, took, 4119; Sesid, *pp.* taken, 2386, 5403; (Sesynd), 1358; Sesynd, 2380; Sese, *ger.* (2) to seize, i.e. to give possession (of), put in possession (of), 5220; (Seyse), *ger.* to put in possession, 2566, 2633; Sesid, 1 *pt. s.* put in (thy) possession, 2578; Sesid, *pt. s.* put (him) in possession (of), 4210; Sese, *pp.* seized, put into possession, delivered up, 5313; Sesid, seised, possessed, put in possession, 3161; Sesid, seised, possessed, 3558; Sesid (Sesynd), *pp.* seized, taken possession of, 1449.

Sesis (Seses), 2 *pr. s.* ceasest, 2736; Sesis, *pr. s.* ceases, 546, 4377; stops, 4683; Sesid (Sessyd), *pt. pl.* ceased, 2045; Sesis, *imp. pl.* cease, 182.

Seson, season, 881; (Seasun), 2895. Seseonde (Sesund), *pp.* seasoned, prepared, 2923.

Sesse (Seys), *pr. s.* sees, 2532.

Sesyng, *s.* seizing, seizure, 3490.

Set (Sett), *v.* set, 2796; Sett, *v.* 1766; *ger.* to set, to be set, 1365; to set, 1158; (Set), 2296; Sett, 1 *pr. s.* 1802; Settis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* buildest, 5403; Settis, *pr. s.* sets, 3049; (Settes), 1431, 1452; Setis (Settez), sets, dashes, 1221; Set, sets, 1859; Settis (Settes), pitches, 1143; Settis (Settes) vpon, begins, 2135; Settis owt, *pr. s.* thrusts out, 841*; Set, *pt. s.* 1 *p.*; Set agayns, attacked, 2082; Sett, *pt. s.* established, 4305; ordered, 4951; Set, *pt. pl.* set, 1139; (Sett), appointed, 759; Sett, *pp.* set, placed, 281, 605, 1291; appointed, 179, 443, 522, 5412; established, 1649; rendered, 3911; Sett, seated, 238, 502, 536; set against, opposed to, 1316; Settis (Settes), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* set, 2142.

Sete, *s.* seat, 238, 482, 979, 2962, 3392; throne (Lat. *solium*), 2676; seat, habitation, dwelling, 1749. And see Sette.

Sete, *adj.* suitable, fit, 249; (hence) short, 546; Sete quile (Sete qwyly), suitable time, 2356. From A.S. *sittan*, to sit, M.E. *sitten*, to suit. See *sete* in Stratmann.

Seten (Settynt), 1 *pr. pl.* sit, 1850.

Seteqwile (Sete-while), *s.* fitting while, convenient while, i.e. short time, 3081. See *Sete, adj.*

Sethen, *adv.* afterwards, 282, 424, 495, 631, 2325.

Sethen (Syne), *conj.* since, 2292.

Settes, *s.* set time, 5553.

Sett, *s.* setting, 2045.

Sette, *s.* seat, habitation, 4952. (*Error for* Sete.) See *Sete*.

Sette, *s.* set (either company or those set or put), 3284.

Settynge, *s.* setting, 5508.

Seten, *num.* seven; "the seven" = the seven deadly sins, 4293; (Seuen), 1361. See *Seuyn*.

Seuent (Seuynt), *adj.* seventh, 2342. [Seuenteen], seventeen, 795*.

Seuyn, *num.* seven, 44; (Seuen), 1528, 1677. See *Seuen*.

Seuynt (Seuent), *adj.* seventh, 2157; (Seuente), 3388.

Seuynthe, *num.* seventy, 634.

- Seuyntene (Seuentene), seventeen, 2105.
 Seuyrd, *pt. s.* was separated, 579.
 Sewe, *ger.* to follow, 2105, 3534; *v.* pursue, go on, 2840; make suit, sue, 5161; imitate, 2515; Sewis, *pr. s.* follows, 5507; Sewes, 3091; (Sewes), 2502; (Sewyd), *pp.* followed, been used to, 795*; Sewe, *imp. s.* follow, 686.
 Sewe, *v.* sew together, 1925 (the Dublin MS. *has* Insew); Sewys, *pr. s.* sews up, 423.
 Sewes, *pl.* pottages, 4275. See *Sew* in Halliwell.
 Sex, six, 5470.
 Sexes, Xerxes, 2361, 3558; (Serxes), 3136; (Seryxes), 3097; Saxis, 5600; (Sixes), 2483; (Serexies), 2994.
 Sext, *ord.* sixth, 3346, 3384.
 Sextene, sixteen, 3821.
 Sexti (Sexty), sixty, 1042; (Sexty), 806*.
 Seyis (Sejes), *pr. s.* goes, 1573.
 (Seysyd), *pp.* seized; Seysyd to hym, seized for himself, 3187. See *Sese*.
 Sejes, *pr. s.* sinks, falls, 4333; passes, goes, 2182; Sejes, *pr. pl.* sink, fall, drop, 2043, 2057, 3641; Seje, 4844; Sezen, *pass.* go, 1481; Sejes, *pr. pl.* (with to), approach, advance to (the city), 1388. A.S. *ságan*, to cause to sink, confused with *sigan*, to sink, fall. Note also *Seye*, to go, *Sezen*, arrived, in Gloss. to Gawayn and the Grene Knight, and *Seie* in the Troy-book.
 Sejis, 2 *fut. s.* shalt see, 5022; *pr. s.* sees, 3053; Sejes, heeds, 3291; perceives, 5583; Sejes, heeds, 4478; *lit.* sees, but used with the sense of seems, 4704.
 Sejt, *s.* sight, 5537.
 Shaftis (Shaftez), *pl.* shafts, rays, 1544.
 Shalkis (Salkez), *pl.* men, 1391; (Shalkez), 3267*.
 (Shall), *pr. s.* shall, 809*.
 (Shamesly), *adv.* shamefully, 739*.
 Shapid (Échapyn, 1 *pr. pl.*), 1 *pt. pl.* escaped, 1944.
 Shapis, *pr. s.* forms, shapes, 113; Shap, 2 *pr. pl.* intend, 2143; Shapen (Shapyn), *pp.* ordained, 2260; (Shapyn), ordained, 3267*; Shapid (Shapyd), *pp.* decreed, 809.
 (Sharpe), *adj.* sharp, 957.
 Sharpid (Sharped), *pp.* sharpened, 1890.
 Shaufs, *pr. s.* shaves, 121.
 Shaw, *ger.* to shew, 321; Shawis, *pr. pl.* shew (themselves), 3429.
 (She), she, 948.
 Sheet, 1767*. See *Ouer-sheet* and *Shote*.
 (Shelde), *pr. s. subj.* shield, 1472.
 Shemerand, *pres. part.* shimmering, 1544.
 (Shendes), 2 *pr. s.* spoilest, 1767*; (Shendit), *pp.* spoilt, destroyed, 2236.
 (Shendship), *s.* disgrace, 3267*.
 Shethe (Sheth), *s.* sheath, 2639.
 Shewe, *v.* shew, 1827; *ger.* 1666; Shewis (Shewys), *pr. s.* shews, 928; Shewid, *pt. pl.* 1704.
 Shildis (Shelde), *pl.* shields, 787.
 (Shillynges), *pl.* shillings, 807*.
 Shipis (Shippez), *pl.* ships, 2454.
 Shire, *adj.* bright, sheer, clear, pure, 113, 1544, 2454, 4675; (Shire), 807*, 2048.
 Sho, *pron.* she, 3928; (Sho), 733*; Shoo, 5145.
 (Shote), *s.* shot; Shote ouer-sheet, overshoot thy shot, 1767*. Read ouer-sheet.
 (Shote), *ger.* shoot, cast, 807*; (Shotyn), *pt. pl.* shot, 3041; (Shott), *pp.* 1544.
 Shount, *ger.* to escape, 2143. E. *shunt*.
 Showte, *s.* shout, 1392.
 Shrewe, *s.* mischievous person, 1706.
 Shuldirs (Shulders), *pl.* shouldera, 812; (Shulders), 731*; (Shuldres), 773*.
 Sibbe, *adj.* akin, 4492. See *Syb*.
 Sibbire, *adj. comp.* nearer of kin, 586.
 Siche, *adj.* such, 83, 1889; Sich, 1076.
 Sichim (Sychim), Sichem, 1759.
 Sichomures, *pl.* sycamores, 4973.

- Sicistrus (Sicistreu*s* or Sicisteru*s*), *proper name*, 2234.
- Side, *s.* side, direction, 1221, 1520, 5021; Sidis, *pl.* sides, 773, 1424, 2215, 4672; parts, regions, borders, 1921, 2115; Of *ba* sidis, in those quarters, 3867. See Syde.
- Side (Syde), *adj.* long, 1925.
- Sidlings, *adv.* sidelong, 2057.
- Sighinges, *pl.* sighs, 5052.
- Sighis, *pr. s.* sighs, 5584.
- Signes, *pl.* wonders, 4935. See Sygnes.
- Sike, *adj.* such, 126, 3607; (Sike), 868, 1015; Sike, such (men), 946; such (things), 4272; (Suche), 2580; (Slyke), 2047.
- Sike, *v.* sigh, lament, 2313.
- Silis, *pr. s.* turns, goes, 111, 161, 335, 5264; (Sylez), goes, 2922; comes, 1087; Siles, *pr. pl.* subside, drop, fall, 3043; Silis, go, 161. See *Sile* in the Troy-book; and see Sylis.
- Silke, *s.* silk, 4016; (Sylke), 2401.
- Silkin, *adj.* silken, 5295; Silkyn, 236; Silken (Sylkyn), 1520.
- Silloure, *s.* canopy, 4915. See *Sylure* in Prompt. Parv.; and see Sylours.
- Siluer, silver, 276, 1571, 1588, 1889; Siluyre, 129.
- Silueryn (Syluer), *adj.* of silver, silvern, 1565.
- Similitude, *s.* parable, 2735; likeness, similitude, 1627, 2024, 4229.
- Simpill, *adj.* simple, 4664; ignorant, 4404. See Sympill.
- Simplenes, *s.* simplicity, 4040, 4051.
- Sinagoges (*sing.* Sinagoge), *pl.* synagogues, 1481. See Synagoge.
- Sindid, *pp.* burnt, 2236. Cf. A.S. *sinder*, cinder.
- Siphagoyne (Prynphagoyne), *place-name*, 2759.
- Sipris, *s.* cypress-wood, 5290; Sipirs, 4453; Sipresses, *pl.* cypresses, 4973. See Sypirs.
- Sipris, Cyprus, 4600.
- Siraphis, Serapis, 200; Sirapis, 5409; Sirraphis, 161.
- Sire, *s.* sire, master, lord, 303, 311, 1131; sir, 363, 517; father, 1786; (Syre), father, lord, sire, 1126, 2251; (Sir), 1004; (Syr), 691, 1720; Siris, *pl.* sirs, lords, 3436; (Syres), 2268; Sirs (Sirres), 1185; Sirres (Sirs), 2286. See Syre.
- Sire soile, fatherland, soil of thy sire, 5021.
- Sireland (Surry), Syrian land, Syria, 1614.
- Sirie (Surry), Syria, 1137.
- Siriens (Surriens), *pl.* Syrians, 1696; (Sariens), 1447.
- Size, *s.* size, 26.
- Sit (Sitte), *v.* sit, 1855. See Sitt.
- Sithe, *s.* time, 4204. A.S. *síð*.
- Sithe, *s.* scythe, 3971.
- Sithen, *conj.* since, p. 282, l. 92.
- Sithid, *adj.* scythed, armed with scythes, 3598, 3821.
- Sithin, *adv.* afterwards, then, 5385; (Syne), 1537.
- Sitiles (Siteles), City-less, without a city or home, 2286.
- Sitt, *v.* sit, 592; (Sitte), dwell, 1677; Sittis (Sittes), 2 *pr. s.* sittest, 1872; Sittis, *pr. s.* sits, 161; 1 *pr. s.* sit, 1724; Sitt, *pr. pl.* sit, remain, be left, 3807. See Sit.
- Sizis (Sighez), *pr. s.* sighs, 3076.
- Sizt, *s.* sight, 1252, 2051, 2270; glance, look, 4855; (Sight), 967, 1551.
- Skapis, *pr. s.* escapes, 642; Skapid (Scapett), *pt. s.* escaped, 2992.
- Skarlet, *adj.* scarlet, 467.
- Skars, *adj.* scarce, short, 5040. (For *fra* read *for*.)
- Skatheles (Schatheles), *adj.* unharmed, 2992.
- Skathely, *adv.* with difficulty, with injury, 642.
- Skathill, *adj.* harmful, 4802. Cf. Goth. *skathuls*, harmful.
- Skautand, *pres. pt.* pushing, darting violently, 4200. Halliwell gives *scaut*, to push violently; cf. Icel. *skota*, to shove, allied to E. *shoot*.
- Skelp, *v.* beat, 1924. See Jamieson.
- Skere, *s.* scare, fright, 4731.
- Skerrid, *pt. s.* scared away, 4802.
- Skewys, *pl.* skies, 561.
- Skifte, *v.* change, die (lit. shift), 5040; Skifus, *pr. s.* shifts, changes, 4622. See Skyftis.
- Skilfull, *adj.* skilful, 645.

- Skill (Skely), *s.* reason, 1575.
 Skinnies, *pl.* skins, hides, 4114.
 Skire (Skyre), *adj.* sheer, bright, 1824. See Shire, Skyre.
 Skirmand, *pres. part.* screaming, 5157.
 Skirtis (Skirtez), *pl.* skirts, 1533.
 Skitly, *adv.* suddenly, swiftly, 5040. Cf. M.E. *skeet*, swift.
 Sklendire, *adj.* slender, 4923.
 Skorge (Scourge), *s.* scourge, 1924.
 Skorne, *s.* scorn, 641.
 Skowis, *pl.* woods, lit. shaws, 5157. Icel. *skógr*.
 Skrike, *s.* screech, shriek, 4731; Skrikes, *pl.* 5157.
 Skyftis, *pr. s.* changes, 467. See Skifte.
 Skynnes, *pl.* skins, 5084. See Skinnies.
 Skyp, *pr. s. subj.* skip aside, leap aside, 642.
 Skyre, *adj.* bright, sheer, 467; (Skyr), *pure*, 2119. See Skire, Shire.
 Slaa, *ger.* to slay, 5412; *v.* 4403, 5330; Sla, *ger.* 2566; Sla (Slaye), *v.* 1766; Slaes, *pr. s.* slays, 3883, 4841; Sla, 2 *pr. pl.* 4547; Slaa (Sla), 3198; Slayn, *pp.* slain, 722, 1329, 2057; Slay (Slayn), 1264; Slayne, 691, 2089; Slayne *vp.*, *pp.* wholly slain, 1449; Slane, 4733, 4844, 5575.
 Slaare (Slaer), slayer, murderer, 967.
 Slade (Slode, Slayde), *pt. s.* slid, passed quickly, 2870, 2962; (Slayde), 2962.
 Slakis (Aslakes), *pr. s.* ceases, 857; Slakid, *pt. pl.* slackened, ceased, 3050.
 Slane; see Slaa.
 Slauyn, *s. a* (pilgrim's) mantle, 1925. See *Slauyn* in Halliwell.
 Slawth, *s.* sloth, 4293.
 (Slayde), *pt. s.* slid, 2962; see Slade.
 Slayn, Slayne; see Slaa.
 Slaytere, *s.* slaughter, 3049; Slayter (Slaughtier), death, 708; Slaytir, *s.* deadly effect, lit. slaughter, 4855. (The glance of the basilisk caused death.)
 Sleely, *adv.* slily, cautiously, 5174.
 Slee, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* slay, 4161. See Slaa.
 (Sleghtly), *adv.* quickly, 2057. Cf. Icel. *sléttr*, smooth; *slött*, smoothly.
 (Slengers), *pl.* slingers, 2219.
 Slepe, *s.* sleep, 351, 375, 419, 1084, 1512; Slep, 344.
 Slepe, 1 *pt. s.* slept, was asleep, 475; Slepit, *pt. s.* slept, was sleeping, 4849.
 Sletis, *pr. s.* hastens, 380. Cf. A.S. *slætan*, to hunt.
 (Slew), *pt. pl.* slew, 2043.
 Slgly (Shyllghly, *sic*), *adv.* slily, 2962. See Slgly.
 Slezt, *s.* sleight, cunning contrivance, 4857; (Sleght), 2634; Slezt (Sleght), sleight, skill, 1022; stratagem, 1364; Slezt (Sleghtes, *pl.*), skill, 2374; (Slyght), trick, 2566; Sleztis, *pl.* sleights, arts, 38, 334; (Sleghtez), stratagems, 1445.
 Slide, *pp.* slidden, gone away, 4456. See Slade.
 Slike, *adj.* such, 11, 38, 62, 399, 539, &c.; like, 4229; (Slyke), 1752; (Sike), 1742; (Siche), 1516; Slik, such, 67, 69, &c.; (Slyke), 1641; (Suche), 2389; All slike, just such, 3084.
 Slingis (Slengers), *pl.* slings, 2219.
 Slipe, *v.* slip away, pass away, come to naught, 179.
 Slire, *wrongly for* Skire, sheer, pure, 2119. The Dublin MS. has *skyr*. See Skire.
 Slizly, *adv.* slily, silently, 2870.
 Slowefull, *adj.* slothful, p. 279, l. 16.
 Slowmand, *pres. part.* slumbering, 5174. "*Sloum*, to slumber, *Yorkshire*;" Halliwell.
 Sloze (Slogh), *pt. s.* slew, 1431; Sloze, *pt. pl.* slew, 3904, 4113, 5567; (Slogh), 3421; (Slew), slaughtered, 1139; (Sloghen), 3213; Sloze, *pt. pl.* 1 *p. subj.* (if we) were to slay, 5351.
 Slughe, *s.* slough, outer skin, 4456; Slouis, *pl.* sloughs, skins, 5085. See the note.
 (Slyghtly), *adv.* quickly, 2870.
 (Slyke), such-like, such, 2219. See Slike.

- Slymand, *pres. pt. as adj.* slimy, claylike, 4456.
- Small; In small, in small bits, 1309.
- Smallire, *adj. comp.* smaller, 1334.
- Smaragdane, *s.* emerald, smaragdus, 3856; [S]maragadane, 3342; Smaragdans, *pl.* emeralds, 3678; Smaragdens, 5424; Smaragdins, 5272; Smaragdins, 3670, 5643.
- Smert, *adj.* rough, 1309.
- Smert, *adv.* smartly, promptly, 5515.
- Smeten, *pp.* beaten, 3678; *hence*, stuck, decked, 5272; (Smytyn), smitten, 1309. See Smyte.
- Smeth, *adj.* smooth, 3341, 3670, 3678.
- Smethe, *v.* smith, forge, 5515.
- Smithis, *pl.* smiths, 5515.
- Smyles (Smylez), *pr. s.* smiles, 2461; (Smylls), 2725.
- (Smyte), *v.* smite, 843; Smytis (Smytez), *pr. s.* smites, 1222; Smyten, *pp.* lit. smitten, hammered out, made, 3342; (are) smitten, 3082; Smytten, smitten, beaten, 5424. See Smeten.
- Smythis, *pl.* smiths, 5424.
- Snakis, *pl.* snakes, 3794.
- Snape, *s.* (probably) winter-pasture, patch of grass, 1560. Cf. Icel. *snöp*, 'scanty grass for sheep to nibble at in snow-covered fields'; Vigfusson. Hence, in this passage, it must mean a patch of grass for winter-pasture.
- Snapiis (Snappers), *pr. s.* stumbles, 847. See note, p. 294.
- Snart, *adj.* severe, 3633. See Gloss. to Gawayne and the Grene Knight. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *snarre*, severe.
- Snatirs, *pr. s.* staggers, stumbles, 3995. See Snapirs.
- Snaw, *s.* snow, 4925, 5482; Snawe, 4165; Snawe (Snaw), 1560, 1756.
- Snayles, *gen.* snail's, 4095.
- Snaypid, *pt. s.* disconcerted, marred, 3995; nipped, caught suddenly, checked, severely wounded, 3633. North. E. *sneap*, to check, chide.
- Snelle, *adv.* quickly, swiftly, 3995. A.S. *snel*, quick.
- Snowte, *s.* snout, trunk, 3633.
- Snyppand (Snappand), *pres. part.* dazzling, 1560. See Jamieson.
- Snyth, *adj.* (probably) smooth, 4095. The lit. sense is 'cut', from Icel. *sníða*, to cut. Cf. prov. E. *snod*, smooth; Sc. *sned*, to cut, prune.
- Snyzes, *pr. s.* issues, creeps (out), 4095. Cf. Icel. *snigill*, a snail.
- So, *adv.* so, 14, 69, 140; And so, i. e. and so forth, and the like, 2551, 4184; And soo, and the like, 3821. (A curious phrase.)
- Sobband, *pres. part.* sobbing, 3249.
- Sobire, *adj.* sober, 4266.
- Sobirly, *adv.* soberly, 4643; discreetly, 5340; calmly, 2356.
- Sobirte, sobriety, 4040.
- Socure (Socour), *s.* succour, 959, 1463, 2252.
- Socurs (Socours), *pr. s.* succours, aids, 2834.
- Sodanly, *adv.* suddenly, 1052, 3391; Soda[n]ly, 2862; (Sodenly), 1626; (Sodandly), 1859.
- (Sofre), *v.* suffer, 2435.
- Soft, *adv.* softly, 2401.
- Softe, *adj.* soft, 2000; Soft (Softe), 2024; (Softe), 2071.
- Softly, *adv.* at ease, 482; gently, 548; in an under tone, 2952; Softely (Softly), gently, 698.
- (Soght), *error for* Sothe, i. e. true, 1806. See the Ashmole MS.
- Soiet (Sugett), *s.* subject, 2682. (*Soiet* = *sojet*.)
- Soile, *s.* soil, country, 1749, 3728; ground, 3284; Soile (Soyle), 3161.
- Solas (Solace), solace, comfort, 1490.
- Solast, *pt. s.* solaced, comforted, 2072.
- Solayne, *adj.* solitary, single, 3805. Hence E. *sullen*.
- Solempnite, solemnity, pomp, 1645.
- Solers, *pl.* upper-rooms, 3684. See *Soler* in Halliwell.
- Solp. *v.* pollute, 4292. "*Sulpen*, polluere;" Stratmann.
- Some, some, 568; (Som), 774*; a certain, 755*; Some tyme, once, 1132.
- (Some), *adj.* same, 2063.
- Somere, *s.* summer, 3959; (Somer), 2895.
- Somere-hall, summer-hall, 5264; (Seimer-hall), 2922.

- Somir-bathis, *pl.* summer-baths, 4343.
- Somme, *s.* sum, number, 83; (Some), 1889; host, 1026; (Soume), number, 2089, 2189; Some, *s.* sum, number, 62; host, 924; (Somme), host, 1144; (Some), *s.* sum, quantity (*but an error for fone*), 3180. (Somme), 1 *pr. s.* (*the same as Samme*), collect, 3168.
- (Somned), *pt. s.* gathered, 2219. See Sammen.
- Son, *s.* son, 572, 584, 618, 627; (Sone), 686; (Sonn), 697; (Sonne), 863; Sonnes, *pl.* sons, 4403; Sons, 5091; Biche sons, sons of a bitch, *or read* Biche sous, bitch-sows, 5482.
- Son, *s.* sun, 34, 281, 427, 543, 556; sun-rise, 2303; Sonn (Son), 1723; Sone (Son), 1518; Sonne, 442, 736, 1842; Son, *gen.* sun's, 62; Vndire son, under the sun, 4300; With vp sun, with sun up, with sunrise, 4067. Cf. *sundown*.
- Sond, *adj.* sound, safe, 5245.
- Sonde, *s.* sound health, soundness, security, 5616. See above, and see *sunde* in Stratmann.
- Sonders, *pr. s.* breaks asunder, 3067; Sondres, breaks up, 4377; Sondre, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* plough, lit. sunder, sever, 4268; Sondird (Sunderd), *pt. pl.* broke asunder, 3003.
- Sondire; In-sondire, asunder, 4150.
- Sone, *adv.* soon, 59, 116, 222, 266, 362, 400; Son, 730; Sone as, as soon as, 394.
- Sonere, *adv. comp.* sooner, 4295.
- Son-sett, *s.* sun-set, 3050.
- Son-tree, *s.* sun-tree, 5008, 5018.
- Soo, *adv.* so, 4772; thus, 179, 3911; so, i. e. the like, 3821 (cf. lines 2551, 4184). See So.
- Sope, *s.* sup. small quantity, 3805. See *Sope* in Halliwell.
- Soper, *s.* supper, 2923.
- Sophistri, *s.* sophistry, 4364.
- Sopp, *s.* company, body, troop, 2351. See *Soppe* in Halliwell. Cf. *leel. soppr*, a ball.
- (Sorastes), name, 916.
- Sorely, *adv.* surely, 165, 688.
- Sorement, *for* Serement, oath, 1464.
- Soroze, sorrow, 249, 529; (Sorow), 2051; trouble, 2157; Sorowe (Sorow), *s.* pitiful creature, 1753; Sorozes (Sorowys), *pl.* sorrows, 1447; Sorozis (Sorowez), *pl.* sorry fellows, 1735.
- Soroze, *v.* lament; Fand hire soroze, found her lamenting, 536; Sorozes, *pr. s.* grieves, 4051; (Sorowez), 703; Sorowis (Sorows), 1288; Sorowis, *pr. s.* grows dark, lit. grows sad, 4141; Soruzes, *imp. pl.* sorrow ye, 182.
- Sorsery, sorcery, 38; Sorsry, 5291.
- Sorte, *s.* sort, quality; in sorte (of sorte), according to their rank, 1555.
- Sotellest, *adj. superl.* subtlest, 34; Sotelest, most skilful, 2373; Sotelest (Sotellest), most delicate, most choice, 2923.
- Sotellte, subtilty, skill, 258.
- Sothe, *adj.* true, 327, 1806; (Soth), 722.
- Sothe, *s.* truth, 165, 261, 463, 5412; (Sothe), 729; (Soght), 2286; For soth, of a truth, 99.
- Sothely, *adv.* verily, truly, 688; (Sothly), 691, 1640; Sothly, 5008.
- Sott, *s.* sot, fool, 1776, 4704; (Sot), 1862; Sottes, *pl.* foolish men, 2232; Sottis, fools, 4417; (Sottez), foolish ones, *hence*, innocents, children, 1602.
- Sott, *ger.* to besot, stultify; To sot with the pepill, to befool the people with, 4364.
- Souerayn, *s.* sovereign, king, lord, 154; (Soueren), 1818; (Souerand), 1512; Souerane, 2774; (Soueren), 801*; Souerayne (Souerend), *gen.* lord's, 1813; (Souerand), 2914.
- Souerayne (Souerane), *adj.* supreme, 1724; Souereayn, 4210.
- Soueraynest (Soueranest), *adj. superl.* chiefest, 1913; Soueraynest (Soueranest), most supreme, 3097.
- Soueraynete (Souerente), *s.* lordship, dominion, 1859.
- Soueraynly (Souerandly), *adv.* chiefly, 1288.
- (Souerente), *error for* Soueren, sovereign, lord, 2774.

- Soukand, *pres. part.* sucking, 4197.
 Soume, *s.* number, 1202; company, 1244; host, 1282; Soume (Sumé), sum, 1787; (Some), 763; Soumme (Soume), 1968. See Somme, Sowme.
 Sounde (Sunde), *adj.* sound, unwounded, 2232.
 Sounde, *adv.* safely, 5532.
 (Sounderytt), *pt. s.* broke asunder, 3067.
 Soundire; In soundire (sonder), asunder, 1416.
 Sourly, *adv.* savourily, 4381. (*Error for Saourly.*)
 Soupe, *v.* sup, 2915.
 Soure, *adv.* bitterly (lit. sourly), 2313. See *l.* 5348; and see Sowe.
 Soute, *s.* under part (?); In soute, beneath (?), 4880. Such seems to be the sense of this doubtful word. Cf. *soute* in Littré, where it is explained that it represents Lat. *subtus*.
 Sowe, *v. refl.* gall, vex, grieve; in the *phr.* Soure suld him sowe = bitterly shall it vex him, 2313, 5348. See *Sow* in Jamieson.
 Sowme, *s.* sum, number, 2532, 3914, 4285, 4799; sum (of men), host, 2796; (Some), sum, number, 3019; (Soume), 2020, 2082; Sowme (Soumez, *pl.*), sum of men, army, 2620; Sowmes, *pl.* quantities, 4433.
 Sowme (Soume), *v.* number, 1986.
 Sowping, *s.* supping, 4439.
 Soyle, soil, 1252; (Sole), 1724.
 Soynd (Soned), *pt. s.* excused, 1464. See *essoin* in Supplement to my Etym. Dict.
 Soyte (Sote), *s.* suit, livery, 1580; (Sott), 1550; In soyte, in his suit (of robes), or among his suite (of men), 3336; Of a soyte, in a suit, alike, 3684.
 Sozt, *pt. s.* sought, went, got up, 2962; went, 3049; (Soght), went, 1137, 1694; Sozt him (Soght on), *pt. s.* advanced, 3207; Sozt, *pt. pl.* sought, 163; Sozt, *pp.* arrived, 3003.
 Space, *s.* space of time, 630, 971.
 Spacly (Sarply, for Spacly), *adv.* speedily, quickly, 2975. See Spakly.
 Spakid, *pt. s. refl.* soothed herself, was quieted, 237. Cf. Icel. *spakr*, Dan. *spag*, gentle, quiet.
 Spakly, *adv.* swiftly, 786. See Gloss. to P. Plowman; and see Spacly.
 Spare, *v.* spare, 364; Spared, *pt. s.* spared, refrained, 5320.
 Sparis (Sparrys), *pr. s.* starts, darts, 2975. See *spar*, to box, in my Etym. Dict.
 Sparke, *s.* spark, 2975.
 Sparles, *adj.* plentiful, lit. spare-less, 5467. The opposite of *sparing*, i. e. scanty.
 Sparth, *s.* halberd, battle-ax, 1403; Sparrethis (Sparthys), *pl.* 2458. Icel. *sparða*.
 Speche, speech, 234, 237, 739, 897; story, 1884.
 Speches (Spekes), *pr. s.* speaks, 834.
 Specke (Speke), *s.* speck, 743.
 Spede, *v.* speed, prosper, 2178; Spedis (Spedes), *pr. s.* speeds, 931; pushes on, puts forth, 1226; (Spedes), *refl.* 3033; Sped, *pt. s.* hastened on, 1403; *refl.* made speed, 630.
 Spedely, *adv.* speedily, 1419.
 Spedfull, *adv.* speedy, short, 971.
 Spek, *ger.* to speak, 5320; Spekis (Spekes), *pr. s.* 733; (Spekys), 1088, 2185.
 Speke, *s.* speech, 3318.
 Spell, *s.* word, question, discourse, 3840.
 Spell, *ger.* to spell, 630; Spellis, *pr. s.* spells, tells, 4691; Spellis, *pr. pl.* say proverbially, 4397.
 Spelonk, *s.* cave, den, cavern, 5392. See Gloss. to P. Plowman.
 Spend, *ger.* to destroy, consume, kill, 2458; Spends, *pr. pl.* spend, give, 5467.
 Spene, *s.* space (lit. span), 4162. See *Spenne* in Glos. to Gawayne.
 Spere, spear, 651, 1218, 1226, 1318; (Sper), 793; Speris (Speres), *pl.* 786; (Sperez), 790.
 (Sperete), *s.* spirit, 2178.
 Spetid, *pt. s.* speared, pierced with a spear, 3649.

- Speris, *pr. s.* shuts, 5545; shuts up, 5494; *pr. pl.* shut, 1466.
- Sperpolid, *pt. pl.* dispersed, scattered, 4162. See *Sparpil* in Halliwell.
- Spetous, *adj.* spiteful, contemptuous, 4567; Spetous (Spitous), angry, hence terrible, destructive, 2458.
- Spices, *pl.* spices, 4724, 5427.
- Spill, *ger.* to kill, 3190; (Spyll), 2663; Spillis (Spyllez), *pr. s.* kills, 1318; Spillen, *pr. pl.* spill, shed, 3060; Spill, die, 3798; Spille, *subj. pr. s.* 1 *p.* kill, 5346; Spilt (Spiltten), *pt. pl.* spilt, scattered, 1419; Spilt, *pp.* overthrown, 4162.
- Spire, *ger.* to ask, enquire, 2178; Spirid, *pt. s.* asked, 3840; Spirid, 237. A.S. *spyrian*.
- Spirris (Sparres), *pr. s.* spurs, 1226.
- Spise, *v.* despise, 3533; Spises (Dispysys), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* despisest, 2746; Spised, *pt. s.* despised, 4567.
- Spitid, *pt. s.* despised, 2346. *Short for* Spitid.
- Spittis (Spittes), *pr. s.* spits, 745.
- Spittyng (Spyttyng), *s.* spitting, 743.
- Splene, *s.* spleen, 5054.
- Spoilis, *pr. s.* divests, unclothes, 4962; Spoiles, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* despoil, rob, 4412.
- Spokin (Spokyn), *pp.* spoken, 745; Spoken, 243, 298.
- Spon[ges], *pl.* sponges, 5467.
- Sporne, *v.* spurn, contend, 3533.
- Spouse, *s.* wife, 2677, 3315, 5217.
- Sprede, *v.* spread, 1884; (Spredes), *pr. s.* 1514.
- Sprengis (Sprynges), *pr. s.* springs, 931.
- Sprent, *pp.* sprinkled, 743. *Pp.* of M.E. *sprengen*.
- (Sprenten), *pr. pl.* fly out, fly forward, 786. *Sprenten*, prosilire; Stratmann.
- Sprete, *s.* spirit, 3318, 4779, 5000, 5320; (Spitit), 971. See *Sprite*.
- Spring, *v.* spring, 1884; Springis, *pr. s.* springs, 1318; arises, 2044; rises, 1505; Springe, *pr. pl.* grow up, 4769; Sprong, *pt. s.* has spread abroad, 5111; arose, 2044; Sprongen, *pp.*; Of sprengen, sprung from, 4213.
- Sprite, *s.* spirit, mind, 5054; Sprites, spirits, 58, 5392.
- Sprotis (Sprotes), *pl.* splinters, 790. Icel. *sproti*, twig, stick, rod.
- Sprygaldis (Springaltez), *pl.* catapults, engines for shooting heavy missiles, 1419. Miswritten for *spryngaldis*. See *springal* in Halliwell.
- Spurnes, *pr. s.* thrusts, 786; Spurned, *pt. pl.* kicked, 3898.
- Spyennes, *pr. s. refl.* goes swiftly, 3033. Cf. "to go at a *spinning* pace."
- Spyse (Spysyn), *pr. pl.* despise, 2931. *Short for* Despyse.
- Spyte (Spite), spite, 745. *Short for* Despite.
- (Stable), *s.* stable, 755*, 758*.
- Stable (Stabyll), *adj.* stable, 3259.
- Stable (Stabill), *ger.* to make stable, to build up firmly, 1367; *v.* fix, 1091; Stablis, *pr. s.* settles, 4631.
- Stad, *pp.* placed, 465; beset, 499. Icel. *stadhr*, placed.
- (Staddes with), *pr. s.* ponders, resolves, settles within himself, 2960. Cf. Icel. *steðja*, to fix, appoint, resolve; *pp.* *staddr*. But probably a false reading.
- Staffe, *s.* round or ring of a ladder, 1438; Stafe (Staffe), staff of a sling, 1444.
- Staffull, *adj.* quite full, 1543, 4897.
- Stagis, *pl.* floors, stories of a building, 5265; rows of windows above one another, 4897.
- Staire (Stare), *s.* stair, i. e. ladder, 1438.
- Staire, *adj.* steep, sheer, 4828. A Yorkshireman told me that the ascent of Ingleborough from the West was 'a *stair* clim.' And so it is. See *stayre* in Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Stairis, *pr. s.* ascends, 4834.
- (Stakez), *pr. s.* staggers, 845. See below.
- Stakirs, *pr. s.* staggers, 845. Icel. *stadra*, to stagger.
- Stallid, *pt. pl.* placed, 195; Stall, *imp. pl.* 1 *p.* let us install, place, 589.

- Stallis, *pl.* stalls, choir-seats, 4543. (Still common.)
- Stalworthe, *adj.* stalwart, strong, 3017; Stalword, 3937.
- Stalworthly, *adv.* stalwartly, valiantly, 1149; (Stalwartly), 2625; (Stalwortly), stoutly, 745*.
- Stamping (Stampyng), *s.* stamping, 781.
- Stampis, *pr. s.* stamps, pounds, 409.
- Stand-dede, *for* Stan-dede, *adj.* stone-dead, dead as a stone, 4845.
- Stand-quile, *s.* instant; *prob. an error for* Stond-while = Stound-while, the period of an hour, short-time, 4186.
- Stande, *v.* stand, 636, 1013; Stand, 1322; Standis (Standez), *pr. s.* stands, 861; Stand (Standes), *pr. s. subj.* stands, lasts, 2255; Standis (Standes), *pr. pl.* stand, 2165; Standen, *pp.* stood, 5585; Stand, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* stand, be, 5186.
- Stane, stone, 192, 263, 1127, 1136; Stanes, *pl.* stones, 1300, 1415, 2227; Stanys, 284, 566; Stanes, stones, gems, 483, 804, 1534, 3334; (Stanez), gems, 1074, 1662.
- Stanecast, *s.* stonecast, stone's throw, 3614.
- Staned, *adj.* built with stones, 4352.
- Stank, *s.* pool; Vp þe stank, upon the pool, beside the pool, 3918.
- Staplis, *pl.* staples, 1081.
- Starid, *pt. s.* stared, 263; Stared, *pt. pl.* glittered, 3796; Starand, *part. pres.* shining, gleaming, 804, 1534, 2880, 3615, 5286, 5396. See Prompt. Parv. See Sterind.
- (Startyn), *pr. pl.* leap, 778.
- State, *s.* state, kind, 5646.
- Statour, stature, 667; Statoure (Stature), 1702.
- Statute, *s.* statue, 5641. Lat. *statua*.
- Staues, *pl.* rounds, steps of a ladder, 2481.
- Staunke, *s.* stank, tank, reservoir, pool, 3854, 3923.
- Stayrand, *pres. part.* climbing, mounting, hence, advancing, 3923. "Staree, to go up and down as it were over steps and stairs; Devon."; Halliwell. And see Staire.
- Stedd, *v.* place, 3977. From *stede*, sb.
- Stede, place, 195, 465, 589, 1069, 1091, 1574; stead, position of responsibility, 1013; stead, 5585; In stede, in good stead, 2165; Stedis (Stedes), *pl.* places, 1495; Steds (Stedes), 2884.
- Stede, *s.* steed, horse, 930, 1229, 5594; Stedis, *pl.* 1251; (Stedes), 781, 785.
- Stedill, *v.* stand still, 3977. Cf. prov. E. *steddle*, to make steady (Halliwell).
- Stee (Stegh), *s.* ladder, 2481. "Stee, a ladder, North;" Halliwell.
- Stekis, *pr. s.* fastens, 5485; (Stekys), sticks, is fastened, 683; Steke, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* shut, close, 2139. See *steken* in Stratmann.
- Stele, *s.* steel, 788, 3374; armour, 1378.
- Stele-bowe, *s.* stirrup, 778.
- Stele-graunyn, *adj.* steel-engraven, 284.
- Stelid, *adj.* steeled, hardened; Wele-stelid, well hardened, 3897.
- Stelis, *pr. s.* gives stealthily, 5385; (Stelez), goes quietly, 2638.
- Stem, *v.* aim, attempt, 2480. Icel. *stefna*, *stemna*, to aim at, &c.
- Stemes (Stempmys), *pr. s.* speaks (to himself), 2960; Stemes, 5301. In l. 5301 read—'þan stemes he with, þe stoute king;' i.e. then he, the stout king, considers with himself. Icel. *stefna*, *stemma*, to summon, A.S. *stefnian*; A.S. *stefn*, *stemn*, the voice. So in Gawayn and the Grene Knight, *stemmed* = considered, pondered, not stopped, as given in the Glossary; i.e. it is allied to Icel. *stefna*, not to Icel. *stemma*, to obstruct.
- Step, 4845. Perhaps *To step* = in a steep direction downwards, i.e. headlong. See Stepe.
- Stepe, *adj.* steep, 4828.
- Steppis (Steppys), *pr. s.* steps, 2481; Stepis (Steppyn, *for which MS. wrongly* Spetty), *pr. pl.* step, climb, 1437.
- Stere (Stirre), *v.* stir, 2809; Steris, *pr. s.* stirs, moves, 5075;

- animates, encourages, 5046 ; (Sternyn), *pr. pl. refl.* bestir themselves, 2625 ; Sterid, *pt. pl. refl.* bestirred themselves, 2625 ; Sterid, *pp.* stirred, excited, 4256.
- Stere, *ger.* to manage, control, 5363.
- Stereys, *pl.* stirrups, 3615. See Sterops.
- Sterind, *pres. part.* shining, gleaming, 5385. See Starid.
- Stering, *s.* stirring, 781.
- (Sterne), *adj.* stern, strong, 1131. See Sternyn.
- Sterne, *s.* star, 678, 683, 703 ; Sternes, *pl.* 127, 282, 604, &c. ; Sternys, 1993 ; (Sternez), 3224. Icel. *stjarna*.
- Sternes, *pl.* the stars (but prob. an error for *stours*, i. e. battles), 3495. See above.
- (Sternly), *adv.* sternly, 840*.
- (Sterops), *pl.* stirrups, 840* ; (Steropes), 792*.
- Sterres, *pl.* stars, 4372. See Sterne.
- Sertes, *pr. s.* starts, springs, 778 ; Stert, *pt. s.* started, p. 283, l. 140.
- Sternyn, *adj.* stern, fierce, 611, 4256 ; (Sterne), 1386.
- Steuyn, *s.* voice, 252, 1131 ; (Stevyn), 2254 ; Steynyn, 611, 1831 ; noise, 1386 ; (Steuyn), noise, 1251.
- Stezid, *pt. pl.* mounted, 2194.
- Sticking (Stykkyn), *s.* stabbing, 2623.
- Sties (Styes), *pl.* ladders, 1437. See Stee.
- Stiffe, *adj.* harsh, strong, 611, 1149, 2139 ; valiant, 4758 ; (Styffe), stern, 2298 ; stubborn, 1321 ; Stife (Styffe), *adj.* unyielding, 1015 ; (Styff), strong, 2589, 3374.
- Stifly (Styfly), *adv.* strongly, 1081.
- Stiggis, *pr. s.* starts, feels abashed, 5301. Cf. Icel. *stygga*, to shun ; used reflexively, to become shy, to start.
- (Stighillys), *pr. s.* appoints, assigns, 755*. Put for Stightillys ; see *stytle* in Gloss. to Sir Gawayn, and see Stigtill.
- Stike (Steke). *s.* stick, bit, piece, fragment, 1311.
- Stike (Steke). *v.* stick fast, 1438.
- Stikill, *adj.* piercing (?), 4186.
- Stile, *s.* style, title, 2693 ; (Style), 2754 (where supply *in*, as in the Dublin MS.).
- Still, *adj.* still, 263.
- Still (Stilly), *adv.* silently, 2032.
- Stilly (Stylly), *adv.* stilly, silently, 1136.
- Stingis, *pr. s.* vexes, 667.
- Stinkand, *pres. part.* stinking, 4838.
- Stinke, *s.* stink, 4840.
- Stint, *pp.* stayed, stopped, 4186. See Styntis.
- Stire (Stere), *v.* stir, 1091 ; Stirs (Stirrez), *pr. s. refl.* moves, 1327.
- Stith, *adj.* stiff, strong, 1069, 5461 ; Stithe, severe, 2050 ; stout, 1327 ; great, loud, 1251 ; strong, well-defended, 4352.
- Stithest, *adj. superl.* strongest, 5265.
- Stithli (Styfly), *adv.* severely, 2429.
- Stize, *pt. s.* ascended, 3467.
- Stigt, *pp.* set (lit. disposed), 4897 ; set, stuck, 5385 ; (Stight), set, 1543 ; (Styght), with *in*, disposed, ordered, hence written, 2693. A.S. *stihtan*, to dispose. See below.
- Stithed, *pt. pl.* set firmly, 195. Put for Stigtied. See above.
- Stigtill, *ger.* to order, govern, 589 ; Stigtill, *pr. s. imper.* may (He) dispose of, 3467 ; Stigtild, *pp.* set, placed, 5396 ; made, 5265 ; (Stizlet), established, 2298.
- Stode, *pt. s.* stood, 1136 ; (Stodyn), *pt. pl.* 2271.
- Stody (Study), *v.* take thought, 2480 ; Stody, 2 *pr. pl.* study, gaze intently, 683.
- Stody, study, thought, 263.
- Stoken, *pp.* stuck, fastened, 1081, 2201. Pp. of *steken*.
- Stolis (Stolez), *pl.* stoles, 1581.
- Stollen, *pp.* stolen, 465.
- Stomake, *s.* stomach, 4436.
- Stomling (Stomblyng), *s.* stumbling, 2623.
- Stonaid, *pt. s.* astonished, dismayed, 2589 ; Stonayd, astonished, 611 ; (Stoned), *pt. pl.* were astonished, 2589.
- Stonde, *s.* hour, 2831 ; time, 1468 ; short time, 655, 3470 ; (Stounde),

- short time, 2625; (Stound), moment, 1327.
- Stondis (Stoundis), *pl.* pains, 2809. "*Stound*, to ache, to smart with pain, *North*;" Halliwell.
- Stonen (Stonon), *adj.* stone, made of stone, 1574.
- (Stones), *pl.* gems, 1889.
- (Stonndes), *pr. s.* stands, 681.
- Stoppis, *pr. s.* stops, walls up, 5496; stops up, 4073; (Stoppys), stops, 970.
- Storbis, *pr. s.* disturbs, troubles, 667; Storbet, *pp.* disturbed, troubled, 3605. *Short for* Distorbis, Distorbet.
- Store, *adj.* strong, great, large, huge, 1367, 1534, 2165, 3937; (Store), 745*; (Sture), 1741, 2050, 3017; Store ben, *for* Store-baned, i. e. strong of bone (the Dublin MS. has Sture-baned), 1702. Icel. *stórr*.
- Store, *s.* story, 3854, 4828.
- Store, 1 *pr. pl.* (we) store up, 4352.
- Story, *s.* story, tale, 2050.
- Stott, *s.* ox, 4754; Stottis, *pl.* oxen, 4267. See Halliwell.
- Stounde, *s.* short time, 3962, 5198; moment, 252, 453; Stound, 2408, 5063; Stounde (Stound), 1311; Stoundis, *pl.* times, occasions, 3622. A.S. *stund*.
- Stourbed (Stourblett), *pp.* disturbed, troubled, 934. See Storbis, Strublid.
- Stoure, *s.* agitation, 5046; conflict, battle, tumult of battle, 452, 499, 1251, 1332, 1415, 2050, 2832; Stoure (Stowre), shock of battle, 1015; Stoure, troop, host, battalion, army, 785, 3017, 3501, 3977; Stour, host, 3923; army, 3597, 5075; Stouris, *pl.* battles, 5585; Stoures, *pl.* armies, 5485. O.F. *estour*.
- Stoure, *s.* post (to support the tester above), 5646 (where for wall read was); (Stoure), the round of a ladder. "*Stour*, the round of a ladder;" Halliwell. Icel. *staurr*, a pole, post.
- Stoute, *adj.* stout, strong, 195, 284; (Stout), bold, 2429.
- Stoutly, *adv.* proudly, 1495; deeply, 279.
- Stra, *s.* the value of a straw, 2165.
- Strad (Strode), *pt. s.* strode; Strad vp himself, mounted, 2880.
- Straite, *adj.* narrow, 5485.
- Strake (Stroke), *pt. s.* struck (up), resounded, 1386 (in the Dublin MS. read *vp* for *vpon*); Strakid (Stroken), *pp.* plighted, lit. struck, 3192.
- (Strakez), *pr. s.* strokes, 784*.
- Strakid (Straked), *pt. pl.* (they) sounded, blew, 1386. "*Stroke*, a blast of a horn, a term formerly used by hunters;" Halliwell. Hence the verb.
- Strakis (Strakez), *pl.* strokes, blows, 1015.
- Strama (Struma), *proper name*, 2884.
- Strande, *s.* shore, 3066; Strandis, *pl.* banks, 3814; Strands, banks, 5461; Strandis, *pl.* streams, 4202, 5280, 5507. The latter sense is not uncommon. See Jamieson.
- (Stranes owt), *pr. s.* stretches out, 840*. E. *strain*. See Strenys.
- Strange, *adj.* strong, 1149, 3017; Strang, 2381.
- (Strange), *adj.* strange, 826*.
- Strangild, *pp.* strangled, 4758, 5577.
- Strasageras (Strasagera), Strasagoras, 2298; Strasagera, 2429; Strasagirs (Strasagera), 2381.
- Straungers, *pl.* strangers, 2688.
- Strayned, *pp.* constrained, 3549.
- Straȝt (Straughten), *pt. pl.* stretched, radiated, 1543; Straȝt, *pp.* stretched, raised, elevated, 3077.
- Straȝtill, *adj.* (probably) far-stretching, i. e. long, lengthy, 4838.
- Streke, *adv.* straight, 3854.
- Streken, *pp.* stricken, 3077; set, 3224.
- Strekiland, *pres. part.* sprinkling (it); *but the reading* Strenklett, i. e. sprinkled, *is far better*; 1534. See Strenkild.
- Strekis (Straughtit), *pr. s.* stretches, 1953; Strekis, *pr. pl.* extend, 5063.
- Streme, *s.* stream, 1432, 1953, 1995, 2032; Stremes, *pl.* streams, 1056; (Stremez), 1049; Stremys, 75.
- Stremed, *pt. pl.* gleamed, 5286;

- Stremand, *pres. part.* streaming, flashing; *Ai* stremand, continually, flashing, 3797.
- Strenkild, *pp.* sprinkled, thickly covered, 3676; Strenkyllyd, 3224. See *Strenkle* in Halliwell.
- Strenth, strength, 662, 1702; Strenthe (Strenth), 1741, 1983, 2139, 2194; Stre[n]the (Strenthe), strength, 2468; (Strenthez, *pl.*), 1013, 1824; Strenthe, castle, stronghold, fort, 5265; (Strenth), 1367; Strenth, 1311; Strenthis, *pl.* forces, powers, 3296, 3716; (Strenthes), 1270; Strenthis, forts, 4352.
- Strenthid, *pt. s.* strengthened, 499. (Strenys), *pr. s.* strains, stretches out, 792*. See *Stranes*, *Streyn*.
- Stretis (Stretes), *pl.* streets, 1475, 1495, 1514.
- Streyn (Strene), *v.* strain, exert, 2809; Streyned (Strenyd), *pp.* constrained, compelled, 3121. See Halliwell.
- Strejt, *adj.* straight; Strejt on, straight upon, near, 1574.
- Strejt, *adv.* straight, 452, 3066; (Streht), 1321, 1995; Strejt, straightway, 4758; (Strejt *vp.*), 792*.
- Strejt him (Straght hym), *pt. s.* directed himself, went, goes, 3206.
- Strejtis, *pr. s.* marches, 2032.
- Stridis, *pr. s.* strides, 778; (Striden), *pr. pl.* 778.
- Strike, *ger.* to strike, 843; Strikis, *pr. s.* strikes, 452, 804; clashes, 785; (Strikez), strikes, 1321; hits, 1069; (Striken), *pr. pl.* strike, 804; clash, 785; Striken (Stryken), *pp.* stricken, i.e. advanced in years, 1001.
- Strids, *pl.* sons, children, 5104. *A.S. strýd*, progeny.
- (Strippyng), *s.* stripping, uncasing, 781.
- (Strode), *pt. pl.* strode, went, 2194.
- Stroubid, *pp.* troubled (lit. disturbed), 3818; (Stourbed), 2855. See *Stourbed*.
- Strawid, *pp.* strewn, 4543.
- Stroyes, *pr. s.* destroys, 4840; Stroyed (Stroyde), *pp.* wasted, 1917.
- Strubled (Stroblet), *pp.* troubled, 856. Cf. *Storbis*.
- Struma, *prop. name of a river*, 1953, 1995, 2032, 2064, 3206.
- Stryfe, 1 *pr. pl. subj.* strive, 5356. See *Stryue*.
- Strykis, *pr. pl.* strike; go swiftly; Strykis *vp.* dart aloft, 1415; (Strykyn), *pp.* stricken, set, 3224; advanced, gone, 826*.
- Stryue, *ger.* to strive, contend, 3758, 4006.
- Stryuys, *pl.* strivings, conflicts, 4251.
- Stude, *pt. s.* stood, 4754; (Stode), stood, i.e. was, 2408; Stude, *pt. pl.* stood, 279.
- Studis (Stodes), *pr. s.* studies, considers, 2960. (Stuffe), *s.* stuff, gear, 2980*.
- Stullis, 2 *pr. pl.* stuff full, 4436.
- Stullis, *pl.* great pieces, 4136. "*Stull*, luncheon, great piece of bread, cheese, or other eatable; *Esser*." —Halliwell.
- Stumbils (Stombles), *pr. s.* stumbles, 845.
- Sturbid, *pp.* disturbed, troubled, 513, 1341. See *Stourbed*.
- Sturte, *s.* impetuosity, swift attack, 3758.
- Sturten, *adj.* impetuous, 3758; quarrelsome, 4257.
- Stuyues, *pr. s.* is astounded, is amazed, 2960. Cf. "*stoin'd*, astounded;" Halliwell.
- Stye, *s.* path, 4834; Styes, *pl.* 5063. (Styff), *adj.* strong, 1327; severe, 2050; (Styff), strong, great, 745*, 1251; Styffe, strong, 1069, 2165.
- Styutis, *pr. s.* stops, ceases, 5046; (Styutyd), *pt. s.* halted, 826*. See *Stint*.
- Stythe, *adj.* brave, stout, bold, 3605. *A.S. stýð*.
- Subiet (Seget), *s.* subject, 1727; Subiectis, *pl.* subjects, 4245. (The fourth *subiectis* should be *subiect*; see the note to l. 4246, p. 311.)
- Successoure, *s.* successor, 4286.
- Suche, such, 711; (Such), 720.
- Sudaly (Sodonly), suddenly, 3198.

- Sued, *pt. pl.* followed, 3598.
 Suffice, *pr. s. subj.* may suffice, 3196.
 Sufficiant, *s.* sufficient, 4396.
 Suffire (*Suffre*), *v.* suffer, endure, 1011; Suffire, allow (me), put up with (me), 3465; Suffire (*Suffre*), *ger.* to endure, hold out, 2698; Suffirs, *pr. s.* suffers, undergoes, 512, 530; (Suffred), 1146; (Sufers), 2052; Suffirs, 2 *pr. s.* sufferest, permittest (to live), 4298; Suffir (*Sofre*), *pr. s. subj.* undergo, 1858; Suffire (*Suffre*), 2 *pr. s. subj.* suffer, 1974; Sufird, *pt. s.* suffered, 5554; Sufird (*Suffred*), *pt. pl.* suffered, 1699; Suffirand, *pres. part.* suffering, temperate, 4266; Sufird (*Sofferd*), *pp.* 2160; (Sufferd), permitted, 892.
 Sugēt (*Sogett*), *s.* subject, 863, 918; Suggets, *pl.* subjects, men under control, 4664.
 Sugēt (*Sogett*), *adj.* subject, 908.
 Suld, 1 *pt. s.* should, 273, 664; *pt. s.* 100, 118, 119, &c.; Sulde (*Suld*), 1515; Suld, *pt. pl.* 141, 618, 908; Suld (*Suldyn*), should do, 1696.
 Sullepe, *adj.* sole, 4305. *Put for* Surlepe.
 Sun, some, 2, 6, 8, 11, 12, &c.; *dat.* to some, 4; (Some), 1330; (Som), 1413; Summe (*Soume*), 1696.
 Sumquat (*Somqwatt*), somewhat, 679.
 Sum-quile, *adv.* formerly, 3136; Sun-quyle (*Some-while*), some-while, 2994.
 Sum time; In sum (*som*) time, at one time, 2361.
 (Sun), sun, 1870.
 Sundres; Be sundres, separately, severally, 3909.
 Superfluyte, superfluity, 4277.
 Suppose, *v.* suppose, 577; Suppose, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* suppose, 585; (Suppose), 892, 1640; Suppose, 1806; Supposez, 2 *pr. s.* dost suppose, 842*; Supposis (*Supposes*), expectest, 1776; (Supposye), 1 *pr. pl.* 1855; Suposid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* formed my opinion, 2578; Supposed (*Supposyd*), *pt. s.* 2073; Supposand, *part. pres.* supposing, 204.
 Supowell, *s.* support, extraneous aid, 4300. See *Suppoelle* in Halliwell.
 Suppe, *pr. s. subj.* 1 *p.* sup, drink, 3805.
 Supplied, *pt. pl.* supplicated, 163.
 Supposez, 2 *pr. s.* supposest, 842*. See *Supose*.
 Surprise (*Sussprise*), *v.* surprise, take by surprise, 2390.
 Surcote, *s.* surcoat, 4339.
 Sure, *adj.* sure, 2010.
 Sure, *adv.* bitterly (lit. sourly), 5348. See *Sowe*.
 (Sured), *pp.* promised, 2633.
 Surely, *adv.* surely, 475, 1833; (Seurly), 1986.
 Surement, *s.* assurance, 2748.
 Surfete, *s.* surfeit, 4439; Surfet, surfeiting, gluttony, 4277, 4293.
 Surgens, *pl.* surgeons, 3132.
 Surmontes, *pr. pl.* surpass, 4449; Surmountid (*Sirmountyd*), *pt. s.* overcame, 2361.
 Surples, *pl.* surplices, 1550.
 Surquidry, *s.* pride, arrogance, presumption, 4293; Surquetry, 4254, 4561; (Surqidry), 2736; (Surquydry), 3295.
 Surre, Syria, 5666; Surry, 2760; Surre (*Surry*), 3143.
 Sustenance (*error for* Substance, as in the Dublin MS.), 3391.
 Sustene, *v.* sustain, 3805; Sustenes, *pr. s.* sustains, 2834; Sustaynes, *pr. pl.* sustain, 1749.
 Sustinance, *s.* sustenance, 4269.
 Susys, Susa, 2847, 2866, 3073; Susys, 3512; (Susys), 3207; Susses, 3109.
 Sute, *s.* snit, set, same kind, 2929.
 Suth (*Sothe*); With a suth, truly, 1846.
 Suthely (*Sothly*), *adv.* truly, 1962.
 Swa, *adv.* so, 346. See *Sa*.
 Swalow, *s.* swallow, throat, 4507.
 Swanes, *pl.* swans, 4276.
 Swappis (*Swappys*), *pr. s.* strikes, smites, 957; (Swappez), 1232; (Swappyn), *pr. pl.* cast, 1299.
 Sware, *v.* answer, 5007; Swaris, *pr. s.* answers, 2183, 2523; Swares, 674; Swaris (*Sweres*), 2273; (Swerez), 1621; (Answers), 2798; Swaris, *pr. s.* 2 *p.*

- answerest, 5331; Sware, *pr. pl.* answer, 2656; Sware, *pr. s. subj.* may answer, should answer, 750; Sward, *pt. pl.* answered, 4193; Sward, 2069.
- Sware, *s.* answer, 1184, 4999, 5019, 760*.
- (Sware), *pt. pl.* swore, declared, 2069.
- Swart, *adj.* swarthy, 3969.
- Swayfe (Swaffe), *s.* blow, 806. Cf. E. *sway*. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Sweling, *s.* squealing, 4112. Here *sw* = *sq*.
- Swelle, *ger.* to swell, fill up, 4276; Swellis (Swellez), *pr. s.* swells, 2701.
- Swellis, *pr. s.* burns up, consumes (said of fire), 4181. A.S. *swellan*. Read *swilis*.
- Swelme, *s.* heat, glow, fury, 750. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Sweltid, *pp.* rendered faint, 3790. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Swemyle, *pr. pl.* feel dizzy or faint (with sorrow), 156. Cf. prov. E. *swem*, to swoon; Icel. *svinnra*, to be giddy.
- Swepe, signification (lit. sweep), 248.
- Swerd (Swerde), sword, 957, 1232; Swerde, 1325, 1402; Swerdis, *pl.* swords, 3193; (Swerdes), 801; (Swerdez), 1399.
- Swere, *ger.* to swear, 1186; Swere, 1 *pr. s.* swear, 754; call to witness, 3124; Sweren, *pr. pl.* swear, swear obedience, 2104.
- Swete, *adj.* sweet, 362; good, 5325.
- Swete, sweet one, darling, 2826.
- Swete, *s.* sweat, great heat, 3790; blood, life, 3068. Cf. A.S. *swát*, sweat, blood.
- Swete, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* sweat, 5325.
- Swettir, *adj. comp.* sweeter, 3855.
- Swenyn, *s.* dream, 248, 325, 353, 417, 1351. A.S. *swafn*.
- Swey, *pr. pl.* sway, force, 3970; Sweyd, *pt. pl.* swayed, fell, 2057.
- Swegand, *pres. part.* resounding, 5019. A.S. *swegun*.
- Swiere, *s.* esquire, personage (used with reference to Bachelus), 4507; Swiers, *pl.* esquires, 156, 4108; Swiars (Swyers), 1184.
- Swiftly, *adv.* quickly, 1184, 1851; (Swyfly), 2069.
- Swike, *v.* deceive, 4999. A.S. *swican*.
- Swilke, *adj.* such, 584.
- Swire, *s.* throat, gullet, 4507. A.S. *swira*. See Swyre.
- Swollen, *pp.* swollen, 3790.
- (Swone), *s.* swoon, 734*.
- Swouned, *pt. pl.* swooned, 156.
- Swoze, *s.* sound, soughing noise, 5019. A.S. *swógan*, verb.
- Swozing, *s.* soughing, 4385. See above.
- Swyftnes, swiftness, hastiness, 1017.
- Swym, *v.* swim, 5505; Swymme, *ger.* 3841.
- Swyne, *pl.* swine, 4108. See note.
- Swyng, *s.* swing, 1232.
- Swyngis (Swynggez), *pr. s.* swings, 957; (Swynnages), 806.
- Swyre (Shwyre), *s.* neck, 779. See Swire.
- Swyth, *adv.* quickly, 248, 508, 1410, 1453, 2069, 3128, 4108; soon, 1304, 2310; (Swyth), greatly, 1265; Swythe, *adv.* greatly, 1261; soon, 1393; immediately, 1117; (Swithe), quickly, 761, 1717; (Swith), speedily, soon, 998, 1618; strongly, mightily, 806; (Swyth), quickly, 706; Swyth (Swythe), 1379.
- (Swythly), *adv.* quickly, 1184.
- Syb, *adj.* near akin; Sib men, kinsmen, 617; Sybb, akin, 397. See Sibbe.
- Sychim, *prop. name*, 89.
- Sycile (Secyll), Sicily, 2487. See Sysyll.
- Syde, *s.* side, part, 1052, 1200, 1348, 3978; quarter, 86; coast, 1142; Syd (Sydes), 2892; Sydis, *s. pl.* sides, 348. See Side.
- Sydoyne (Sydone), Sidon, 1142.
- Syeze, *ger.* to sink, fail, 716. A.S. *sigan*.
- Signes, *s. pl.* signs, 32, 250, 570; (Signes), ensigns, banners, 946. See Signes.
- Signyfys, *pr. s.* signifies, 443; Signified, *pt. s.* signified, 515.
- Syke, such, 1968.
- Sylis, *pr. s.* goes, 698; Sylez, *pr. pl.*

- go, 1555; (Syland), *pres. pt.* dropping, 733*; going, 698. See Silis. "*Sile*, to sink, drop, flow;" Halliwell. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Sylours (Silours), *pl.* ceilings, canopies, 1519. See Silloure.
- Sylus, *error for* Nylus, the Nile, 2598. See the note.
- Symolacries, *pl.* similitudes, images, figures, 4460; Symolacres, statues, 3685.
- Sympill, *adj.* simple, innocent, humble, 3083; Sympull, weak, 3550. See Simpill.
- Syn, *conj.* since, seeing that, 1874; (Sen), 1619.
- Synagoge, synagogue, temple, 1058; Synagog (Sinagoge), 2182. See Sinagoges.
- Synagyns, *pl.* monsters (?), alluding to the griffins, 5452. The true meaning is quite uncertain.
- Synches (Lat. Thinthisus), 5401.
- Syne, *adv.* since, 1008; after that, afterwards, 900, 1119, 1137, 1633, 2578; next, 4886, 806*; afterwards, continually, 4217.
- Synfull, *adj.* sinful, 3663.
- Synge, *v.* singe, burn, 5206.
- Synnars, *pl.* sinners, 4417.
- Synned, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* thou sinnedst, 875.
- Synnys, *pl.* sins, 4403.
- Sypirs, *s.* cypress (wood), 3684. See Sipris.
- Syraphis, Serapis, 167, 183; Syraphas (Serapys), 1097.
- Syre, sire, lord, 1219; sir, 214; father, 701; Syre, *gen. sing.* sire's, father's, 754; Syris, *pl.* chiefs, 790; lords, 4432. See Sire.
- Syre, Syria, 89. See Surre.
- Syres, *a country*, 5666.
- Sysed, *pt. s.* lit. assised, hence constituted, 4654. See note, p. 312.
- Sysyll, Sicily, 5666. See Sycile.
- Syte, *s.* grief, 182; sorrow, pain, 546. Cf. Icel. *sát*, grief; *sýla*, to wail.
- Sythe-bladis, *pl.* scythe-blades, 3023.
- Sythen (MS. cythen), *adv.* afterwards, 411.
- Sythis, *pl.* scythes, 3058. See Sithe.
- Sythis, *pl.* times; Oft sythis (Oft sythez), oftentimes, 1203.
- Sytt, *ger.* to sit, 627; to sit down, 235; to dwell, 4024; Syttis, *pr. s.* sits, 47, 479, 977; (Syttes), 902; Syttis, *pr. s. impers.* it befits, 3359, 5119; Sytt (Sitt), *pr. s. subj. impers.* befit, become, 862; Syttand, *pres. pt.* sitting, 548. See Sitt.
- Taa; þe taa = þet aa, that one, the one, 3978. See Tane.
- Taa, *s.* toe, 3365. (The Dublin MS. has *toes*.)
- Tabernacle. *s.* shrine, 3688 (see the note); tabernacle, 5593, 5645.
- Table, table, 833, 1830; tablet, 274; Tablis (Tables), *pl.* tables, 853; tablets, 639; (Tabels), tablets, 1568.
- Taburs (Taburnes), *pl.* tabors, 1385.
- Tacchis, *pr. s.* fixes, sets, 5065; Taches, *pr. pl.* pierce, 2622; Tachid, *pp.* attached, fastened, 319; Tacchid, *pp.* fixed, fastened, set, 5573; set, 4970; (Tachyng), *pres. pt.* piercing, 2622. Cf. Prov. E. *tack*, a slight blow; to attack, to fasten to (Halliwell); and see Glos. to Troy-book.
- Tafeta (Taffata), taffety, a sort of thin silk, 1515.
- Tailis, *pl.* tails, 5438.
- Taite, *s.* joy, exultation, 1208; play, game, lit. joy, 3979. Icel. *teiti*, joy, play.
- Take, *ger.* to take, 1197, 2149; *v.* 360, 1812; Takis, *pr. s.* takes, 55, 353, 410; (Takes), 713, 749, 1829; captures, 2148; gives, 3154; (Takez), takes, 1142, 1181; Takis (Takys), gives, 2749; delivers, 2026; (Takez vpp), *pr. pl.* take up, plight, 760; Taken (Token), 1 *pt. pl.* took, received, 2091; Take (Takes), *imp. pl.* seize, 1922.
- Taken (Token), *s.* token; To taken, as a token, by way of indication, 2109; Takens, *pl.* tokens, signs, 283, 5608; peculiarities, 4448.
- Takyng, *s.* taking, capture, 2123; (Takyng), taking, 1344; Takyng, 1835.

- Tald, 1 *pt. s.* told (cf., 3829; *pt. s.* 200, 353, 2123; *pt. pl.* 906; *pp.* 190, 272, 693.
- Tale, *s.* tale, reckoning, number, 3022, 4879, 5127; account, 609; tale, story, 1448, 1886, 5175; tale (or perhaps account), 888; Be tale, in number, by tale, 2213; Talis, *pl.* tales, 190; accounts, 283.
- Talent, for Talentes (Talentes), *pl.* talents, 1666; talents, large sums of money, 3154.
- Talkis, *pr. s.* talks, says, 267, 660; (Talkes), 752; (Talkys), 1997.
- Taloghid, *pp.* tallowed, 4208.
- Talons, *pl.* talons, 5454.
- Tamed (Tamyd), *pt. pl.* pierced, lit. broached, 2622. *Short for* Atamed.
- Tane, *pp.* taken, 2582, 3491; oppressed, 3825; gone, 1289; be-taken, 463.
- Tane, *adj.* the one (*in plur.* be tane), 606, 4069. See Taa.
- Tangid, *pp.* stung, 3637, 3886, 4798. Cf. prov. E. *tanging-nadder* (lit. stinging adder), the large dragon-fly.
- Tarbyn, *Lat.* Thirbei, 5500.
- Tare (Taure), mount Taurus, 2109.
- Targetis (Targettes), *pl.* shields, 2622.
- Tarrayn (Tartaren), *short for* Tartaryn, made of Tartary stuff, 1547. See below.
- Tars, *s.* silk of Tartary, 1515, 4673. *Also called* Tartaryn.
- Tartary, 5665.
- Tartaryns, *pl.* Tartars, 5484.
- Tary, *v.* delay, 1448; Taryed, *pt. s. subj.* would delay, 1261.
- Tas, *pr. s.* takes, 4886; (Takys), 1644, 2970; (Takes), 1666; Tas, *imp. pl.* go, betake you, 3719. See Take.
- Tasse, Tharsus (?), 5676.
- Tastis, *pr. s.* tastes, 1997; (Tastez), 2074.
- Tawde, *s.* tawney-colour, dark dye, 4335. For *tawne* with excrement *d*; cf. O.F. *tawne*, *tawne*, tawney.
- Tebes, *pl.* (Tebettes), Thebans, 2427.
- Tebet (Tebe), Thebes, 2198; Tebis (Tebet), *gen.* of Thebes, 2228.
- Teche, *v.* teach, tell, 165; Teches, *pr. s.* 1171.
- Teche, *adj.* touchy, quarrelsome, ready to quarrel (*hence*, formidable), 663. See *Techy*, *Tetchy* in Halliwell.
- Techis, *pl.* habits, 4390; (Teches), 787*; Tecches, 4640; faults, crimes, 4561; Land-techis, habits of our country, 4248. M.E. *tache*.
- Teching, *s.* teaching, 37.
- Teldid (Tyldet), *pp.* built, 1159; (Telde), 2174. From *teld*, sb., below.
- Teldis, *pl.* tents, 552. A.S. *teld*.
- Tell, *v.* tell, 248, 524; (Telle), 1112; Tell, *ger.* to tell, 67, 283, 515; to count, 1988; (Telle), 1164; (Telle), 1 *pr. s.* I tell, 1965; Tellis, 2 *pr. s.* tellest, 245, 366, 729; Tellis, *pr. s.* tells, 17, 35, 203, 278, 432, 437; informs us, 144; (Telles), 1613; (Tellez), 885; (Tellys), 699; Telles, *pr. pl.* tell, 903; Tellis, 1485; Tell, 296; Telle, *imp. s.* 5412; Tell, 463; Tellis, *imp. pl.* 896.
- Telle, *v.* till, cultivate, 4581.
- Telomew, Ptolemy, 4964, 5165, 5171, 5195, 5199.
- Tembret), *pp.* built, lit. timbered, 2110.
- Temes, *pl.* instructions, rules of action, lit. themes, 2519.
- Temperoure, *s.* temper, due order, 543.
- Tempire, *v.* temper, refresh, 3466.
- Temple, *s.* temple, 1478, 1499; (Tempyli), 1060; Templis, *pl.* temples, 522.
- Ten, ten, 649.
- Tend, *pp. as adj.* kindled, flaming, 4179. See *tenden* in Strutmann.
- Tende, *ger.* to attend, to wait upon, 4534.
- Tendire, *adj.* tender, gentle, careful, 3317.
- Tene, *s.* shame, vexation, 3637, 5321; affliction, 3519; distress, 2315; sorrow, grief, 150; sorrow, loss, 3000; harm, 1978, 4405; enmity, 2427; anger, 853.
- Tene, *ger.* to damage, 2228; Tened

- (Tenyd), *pt. s.* harmed, vexed, 1212; Tened (Tenyd), *pt. pl.* were angry, 2193; Tene, *imp. s. refl.* be angry, vex thyself, 2309.
- Tenefull, *adj.* sorrowful, miserable, sad, 3149; harmful, 3907.
- Tenelis (Tynkyl), *pr. pl.* play, resound (lit. tinkle), 1385.
- Tenour, *s.* tenor, meaning, 4239; contents, 3566.
- Tent, tent, 1829; Tentis (Tentes), *pl.* tents, 1143, 2130, 2404; Tentis, *pl.* tents, *put for* tent, *sing.*, 475.
- Tent, *s.* notice, heed, 3317; attention, 4251.
- Tent, *imp. s. 2 p.* take thou heed, pay attention, 3729.
- Terand, *s.* tyrant, 4405; Terant, 5321; Terands, *pl.* tyrants, kings, 5484; (Tiraundez), rulers, 1294.
- Tere, *adj.* tiresome, tedious, difficult, 150, 1404; see *tere* in Stratmann.
- To tere, too tedious, 4767, 4918.
- (Tere), *v.* tire, 1404; Terid, *pp.* tired, 1009.
- Teres, *pl.* tears, i. e. drops, 4974; tears, 733*; Terys, 154, 3238.
- Tergarontes, *name of a place*, 2174.
- Terme, *s.* term of life, term, while, 478, 1678, 5040; Termes, *pl.* boundaries, 4038; (Terme, *s.*), bounds, boundary, 2315.
- Termyn, *v.* terminate, end, 3979; Termen (Terme), *ger.* to put an end to, 1336; Termens (Termys), *pr. s.* puts an end to, 1304; Termynd, *pt. pl.* finished, ended, put an end to, 3640; Termynd (Termyd), *pp.* ended, 2784; (Termyd), ended, 2901.
- Terne, *s.* tarn, pool, 3860.
- Ternen, *pr. pl.* turn; Ternen of, turn off, strip off, 4114.
- Terrandry, *s.* tyranny, 4251.
- Tessale, Thessaly, 5676.
- Tessaloyne (Thessalon), Thessalonica, 986.
- Testre, *s.* tester, head-frame of a bed, 4914.
- Tetchis, *pl.* habits, 4413. See Techis.
- Tethe, *pl.* teeth, 609, 4097, 4114.
- Tethiest (Thethiest), *adj. superl.* bravest (?), 2198; (Tithiest), 2784. See Tithiest.
- Tetragramaton, word of four letters, 1592. See the note, p. 297.
- Tewid, *pp.* tawed, curried, 5139.
- Texalte, *for* To exalte, p. 281, l. 73.
- Text, original text, story, tale, 214, 525, 916, 1592; (Text), 741*, 1044; Textes (Texte), *pl.* the (Latin) text, 1231.
- Teȝe (Tȝt), *pt. s.* drew, went, 2174. See below.
- Teȝt, *pt. s.* approached, 525, 649. See *tulten* in Stratmann.
- þa, *pron. pl.* those, 12, 51, 73, 92, 1027, 1224; (þo), 2232; they, 2042; (þai), 1253, 2472.
- þaes, *pron.* those, 1667.
- þai, *pron.* they, 13, 35, 105, 149, &c.; (þai), those, 2104.
- þai, *error for* þar (as in the Dublin MS.), their, 2374; so also in 5458.
- þaim, *pron.* them, 928, 1117; themselves, 816, 982; *dat.* to them, 181, 202; þaiem, 1180; (þaime), 1210.
- þaim-selfe, *pron.* themselves, 3489; (þaim-seluen), 1275; (þaim-selfe), by themselves, 698.
- (þair), there, 1145.
- þaire, *poss. pron.* their, 3, 7, 14, 33, &c.; (þair), 799, 3201.
- þam, *pron. pl.* them, 11, 61, 106, 201, 203, &c.; (þaim), *dat.* for themselves, 759.
- þam-selfe, themselves, 660.
- þan, *adv.* then, 48, 75, 120, 352, &c.
- Thankis, *pr. s.* thanks, 371; (Thankes), 2576; Thankid, *pt. s.* 1686.
- þar, *pron.* their, 150, 152, 154, 206, &c.
- þar, *adv.* there, 140, 237, &c.; where, 211, 3792; (þair), where, 1366.
- þar as, there where, 730*.
- þar-agaynys (þar-agayns), there beside, 1264.
- þare, *adv.* there, 201, 221, 229, 246, &c.
- Thare, *pr. s.* need; þe thare, it is needful for thee, thou needest, 5377. See Thurt.
- þare, their, 2. See þar.
- þare as (þar as), whereas, 2430.
- þare-fore (þarfore), *adv.* for it, 922; (þarfore), on that account, 876.

- Pare-with (Par-with), therewith, 149.
 (parforne), *adv.* beforehand, 2456.
 Par-in, therein, 503, 1078, 1292.
 (Tharmes), *pl.* entrails, 773*. A.S. *þarna*; Du. *darnen*, *pl.*
 Tharne, *error* for Tharned (Thar-
 nyd, D.), *pt. s.* needed, wanted, 2859. Thus the Ashmole MS. has *him tharned*, there needed for him; the Dublin MS. has *he tharnyd*, he needed. See below.
 Þarnes, *pr. s.* lacks, 2709; Tharned, *pt. pl.* lost, 3071, 3889. See *þarnen* in Stratumann.
 Þar-of, thereof, 876.
 Þar-on, thereon, 832, 1129.
 Þar-ut, *adv.* out of it, 511; (þar-
 owt), 945.
 Þar-quile; see Quile.
 Þar-to, *adv.* thereto, also, moreover, 760, 1872, 2371.
 Þas (Þees), *pron.* those, 1278; þase, 1823, 3536; (þase), 1441.
 Þat, that, 16, 17, 18, &c.; who, 5, 12, &c.; in order that, 221, &c.; With þat, thereupon, 111.
 Þe, *pron.* thee, thyself, 80, 98, 292, 5313; *dat.* 253, 256; The, 1871; þe put for þu, thou, *voc. case*, 107.
 Þe . . . þe, the . . . the, 847.
 Thebes, Thebes, 2371; Thebie (Tobe), 2274; Theben (Toben), 2199; Theby Tobe, 2292; Thebes (Tobe), *gen.* of Thebes, 2193.
 Thibies (Tebes), *pl.* Thebens, 2373.
 Thede, *s.* nation, country, region, 1710, 1803, 2859, 3889, 3955, 4419, 4737, 4896; tribe, nation, people, mass of men, 1246, 2537, 3747, 3824; Thedis, *pl.* nations, people, 2421; Thedes, 5916. A.S. *þeod*.
 (Thoes), *pl.* thighs, 773*.
 (Þees), *pl.* these, 633, 1087, 1604; this, 936.
 Thefe, *s.* thief, 1821, 2494, 3543; (Thief), 1881; Thefis, *pl.* thieves, wretches, 4520; Thefis (Thiefis), *pl.* ves, 3199. See Theues.
 Thefis *pl.* thefts, 4652.
 Then, then, 95, 143, 267; than, 130, 1104, 787*.
 Þens, *adv.* thence, 4870.
 Theosellus (Teosellus), 1212; (Thoo-
 sellus), 1230.
 Þer, there, 45, 85, 378, 800; þere, 517; (Thare), 1125; Bot þer aboute, except in the case where, 105.
 Þer, their, 5, 14, 149, 197.
 Þer-estire, in like manner, 3879.
 Þer-fra, therefrom, 4638.
 Þerto (Þarto), thereto, 1033.
 (Þes), these, 897, 984.
 Thestir, *adj.* dark, gloomy, 4173, 4894. A.S. *þéostre*.
 Thestres, *pl.* darknesses (?), 4627. The sense is hopeless; for it is clear that this line should follow 4624 immediately, and that the line which should succeed this is lost.
 Thethen, *adv.* thence, 5131; (Þine), 1068, 1076; Þethin, 5563.
 Theues, *pl.* thieves, 1789; Theuys (Thefez), 1734. See Thefe.
 Thewis, *pl.* customs, 3747, 4226; qualities, 3990; (Thewys), man-
 ners, 2744; (Thewez), conduct, 2332; Thewes, manners, habits, 4577; Thewys, 4700. A.S. *þéaw*.
 Þi, *pron.* thy, 80, 102, 254.
 Thickest (Thikest), thickest, 1323.
 Þik (Thik), *adv.* thickly, 707.
 Þike, *adj.* thick, solid, 4073; numerous, 69; fat, 5433; (Þyke), heavy, clumsy, 2709; (Þike), 1219; Þik, thick, hard, 529.
 Þikefald, *adv.* thickly together, 1407.
 Thikest, densest, 1427.
 Þikire, *adj. comp.* denser, 4176.
 Þine, *pron.* thine, 256, 470, 688.
 Þine, *adv.* thence, 1036, 3848, 4075. See Thethen.
 Þing, *s.* thing, 2; Thing (Þyng), 1685; (Þing), quantity, 1375; (Þyngge), 2072; Þingis, *pl.* things, 275, 412, 726; (Þingez), 1567; (Þynggez), 1710; Any thinge, in any respect, at all, 2275.
 Þingis, for Thinkis, *pr. s.* thinks, 672.
 Þinkis, *pr. s. impers.* it seems, 363; Thinkes, 1101; Thinkis, 1351,

- 1580; *Thinke*, it seems, 925, 1461, 1846, 2094, 2203; *Me thinke*, methinks, it seems to me, 326, 867; *Me piuk*, methinks, it seems to me, 3299; *Thinke*, *pr. s. subj. impers.* may seem fit, 3293; may seem, 1638.
- Thinkes*, *pr. s.* intends to go, 1121; (*Pinkez*), thinks, 1640.
- Pir*, *pron. demon. pl.* these, 167; *pire*, 262, 347, 462, 660, 752, 3192, 3548, 4546, 5502; (*pees*), 1797; *pire*, those, 95; (*pir*), those, 797. Common in Barbour; still in use.
- Dis*, *pron. this*, 59, 119, 230; *Di[s]*, this, 761; *pl. these*, 190, 2009, 2514; (*pees*), 860.
- Pi-selſe*, thyself, 328, 356, 730, 5372; (*Pi-seluen*), 732, 850, 1843.
- Po*, *pron. pl.* those, they, 3136, 3676; (*Po*), 1172, 1635; *Po* (*poes*), 1056; (*poe*), 1954; (*poes*), 1445.
- Po*, *adv.* when, 10, 277.
- Pof*, *conj.* though, 1739, 1880; (*written Of*), 723, 862; as though, 5259; (*pof*), 3168; *pofe*, 254, 471, 1858, 4396; (*pof*), 3244.
- Thole*, *ger.* to suffer, endure, 1015, 1178; *v.* 707; *Tholis*, 1 *pr. s.* suffer, 539; *Tholes*, *pr. s.* remains, tarries, 3955; *Poled*, *pt. s.* suffered, 3876; *Tholid*, (she) suffered, endured, 529; *Tholid*, *pt. pl.* suffered, 2329. A.S. *þolian*.
- Thonere*, thunder, 554. Read *thonere-thrastis*, i. e. thunder-claps. (*Poo*), *pl.* those, 2842*.
- Thornes*, *pl.* thorns, 3815.
- Thorps* (*Thorpus*), *pl.* villages, 1803.
- Pos*, *pl.* those, 5639.
- Dou*, *pron.* thou, 97, 98, 100, 107, &c.
- Thousand*, thousand, 1042, 1427, 2084; (*Thowsand*), 1832; (*Thounsand*), 1246, 2163; *Thousandis*, *pl.* 1436.
- (*pow*), error for *yow*, you, 1845.
- Poze*, *conj.* though, 51.
- Poȝt*, *pt. s.* thought, 240; (*Thoght*), 1710; *pt. pl.* 3215.
- Poȝt*, *imp. pt. s.* seemed; him *poȝt* = it seemed to him, 70, 419, 1346.
- Poȝt* (*Thought*), *s.* thought, 1461; *Thoȝtis*, *pl.* thoughts, 676, 4314; anxieties, 574.
- Thra*, *adj.* bold, 2218, 3824; severe, 554; (*Tra*), strong, 1631; (*Thro*), eager, keen, 1246; *Thra* (*Throo*), strong, 3071; *Praa*, stiff, rigid (as a corpse), 4452. *Icel. þrár*.
- Thra* (*Thro*), *s.* struggle, victory, 2282; (*Tro*), 2259; lordship, 5016. *Icel. þrá*, a struggle.
- Thrall*, *s.* thrall, slave, 4520.
- Thraly*, *adv.* eagerly, 371; hardly, desperately, 2090. See *Thra*.
- Thrang*, *pt. s.* pressed, 1427.
- Thrange*, *adj.* oppressed, 4813.
- Thrange*, throng, 1323.
- Thrast*, *pt. s.* thrust, 2939.
- Thrastis*, *pl.* claps (of thunder), 554. See *Thonere*.
- Thrat*, *pt. pl.* threatened, 529.
- Þrathly*, *adv.* (error for *þraly*), severely, 707. MS. D. *has* *thraly*.
- Thraw*, moment, 1436; *Thrawe* (*Thraw*), 1326; On a *thrawe*, at a time, 1476; *Thre dais* out a *thraw* (in a *thraw*), fully three days at a time, 2046. A.S. *þrág*, *þráh*.
- Thraw*, *ger.* to throw, hurl, 2218; *Thrawyn*, *ger.* to throw, to wind (corpses), 4452.
- Thre*, *num.* three, 277, 436, 1476, 2046, 2090, 2259.
- (*Thred*), *adj.* third, 1485.
- Threpis*, *pr. s.* asserts, 4423; contends, 3125; *Threpid*, *pt. pl.* strove, 3642; *Threp*, *pr. pl.* (*Threpyd*, *pt. pl.*), dispute, 2046. A.S. *þræpian*.
- Threpild* (*Threpelytt*), *pp.* congregated, assembled, 1476. Cf. *þroblen*, *þrúblen*, to press; see gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Threschis*, *pr. s.* thrashes, beats, 1326.
- Thret* (*Thratt*), 1 *pt. s.* threatened, 2494; (*Thrett*), *pt. s.* exhorted, 1631; *pp.* threatened, oppressed, 707.
- Threte*, *s.* threat, 2742.
- Thretti*, *adj.* thirty, 3642; (*Threti*), 1246; *Thretty*, 3603, 3843; *Be thretty*, to the number of thirty, 3610.
- Threuen*, *pp. as adj.* well-thriven,

- experienced, 2259. 3007; excellent, 2537; well-grown, 5137, 5433; grown up, hence, strong, mighty, 1326; (Thriften), experienced, 1407; (Thryffyn), overgrown, 2709.
- Threw, *pt. s.* reached, 2939.
- Threyst, *adj. superl.* strongest (?), 2371. Reading uncertain; perhaps for *thraest*; see Thra.
- Thrid, *adj.* third, 281, 3343; (Thryd), 2282.
- Thrill, *s.* hole, 4073.
- Thrillis, *pr. s.* thrills, pierces, 224.
- Thringes, *pr. s.*; Thringes to, presses forward, joins in the contest, 2282; Thringis, *pr. pl.* rush, throng, 3843; Thringes (Thronge), press, crowd, 1436. A.S. *þringan*.
- Thrise (Thrisse), *adv.* thrice, 2279.
- Thrist, *s.* thirst, 4683.
- Thristis, *impers. pr. s.* thirsts; Him thristis, he is thirsty, 3848; Thristes, 2 *pr. pl.* thirst, 4443.
- (Thristez), *pr. s.* thrusts, 1326; Thristis (Thraсте, *pt. s.*), *pr. pl.* thrust, 1407; Thristid, *pt. pl.* thrust through, pierced, 554; (Thrist), *pp.* thrust, 773*.
- (Thristyn), *error* for Thrist in or Thrast in, thrust in, i. e. hid it away, 2939.
- (Thro), *adj.* strong, 2537. See Thra. (Throo); see Thra.
- Throm (Thrume), *s.* company, troop, 3007; On a throm, in a heap, i. e. successively, 3642. A.S. *þrym*, a troop.
- Throtis, *pl.* throats, 1812.
- Throtild, *pp.* throttled, choked, 4813.
- Throw, *s.* short time, moment, 3843. See Thraw.
- Thryfandly, *adv.* thrivingly, prosperously, i. e. for her good, 3747.
- (Thryme), *adj.*; *an error* for Thryuen, 1326. See Threuen.
- Thryngis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* thrust, 4419. See Thringes.
- Thu, *pron.* thou, 1987; þu (þou), 2910.
- Thurghis, *pl.* coffins, 4452. A.S. *þruh*.
- Thurgh-out, *adv.* in all, continually, 4737. See Þurze-out.
- Thurt, *pt. s.* needed; Him thurt, it needed him = he needed, 1461. See Thare, and þarf in Stratmann.
- Þurze, *prep.* through, 140, 147, 225, 444, 487, 500; (Þorow), 1427, 1636, 1960; Thurgh (Þorow), 803; Þurze (Thurgh), 1729; throughout, 571.
- Þurze-out, *prep.* throughout, 3229; (Þorow), right through, 2640; (Out-Þorow), *adv.* continually, 2090.
- Þus, *adv.* thus, 35, 135, 178, &c.
- Þus-gate, *adv.* in this way, thus, 516, 1933, 4030; (Þus-gates), 2257.
- Thyn, *adj.* thin, 320.
- Thynkis, *pl.* things, 436.
- Thynkes, 2 *pr. s.* thinkest, 1988.
- Thys, this, 811*.
- Tid, *adj.* (for Tidy), excellent, 1060. See Tidiest.
- Tide (Tyde), *v.* happen, 2145, 2309, 3729, 4945; Tidis (Tydes), *pr. s.* happens, 2288; Tidis (Tydez), *pr. s. as fut.* will happen, 1988; Tidis, *pr. pl.* betide, await, 4549; Tid (Tyde), *pt. s.* betided, happened, 1193. See Tydis.
- Tidiest, *adj. superl.* ablest, 2367.
- Tield (Teld), *v.* build, 2258. (The line is corrupt; for *tild* read Tebet, i. e. Thebes; see the note, p. 301.)
- Tildid, *pp.* cut out, carved, lit. prepared, 4465. O.F. *tiffer*.
- (Tight), *pt. s.* went, 2304. See Tigt.
- Tigris, *pl.* tigers, 3850; Tigris, 3573.
- Tigre (Tygre), the Tigris, 2610. See Tygre.
- Tild, *s.* building, 1343, 4581; (Teld), 1296, 1304, 1373; palace, 3000; (Tyld), 1159; (Tild), fort, 1366. A.S. *teld*.
- Tild, *v.* pitch, set, 3860; Tildis, *pr. s.* builds, 5593; Tildid (Tyldet), *pt. s.* covered, defended, 1151; Tildid (Teld), *pt. s.* built, 2258 but the line is corrupt; for *tild* read Tebet, i. e. Thebes; Tildid, *pp.* built, raised (up), 5645; enshrined, built canopies (over), 4462; built, 3688; (Tyldit), 2110;

- Tild, *pp.* set, pitched, 4140; built, 2110. See above.
- Till, *prep.* to, 340, 463, 1828, 3814, 4875, 5389; (To), 2511; Tille, 1072, 5431; unto, 2909.
- Till, *conj.* until, 564, 4875; Tille, 646.
- Tillid, *pt. pl.* enticed, 5479.
- Tiltis, *pr. s.* tilts, upsets, 1303; Tilt, *pt. pl.* overturned, 1418.
- Time, *s.* time, 1460, 2011; (Tyne), 1109; Times, *pl.* 2259. See Tyne.
- Tinds, *pr. s.* kindles, sets on fire, 4179. Cf. A.S. *ontyndan*.
- Tint (Tynt), *pt. s.* 1 p. lost, 2683; Tint, *pp.* lost, 2901; (Tynt), 2784. See Tynt.
- Tirantes, *pl.* tyrants, 3640.
- Tire, Tyre, 1446, 2367, 5676; (Tyre), 1344, 1356. See Tyre.
- Tire (Tyre), *v.* attire, address, 1632; Tire, *pr. pl.* prepare (lit. attire), 2398; Tired, *pp.* attired, 3603; (Tyrett), 1547. See Tyriss.
- Tirement, *s.* adornment, 4918.
- Tite, *adv.* quickly, 219, 3719; Titte, 5165. See Tyte.
- Tithandis, *pl.* tidings, 5175. Icel. *tíðindi*. See Tythandis.
- (Tithiest), *adj. superl.* (put for Tidiest), most famous, 2371. See Tidiest. Cf. Icel. *tíðr*, famous, skilled.
- Titild, *pp.* named, inscribed with names, 5640.
- Titill, *s.* title of a letter, hence, letter, 3566, 4239; inscription, 5071; title, claim, 896; text, 1044; Title, 1592.
- Titly (Titely), *adv.* quickly, soon, 888, 1283, 1812, 4886; Titely, 267, 1525, 1632, 3999, 738*; (Tytely), 2213; Tittly (Tyte), quickly, 1175.
- Tittire, *adv.* more quickly, sooner, 2519.
- Tittis, *pr. s.* pulls, 853; Titt, *pt. pl.* pulled, dragged, 5454; (Tit), *in phr.* Tit to, pulled to, fastened up, 2493. Lowl. Sc. *tyte*, to snatch, pull; Jamieson.
- Tizt, *pt. s.* drew, went, 1336, 2174; (Tight), *refl.* went, 1162; (To-
- teght), drew towards, approached, 1060; Tizt, *pt. pl. refl.* prepared, set about, 2333. A.S. *tihtan*, to draw. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
- Tizt, *pp.* erected, built, 2174; (Tight), fastened, 1373. Lit. *tied*; or else the same word as above.
- To, *prep.* to, 48, 58, &c.; for, 1070, 3786; until, 2160; as far as to, 4078; in comparison with, 3587.
- To, *conj.* until, 1034, 3853.
- To, *adv.* too, 316, 317, 461, 2077, 4256.
- To (Two), two, 2599.
- To-brest, *v.* burst in two, 640. A.S. *tóbrestan*.
- To-brissid (To-brysed), *pp.* badly bruised, 1274.
- (To-brountes), *pr. s.* destroys, 1214.
- (Tochett), *pt. pl.* touched, referred to, 888.
- To-clatirs (Claters), *pr. s.* shivers, bursts in pieces (with a noise), 799.
- To-clefe, *pt. pl.* cleft asunder, were rent asunder, 555.
- To-combirs (-bers), *pr. s.* discomfits, 1302.
- To-drawen, *pp.* drawn fully out, 5364.
- To-gedire, *adv.* together, 61, 377; Togedre, 1873; Togeder, 104.
- Toghid, *pp.* dragged, tugged, pulled, 4628.
- To-hewid, *pt. pl.* 1 p. cut in pieces, slew, 3430.
- Toile, *s.* tool, 4708. See Toyliis.
- Toke, *pt. s.* took, 127.
- (Toldyn), *pt. pl.* told, 906.
- Tole (Tule), tool, implement, 3373 (in the *nom.* case); Toles, *pl.* 4581. See Toile.
- Tolls, *pr. pl.*; Tolls of, pull off (their horses), 3640. See *tollen* in Stratmann.
- Toly, *s.* scarlet dye, scarlet colour, 4335. See *Tuly* in Halliwell.
- Tombe, *s.* tomb, 5593; Tombis, *pl.* 4451.
- Tomble, *pr. pl.* tumble, 552.
- To-morne, to-morrow, 1493.
- Tonacles, *pl.* tunicles, 1547.
- Toname, *s.* nickname, 2288.

- Tone; þe tone = þet one, that one, i. e. the one, p. 282, l. 101.
- Tone, *s.* tone; Out of tone, beyond measure, 1343.
- Tonge, *s.* tongue, language, 150, 3326; (Tong), 1404, 2075; (Tounge), 2885; Tongis, *pl.* tongues, languages, 21, 4031, 4428, 5071.
- Tonn, *s.* tun, tub, 5535.
- Toore, *adj.* strong, 5500. Cf. Icel. *tor-*, prefix, difficult. See Torfare.
- Top (Topp), *s.* top, 3365; (Toppe), 1303; Top, 2110; Topp, 4070; (Top), top of his head, 752*: Topp-haris, hairs of the top of our heads, 1009.
- Topas, topaz, 3343, 3360; Topaces, *pl.* topazes, 5644.
- To-paschis (To-paschys), *pr. s.* is dashed, becomes broken, 2998.
- To-pligt, *pp.* pledged to (*are* being understood), i. e. we are never pledged to it, addicted to it, viz. to vice, 4330.
- To-ponyscht, *pp.* severely punished, 4330.
- Topoures (Tapers), *pl.* tapers, 1568.
- Tor (Towre), *s.* tor, hill-top, 2109; Torres, *pl.* tors, tower-shaped hilltops, 4863. Still in use in Devon.
- Torased *pp.* torn up, 2088.
- Torche, *s.* torch, 2970; Torchis (Torchez), *pl.* torches, 1563.
- Toretis (Torrettes), *pl.* turrets, 1418.
- Torfare, *s.* hardship, misery, 3729; difficulty, peril, 4101; Torfere (Torfer), trouble, 1261; Torfar (Torfer), hardship, 1193. Cf. Icel. *torfara*. The prefix *tor-* answers to Goth. *tuz-*, Gk. *θω-*.
- Torkans (Torkys), *pr. s.* turns (himself) (towards), turns (towards), 2167. Here *with* = towards, in the direction of what is said. See my article on *turken* in N. and Q. 6 S. V. 165.
- To-scilled, *pt. s.* scattered, dispersed utterly, 4150. *Skail*, to disperse; Jamieson.
- To-sprangis, *pr. pl.* fly to pieces, are shivered, 730; (To-sprongen), *pt. pl.* flew to pieces, 730.
- (Tote), *v.* peep, 694. See Tute, Toton.
- (To-teght), *pt. s.* approached, 1060. See Tigt.
- To-terid, *pt. s.* tore asunder, 4148.
- Tothe, *s.* tooth, 3907.
- Tothed, *pp.* furnished with teeth, 5482.
- Tothir, *adj.* second, 3342; þe tothire, that other, the other, 300, 607, 879, 1368, 3978; þe toþir = þet oþir, the second, the next, 3006.
- (Toton), *pr. pl.* stick out, 752*. See Tote, Tute.
- Touches, *pr. s.* touches, 386, 3301; Touchis, *pr. pl.* touch, refer to, 888; Touchid, *pt. s.* touched (upon it), 5190; Touched (Tochyd), *pt. s.* touched, 2967; Touch-and (Tochand), *pres. part.* touching, 1834; Touchid, *pp.* touched, i. e. attached, 2580 (but read *tachid*). See Glos. to Allit. Poems.
- Toune, town, 216, 1163, 1446, 1525; (Towne), 1283, 1385; Toun, 2111, 2150; Tounes, *pl.* towns, 4024.
- Tou[n]les (Tounles), *adj.* town-less, without a town, 2288.
- Toure, *s.* tower, 1283, 1303, 3603; duncheon, 3149; (Towre), 1159; (Tourre), 1446; Touris, *pl.* towers, 552; (Toure, *s.*), 2228; (Tourez), 1576; Toures (Towrez), 1151, 1418, 2267.
- Toument, *s.* torment, 3515; struggle (lit. torment), 4251; (Turement), trouble, 1448.
- Toward, *prep.* towards, 843, 1089. (Town), town, 815*; (Towne), *gen.* town's, 2135; A towne, in the town, at home, p. 283, l. 127.
- To-wraiste, *pr. pl.* wrist or twist in pieces, 798; (To-wrasted), *pt. pl.* twisted to pieces, 798.
- (Towre), *s.* tower, 1296. See Toure.
- Toylis, *pl.* implements, lit. tools, 286. See Toile, Tole.
- Toze, *adj.* tough, 1812.
- Traces (Tracez), *pl.* Thracians, 986.
- Trainmes, *pl.* instruments, 127. Bad spelling for *trammes*; see Tram.
- Traistis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* trustest, 5026; Traist (Trasten), 2 *pr. pl.* trust to,

- 2467; Traisted (Traistyt), *pp.* trusted, 3270.
- Traitours, *pl.* traitors, 3192.
- Tram (Trame), engine, machine, 1373; Trammys (*written* trammys), instruments, 286. And see Traumes, Trainunes. See the article on *tram* in my Etym. Dict.
- Transmitte, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* send about, send from one place to another, 4335.
- Trappour, *s.* trappings, 4179.
- Trased, *pt. s.* traced, pourtrayed, 4914.
- (Trasped), *error for* Trespast, *pp.* trespassed, 2385. (The Ashmole MS. has *trispast*.)
- Trauail (Travell), *s.* labour, trouble, 2683.
- Trauald, *pt. s.* travailed, was in labour, 525; Trauailid, *pp.* disturbed, 543.
- Traumes (Trawynns), *pl.* engines of war, 1296. See Tram.
- Trayne, *s.* treachery, deceit, snare, 2580, 2582; train, plot, 5028.
- Trayvelles, 2 *pr. pl. refl.* labour, toil, *p.* 281, l. 68.
- Tre, *s.* tree, 4978; Tree, wood, 4465; Treis, *pl.* trees, 70, 4994, 5007.
- Trebut, *s.* tribute, 3719. See Tribute.
- Trecherous, *adj.* treacherous, 5028.
- Trechory, *s.* treachery, 3439; Trechoure (Trichory), 3192.
- Trechoure (Trechour), traitor, 1768, 2582.
- Trede, *v.* tread, 1515; Tredis (Tredes), *pr. s.* treads (on), 1348.
- (Trefe), *for* Threuen, *pp.* thriven, experienced, 3007.
- Treid, *put for* Tried, choice, pure, 5065; tried, attempted, 3439. See Tried.
- Trekild, *pt. pl.* trickled, 4974.
- Trelest, *adj.* trelliced, adorned with cross-bars or with gems arranged in crossed rows, 3343.
- Trenes, *for* Trines, goes, 4888. See Trines.
- Treson, *s.* treason, 1768, 5028.
- Tresory, treasury, 1666.
- Tresour, *s.* treasure, 123, 1807, 2677; thing of value, 5372; Tresore (Tresour), great wonder, marvel, 2094.
- Trest, *pr. pl.* trust, hope, expect, 1344; (Tristed), *pt. pl.* heped, 1344.
- Tretis, *pr. s.* treats with, entreats, 5340.
- Tretis (Tretes), treatise, history, 2109; (Tretez), 2190; Tretice (Tretes), *pl.* treatises, 1568.
- Treuly (Trewly), *adv.* truly, 2094, 2309.
- Treuthe, *s.* truth, 515, 729.
- Trew, *adj.* true, 272, 3174; Trewe (Trew), 986.
- Trewly, *adv.* truly, 2292.
- Treyned, *pt. s.* proceeded, 694. See Trines, Trenes.
- Tribochetes (Trebgetes, *for* Trelgetes, *as in MS.*), *pl.* engines for casting stones, 1296. O.F. *trebuchet* (Roquefort).
- Tribute, tribute, 888, 896, 1044. (Trichory), *s.* treachery, 3192.
- Tried, *pp.* well-tried, 3022; select, approved, choice, 1060, 2198, 3739, 5101, 5640, 5644; picked, 815*.
- Triest, *adj. superl.* choicest, 4970; (Triest), 2198, 2367.
- Trimblis, *pr. s.* trembles, 5308; Trimballand, *pres. part.* trembling, 4914. See Trymbild.
- Trines, *pr. s.* goes, proceeds, 5171, 5195, 5231. Dan. *trine*, to step; *trin*, a step.
- Trispast, *pp.* trespassed, 2385.
- Trissis, *pl.* tresses, plaits of hair, 3450.
- Tristly, *adv.* trustfully, confidently, 1632.
- Tro; see Thra.
- Trod-gate (Troyde-gate), track, beaten path, 2988.
- Troi, Troy, 2123. See Troy.
- Trombling, *error for* troubling (Trublyng in the Dublin MS.), troubling, 3000.
- Trompes (Trompez), *pl.* trumpets, 773; Trompis, 2222.
- Trone, throne, 161, 977, 1490, 1724, 2776, 3406; Trones, *pl.* thrones (one of the nine orders of angels), 4914.

- Trottis him, *pr. s.* trots, 2610; (Trottes), 2988; Trottes, *pr. pl.* trot, 1208.
- Trouage, *s.* tribute, 3491, 3559, 5101, 5658; (Truage), 884, 903, 1904, 2957; (Trowage), 2525; Trouag (Truage), *s.* tax, 1678. O.F. *truage* (Roquefort).
- Troubild, *pp.* troubled, 543; (Turblett), 1343.
- Troumpis, *pl.* trumpets, 3965.
- Trouthe (Trewth), *s.* truth, faith, 1356; Trouthis (Trewthez), *pl.* troths, pledges, 760.
- Trouthiles, *adj.* false, 4462.
- Trowe, *v.* believe, throw, 141, 464; *ger.* 3663; Trowe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* believe, trust, 730; Trow (Trowe), 1886, 2690; Trow, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* trust in, 4548; Trowe, 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst believe, 1986; Trowid, *pt. s.* believed, 4833; (Trowyd), 2293; Trowid, *pt. pl.* trusted, expected, 3191; Trowde, 1148; Trowe, *imp. s.* believe, 5372.
- Trowthis (Trouthez), *pl.* troths, 3192.
- Troy, Troy, 3020, 5665.
- (Trublett), *pp.* troubled, 1341.
- Truches, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* failest, 1988. A.S. *truucian*.
- Trufils (Trufils), *pl.* trifles, 1894.
- Trumpis, *pl.* trumpets, 3037, 3610; (Trompettes), 1386.
- Trusses, *pr. s.* packs (it), 123; Trussis (Trussys), *pr. s. refl.* sets out (lit. packs up), 1143. See *Trusse* in Gl. to P. Plowman.
- Tryi, *ger.* to choose, select, 663. See Tried. O.F. *trier*.
- Trymbld, *pt. s.* trembled, 569; (Tremblyd), 1252. See Trimblis.
- Tuenti, *adj.* twenty, 3930.
- Tufe, *adj.* tough, 319.
- Tuke, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* took, received, 2683; took (myself), put (myself), 3515; Tuke, *pt. s.* took, 286, 1044, 1446; (Toke), 2075; took, i.e. went upon (it), took to (it), 2901; Tuke, *pt. pl.* took, 190, 4114; Tuke vp, *pt. pl.* took up, plighted, 760.
- Take vp, *pr. pl.* blow, 3610; (Tuk-
- kyn vp), 773. Properly to beat a drum; here used of the blowing of trumpets. *Tuck of drum*, beat of drum; Jamieson. "*Tuck of trump*, blast of a trumpet," Glos. to Troy-book.
- Tukkid; see Tulkid.
- (Tule); see Tole.
- Tulke, *s.* man, soldier, knight, 752, 1212, 2258, 2274, 2970; Tulk, 5372; (Tulke), 2580, 3174; Tulkis, *pl.* men, 3149, 3439, 3566, 3999, 4798; (Tulkes), 2075; (Tulkez), 1304, 2367, 2685. Icel. *tulkr*.
- Tulkid, *for* Tukkid, *pt. pl.* beat, 2427. "*Tuck*, to beat;" Jamieson. In MSS. we often find *kk* written more like *lk*, the double letter being denoted only by doubling the down-stroke. Hence we may correct *tulked* to *tukked* in the Gloss. to Allit. Poems, which is incorrect. See Tuke vp.
- Tunne, tun, large quantity, 1807.
- Tupis, *pl.* rams, tups, 5566.
- Turbils, *pr. s.* becomes cloudy, is obscured, 4140; Turbled, *pp.* troubled, disturbed, 3637; Turbild, 4063.
- Turestis (Torrettes), *pl.* turrets (*but read* Turettis), 1151.
- (Turht), *for* Thurt, q. v.
- Turke, Turkey, 5665.
- Turmentis, *pl.* torments, 4549.
- Turnay, *pt. pl.* tourney, i.e. fight, 5429.
- Turne, *s.* turn, bout, 2276, 5429; Turnes (Tournays), exploits, 1404.
- Turne, *v.* turn back, 1631; return, 2607; depart, 5606; Turnes, *pr. s.* turns, 1071, 1854; (Turnes), 1332; turns, goes, 1336; Turnys, 31, 383; Turnes him, *pr. s.* turns, 752; Turne, 2 *pr. s. subj.* return, 1786; *pr. s. subj.* 401; Turned, *pt. s.* went, 2304; (Turned), 694; (Turnyd hym), 752; Turned, *pp.* 218; (Turnyd), 1289; Turne, *imp. s.* turn, return, 1768, 1978.
- Turred, *pt. pl.* butted, 5567. "*Turr*, to butt as a ram does;" Halliwell.
- Tuscane, Tuscany, 5665.
- Tuskis, *pl.* tusks, 610, 4114.
- Tute, *ger.* to peep, gaze; Tute in,

- to gaze upon, observe, 127, 694;
 Tutand, *pres. part.* looking, peer-
 ing, 4776. A.S. *tótian*.
 Tuthe (Tothe), tooth, 1997.
 Twa, two, 317, 319, 348, 353, &c.;
 Tway, 284, 545.
 Twelfe, twelve, 1079; (Twelf), 815*.
 Twelmonth, *s.* year, 5429.
 Twenti, *num.* twenty, 3886.
 Twiggis (Twygges), *pl.* twigs, 1895.
 Twinlepi, *adj.* twofold, 5013. Cf.
 Anlepi.
 Twyggis (*Dubl. MS.* Wiggez), *pl.*
 twigs, 1714. See Twiggis.
 Twynnes (Twynnys), *pr. s.* parts,
 2750; (Twynnon), *pr. pl.* 760;
 Twyned, *pt. pl.* parted, 760.
 Twyse, *num.* twice, 1605, 3988, 5637.
 Tydis, *pr. s. impera.* betides, 106;
 Tyd. *pt. s.* betided, happened, 478.
 See Tide.
 Tygre, Tigris, 2597, 2785. See
 Tigre.
 Tymbre (Tembre), crest of the
 helmet (lit. timber, the crests
 being originally made of wood),
 1230.
 Tyme, *s.* time, 33, 204, 214, 272,
 525, &c.; Tym, 478; Tymes, *pl.*
 times, seasons, 283; Be tyme, be-
 times, 2830; soon enough, 3728;
 In tymes, at times, now and then,
 4122. See Time.
 Tyn, *s.* tin, 4465.
 Tynd, *pt. pl.*; Tynd to, shut to,
 closed, 2193. A.S. *týnan*.
 Tyndis, *pl.* teeth, tines, 3907, 5133,
 5567, 5573; tines. horns. prongs,
 3925, 752*; (Tyndez), 1063.
 Tyne, *adj.* tiny, 507.
 (Tynkyl), *pr. pl.* tinkle, i. e. resound,
 1384.
 Tynt (Tyntt), *pp.* lost, 903. See
 Tint.
 (Typys), *pr. s.* tips over, 1303;
 (Typed), *pt. pt.* tipped over, up-
 set, 1418. See Glos. to Allit.
 Poems.
 Tyre, Tyre, 1141, 1193, 1208, 1289,
 1294, 1336. See Tire.
 Tyris, *pr. s.* attires, 5195; Tyrid,
pp. decked, 5644. See Tire.
 Tyte, *adv.* quickly; As tyte as, as
 soon as, 693. See Tite.
 Tythandis (Tithanndez), *pl.* tidings,
 2304. See Tithandis.
 Vacant, *adj.* vacant, 4774; free
 (from), 5116; Vacand, vacant,
 4665.
 Vaile (Wale), *s.* vale, valley, 1205,
 1289, 1313.
 Vaile, *s.* defeat (?), 3980. Cf. F.
avaler, to put down, Cotgrave.
 Or it may even mean 'valley.'
 Vaile, *v.* avail, 3545; Vailes, *pr. s.*
 avails, 103; Vailes (Valys), *pr.*
pl. avail, 3122.
 Vailes (Wales), *pl.* veils, 2300.
 Vale, *s.* valley, 4164, 5432; Vales,
pl. 4121.
 Valour, *s.* valour, 2493.
 Vanite, *s.* empty space, 4774;
 (Vanyte), vanity, 2731; Vanyte,
 1730, 1784.
 Vant, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* vaunt, 2713.
 Variand, *pres. part.* varying, various,
 4637; Variant, 4336, 5651.
 Variaunce, *s.* variety, 4632.
 Vaunte (Vaunt), *s.* vaunt, boast,
 1880.
 Vaward, *s.* vanward, vanguard,
 3617, 4842.
 Vayne, *adj.* vain, 389; (Vayn), 1784;
 (Wayn), 1113.
 Vayne-glori (Vaneglori), *s.* vain
 glory, 2731; (Vaynglory), 1730;
 Vayn glorie (Vaneglori), 3265.
 Ve, for We, we, 4328.
 Vebbis, *pl.* webs, woven cloth, 4335.
 Velany, villany, wickedness, 4550.
 Velans, *adj.* villanous, horrible,
 4164. It may be *vilaus*; Jamie-
 son has *vylaus*, and the Glos. to
 the Troy-book has *vilaus*. But
 these examples are not at all
 decisive. Cf. F. *vilain*.
 Vemon, *s.* venom, poison, 4797.
 Veinons, *pr. s.* envenoms, poisons,
 4842.
 Vencust, *pp.* vanquished, 3122, 3948,
 3980; (Venkest), 950; Vencuste,
 3875.
 Vengeance, vengeance, 1484.
 Venge, *v.* avenge, 186, 950; *ger.*
 5326; Vengid (Vengyd), 2096;
 (Venged), 969.
 Venus, Venus, 4410, 4414, 4512.

- Venyson, *s.* venison, 4121.
 Verdure, *s.* verdure, 4979.
 Vermeon, *s.* vermilion, 3945. See Vermylion.
 Vermylion, *s.* vermilion colour, 4336.
 Vermyn, *s.* vermin, 3948, 5422; Vermyns, *gen. pl.* of the vermin, of the monstrous creatures, 4797.
 Verraly (Veraly), *adv.* truly, verily, 2928.
 Verray, *adj.* true, 5527; Verra, 389.
 Vertu, virtue, 103; strength, 5527; valour, 5324; Vertous, *pl.* virtues, 4410; Vertuse (Vertuez), good qualities, 2958.
 Vessall, *s.* vessel, often used in plural sense of vessels, plate, 4351; Vessale, 3700; Vessell, 116; Vessell (Veseall), vessels, 2945.
 Vestoure (Vesture), vesture, garment, 1539.
 Viaunce, *s.* food, viands, 4121. Put for Viauns = Viaunds.
 Victore (Wictory), *s.* victory, 2096.
 Victour, victor, 950; Victoure, 186; (Victor), 1484; Victor, 389, 1880.
 Vile, *adj.* vile, 186; harmful, 4164; cowardly, 3617.
 Violet (Vyolet), *adj.* violet, 1539.
 Violet, *s.* violet hue, 4336.
 Virgyns, *pl.* virgins, 4665.
 Virre, *s.* glass, 4351. F. verre.
 Vise, *ger.* to look, 1539, 3946; To vise on, to look upon, in appearance, 3945; Vise, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* look out for, seek out, 4686; Visid, *pp.* seen, 5651.
 Vision, *s.* vision, 1508.
 Visit (Viset), *ger.* to visit, 2033; (Visyt), 2004; Visitis (Viseten), *pr. pl.* visit, 1964.
 Vitail (Vitale), victual, 2171.
 (With), *prep.* with, 1536.
 Vmbe, *prep.* around, 2209; (Vmbe), 3393; Vmby (Vmbe) round about, 1154; (Vmby), 779.
 Vmbe, *adv.* around, 2762, 3250.
 Vmbe-gildid, *pp.* gilded round, 4899.
 (Vmbelappes), *pr. pl.* beset, surround, 2473. See Vmlapis.
 Vmbe-thonrid, *pp.* encompassed, surrounded, 4806; Vmby-thonred (printed Vmby-thorned), 3857. Sense clear; spelling doubtful.
 (Vmbrayd), *s.* reproach, 1800. See Vnbraydis, Vpbraide.
 Vmby-clappis, *pr. s.* surrounds, embraces, 4171; Vm-clappis, *pr. pl.* invest, beset, surround, 2473; Vm-by-clappid, *pp.* surrounded, 3451.
 Vmfaldin, *pp.* encompassed, 4717.
 (Vmhedde), *imp. s.* look about you, 731.
 Vmlapis (Vmbelappes), *pr. s.* surrounds, 2134; Vmlapped (Vnlapped), *pp.* encompassed, 920. See Vnlappis.
 Vm-loke, 2 *pr. pl.* surround, 4672. (Here loke = mod. E. lock.)
 Vmquile, *adv.* formerly, 23, 1132, 3594, 4511; sometime, 3079; sometimes, 4744, 4745.
 Vmse, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* look thou around, bethink (thyself), 3728.
 Vn-ably, *adv.* without ability, foolishly, weakly, 2308.
 Vn-behalde (for Vm-behalde), *imp. s.* look about you, 731.
 (Vnbende), *v.* unbend, unstring (your bow), 1744; (Vnbenden), 1974. See Vnbynd.
 Vn-blythe, *adj.* sorrowful, joyless, 152; Vnblyth, 48.
 Vn-braydis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* upbraidest, 2739. Error for Vmbraydis; see Gloss. to Troy-book; and see Vmbrayd, Vpbraide.
 Vnbynd, *v.* ungird (thyself), 1744; Vnbynde, 1974.
 Vncacchid, *pt. pl.*; in *phr.* Vncacchid hertis, let loose their hearts, i.e. lost their courage, 2588. See the note, p. 303.
 Vn-calid (Vn-callyd), *pp.* uncalled, 832.
 (Vnchaunce), mischance, 822*.
 (Vnclean), *adj.* as *s.* unclean substance, poison, 1106.
 Vncleannes, *s.* uncleanness, 4218.
 Vncles, *pl.* uncles, 3443.
 Vnclothe, *v.* unclothe, 5505.
 Vncorsayd, *adj.* unriden, lit. uncoursed, not tried in the course, 3775.
 Vn-corruptid, *pp.* uncorrupted, 4334.
 Vndede, *adj.* undead, alive, 158.

- Vndedlynnes, *s.* immortality, 2734; Vnde[d]lynnes, 3545, 4058.
- Vndefoulid (Vndefowled), *pp.* not trodden down, undefeated, 2630. See Foules.
- Vnder, *prep.* under, 992, 1156; Vndere, 34. See Vndir.
- Vndere-putt, *pp.* subjugated, 5402. See Vndire-put.
- Vndid, *pt. s.* unfolded, 521. See Vndo.
- Vndir (Vnder), *prep.* under, 1845; Vndire, 247, 1092, 1799. See Vnder.
- Vndire-put (Vnder-put), *pp.* subjected, 2025. See Vndere-putt.
- Vndireling (Vnderlinges), *s.* subject, 1861.
- Vndire-take (Vndertake), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* undertake, 1356; Vndire-tuke (Vndertuke), *pt. s.* understood, 2967.
- Vndirfangid (Vnderfonged), *pt. s.* undertook, 910; Vndirfange, *pt. s.* (Vnderfongez, *pr. s.*), received, 2793; Vndir-fong (Vnderfangez, *pr. s.*), *pt. s.* received, 1700.
- Vndirstandings, *pl.* intelligences (an astrological term), 279. See the note to l. 274, p. 289.
- Vndirstandis, *pr. pt.* understand, 252; Vndirstode (Vnderstonde), *pt. pl.* understood, 1794.
- Vndistreynd (Vndistreynd), *pp.* without being commanded, uncompelled, 2779.
- Vndistrobbed (Vndistourblett), *pp.* undisturbed, untroubled, 3418.
- Vndo, *v.* declare, disclose, 1112; Vndone, *pp.* undone, 1472. See Vndid.
- Vndorne, *s.* the third hour, at first 9 A.M. (but afterwards later), 3853. Here *myd-ouir-vndorne* = middle of the period just after undern, i. e. (as I suppose), the middle of the period from 9 to 12, or about half past 10.
- Vn-esid, *pp.* disturbed, not eased, 5054.
- Vne-slayne (Vnslayne), *pp.* unslain, not slain, 2475.
- Vneth, *adv.* scarcely, 2060. See below.
- Vnethes, *adv.* scarcely, 937; Vnethis, with difficulty, 4437; (Vneth), 1370, 2093; (Vneth), 937.
- Vnfaire, *adj.* terrible, frightful, 4864.
- Vnfaire, *adv.* extremely, beyond measure, 1189, 1212, 3873, 3903, 4566; fiercely, cruelly, terribly, 2041, 4741, 4837; grievously, severely, 1224, 3637; indignantly, 837; horribly, 555; Vnfare (Vnfaire), exceedingly, 1409. See Gloss. to Troy-book.
- Vnfaldis, *pr. pl.* unfold, display, 3027.
- Vnfryndschip, unfriendship, enmity, 2722.
- Vngastly, *adv.* unspiritually, in a worldly way, 4430.
- Vnhalesome, *adj.* unwholesome, unsuitable, 4387.
- Vn-happe, *s.* ill luck, 4554; Vnhapp (Vnhappe), 3287.
- Vnhappeiste (Vnhappiest), *adj. superl.* unhappiest, most unfortunate, 713.
- Vn-hele, *s.* misery, 3291. See Jamieson. (Perhaps *he* should be *ere*, as in the Dublin MS. But in both MSS. the line is corrupt, and the alliteration is at fault.)
- Vn-helid, *pp.* uncovered, 3450.
- Vnhemed (Vnhemmyd), unrestrained, 2835.
- Vn-hewyn, *pp.* not hewn down, unslain, 1945.
- Vnhid, *pp.* discovered, made public, 3437.
- Vnhome, *s.* 5530. Almost certainly an error for *vnhone*, i. e. haste. The phrase *with mikel vnhone* is merely the equivalent of the phrase *withouten hone*, i. e. without delay; see *hone* in Stratmann. Thus *vnhone* is the opposite of 'delay,' i. e. haste.
- Vn-honourable, *adj.* dishonourable, 2950.
- Vnhurt, *adj.* unhurt, 5530.
- Vnicornes, *pl.* unicorns, 3593.
- Vnknawen, unknown, 3715; (Vnk[n]awyn), 825*.
- Vnlappis (Vnlappyd, *pt. pl.*), *pr. pl.* unfold, 1932. Cf. Vmlapis.

- Vnlikly, *adj.* unlikely, 5552.
 Vnmete, *adj.* unmeasured, immense, very long, 143.
 Vn-metely, *adj.* unfitting, unseemly, 321.
 Vnneth, *adv.* scarcely, 4185, 4801; (Vneth), 1774; Vnnethe (Vnneth), with difficulty, 2788. See Vneth.
 Vnnethes, *adv.* scarcely, 4078. See above.
 Vnnombirable (Vnnowmerable), *adj.* innumerable, 2365.
 (Vnnowmyrd), *pp.* unnumbered, 1992.
 Vnpossible, *adj.* impossible, 4249.
 Vn-prophetable, *adj.* unprofitable, 3560.
 Vnprouednes, *s.* unprovedness, inexperience, 1019.
 Vnpossible, *adj.* impossible, 635. See Vnpossible.
 Vnreproued, *pp.* without reproach or reproof, 3092; (Vnreprefytt), 3092.
 Vnrde (Vnrde), *adj.* cruel, harsh, 871; Vnrde (Vnrde), 739; Vnrde, rough, wanton, 460. See *Vnrde* in Halliwell.
 Vnrde, *adv.* fiercely, 638; Vnrde, 566.
 Vn-samen, *adv.* not together, far apart, 605.
 Vnschent, *pp.* unharmed, 2143.
 Vnsche, *s.* misfortune, evil fortune, ill luck, 1106, 4471. See Sele.
 Vn-semely, *adv.* unseemly, 862; *adj.* 99.
 Vnsene, *adj.* unseen, i.e. unique, extraordinary, 1026; unequalled, 2536.
 Vnsesid, *pp.* untaken, 5334.
 Vnseson; In vnseson, out of season, at an unseasonable time, 4439.
 Vnslayne, *pp.* not killed, 2668; Vnslayn, 2093, 2232.
 Vnsowmyd (Vnsommed), *pp.* unnumbered, 1991. Lit. 'unsummed.'
 Vnsure, *adj.* insecure, 2136.
 Vntald (Vntalde), *adj.* uncounted, countless, 2677.
 Vnthankes, *adv.* against (your) will; At your vnthankes, against your will, 4698.
 Vn-to, unto, 173, 623, 706, &c.
 Vnwarly, *adv.* unawares, heedlessly, 5329.
 Vnweried, *pp.* unwearied, or uninjured, 3622.
 Vn-wetandly, *adv.* unknown, secretly, 134.
 Vnwondid (Vnwoundet), *pp.* unwounded, 1235.
 Vnworthely (Vnworthly), *adv.* unworthily, 869.
 Vn-wyn, *s.* sorrow, woe, lit. un-joy, joylessness, 531. See *unwonne* in Stratmann, p. 605, col. 1.
 Vn-zarked, *pt. pl.* unfastened, 3209; Vnzarked, unbarred, 2147.
 Voice, *s.* voice, 1000, 1479; (Voyce), 1508; Voise, 2958.
 Voide, *v.* get rid of, 4112; (Voyde), *ger.* to avoid, 1484; to give up, 1784; Voidis, *pr. s.* gets rid of, 4169; leaves, 3655; (Woydez), departs, 1113; Voidis, *pr. pl.* render void; Voidis down þe leuys, bring down the leaves off the trees, 4145; Voidid, *pp.* deprived, 3980; got rid of, 3948; (Woydett), removed, 1338; Voide, departed, 4650.
 Volatile, *s.* fowls, birds, 4637.
 Vouchid safe, vouchsafed, 303.
 Vowtriere, *s.* adultress, 4532. *Short for* Avowtriere.
 Vowtres, *pl.* vultres, 3945. See note to l. 3944, p. 309. The usual O.F. form is *voltour* = Lat. acc. *vulturum*; mod. F. *vautour*. But here we have a form *voutre* = Lat. nom. *vultur*; cf. Span. *buitre*, Port. *abutre*, a vulture.
 Voyce, voice, 718. See Voice.
 (Voyde), *v.* avoid, 2424; Voydis (Woydes), *pr. s.* 2 p. dost empty, 2945; Voydis, *pr. s.* removes, 122. See Voide.
 Vp, up, 80, 82, &c.; Vpp, 760; (Vppe), 758, 977; Vp set, set up, 198; With vp son, with sun-rise, 4067.
 Vp, *adv.* open, 2142; (Vppe), 783*.
 Vpbraide, *s.* reproach, 1800. See Vn-braydis, Vmbrayd.
 Vp-liftis (Vpp lyftes), *pr. s.* uplifts, 805.
 Vryn, *s.* urine, 3826.

- Vs, us, 22, 82, &c.; *dat.* for us, 1674.
- Vse, *s.* use, custom, usage, 2950.
- Vse, *v.* use, 1674; Vsyd, *pt. s.* used, was accustomed, 3594; Vsed, used, 645; (Vsed), *pt. pl.* were accustomed, 738*; Vsyd, *pp.* used, 4324; customary, 4023.
- (Utterly), *adv.* utterly, 1472.
- Vulturnus, *s.* the west-wind, 4145. Such seems to be the required sense; but the true sense is "a south-east by-one-third-south wind;" Lewis and Short.
- (Vyce), *s.* fine appearance, 1539. See Vise.
- Vyne, *s.* vine, 1346; Vynes, *pl.* vines, 4899.
- Vysage (Visage), *s.* visage, face, 2958; (Vysage), 3362.
- Vyse, *ger.* to look, 2928; to behold, 3700; Vyses, *pr. s.* pays heed to, considers necessary, 126. *Short for* Avyse; see *Aviser* in Cotgrave.
- Vysite, *ger.* to visit, 573; (Visitt), 859.
- Wa, *s.* woe, sorrow, calamity, 528, 539, 1103, 1168; pain, 2721; (Wo), 2812; misery, 3075; (Woo), 3153; Waa, woe, misery, 3435; illness, 5606; Wa, *interj.* woe, 4564; Wa is me, woe is me, 1468; Waa (Woo), *as adj.* sorry, 2999; Waes, *pl.* miseries, 4592.
- Wacche-men, watchmen, 5164.
- Wacchis, *pl.* watchmen, sentinels, 5215.
- Wacken (Wakyn), *ger.* waken, arouse, 2276.
- Wadis, *pr. s.* wades, goes away, 4141. Perhaps put for *vadis*, i. e. fades.
- Waes, *pl.* woes, miseries, 4592. See Wa.
- Waest (Woest), *adj. superl.* most wretched, most sorrowful, 2004. See Wa.
- (Wafe), *imp. s.* send, 2866. See Wayfe.
- Wage, *s.* hire, reward, wages, 3426.
- Waged (Wagged), *pt. s.* wagged, nodded, 968.
- Waghe (Wagh), *s.* wall, hence, a bank of drifted snow, 1757. A.S. *wáh*, a wall. See Waves.
- Wai, *s.* way, 4847; (Way), road, 1324; Waies, *pl.* ways, 3852; Wais, 2330; ways, wise, 2013. See Way.
- Waik, *adj.* weak, 3917; (Waike), 3587; (Wake), 1271, 2077.
- Wailaway, *interj.* woe! 4564.
- Waite, *v.* pay heed, look, 3354; Waitis, *pr. s.* watches, 4776; looks, 59; (Wates), looks, 956; Waites, *pr. pl.* look, 4129; Waite, 3630; (Waytyn), look, 2930; Waitid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* looked, considered, 5621; Waited (Wayted), observed, 1764; Waiteand, *pres. part.* looking, 3835; Waite, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* see, take heed, 4949. See Waytis.
- Wakens, *pr. s.* awakes, arises, 2222; (Wakned, *pt. s.*), 2222; Wakyns, *pr. s.* awakes, comes to himself, 3249; (Wakens), *pr. s.* remains awake or alive, 725*; Wakand, *pres. pt.* waking, whilst awake, 356.
- Wald, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* wouldest, 311, 354, 1097; (Wold), 690; Wald, *pt. s.* would, 159; required, 128, 485; (Walde), desired, 1667; Wald it, i. e. would it please, 2684; Wald, *pt. pl.* would, 1, 13, 36; would like to, 3164.
- Wald-eyed, *adj.* wall-eyed, 608. Icel. *valdegðr*. See Wawil-eyed.
- Waldis, *pl.* woods, wolds, 3792, 3799.
- Wale, *adj.* excellent, choice, good, valuable, famous, 75, 294, 809*, 827, 841, 949, 1189, 1287, 1376, 2018, 2261, 2287, 2311, 2783, 2932, 3256, 3435, 3515, 3561, 3720, 4153, 4304; chosen, appointed, 4772; respected, 2742; Wale quile, good time, short period, 4597; (Wale), valuable, 2150.
- Wale, *v.* choose, 1667; *ger.* to choose, 4655; *imp. s.* 1014, 806*. Goth. *waljan*.
- Wales; see Vailes.
- Walke, *v.* walk over, overrun, 519;

- Walkis, *imp. pl.* walk about, 541.
- Walke, *s.* walk, march, 3799.
- Wall, *error for* Was, was, 5646.
- Wall, *s.* wall, 1369, 1405; Wallis, *pl.* walls, 1376; (Walle, *s.*), 1153, 1384; (Wallis), 1161, 1359, 1420; (Wallez), 1030.
- Walld, *pt. pl.* would, 5335. See Wald.
- (Wallez); see Wawes.
- Wallid, *pp.* walled, 1149.
- Walowand, *pres. part.* wallowing, whirling, 4064. A.S. *wealwian*, to turn about.
- Walows, *pr. s.* fades, grows dull, 4627. Better *welows*; see *welken, welwen* in Strattmann.
- Walt (Weld), *pt. s.* wielded, 838.
- Wambe, *s.* womb, 550, 579; Wame, 386, 531, 538; Wambis, *pl.* bellies, 3813; (Wambes), 2168*; Wames, 4276. A.S. *wamb*.
- Wan, 1 *pt. s.* got, begot (lit. won), 587; came, 3458; Wan, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* didst win, 949; Wan, *pt. s.* won, 616, 811; conquered, 3471; Wan, *pt. s.* got; Wan up, got up, climbed up, 1384; Wan of, stripped off, 2543; arrived, came, 5213; Wan to wax, attained his full growth, 3986.
- Wand, wand, 57.
- Wande (Wonnd), *v.* hesitate, 2723; Wand (Waned), *pt. pl.* flinched, 1411. A.S. *wandian*. (The spelling *waned* is bad.)
- Wandreth, *s.* peril, 528. Icel. *vandræði*.
- Wane, *v.* decrease, 4772.
- Wanes, *pl.* dwelling, abode, quarters, 134, 3748; (Wane, *s.*), rooms, 3222. Cf. A.S. *wunian*, to dwell.
- Wannes, *pr. s.* lit. makes pale, causes to fade, dims, 4627; grows pale, 4142.
- (Want), *v.* lack, be lacking, 809*; Wantis, *pr. s.* fails, 4586, 5480; lacks, needs, 3497; (Wantes), lacks, 996; is lacking, 2168; Wantis (Vantes), it is lacking (to us), 1854; (Wantes), fails, 1325; (Wantyd), *pt. pl.* lacked, 3150.
- Wanton, *adj.* wanton, irregular, 12.
- Wapen, *pl.* weapons, 3884; (Wapens), 1400; (Waypynnenez), 958; Wapens, *pl.* weapons, 65, 4958. A.S. *wæpen*, sing. and *pl.* (neuter sb.).
- Wapened (Wapenned), *adj.* armed, 1250.
- Wapp, *s.* stroke, blow, 5318; At a wapp, in a moment, at once, on a sudden, 3040; At a wap, 4142.
- Ward, *s.* guard, 5614; troop, 3040; keeping, 5314; Warde, *s.* charge, 77; keeping, 5172; patronage, 4500; protection, 4500.
- Wardan, warden, 75.
- Warde, *ger.* to keep, guard, 5374.
- Wardrere (Wardrerd), club, truncheon, warder, 838.
- Ware, *pt. pl.* were, 3, 72, 84, 199; Ware, *pt. s. subj.* were, would be, 13, 150, 225; might be, seems to be, 101, 391.
- Ware, *adj.* aware, 59, 75, 119; wary, skilful, 202; (War), aware, 1585, 3212.
- Ware þe, *imp. s.* beware, take heed to thyself, 2830.
- Warisch, *v.* be cured, recover, 5606; *ger.* to heal, cleanse, 4217. O.F. *warir, garir, F. guérir*. See Warysche.
- Warke (Werk), *s.* ache, pain, 2811.
- Warlazes, *pl.* warlocks, sorcerers, 4425; evil beasts, monsters, 3795. E. *warlock*. See Warlow.
- (Warloked), *pp.* fettered, 769*. The same as *warroked*; see *Warroke* in Gl. to P. Plowman.
- (Warlow), *s.* deceiver, 1706. See Warlazes.
- Warne (Werne), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* warn, 2014; Warned, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* refused, 1468; Warned, *pp.* refused, 1467; told by way of warning, 4221.
- Warnes, *s.* wariness, caution, 3354; foreknowledge, 3256.
- Warnyng, *s.* warning, 571.
- (Warpyd), *pt. pl.* twisted, 798.
- Warre, *pt. s. subj.* were, 582. See Ware.
- (Warryd); see Weried.
- Warysche (Warysh), 1 *pr. s. subj.*

- may be healed, hope to recover of, 2811. See Warisch.
- Waryson, *s.* gift, reward, 3431. See *warison* in Halliwell.
- Was, *pt. s.* was, 17, 37, 39, &c.; Wasse (Was), 1366; Was, *pt. pl.* were, 73, 2002.
- Wasp, wasp, 738; Waspis, *pl.* 3011.
- Wast, *adj.* waste, unproductive, 3561.
- Wast, *s.* waste, desert, 3487, 3906, 5565; Wastis, *pl.* waste places, 3792, 4044.
- Wast, *ger.* to waste, destroy, 5382; Wast, 1 *pr. pl.* (Wastyd, 1 *pt. pl.*), 2330; Wastid, *pp.* wasted, 1941; defeated, 4008; (Wastyd), destroyed, 1311, 2141.
- Wastoure, *s.* waster, destroyer, 5310.
- Wate, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* know, wot, 3436, 4153; 2 *p.* knowest, 107; 2 *pr. pl.* know, 3090; (Wayte), 2379.
- (Wates), *pr. s.* waits, looks, gazes, 781*, 1129, 1527; (Watyn), *pr. pl.* gaze, 700. See Waite.
- Wathe, *s.* danger, peril, 119, 5586; (Wothe), 1103; Wathe, evil, harm, 1411, 3523; harm (Lat. text *impericia*, want of skill), 3355. Icel. *váði*; see Stratmann.
- Wath, *adj.* (*error* for Wale, i.e. choice), 2150. The Dublin MS. has Wale.
- Watir (Water), *s.* water, stream, 1303, 2152; Water, 59, 1290; Watere, 112, 2539; Watre, 5470; Wattre, 3737; Wattir, 4299; Waters, *pl.* rivers, 1079; Watirs (Waters), 1967.
- Watirles, *adj.* waterless, dry, 3487. (Waueschyd), *pp.* put away, 822. See Wayue.
- Wawes, *pl.* walls, 5644; (Wallez), 3222; Wawis (Wallez), 1523. See Waghe.
- Wawil-ēzed (Waugle-eghed), *adj.* wall-eyed, 1706. See Wald-ēzed.
- Wawis (Wawes), *pl.* waves, 1153; Wawys, 26; (Wawes), 3167*. See Wages.
- Wax, *v.* grow, increase, 4772; *ger.* 3986.
- Wax, *s.* wax, 113.
- Way, *s.* way, 132, 428, 1310; Ways, *pl.* ways, tracks, 4105; Way (Ways, *pl.*), way, wise, 1643.
- Wayfe, *v.* remove, put away, 297; (Wayfe), *ger.* to send, 1868; Wayfe (Wafe), 1 *pr. s.* allow, grant, waive, 723; (Wayfez), *pr. s.* sends, despatches, 1716; Wayfid, *pp.* put away, 822; Wayfe, *imp. pl.* quit, leave, 2469. See Wayue.
- Waykis (Wakens), *pr. s.* becomes weak, 1006.
- Wayne, *error* for Wayue, *v.* give, deliver, 3426. See Wayue.
- Waynes (Waynez), *pl.* wains; Waynes to mete, for wains to pass each other, 1324.
- Waynest (Vanyshit), *pt. s. refl.* vanished, 1113.
- Wayns (Waynes), *pl.* veins, 1730.
- Wayryngle, *s.* a little villain, 1706. From A.S. *wearg*, Icel. *vargr*, a felon. Cf. *variangel*, a butcher-bird, Chaucer, C. T. (D. 1408). The suffix is the A.S. *-incel*, as in *ráp-incel*, a little rope.
- (Waystes), *pr. s.* wastes away, 3254.
- Waytis, *pr. s.* looks, 265; perceives, 3636; (Wates), looks, 1585; Waytes, looks, gazes, 700, 945; waits for, looks for, 131; Wayted, *pt. pl.* looked out, found, 194; Waytid, *pp.* looked, 4233. See Waite.
- Wayue (Wafe), *ger.* to send, deliver, 2431; (Wayfe), 1175; Wayue, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* give up, 5134; Wayues, *pr. s.* despatches, sends, 4691; (Wayffes), sends, 2316; Wayues, *pr. s.* puts aside, waives, 4656; Wayued, *pp.* transmitted, 4221; sent, 2695; (Wayfed), conveyed, 1728. *Not* Wayne; see Wayfe. Mod. E. *waive*. See *waiven* in Stratmann.
- Wayues, *pr. s.* leans (?), 945. *But* D. has Wayfes *vp* a window, i.e. lifts up a window, opens a window. See above. The reading *out* was due to thinking of *waytes*, i.e. looks, in the latter part of the line.

- Wages (Wawes), *pl.* waves, 1309.
 See Wawis.
- We. *pron.* we, 178, 180, &c.
- We. *s. man*, 541, 5080, 4655; (Wye), 1858, 2302, 2389. See Wee, Wye.
- Webbis, *pl.* fabrics, woven cloths, 4911, 5295; (Webbys), 1547; Webbis, cobwebs, *rather than* webs of cloth, 4807; Webis (Webbes), fabrics, 1577; (Webbez), 1523.
- Wed, *v.* wed, 297; Wedd, *pt. s.* wedded, 3454; 1 *pt. s.* 587; Wed him (Weddit hym), *pp.* wedded, 822.
- Wede, *s.* weed, 413.
- Wede, *s.* garment, 120; (Wedes, *pl.*), stuff, lit. garment, 2229; (Wede), dress, armour, 809*; Wedis, *pl.* weeds, garments, 232, 3796, 3959; armour, 3015; (Wedes), 1506, 1530, 2768; robes, 1559; Wedes, *pl.* weeds, garments, 2886; Here-wedis (wedes), garments of iron, coats of mail, 1010.
- Wede, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* go mad, 539; Wedis (Wodez), *pr. s.* goes mad, 1926. A.S. *wédan*.
- Weding (Weddyng), *s.* wedding, 827.
- Wedire, *s.* weather, 4142; Wedirs, *pl.* weathers, tempests, 557; Wedres, storms, 4796.
- Wedowe, widow (*Dubl. MS.* albido for a wido), 1977; Wedow, 5082; Wedous, *pl.* widows, 1558.
- Wee, *s. man*, 134, 314, 383, 477, 2521, 5317, &c.; (Wy), 725, 1628; (Wye), 855; (Weght), 1993; Wees, *pl.* men, 3264, 4190, 5371; (Wies), 1030; (Wyes), 1250, 2212. See We, Wye.
- Welcum, *pp. as adj.* welcome, 3211; Welcom, 2302.
- Weld, *v.* rule over, obtain, 3423; Welde (Weld), *ger.* to wield, to govern, 2994; Welden, to wield, 651; Welles, 2 *pr. s.* wieldest, rulest, 4932; (Weldes), *pr. s.* wields, possesses, 3247; (Weldyd), *pt. s.* ruled, 827*.
- Wele, *adv.* well, 30, 44, 171, &c.
- Wels, *s.* weal, 4621; (Whele), 1858.
- Welk, *pt. pl.* walked, 4190.
- Welken, *s.* sky, 247, 1566, 3038; (Welkyn), 714; Welkyn, 554.
- Well ne, well nigh, very nearly, 539. See Wele.
- Wella (Wele), *adv.* very, 1970.
- Welland, *pres. part.* welling, boiling, 4080.
- Wellis, *pl.* springs, streams, 4385; springs, 4976.
- (Welt), *an error for* Wilt = Willid, *pp.* gone astray, 2984. See Willid.
- Welth, *s.* wealth, 3247, 3582; happiness, pleasure, 2276; success, 937; Welthe, prosperity, 3272; Welthis, *s. pl. as sing.* prosperity, 3290; Welthys, *pl.* riches, 4467.
- Weltid, *pt. pl.* rolled, 839; (Weltyn), *pr. pl.* 839.
- Weimen, *pl.* women, 528, 3755.
- Wemles, *adj.* stainless, 4949; unhurt, untouched, 4066.
- Wenchis (Whenches), *pl.* wenches, maidens, 1558.
- Wende, *v.* go, turn, 865; *ger.* to go, 910; (Wend), *v.* go, 1632; (Wynd), *ger.* depart, 2949; Wendis, *pr. s.* wends, goes, 120, 371, 406; comes, 511; departs from life, dies, 933; (Wendes), goes, 976; Wendis (Wendyn), *pr. pl.* go, 1994. See Went.
- Wene, *s.* weening, supposition, 3516; *also as v.* I suppose, 3516. See below.
- Wene, *ger.* to suppose, 390; (Wene), *v.* 3119; Wenes, 2 *pr. s.* weenest, supposest, 3548; (Wenys), dost expect, 1736; Wenys (Wenes), *pr. s.* weens, expects, 844, 939; Wend, *pt. s.* thought, supposed, 2644; (Wende), 2546; (Wenyd), 933; Wend, *pt. pl.* thought, supposed, 3631; expected, 3431; Wenand, *pres. part.* expecting, 3587, 4308; Wene, *imp. s.* suppose, 3275; Wenys, *imp. pl.* ween, think, 1938.
- Wengis, *pl.* wings, 413.
- Went him, *pt. s.* went, 749; Went, went, 37, 428; *pt. pl.* 1410; (Wenden), 901; Went, *pp.* gone, 159. See Wend.
- (Wepe), *grr.* to weep, 872; Wepis,

- pr. s.* weeps, 972; (Wepys), 963, 1287, 727*; Wepand, *pres. part.* weeping, 2999.
- (Wer), were, 764. See Were.
- (Werayour), *s.* warrior, soldier, 2643. See Werreour.
- Werbild (Werblet, *pt. pl.*), *pp.* blown, lit. warbled, 2222.
- Werd, *s.* world, 18, 24, 37, 40, 247, 519, 3471; earth, 4142; plain, 4136; (Werld), world, 995, 1051; (Warld), 2653; (World), 2255; Werde, world, 189, 389, 441, 1963, 4305, 5289; Of þe werde, in the world, 3597; þe litil werde, the little world, the microcosm, or world within a man, 4494; in l. 3301, the former *werd* = world, but the latter is an error for *werk* = work; see l. 3299. See Worde.
- Werd, *s.* fate, 3247; Werdes, *pl.* destinies, fates, 257, 270, 949; Werdis, 283; (Werdes), 1099; (Werdez), 702, 2260. See Wird, Werid.
- Wordly (Wordly), *adj.* worldly, 3262.
- Were, 2 *pt. s. subj.* were, mightest be, 368; *pt. s. subj.* 142, 193, 239, 421, &c. See Wer.
- Were, *s.* war, 651, 5586, 5598; conflict, 2260; (Were), 808*; Weris, *pl.* wars, 4400, 4502; Weres, 2365; Of weres, in war, 2373.
- Were, *ger.* to wear, 3959, 5123.
- Were ye (*read* Were þe), *imp. s.* defend thyself, 2830.
- Were (Wery), *v.* worry, 2533. See Wery.
- Weres, *pr. s.* wars, 3536.
- Weried (Warryd), *pp.* accursed, 3212. See *Warien* in Stratmann.
- Werid (Werd), *s.* weird, fate, 689. See Werd.
- Weris, 2 *pr. s.* wearest, 2308; Werid, *pt. s.* wore, 3635. See Werrid.
- Weris (Weres), *pl.* men, 1300. A.S. *wer.*
- Werke, *s.* work, deed, 1423, 3199; doing, 2856; (Werk), work, 1290; fortification, 1298; Werk, work, 1071; Werkis, *pl.* works, deeds, 12, 38, 3271; (Werkez), 727*.
- Werke, *s.* pain, 539. The same word as the above.
- Werkis, *pr. s.* pains, 531.
- Werld, *s.* world, 3254; (Werlde) 1502.
- (Werld), *error for* Werd, *s.* fate, 3247. See Werd.
- Werpis, *pr. pl.* warp, twist, 798; (Warpyn), cast, 1300; Werpe vp, cast up, hence rise up, 557; Werp-id, *pt. s.* uttered, 202; (Warpyd), spake, 709; Werpel (Warpyd), cast, flung, set, 1526; Werp-id (Wappyd, *wrongly for* Warpyd), *pt. s.* threw, flung, 1432; Werp-id, *pp.* uttered, 243; Werpis (Warpez), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* throw, 2142.
- Werray (Werre), *ger.* to war upon, fight against, 2689; Werrays (Warreys), *pr. s.* wars, carries on war, 2495; Werrais (Werrys), wars, makes war, 3166; Werraid, *pt. s.* warred, carried on war, 3730. O.F. *werreier* (Burguy).
- Werreour, *s.* warrior, destroyer by war, 5310; Werraour (Weryour), warrior, 3211; Werreours, *pl.* warriors, 2643; Werriouris (Weriours), 1014; (Weryours), 1798; Werriours (Werreour, *s.*), *pl.* warriors, 2206; (Weryours), 2325; Werrayouris, warriors, 3568; Werraours, they who make war (upon us), 4294; Werrayours, *pl. gen.* of warriors, 4007.
- Werre (Were), war, 2202; Werres (Werez), *pl.* 1928.
- Werrid (Wered), 2 *pt. pl.* wore, 2290. See Weris.
- Wers, *adj. comp.* worse, 3199.
- Werst, *adj.* worst, 532, 4656.
- Werstillare (Wristiller), wrestler, 2287.
- Wery, *adj.* weary, 1271, 3488, 3917.
- (Wery), *ger.* to worry, 759*. See Were.
- Weryd, *pt. s.* wore, 3330.
- Weschid (Wessh, *pt. pl.*), *pt. s.* washed, 2543.
- Wessell (Vessell), *s.* plate, 2928.
- West, *adj.* west, 1733.
- Wete, *v.* wit, know, 241, 304, 680,

- 5016; *ger.* to know, 714, 1718; to wit, 1728; Wetis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* know ye, 3516; know, 294; Wete, *pr. s. subj.* may know, may wit, 2783; Wete, *imp. s.* know, 1970; Wete, *imp. pl.* know, 4007; Wētis (Wetes), 1938.
- Wete, *v. error for Wene* (as in D.), suppose, 3119.
- Wethire, *adj.* Wethire halfe, left side, wrong side, evil direction (Lat. *in sinistrum*). 3355. A.S. *wīðer*. Cf. *Widdersinnis* in Jamieson.
- Wethris, *pl.* wethers, 4476.
- Wetirly, *adv.* truly, 4222; (Witterly), certainly, 2856; Weterly, certainly, surely, 304; (Witterly), 1423.
- Wetis, *pr. s.* waits, watches, 241. See Waite.
- Wex, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* grew, 5621; *pt. s.* 616, 629; (Wex), became, 1189.
- (Weyle), *v.* choose, 759*. See Wale.
- Wejt, *s.* weight, 5473.
- (What), what, 682, 683; (Whatt), 1147; What of, what with, 528; *interj.* what! 723*.
- When, when, 42, 119, &c.
- (Whene), *s.* queen, 733*.
- (Where), where, 683.
- Whēfire, *conj.* whether, 249.
- Which, who, 828*.
- (Whil), *conj.* while, 2255; (Whils), whilst, 2172; (Whilse), 1220.
- (Whistely), *adv.* silently, 1851.
- Whit, *for* With, with, 3013; (Whit), 1613.
- Who, who? 834*.
- (Whyne), whence, 834*.
- Whytin (Within), within, 1290.
- Wiche-craft, *s.* witchcraft, 378.
- Wicket, *s.* small door, 5545.
- Wickid, *adj.* wicked, 2425.
- Wickidly, *adv.* wickedly, 2425; (Wikedly), 1728.
- Wickidnes, *s.* wickedness, evil, 3277, 1425.
- Wide, *adj.* wide, 37; (Wyde), 1970; Wid open (Wide hopyn), *adv.* wide open, 1526.
- Wife, wife, 297. See Wyfe.
- (Wight), *adj.* nimble, 765*.
- (Wightly), *adv.* actively, 1405, 1428.
- Wild, *ger.* to rule, 3477; (Weld), *ger.* to rule, govern, 994, 2653; rule over, 3086; to wield, possess, 1669, 1736; Wild (Wilde), to possess, 939; (Wyld), 2949; Wild, *v.* wield, possess, 301; Wild (Welde), *v.* rule, possess, 3227; Wild (Wyld him), possess for himself, 1667; Wild, *ger.* to possess, 1669; Wildis, *pr. pl.* possess, 4481; Wildid (Weldit), *pt. s.* governed, 2303.
- Wild, *adj.* wild, 378, 557, 1250; (Wilde), 1153; (Wylde), 1540.
- Wild, *for* Will, *s.* will, desire, 4622. Lat. text—*uoluntas*.
- Wildare (Weldar), *s.* governor, ruler, 3166. See Wildire.
- Wild-hedid, *adj.* wild-headed, 12.
- Wildire (Welder), wielder, ruler, 1608. See Wildare.
- Wildirnes, *s.* wilderness, 3487, 4044.
- Wile, *s.* wile, guile, 416, 5233; Wiles, *pl.* 4365; (Wilez), 1764; (Willes), stratagems, 1363.
- Wilily (Willyly), *adv.* with guile, carefully, 1764.
- Will, *s.* wish, desire, 14, 386, 1718, 4604; will, 323; intention, 304; power, disposal, 3503; power to dispose of, 3123; (Wille), will, wish, desire, 680, 2013; (Wyll), 1973; Wille, will, resolution, 106; (Willes), *pl.* desires, 1890; At will, 939; To will, at his will, 301.
- Will, *pr. s.* desires, 636; will, 297, 301; (Wille), will, 1471; (Wyll), 1754; Will, 1 *pr. s.* 294; 2 *pr. pl.* 416, 446; Will 3e, if ye will, 212; Willis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* willest, desirest, 4240; Willis, *pr. s.* wills, desires, 291, 3494.
- Will (Wille), *adj.* at a loss, 1272. So in Barbour. Icel. *villr*. See Willid.
- Willi (Willy), *adj.* willing, ready, disposed, 2689.
- Willid, *pt. pl.* strayed, 4132; Willid, *pp.* lost, bewildered, astray, 2984. Cf. Icel. *villr*, astray; see Will, *adj.*

- (Wilnet), *pt. s.* desired, 680; Will-ne, *imp. s.* inquire of, ask, 5036. A.S. *wilnian*.
- Wilnyng, *s.* desire, 1876.
- Wilsom, *adj.* wild, waste, desolate (lit. wildsome), 4076, 5565.
- Winde (Wende), 1 *pr. s.* wend, go, 827. See Wend.
- Wing (Wynge), wing, portion, district, 1051; Wingis, *pl.* wings, 5523.
- Wintre (Wynter), *s.* winter, 2895; Wintir (Wynter), 2152; Wintir, *pl.* years, 4441; Wintire, years, 3556; Winter (Wynter), 692; Wintris, *gen.* winter's, 3959.
- Wird, *s.* fate, 443; Wirid, 2260; Wirdis, *pl.* weirds, destinies, fate, 41, 178, 4950; Wirdes, 2307, 2379. See Werd, Werid.
- Wirke, *v.* work, do, 937; *ger.* to do, 2013; to act, 160; (Werke), to do, 2949; (Wirche), to act, 3359; Wirke, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* work, 3092; Wirkis (Wirkyd), *pr. pl.* work, 1412.
- Wirling (Wirlyng), *s.* dwarf, 1706; Wirlinges (Wyrlyngez), dwarfs, 1733. See *wirl, wurl*, a dwarfish person; Jamieson.
- Wirschip, *s.* honour, 11, 616, 662, 5586; (Worschip), 723, 811, 1949, 2261; Wirschips, *pl.* honours, 3712.
- Wirschip (Worshippys, *pr. pl.*), *pp.* worshipped, honoured, 1963.
- Wirschipfull, *adj.* worshipful, worthy, 243.
- Wirstill (Wrastyll), *v.* wrestle, 2276.
- Wis, *imp. s.* make known, declare, explain, 4997; (Wissez), *pr. s.* instructs, guides, 793*; Wissid (Wist), *pp.* made known, 689. A.S. *wissian*.
- Wisdom (Wisdom), wisdom, 898. (Wisely), *adv.* wisely, 765*.
- Wist, *pt. s.* knew, 171, 937, 1189, 3080, 762*; *pt. pl.* 159, 1148, 5465.
- Wit, *s.* wisdom, 662; (Witte), 1858. See Witt.
- Wite, *s.* blame; *read* Na wite, no blame, 477. A.S. *wite*.
- Wite, *v.* blame, 876. See above.
- Wite, *ger.* to depart, 3277; Wite, *v.* send, make to depart, 5032. A.S. *gewitan*, to depart. See Witis.
- Witerwarde, *for* Witherwarde, *adj.* adverse; þa witherwarde, those who are openly adverse, 4297.
- With, *prep.* with, 49, 64, 82, 83, 85; by, 2079, 2397, 2562, 3493, 3578, 4733, 5589; against, 3166, 3607; To saue with oure lyuys, to preserve our lives with, 4269; With þat, thereupon, 330, 3054; provided that, 343.
- With-draw, 1 *pr. s.* retreat, 2015; With-drewe, *pt. pl.* retreated, drew back, 5449.
- With-in, *adv.* within, 14, 1030; *prep.* 206, 211, 348; With-inen, *prep.* 251.
- With-out, *prep.* outside, 3919; (With-owte), 815*; Without, without, 148.
- With-out, *adv.* outside, 1306; (With-owte), 1032.
- Withouten, *prep.* without, 118; (With-owtyn), 1103, 2196; besides, 3600; Withouten, *prep.* without, outside, 133, 335; (With-owte), 698; (With-out), beyond, 1209.
- Withouten (Withowte), *adv.* outside, 1389.
- With-sitt (Withsitt, *ger.*), *v.* oppose, 2410.
- With-stande, *v.* oppose, resist, 5624; (Withstonde), *ger.* 1738; With-stand (Wit-stande), *ger.* 2077; With-standis (Withstandyn), *pr. pl.* withstand, 1138; Withstand, 1443; With-stude (Withstondyn), *pt. pl.* withstood, 1405; (Withstonde), 1053; (Withstode), 1443; With-stude (With-stondyn), *pt. pl.* 1031.
- Witis, *pr. s.* departs, 5318. See Wite.
- Witles, *adj.* witless, unwise, 107.
- Witnes, *pr. s.* witnesses, shows, 916; (Wittnes), 1439, 2900; Wittnes, witnesses, 488; (Wittnesse), 1592.
- Witrelly, *adv.* verily, 422. See Witter.

- Witt, *s.* wisdom, 3092; wit, knowledge, 45, 259, 898; mind, 489; fancy, 5531; Witt (Witte), wit, knowledge, 2689; reason, 1410; Wittis, *pl.* wits, senses, 2336, 2420; dispositions, 14; Man wittis, man's wits, 5552; Wittes, *pl.* understandings, 1890. See Wit.
- Witter, *adj.* knowing, 629. Icel. *vittr.* See *witer* in Stratmann.
- (Wittily), *adv.* wisely, 2245.
- Wigt (Wight), *adj.* strong, active, vigorous, 1014, 1798, 2206.
- Wigtis (Wightez), *pl.* wights, men, 3212.
- Wigtly, *adv.* nimbly, 651, 3040; vigorously, 2245; quickly, 120, 3774; (Wightly), quickly, 1030; bravely, 1298.
- Wlattis, *pr. pl.* disgust, 4277; Wlated, *pp.* disgusted, nauseated, more than satisfied, 5634.
- Wlonk, *adj.* proud, 5089. A.S. *wlonc.*
- Wod, *s.* wood, forest, 70, 2984, 3795; Wodd, 3906; (Wode), 776; Woddiss, *pl.* woods, 4116, 4382, 4721, 5242.
- Wode (Wod), *s.* wood (of a spear-shaft), 798.
- Wode, *adj.* mad, 738, 1410, 5346; angry, 3167; (Wod), raging, 1168. A.S. *wod.*
- (Wode), *adv.* madly, 1189.
- Wodnes, *s.* madness, fury, 4400.
- Wodwose, *pl.* (*though the form is sing.*), satyrs, fauns, 1549. * *Wode-wose, uowyse, woodwose*, Silvanus, satyrus: "Prompt. Parv.
- Wold (Wald), *pt. s.* would, 751.
- Wolfe, wolf, 2533; Wolfes, *pl.* 5242.
- Woll, *s.* wool, 4166; Wolle, 3957.
- Woman, woman, 348, 428.
- Wombe, *s.* womb, 755. See Wame.
- Won, *pp.* won, 454; reached, arrived, 4136, 5523; got, passed, 4196; (Wonne), 942; Wonn (Wonne), 818; Wonn (Wonnez, *wrongly*), *pp.* won, 1238.
- Won, *v.* live, dwell, 4044 (see note); *ger.* to dwell, 4310; Wons, *pr. s.* dwells, is, remains, 5565; Wonnes, *pr. s.* dwells, 3089; Wonand, *pres. part.* dwelling, 5475. And see Wont.
- Wond, *adj.* 5428. Read *woud*, i.e. mad, furious, highly excited. See Wode.
- Wonde (Wound), *ger.* to wound, 2212; Wondid, *pt. pl.* wounded, 3939; Wondid (Woundit), *pp.* wounded, 933; (Woundytt), 3131; (Woundett), 1277.
- Wonden (Woundit, i.e. wounded), *pp.* wound, involved in, 2811 (where we should insert *of* before *my* in the Ashmole text); Wondyn, *pp.* wound, wreathed; applied to a wreathed snow-drift, 1757.
- Wonder, wonder; *as adj.* strange, 811, 841.
- Wonder, *adv.* wonderfully, 629.
- Wondid, *pp.* wounded, 3150. (*But an error for wontid, pt. pl. wanted, lacked.*)
- Wonding, *s.* wounding, 4795.
- Wondire, *s.* wonder, 13, 549; (Wondre), 852, 1150, 1616; Wondre, 3917; Wonder, 514.
- Wondirfull, *adj.* wonderful, 416.
- Wondirly (Wondrely), *adv.* wonderfully, 1300; (Wonderly), 933; Wonderly, 898.
- Wondirs (Wonderys); Me wondirs, it is wonderful to me, 3119; Vs wondres, it is wonderful to us, 4033; Wondird (Wounderyd), *pp.* amazed, 2904.
- Wonn, *adj.* wan, pale, white, 1757.
- Wont, *pt. s.* dwelt, 134; Wont, *pt. pl.* dwelt, 4721; Wont, *pp.* wont, 725.
- Wonynge-stede, *s.* dwelling-place, 3734. Cf. Du. *woonstede*, a dwelling-place.
- Worche, *ger.* to work, perform, 313.
- Worde, *s.* word, tale, 243; fame, report, 37; (Word), 709; Out of worde, beyond word, beyond telling, 3099 [the Dublin MS. has *oute of warde*, beyond guard, past restraint]; Wordis, *pl.* words, 95, 167, 202, 237; (Wordes), 840; (Wordez), 984.
- Worde, *s.* world, 5131. See Werd.
- Wordly, *adj.* worldly, p. 279, l. 16.

- Worm, *s.* serpent, snake, 511;
 Worme, 383; Wormes, *pl.* serpents, 4795, 5428; reptiles, 4198; worms, 5589.
- (Worship), *s.* honour, 2248.
- Worth, *v.* be, 691; become, 4228; come to pass, happen, 3080, 3552; Worth, *v.* get ready (lit. become), 2004; Worth, *v.* get up (lit. become), 2878; (Worth), come to pass, happen, 714, 3275; become, attain, 762*; Worthe, *v.* be, 1834; become, 189, 4597; take place, happen, 119, 171, 341; (Worth), become, 1272, 1881; befall, 2255; Worthe, *ger.* to be, 1817; (Worth), to be, 2084; to become, to turn to, 3391; Worthis, *pr. s.* becomes, 383, 385, 468, 722; is, 4860; mounts, mounts up (lit. becomes), 2973; [*spelt* Worthes], 3613; Worthis, becomes, turns, 3254; goes, 3302; (Worthes), becomes, 2521; Worthis, *pr. s.* (as *fut.*) will happen, will come to pass, 4059; shall be, 477; Worthis (Worthez), happens, 1736; Worthis, *pr. s. impers.* it is, it needs, 4294; Worthis, 2 *pr. s.* becomest, Worthis thaim ouire, gettest the better of them, subduest them, 4297; Worthe, 2 *pr. pl.* (ye) become, 4452; (Worthen), are, 1034; (Worth), 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst be (MS. *wroth*), 810*; Worthe, become, 103; Worthe (Worth), *pr. s. subj.* happen, 1978; Worthe (Worthen), 1 *pr. pl. subj.* become, be, 2445; Worthid, *pt. s.* happened, occurred, 2310, 2317, 5531; became, 378; (Worth), *pt. s.* happened, 3090; Worthid, *pt. s. subj.* should come to pass, should be so, 3275; Worthe (Worthen), *pt. pl.* (or *pp.*) became, or become, 1443 [*the form worthen is a pp.*]; Worthe, *pp.* become, turned to, 4524; (Worthen), become, 722; Worthid, become, 591.
- Worth, *v.* esteem worthy, 2124; Worthid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* esteemed, 3090.
- Worthe, *adj.* worthy, 302, 3426; (Worth), worth, 2830; (Worthi), worthy, 755; (Worthy), 2287; Worthi, worthy, deserving, 3436; (Worthy), 1798, 2078, 765*.
- Worthili, *adv.* worthily, 1405; (Worthyly), highly, 2150.
- Worthines, *s.* worthiness, 662; highness, 3163; (Worthynes), 1938; worship, 2684; Worthenes (Worthiness), worthiness, 1825.
- Worhist (Worthiest), *adj. superl.* worthiest, 1608.
- Worthly, *adv.* worthily, 1428.
- Worht (Wroght), *pp.* wrought, caused, 3264.
- Wose, *s.* juice, 413. A.S. *wós*.
- Woud, *adj.* mad, furious, excited, 5428. See Wode.
- Wounde (Wound), *s.* wound, 1411; Woundis (Woundez), *pl.* wounds, 1331.
- (Woundes), *pr. s.* wounds, 1214; Woundid, *pt. s.* wounded, 1214; Woundid (Woundit), *pt. pl.* wounded, 3200; Woundid (Wounden, *pr. pl.*), 1396; Woundid (Woundett), *pp.* 2086.
- Woundird (Wondderytt), *pp.* amazed, struck with wonder, 2856.
- Woydis (Woydez), *pr. s.* puts away, dismisses, 879; (Woydez), *imp. pl.* quit, leave, 2469. See Voyde.
- Woze (Wogh), injury, wrong, harm, 2812. A.S. *wóh*.
- Wozes, *pl.* walls, 3300. A.S. *wáh*.
- Wraa, *s.* corner, retired spot, 4190; Wra (Wray), corner, 1585. Icel. *rá*, Dan. *vraa*.
- Wraiste, *adj.* perverse, variable, 4622.
- Wrake, *s.* vengeance, 1412; Wrak, 2721. A.S. *wracu*.
- Wrange, *s.* wrong, 2812.
- Wrate, 1 *pt. s.* wrote, 2431; (Wrote), 3163; Wrate (Wrote), *pt. s.* 1825; Wrate, *pt. pl.* wrote, 203.
- Wrath, *adj.* angry, wroth, 738, 841, 2245; Wrathe, 3589.
- Wrath, *s.* fit of anger, 2310.
- Wrathfull, *adj.* wrathful, 3167.
- Wrawid, *pp.* angry, peevish, 3167. See *Wrah* in Stratmann.
- Wreke, *v.* avenge, wreak, 3199; Wrekis (Wrekcs), *pr. s.* avenges,

- 855; Wrekis (Wrekes), *pr. pl.* avenge, 1410.
- Wrengis, *pr. s.* wrings, 339.
- Wrenkis, *pl.* tricks, 4365. A.S. *wrenc.*
- Wrestild (Wrystyllyd), *pp.* wrestled, 784.
- Wreten, *pp.* written, 643; (Written), 1600, 1637; (Wrytten), 1845.
- Wrerh, *s.* wrath, 855, 865.
- Wrethen, *pp.* writhen, coiled up, 5526.
- Wricchidnes, *s.* wretchedness, misery, 4589.
- Wriche, *s.* wretch, 3075, 4059; Wriches, *pl.* wretches, 4005, 4564; Wricchis, 4597; (Wrechez), 1733.
- Wristilling (Wristylung), *s.* wrestling, 2260.
- Write, 1 *pr. s.* write, 2009; (Writtez), 1 *pr. pl.* 1727.
- Writh, *s.* wrath, ire, 4389, 4847, 5326; Writhe, 4153.
- Writhing, *s.* angering; For writhing, for fear of angering, 5036.
- Writhis, *pr. s. impers.* it makes (you) angry, 4639 (see the note, p. 312); Writhis, *pr. s.* becomes wrath, 2593; *refl.* 1189; Writhis (Wrathen), *pr. pl.* become angry, 1409.
- Writt, *s.* writing, 24; original text, 608, 709; (Writte), 1376; Writte, writing, 2152; (Writte), letter, 2022; Write, letter, 5102; Writ (Writte), writing, 2316; Writtis, *pl.* writings, letters, 3735, 4233; (Writtis), 881, 2112, 2695.
- Writis, *pl.* wrights, workmen, 4205.
- (Wrought), *pp.* made, 1149. See Wrogt.
- (Wroght), *for* Wrath, angry, 2245.
- Wroken, *pp.* banished, driven, limited, 4428.
- (Wroth), *adj.* wroth, angry, 1189.
- Wrothe, *s.* wrath, 2077.
- (Wrothed), *pt. s.* became angry, 2593.
- Wrothir-haile, destruction, calamity, 1759. (Usually *wrotherhele.*)
- Wrogt, *pt. s.* wrought, 416; (Wroght), 2 *p.* wroughtest, 869; Wrogt, *pt. pl.* did, 2330; (Wroght), 2 *pt. pl. subj.* should do, 2204; Wrogt, *pp.* wrought, 386, 422; (Wroght), 1290, 1540.
- (Wrychednes), *s.* wretchedness, misery, 3277.
- (Wy), man, 727*, 762*, 782*; (Wyes), *pl.* 809*. See We.
- Wyde, *adj.* wide, 571, 1324.
- Wyfe, *s.* woman, 390; wife, 587, 828, 5178. See Wife.
- (Wykydly), *adv.* severely, 1214.
- (Wylde), *s.* dominion, 1608. Lit. *wielding.*
- Wyll, *s.* wish, 782*.
- Wyn, *v.* win, conquer, 519; win (to), reach, attain, 4697; (Wynne), win, 1629, 2302; (Wynne), get, go, 1440; Wynn, win, conquer, 449; Wyn (Wynne), *ger.* to win, 1892; to make their way, 1148, 1156; Wynn (Wyn), to win, 2248; Wynnes, *pr. s.* goes, advances, 1428; (Wynnez), wins, conquers, 1037, 2278; Wynmys, *pr. s.* wins, 648; conquers, 5611; Wynes, *pr. s.* comes, 5530; Wynnes him vp, *pr. s.* snatches up, 828; Wynnes, *pr. pl.* get; Wynnes away, get away, get off, 3622; Wynnes (gow vp), *imp. pl.* get up, rise up, 541.
- Wynd, *s.* wind, 557, 1757; Wynde, 4159; Wyndis, *pl.* 4143.
- Wynde (Weynde), *v.* go, return, 1835; Wynde, *ger.* to scale, climb, ascend zigzag, 4878; Wynd (Wende), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* depart, 2014; Wyndis, *pr. s.* wends, 3325; (Wendes), goes, 2150, 2177, 2189, 2487, 2971; Wyndis, *pr. pl.* turn, go, 3631, 3741; (Wenden), 2453; Wynde (Wende), 2 *pr. s. subj.* depart, return, 2915.
- Wyndles, *adj.* breathless, 1271.
- Wyndou (Wyndow), window, 945; (Wyndow), 769*.
- Wyne (Wynne), *s.* wine, 1350; Wynes, *pl.* wines, 3350, 4303, 4436.
- Wynes, *pl.* vines, 3667.
- Wynis (Wengez), *pl.* wings, 1769, 2709.
- Wynly, *adv.* quickly, readily, 5545. Ray gives "*windy*, quietly"; but I suspect it rather means 'can-nily,' i.e. quickly, but without

- fuss; in the Troy-book, it means 'readily, quickly' in l. 1165, and 'readily, easily' in l. 8655. From the verb *win*, to get, come by. Quite distinct from *winly* = pleasantly.
- Wynter, *pl.* winters, years, 634, 646, 719, 920; (Wyntre), 1005; Wynthir (Wynter, 1677.
- Wyothy, *a city*, 2150.
- Wyrkys, 2 *pr. pl.* work, 2425.
- Wyse, *adj.* wise, 11, 41, 629; (Wise), 725; Wyse man, *gen.* sage's, 2124.
- Wyse, *s.* wise, manner, way, 13, 230, 2263; guise, 2863; *be* same wyse, in the same way, 3352.
- Wysest, *adj. superl.* wisest, 24; Wisest, 247.
- (Wysez), *pr. s. refl.* considers, 751. For Vysez = Avises.
- Wysid (Wysett), *pp.* sent off, directed (to go), 2064. A.S. *wisian*.
- Wyssis (Vysys), *pr. s.* shows, 2988. (Wyssyng), *s.* instruction, 3256.
- Wyst, *pt. s.* knew, 509.
- Wysti (Wistus), *adj.* (perhaps) desolate, deserted, 1757. See *wysty* in Sir Gawain and the Grene Knight, 2189, where it is an *adj.*, not a *sb.* Cf. M.E. *westi*.
- (Wyth), *prep.* with, 1202.
- Wyues (Wifes), *pl.* wives, 1558.
- Ydill; In ydille, in vain, 3975.
- Ydolatry, idolatry, 4459; Ydolatris, *pl.* 4261.
- Ydres, *pl.* hydras, water-snakes, 4089.
- (Ye), *ye*, 986.
- Yeldis (zeldes), *pr. s.* gives up (to), 2951.
- Yeuē, *pp.* given, 1713.
- (Yf), *conj.* if, 951, 1097, 2164; (Yff), 1850. See *If*.
- (Yhe), *ye*, 682, 683, 1034. See *3e*.
- Yles (Ylez), *pl.* isles, 1027; (Ylez), 1039. See *Ile*.
- Ymage, image, likeness, 191, 1126, 3362; Ymagis (Ymagez), *pl.* images, 1564.
- Ynde, India, 3160, 3183, 3484, 4102; (Inde), 1523, 2797; Yndee, 5663.
- Ynde, Indian, 5012.
- Yndis, *pl.* Indians, 3639; Yndes, 3617.
- Yndoyes, the Indian language, 5009; Yudoys, 5072.
- (Yoke), *s.* yoke, 818*.
- Yone, *pron.* that man, 1634.
- (You), *dat. pl.* you, 1013.
- (Your), your, 987; (Yowr), 1825.
- (Yren), iron, 746*, 756*, 1081. See *Iren*.
- Yse, *s.* ice, 2883.
- (Ysyd), *pp.* iced, frozen, 2883.
- Yssanna, name of an island, 2106.
- Ytaile (Itale), Italy, 1027.
- Ythes, *pl.* waters, waves, 1039. See *Ithis*.
- Yynde (Inde), India, 2799.
- 3a, *adv.* yea, 354, 541, 889, 1822, 1834, 2142, 5353. See *3ha*.
- 3acora, *a nun*, Zacora, 2179.
- 3ald (3olde), *pt. pl.* yielded, surrendered, 1140; (Yeld), 2147.
- 3alow, *adj.* yellow, 607.
- 3ape, *adj.* vigorous, strong, 3304; (3ope), keen, bold, 2201. A.S. *geap*.
- 3apely, *adv.* readily, 2406; eagerly, boldly, quickly, 80, 114, 2107, 2909, 4866; (3opely), vigorously, 1393; 3apeli, 761.
- 3apest, *adj. superl.* most active, most eager, 818*.
- 3are, *adv.* readily, 607; quickly, early, 1107. A.S. *gearo*.
- 3are, *adv.* yore, long ago, 1008.
- 3arely, *adv.* promptly, 1035; (3arle), speedily, 1140; (3arly), quickly, readily, 818*, 1382.
- 3aris, *pr. s. refl.* prepares himself, 4866; 3are *be*, *imp. s.* prepare thyself, 80, 2909.
- 3arkid, *pt. s.* prepared, 114; 3arkid to (3arken to), shut to, fastened, 2449; 3arkid, *pp.* prepared, 4894. A.S. *gearcian*.
- 3armand, *pres part.* yelling, bellowing, 4745. See *3arme* in Halliwell, p. 951. Cf. Icel. *jarmr*, a bleating, crying; W. *garmio*, to shout.
- (3ate), *s.* gate, 783*; 3atis, *pl.* gates, 496, 3209, 3705, 4892; (3ates), 768, 1080, 762*.
- 3e, *pron.* ye, 21, 212, 268, &c.; (Ye), 1802; (Yhe), 1801, 1866, 1893.
- 3e (for *be*), the, 3055.
- 3edire, *adj.* vehement, 5042. Cf.

- Icel. *geð*, Norweg. *gjed*, mood, mind, humour; whence Norweg. *gjedad*, bold. See Allit. Poems.
 3ee, *pron.* ye, 2120, 4433. See 3e.
 3efes (Yevez), *imp. pl.* 2 p. give ye, 1035.
 3eld, *v.* give, 3126; (zelde), 1808; 3eld, *ger.* to yield, pay, 892; to yield, 1276; to give, 1891; (zelde), 1968; (Yelde), 924; 3elde, *ger.* to give (battle), deliver (battle), 137, 830*; 3eld (Yeld), 1 *pr. s.* give, 863; 3eld (zelde), *pr. s. subj.* should give up, 2313; 3eldis, *pr. s.* yields up, 4286; (zeldez), yields, 971; gives, 1184; 3eldis (zelden), *pr. pl.* yield up (themselves), 2792; (zeldyn), give, 1388; 3eldis, *pr. pl.* (zolden, *pt. pl.*), surrender, 2232; 3eld, *pt. s.* gave, 751; 3eld him, *imp. s.* let him yield himself, 3124; 3eld, *imp. pl.* yield, 1035.
 3eme, *ger.* to take care of, 4505; 3emed, 1 *pt. s.* governed, 3304; 3emyd, *pt. s.* kept, had charge of, 1233. A.S. *gýman*.
 Zephall, Zephir, 3800.
 3erand, *pres. part.* screaming, chattering, 4745. A.S. *georran*, to chatter, sound, creak. See 3erre.
 3erde, *s.* rod of office, sceptre, 813; yard (measure), 4750; sceptre, wand or emblem of office, 1035; 3erd, wand, 114.
 3ere, *s.* year, 288; *pl.* years, 633, 649; 3eris, *pl.* years, 654; (3eres), 1008; (Yherez), 1107; 3eris, 316; 3erys, 251.
 3erely (3erly), *adj.* yearly, 2406.
 3erne, *adv.* earnestly, 457; bitterly, 667; greatly, 1265; (3arne), eagerly, 1315, 1700. A.S. *georne*.
 3erne (3arne), *pr. s.* 1 p. yearn, desire, 3124.
 3erre, *s.* outcry, loud lament, 5042. See 3erand.
 3et, *conj.* yet, nevertheless, 565, 1140, 3742, 4628; (3ett), 919. See 3it.
 3eten, *pp.* gotten, obtained, attained, 1107.
 3ettes, *pr. s.* flows, gushes, 3233; 3ett, *pt. pl.* burst out, lit. poured out, 5042; 3eten, *pp.* molten, cast, 607, 4894. A.S. *gōten*.
 3euyn (3efen), *pp.* given, 2107. (3ha), yea, 724*. See 3a.
 (3heldez), *pr. s.* yields, gives up, 726*; gives, 751.
 3iff him, *imp.* let him give himself, 3124.
 3ildis, *pr. s.* 2 p. givest, deliverest, 5192; 3ildis (zeldyn), *pr. pl.* repay, 1393; 3ild, *pr. s. subj.* may yield, 3187; 3ild vp, *imp. s.* yield up, 80. See 3eld.
 3is, *adv.* yes, 2079.
 3it, *adv.* again, still, 3163; yet, nevertheless, moreover, 51, 185, 233, &c.; (3itte), 815*. See 3et.
 3ode, *pt. s.* went, 1140; 3ode him (hym), *pt. s.* went, 761; 3ode, *pt. pl.* went, 1123, 1256, 3208; (3odez), *pt. pl. subj.* should go, 822* (where read 3ode).
 3oke, *s.* yoke, 3124; 3okke, 2909.
 3olden (zelden), *pt. pl.* yielded, 2326; 3olden, *pp.* yielded, given up, delivered up, surrendered, 1328, 1358, 1449, 1614, 2378, 3981; paid, 4531; 3olden (Yolden), *pp.* yielded, 813, 2107; (3holden), 1899; repaid, 967; (3oldyn), 2104; 3old, 3504. See 3eld.
 3onder (Yonder), *adj.* yonder, 1090.
 3onder, *adv.* yonder, 702, 705; 3on-dire (3ond), 1637; (Yonder), 1093.
 3one, *adj.* yonder, yon, that, 498, 1093, 4993. See Yone.
 3onge, *adj.* young, 185, 594; 3ong (Yong), 761, 794.
 3onger, *adj. comp.* younger, 1014; 3ongire (Yonger), 1474; 3ongir (Yonger), 1619.
 3ope; see 3ape.
 3oskinges, *pl.* sobbings, sobs, 5042. A.S. *giscian*, to sob; prov. E. *yea*.
 3oten, *s.* giant, 4745. A.S. *cōten*.
 3oure (Your), *pron.* your, 1680, 1866, 2161; 3our, 21, 168, &c.
 3our-selſe (Your-seluen), yourselves, 1867, 2205; 3our-self, 301.
 3outhe (Youth), *s.* youth, 1008, 1107; 3outh, 316.
 3ow, *pron.* you, 15, 172, 186, &c.; (You), *dat.* 987; 3owe, 361, 1823, 1845.
 3ustinday, yesterday, 3304.
 3ymmes (Giemmys), *pl.* gems, 2935.

RICHARD CLAY & SONS,
BREAD STREET HILL, LONDON,
Bungay, Suffolk.

PR
1119
E5
no.47

Early English Text
Society
[Publications]
Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

